THE BOOK WAS DRENCHED
UNEVEN PAGES
OSMANIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Call No. 297.55  Accession No. G 28 H

Author Gayangos P. D.

Title ...Mohammedan Dynasties...
Oriental Translation Fund

LONDON.

INSTITUTED 1828.

UNDER THE PATRONAGE OF HER MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY

QUEEN VICTORIA.

THIS COPY

WAS PRESENTED TO

THE RIGHT HONORABLE

THE EARL OF RIPON;

A Vice-Patron of and Subscriber to

The Oriental Translation Fund.
THE HISTORY

MOHAMMEDAN DYNASTIES IN SPAIN.

VOL. II.
THE HISTORY

OF THE

MOHAMMEDAN DYNASTIES IN SPAIN;

EXTRACTED FROM THE

NAFUH-T-TIB MIN GHOSNI-I-ANDALUSI-I-RATTIB WA TARIKH LISANU-D-DIN IBNI-I-KHATTIB,

BY AHMED IBN MOHAMMED AL-MAKKARI,

A NATIVE OF TELEMSÁN.

TRANSLATED FROM THE COPIES IN THE LIBRARY OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

AND

ILLUSTRATED WITH CRITICAL NOTES ON THE HISTORY, GEOGRAPHY, AND ANTIQUITIES OF SPAIN,

BY PASCUAL DE GAYANGOS,

MEMBER OF THE ORIENTAL TRANSLATION COMMITTEE, AND LATE PROFESSOR OF ARABIC IN THE

ATHENÉUM OF MADRID.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE ORIENTAL TRANSLATION FUND

OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

SOLD BY W. H. ALLEN AND CO., LEADENHALL STREET; AND M. DURAT, PARIS.

M.DCCC.XLIII.

1843.
# CONTENTS.

## BOOK V.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAP. I.</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAP. II.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAP. III.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAP. IV.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Abdu-l-'azíz left as governor of Andalus—Marries Roderic's widow—Is put to death—Succeeded by Ayúb—Al-horr—As-samh appointed—Is killed in battle—Succeeded by 'Abdu-r-rahmán Al-gháfekí—Appointment of 'Anbásah—Rising of Pelayo—Death of 'Anbásah—'Odhrah is appointed by the army—Replaced by Yahya Ibn Salmah—Arrival of Hodheyáfah—'Okbah appointed by the Wáli of Africa—Invades the country of the Franks—Is succeeded by 'Abdu-l-malek</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAP. V.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General rising of the Berbers in Africa—Kolthím is sent against them—Is defeated and replaced by Hondhalah—The Berbers of Andalus rise against the Arabs—They defeat 'Abdu-l-malek</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Syrians under Balj come to his assistance—They revolt against him—They take him prisoner—Put him to death—The sons of 'Abdu-l-malek march against Balj—Balj is killed in the engagement—The Syrians appoint Tha'lebah—Their wars with the Berbers—Arrival of Abú-l-khattár—Is defeated, and taken prisoner—Makes his escape—Thuábah's nomination confirmed by the Wáli of Africa—Battle of Shekundah—Death of Abú-l-khattár—The grandsons of Wittiza—Yusuf Al-fehri is appointed by the army—Several chiefs resist his authority—He defeats them in succession—Chronology of the governors of Andalus

BOOK VI.

CHAP. I.

Overthrow of the dynasty of Umeyyah—Death of Merwán, their last Khalif—'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiyyah takes to flight—Is pursued by the emissaries of As-seffâh—Arrives in Eastern Africa—Evades the search of the governor—Wanders through the country—Sends his freedman Bedr to Andalus—A party is formed in his favour—The conspirators communicate their plans to As-samíl—Answer made by that chieftain—The tribes of Modhar and Rabi'ah refuse to join them—'Abdu-r-rahmán's party is daily strengthened—He embarks for Andalus—Lands at Almuñécar—Preparations of Yúsuf—Desertions in his camp—'Abdu-r-rahmán marches to Cordova—Gains the battle of Musrárah—Enters the capital—Starts in pursuit of Yúsuf—Obliges him to capitulate

CHAP. II.


CHAP. III.

Accession of Hishám—His interview with an astrologer—His justice—Liberality—Wise administration—Rebellion of Suleyman—Taking of Narbonne—Wars with the infidels—Expedition to Galicia—To Álava—Rebuilding of the bridge of Cordova—Several Theologians leave Spain for the East—They meet Mâlik Ibn Ans—Death of Hishám—Al-hakem ascends the throne—His uncles rebel against him—Taking of Barcelona by the Franks—Wars with the Galicians—Revolt at Cordovu—Exemplary chastisement of the rebels—Death of Suleyman—Wars with the Christians—Defeat of the Franks—of the Galicians—Dreadful famine—Death of Al-hakem—His government—Respect for the learned
CONTENTS.

CHAP. IV.
Accession of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II.—Invasion of Galicia—of Alava—Defeat of Alfonso—'Abdu-r-rahmán marches against the Galicians—Invasion of Cerdagne—Death of Garcia of Navarre—Taking and destruction of Leon—Greek ambassadors arrive in Cordova—Account of Yahya Alghazzál—Piratical expeditions of the Northmen—Arrivals from the East—Account of Zarýáb the singer—His reception—He becomes a favourite of 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Improves the lute—Death of Yahya Ibn Yahya Al-leythi—of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Habib—Their labours in introducing the sect of Málík—Death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Revenues of Andalus under his reign—His passion for women—His adventure with Tarúb—Accession of Mohammed I.—His wars with the Christians—with the rebels of Toledo—Earthquake in Cordova—Death of Mohammed—His son Al-mundhir ascends the throne—Is killed in battle with 'Omar Ibn Hafsún—Succeeded by his brother 'Abdullah—Death of 'Abdullah .......................................................... 113

CHAP. V.
Accession of 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Invasion of Galicia—of Navarre—of Alava—Theuda, Queen of Navarre—Battle of Al-handik—Defeat of the Moslems—Ample revenge taken by 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Christian nations court his friendship—Greek ambassadors arrive in Cordova—Other embassies—Reception of the Greek embassy—Conspiracy against 'Abdu-r-rahmán's life detected—Execution of his son 'Abdullah—Conquests in Africa—Death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Revenues of Andalus under his reign—Buildings erected by him—Assumes the title of Khalif—Character of 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Anecdote of his justice—Account of Mundhir Al-bolítti—of Kásim Ibn Asbagh—His Hájib and Wizírs—Present made to An-násír .................................................. 133

CHAP. VI.
Accession of Al-hakem II.—Ceremonies attending his proclamation—Appointment of a Hájib—Al-hakem's wars with the Christians—Piratical incursions of the Northmen—Ordoño IV. visits Cordova—Preparations made by the Khalif for his reception—Ordoño introduced to the royal presence—His address to Al-hakem—The Khalif's answer—Arrival of ambassadors from Catalonia—and from Navarre—The Countess of Castile arrives at court—Transactions in Africa—Settlers in Andalus under his reign—Al-hakem's love of science—His passion for books—Library founded by him—Notice of literary men living at his court—Character of Al-hakem—His death .............................................................. 156

CHAP. VII.
Accession of Hishám II.—Conspiracy in favour of his uncle Al-mugheyrah detected—Execution of Al-mugheyrah—Origin of Al-mansúr—Administration of Ja'far Al-mus'hafi—Intrigues of Al-mansúr—His alliance with Ghálib—who is appointed Hájib—Al-mus'hafi falls into disgrace—Is imprisoned and put to death—Al-mansúr's disagreement with Ghálib—Death of that chief—Al-mansúr seizes the treasures of Hishám—Takes Berbers into his pay—Builds himself a castle—Usurps the royal power—Campaigns of Al-mansúr against the Christians of Andalus— Destruction of Leon—Transactions in Africa—Taking of Barcelona—Zeyrí Ibn Menád sends an embassy to Cordova—Visits that capital—Returns to Africa—Quarrels with Al-mansúr—Is forcibly dispossessed of his government—Dies in exile—Campaigns in Andalus—Invasion of Galicia—March of the Mohammedan army—Taking and destruction of Santiago—Death of Al-mansúr ................................................. 175
BOOK VII.

CHAP. I.

State of literature under Hishâm II.—Arrivals in Cordova—Notice of Sá'íd Al-laghúwi—Anecdotes respecting Al-mansúr—His love of justice—His attention to business—His wisdom and sagacity—His experience in military affairs—Other anecdotes of Al-mansúr—Buildings erected by him

CHAP. II.

'Abdu-l-malek succeeds to the post of Hajib—His death—His brother 'Abdu-r-rahmán is proclaimed—He prevails upon Hishâm to choose him for his successor—A conspiracy is formed against 'Abdu-r-rahmán—who is assassinated—Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbár is proclaimed under the name of Al-muhdi—The Berbers revolt against him—They are expelled from Cordova—They proclaim Suleyman—Defeat Al-muhdi—Take possession of the capital—Suleyman is defeated by Al-muhdi—Restoration of Hishâm—Cordova taken by the Berbers—Massacre of its inhabitants—Origin of the Bení Hammúd—'Ali Ibn Hammúd revolts against Suleyman—Defeats him, and puts him to death—'Ali is proclaimed at Cordova—His exemplary justice—He becomes a tyrant—Assassination of 'Ali—His brother Al-kásim is elected by the army—Takes possession of the government—Proclamation of Al-murtadhi, of the house of Umeyyah—He is betrayed and put to death.

CHAP. III.

Yahya, the son of 'Ali, revolts against his uncle—Marches to Cordova—Takes possession of that capital—The Berbers desert his cause—Al-kásim regains possession of Cordova—The people rise against him, and expel him from the city—Al-kásim goes to Seville—The inhabitants declare against him, and shut their gates—He takes refuge in Xerez—Falls into the hands of his nephew—Is sent prisoner to Malaga—Al-mustadh'her, of the house of Umeyyah, is proclaimed at Cordova—He is put to death, and succeeded by Al-mustakfi [Mohammed III.].—Yahya marches to Cordova, and takes it—The citizens proclaim Hishâm Al-mu'tadd, of the house of Umeyyah—They depose him—Death of Yahya.

CHAP. IV.

Andalus divided into petty kingdoms—Kings of Malaga, of the family of Idrís—Kings of Algesiras—of Granada—Cordova—Seville—Toledo—Saragossa—Badajoz—Valencia—Murcia—Almeria—The Balearic Islands.

CHAP. V.

Origin of the Asturian kingdom—Progress of the Christian arms—Taking of Toledo by Alfonso VI.—Conquests of Sancho I. of Aragon—Battle of Paterna—Taking of Barbastro—Massacre of the inhabitants—Excesses committed by the Christians—Barbastro retaken by the Molems—Ambitious projects of Alfonso—His insolent request—Al-mu'tamed puts to death his ambassador—Alfonso prepares to revenge the outrage—Marches against Seville, and besieges it—Al-mu'tamed
decides on calling Yusuf to his aid—Sends him an embassy—Account of Yusuf Ibn Tashef—in His negotiation with the rulers of Andalus—His answer to the ambassadors of Al-mu'tamed

CHAP. VI.

Yusuf crosses the Strait—Marches to Seville—Preparations of Alfonso—His dream—His message to Yusuf—March of the Mohammedan army—Arrival at Badajoz—Yusuf’s letter to Alfonso—The Christian king tries to deceive the Moslems—His plans known* and disconcerted—His attack upon Al-mu'tamed’s camp—Perilous situation of that monarch—Yusuf marches to his aid—Extricates him from his danger—Takes and plunders the Christian camp—Alfonso is wounded in the thigh—Dies of sorrow and disappointment—Yusuf visits Seville—Is magnificently entertained by the king of that city—The Almoravides evince a disposition to remain in Andalus—Advice given to Al-mu'tamed—Yusuf’s departure for Africa

BOOK VIII.

CHAP. I.

Yusuf again crosses over to Andalus—Lays siege to Toledo—Deprives 'Abdullah Ibn Balkín of his dominions—His generals subdue the rest of Andalus—Seyr, the Almoravide, attacks the King of Saragossa—Takes the castle of Roda—Dethrones the Kings of Murcia and Almería—Puts to death Ibn Al-afttas, King of Badajoz—Preparations against Al-mu'tamed—Al-mu'tamed besieged in Seville—Implores the aid of Alfonso—Taking of Seville by the Almoravides—Al-mu'tamed is conveyed a prisoner to Africa—His son 'Abdu-l-jabbar revolts in Andalus—Is killed in the attempt—Death of Al-mu'tamed—Death of Yusuf Ibn Tashef—in Accession of 'Ali—His campaigns with the Christians of Andalus—Taking of Saragossa by the Aragonese—'Ali returns to Andalus—Alfonso I. invades Andalusia—Arrives before Granada—The Christians of Granada transported to Africa—'Ali goes to Andalus the fourth time—His death

CHAP. II.

Accession of Tâshefín Ibn 'Alí—His wars with the Almohades—His death—Conquests of the Christians—Formation of small kingdoms—The Almohades invade Andalus—Almeria taken by Alfonso II. of Castile—Cordova besieged by Alfonso—The Almohades retake Almeria—Account of the rebel Ibn Mardanish—'Abdu-l-múmen crosses over to Andalus—Builds the castle of Gibraltar—Ibn Humushk takes by surprise the city of Granada—Is besieged by the Almohades—Makes his submission—Death of 'Abdu-l-múmen

CHAP. III.

Accession of Yusuf I.—Conquests of Alfonso Enriquez—Death of Ibn Mardanish—Yusuf lays siege to Toledo—Dies before Santarem—Is succeeded by Ya'kúb Al-mansúr—who attacks and defeats the Christians—Battle of Alarcos—Death of Ya'kúb—He is succeeded by Mohammed An-násir—The Moslems lose the battle of Al-'akáb or Las Navas—Its fatal results—Accession of Yusuf II.—'Abdu-l-wáhedin—Al-'ádil—Idrís Al-mámun—As-sa'id—Al-murtadhi—Al-wáthik
CONTENTS.

CHAP. IV.
Account of Ibn Húd—Prophecy in his favour—Rises in the province of Murcia—Subdues the greater part of Andalus—Proclaims the Khalíf of Baghdád—Some chiefs dispute his authority—The Christians take Merida and Badajoz—Attack and conquer the island of Mallorca—The governor of Minorca capitulates with them—Siege and taking of Valencia by the Aragonese—Ferdinand III. takes Córdova

CHAP. V.
Origin of the Bení Nasr—Account of Mohammed Ibnu-l-ahmar—His revolt at Arjona—His wars with Ibn Húd—he takes possession of Granada—Attacks and defeats the Christians—Dies is succeeded by Mohammed II.—His campaigns against the Christians—Death of Don Nuño de Lara—The Infante Don Sancho is defeated and slain—Taking of Quesada and Alcaudete—Death of Mohammed II.—His son Mohammed III. succeeds him—His brother Nasr revolts against him—Compels him to abdicate—Ferdinand of Castile takes Gibraltar—The Aragonese besiege Almería—Revolt of Abú Sa’íd and his son Abú-l-walíd Isma’il—The latter defeats Nasr—Forces him to abdicate—Battle of Elvira—Death of Don Pedro—Taking of Christian fortresses—Assassination of Isma’il

CHAP. VI.
Accession of Mohammed IV.—Gibraltar recovered from the Christians—Its fortifications repaired by Abú-l-hasan—The Africans put to death the King of Granada—His brother Yúsf succeeds him—Battle of Tarifa—Assassination of Yúsf—Accession of Mohammed V.—His half-brother Isma’il revolts against him—Mohammed takes refuge in Guadix—Crosses over to Africa—Ibnu-l-khattib’s account of these transactions—Isma’il is dethroned and put to death—is succeeded by Mohammed VI.—Assassination of the latter by Pedro, King of Castile—Mohammed V. recovers his kingdom—Lamentable fate of his Wízír, Ibnu-l-khattib

CHAP. VII.
Accession of Yúsuf II.—Fatal predictions—Reign of Abú-l-hasan—His brother Az-zaghal proclaimed at Malaga—Troubles in Castile—Rival factions in Granada—Discontent of the people—The Christians take Alhama—The Moslems try to retake it—Fail in the attempt—Siege of Loxá by the Castilians—The Granadians attack and defeat them—Revolution at Granada—The Castilians are defeated near Malaga—Abú ’Abdillah usurps the throne—Is defeated and taken prisoner by the Castilians—His uncle Az-zaghal succeeds him—Conquests of the Christians—Policy of Ferdinand—he besieges and takes Loxá—Abú ’Abdillah is proclaimed in the Albayzín—Revolution at Granada—Taking of Velez-Malaga—Malaga besieged and taken—Siege and taking of Baza—Surrender of Almería—The Sultán Az-zaghal makes his submission—Abú ’Abdillah summoned to surrender his capital—Makes preparations to defend himself—War between Abú ’Abdillah and Az-zaghal—Abú ’Abdillah reduces some fortresses—Az-zaghal crosses over to Africa—Granada besieged—Surrenders to the Castilians—Terms of the capitulation—The King of Castile makes his entrance into the Alhambra—Ultimate fate of Abú ’Abdillah—the capitulations are violated—The Moslems compelled to embrace the Christian religion—Their revolt in the Alpuxarras—Their feigned conversion—Their ultimate expulsion
Appendix A.


How 'Abdu-l-'azíz, son of Músa Ibn Nosseyr, was put to death in Andalus by order of the Khalif Suleyán

How the head of 'Abdu-l-'azíz was brought to Suleyán

An account of the governors of Andalus after Músa and his son 'Abdu-l-'azíz

How the massacre of the Bení Umeyyah came to pass

Appendix B.

Extracts from the Jadh'watu-l-muktabis ft Tûrîkhi rejdi-l-andalus (a sparkle of fire from the steel on the history of the illustrious men of Andalus), by Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Abi Naṣr Fatúh Ibn 'Abdillah Al-azdí Al-homaydí, of Cordova. (Bibl. Bodl. Hunt. 464.)

Reign of Mohammed, son of Hishám, surnamed Al-muhdí

Reign of Suleyán Ibn Al-hakem Al-musta'ín

Reign of 'Alí Ibn Hammúd, surnamed An-násir

Reign of Al-kásim Ibn Hammúd, surnamed Al-mámání

Reign of Yahya Ibn 'Alí, surnamed Al-mu’táli

Reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Hishám Al-mustad’her

Reign of Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, surnamed Al-mustakfí

Reign of Hishám Ibn Mohammed, surnamed Al-mu’tadd

Sultáns of the family of Idrís

Appendix C.

Extracts from the historical work entitled Kitâbu-l-iktifá fi akhbári-l-kholafá (the book of sufficiency on the history of the Khalifs), containing a concise account of the history of Mohammedan Spain, from the death of Al-hakem Al-mustanser-billah, the ninth Sultán of Cordova, till the arrival of the Almohades

Appendix D.

Extracts from the history of the Berbers by Abú Zeyd 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Khaldún (Brit. Mus. No. 9575), respecting the conquests and settlements of the Al-muwahhándún (or Almohades) in Spain.

An account of the conquest of Andalus by the Almohades, and the events attending thereon

The Almohades subdue the rest of Andalus

Account of Ibn Mardanísh, who revolted [against the Almohades] in the eastern provinces of Andalus

Reign of the Khalif Yúsuf, son of 'Abdu-l-múmen

Civil war in [the mountains of] Gomárah

Events in Andalus
Abú Ya'kúb's assiduity in the prosecution of the holy war
Reign of his son, Ya'kúb Al-mansúr
Account of the origin and rising of Ibn Gháníyyah
His adventures in the holy war
Reign of An-násir, son of Al-mansúr
Conquest of Mallorca
An-násir's high deeds in the prosecution of the holy war
Revolt of Ibnu-l-faras
Reign of Al-mustanser, son of An-násir
Reign of 'Abdu-l-wáhed Al-makhlu', the deposed brother of Al-mansúr
Reign of Al-'ádil, son of Al-mansúr
Reign of Al-mámu'n, son of Al-mansúr
The people of Valencia, Murcia, and the eastern provinces of Andalus, proclaim the Sultán Abú Zakariyyá Ibn Abí Hafss, and send an embassy to him
The inhabitants of Andalus come under the rule of the Bení Abí Hafss. Arrival at Túnis of messengers bringing the allegiance of the people of Seville and other great cities

Chronological and Genealogical Tables

Index—List of Arabic Works cited—of Spanish Words, of Arabic derivation, which occur in the Translation, or are explained in the Notes—Additions and Corrections
Having in the preceding book given a short account of the conquest of Andalus by the Moslems, we propose saying a few words in the present about those illustrious Moslems who came in the suite of Moslem Ibn Nosseyr, and by whose undaunted valour and fervent piety that mighty deed was achieved. And first we shall speak about the *As'hub* (companions) and *Tābi’s* (followers of the companions) of the Prophet (may God favour and preserve him!) who are supposed either to have visited Andalus or to have settled in that country at the time of its invasion by the Moslems.

It is doubtful whether any of the *As’hub* (companions) of our holy Prophet were ever in Andalus. Indeed, there are not wanting Eastern writers who even deny that any of the *Tābi’s* ever set foot in that country. Andalusian authors, on the contrary, positively assert that one of the lesser *As’hub* resided for some time among them, and also that a considerable number of the *Tābi’s* entered with Mūsa Ibn Nosseyr at the time of the conquest, and settled in various parts of Andalus. Ibn Habīb,² for instance, assures us, that Al-muneydhir, one of the lesser *As’hub*, resided in Andalus. The same writer, who counts Mūsa Ibn Nosseyr himself in the number of the *Tābi’s*, gives the names of three other *Tābi’s*,—*’Alī Ibn Rabāh Al-lakhmī, Hayāt Ibn Rejā At-temānī, and Hansh Ibn ’Abdillah As-san'ānî,* all of whom are said to have left Syria in company with Mūsa Ibn Nosseyr, when he went to take possession of his government of Eastern Africa, and to have followed that
general to the conquest of Andalus. Other writers substitute for Músa a theologian named Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán 'Abdullah Ibn Yezíd Al-jobeli⁹ Al-ansáří. Others again make their number amount to five by adding Hayyán Ibn Abí Hoblah,⁴ a mauli (member by incorporation) of the Beni 'Abdi-d-dár,⁵ who, they say, was originally attached to the settling army of Misr, and was afterwards dispatched to Africa by the Khalif 'Omar Ibn 'Abdi-l'-azíz, together with other learned theologians, that they might instruct the natives of that country in the duties of the Mohammedan religion, which they had embraced.

Besides the before-mentioned tábiʾs, the historian Ibnu Saʿíd gives the names of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abdillah Al-gháfekí, a mauli of the tribe of Koraysh, who was governor of Andalus from the year 110 to 115; Mohammed Ibn Aus Ibn Thákib⁶ Al-ansáří; Zeyd Ibn Kássed As-seksekí; Al-mugheyrah Ibn Abí Burdah Al-Kenání; 'Abdullah Ibn Al-mugheyrah Al-Kenání; 'Abdu-l-jabbár Ibn Abí Salmah Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn 'Auf; Mansúr Ibn Abí Khozaymah, and 'Ala Ibn 'Othmán Ibn Khattáb.

Ibnu Bashkúwál, as well as Al-hijáří in his Masʿhab, makes their number amount to eighteen; other writers to twenty. As to the particular place of their residence whilst they inhabited Andalus, very little is known with certainty; as those writers who have preserved us their names and patronymics content themselves with telling us that they entered Andalus at the time of the invasion, and resided for some time in that country; but of this more will be said when we come to treat separately of each of these holy men.

The first in rank among the illustrious Moslems who were present at the conquest of Andalus was undoubtedly Al-muneydhir, who is reported to have been both the companion and the counsellor of the Prophet (God favour and preserve him!). Ibnu-l-abbār in his Tekmilah⁷ speaks of this Al-muneydhir, whom he calls Al-ifríki (the African), and whom he counts in the number of the asʾhúb or companions of our holy Prophet. He says, also, that Al-muneydhir inhabited Africa proper until the time of the conquest of Andalus, when he entered that country in the suite of Músa Ibn Nosseyr. This latter fact he asserts on the authority of Mohammed Ar-rusháttí (from Rosetta), who held it from the illustrious theologian and traditionist 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Habíb; but it must also be stated that he (Ibnu-l-abbār) could adduce no other proof in favour of his proposition than the accounts of the two authors above mentioned. He adds, that Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-jobelí delivered traditions which he held from the mouth of this Al-muneydhir. Great obscurity hangs, likewise, over the places of birth and residence of this illustrious individual. Ibnu-l-abbār thinks that he was either born in Eastern Africa, or had resided most of his life in that country. Of the same opinion is Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr,⁸ who in his Istiʿdb, or
biography of the companions of the Prophet, calls him Al-muneydhir Al-ifríki. Others entertain a contrary opinion, and make him a native of Yemen; whether from Mad’haj, or some other district, is not stated. Of this opinion is the historian Al-hijári, who likewise asserts the fact of his having entered Andalus in the suite of Músa Ibn Nosseýr. Ibnu Bashkuwáål, quoting the historian Ar-rázi, says that he was named Al-muneydhir, that is, the little counsellor, because he was one of the youngest companions of the Prophet, and that Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr had preserved a traditional saying (which we hope is a true one) coming in a direct line from this Al-muneydhir, who held it from the very mouth of the Prophet. The same fact is recorded by Abú 'Alí Ibn As-sáken in his work on the companions, as well as by Ibn Náfi’ in his biographical dictionary of the companions, and by Al-bokhári in his larger historical work. We shall quote the words of the last-mentioned writer. "Abú Al-muneydhir, the companion of the Messenger of God (may He favour and preserve him!), lived in Africa proper. He delivered many traditional sayings which he held from the Prophet himself, and of which the following is one: ‘Whoever is content to have Allah for his master, Islám for a religion, and Mohammed for a prophet, I will be a warrant to him that I will lead him by the hand into Paradise.’" Such are the words of Al-bokhári, who, it must be remarked, calls him Abú Al-muneydhir instead of Al-muneydhir. The person, however, from whom Al-bokhári held this tradition could quote no other preserved by that illustrious individual. Lastly, Abú Ja’far Ibn Rashúd, who not only preserved this tradition, but has mentioned its author in his work entitled Masnádu-s-sihábah (traditional sayings preserved by the companions of the Prophet), calls him Al-mundhír, and gives him the patronymic Al-yément; although he does not state of what part of Yemen he was a native or a resident.

Hansh As-san’áni.—Ibnu Bashkuwáål, quoting Ibn Wadhdháh,9 says that Hansh was a by-name, and that the real name of this tábí’ was Huseyn Ibn 'Abdílláh, and his appellative "Abú 'Alí;" others say "Abú Rashideyn." "Hansh," continues Ibnu Bashkuwáål, "was born in Syria, and, according to Abú Sa’íd Ibn Yúnas10 in his biography of eminent Moslems natives of Africa, Egypt, or Andalus, at a town called San’á; he followed the fortunes of 'Alí Ibn Abí Tálib, to whose party he was addicted; fought in Africa under Ruwaykí’ Ibn Thábit, and, lastly, entered Andalus with Músa Ibn Nosseyr." He is likewise counted in the number of those Arabs who assisted the son of Zubeyr in his rebellion against the Khalif 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán; for, after the murder of 'Alí, whose friend and partisan he was, he retired into Egypt and joined the insurgents; thence he went to Arabia and fought under the banners of Ibn Zubeyr, until he was taken prisoner and brought before that Sultán, who caused him to be cast into a dungeon and loaded...
with irons: he at last obtained his pardon and was set at liberty. Hansh passes likewise for the first man who ever filled the office of tax-collector in Africa. He died in that country, or, according to others, at Saragossa, in the year 100. Ibn Habîb, who mentions this tâbi' in the number of those who entered Andalus with Mûsa Ibn Nosseyr, asserts that he was the same man who, on the discovery of Cordova from the top of the mountain-pass called Feju-l-meydah (the pass of the table), began to call the soldiers to prayer, although it was not then prayer-time: being asked by his companions why he summoned them at so unseasonable an hour, he answered, "Because prayers to the Almighty shall be heard in yonder plain until the hour of the last judgment has arrived." Time, however, has shown that this good man's prophecy was not to be fulfilled, although this tradition has been handed down by a considerable number of writers. God only knows whether it rests on a solid foundation or not. It is mentioned by Ibn 'Asâkir, who, in his history of the companions of the Prophet, has treated extensively of this Hansh. The same writer (Ibn 'Asâkir) agrees in making Hansh a native of San'á, a small town of Syria, which, he observes, is not to be confounded with the large city of that name in Yemen. Ibnu-l-faradhi says that he inhabited Saragossa, where he laid the foundations of the great mosque; that he died in that city and was buried close to the gate of the Jews in the western part of the city; and that the people of Saragossa were in the habit of saying that "the honour of preserving among them the mortal remains of Hansh was sufficient for them:" to which may be added what Ibn Bashkûwál says of this individual, namely, that he arranged the kiblah of the mosque of Elvira, and took also the level of that of the great mosque at Cordova, which we have fully described elsewhere as one of the wonders of the world.

Others pretend that as Hansh is not quoted by Syrian traditionists, but only by people who inhabited Cairo, this would imply that he lived in Egypt, not in the former country. Be this as it may, it appears certain that Hansh preserved traditions from the mouth of 'Abdullah son of 'Abbâs, the uncle of the Prophet: the following is one. Hansh had a sword with a gold hilt to it: he happened once to meet 'Abdullah, who, seeing him with it, said to him, "If thou wishest to be acceptable to thy Lord, let the hilt of thy sword be made of iron, and of no other material;" which advice Hansh instantly followed. They say that when 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán invaded Africa with Mu'áwiyah Ibn Khodeyj in the year 50, he lodged at the house of Hansh, who repeated to him the above words of 'Abdullah Ibn 'Abbâs, and that 'Abdu-l-malek was so pleased, that when after the rebellion of Ibn Zubeyr, Hansh fell into his hands, as we have elsewhere related, he remembered him and granted his complete pardon. Ibn 'Asâkir calls him simply Hansh,
without stating, like Ibn Wadhhdháh and the rest of the authors we have quoted, that his name was Huseyn, and that Hansh was a by-name. He may be right for aught we know, but God only is all-knowing!

Ibn Yúnás has preserved us some account of the habits and mode of life of this illustrious tábi', which he held in a straight line from him: he says that "Whenever Hansh, after partaking of his evening meal and finishing his daily occupation, wished to say his nightly prayers, he used to light his lamp, and place a Korán by the side of his couch, and a tub of water to perform his ablutions. He would then rise to say his prayers in the middle of the night; and if he felt himself overcome by sleep, he would sniff up water in order to rouse himself. If in reciting from his Korán he made any mistake, he would take up the book, and refer to the passage: lastly, if a beggar came up to him and asked him for food, he would not cease calling to his servants to give him what he wanted until he saw that he was satisfied."

Abú Abdillah [‘Alí] Ibn Rabáh Al-lakhmí.—Of this tábi’, Ibn Yúnás in his history Ibn Rabáh of Egypt says that he was born in the year 15 of the Hijra (beginning Feb. 20, A.D. 733), better known as the year of Yarmúk;14 that he was blind of one eye, which he lost at the naval battle of Dhátu-s-sawári,15 wherein he fought under the orders of 'Abdullah Ibn Sa‘íd in the year 34 of the Hijra, and that at a subsequent period he joined in the insurrection of the tribes of Yemen, who had settled in Egypt, against the Khalíf 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán. After this, Ibn Rabáh became a great favourite with 'Abdu-l-'azíz Ibn Merwán, so that when Ummu-l-baneyn, daughter of that prince, was to be married to 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán, it was he who was charged by the father to conduct the bride to the bridegroom’s dwelling.16 However, ‘Abdu-l-'azíz being in the sequel displeased with him, he was banished the capital and ordered to join the army of Africa, where he remained until the time of the invasion of Andalus, when Músá took him into his suite. It is generally admitted that Ibn Rabáh died in the first-mentioned country in the year 114 (beginning March 2, A.D. 732), or thereabouts. Ibnu Bashkúwál, citing Ibn Mu‘ayn, says that the Egyptians used to pronounce the name of this tábi’ ‘Ala or ‘Alí, with a fatahá on the ‘ayn; whilst the people of ‘Irák always called him ‘Ola, making his name a noun of the form fo‘la; and that in confirmation of the above opinion they (the Egyptians) were in the habit of quoting the following words of his son Músá: "If any one call me Músá, son of ‘Ola, making this word a diminutive of ‘Ala, I shall not consider that he alludes to me."

Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán 'Abdullah Ibn Yezdí Al-ma’díferí Al-jobellí.—Ibnu Bashkúwál, 'Abdullah Ibn Yezdí, treating of this tábi', says that he held traditions from Abú Ayúb Al-ansári and 'Abdullah Ibn 'Amru, both companions of the Prophet, and that he himself was
mentioned by several eminent traditionists, who cited him as their authority. Ibn Yúnás says that he died in Eastern Africa close upon the year 100 of the Hijra (beginning August 2, A.D. 718), and that he was a virtuous and benevolent man. There are, however, some Andalusian writers, chiefly those who were natives of Cordova, who assert that Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-jobéli died and was buried in that city, and that his tomb, which might be seen in the western quarter of Cordova, was very much visited, and held in great veneration by the people. Which of these two accounts is the true one, God only knows!

Hayyán Ibn Abí Hoblah.—Of this tābi', Ibn Bashkúwál says that he was a maulí (member by incorporation) of the illustrious tribe of Koraysh; and that his surname was Abú-n-nadhar. Of the same opinion is Abu-l-'arab Mohammed Ibn Temím, who, in his history of Eastern Africa, states that he had heard Farát Ibn Mohammed say that when the Khalif 'Omar Ibn 'Abdi-l-'aziz decided upon sending to Africa some men of known piety and learning to instruct the Berbers in the duties of the Mohammedan religion, Hayyán was one of the ten theologians chosen for that mission. Hayyán used to record traditions handed down to him by 'Amru Ibnu-l-'áss, 'Abdullah Ibn 'Abbás, and Ibn 'Omar, (may God be propitious to them all !). According to some writers, Hayyán died in Africa in the year 122 (beginning 6th Dec. A.D. 739); according to others, in 125 (beginning 3rd Nov. A.D. 740). Not one of the above-mentioned writers says a word about the residence of this tābi' in Andalus; but Ibnu-l-faradhí relates that Hayyán went to that country with Músa Ibn Nosseyr, whom he accompanied in all his expeditions until he arrived at a fortress called Karkashánah (Carcassonne), where he died. "I was told," continues that historian, "by Abú Mohammed Ath-theghrí, that Carcassonne is a city distant five-and-twenty miles from Barcelona, and that when the Moslems conquered it, they found a magnificent church, called by the Christians Santa Maria, wherein were seven pillars of massive silver; so beautifully wrought, that no human eye ever saw the like of them; so huge were their dimensions, that a man could hardly encompass one within his arms extended."

Al-mugheyráh Ibn Abí Burdah Nashít Ibn Kenánah Al-'adhrí.—We have no other account of this tābi' than that preserved by Al-hijári in his great historical work, namely, that he held traditions from the mouth of Abú Horeyrah (may God be favourable to him !), and that he himself was cited by Málík Ibn Ans in his great collection of traditions entitled Mowattá. Al-mugheyráh is likewise slightly mentioned by Al-bokhári in his larger work. Ibn Bashkúwál says that he invaded Andalus with Músa Ibn Nosseyr, although it would appear that that general dismissed him from his army.
Hayát Ibn Rejá At-temimí.—According to Ibn Habíb, this tábí entered Andalus in the suite of Músa Ibn Nosseyr. The statement is corroborated by Ibn Bashkúwál in a compilation of his entitled "Admonition and explanation respecting those among the tábí’s who entered Andalus," as well as by Ibnu-l-abbár, who professes to derive his information from one Abú-l-khattáb Ibn Wájib, who held it from the mouth of that tábí himself. It must, however, be observed, that he (Ibnu-l-abbár) calls him Rejá Ibn Hayát, a name totally different from that given him by Ibn Habíb. Which of the two was his true name, God only knows! 'Iyádh Ibn 'Okbah Al-fehrí.—He was one of the tábí’s most renowned for virtue and sanctity of life. He is counted by Ibn Habíb among those pious and honest Moslems, four in number, who in the partition of the spoil made at the time of the conquest of Andalus were righteous with the men, and took no more than their own legitimate share of the plunder. As the above tradition, which Ibn Habíb held from Ibn Rabi’ah, has been preserved by the historian Ibn Bashkúwál, we shall transcribe it at length. "I was told," says Ibn Habíb, "by Ibn Rabi’ah, ‘All the people who came to the conquest of this country (Andalus) were guilty of rapine and injustice towards their comrades, by abstracting some portion of the spoil, and not sharing it with them. Four men only, who belonged to the illustrious class of the tábí’s, are exempt from this charge: Hansh As-sa’ání, Abú ’Abdi-r-rahmán Al-jobelí, Ibn Shamásah, and 'Iyádh Ibn 'Okbah.’"

We have treated elsewhere of the immense spoil found by the Moslems in some of the cities of Andalus, but chiefly in Toledo, Cordova, Seville, and Merida, which, as before mentioned, had been at different epochs the places of residence of the Gothic kings; but, since we have touched upon this subject, we cannot pass over in silence the accounts of some trustworthy men who were present at the conquest, or who lived very near the time, and whose words have been preserved and handed down to posterity through a continuous chain of doctors. Al-leyth Ibn Sa’íd, after enumerating the rich spoil of every description, and the large masses of gold and silver, which fell to the lot of some of the Arabs who accompanied Tārik and Músa to Andalus, says that it was a common thing for the lowest men in the army to find at the plunder of a city splendid robes embroidered with gold flowers, magnificent gold chains of exquisite workmanship, and long strings of matchless pearls, rubies, and emeralds. We have also read in an historical work that the plunder found by Tārik at the taking of Toledo, whether in money or jewels, was beyond calculation, and baffled all description. It is asserted that there were found among other precious objects one hundred and seventy diadems of the purest red gold, set in pearls, rubies, and every other sort of precious stone, one thousand swords for the king’s own use, several measures full of pearls, rubies, and other gems, besides
an immense number of massive gold and silver vases. So great were in many instances the eagerness for plunder and the ignorance of some of the conquerors, especially the Berbers, that whenever two or more warriors of this latter nation fell at the same time upon an article of plunder which they could not conveniently divide, they hesitated not to cut it in pieces and share it among themselves, whatever its materials or workmanship might be. In illustration of this, it is related that at the taking of Toledo, two Berbers found a most splendid carpet; it was interwoven with gold worked in stripes, and was, besides, ornamented with chain-work of the purest gold. The ground of the carpet, moreover, was sprinkled with pearls, rubies, emeralds, and every description of costly gem. They at first carried it for a while between them; but, finding it too heavy, they soon put it down, when one of them went to fetch a hatchet, and cut the carpet in two, one taking away the one half, and the other the remainder. All this, moreover, they effected quite unperceived, as their comrades, who were very numerous upon that occasion, were busy in plundering another quarter of the city.

The same author before mentioned, and another named Yahya Ibn Sa’d, say something about the extortions and rapine of some of the officers and soldiers engaged in the conquest of Andalus. They relate that a party of men, having collected together several valuable objects which they had concealed from their comrades, seized on some vessels, and set sail, to return to their homes. Scarcely however had they lost sight of the land, when they were assailed by a most terrific storm of wind, and they heard a voice which said, “O my God, drown them all!” The culprits then took to their Koráns and began to pray, but it proved of no avail to them; for the storm continuing with unabated fury, the ships were dashed one against another, and every soul on board drowned. It is not ascertained who the sufferers on this occasion were; for the people of Egypt, on whom the calamity is said to have fallen, deny the fact altogether; and as to the Andalusians, they say that it was the conquerors of Sardinia who met with so signal a chastisement from the Almighty. God only is all-knowing!

Zoreyk Ibn Hakím.—This is another of the tābí’s who entered Andalus in the suite of Músa Ibn Nosseyr. It is so related by Abú-l-hasan Ibn An-na’mah, on the authority of the Abú-l-motref ’Abdu-r-rahmán [Ibn] Yúsuf Ibn Ar-rafaí Al-kortobi, in whose handwriting he read the statement. According, however, to the Háfedh Abú ‘Abdillah Al-kodhá’í, Zoreyk is not mentioned either by Ibnu-l-faradhí, or by other writers who have given the names of the tābí’s who entered Andalus at the time of the conquest.

Zeyd Ibn Kássed As-seksekî24 is likewise counted by Ibnu-l-abbáır among the tābí’s who invaded Andalus, and were present at the conquest. He was originally
from Misr, and preserved traditions delivered by 'Amru Ibnu-l-‘āss. He himself has been cited by several doctors, in the number of whom are 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Zeyyád Ibn An‘am Al-ífríkí and Ya‘kúb Ibn Sufyán: the latter attributes to him one of the traditional stories contained in the collection formed by Al-homaydí.

Abú Zor'ah Ibn Ráh Ash-shámít.—This individual is also counted by the Kádí Abú Zor’ah. Muhájir Ibn Theofil in the number of the tābi‘ís. He left a soq, named Moslemah Ibn Zor’ah, who cited him as his authority in several traditional sayings which he preserved.

Mohammed Ibn Aus Ibn Thábít Al-ansárt.—According to Ibnu-l-abbár, who read it in the handwriting of Ibn Hobeysh, this individual was also a tābi‘, and held traditions from the mouth of Abú Horeyrah, one of the companions of the Prophet. Al-homaydí speaks of him in these terms: “Mohammed Ibn Aus was an honest and religious man, remarkable for his talents and his theological learning. He commanded the Moslem fleet in the year 93 (beginning Oct. 18th, A. D. 711), and was present at the conquest of Western Africa and Andalus by Músa Ibn ‘Nosseýr.” Abú Sa‘íd Ibn Yúnas, in his history of Egypt, corroborates the above statement, and gives besides the names of all those doctors who held traditions from him; as Al-háírith Ibn Yezíd and Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Thaubán. Another writer, 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakem, who is also the author of a history of Egypt, says that Mohammed Ibn Aus was on the sea of Túnis in the year 102 (beginning July 11th, A. D. 720), and that when Yezíd Ibn Abí Moslem, governor of Eastern Africa, was put to death, he was appointed by the army to succeed him. This happened during the Khalífate of Yezíd Ibn ‘Abdi-l-malek Ibn Merwán. Mohammed Ibn Aus is moreover reported to have held the government of that country until the arrival of Besher Ibn Sefwán Al-kelbí, who, leaving his brother Handhalah to govern Egypt in his absence, took into his own hands the government of the Mohammedan provinces of Eastern Africa.

Abú 'Amru 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Shamásah Ibn Dhib Al-fehíd.—This tābi‘ held traditions from Abú Dharr, or, according to other accounts, from Abú Nadhrah, who held them from Abú Dharr: he held them also from 'Ayeshah, the widow of the Prophet, from 'Amru Ibnu-l-‘āss, his son 'Abdullah, Zeýd Ibn Thábít, Abú Nadhrah Al-ghaffárí, 'Okbah Ibn 'A’mír Al-johání, 'Auf Ibn Málík Al-ashja’í, Mu‘áwiyyah Ibn Khodeyj, Moslemah Ibn Mokhlid, and Abú Raham. The above information is borrowed from Ibn Yúnas in his history of Egypt, as well as from Ibnu Bashkúwál, who, quoting Al-homaydí and Ibnu-l-abbár, counts him in the number of the tābi‘ís who entered Andalus. Ibn Yúnas adds, that the last doctor who, in Egypt, received traditions from this tābi‘, was Harmaláh Ibn 'Amrán.

Bekr Ibn Sawádah Ibn Themámah Al-jodhámít.—He was surnamed Abú-th-
themámáh, and was the grandson of a companion of the Prophet. He himself was a tábí' and an eminent theologian. He preserved traditions delivered by several of the companions of the Prophet; as 'Abdullah Ibn 'Amru Ibn-l-‘áss, Kays Ibn Sa‘d, Ibn ‘Obádah, Sahl Ibn Sa‘d As-sá’dí, Sufyán Ibn Wahb Al-khulání, Hossán Ibn Samh As-sadáyí, and Hiyyán. However, the name of the last-mentioned individual, who is said to have been one of the companions of the Prophet (may God favour and preserve him!), and to have been present at the taking of Mísr, is differently given by Ad-darkattdni, who writes it Hiyyán; while Ibn Yúnas is of opinion that it should be written Hibán or Habán. Be this as it may, certain it is that this Bekr preserved traditions from several of the as’háb (companions of the Prophet), as Abú Núr Al-fáhémí, Abú 'Omayrah Al-mázení; and, among the tábí’s (followers), As-sa‘íd Ibn-l-musíb, 'Orwah Ibn-z-zubeyr, Rabí‘ah Ibn Kays Al-haméli, Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-jobeli, Zeyd Ibn Na‘ím Al-hadhramí, Sufyán Ibn Hání Al-jeyshání, Sa‘íd Ibn Semar As-sebdyi, &c.

There are various opinions respecting the country where this tábí' lived and died. Ibn Yúnas is of opinion that he died in Eastern Africa during the Khalifate of Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-málek. Other writers assert that he was drowned in the straits, in crossing over to Andalus, in the year 128 of the Hijra (beginning Oct. 2, A. D. 745). Abú Bekr 'Abdulláh Ibn Mohammed Al-kayrwání Al-málekí, in his history entitled Riyádhu-n-nofús (the bowers of the mind), says, that Abú-th-themámah was one of the ten theologians sent to Africa by the Khalif 'Omar Ibn 'Abdi-l-‘ázíz, for the purpose of teaching the Berbers the duties of the Mohammedan religion. Al-homaydí counts him in the number of the tábí’s who entered Andalus; Ibnu-l-faradhí, however, does not.

'Abdulláh Ibnu-l-mugheyrah Al-kendni.—This individual, who was bound by oath to the tribe of 'Abdu-d-dár, is mentioned by Abú Mohammed Al-’assílî (from Arsilla) among the tábí’s who entered Andalus at the time of its conquest by the Moslems; at least, such is the statement given by Ibnu Bashkúwál in his work entitled ' Admonition and Explanation,' &c., as derived from the above-mentioned author. Ibnu-l-abbár, however, declares that he never met with his name among those of the tábí’s who settled in Andalus; and Abú Sa‘íd Ibn Yúnas counts him in the number of those who visited Eastern Africa, not Andalus. He adds, that he held traditions from Sufyán Ibn Wahb Al-khulání.

Besides the above-mentioned individuals, the historians of Andalus have preserved to us the names of three persons who lived in more modern times, but who, having lived to an extraordinary age, are supposed to have been on intimate terms with the tábí’s, and to have conversed with them. But in this, as in many other things, we are inclined to think that the writers of that country have been led away by their
patriotism. Ibnu-l-abbárr, for instance, does not hesitate to count among the Andalusian tābī’s one ’Abdullah, who showed himself in Andalus in very late times, and who is said to have lived to a most unusual age, since he pretended to have conversed with some of the tābī’s. Ibnu-l-abbárr adds, that according to a written statement of Al-kaysí, which he had in his possession, the pretended tābī’ communicated traditions to Abú Mohammed Ase’d Al-johání.

The same observation may be applied to Ibn Bashkúwál, who counts in the number of the tābī’s a black man named Mansúr Ibn Khozámah, who lived in Cordova towards the year 330 (beginning Sept. 25, A. D. 941). That writer pretends to have read in a collection of allegations formed by the Sheikh Abú ’Abdillah Mohammed Ibn ’Abdillah Ibn ’A’yed the following statement of facts:

"Among the men remarkable for their longevity who are known to have resided in this country (Andalus), I may count Mansúr Ibn Khozámah, who arrived among us in the year 330; so I find it asserted by Al-hakem Al-mustanser-billah, son of ’Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir, Sultán of Cordova, who in one of his works, which, written in his own hand, is preserved in the library (of this city), has the following words,—‘I received instruction from a black man from Sudán, who came to Cordova in the year 329 (beginning 5th Oct. A. D. 740), and who styled himself Mansúr, son of Khozámah, the freedman of Mohammed, the Lord’s messenger. He himself told me that he had lived in the time of the Khalíf ’Othmán Ibn ’Affán, had been with ’Ayeshah on the ‘day of the camel;’ had also been present at the battle of Sefayn; and, lastly, that his father Khozámah had been a liberated slave of the Prophet. Mansúr left Andalus the ensuing year, 330, and returned to Africa.’"

But all this statement has no foundation whatever, as the illustrious traditionist Ibn Hajar clearly proves in one of his works: (may God forgive him for writing upon this subject what I am going to transcribe!). "All this account of Ibn Khozámah is an absurdity, and a tissue of lies from beginning to end. Of the same stamp seems to be a tradition which I find recorded in the writings of Andalusian authors, purporting that Abú-l-hasan Ibn ’Othmán Ibn Khattáb, better known by the surname of Abú-d-donyá, had lived to an extraordinary age, so as to have been a friend of ’Alí Ibn Abí Tálib, as likewise of the most illustrious among the companions of the Prophet, of all of whom he used to converse with the people, describing their figure, manners, and countenance; that he also saw ’Ayeshah, the widow of the Prophet; and, lastly, that he arrived in Cordova under the Khalífate of An-násir, and conversed with Al-hakem Al-mustanser-billah, then the appointed heir to the throne, which he occupied after the death of his father; that in one of these conversations he met with Abú Bekr"
Ibnu-l-kúttiyah, who questioned him about the battles of 'Alí, and wrote down the information given by him on the subject.

This ridiculous and wholly unauthorized tradition may be read in the writings of Ibnu Bashkúwál and other Andalusian writers; some of whom, as Temím Ibn Mohammed At-temímí, have gone so far as to declare that when they met him he was three hundred and fifty years of age, and that they were informed that his death took place in his native city in the year 320 (beginning Jan. 12, A.D. 932).

But other writers deserving of greater credit, and endowed with more sound criticism, have not hesitated to assert that the pretended tábí was nothing else than a liar and an impostor. The same judgment, we apprehend, is to be passed upon the black man who forms the subject of the preceding article: he was decidedly an impostor; and if we have done so much as to put his name among those of the honourable and illustrious followers of the companions of the Prophet, it has been merely in order to shed greater light upon this interesting subject, and to show our readers how cautious they must be in the perusal of those works by Eastern or Western writers which treat exclusively of this matter, as they are well known to abound with involuntary errors and inaccuracies like the above-mentioned. May the Almighty God keep us from listening to untruths respecting his revelations or the history of our Prophet Mohammed and his honourable companions!
CHAPTER II.


Besides the illustrious individuals named in the preceding chapter, who, the Tārik. Andalusian writers assert, entered their country at the time of Mūsa’s invasion, but with regard to most of whom strong doubts and objections have been raised by the writers of this country (the East), there were many others who, though not belonging to either of the two above distinguished classes, the as‘ḥābs (companions) and the tābi‘īs (followers), were, nevertheless, illustrious by their birth, renowned for their exploits against the infidels, or remarkable for their piety and learning, and who became the fathers of a numerous progeny, the heirs of their virtues and talents. Enough has been said elsewhere respecting Mūsa Ibn Nosceyr and his freedman Tārik, who were the two principal instruments by which God Almighty was pleased to achieve the conquest of so mighty a kingdom as that of Andalus, to make it unnecessary that we should here return to the subject. But before we proceed to mention some of the chiefs who assisted in the conquest, we must here transcribe some verses which the author of the Mas‘hab, and Ibn Alyasa’ in his Mu‘arrīb,1 quote as having been spoken extempore by Tārik when addressing his followers, soon after his landing on the coast of Andalus. Ibnu Sa‘īd, who transcribes them also in his great historical compilation, observes that he introduces them not on account of their elegance or the wit they contain, but on account of their appropriateness, and as coming from so eminent a man, who was the chief instrument of the conquest of Andalus. They are as follows:

“ We rode a caulked ship (prepared) for our crossing; yet Allah had well

“ nigh bought

“ Our lives, property, and families at the price of a Paradise.
"It is true there was nothing we so ardently desired;
"As it was of no importance to us how we lost our lives, when we were to
"obtain (by it) so desirable a prize." 2

As to the sons of Ghittishah (Wittiza), whose treason, as before mentioned, was one
of the principal causes of the conquest, we are told that, wishing to have the treaty
entered into with Tárik confirmed, they appeared before this general and addressed
him thus: "Art thou, O Tárik! an independent prince, or dost thou acknowledge
"a lord?" To which Tárik answered, "I am subject to an Amír, who himself
"obeys the orders of a supreme commander." Hearing which, the Barbarians
asked Tárik's permission to repair to Africa, and have an interview with Músa
Ibn Nosseyr, that he might confirm the treaty made with them; to which effect
they begged from him a letter explaining the whole of the affair, as well as
the conditions agreed upon at the time of the invasion. Tárik did as he was
desired, and the princes accordingly crossed over to Africa. They found Músa
in Western Barbary, preparing for his expedition into Andalus. Having been
made acquainted with the nature of their request, Músa examined and weighed
each of the propositions made to them by Tárik, as well as the services they
had rendered to the cause of the Moslems; but, unwilling to take upon himself to
decide in their case, he sent them to the Khalíf Al-walid Ibn 'Abdi-I-malek,
then the Commander of the Faithful, holding his court at Damascus in Syria, with
a letter informing him of the purport of Tárik's message, and of the illustrious birth
and good services of the petitioners. Al-walid received the Gothic princes with
great kindness, and granted them many favours. He began by ratifying the treaty
entered into with Tárik, and gave each of them a deed under his own signature,
whereby he secured to them, their sons and posterity, the possession of all the
lands specified in their agreement with Tárik. The same document provided
against any spoliation on the part of the Arabian settlers. This being obtained,
the Barbarian princes returned to Andalus, where, immediately after their arrival,
they were put in possession of all the estates of their father, which they divided
equally among themselves. Almand, who was the eldest, had for his share one
thousand farms in the west of Andalus, and, in order to superintend them, took
up his abode in Seville. Al-artebash, who was the second, had an equal number
of estates in the centre of Andalus, for which reason he took up his residence at
Cordova; while the third and youngest of all 3 had his thousand farms in the
eastern parts of Andalus, and the districts of the Thagher, 4 for which reason he
established himself at Toledo. In this manner the three brothers enjoyed the
undisturbed possession of their respective estates in the very heart of the Moham-
medan dominions, until the eldest, Almand, died, leaving behind him one daughter
named Sárah, but who is better known under the appellation of Al-kútīyyah (the Gothic princess), and two sons in tender age. But, to return to the subject we have in hand:

**Mugheyth Ar-rúmi**, the conqueror of Cordova.—Al-hijári and Ibnu Hayyán call him Mugheyth⁵ Ar-rúmi (the Greek); but the former writer adds, that he was not, properly speaking, a Greek, and that his genealogy was as follows: Mugheyth, son of Al-hárith, son of Al-howayrith, son of Jeblah Al-ghosání, son of Al-ayham. When still a boy, he was taken prisoner in an inroad which the Moslems made into the country of Rúm (Greece), and, at the partition of the spoil, fell to the lot of 'Abdu-1-malek Ibn Merwán, who had him educated together with his own son Al-walíd, and, when arrived at the age of manhood, liberated him and gave him a command in the armies of Africa. Thence he crossed over to Andalus at the orders of Tárik, who sent him forward against Cordova, which city he took in the manner related in the fourth book of this work. After this, Mugheyth quarrelled with Tárik, and also with Músa, Tárik’s master. He then accompanied them in their journey to Damascus, and returned victorious to Cordova, where he settled and became the head and founder of the noble family well known in Andalus as the sons of Mugheyth, one of whom was 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mugheyth, who afterwards filled the office of Hájib to 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu’áwiyyah, first Sultán of Andalus.

The author of the *Mas’hab* places the taking of Cordova in the month of Shawwál of the year 92 (Aug. A. D. 711). He says also that the church, whither the governor and the garrison betook themselves after the taking of the city, held out for three months, and was not taken till Moharram of the year 93 (Oct. or Nov. A. D. 711). No account is there given of the year of Mugheyth’s birth, or that of his death. Al-hijári says that he was brought up and educated with the sons of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán at Damascus; that he was taught the Arabic language, in which he soon became so accomplished a scholar, says Al-hijári, that “he composed both in ‘prose and in verse as much as would fill this work, were I to attempt to transcribe ‘it.” He was likewise trained to horsemanship and all manner of military exercises, and acquired so great a reputation by his courage and skill, that he was appointed to command the army destined against Cordova, and became ever after celebrated by his prudence and deep acquaintance with all the stratagems of war. We have related elsewhere how Mugheyth gained possession of that city, and made the prince who commanded in it his prisoner, this being the only Andalusian prince who fell at the time into the hands of the Moslems; some having made their peace by becoming the subjects of the Arabs, whilst others insured their safety by fleeing to Galicia.⁶
The historian Al-hijáří tells a very curious anecdote of a daughter of this captive prince. He says that when the Christian, with all his family, was brought to the presence of Mugheyth, this general saw amidst the women of his harem one who shone among them like the full moon among the stars. She was the daughter of the Christian; and Mugheyth at first sight became so deeply enamoured of her charms, that he instantly made advances to his fair captive. These she most obstinately refused; upon which Mugheyth gave her in charge to one of his followers, instructing him to threaten her with immediate punishment unless she complied with his wishes within a given time. At last the damsel feigned to give way, and, having prepared a poisoned robe, granted Mugheyth the desired appointment. God, however, permitted that Mugheyth should in time be informed of her determination by one of her servants, and he therefore declined the meeting. They say that when Mugheyth was thus warned of the impending danger, he praised God for his providential escape, and exclaimed, "By Allah! had this maiden's soul been within the body of her father, Cordova would not have been taken "by night."

It is likewise related, that when the Khalif Suleymán, son of 'Abdu-l-malek, had summoned to his presence Músa Ibn Nosseyr and Tárik Ibn Zeyád, and heard the answer of the latter to the charges brought against him by his master, he punished the former by depriving him of all his riches, and resolved upon restoring Tárik to the command of the Andalusian army. Before, however, carrying into effect this determination, Suleymán consulted Mugheyth, and asked him what he thought of Tárik's administration whilst in Andalus. "His administration was such," answered Mugheyth, "that had he ordered the Moslems to turn themselves to any other point than the kiblah in their prayers, I really think that they would have obeyed his commands without considering that they were infringing the laws of our holy Prophet, and committing an impious act." Such was the impression which these crafty words produced upon the mind of Suleymán, that he instantly changed his purpose, and refused to give Tárik the promised government. They say that as Tárik met Mugheyth some days after this occurrence, he said to him, "I wish, "O Mugheyth! thou hadst described me to the Khalif as a man whose authority was resisted, instead of saying that the people of Andalus were so obedient to me."—"I wish," replied Mugheyth, "thou hadst left me my captive; I should then have left Andalus to thee;" alluding to Tárik's attempt to seize on Mugheyth's royal captive, the governor of Cordova, as elsewhere related.

According to some writers Mugheyth settled at Damascus, and remained there till he died. According to other authorities he returned to Andalus, and fixed his residence in Cordova, taking for his dwelling a magnificent building, which was
ever after known as Baldšt Mugheyth⁹ (the palace of Mugheyth). The authors who follow the former opinion allude, no doubt, to his first journey to Damascus, whither he is known to have repaired soon after his taking Cordova. But it is an ascertained fact that he afterwards returned to Andalus, with a message from Al-walid to Mūsa, whom he had orders to bring back, and whom he accompanied to Damascus. Nor can there be any doubt that he visited Andalus a third time,¹⁰ since he or a son of his became, as we have observed elsewhere, the stock of that noble and distinguished family the Bení Mugheyth, who multiplied themselves in Cordova, and who became the centre of wealth, dignities, and power in that city, their importance and consideration reaching the highest pitch. One of his descendants, named 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mugheyth, was appointed Hájib by 'Abdu-r-rahmán, first Sultan of Cordova. But to return.

We have already stated that Al-hijári, in his Mas'hab, says that Mugheyth was a witty poet, and that a whole volume might be filled with his verses; in proof of which he quotes one which he is reported to have uttered extempore, addressing himself to Mūsa and Tārik, when they took away his captive from him:

"I served you both with zeal, and yet you behaved ungratefully to me;
"The East and the West shall henceforth see me your bitterest enemy."

As a further proof of Mugheyth's eloquence and readiness of speech, Al-hijári cites the following answer which he once made to Mūsa. This general, after reprimanding him before a crowd of people, said to him, "Hold thy tongue, O Mugheyth!"—"I shall," replied he, "for my tongue is full of joints, and I can easily fold it "until I come to the presence of our master, Al-walid, son of 'Abdu-l-malek."

Ayūb Ibn Habīb.—Another of the illustrious individuals who entered Andalus with Mūsa Ibn Nosseyr was (Abū) Ayūb Ibn Habīb Al-lakhmī. He was a nephew of that conqueror, being born of one of his sisters. He was present at all the principal engagements, and distinguished himself very much by his courage and skill. He was governor of Andalus for some time after the murder of 'Abdu-l'-azíz, son of Mūsa, whom he succeeded in his office. But, as it is our intention to treat of him when we come to speak of the governors of Andalus, we shall proceed with our narrative.

'Abdu-l-jabbár Ibn Abī Salmah Al-korashí Az-zahrí.—This individual entered Andalus with Mūsa Ibn Nosseyr, who gave him the command of the left wing of his army. He settled first at Beja, and afterwards at Badajoz. He was the father of a numerous progeny, known as the Bení Zahrah, who inhabited Seville, whither they removed soon after the conquest. To this family belonged the Kādī Abū-l-hasan Az-zahrí, Abū Bekr Ibn Kheyr, and others.

'Abdollah Ibn Sa'id.—We cannot pass over in silence 'Abdullah, the ancestor of"
the Bení Sa’íd, who, like the above-mentioned individuals, arrived in Andalus with Músa Ibn Nosseyr. His entire name was Abú Mohammed 'Abdullah Al-‘ansi; he was the son of Sa’íd, son of 'Ammár, son of Yásir,\(^{12}\) (may God be favourable to him!) one of the companions of the Prophet. Ibu Hayyán, in his Muktabis, says that 'Abdullah was the general of the Yemení Arabs of the Damascus division, under Yúsuf Al-fehri, and that when 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu’áwiyyah landed in Andalus, this 'Abdullah was sent by him to oppose his progress. This commission 'Abdullah gladly accepted; for there existed a mortal feud between his own family and that of Umeyyah, owing to his father 'Ammár, who had been a partisan of 'Ali, having been killed at the battle of Sefáyn, whilst fighting under the banners of 'Ali Ibn Abí Tálib, against the troops of Mu’áwiyyah. This 'Abdullah Ibn Sa’íd was the ancestor of the Bení Sa’íd, Lords of Kal’ah Yahssob (Alcalá la Real), many princes, governors, generals, poets, and writers, such as the author of the Mugh’ríb, and many others, of whom we shall treat at length in the course of this narrative.

**Habib Ibn Abi ‘Obeydah Ibn ‘Okbah Ibn Náfi’ Al-fehri.**—This individual entered Andalus in the suite of Músa Ibn Nosseyr, whom he assisted in his conquests. He was the grandson of ‘Okbah Ibn Náfi’, and one of the officers to whom the execution of ‘Abdu-l-‘azíz Ibn Músá was intrusted by the Khalif Suleyman. His son, ‘Abdu-r-rahmán, whom he brought with him to Andalus, was the father of Yúsuf Al-fehri, who governed that country for a considerable length of time, until ‘Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákhel, the first of the Bení Umeyyah, deprived him of power and life.

**Haywah Ibn Mulúbis Al-hadhrami.**—According to Ibn Bashkúwál this individual entered Andalus in the suite of Músá. Ibn Hayyán, however, postpones his arrival\(^ {14}\) to the year 123 (beginning Nov. 25, A.D. 740), when a considerable number of Syrians, under the command of Balj Ibn Beshr, crossed over from Africa and settled in Andalus, as we shall relate hereafter. He appears to have been the chief of the Arabian tribes of the division of Hems (Emessa), who took up their abode at Seville. He rose in arms against 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu’áwiyyah, but was defeated.

'Othmán Ibn Abi 'Abdah Al-korashi is another of the illustrious Moslems who accompanied Músá Ibn Nosseyr to the conquest of Andalus. He was present at the taking of Orihuela from Theodomir the Goth, who, as above related, defended his states valiantly, and obtained favourable terms by means of an ingenious stratagem which he devised.\(^ {15}\) 'Othmán, afterwards governor of Andalus, was killed in the year 112 (beginning March 25, A.D. 730).

**Abú-s-sabáḥ Ibn Yahya Al-yahsób.**—He came to Andalus either in Músá’s suite, or with Balj Ibn Beshr. Some writers follow the former opinion; the
greater number, however, hold the latter. Be this as it may, it is certain that Abú-s-sabáh was the chief of the Yemení Arabs in Andalus when 'Abdu-rl-rahmán Ibn Mu’áwiyah invaded that country. He revolted against that Sultán, who took him prisoner and had him executed in the year 139 (beginning Jan. 4, A. D. 756).

Abú Zor’ah Ibn Rúh Ash-shámi 16 is counted likewise by Ibnu-l-abbár in the number of the illustrious Arabs who invaded Andalus with Músa Ibn Nosseyr. He was an eminent theologian, and preserved many traditional sayings respecting the life of the Prophet Mohammed, which he held from his as’háb (companions), and which were afterwards collected into a body by his son Moslemáh Ibn Zor’ah.

Zeydd Ibn An-nábighah At-temíi.—He was one of the principal Arabian officers who witnessed the conquest of Andalus, having crossed the straits in the suite of Músa Ibn Nosseyr. He was at the head of the conspiracy by which ’Abdu-l-’azíz, son of Músa, lost his life at Seville, and was likewise one of those who repaired to Damascus with the head of the unfortunate governor. After this he appears never to have revisited Spain.
CHAPTER III.


Know, O reader! that when the island of Andalus had been finally subdued by the Moslems, and the whole of its provinces reduced under the laws of Islám,—when the news of the mighty conquest had spread over the countries inhabited by the Moslems,—great numbers of the population of Syria and other distant regions felt a strong desire to visit Andalus, and take up their abode in it. Accordingly, many individuals of the best and most illustrious among the Arabian tribes left the tents of their fathers and settled in Andalus, thereby becoming the stock of the many noble families whose luminous traces are visible throughout the annals of that country.

As several Andalusian writers have left works wherein the names and genealogy of all those Arabian tribes, branches of which settled in Andalus, are given in detail, we might be spared the trouble of repeating here any portion of their writings; but this being an interesting topic, and one which, if well treated, may prove of some assistance to the readers of this our work, we have deemed it opportune to record the names of the principal Arabian tribes which sent settlers to Andalus, either at the time of the conquest, or at a subsequent period; for which end we have borrowed our information from the most approved sources.

The great stock of 'Adnán, from which issued the Bení Khandáf, and from these the Bení Koraysh, and from these latter the Bení Háshim, sent numerous families to Andalus, where they might be found under various denominations. Ibn Ghálīb,¹ in his Forju-l-anfus, tells us that families descended from the noble stock of Háshim, of the tribe of Koraysh, were very numerous in Andalus. He adds, that they all descended from Idrís, son of 'Abdullah, son of Hasan, son of
Huseyn, son of 'Ali Ibn Abi Talib, from whom sprung also the Bení Hamúd, who ruled for a while over Andalus after the overthrow of the Bení Umayyah dynasty.

As to the last-mentioned family (Bení Umeyyah), we need scarcely say that it Bení Umayyah gave several Khalifs to Andalus, whither they went to settle in great numbers. According to Ibnu Sa'íd, they were still known in his days under the patronymic of Koraší; for, although they at first called themselves Umawi, from their progenitor Umeyyah, they afterwards changed their patronymic into that of Koraší, from Koraysh, the lateral branch of their parent stock. And this they did because they saw that the people had taken a dislike to them, and would never forget the conduct of their ancestors towards Huseyn, the son of 'Ali Ibn Abi Talib.  

There was another family in Andalus who pretended to draw their origin from Umeyyah, son of 'Abdu-sh-shems: we mean the Bení Zohrah, who settled at Seville, where they rose to power and distinction.

As to the Bení Makhzúm, they might be found in large numbers all over Andalus. Makhzúm. To this tribe belonged the poet Al-makhzúmí, the blind, who obtained so great a celebrity by his writings. He was a native of Hisn Al-mudowwar (Almodovar). Members of the same tribe were the illustrious Wizír and elegant writer in prose as well as in verse, Abú Bekr Ibn Zeydún (Al-makhzúmí), and his son, Abú-l-walíd Ibn Zeydún (Al-makhzúmí), who gained still greater renown by his writings, and filled the post of Wizír to Al-mu'tadhedh Ibn 'Abbád, Sultán of Seville.

Ibn Ghálib informs us that there were individuals in Andalus who took the patronymic Jamáhl, from Jamah; and many also who took that of Dártl, from 'Abdu-d-dáár. He adds, that there were likewise several families with the patronymic Fehrí, Fehr. from Mohárib, son of Fehr; all of whom belonged to that branch of the tribe of Koraysh which genealogists have designated under the appellative Bení Koraysh Adh-dhawdhir.  

To this tribe (Fehr) belonged 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan, governor of Andalus, from whom descended the Bení Al-kásím, princes renowned in history, and the Bení Al-jadd, a family of eminent doctors and theologians. From the same stock (Mohárib, son of Fehr,) issued Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-fehrí, governor of Andalus, in whose time 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákkel took possession of that country, and founded therein a powerful and extensive empire for the race of Umayyah. This Yúsuf was of the posterity of 'Okbah Ibn Náfi' Al-fehrí, the celebrated conqueror of Africa. Ibn Hazm adds, that individuals of the tribe of Fehr might be found in great numbers in various districts of Andalus, in possession of wealth and importance.

As to families taking their patronymics from the uncles (collateral branches) of Kenánah. Kenánah, the same writer (Ibn Ghálib) informs us that they were very numerous in
Andalus, chiefly about Toledo and the districts adjoining that city. In their number were the Bení Al-waksh, of the tribe of Kenánah, a family which produced in all ages men of the greatest merit and eminence, as the Kádi Abú-l-walíd (Al-wakshí), the Wizir Abú Ja’far (Al-wakshí), and the learned theologian Huseyn Ibn Jobeyr (Al-wakshí), the author of the travels known by his name, and of whom mention has been made under the head of his native place.7

The sons of Hudheyl, son of Mid’rakah,9 son of Elyás, son of An-nadhr, fixed their domicile in the vicinity of Orihuela, in the country of Tudmir (Theodomir), and took the patronymic Hudhel. Ibn Ghálib informs us that the sons of Teym, son of Morrah, son of Odd, son of Tábikhah, son of Elyás, son of Modhar, were very numerous in Andalus, and that Abú-t-táhir, the author of the Makamát Al-lazúmiyyah,9 was one of them.

As to the sons of Dhobbah, son of Odd, son of Tábikhah, who were a branch of the Bení Khandáf, and were issued from the great stock of the Bení ‘Adnán, they were not very numerous in Andalus. Not so the sons of Kays ’Aylán, son of Elyás, son of Modhar, of the great stock of the Bení ’Adnán; for, according to Ibn Ghálib, they might be found in considerable numbers all over Andalus, being known under patronymic surnames taken from the collateral branches of their parent stock. Some, for instance, took the patronymic Solami, from Solaym, son of Mansúr, son of ’Ikrimah, son of Hafssah, son of Kays ’Aylán. One of them was the celebrated theologian ’Abdu-l-malek Ibn Habīb (As-solami), the companion and disciple of Málík Ibn Ans. (May God be favourable to him!) Another was the Kádi Abú Hafss Ibn ‘Omar (As-solami), who held the office of Kádi-l-kodá at Cordova. Others might be found under the patronymic Hawázen, which they took from Hāwázen, son of Mansúr, son of ’Ikrimah, son of Hafssah, son of Kays. These, Ibn Ghálib informs us, were chiefly to be met with in the neighbourhood of Seville and the adjoining districts. Others, again, took their patronymic surname from Bekr, son of Hāwázen, &c. They were mostly domiciled in a town three miles from the city of Valencia, in the eastern part of Andalus, although they might also be found in considerable numbers about Seville and other principal cities.

Originally from the same stock (Kays ’Aylán) were the Bení Hazm, who must not be confounded with another family of the same name, to which the celebrated traditionist Abú Mohammed Ibn Hazm Adh-dháheri belonged, for these were originally from Persia.

Others took the patronymic Sa’dí from Sa’d, son of Bekr, son of Hāwázen. In this number were the Bení Júda,10 who fixed themselves chiefly about Granada, where, Ibn Ghálib says, they obtained the command (of their tribe). Others took
that of Keldbî, from Keláb, son of Rabi‘ah, son of ‘A’mir, son of Sa’ssa’h, son of Mu‘áwiyyah, son of Bekr, son of Hawázen, &c.; others that of Kusheyrî, from Kusheyr, son of Ka‘b, son of Rabi‘ah, son of ‘A’mir, son of Sa’ssa’h, &c. Individuals of this family, to which belonged Balj Ibn Beshr (Al-kusheyri), governor of Andalus under the Khalifate, might be found in great numbers about Granada.

The Bení Rashîk are another family issued from the stock of Kays ‘Aylan, which settled in Andalus, where they were known under various patronymics; some taking that of Fezârî, from Fezarah, son of Dhobiyan, son of Yaghîdh, son of Reyth, son of Ghattfân, son of Sa’d, son of Kays ‘Aylân. Others took the patronymic Ashja’î from Ashja’, son of Reyth, son of Ghattfân, &c. Mohammed Ibn ‘Abdillah (Al-ashja’î), governor of Andalus, was one of their number.

Several families might also be found, which took the patronymic Thakefi, from Thakîf. Thakîf; but this is a point much contested among writers on genealogy; some making them a branch of the tribe of Kays, and therefore the sons of Thakîf, son of Kays, son of Munabbih, son of Bekr, son of Hawázen; whilst others assert that all those individuals living in Andalus, who used the patronymic Ath-thakefi, took it from Al-horr Ibn ‘Abdi-r-rahmân Ath-thakefi, governor of Andalus, who belonged to a tribe from the remnants of Thamûd. The above-mentioned are the families issued from the tribe of Kays ‘Aylân, and other branches of the great tribe of Modhar, which settled in Andalus.

As to the sons of Rabi‘ah, son of Nezár, some called themselves Aseďt, after Rabi‘ah. Ased, son of Rabi‘ah, son of Nezár; others Mohâribî, from Mohârib, son of ’Amru, son of Wâdígha, son of Bukeyr, son of Kossay, son of Du‘mma, son of Jedîlah, son of Aseď, son of Rabi‘ah. Ibn Ghâlib tells us that the former settled in the neighbourhood of Guadix, and peopled a district to the north of that city to which they gave their name; the latter settled at Granada, where they became the stock of the Benî ’Attîyah, one of the principal families of that city. Among the descendants of Aseď, however, those are considered most noble who draw their origin from Jozaymah, son of Mid’rakah, son of Elyás, son of Modhar.

Some again took the patronymic An-namarî, from An-namar, son of Kássett, son of Hinb, son of Akssâ, son of Du‘mma, son of Jedîlah, son of Aseď. Of this number were the Benî ‘Abdi-l-barr, one of whom was the celebrated traditionist Abû ‘Omar Ibn ‘Abdi-l-barr (An-namarî). Others, like the Benî Hamdîn, a distinguished family of Cordova, took that of Taghîlobî, from Taghîlob, son of Wâyil, son of Kássett, son of Hinb.

There were also many families in Andalus who assumed the patronymic Bekrî, from Bekr, son of Wâyil. Of these number was the family of the Bekriûn
HISTORY OF THE MOHAMMEDAN  
[BOOK V.]

(Bekrīṭes), Lords of Onóba and the island of Saltis, one of whom was the famous historian and geographer, Abū 'Obeyd (Al-bekri). The preceding are, to our knowledge, the branches of the tribe of Rabi’ah which settled in Andalus.

Respecting the tribe of Ayád, 14 son of Nezár, whom others make the son of Ma’dd,—although the former opinion is the most correct,—many were the families residing in Andalus who drew their origin from it and took the patronymic ‘Ayádi. In their number were the Bení Zohr, distinguished citizens of Seville, 15 and many other families which we do not mention for fear of protracting the present narrative to too great a length.

The above are the tribes of the great family or stock of 'Adnán, which had branches or families in various parts of Andalus, all being the descendants in a straight line, and without admixture of any other lineage, from Isma’il, (on whom be peace!).

As to the other great stock, the sons of Kahttán, genealogists are divided as to their origin. Some make them also the sons of Isma’il; others the sons of Húd. Al-bokhári inclines to the former opinion; other writers hold the latter. Be this as it may, it is evident that the sons of Kahttán, also called Yemeniún (Arabs of Yemen), settled in great numbers in Andalus, whither they carried the same hereditary hatred, and the same animosity, towards the sons of Modhar, and the other tribes of the line of 'Adnán, which characterized them so well in the East. Indeed, though inhabiting a country but partially subdued, and where the unrelenting enemy of God was continually attacking them, the tribes descended from the two rival stocks prosecuted as fiercely as ever their own private and inveterate feuds, by which the state was shaken to its foundations, and placed more than once upon the very brink of perdition, 16 as we shall presently see in the course of this narrative.

The Bení Kahttán, however, were more numerous in Andalus than their adversaries, and always obtained a greater share of power and influence in the country. They would undoubtedly in the end have gained possession of Andalus, had not the race of Umeyyah held so long the supreme power in the East, and had not the Korayshites at a subsequent period agreed to give the command over the two parties to a member of that house ('Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákhel). Even after this monarch had subjected the whole of Andalus to his sway, the western provinces of the empire were still cut up and divided into districts, inhabited by tribes, clans, and families, 17 who, in case of need, clung to each other for protection, and who, in times of rebellion or civil discords, were sure to stand one by another. This state of things lasted until the days of Al-mansúr Ibn Abí 'A’mir, who, as is well known, usurped the supreme power. Being a shrewed politician, his first care after his
accession was to remedy this evil by appointing to the command of the troops generals from various countries and tribes. So, for instance, the general of an army would have under his orders a portion of each tribe, and a captain would seldom command soldiers of his own tribe: by these means the wound was cauterized, civil dissensions were somewhat allayed, and peace, if not friendship, was established between the Arabian tribes inhabiting the western districts, although they not unfrequently broke out in other parts of Andalus where the same precautions had not been taken.

According to Ibn Hazm the whole of the tribes of Yemen are descended from Jodhám, son of Kahlán, or of Himyar, son of Yashjab, son of Ya'rob, son of Kahttán, son of 'A'bir, son of Shálekh, son of Arfakhshad, son of Sám, son of Núh. According to other authorities they are the sons of Kahttán, son of Al-hemeysa', son of Yokitán, son of Thábit, son of Isma'il. Others again make them the sons of Kahttán, son of Húd, son of 'Abdullah, (son of Húd, son of 'Abdullah,) son of Rabáh, son of Háru, son of 'A'd, son of 'Amúss, son of Arem, son of Sám; but, as the various disputes and controversies to which the genealogy of these tribes has given rise among writers on that science are well known, we need not mention them here.

Some of the tribes issued from this great stock (Kahttán), and domiciled in Andalus, drew their origin from Kahlán, son of Sebá, son of Yashjab, son of Ya'rob, son of Kahttán, and took the patronymic Kahlání after his name. Others took it from Azd, son of Al-ghauth, son of Thábit, son of Málík, son of Zeyd, son of Kahlán. The members of this tribe were very numerous in Andalus, as Mohammed Ibn Hání Al-albírí (Al-azdí), the famous poet, who belonged to the Bení Muhlíb, and Ahmed Ibn Ahmed (Al-azdí), an eminent historian. Others, like the Bení Mázín, son of Azd, took the patronymic Ghosání, from Ghosán, the name of a watering-place close to their habitation. To the latter-mentioned family belonged the Bení Al-kalí'ái, who, according to Ibn Ghálíb, were distinguished citizens of Granada, the greater part of whom, however, fixed their quarters at Sálehah, a town on the road between Malaga and that city.

Others, again, took the patronymic Ansári, which they derived from the collateral branches of those two tribes which assisted the Prophet when he took refuge in Medíná. These were to be found in great numbers all over Andalus, a fact which suggested to Ibnu Sa'íd the following observation: "It is really wonderful that no traces of this lineage should be found now-a-days in Medíná, when it is noteworthy that they abound in most great cities in Andalus. I was told once by a man who, while at Medíná, made every inquiry about individuals belonging to those families, that he was only referred to one old man of the
"lineage of Khazrej, and to one old woman of Aus." Ibn Ghálib likewise bears testimony to the great number of individuals of these two tribes who settled in Andalus, where they became the progenitors of as many families scattered over the eastern and western districts of that extensive country; and, above all, at Toledo and in the neighbourhood.

The patronymic Khazrejí, therefore, was taken by various of these families. In their number were the sons of Sa‘ad, son of ‘Obádah, one of whom was Abú Bekr ‘Obádah Ibn ‘Abdillah Ibn Mái-s-samá (Al-khazrejí). The Bení Al-ahmar, Sultán of Granada, in whose days the whole of Andalus became the prey of the enemy of God, (as we shall hereafter relate,) belonged also to that family, and took the patronymic Khazrejí. To one of the sovereigns of this dynasty Lisánu-d-dín Ibnu-l-khattib was Wizír.

Others were the descendants of Aus, brother of Khazrej, and formed their patronymic Aust after his name; others took it from Gháfek, son of Ma‘dd, son of ‘Adnán, son of Hazzán, son of Al-azd. However, instead of Ma‘dd, some say his brother, 'Akk, son of 'Adnán, although the genealogists following the latter opinion are decidedly in the wrong. Ibn Ghálib informs us that most of the districts about Segura were denominated after the tribe of Gháfek, which settled in that country, and that to this family belonged 'Abdu-r-rahmán Al-gháfekí, the governor of Andalus, as well as the famous poet Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Abí-l-khissál Ash-shekúrí (Al-gháfekí).

Among the descendants of Kahlán, some took the patronymic Hamdání, from Hamdán, who was the son of Málík, son of Zeyd, son of Aushalah, son of Al-khiyár, son of Málík, son of Zeyd, son of Kahlán. Their domicile was at a town still known by their name, seven miles from Granada (Hamdán). The Bení Dhaha, governors of Granada, belonged to this family.

Another branch of the descendants of Kahlán took their patronymics from Madhaj, the name of a hill of a reddish colour in Yemen, or, according to others, that of the mother of Málík, son of Watta, son of Odad, son of Zeyd, son of Kahlán. Of this number were the Bení Serraj, distinguished citizens of Cordova; and the Bení Tayy, who had their domicile to the south of Murcia, and took the patronymic Táyi.

Others, again, took the patronymic of Morád, from Morád, son of Málík, son of Odad; to them belonged the castle of Morád (Morente ?), which stood on the road between Cordova and Seville, and which, according to Ibn Ghálib, took its name from them. Many were the individuals of this family who took the above-mentioned patronymic.

Others were the descendants of 'Ans, son of Málík, son of Odad, and denominated
themselves 'Anṣ, after him. We may count among them the Bení Sa'īd, authors of the historical work entitled Al-mugh'rib, and lords of a certain castle in the province of Granada, known by their name Kala'h Benī Sa'īd (the castle of the Bení Sa'īd). Some of the Mad'ḥajīs, however, might be found, who took the patronymic Zeydī, from Zeyd, who, according to Ibn Ghālib, was better known under the name of Ibn Sa'd, son of Al-'ashirah, son of Mālik, son of Odād.

There is still another branch of the tribe of Kahlān, who took the patronymic Barrāh, after Barrah, son of Odād, son of Zeyd, son of Kahlān. Of this number Barrāh were the Benī Al-muntaser, learned theologians of Granada. It is thus stated by Ibn Ghālib, who adds, that a portion of them took the patronymic 'A'milāh, from 'A'milāh, a woman of the tribe of Kadhā'ah, who was the mother of Hārith, son of 'Oda, son of Al-hārith, son of Morrah, son of Odād; such were the Benī As-sammāk, Kādis of Granada. This point, however, is far from being settled, since there are not wanting genealogists who make 'A'milāh a man, and the son of Sebā, son of 'A'milāh. Yashjah, son of Ya'rob, son of Kahttān; while others, who make 'A'milāh also a man, say that he was the son of Kadhā'ah.

Many were also the families sprung from the above stock who assumed the patronymic Khaulānt, from Khaulān, son of 'Amru, son of Al-hārith, son of Morrah. The castle of Khaulān, between Seville and Algeciras, took its name from them: to this number belonged the Benī 'Abdi-s-salām, principal citizens of Granada. Others took the patronymic Ma'dferī, from Ma'afer, son of Ya'afer, son of Mālik, son of Al-hārith, son of Morrah, like Al-mansūr Ibn Abī 'A'mir Al-ma'dferī, ruler of Andalus, and many more that we might mention. Others, again, took that of Lakhmī (Al-lakhmī), from Lakhm, son of 'Amru, son of 'Oda, son of Al-hārith, son of Lakhm of Morrah, like Mūsa Ibn Nosseyr, the conqueror of Andalus, and Rabāh Al-lakhmī, and the Benī 'Abbād, Sultāns of Seville, and many more, who were all the descendants in a straight line from An-no'mān, son of Al-mundhir, King of Hīrah. The Benī Al-bājī, who shone at Seville, and the Benī Wāfīd, also powerful citizens of that place, may likewise be counted among the families which used in Andalus the patronymic Lakhmī.

Others took it from Jodhām; as, for instance, Thu'abah Ibn Salāmah (Al-jodhām), governor of Andalus; the Benī Hūd, who were kings of Eastern Andalus, and the ancestors of Al-mutawakkel Ibn Hūd, who became the absolute rulers of that country after the Al-muwāḥhīdūn (Almohades); and lastly the Benī Mar-danīsh, who were also lords of certain districts in the east of Andalus. Ibn Ghālib asserts, that a portion of the Benī Jodhām settled about Kala'h Rabāh (Calatrava), and that the name of Jodhām was 'A'mir, and the name of Lakhm, Mālik, and that both were the sons of 'Oda.
Others among the descendants of Kahlán took the patronymic Kindh, from Kindah, who is better known by the name of Thaur, son of 'Asfir, son of 'Oda, son of Morrah, son of Odad; to this number belonged Yúsuf Ibn Hárán Ar-ramádí (Al-kind) the poet: others, again, took that of Tojíb, from Tojeyb, the wife of Ashras, son of As-sekún, son of Ashras, son of Kindah; and lastly, there were not wanting in Andalus families issued from that principal stock (Kahlán) that derived their patronymic Khatha'mí from Khatha'm, son of Anmár, son of Arásh, son of 'Amru, son of Al-ghauth, son of Thábit, son of Málik, son of Zeyd, son of Kahlán. We might quote, among others, the family from which 'Othmán Ibn Abí Nesa'h (Al-khatha'mí), the governor of Andalus, was issued; however, on this point genealogists do not generally agree, for some make Anmár the son of Nadhr, son of Ma’dd, son of 'Adnán.

The preceding are all the branches of the principal stock of Kahlán which settled at various times in Andalus. We shall now proceed to enumerate those of Himyar.

Himyar was the son of Sebá, son of Yashjab, son of Ya’rob, son of Kahttán. Among his descendants some took the patronymic of Ro’ayn, from Dhú-ro’ayn, who, according to Ibn Ghálib, was the son of 'Amru, son of Himyar; but whom others make the son of Sahl, son of 'Amru, son of Kays, son of Mu’áwiyah, son of Josham, son of 'Abdu-sh-shems, son of Wáyil, son of Al-ghauth, son of Kattan, son of 'Oreyb, son of Zohayr, son of Aynen, son of Al-hemeysa’, son of Himyar. Al-házemí, in his genealogical treatise, pretends that Dhú-ro’ayn was the appellative of 'Ozeym, son of Zeyd, son of Sahl, &c. Be this as it may, there can be no doubt that there were many Arabs in Andalus who took the patronymic Ro’ayn; of this number was Abú 'Abdillah Ibnu-l-khayyátt (Ar-ro’ayn), the blind man, who was a celebrated poet.

Others took the patronymic Assbahl, from Dhú-assbah or Assbah, who, according to Ibn Hazm, was the son of Málik, son of Zeyd, one of the sons of Sebá the younger, son of Zeyd, son of Sahl, son of 'Amru, son of Kays, &c.; but who, in the opinion of Al-házemí, was the son of Kahlán. To this family is supposed to have belonged the famous Imám Málik Ibn Ans. However, there can be no doubt that the Assbahián are descended from Himyar. Numbers of them were established at Cordova, where they enjoyed great consideration, and held high situations.

Others took the patronymic Yahssobí, from Yahssob, who, in the opinion of Ibn Hazm, was the brother of Dhú-assbah. They might be found in great numbers about the castle of the Bení Sa’íd, which is well known in the history of Andalus as the castle of Yasshob. Others, that of Hawázení, from Hawázen, son of 'Auf, son of 'Abdu-sh-shems, son of Wáyil, son of Al-ghauth: their domicile, according
to Ibn Ghálib, was to the east of Seville, and in that city, where they held high appointments.

Others, Kodhá‘l, from Kodhá’ah, son of Málik, son of Himyar, whom some make Kodhá’ah. the son of Ma’dd, son of ’Adnán, although the genealogists who follow the latter opinion are very few. Some of the Bení Kodhá’ah took also the patronymic of Mahral, from Mahrah; such as the Wizír Abú Bekr Ibn ’Ammár (Al-mahral), who usurped the kingdom of Murcia. Mahrah was the son of Jeydán, son of ’Amru, son of Al-háf, son of Kodhá’ah.

Others took that of Huseyní, from Huseyn, son of Namar, son of Wabra, son of Huseyn. Tha’leb, son of Halwán, son of ’Amrán, son of Al-háf, son of Kodhá’ah. Others, Tenúkhl, from Tenúkh, who, according to Ibn Málik, was the son of Málik, son of Fehr, son of Namar, son of Wabra, son of Tha’leb, who, as Al-házemí says, was the same as Málik, son of Fehr, son of Fahm, son of Kaymullah, son of Aser, son of Wabra. Others, Belawít, from Belí, son of ’Amru, son of Al-háf, son of Kodhá’ah; as, for instance, the Belayun of Seville. Others, Johení, from Joheyannah, son of Asawad, son of Aslam, son of ’Amru, son of Al-háf, son of Kodhá’ah. These might be found in great numbers about Cordova.

From Kelb, son of Wabra, son of Tha’leb, son of Halwán, many families in Kelb. Andalus took the patronymic Kelbl. We might point out the Bení ’Obádah, of whom the Bení Jehwar, Wizirs and Kings of Cordova, formed part. Others, ’Odhrit, from ’Odhrá, the wife of Sa’id, son of Asawad, son of Aslam, son of ’Amru, son of Al-háf, son of Kodhá’ah; as, for example, the Bení ’Odhrah, who were chief men of Algesiras. There were, again, in Andalus families with the patronymic Hadhrami, Hadhra-maut, from Hadhra-maut; these abounded most in Murcia, Granada, Seville, Badajoz, and Cordova. Ibn Ghálib asserts also that they were in great numbers in Andalus, and observes that great difference of opinion existed in his time among genealogists as to the ancestors of Hadhra-maut, whom some made the son of Kahttán, and others the son of Kays, son of Mu’áwiya, son of Josham, son of ’Abdu-sh-shems, son of Wáyl, son of Al-ghauth, son of Jeydán, son of Kattan, son of Al-‘oreyb, son of Al-‘araz, son of the daughter of the son of Aymen, son of Al-hemeysa’, son of Himyar. Of the latter opinion is the celebrated genealogist Al-házemí.

There were also individuals in Andalus who took the patronymic Salmaúl. Of Salmán, this number was the Wizír Lisánu-d-dín Ibnu-l-khattíb, as we shall have further occasion to show in the course of the present work.
CHAPTER IV.

'Abdu-l-'aziz left as governor of Andalus—Marries Roderic's widow—Is put to death—Succeeded by Ayúb—Al-horr—As-samh appointed—Is killed in battle—Succeeded by 'Abdu-r-rahmán Al-gháfekí—Appointment of 'Anbasah—Rising of Pelayo—Death of 'Anbasah—'Odhrah is appointed by the army—Replaced by Yahya Ibn Salmah—Arrival of Hodheyfah—'Okbah appointed by the Wáli of Africa—Invades the country of the Franks—Is succeeded by 'Abdu-l-malek.

In the absence of Músa, who, as before related, left Andalus in the month of Dhí-l-hajjah of the year 95 (Aug. or Sept. A.D. 714), his son, 'Abdu-l-'azíz, remained as governor of the country. 'Abdu-l-'azíz collected together the scattered forces of the Moslems, fortified the frontiers, and greatly contributed to the consolidation of the Mohammedan power, and to the extension of the limits of the conquest, by subduing several important fortresses and cities which had hitherto escaped the eyes of his father and Tárik. His administration was in every respect that of an upright and wise prince. It was unfortunately of very short duration, the army having revolted against him, and put him to death towards the close of the year 97 of the Híjra (beginning Sept. 4, A.D. 715), in the second year of his administration.

It is generally believed that the assassins of 'Abdu-l-'azíz had received instructions to that effect from the Khalif Suleymán, the same Sultán who, as has been related elsewhere, had behaved so unjustly towards his father, Músa. They say that Suleymán was instigated to this act of cruelty by some of his courtiers representing 'Abdu-l-'azíz as a bad Moslem and a rebellious subject. Among the various charges brought against him, one was his having married the widow of King Roderic, who was called by the Arabs Umm-'A'ssem. This woman had at the time of the conquest obtained from the Moslems security both in her person and property on condition of paying a certain tribute; she was, therefore, living unmolested in the free use of her religion, and enjoying a considerable fortune, of which she was possessed, when 'Abdu-l-'azíz became deeply enamoured of her charms, and married her. 'Abdu-l-'azíz always showed the greatest attachment to this woman; he went, they say, so far as to reside with her in a church at Seville, an act by which he raised the
indignation of every true believer. One day his wife said to him, "Why do not "thy subjects bow down in thy presence, as the Goths used to do before my late "husband, King Roderic?"—"Because," replied 'Abdu-l-'azîz, "such practices "are contrary to our religion." Umm-'A'ssem, not being satisfied with this answer, renewed her entreaties, and 'Abdu-l-'azîz, who doted upon her, fearing lest the want of such ceremony, and the apparent want of respect on the part of his people, should diminish her attachment to him, caused a small door to be opened in front of the room where he generally sat to give audience, so that any Moslem entering his presence was compelled to bend himself in order to pass through it. He then made his wife believe that this was a mark of deference to him, and she seemed satisfied. This circumstance being rumoured abroad, and talked of among the soldiers, became, together with the suggestions of the agents of Suleymán, the cause of the death of 'Abdu-l-'azîz (may God forgive him!). 'Abdu-l-'azîz was a brave and experienced officer; he displayed great abilities as a general, and during his government many important cities were subdued by the Moslems. He was murdered, as above stated, in the last days of Dhi-l-hajjah of the year 97, after a government of two years.\(^5\) They say that when the head of 'Abdu-l-'azîz was brought to Damascus, the Khalif Suleymán summoned to his presence Mûsa Ibn Nossayr, and showed it to him. "Dost thou know whose head that is?" said Suleymán to the wretched father. "Yes, I do," answered Mûsa, "it is the head of a man who fasted "and said his prayers. May the curses of Allah fall on it if his assassin was a "better man than he!!"\(^6\)

'Abdu-l-'azîz was succeeded in the government of the country by Ayûb Ibn Habîb Al-lakhmi, the son of Mûsa's sister. Ibn Hayyán says that Ayûb was chosen by the army to command in Andalus, and that he was the first governor who resolved upon transferring the seat of the government from Seville to Cordova, and who held his court at the latter city, although other historians attribute this decision to his successor, Al-horr. Ayûb's administration lasted six months,\(^7\) when he was succeeded by Al-horr. "From this moment," says Ibn Khaldûn, "Andalus was "governed by a succession of Amîrs, sometimes appointed by the Khalifs of the "East, and sometimes by the viceroys of Africa, who held their court at Cairwân. "Under their rule the Arabs made incessant war upon the Kâ'îrs (infidels); they "took the city of Barcelona in the eastern part of Andalus, as well as the fortresses "of Kashtélah (Castile) and those of Narbonne, subduing all the intermediate flat "country towards the north-west. The Gothic nations were nearly exterminated; "the Galicians, and such among the Barbarians as had escaped destruction on "former occasions, were compelled to fly for refuge to the mountains of Castile and "Narbonne, and to strengthen themselves in the gorges and other spots strong by
nature. This, however, proved of no avail to them; for the Moslems, crossing
those natural barriers which, on the side of Barcelona, separate Andalus from
the continent, descending into the plains beyond them, and made incursions into
the land of the Franks, the Káfírs becoming every where the prey of the impetuous
waves of Islám. Unluckily discord and civil war broke out at times among the
conquerors themselves: the consequence was that eighty years had scarcely
elapsed since the conquest, when the Franks, profiting by the dissensions of the
Moslems, snatched from their hands Barcelona and several other cities belonging
to those distant regions. God is great! He gives the empire to whomsoever He
pleases!"

But to return to our narrative. When Mohammed Ibn Yezíd, who governed
Africa in Suleymán's name, heard of the death of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, son of Músa, he
immediately sent to Andalus Al-horr Ibn 'Abdí-r-rahmán Ibn 'Othmán Ath-thakefí,
who divested Ayúb of the command, and administered the affairs of the Moslems
for two years and eight months, until he himself was replaced by As-samh Ibn
Málik Al-khaulání, who was appointed by the Khalif 'Omar, son of 'Abdu-l-'azíz.
According to the historian Ar-rázá, Al-horr arrived in Andalus in the month of
Dhí-l-hajjah of the year 98 (July or August, A. d. 717), bringing in his suite four
hundred men of the principal Arabian families of Africa, who became in after-time
the stock of all the nobility of Andalus. Ibnu Bashkúwál says also that the duration
of his government was two years and eight months, and that it came imme-
diately after the insurrection of Ayúb Ibn Habíb Al-lakhmí.

Al-horr was succeeded in the government of Andalus by As-samh Ibn Málik
Al-khaulání, who, according to Ibnu Hayyán and Ibnu Khaldún, was nominated to
that post by the Khalif 'Omar Ibn 'Abdí-l-'azíz. The first-mentioned writer says
that the appointment of As-samh took place in the month of Ramadhán, A. h. 100,10
(April or May, A. d. 718); the latter says only that he came at the commencement
of the second century of the Hijra. However, it was he who caused the bridge at
Cordova to be rebuilt, after obtaining permission of the Khalif to that effect, as we
have related elsewhere.11 He also brought instructions from the Khalif to collect
for him the fifth of the spoil taken from those Christian provinces which had not
yet acknowledged the authority of Islám,12 and to write a description of the cities,
mountains, rivers, and seas in that country; and this 'Omar caused to be done and
sent to him, that he might the better gain a knowledge of the countries conquered
by the Moslems, and estimate their resources, for he intended to make them
evacuate Andalus, dreading the dangers to which they might be exposed in a distant
country, away from their brethren in religion, and from the people speaking their
language. "Would to God," exclaims Ibnu Hayyán, "that As-samh had lived
" long enough to complete the task intrusted to his care; for, in their transactions
with the infidels, the Moslems of this country are fast working their own per-
dition, unless God Almighty, by his infinite mercy, be pleased to rescue them." 13

After an administration of two years and eight months, As-samh died a martyr for the
faith in the country of the Franks. Ibn Hayyán relates, that, having invaded the
land of the infidels, he was surrounded by their forces, who pounced on him on all
sides, and that not one Moslem escaped that disastrous affair, which was well
known in Andalus as ‘the battle of Balátt,’ 14 and the spot itself as Baláttu-sh-
shohadá (‘the pavement of the martyrs’). He says also, that it was a common
opinion in his days, that on the very spot where so many Moslems fell, the voice of
an invisible muezzin was daily heard announcing the hours of prayer. According to
Ibn Bashkuwál and Ibn Khaldún, As-samh was slain on the day of Taru-
wiyah, A. H. 102. 15

After the massacre of As-samh and his army, the Moslems of Andalus chose for
their commander 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abdillah Al-gháfekí, who is counted by Ibnu
Bashkuwál in the number of those tābi'ís who entered Andalus with Músá Ibn
Nosseyr. 'Abdu-r-rahmán is further said to have preserved traditions from 'Ab-
dullah, son of 'Omar Ibnu-l-khattát.

Ibn Khaldún tells us that this 'Abdu-r-rahmán governed Andalus until the
arrival of 'Anbasah Ibn Sohaym Al-kelbí, whom Yezíd Ibn Abí Moslem, then
Wáli of Eastern Africa, appointed to be his successor. Ibn Bashkuwál states that
this took place in the year 110 (beginning April 15, A. D. 728), that 'Abdu-
r-rahmán owed his nomination to 'Obeydah Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Alkaysí, Wáli of
Eastern Africa, and that he fell a martyr in an encounter with the Christians of
Andalus in the year 115. So far Ibn Bashkuwál, whose statement is in contradic-
tion with what we have related elsewhere; namely, that immediately after the death
of As-samh in 102, 'Abdu-r-rahmán succeeded him: for how could this be, when
Ibn Bashkuwál asserts that he was appointed in the year 110? Which of these two
accounts is the correct one, God only knows. This difficulty, however, may easily
be surmounted by supposing 'Abdu-r-rahmán to have been governor of Andalus
on two different occasions, as we find it stated by Al-hijará. The following words,
which we read in Ibn Hayyán, may also be of use in clearing the obscurity: —
"When 'Abdu-r-rahmán came to Andalus, in Safar, 113 (April or May, A. D.
" 731), for the second time, he was appointed by Ibnu-l-hajáb, Wáli of Eastern
" Africa. He immediately made war upon the Franks, with whom he had some
" sharp encounters, until his army was destroyed and he himself fell a martyr for
" the faith in the month of Ramadhán, 114 (October, A. D. 732), at the spot known
" as the pavement of the martyrs (Baláttu-sh-shohadá)."

VOL. II.
Hayydn,
Al-hejdj,
from
or
to
the
However,
man
wretched
equality
such
of
Sohaym
the
Ibnu
the
he
Moslems
(Pelayo),
them
with
to
they
on
of
say
an
on
Khalladun,
the
Pc-
Ibnu
his
to
advice
he
upon
fortified
by
Abi'
men
last
honest
mountain
says
to
inclination
Africa,
to
expedition
and
revenge
Al-ghafeki
passes
dominions
726),
great
and
beings
A.H.
Sha'ban,
name
years
the
had
the
says
is
in
and
began
ignominious
followers
in
of
bar-
women,
may,
in
of
do
From
he
governor
appointed
they
Al-homaydi
perched
his
v.
the
with
own
that
MOHAMMEDAN
in
soon
through
was
began
presence.
but,
occasion
that
saw
'A'basah
h'd
a
hands
of
com-
they
'Abdul-rahm&n's
many
and
since
least
34 HISTORY OF THE MOHAMMEDAN [BOOK v.
Appointment
of 'A'basah
Ibn Sohaym
Al-kelbi.
Rising of Pelayo.
Be this as it may, 'Abdu-r-rahmán Al-ghafekí is described by Al-homaydí as,
a man of great courage and considerable abilities, honest in his proceedings, and
impartial in his judgments: he attended in person to the distribution of the spoils
taken from the enemy, which he caused always to be made with the greatest equality
and fairness in his own presence. On this occasion 'Abdu-r-rahmán's administra-
tion did not last long; since he was soon after replaced by 'A'basah Ibn Sohaym
Al-kelbi, who was appointed by the governor of Africa, Yezid Ibn Abí Moslem.
According to Ibn Hayyán, 'A'basah was appointed to the government of Andalus
in Safar, A.H. 103 (August, A.D. 721), by Yezid Ibn Abí Moslem, the secretary
of Al-hejáj, then governor of Eastern Africa. Ibn Bashkúwál says that he
introduced order into the administration, and made war on the Franks in person,
and that he died in the month of Sha'bán, A.H. 107 (December, A.D. 725, or
Jan. 726), after a government of four years and four months,—others say eight
months. Ibn Khaldún, who makes his government last four years and four
months, says that he died a martyr in an expedition into the land of the Franks.
" During 'A'basah's administration," says Ibn Hayyán, "a despicable bar-
barian, whose name was Beláy (Pelayo), rose in the land of Galicia, and, having
reproached his countrymen for their ignominious dependence and their cowardly
flight, began to stir them up to revenge the past injuries, and to expel the
Moslems from the land of their fathers. From that moment the Christians
of Andalus began to resist the attacks of the Moslems on such districts as had
remained in their possession, and to defend their wives and daughters; for
until then they had not shown the least inclination to do either. The com-
 mencement of the rebellion happened thus: there remained no city, town, or
village in Galicia but what was in the hands of the Moslems, with the exception
of a steep mountain on which this Pelayo took refuge with a handful of
men: there his followers went on dying through hunger until he saw their
numbers reduced to about thirty men and ten women, having no other food
for support than the honey which they gathered in the crevices of the rock which
they themselves inhabited, like so many bees. However, Pelayo and his men
fortified themselves by degrees in the passes of the mountain until the Moslems
were made acquainted with their preparations; but, perceiving how few they
were, they heeded not the advice conveyed to them, and allowed them to gather
strength, saying, 'What are thirty\textsuperscript{16} barbarians, perched upon a rock?—they
must inevitably die.'" Would to God that the Moslems had then extinguished at
once the sparkles of a fire that was destined to consume the whole dominions of
Islám in those parts; for, as Ibn Sa'íd has judiciously observed, "the contempt in
which the Moslems of those days held that mountain and the few wretched beings
who took refuge upon it, proved in after-time the chief cause of the numerous conquests which the posterity of that same Pelayo were enabled to make in the territory of the Moslems,—conquests,” adds that excellent historian, “which have so much increased of late years, that the enemy of God has reduced many populous cities; and, that at the moment I write, the magnificent city of Cordova, the splendid capital of the Mohammedan empire of Andalus, the court of the Khalifs of the illustrious house of Umeyyah, has fallen into the hands of the infidels. May God annihilate them!"

Ibnu Sa’id was right; the forces of Pelayo went on increasing until he openly raised the standard of revolt: he was succeeded by Alfonso, the progenitor of all the Christian kings known by his name. This Alfonso resisted likewise the authority of the Moslems, against whom he carried on incessant war; his power and importance, as well as his states, increasing soon in such a ratio as not to be easily obscured. But of this more will be said in the course of our narrative.

Some writers have asserted that 'Anbasah died a natural death as he was marching to attack the Franks, whilst others pretend that he was killed in an engagement with them. Be this as it may, Ibnu Hayyán and Al-hijári say that after the death of this governor, which, as before stated, happened in Sha’bán, 107 (Dec. a. D. 725 or Jan. 726), the people of Andalus elected 'Odhrah Ibn 'Abdillah Al-fehri. 'Odhrah is not counted by Ibnu Bashkúwal among the governors of Andalus; but both Al-hijári and Ibnu Hayyán, who include him in their number, describe him as one of the most distinguished Arabs who attended the conquest of Andalus,—a man of great probity and courage, and whose posterity might still be met with in their days at Guadix, in the kingdom of Granada. A son of this 'Odhrah, whose name was Hishám, made himself at a subsequent period the master of Toledo, the citadel of Andalus. Ibnu Sa’id includes him likewise in the number of the governors of Andalus, and says that he held his court in Cordova.

However, 'Odhrah seems only to have administered the government of the country until the arrival of Yahya Ibn Salmah Al-kelbi, who, according to Ibnu Bashkúwáil, and the above-mentioned writers, was appointed by Beshr Ibn Sefwán Al-kelbi, Wáli of Africa, at the solicitation of the Andalusians, who, on the death of 'Anbasah, sent to ask him for a new governor. Yahya landed in Andalus towards the end of the year 107; some authors add in the month of Shawwál. He ruled Andalus for a period of eighteen months, some say two years and a half, during which time he led no army in person against the infidels. Ibnu Hayyán's narrative agrees on this point with that of Ibnu Bashkúwáil. Cordova seems to have been the place of residence of Yahya. Ibnu Khaldún, who includes him in his list of Andalusian governors, repeats this statement, and adds that
Yahya was the first governor of Andalus appointed by the Wālis of Africa, who, from that time, always provided the governors of that country. The same writer [Ibnu Khaldūn] agrees in making the duration of Yahya's rule two years and a half.\(^{20}\)

'Othmān Ibn Abī Nesaḥ Al-khath'amī,\(^{21}\) whom others call Al-lakhmī, was the next governor of Andalus. According to Ibnu Bashkuwāl and Ibnu Khaldūn, 'Othmān was appointed to that post by 'Obeydah Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmān As-solamī, Wāli of Eastern Africa, in the month of Sha'bán, A. H. 110 (Nov. or Dec. A. D. 728). The new governor fixed his residence at Cordova. He was, however, deposed five months afterwards, and replaced by Hodheyfah Ibn Al-ahwass Al-kaysī, who, according to Ibnu Bashkuwāl, was also nominated by the same Wāli of Africa, 'Obeydah.

Hodheyfah arrived in Andalus in the month of Rabī'-l-awal, A. H. 110 (June or July, A.D. 728); he was almost immediately removed, some authors making the duration of his government only one year. However, historians do not agree as to the period of his administration; some supposing that it preceded that of 'Othmān, others that it came afterwards.\(^{22}\)

Hodheyfah was succeeded by Al-haytham Ibn 'Obeyd Al-kelābī,\(^{23}\) who, according to Ibnu Bashkuwāl, was appointed by 'Obeydah Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmān, the Wāli of Africa, and arrived in Andalus in the month of Moharram, A. H. 111 (April, A. D. 729). Ibnu Khaldūn says that he invaded the country of Makunshah,\(^{24}\) and reduced it to the sway of Islām. Al-haytham died in the year 113 (beginning 14th March, A. D. 731), after a government of two years and some days, which other historians make two years and four months.\(^{25}\) This governor also held his court at Cordova.

He was succeeded by Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Al-ashja'i, whom the people of Andalus appointed to command them.\(^{26}\) Ibnu Bashkuwāl, from whom the preceding statement is borrowed, describes him as a virtuous and upright man. He administered the affairs of the Moslems and presided over their prayers for the short period of two months, after which time he appointed to the government of the country 'Abdu-r-rahmān Ibn 'Abdillah Al-ghâfekī, the same Amīr who had performed those duties on a former occasion, and whose administration has already been noticed by us. This time 'Abdu-r-rahmān was appointed by 'Obeydullah Ibn-l-hajāb, Wāli of Africa, of which country Andalus was a dependency. 'Abdu-r-rahmān remained in the government until he was slain in battle with the Franks, as before related, in the year 116, or, according to other authorities, in the year 115,\(^{27}\) after an administration of one year and eight months, though there is a tradition making it two years and six months. Ibnu Bashkuwāl says that the
expedition in which 'Abdu-r-rahmán fell was known in Andalus as Ghazwatu-l-baldtt (the expedition of Baldtt); but the same has been said elsewhere of As-samh. 'Abdu-r-rahmán held his court at Cordova.

According to Ibn Khaldún, who puts the death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán in the year 114, this governor must have been absent from Andalus when he was nominated; for the words of that historian run as follow: "After this, 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn "'Abdillah Al-gháfekí was appointed to the government of Andalus by 'Obeydullah "'Abdu-l-hajáíb, Wáli of Eastern Africa. He arrived in Andalus in the year 113, and made war upon the Franks, with whom he had several encounters; but in the month of Ramadhán of the year 114 (Oct. A.D. 732), his army was cut to pieces at a spot called Baláttu-sh-shohaddá (the pavement of the martyrs), he himself being in the number of the slain. This disastrous battle is well known among the people of Andalus as the battle of Baldtt. 'Abdu-r-rahmán had governed the country one year and eight months." But to return.

After 'Abdu-r-rahmán's death, 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan Al-fehrí, whom Al-hijáí includes in his list of Andalusian governors, obtained the command. 'Abdu-l-malek is considered by the said author (Al-hijáí) as the stock whence the family of the Bení Al-kásim, Lords of Al-bont (Puente), and the Bení Al-jadd, one of the principal families of Seville, are issued. 'Abdu-l-malek is likewise mentioned by Ibn Bashkúwál, who says that he was appointed to the government of Andalus in the month of Ramadhán, A. H. 114 (Oct. or Nov. A. D. 732), and that his administration lasted two years,26 although there are not wanting authors, as Al-wákedí, who make four years the duration of his government; but those who do so have, no doubt, been led into error by the circumstance of 'Abdu-l-malek's governing the country twice; since, as we shall presently show, he ruled over Andalus before and after 'Okbah. He conducted various expeditions into the territory of the Basques, one especially in 115, from which he returned victorious, and loaded with spoil. He is, however, described by several writers as a man of cruel propensities, and excessive rigour in his judgments; owing to which he was ignominiously deposed in the month of Ramadhán, 116 (Oct. or Nov. A. D. 734), and replaced by 'Okbah Ibnu-l-hejáí As-selúlí, who came to Andalus by the appointment of 'Obeydullah 'Okbah ap-
pointed by the Wáli of Africa. Ibnu-l-hajáíb, the Wáli of Africa. The new governor was a man of great justice and irreproachable conduct, virtues which made him the idol of the Moslems. During the five years of his administration he made many successful inroads into the country of the Franks, and hunted down the infidels in every direction, taking their cities and castles by force of arms, until the Moslem settlements reached as far as Narbonne, and their advanced posts and military stations were established on the banks of the Rodanoh (Rhône). He had previously, in the year 111 (beginning April 4, A. D. 729),
converted the city of Narbonne into a sort of citadel, from which the Moslems might sally out and scour the neighbouring country, for which purpose he stored it with arms and provisions; and many were the expeditions which he himself led into the country of the Franks. But whilst intent upon extending his conquests, 'Okbah lost no opportunity of spreading the religion of Islám; for, whenever he took prisoners, he never would order their execution without previously inviting them to embrace the only true religion, and setting before their eyes the gross errors and impositions of their creed; and this plan answered so well, that thousands of infidels were converted at his hands.

'Okbah arrived in Andalus in the year 117, others say in the year before. He was succeeded by 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan, for the second time, although the manner in which this was effected is differently stated. Ibn Khaldún says, "In the year 121 'Abdu-l-malek rose against 'Okbah, deposed him from his government, and put him to death, or, according to others, expelled him from the country." Ibn Bashkúwál’s statement is, that 'Abdu-l-malek revolted against 'Okbah, seized his person, and deprived him of the command of Andalus; but he says that it was not clear whether he had secretly put to death, or whether he merely banished him the country." Both authors, however, agree in saying that this happened in the year 121 (beginning Dec. 17, A.D. 738), and that the usurper retained the command during the remainder of that year and the two following, 122 and 123, until Balj came from Africa with the Syrian troops, and, having subdued Andalus, made 'Abdu-l-malek his prisoner, and had him crucified in the month of Dhi-l-ka’dah of the year 123. 'Okbah held his court at Cordova.

Ar-rázi’s account differs considerably from the preceding. He says, "In the month of Safar of the year 123 (Dec. A.D. 740, or Jan. 741), during the Khalifate of Hishám, son of 'Abdu-l-malek, the people of Andalus revolted against 'Okbah, and appointed in his stead 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan, for the second time. 'Okbah had governed Andalus for a period of six years and four months; he died at Carcasonne31 in the same month (Safar, A.H. 123)." However, we find that both Ibn Khaldún and Ibn Bashkúwál give him only five years’ government. Be this as it may, certain it is that 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan usurped the power in Andalus, and ruled as master over that country until the arrival of Balj Ibn Beshr, who, escaping from the defeat of the Syrian army by the Berbers, at a place in Africa called Mulwiyah, took refuge in Andalus with the remainder of the Syrian troops; some say in the year 123, others in 124. Balj made war upon 'Abdu-l-malek, whom he defeated and took prisoner, putting him to death in the month of Dhi-l-ka’dah, 123 (Sept. or Oct. A.D. 741), ten months after his usurpation of the power. They say that Balj caused his adversary, Ibn Kattan, to be crucified in a
field outside of Cordova, on the opposite bank of the river, and close to the head of the bridge, after causing a hog to be placed at his right hand, and a dog at his left. In that state did the body of the unfortunate 'Abdu-l-malek remain for a considerable time, until some of his friends and clients stole his mangled remains one night, and buried them. The spot where this lamentable execution took place was long after known as Masslab Ibn Kattan, 'the place of crucifixion of Ibn Kattan.' A few years after this event, the government of Andalus having devolved on his cousin, Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-fehri, Umeyyah, the son of the executed governor, applied to him for permission to build a mosque on the spot; and, having obtained it, he erected a handsome temple, which was called Mesjid Umeyyah (the mosque of Umeyyah), after the name of its founder; and thus did the spot lose its former name. They say that when 'Abdu-l-malek was executed he was nearly ninety years old; but of this more will be said when we come to treat about Balj.
CHAPTER V.

General rising of the Berbers in Africa—Kolthūm is sent against them—Is defeated and replaced by Hondhalah—The Berbers of Andalus rise against the Arabs—They defeat `Abdu-l-malek—The Syrians under Balj come to his assistance—They revolt against him—They take him prisoner—Put him to death—The sons of `Abdu-l-malek march against Balj—Balj is killed in the engagement—The Syrians appoint Tha'lebah—Their wars with the Berbers—Arrival of Abū-l-khattār—Is defeated, and taken prisoner—Makes his escape—Thuâbah's nomination confirmed by the Wāli of Africa—Battle of Shekundah—Death of Abū-l-khattār—The grandsons of Wittīza—Yusūf Al-fehrī is appointed by the army—Several chiefs resist his authority—He defeats them in succession—Chronology of the governors of Andalus.

We have alluded elsewhere to the rising of the Berbers, both in Andalus and in Africa, where they had frequently cut to pieces the forces dispatched against them. About this time, especially, elated at their past success, they aimed at taking the empire from the hands of the Arabs. Thus it occurred: when the Khalif Hishām Ibn `Abdi-l-malek, who succeeded his brother Yezīd Ibn `Abdi-l-malek in the year 105 of the Hijra (beginning June 9, A. D. 723), received intelligence of the revolt of the Berbers in Maghrebu-l-akssā (Western Africa) and in Andalus, and how they had shaken off the yoke of the Arabs, and denied all obedience to him, resisting the authority of his officers, and committing all sorts of excesses and depredations throughout the country, he was greatly displeased, and decreed the immediate removal of 'Obeydullah Ibnu-l-hajāb, then governor of Africa. This done, he appointed to succeed him Kolthūm Ibn `Iyādh Al-kusheyrī, who left Syria with a considerable army to make war upon the rebels.

With these forces, which, added to the African garrisons, amounted to no less than seventy thousand men, Kolthūm took the field, and marched against the chief of the insurrection, named Meysarah, a Berber, who had assumed the name and authority of the Khalif in Africa. When the two armies met, the Moslems were defeated with great loss; and their general, Kolthūm, being wounded, was on the point of falling into the hands of his enemies. He, however, contrived to make his escape, and shut himself up in the castle of Ceuta.
took refuge in that fortress was a nephew of Kolthúm, named Balj Ibn Beshr Al-kusheyrí.

When the news of this disaster reached Syria, Hishám was mightily displeased. Wishing to wash out the injury which the Moslems had sustained, he dispatched another army under the command of Hondhalah Ibn Sefwán Al-kelbí, who, immediately after his arrival, attacked the Berbers, and defeated them in several bloody encounters. But in the interval between the defeat of the Arabs and the arrival of Hondhalah, Balj and his uncle Kolthúm, with the relics of the Syrian army,

were closely besieged in Ceuta by the Berbers. So effectually was the city surrounded, and so vigorous were the attacks of the enemy, that the besieged began to feel the scarcity of provisions, and were reduced to the greatest extremity. In this conflict they sent to implore the assistance of their brethren, the Moslems of Andalus; but 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan, who was then governor of that country, fearing lest, if he extricated them from their dangerous position, they might afterwards disturb him, refused to grant them any assistance. However, the news of their danger having become known throughout Andalus, there were not wanting some generous and pious men who flew to their relief, or who sent them stores and provisions. Zeyyád Ibn 'Amru Al-lakhmí, among others, freighted two vessels loaded with provisions, by means of which he actually saved them from starvation. But no sooner was 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan apprised of this act of disobedience to his orders, than he caused Zeyyád to be immediately arrested and brought to his presence, when, after reproaching him with his disobedience, he had him punished with seven hundred lashes. Nor did Ibn Kattan's vengeance end here: some time after, under the pretence that he was trying to form in the army a party against him, he ordered Zeyyád to be first deprived of his sight, and then beheaded and crucified, having at his left hand a dog.

It so happened about this time that the Berbers of Andalus, having heard of the victories which their brethren of Africa had gained over the Arabs, shook off all allegiance to the Moslems of Andalus, and imitated in every respect the example of their countrymen. Having elected a chief of their own, they fought several battles with the troops of 'Abdu-l-malek, whom they defeated on more than one occasion. When Ibn Kattan saw this, he began to fear lest the Berbers should entirely overpower his forces, and get possession of the country. Perceiving therefore that the rebels, proud of the victories gained over his arms, intended to march against him and besiege his capital, Cordova, hebethought himself of calling to his aid Balj Ibn Beshr and the Syrian adventurers who followed his banners; thinking that they would gladly embrace any opportunity to revenge their past defeats on the Berbers of Andalus. He accordingly wrote to Balj,
inviting him to come over, and promising great rewards to him and his troops in case they should succeed in reducing the Berbers. When Balj received Ibn Kattan's letters, his uncle Kolthûm was just dead; so that, seeing no hope of promotion or advantage in Africa, and being moreover unable to extricate himself from his perilous position, that chief readily accepted the offer made to him, and crossed over to Andalus. On the arrival of his Syrian auxiliaries, Ibn Kattan failed not to receive them with the greatest courtesy, making them extensive grants of land, and conferring on them many other favours. It was, however, previously agreed between the two parties, that as soon as their united forces had exterminated the Berbers, Balj and his Syrians should return to Africa; in security for which they were to give 'Abdu-l-malek a certain number of hostages. These conditions being mutually agreed upon, the Syrians were divided into two corps, the command of which was given by 'Abdu-l-malek to his two sons, Kattan and Umeyyah, who marched immediately against the Berbers, who by that time had collected together considerable forces. The two armies met soon afterwards, when, after a most desperate and well contested battle, the wheel of fortune turned against the Berbers, and they were defeated, notwithstanding their forces were so numerous as to render it impossible for any but Allah, their Creator, to estimate their amount. The Arabs pursued them with great slaughter through the provinces of Andalus, until their fugitive remains reached the extreme frontiers of the Mussulman empire, or succeeded in hiding themselves from the eyes of the Syrian hawks.

In the mean while Balj and his followers were elated with success; their nostrils swelled with pride; their hands were filled with spoils; their strength and importance waxed greater; their ambition was kindled; they broke the agreements they had entered into, and forgot the conditions they had signed; and when Ibn Kattan, agreeably to their engagements, requested them to leave Andalus, they refused to do so, making all sorts of excuses to put off their departure. At last, throwing off the mask of dissimulation, they began to complain bitterly of the injuries received at the hands of Ibn Kattan, when, being besieged in Ceuta, he not only would not give them any assistance, but had besides sentenced and put to death, as related elsewhere, an Arab, who, in violation of his orders, had sent them provisions and stores: they declared themselves in open rebellion, deposed Ibn Kattan, and appointed in his stead their general, Balj Ibn Beshr. The new governor was therefore acknowledged throughout the country; the troops, even those of Ibn Kattan, having declared in his favour. After this, Balj was advised by his followers to put Ibn Kattan to death; but this he would not do, in consequence of which the people of Yemen showed their discontent, and said to him: 'Thou wishest to spare Ibn Kattan because he belongs to the tribe of Modhar, and is therefore one of thy
“kindred. By Allah! unless thou deliver him immediately into our hands, we
swear not to obey thy commands.” Hearing which, and seeing his men de-
termined to have their revenge, Balj ordered the deposed governor into his presence,
and delivered him into the hands of the infuriated soldiery. The author whose
narrative we transcribe says, that 'Abdu-l-malek was a tall and muscular old man,
resembling a young ostrich; he was then ninety years of age. When young, he
had been present at the famous battle of Al-hárrah, fought between the Syrians
and the people of Medínah. While the executioners were binding his hands,
one of them addressed him thus: “We have thee at last; thou didst once
escape from our swords at the battle of Al-hárrah; after which thou doomedst
us to eat dogs and the skins of animals, and didst refuse us all supplies, that we
might all die in Ceuta from hunger and thirst; but thou art now in our hands,
and revenge must have its course.” 'Abdu-l-malek was instantly beheaded, and
put to death.

By the death of 'Abdu-l-malek, the government of Andalus devolved on Balj
the Syrian, as above mentioned; but he had soon to contend against Kattan and
Umeyyah, the two sons of the deceased, who, assisted by the tribe of Fehr, and
by all the discontented, and many others who took offence at the execution of the
late governor, advanced towards Cordova at the head of a considerable army.
Balj went out to meet them, and gave them battle; but although fortune proved
favourable to his arms, and the Fehrrites were defeated, he himself was mortally
wounded, and died soon after the action, in the year 124, one year or so after his
usurpation of the power. The particulars of this engagement are thus described by
a trustworthy historian:—“When Kattan and Umeyyah, the two sons of 'Abdu-l-
malek, heard of their father's execution, they fled from Cordova, and, having
collected together some forces, swore to revenge their father's blood. They
were soon joined not only by all the Arabian tribes which had settled in Andalus
previous to the arrival of the Syrians, and who were envious at their success,
but by the Berbers themselves, who from all parts of the country now flocked
under their standard. Among the former was 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Habib Ibn
Abí 'Obeydah Ibn 'Okbah Ibn Náfi' Al-fehri, one of the generals of the army,
who had hitherto followed the party of Balj; but who, seeing the barbarous
retaliation committed on his cousin 'Abdu-l-malek, deserted the banners of that
chief, and passed over to the enemy with a considerable body of troops. Their
ranks were further increased by the arrival of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Alkamah
Al-lakhmí, governor of Narbonne, the bravest knight in Andalus, who likewise
embraced their party: the combined forces of the rebels, amounting to upwards
of one hundred thousand men, then marched to besiege Balj in Cordova. The
"Syrian general, being an experienced and valiant warrior, was not taken un-
awares: he went out to meet them at the head of twelve thousand cavalry,
without including in this number a large body of his own slaves, which he had
formed into a division, and various tribes of the Beladí 11 Arabs, who were
ranged under his banners. When the two armies met, the Syrians fought with
desperate valour, performing feats of arms the like of which never before were
witnessed. In the midst of the engagement, however, Ibn 'Alkamah thus
addressed his followers: 'Show me where Balj is, that I may look for him,
transfix him with this my spear, or, by Allah! die at his hands.' Upon which one
of his borderers 12 pointed out to him the spot where Balj was, and Ibn 'Alkamah
made a desperate charge at the head of his own men. The Syrian knights,
unable to withstand the shock, gave way, and a passage was thus opened which
enabled Ibn 'Alkamah to penetrate into the middle of their ranks. Having
reached the spot where Balj fought, he wounded him twice with his spear, and
threw him off his saddle. Notwithstanding this mishap the Syrians fought so
well, that after some time the Beladí Arabs were completely routed and took to
flight, being closely pursued by the Syrians, who made great slaughter among
them, and took many prisoners; victory thus remaining to those who had lost
their general in the action." 13 This battle, and the death of Balj, who, as we have
already observed, died of his wounds two days after, 14 happened in the month of
Shawwál, A.H. 124 (Sept. A.D. 742), eleven months 15 after his coming into power.
Like his predecessors, Balj held his court at Cordova.

After the death of their general, the Syrians appointed to succeed him Tha'lebah
Ibn Salámah Al-ámelé, by others called Al-jodhámí; 16 but before we proceed any
further, we think it important to observe that the Arabs who entered Andalus with
Balj were known by the name of Shámiún (people of Shám or Syria), to distinguish
them from those who were already in that country, and came at the time of the
conquest or soon after it: these were called Beladíún. But to return; after
the death of Balj, as related, Tha'lebah Ibn Salámah Al-ámelé was appointed by the
Syrians to govern the country, in virtue of a provision received from the Khalíf
Hishám to that effect. Tha'lebah ruled the country with great moderation and
justice. Ibnu Khalídún says "that he governed it for a period of two years,
although his authority was not acknowledged for more than ten months;" his
partiality for the Yemení Arabs having become the cause of the desertion of the
tribe of Fehr, and of the civil wars which ensued. It happened thus: soon
after the appointment of Tha'lebah, the first Andalusian settlers from among the
Arabs and the Berbers resolved upon revenging the outrages they had received at
the hands of the Syrians, and accordingly made war upon Tha'lebah, whom they
besieged in Merida, where he had taken refuge. When the rebels saw Tha’lebah shut up within the walls of that city, they were greatly rejoiced, and doubted not of the victory: they thought that their enemy could not escape them, and would ere long be obliged to give himself up for want of provisions. In this security, and trusting in their numbers, the besiegers were scattered over the plain before Merida, without the least order or vigilance. They even began to make preparations for the solemnization of an approaching festival; which being observed by Tha’lebah, he chose the moment when they were most careless, and at sunrise of the day in which they were to celebrate their festival, he made a sally at the head of his garrison, and succeeded in routing them completely; killing great numbers of them; besides taking one thousand prisoners, with all their families and children. He then returned to Cordova, where no less than ten thousand captives, or perhaps more, taken by the different divisions of his army after the defeat before the walls of Merida, were brought to him from various parts of the country. Tha’lebah then encamped outside of Cordova with his troops. It was on a Thursday; and on the following day, after prayers, it was his intention to put the whole of his ten thousand prisoners to the sword. Friday came on, and every one present expected to see the massacre of the prisoners commence; when, lo! the Khalif’s banner fluttered in the distance, and, soon after, Abú-l-khattár Husám Ibn Dhírár Al-kelbí, who came to take possession of the government, made his appearance.

Ibnu Khaldún says that this Abú-l-khattár came to Andalus by the appointment of Hondhalah Ibn Sefwán, Wáli of Africa, with instructions to re-establish public order, and appease the troubles excited by the contending parties. He sailed from the port of Tunis in the month of Moharram of the year 125 (Nov. A. D. 742). Ibnu Hayyán has words to the same effect, and adds that the reigning Khalif at the time was Al-walíd Ibn Yezíd Ibn ‘Abdi-l-malek Ibn Merwán: he places the arrival of Abú-l-khattár in Cordova in Rejeb, 125 (May, 743), after Tha’lebah had governed the country for ten months.

“No sooner,” continues Ibnu Khaldún, “did Abú-l-khattár land in Andalus than all parties hastened to put down their arms. Tha’lebah himself, Ibn Abí ‘Nes’ah,” and the two sons of ‘Abdu-l-malek, went out to meet him, and swore allegiance. Abú-l-khattár treated them all kindly; and Tha’lebah, the late governor, returned to the East, where he attached himself to Merwán Ibn Mohammed, whom he followed in most of his campaigns.”

Abú-l-khattár is generally described as a brave and generous man, and endowed with much prudence and great talents for administration. Finding that the settlers from Syria were very numerous in Andalus, and that Cordova could no longer hold them, he scattered them over the country, and gave them lands to
settle in. He gave Elvira and the surrounding country to the people of Damascus, who, finding it resemble their native country, called it *Šdám* (Damascus): the people of Hems (Emessa) he caused to settle at Seville, which received also the name of *Hems*. Jayyen (Jaen) was given up to the people of Kenésrin, and called also by that name, *Kenésrin*; the people of Al-urdán had as their share Rayah and Malaga, both of which they named *Al-urdán*; Shídhnah, or by others named Sherísh (Xerez), fell to the lot of the people of Palestine, and was therefore called *Filistín*. The Egyptians had Tudemír, which, in imitation of the other settlers, they called *MISR*; and lastly, the people of Wásit received Cabra and the neighbouring districts as their share.

According to Ibn Hayyán, Abú-l-khattár was an excellent poet: he also evinced great talents for administration, and his government at first was just and mild, though he afterwards showed some inclination to favour the Yemení Arabs in their feuds against the Modharites, and affronted the tribe of Kays, which is a branch of the latter; the consequence of which was that civil war broke out afresh, and raged with more violence than ever. The cause of the war is thus related by the historians: Abú-l-khattár had always shown himself partial to the Arabs of Yemen. One day a man belonging to his own tribe had an altercation with a man of the tribe of Kenánah, and although the case was clearly proved against the Yemení, who was a cousin of Abú-l-khattár, the governor, swayed by love for his own people, decided in favour of his cousin. The Kenání then went to see As-samíl Ibn Hátim Ibn Shamr Al-kélábí, surnamed Abú-l-jaushan, and told him of Abú-l-khattár’s injustice. Now this As-samíl was one of the principal chiefs of the Bení Modhar; he hated tyranny and oppression, and could not suppress his indignation when he heard of the outrage inflicted on one of his own people, whose rights he was always the first to defend and support. He goes immediately to see Abú-l-khattár, and reproaches him with his conduct in language not very moderate; upon which Abú-l-khattár answers with abuse: As-samíl replies, and things go so far that Abú-l-khattár orders his guards to seize him, raise him from his seat, and put him out of the room. They relate that in the scuffle As-samíl received some blows in the nape of his neck, by which his turban was thrown on one side; and that as he was going out of the Amír’s palace a man who was standing at the door said to him, “O Abú-l-jaushan, what is the matter with thy turban? By Allah! it is all on one side.”—“Thou art right, man,” said As-samíl, “but I trust my people will soon put it right for me.” Saying which, he immediately retired to his dwelling, and sent for his friends and clients, who came to him in haste as soon as they heard of the occurrence. When they were all assembled, As-samíl begged them to stay with him; and when the shades of night had
covered the earth, he addressed them in the following words: “What do you
think, friends, has happened to me? I have been injured and ill-treated by the
Amir; but the affront is not one that falls only on me, it comprises you all as
my friends and relatives.” He then told them his adventure with Abú-l-khattár;
upon which his friends replied, “If thou declare unto us what kind of revenge
it is thy intention to take, we will see whether we can participate in thy designs,
or not.”—“By Allah!” said As-samīl, “my vengeance shall not be satisfied
with anything short of taking the command from the hands of this Arab: in
order to accomplish which, I intend to quit Cordova secretly this very night,
and betake myself where I can expect help and security; for I see at present
no other way of carrying my plans into execution. Whither do ye think I had
better go? To whom shall I apply for aid?”—“Go wheresoever thou likest,”
said his friends, “provided it be not to the dwelling of Abú 'Attá Al-kaysí; for he
is incapable of lending thee any assistance, and will never do any thing that
may turn to thy advantage.” This Abú 'Attá was an Arabian chief, who enjoyed
great authority and power in the city of Ezīja, the place of his residence: he was
a great enemy of As-samīl, and his rival in every thing. All those present at this
interview assented to this advice, except Abú Bekr Ibn Tofayl Al-’abādī, who,
although still a youth, enjoyed great consideration and respect in the tribe: he
alone refused to give his opinion, and kept silence; which being observed by
As-samīl, he addressed him thus:—“Why dost thou not speak, O Ibn Tofayl?
What is thy advice?”—“I have only one thing to say,” replied the youth,
which is, that if thou do not go to see Abú 'Attá, and persist in thy enmity to
him, this our conspiracy will certainly not succeed, and we shall all of us meet
with our death. If, on the contrary, thou go to see him, I am sure he will
forget what has passed between you; he will be moved by love to thee and
his tribe, and he will do any thing thou wishest him to do.”—“Well said!”
replied As-samīl; “thine is the best advice, and I will certainly act upon it.”
He accordingly left Cordova that very night, and repaired to Ezīja, where he
visited Abú 'Attá, who, being a generous and forgiving man, immediately tendered
him such aid to his cause as he could bestow. From Ezīja As-samīl went to
Múrūr (Moror),26 the place of residence of Thuábah [Ibn Salámah] Ibn Yezíd 27
Al-jodhámí, one of the principal chiefs of the Yemení Arabs, who, having also
received certain injuries at the hands of Abú-l-khattár, readily consented to assist
As-samīl in his undertaking, and agreed, when called upon, to take the field with
the Bení Modhar. Having therefore fixed upon Shídúnah (Sidonia) as the place
of their meeting, the rebels mustered their forces, and marched against Abú-l-
khattár, whom they defeated with great slaughter on the banks of the Wáda-Leke,"
taking him prisoner. They say that when As-samíl and Thuábah saw that governor in their power, their first intention was to put him to death; but they delayed his execution, and took him in irons to Cordova, where he was confined to a strong tower in the walls. All this happened in the month of Rejeb of the year 127 (April or May, A. D. 745), two years after Abú-l-khattár had taken possession of the government of Andalus.

Abú-l-khattár, however, did not remain long in confinement, having soon after succeeded in making his escape, with the assistance of his friends. Abú-l-khattár’s liberation happened thus: A friend of his, named ’Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Hossán Al-kelbi, came to Cordova one night, accompanied by thirty horsemen and a small body of infantry, all men of tried courage, and in whose experience and fidelity he could trust. Having made a sudden attack upon the tower where Abú-l-khattár was detained, they massacred the guards, and liberated the deposed governor, who retired with them to the western provinces.

No sooner did the news of Abú-l-khattár’s liberation, and his readiness to assert his rights, spread over the country, than he was joined by the Yemení Arabs, who from all sides flocked under his banners; and he was thus enabled to resume the offensive, and march upon Cordova. Thuábah in the mean time was not inactive. Having assembled his forces, he went out to meet him in company with As-samíl. The two hosts were in presence of each other, and ready to commence the engagement, when an Arab of the tribe of Modhar rose by night (and placing himself within hearing of Abú-l-khattár’s followers), began crying out at the top of his voice,—“O Arabs of Yemen! why expose yourselves to the fortunes of war? and why try “to avert the fate which awaits Abú-l-khattár? Has he not been already in our “power, and at our discretion? Nay, had we chosen to put him to death, we “might easily have accomplished it; but we had pity on him, and we spared his “life. The governor appointed by us belongs also to your tribe. Why do you “not think of your situation? If Thuábah belonged to any other tribe but your “own, you might have an excuse in your rising; but as it is, you have none. And “do not imagine that these sentiments are uttered through a wish on our part to “conciliate you, or through fear of your spears; it is only our love of peace, and “our anxiety to stop the effusion of blood, and to promote the welfare of the people “of this country in general, which dictate them.” These words had the desired effect. They were listened to with attention by the followers of Abú-l-khattár, who said, “By Allah! that man is right.” And accordingly they marched away that very night, and on the morning of the next day they were some miles from the field of battle.

Ibnu Bashkúwál says that when the Modharites and their chiefs had agreed upon
giving the command to Thuábah, they wrote to 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Habib, Wáli of Cairwán, apprising him of their choice, and requesting him to confirm the election; which he did immediately. This happened towards the end of the month of Rejeb of the year 127 (April, A. D. 745), when the country was in some manner pacified, all the power being concentrated in the hands of Thuábah, or rather of As-samíl, who was his second in command. Thuábah governed Andalus for a year or so, after which time he died.31 In the work of Íbnu-l-faradhéi, however, the government of Thuábah is said to have lasted two years.

The same writer (Abú-l-walíd Íbnu-l-faradhéi) describes Abú-l-khattár as a noble and high-minded man; only that, being descended from a tribe of Yemen, he showed too great a partiality to the people of his kindred, and was ill-disposed towards the Bení Modhar. He affronted the tribe of Kays: this being the cause of the rising of their chief, As-samíl, who deposed him, and appointed in his room Thuábah Ibn Salámah, as elsewhere related. Íbnu-l-faradhéi adds, that the two factions continued after this to wage war against one another; that Abú-l-khattár was deposed four years and nine months32 after his taking possession of the government, in the year 128 (beginning Oct. 2, A. D. 745), and that he was at last put to death by As-samíl, and replaced by Thuábah Ibn Salámah in the government of Andalus. But to return.

Íbnu Khaldún says, "About this time civil war raged in Africa, and the empire of the Bení Umeyyah began to decay in the East. The Khalífs of that dynasty were assailed by rebels in every distant province, and the power and importance of the wearers of the black colours ('Abbásides) waxed every day greater. In the mean time the people of Andalus were left to themselves, and without a ruler. At first the administration was carried on in the name of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Kethír;33 but afterwards the army decided upon dividing the empire between the two rival factions, the Bení Modhar and the Arabs of Yemen, in such a manner that each party should govern the country for one year, when they would resign the command into the hands of the other. The Bení Modhar, who were to be the first, appointed, in the year 129, as their commander, Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-fehri, who accordingly governed the country for one year, taking up his residence at Cordova. But when, after the expiration of that year, the Yemenís sought to be put in possession of the government, according to the agreement entered into with the opposite party, Yúsuf, accompanied by As-samíl Ibn Hátim and the tribe of Kays, and all the other tribes issued from the stock of Modhar, made one night a sudden attack upon Shekundah, a village close to Cordova,34 where the Yemenís had taken up their abode, and massacred the greater part of them. Abú-l-khattár then took the field, but he
" was met by As-samîl, who routed him and put him to death in the year 129 " (beginning Sept. 21, A. D. 746)." So far Ibn Khaldûn.

Ibnu Hayyân relates these events differently: he says, "When Abû-l-khattâr " heard of his [Yûsuf's] appointment, he put his Yemenis into requisition; and all " answered his call, this being the cause of the celebrated battle of Shekundah, " fought between the Benî Modhar and the Arabs of Yemen. They say that " there never was, either in the East or the West, a more bloody and contested " battle than that of Shekundah, nor one in which greater feats of arms were " performed by the warriors on both sides, who fought until the edges of their " swords were softened by the blows, when each man seized his adversary by the " hair, and fought with his hands until they fell down exhausted and tired of " dealing and receiving blows. However, it appears that As-samîl, having upon " a certain day received intelligence that his enemies were not upon their guard, " called together all the tradespeople and shopkeepers of Cordova, and, putting " himself at their head, resolved to make a sudden attack upon the Yemenis. " Having selected four hundred of the most determined and bravest among them, " armed with knives, sticks, and such other weapons as they could procure,—a " few only being provided with either spears or swords,—he led them against the " Yemenis, who, being unprepared for the attack, were seized with a sudden panic, " and fled in every direction before the people of Cordova, without returning their " blows, or attempting even to parry those dealt to them. They were hotly " pursued by the enemy, who made great slaughter in their ranks. So great was " the loss which the Yemenis sustained on this memorable occasion, that but few " of their number outlived the bloody encounter. Abû-l-khattâr, among others, " fled the field of battle, and took refuge in a neighbouring mill, where he remained " for some time concealed under the mill-stone: he was, however, detected " and brought to the presence of As-samîl, who had him immediately beheaded." The above is borrowed from the work of Ibn Hayyân.

The historians of Andalus have recounted at length some transactions in which the grandsons of King Wittiza were concerned, during the administration of Abû-l-khattâr. After the death of Almond, who was the eldest son of that monarch, and who, as related, left a daughter called Sârah, and two sons in tender age, Artabâsh seized the states of his nephews, and appropriated them to himself. This happened at the beginning of the Khalifate of Hishâm Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek. When Sârah, the Goth, saw herself and brothers thus deprived of their father's inheritance, she laid a complaint before Abû-l-khattâr; but seeing that justice was not speedily done to her, she determined upon repairing to the East in person, and getting redress from the Khalif. Accordingly, having fitted out a good vessel, and provided
it with the necessary stores for the voyage, she embarked at Seville with her two brothers, and set sail for Syria. Having landed at 'Askalún (Ascalon), a sea-port on the shores of that country, Sárah proceeded to Damascus, where the Khalif Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek held his court. After informing that Sultán of her case, she implored justice against her uncle, and begged him to issue orders to Abú-l-khattár to re-instate her and her brothers in all the lands belonging to their father, as contained in the capitulation entered into with Tárik, and confirmed by his predecessor, the Khalif Al-walíd. Hishám was much pleased with Sárah, whose courage and determination he greatly admired: he treated her kindly, and admitted her to his privacy; and when she expressed her wish to depart, gave her a letter for Hondhalah Ibn Sefwán Al-kelbí, his governor of Eastern Africa, intrusting him with the redress of the injury she had sustained at the hands of her uncle Artabásh, and bidding him to have restored to her and her brothers all those states which, in conformity with the laws of succession, might belong to them as their father's inheritance. Hondhalah did as he was commanded: he gave Sárah a letter for his lieutenant in Andalus (Abú-l-khattár), who, on receipt of it, put her and her brothers in full possession of all their rights.

According to other authorities, before Sárah quitted Syria, Hishám gave her in marriage to a noble Arab, named 'Isa Ibn Ibráhím, who dwelt with her at Damascus for some time, but who, on the return of Sárah to Andalus, accompanied her to that country, where he soon after recovered from her uncle Artabásh the possession of all her states, through which he was enabled to live in great affluence and comfort. 'Isa had by her two sons, one named Ibráhím, the other Is'hák, both of whom held offices of trust at Seville, the place of their residence, and were very much esteemed and respected on account of their descent on the mother's side from the Gothic kings of Andalus.

They relate likewise, that whilst Sárah was staying at the court of Hishám, she met in one of her visits to that Khalif his grandson 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiyah, the same who in after-time became the master of Andalus, and that to this circumstance she owed the great favour which she always enjoyed with that monarch; for when 'Abdu-r-rahmán had conquered the whole of Andalus, Sárah hastened to Cordova to compliment him on his good success, and she failed not to recall herself to his memory, and recommend herself to his good graces as a Christian living in his dominions. 'Abdu-r-rahmán then recollected her, and granted her the privilege of entering at all hours the royal palace whenever she went to Cordova. In this manner he continued bestowing on her new honours and distinctions, going so far as to grant her leave to visit his harem and see his wives and daughters without their veils on. After the death of her husband, who died the same year in
which 'Abdu-r-rahamán arrived in Andalus (A.H. 138), Sárah married 'Abdu-r-rahamán Ibn 'Omayr Ibn Sa'íd.

Many truly royal acts have been recorded of this princess, as well as of her father Almond, and of her uncle Artabásh, living, as they did, under the Arabian Amírs, who at that time governed Andalus. The following anecdote, related by the theologian Mohammed Ibn 'Omar Ibn Lebbánah,39 is one: "Ten of the principal Arab chieftains, amongst whom were As-samíl, Ibnu-t-tofayl,40 Abú 'Abdah, and other noble Syrians, came once to visit Artabásh, who received them with the greatest attention, and caused them to sit down on the cushions surrounding his hall. Soon after, a pious man named Maymún,41 the progenitor of the Bení Hazm, and who, though a Syrian too, did not associate much with them, on account of his very pious and abstemious habits, entered the room; and no sooner did Artabásh see him than he got up to receive him (this being an honour which he had not done to the rest of his guests), and bidding him ascend a gilded couch upon which he was reclining, made him a sign to sit in his own place. This favour, however, Maymún most obstinately refused, and, notwithstanding the entreaties of Artabásh, he sat himself on the floor; seeing which, the prince did the same, and sat alongside of Maymún, turning his face towards him, and his back to the company. 'O Artabásh,' inquired Maymún in amazement, 'what makes thee treat one like me in this way?' Artabásh then said, 'hast thou not heard that we came to this country as enemies? and therefore never thought that our residence would be a long one; we were not in any way prepared to stay, and had not a large stock of provisions with us. After we are dead, thou mayest tell our maulis how we despaired of ever returning to our native places.' Maymún then replied, 'God has given thee plenty of fortune's gifts, and I wish thee to let me have one of thy farms, that I may cultivate the land with my own hands, and make over the produce of it to thee, after deducting the sum required for my maintenance.'—'I will with great pleasure,' answered Artabásh; 'but, instead of a farm in which thou wilt have only a small interest, I shall give thee the entire possession of it.' He then sent for the chief of his household, and addressed him thus: 'Thou shalt deliver into the hands of Maymún our farm so and so, on the banks of the river Shús,43 with all the slaves, beasts, and cattle appertaining to it; and thou shalt besides put him in possession of our estate in Jaen.' These orders being readily complied with, Maymún became the owner of extensive property, in which he was succeeded by his son. To them owes its name a fortress in that territory called Kal’ah-Hazm." The authors who have recorded this anecdote add, "that no sooner had Maymún, after returning due thanks for so signal a favour, taken leave of
"Artabásh, and retired, than As-samíl, who had witnessed with envy Maymún's reception, could no longer brook his indignation, and, rising from his seat, addressed him thus: 'I cannot help thinking thou must be out of thy senses; for when I, who am the chief of the Arabs in this country, and my friends here who stand next to me in dignity, enter thy house, thou receivest us with no more distinction than thy common visitors; and when this beggar Maymún comes into thy presence, thou payest him unwonted honours and attention.' To which Artabásh replied, 'O Abú Jaushan! we have repeatedly been told by the people of thy faith, that men of learning and virtue ought to be honoured in this world; why then dost thou find fault with me for what I have done? As to thyself, (may God Almighty prosper thee!) thou hast already sufficient honour, since men regard thee on account of thy dignity and thy power, whilst this poor man has no one else to protect and favour him but God. We have been told of a saying of the Messiah, (peace be on Him!) who said once to his people, 'He who has been honoured in this world by other men being made subservient to him, his honour agrees with his nature, as if he swallowed a stone.' As-samíl was an illiterate man, and hence the allusion made by Artabásh in his reply. After this, As-samíl's friends spoke to him thus: 'Enough of this; let us drop the unprofitable question, and proceed to business by stating the object of our visit.' They then told Artabásh, 'We want precisely the same thing thou hast granted this man; and since thou hast been so generous with one so low, we are curious to see how thou wilt deal with us who are the principal men of the land.'—'You are right,' answered Artabásh; 'he was only a subject, whilst you all are princes and lords; you will not therefore like to receive from me but what is great and handsome: I give you one hundred farms, to be equally divided among you, ten to each.' He then sent for the chief of his household, and having issued the necessary orders in writing, As-samíl and his friends were immediately put in possession of their respective estates, which were the best possessed by Artabásh.' But to resume the thread of our narrative.

Thuábah was succeeded by Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Habíb Ibn Abí 'Obeydah Ibn 'Okbah Ibn Náfi' Al-fehri, who was the descendant of ['Okbah] the governor of Eastern Africa, and the founder of Cairwán, he of the praiseworthy deeds and glorious conquests, whose memory shall for ever live, the stock of a family which obtained no small share of power both in Africa and in Andalus. According to the historian Ar-rázi, Yúsuf Al-fehri was born in the city of Cairwán, whence his father, 'Abdu-r-rahmán, crossed over to Andalus, together with [his grandfather] Habíb Ibn Abí 'Obeydah Al-fehri, at the time of the conquest of that country. 'Abdu-r-rahmán returned to Eastern Africa; but
his son Yúsuf, having quarrelled with him, fled to Andalus, wherein he settled and obtained command. The same writer (Ar-rázi) relates, that on the day on which Yúsuf took possession of the government he was fifty-seven years of age, and that he was elected to that office by the army and the people, after the death of Thuábah, and when the country had been four months without a ruler. He owed his appointment to the suggestions of As-samíl, who recommended him on account of his being a Korayshite; which circumstance, that chief thought, might lead, if not to the entire reconciliation of the rival tribes, at least to a suspension of hostilities. So it happened: both parties put down their arms, and acknowledged the authority of Yúsuf, who was thereby enabled to carry on the government for a period of nine years and nine months.\(^{44}\)

Ibnu Hayyán relates that Yúsuf's appointment took place in the month of Rabi' l-akhar of the year 129 (Dec. 746, or Jan. 747); that he ruled as master in Andalus without acknowledging any superior, since his nomination did not in any way emanate from the Khalif, but merely from the troops.

Yúsuf's government was by no means a tranquil one, as he had to contend with several chiefs, who on various occasions took the field against him, and aimed at depriving him both of life and power. He was however successful, and vanquished all his enemies, until he himself was overpowered and put to death by 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákhe, of the royal family of Umeyyah, as we shall presently relate.

Among the chiefs who disputed with Yúsuf the government of Andalus, Ibnu Hayyán counts 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Alkamah Al-lakhmi, governor of Narbonne, a fortress on the frontiers of the land of the Franks, whose undaunted courage, great corporal strength, and splendid feats of arms, became proverbial in Andalus, and won him the surname of Al-fáríshu-l-andalus (the Knight of Andalus). This 'Abdu-r-rahmán had, on a former occasion, assisted the sons of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan in their revolt against Balj Ibn Beshr, and it was he who dealt this chief the blow from which he died a few days after the battle. However, as 'Abdu-r-rahmán was preparing to attack Yúsuf, he was treacherously put to death by his own men, who hastened to convey his head to his enemy.

'Orwah Ibn-1-walíd was the next chieftain who took up arms against Yúsuf. Assisted by the Christians and others, he raised the standard of revolt in the city of Beja, whence he marched upon Seville, which place he also reduced. His forces increasing by the arrival of numerous adventurers, who from all parts of the country flocked under his banners, Yúsuf marched in person against him, and put him to death.

'Amir Al-'abdári \(^{45}\) rose likewise at Algesiras, but without better success. Yúsuf marched against him, and made him lay down his arms on condition that he should
reside at Cordova. After which, however, he had him beheaded, in the year 138 (beginning June 15, 755), as will be related hereafter.

'Amru Ibn Yežíd Al-azrak is another of the Arabian chiefs who revolted against Yúsuf. Some say that he was the first who resisted his authority, and that he rose at Seville, but was vanquished and put to death.

Besides the above rebellions, Yúsuf had to quell that of Al-habáb Az-zahrí, an Arabian chieftain, who, on hearing of the victories which the Bení 'Abbás had obtained in the East over their enemies of the house of Umeyyah, appeared in arms against Yúsuf, and proclaimed the Khalifs of the house of 'Abbás as sovereigns of Andalus. Having collected a numerous host, he laid siege to Saragossa, where As-samīl commanded in Yúsuf's name. That chief defended himself for a while, but, seeing he could not hold much longer, sent to Yúsuf for aid. This, however, Yúsuf would not grant, as he was angry with As-samīl at the time, and wished for his destruction. At last the tribe of Kays ran to the assistance of their chief, and, having compelled Al-habáb to raise the siege, extricated As-samīl from his dangerous position. Al-habáb then returned, and gained possession of Saragossa; but, some time after, Yúsuf marched in person against him and put him to death.

Yúsuf was the last governor of Andalus; for, in the year 138 (beginning June 15, 755), 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiyah, a scion of the illustrious house of Umeyyah, which had been in possession of the Khalifate for a period of nearly ninety years, arrived in Andalus, where, with the assistance of the numerous partisans and adherents of his family, he was enabled to contend successfully against him, and to found a durable empire for his posterity. But, as it is our intention to relate in detail the events which led to this mighty revolution, we need not further allude to them here, and will now give the chronology of the Governors of Andalus.

Tárik was the first governor of Andalus; then came Músa Ibn Nosseýr: neither of them, however, fixed his residence in that country. Then came 'Abdu-l-'azíz, son of Músa, who held his court at Seville, where he was murdered. After him Ayúb Ibn Habíb Al-lakhmí, who transferred the seat of the government to Cordova. After him all the Governors or Sultáns of Andalus held their court at that city, or at Az-zahrá, as is well known and we shall hereafter relate, until the dynasty of the Bení Merwán was finally overthrown. Then came Al-horr Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ath-thakefí; then As-samîh Ibn Málik Al-khaulání; then 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abdillah Al-gháfekí; then 'Anbasah Ibn Sohaym Al-kelbí; then 'Ozrah Ibn 'Abdillah Al-fehrí; then Yahya Ibn Salmah Al-kelbí; then 'Othmán Ibn Abí Nes'ah Al-khath'amí; then Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Al-ashja'í; then 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan Al-fehrí; then Balj Ibn Beshr Ibn 'Iyádh Al-kusheýrí; then Tha'lebah Ibn Salámah Al-jodhámí; then Thuábah Ibn Salámah Al-jodhámí; then
Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-fehri. These are the governors who ruled over Andalus without transmitting the command as an inheritance to their posterity, or assuming any other title but that of Amír (Governor). They swayed the country for a period of forty-six years, two months and six days, counting from the day on which Roderic the Goth, King of Andalus, was defeated and killed, that is to say, on Sunday, the 5th of Shawwá́l of the year 92 (July 26, A. D. 711), to that on which the Governor Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán was defeated, and his rival, 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiya, of the royal house of Umeyyáh, gained possession of the empire, and made his triumphant entry into Cordova, namely, on the day of 'idu-l-adhá́hí (festivity of the victims), or the tenth of Dhi-l-hajjah of the year 138 (May 15, A. D. 756).

All these Amírs (Governors) were appointed either by the Governors of Africa, of which Andalus was then a dependency, or by the Khalifs of the house of Merwán (the Bení Umeyyáh), who ruled in the East, and were the sole Imáms of the Moslems, until the civil war was kindled, and their mighty dynasty, which had lasted for a period of one thousand months, was overthrown by the Bení 'Abbás, who succeeded them in the empire, and scattered them like dust before the wind.

In course of time, however, Andalus shook off the yoke of the Bení 'Abbás; for 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiya Ibn Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Merwán, after surmounting all manner of dangers, wrested that country from them, and made it the seat of a powerful empire for himself and his sons, collecting round him the relics of his family, and surrounding himself with the freedmen and adherents of his ancestors: in short, the whole of Andalus submitted to him, and, after his death, to his posterity, who held the supreme power there for a long space of time; God Almighty being pleased to grant him victory over his enemies, the Bení 'Abbás, who, wishing to regain possession of Andalus, and to extirpate all the members of the rival house, frequently sent armies to invade that country, or instigated the chiefs of the Arabian tribes there to take up arms against 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and to proclaim the supremacy of their own family. But all their attempts proved unsuccessful; for that Sultán defeated one after the other all those who were in arms against him, and put numbers of them to the sword, principally during the Khalifate of Abú Ja'far Al-mansúr, as we shall relate more at large when we come to treat of the establishment of the house of Umeyyáh in Andalus.

We have now given in the preceding pages the cream of the information to be found in the work of Ibn Khaldún, as collected or compiled from various historical sources. As for ourselves, we have added, when required, such information as we deemed sufficient [to illustrate this narrative], or pointed out to the reader the contradictions occurring in the works of ancient historians. All this we have done
with the greatest possible brevity; since, had it been our wish to expatiate at any length on the deeds of the conquest, and the exploits of the Moslems, we might have filled a whole volume or more with the subject. We must also inform our readers that the above extracts on the history of Andalus, from its conquest by Tārik Ibn Zeyád to the arrival of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, are chiefly taken from the works of Ibnu Hayyán and Ibnu Khaldún, two celebrated historians, who had access to the best sources of information: the former author especially, who, in his two historical works, the Matín and the Muktabis, preserved almost every tradition current in his time on the events here recorded, mentions a long poem, which an Andalusian writer, named Yahya Ibn Hakem Al-ghazzál, wrote in the species of metre called rejáz, wherein he describes most minutely the causes of the invasion of Andalus; the chief battles therein fought between the Moslems and the Goths; and lastly, the number and the names of the Amírs who administered the affairs of that country until the arrival of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiyyah;—“a work,” observes Ibnu Hayyán, “exceedingly instructive and useful, and which may be “found in the hands of most people.”

We shall now proceed, with the help of God, to relate the events which led to the establishment of the family of Merwán or Bení Umeyyah in Andalus.
BOOK VI.

CHAP. I.

Overthrow of the dynasty of Umeyyah—Death of Merwan, their last Khalif—'Abdu-r-rahman Ibn Mu’awiyah takes to flight—Is pursued by the emissaries of As-seffah—Arrives in Eastern Africa—Evades the search of the governor—Wanders through the country—Sends his freedman Bedr to Andalus—A party is formed in his favour—The conspirators communicate their plans to As-samil—Answer made by that chieftain—The tribes of Modhar and Rabia’ah refuse to join them—'Abdu-r-rahman’s party is daily strengthened—He embarks for Andalus—Lands at Almuñecar—Preparations of Yusuf—Desertions in his camp—'Abdu-r-rahman marches to Cordova—Gains the battle of Musarah—Enters the capital—Starts in pursuit of Yusuf—Obliges him to capitulate.

During the Khalifate of Merwan Ibn Mohammed Al-ja’dí, the last Khalif of the house of Umeyyah in the East, Abú-l-’abbás 'Abdullah, surnamed As-seffah (the shedder of blood), rose in arms against him, and was proclaimed at Kúfah. After many sanguinary encounters, in which the armies of Merwan were invariably defeated, As-seffah took Damascus, the capital. Having subsequently sent his own brother Sáleḥ in pursuit of Merwan, who had taken refuge in Egypt, that Sultán was overtaken at Buseyr, and put to death in the month of Jumáda-l-akhar of the year 132 (February or March, A. D. 750). Thus was the mighty dynasty of the Bení Merwan overthrown. There is no power or strength but in God!

Every where the unfortunate members of the proscribed family were seized, and put to death without mercy; and few escaped the search made by the emissaries of As-seffah in every province of the empire. A youth named 'Abdu-r-rahman, who was the son of Mu’awiyah, and the grandson of the Khalif Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, was almost the only prince of that house who, after great dangers, succeeded in escaping the vengeance of the Bení ’Abbás. His adventures are thus related by the historian Ibnu Hayyán in his Muktabis:

"When the empire of the Bení Umeyyah was overthrown in the East, and the
search for the individuals of that family commenced, 'Abdu-r-rahmán was one of those who fled, to escape the vengeance of the Bení 'Abbás: he never ceased marching with his family and his son until he halted at a village on the banks of the Euphrates, in the neighbourhood of which was a thick forest, where he hoped to conceal himself from the spies of Abú Moslemah until he could find an opportunity of passing to Africa. The following account of his adventures whilst flying from his enemies has been handed down to us as related by 'Abdu-r-rahmán himself: 'As I was on a certain day sitting under cover of my tent, to shelter myself from the rain, which fell heavily, and watching my eldest son Suleymán, then about four years old, who was playing in front of it, I saw him suddenly enter the door, crying violently; and, soon after, he ran towards me, and clung to my bosom for protection. Not knowing what he meant, I pushed him away; but the child clung still more to me, as one seized with violent fear, and began uttering such exclamations as children are wont to utter when they are frightened. I then left the tent, that I might see what caused his fear; when lo! I saw the whole village in confusion, and the inhabitants running to and fro in great consternation. I went a little further on, and saw the black banners [of the 'Abbássid] fluttering in the wind. At sight of these a younger brother of mine, who had also rushed out of the tent, and was with me at the time, began to fly at the top of his speed, saying, 'Away! away with thee, O brother! for yonder black banners are the banners of the sons of 'Abbás.' Hearing this, I hastily grasped some dinárs which I had just at hand, and fled precipitately out of the village with my child and my younger brother, taking care to apprise my sisters of my departure, and of the road we intended to take; and bidding them join us at a spot which I named, together with my freedman Bedr, who was the bearer of my message. In this manner we escaped from our pursuers, and halted at a spot some distance from the village. Scarcely had we left our tent when it was surrounded by a body of cavalry, who scrupulously searched every corner of it; but finding no one inside, they withdrew, and soon after left the village. In the mean time Bedr joined us, bringing with him a man well acquainted with the course of the Euphrates and its banks, to act as our guide, whom I directed to purchase for us horses and the articles requisite for our journey. It happened, however, that this man was a spy of our enemies, who wished only to entrap us; for scarcely had we been a few minutes under his guidance, when we again saw the horsemen in full pursuit of us. We then used our greatest speed, and God permitted that we should reach before them the banks of the Euphrates, into which we threw ourselves, the horsemen arriving almost immediately after. When our pursuers saw this, they began to cry out to us,
"Return hither, no harm shall be done unto you;' but I, without listening to "their treacherous words, dashed into the midst of the current, and my companions "did the same. I being an excellent swimmer, took charge of my son, whilst my "servant Bedr helped my younger brother. When in the middle of the stream, "my brother felt his strength fail him, and he was seized with the fear of death. "Seeing his danger, I returned to him to give him courage, and induce him to "exert himself; but, as I approached, I saw him make for the bank, no doubt "deceived by the treacherous words of our enemies, and believing that his life "would be spared. I then cried to him, 'O brother! come to me, come to me!' "but he would not listen to my advice; for the promise that his life would be "spared, and the fear of being drowned, made him hasten to the shore. I, moreover, succeeded in crossing the Euphrates. One of my pursuers seemed at one "time inclined to leap into the river, and swim across in pursuit of me; but his "comrades dissuaded him from the undertaking, and he left me alone. No sooner "had I set my feet on shore, than I began anxiously to look about for my brother, "whom I saw in the hands of the soldiers, and whom I expected every moment to "see put to death. I was not mistaken; for the traitors, having dragged their "victim to a spot not far from the river, beheaded him immediately, and leaving "the trunk on the spot, marched triumphantly away with the head. My brother "was then thirteen years old.

"The sight of this catastrophe struck me with horror: I was seized with violent "fears for my life, and began to run with all my speed; my feet scarcely touched "the ground; I flew rather than ran. In this way I took refuge in a thick forest, "and hid myself amongst the trees, until the pursuit ceased; I then left my place "of concealment, and fled the country, taking the route to the west, until I reached "Eastern Africa,' " &c.

Ibn Hayyán continues. "After the above adventure, 'Abdu-r-rahmán fled the "country with the utmost speed he could use, and marched until he arrived in "Eastern Africa, whither his own sister, Ummu-1-asbagh, and his two freedmen, "Bedr and Sálim, had preceded him, provided with money for their sustenance, "and jewels. Other relatives or partisans of the proscribed family of Umeyyah "had likewise taken refuge in the same province, where 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn "Habíb Al-fehri³ was then governing in the Khalif's name. It happened, however, "that this governor was on terms of intimacy with a Jewish astrologer and sooth- "sayer, who had once been a servant of Moslemah Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, one of the "Bení Umeyyah, but was now attached to the Bení 'Abbás. This man having upon "a certain occasion found Ibn Habíb alone, spoke to him thus: 'A Korayshite "youth, of the family of Merwán, descended from kings, shall in time become
"a great conqueror; he shall found in Andalus an empire for him and his posterity; his name is 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and he wears two long curls.' When the governor heard this, he procured two locks of hair answering exactly the description of those which the Jew meant, and sent them to his officers, trusting that they would thereby be enabled to discover the object of his search. So it happened; for soon after 'Abdu-r-rahmán's arrival in Eastern Africa, he was recognised by one of the officers, and brought to the presence of Ibn Habíb, who, seeing the two locks of hair on his head, sent for the Jew, and spoke to him thus: 'By thy life! this is the very youth mentioned in thy prophecy; he must die.' The Jew then said, 'If thou kill him, he is not the person intended; if, on the contrary, thou spare his life, he must conquer and reign:' upon which he let him go. However, several of the Bení Umeyyah had taken refuge in Eastern Africa, trusting that the governor Ibn Habíb, who was an adherent of their family, would allow them to live in peace in those remote regions; but, contrary to their expectations, he persecuted them, and obliged them to leave the country. Two sons of Al-walíd Ibn Yezíd, who had taken refuge in his territory, he caused to be seized under some false pretence, and put to death. He also confiscated the property of Isma'il Ibn Abán Ibn 'Abdi-l-'aziz Ibn Merwán, another of the Bení Umeyyah, and married a sister of his against his will and express injunctions. After this he tried to seize the person of 'Abdu-r-rahmán; but having received timely intelligence, this prince hid himself, and succeeded in reaching a place of safety." So far Ibnu Hayyán.

Other accounts state, that when 'Abdu-r-rahmán left Palestine for Africa, he had with him besides Bedr, who had been a freed slave of his father, three other servants whose names were Abú Shafá', 'Amru, and Yezíd; that he stopped at Maghílah, where he was hospitably entertained by a Berber chief named Abú Korrah Wánesús, who secreted him some time at his house. Here it was that his freedman Bedr overtook him, bringing with him the jewels and gold sent by his sister Ummu-l-asbagh. One day, as 'Abdu-r-rahmán was in the tent of this chief, the emissaries of Ibn Habíb, the governor, suddenly made their appearance, and searched all the corners of it; but the Berber's wife, named Tekfah, hid him under her clothes, and by this means concealed 'Abdu-r-rahmán from the eyes of his pursuers. It is further related, that 'Abdu-r-rahmán never forgot the signal service he received on this occasion; for, when he became King of Andalus, he invited Wánesús and his wife to Cordova, and treated them kindly, admitting them to his privacy, and conferring on them all sorts of honours and distinctions. He gave Tekfah leave to visit his palace at all hours, and enter his harem whenever she
chose; and more than one anecdote has been handed down to us to show the great favour she always enjoyed with the prince."

The historian Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakem relates that 'Abdu-r-rahmán passed five years in concealment in the town of Barkah; at the end of which time he quitted that place, and travelled through the country until he arrived at Tihart, a city of Central Maghreb, where he placed himself under the protection of a tribe called the Bení Rustam, who were then the lords of that country. Thence he visited the encampments of various Berber tribes, and at last fixed his quarters not far from the sea, in the territory of a tribe called Zenátah. It was from this place that 'Abdu-r-rahmán first cast a wistful eye upon Andalus, and dispatched his freedman Bedr with messages to the numerous clients and adherents of his family who were in that country.

At that time the number of maulis or adherents to the family of Merwán, inscribed on the rolls of the Andalusian army, was very considerable, amounting to between four and five hundred, all men of tried courage, and who had many followers devoted to them. Their chiefs on this occasion were Abú 'Othmán 'Obeydullah Ibn 'Othmán and 'Abdullah Ibn Kháled, both of whom had formerly been maulis of the Khalif 'Othmán, and had on their arrival in Andalus been intrusted with the keeping of the banners of the Bení Umeyyah, and had also been invested with the command of the Syrian Arabs who had settled in the territory of Elvira. To this Abú 'Othmán, Bedr the freedman brought letters from his master, in which 'Abdu-r-rahmán enumerated the benefits conferred by his ancestors of the house of Umeyyah on Abú 'Othmán, and reminded him of the obligation under which the latter now lay to serve their cause: he further acquainted him with his own legitimate rights to the empire, which he said it was his intention to assert, as the only surviving heir by true lineal descent from his grandfather Hishám, in whose hands the Khalifate had been vested. He concluded by asking him to rise in his support, with such among the adherents of the house of Umeyyah and others as he could trust; stating, that if he could only procure him the means of entering Andalus, he was sure of success; after which he would not fail to reward him and his friends as they deserved, and bestow on them all manner of honours and distinctions. He then gave him directions as to the best means to be employed to gain their object. He was to seek the assistance of those among his friends in whom he could trust, and who might aid him in his revolt: he was to take advantage of the mortal feuds and dissensions then existing between the Arabian tribes of Yemen and the sons of Modhar, who, from long-existing hereditary wrongs, hated each other most heartily, and were sure readily to embrace any cause in opposition to that of their adversaries.
Abú 'Othmán immediately agreed to what was requested of him, stimulated, no
doubt, by the prospect of his own personal advantage. When Bedr arrived with
this message, 'Othmán was preparing to march to Saragossa, in the Thagher, to the
relief of the governor As-samîl Ibn Hátim, who had been besieged there by a
rebellious chieftain named Az-zohrí; for Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, then supreme
governor of Andalus, having received intelligence of As-samîl's dangerous situation,
had directed him to hasten to his aid with the disposable forces of his district; and
in compliance with this order 'Othmán was about to march to Saragossa, when
'Abdu-r-rahmán's secret message was delivered to him: he nevertheless undertook
his march. Whilst therefore 'Othmán was going to Saragossa with his troops, he
one day sent for his son-in-law 'Abdullah Ibn Kháled, who accompanied the
expedition, and addressed him thus: "Methinks, O Ibn Kháled! that were we
" to apprise As-samîl of the news brought us by Bedr, we might learn what he
" thinks about it, and ascertain at the same time whether we can reckon upon him
" or not: should he not agree to take part with us, As-samîl, I am persuaded, will
" never divulge our secret, as I know him to be a man of honour and principle."
" That may be," answered 'Abdullah; "but were we to do as thou proposest,
" we could not be sure of success: for although on the one hand his envy of the
" Sultán Yúsuf, and the high post he occupies, might perhaps induce As-samîl to
" embrace the cause of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, it is likely on the other hand that the fear
" of losing under the new sovereign all the power and influence he now enjoys,
" will prevent him from joining in the undertaking." To which Abú 'Othmán
replied, "We may easily remove that obstacle by flattering his ambition, and
" deceiving him with promises of riches and advancement. We will tell him that
" 'Abdu-r-rahmán, in coming to this country, has no other object in view than
" to obtain security for his person, and claim the fifth of the spoil due to his
" grandfather Hishám, and live on its produce." To this proposal 'Abdullah
agreed; and accordingly the two chieftains, before taking leave of As-samîl to
return to their respective districts, took him into a private room, and there disclosed
all their plans to him.

It happened as Abú 'Othmán had foretold. No sooner had he explained his
views to As-samîl than that chieftain began to utter complaints against the governor
Yúsuf for not hastening to his relief when he was attacked by Al-hobáb Az-zohrí in
the neighbourhood of Saragossa, and leaving him to fight single-handed against
the superior forces of his enemy. At last he said to them, "You may rely on me
" for the furtherance of your plans; write to the youth, and tell him to cross over
" to us: when I have heard of his landing, I will go to Yúsuf and advise him
" to do him honour, admit him to his intimacy, and give him one of his daughters
"in marriage. If he follow my advice, your object is gained; if he refuse, we shall "strike his bald head with our swords, and take the command of this country from "him, to give it to your friend." This being agreed upon, the two chieftains heartily thanked As-samīl for his proffered assistance, and after kissing his hand they separated, and retired, each to his destination; As-samīl to Toledo, of which city he had been made governor by Yūsuf, who no longer wished to retain him in the command of the Thagher (Aragon); Abū 'Othmān and his son-in-law 'Abdullah Ibn Khāled, to their abode in the town of Elvira. At this place many were already in the secret; for [before starting for Saragossa] Abū 'Othmān and 'Abdullah had spoken to the officers of the Syrian army quartered in that town, as well as to other Arabs of distinction, and to all those friends in whom they could trust, and communicated to them their plans respecting the son of Muʿāwiyah ('Abdu-r-raḥmān). The affair was soon divulged, and talked of among the inhabitants of the neighbouring towns, spreading like fire among brush-wood; the conspirators being not a little assisted in their plans by the circumstance that the year in which this came to pass was one of great scarcity, as the whole of Andalus had been visited by a most dreadful famine, which lasted for a long time.

However, there are not wanting authors who relate this affair differently. They certainly say that As-samīl, at first, agreed to the propositions of the conspirators, and consented to assist them in their undertaking to give the empire to 'Abdu-r-raḥmān, but that after they had left him he thought more seriously on the subject, and repented of what he had promised; that he accordingly went to them, and said, "I have weighed attentively all the chances of the undertaking which you wish me "to share with you, and I find that the youth you recommend belongs to a family, "one individual of which is enough to set all this island on fire, and that perchance "you and I may perish in the conflagration." Besides, our present ruler [Yūsuf] "is a man over whose mind I exercise great influence, and on whom I lean "for support; and I do not intend to have him changed for any other. By Allah! "I say more; if on reaching your tents you still persevere in your plans, and "continue gaining over partisans to the cause of that youth, I shall be compelled "to oppose you for my own sake. I therefore give you to understand that my "sword shall be the first unsheathed against 'Abdu-r-raḥmān. I wish you success." The conspirators then said to him, "Thy advice is our own, and we think as thou dost." After which they left him, the better to persuade him that 'Abdu-r-raḥmān's object in coming to Andalus was not to make himself master of the country.

They returned to Elvira, where they laboured, though in vain, to gain over to their cause the chiefs of the Arabian tribes of Modhar and Rabi‘ah. After this they applied a second time to the Yemenis, and began adroitly to feed their
animosity and hatred to the Bení Modhar. They found them a set of men in whose breasts raged the most violent passions, and who, in order to revenge the injuries received, were ready to embrace any cause, however desperate. Having easily persuaded them to join in the undertaking, they concerted together the means of carrying their project into execution. Profiting by the absence of the Sultán Yusuf, who was then in the Thagher (Aragon), and by that of As-samíl, who was, likewise, far off, they commenced their operations. Their first care was to procure a vessel to send back Bedr: having bought one, they dispatched in her eleven of their men, with instructions to land near 'Abdu-r-rahmán’s residence, and acquaint him with their readiness to uphold his pretensions, and declare for him the moment he should land in Andalus. In the mean time Abú 'Othmán and his friends, with whom Bedr had left his master’s signet-ring, made ample use of it, sealing the numerous letters and proclamations which they addressed to their friends and the people of Andalus in 'Abdu-r-rahmán’s name. In this manner the partisans of that prince increased, and the conspiracy spread wide through the country. However, the emissaries, in whose number was a distinguished officer named Temám Ibn 'Alkamah, arrived safely at their destination, and landed near Maghilah, in the country of the Berbers. They found 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who, since the departure of his freedman Bedr, had been in a state of great anxiety, and who was now expecting him every moment, praying fervently on the sea shore. Bedr was the first man to leap on shore, and to announce to his master the success of his expedition: he was quickly followed by Temám Ibn 'Alkamah, who, in the name of his friends, confirmed the good news brought by Bedr. "What is thy name?" said 'Abdu-r-rahmán to him. "Temám."—"And what thy surname?"—"Abú Ghálib" (the father of the victorious).—"God is great!" exclaimed 'Abdu-r-rahmán; "may his name be exalted! for, if that be the case, we shall, through the power and interposition of the Almighty, conquer that land of yours, and reign over it." 'Abdu-r-rahmán could never forget that Temám had been the first man to bring him the good tidings; for when he had vanquished all his enemies, and was firmly seated on the throne of Andalus, he appointed him his Hájib, which office he held until the death of his sovereign. . But to return.

'Abdu-r-rahmán hastened on board; but whilst he was doing so, there came to the shore a troop of Berbers, who made demonstrations of opposing his embarkation. 'Abdu-r-rahmán then took up some dinàrs, which Temám had brought with him for the purpose, and gave them to be divided among them; upon which they all seemed satisfied, and he was allowed to embark: but before the vessel could quit the shore, there came another party of Berbers, who, not having shared in the former gift, were determined to oppose his departure. One of them clung to the
cable of camel’s hair which still retained the vessel to the shore; but one of
the party, whose name was Shákir, laying hands on his sword, struck off the hand
of the Berber, which fell instantly, severed from his body. Soon after, a favourable
wind sprung up, which impelled the vessel on her course, and they landed safely on
the coast of Elvira, near a sea-port town called Al-munékab (Almuñécar), in the
month of Rabi’-l-akhar of the year 138, according to Ibnu Hayyán, or in the three
first days of Rabi’-l-awal, according to other authorities. Immediately on his
landing, 'Abdu-r-rahmán was met on the shore by the two chiefs of the conspiracy,
Abú 'Othmán and his son-in-law Abú Kháled, who conducted him to a town
called Torosh (Torrox), where Abú 'Othmán was residing at the time.

According to other accounts, 'Abdu-r-rahmán landed at the hour of 'asr [shortly
before sunset]; and the news of his disembarkation being speedily divulged among
his partisans, 'Abdullah and Abú 'Othmán met him on the shore with great show
of consideration and respect. He then said his afternoon prayers with them, and
rode on to Torrox, where he made some stay: he was here met by the principal
maulis of his family and some Arabs, who took the oath of allegiance to him. How-
ever, no sooner was the news of 'Abdu-r-rahmán’s disembarkation made known
through the country, than the people who were in the secret flocked to him from
all parts. The first man who arrived was Yúsuf Ibn Bokht, who was the chief of
the Bení Umeyyah: next came Jodárán Ibn 'Amru Al-mad'hají, who inhabited
Malaga, and who, in after-time, was appointed Kádí to the army; and Abú 'Abdah
Hossán Ibn Málík Al-kélbí, whom 'Abdu-r-rahmán named to the office of Wizír.
In this way the party waxed stronger day by day, and even moment by moment;
and people flocked to his banners from every part of the country; God being
pleased to grant all His support to 'Abdu-r-rahmán’s cause, until that prince was
enabled to gain possession of the capital, Cordova, within seven months, counting
from the day of his landing on the coast of Almuñécar.

Whilst these events were passing, Yúsuf Al-fehrí, the governor of Andalus, was
in the Thagher (Aragon), carrying on war against some chiefs who refused to
acknowledge his authority. He was, however, completely successful, defeating and
taking prisoners the leaders of the insurrection. These were Al-hobáb Az-zohrí,
who, as related, had risen in the neighbourhood of Saragossa, and 'A'mír Al-'abdárí,
another chieftain who had likewise risen in arms against him. Having got rid of
his enemies in that quarter, Yúsuf hastened towards Toledo. Whilst he was
encamped at Wáda-r-ramal (Guadarrama), near that city, he ordered the execution
of his prisoners, though he had solemnly promised to spare their lives, and caused
'A'mír Al-'abdárí and his son to be beheaded. Yúsuf is said to have done this
at the instigation of As-samíl.
They relate that as Yusuf was entering his tent, after witnessing the execution of his prisoners, a messenger arrived at full speed from his son 'Abdu-r-rahmán, whom he had left in command of Cordova during his absence, bearing news "how a youth, named 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiya, had lately landed on the shores occupied by the Syrian settlers, and had been immediately proclaimed by the adherents and partisans of the family of Merwán, who had flocked to him from all parts." When the news spread through Yusuf's camp, his men, who had already disapproved the execution of 'A'mir and his son,—who belonged to the illustrious tribe of Koraysh, and who, as above related, had been put to death, notwithstanding his solemn promise to the contrary,—began openly to murmur, and many decided upon deserting his banners that very night, and joining the troops of the invader. Accordingly, in the depth of night, the chiefs having called together their men, left the camp unperceived, the Almighty sending down a heavy rain, as if to cover the sound of their footsteps, and thereby disconcert the plans of Yusuf. When morning dawned, Yusuf found himself deserted by all except his own personal friends and slaves, and the tribe of Kays, who remained faithful to As-samíl and his followers: seeing which, Yusuf marched immediately to Toledo. Arrived there, he asked As-samíl for his advice in their perilous situation. "My advice," said As-samíl to him, "is that we march immediately upon 'Abdu-r-rahmán, so as not to give him time to strengthen himself; for I strongly suspect that the Yemení Arabs will go over to him, owing to the hatred they openly bear to us, the Bení Modhar." Yusuf then answered, "I agree with thee, O As-samíl! as to the expediency of what thou proposest; but thou seest to have forgotten that we have been deserted by most of our own followers, and have at present no forces to march against the invader. We are, besides, without either money or provisions; we have to march through a sterile and deserted country, in which hunger must be our lot. I propose going first to Cordova, where we may get re-inforcements, and wait there for further news; perhaps the danger is not so great, nor the rising so formidable, as it has been represented." To which As-samíl replied, "Believe me, O Yusuf, mine is the best advice upon this occasion: thou mayest act contrary to it; but, if thou dost, thou wilt in time discover thy error, and suffer from it." Yusuf, however, would not listen to As-samíl, and marched to Cordova.

'Abdu-r-rahmán in the mean while was not inactive. After passing some time at Elvira, where he soon found himself at the head of seven hundred horsemen, of the best Arabian tribes, or of the maulis of his family, he left that city, and repaired to the district of Rayyah, where his forces were considerably increased, both the governor ('Isa Ibn Musáwid) and the inhabitants hastening to take the
oath of allegiance, and proclaim him their sovereign. Thence he went to Shidúnah, where the governor, 'Itáb Ibn 'Alkamah Al-lakhmí, did the same; then to Modrúr;9 and from the latter place to Seville, where he was met by the chief of the Yemení Arabs, Abú-s-sabáh Ibn Yahya Al-yahssóbí. 'Abdu-r-rahmán then summoned his friends to a council; and having heard their advice, it was unanimously resolved to march upon Cordova, the seat of the government. They say that as they were halting at Toshínáh (Tocina) on their way to that capital, it occurred to them that they had neither banner nor colours by which they might be guided on the field of battle. A long spear was immediately produced, and it was proposed that a turban should be placed on the top of it; but as in order to effect this it was necessary to incline the head of the spear, which was supposed by some to be of extremely bad omen, the following expedient was devised: the spear was placed erect between two olive-trees standing close together; a man was then directed to ascend one of the trees, from the top of which he was enabled to fasten the turban to the spear, without lowering it in the least. They relate also that some time previous to this event, a learned man named Forkád, who was gifted with the science of divination, happening to pass by the spot where the two olive-trees stood, said, pointing to them, "Between yonder two trees a banner "shall be erected for a prince, before whom no other banner shall ever wave "victorious." The prophecy was fulfilled; for with this same banner did 'Abdu-r-rahmán and his son Hishám vanquish their enemies wherever they met them, as we shall have more than one opportunity to relate hereafter. They say that this banner was held in such veneration and respect by the first sovereigns of that family [Bení Umeyyah], that whenever the turban by long use decayed, it was not removed, but a new one was placed over it. In this manner was the banner of the Bení Umeyyah preserved until the days of the Sultán 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-hakem, son of Hishám, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákheľ,—others say till the days of his son Mohammed,—when the turban upon the spear being decayed, the Wizírs of that monarch met together in council to deliberate upon its renewal. Seeing nothing else under the decayed turban but a few rags twisted round the spear, and not knowing that these had been long an object of veneration, they issued orders for their removal. The whole was consequently removed, and thrown away, and a fresh turban placed in its stead. It happened that Jehwar Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Bokht, then the chief Wizír, and president of the council, but who was absent during the deliberation, arrived in Cordova the day after the mischief was done. Having inquired into the case, he gave his brother Wizír a most severe reprimand for their ignorance and their hasty decision: he said to them, "Since "you have through your imprudence causd the loss of the good omen attached to
"that banner, it is but just that you should consult with the elders of our nation
" as to the best means of repairing the mischief done: go, and tell them your case."
The Wizírs went, and the rags were carefully looked for; but they could nowhere
be found. When the Sultán was made acquainted with the loss, he was much
grieved; and as his armies, always victorious, met after that event with severe
defeats, it was thought at the time that these disasters were chiefly to be attri-
buted to the loss of the banner. "From that time," remarks the judicious
historian Ibnu Hayyán, "the empire of the Bení Umeyyah began visibly to
decline." It is generally asserted that the man who ascended the olive-tree
for the purpose of crowning the spear was 'Abdullah Ibn Kháled, one of the maulis of the
Bení Umeyyah established in Andalus, whose father, Kháled, had likewise crowned
the banner of Merwán Ibn Al-hakem, the grandfather of 'Abdu-r-rahмán I., when,
after the overthrow of the dynasty of the Bení Harb, he was joined by the Bení
Umeyyah and the Bení Kelb, to make war against Adh-dhahhák Ibn Kays Al-fehri,
who was afterwards defeated and put to death at the battle of Merj-Ráhitt. They
say also that the keeping of this banner was first intrusted to Abú Suleýmán Dáúd
Al-ansári, in whose posterity the charge remained until the days of the Amír
Mohammed, son of 'Abdu-r-rahмán II., when, as related, it was irretrievably
lost.

But to resume the thread of our interrupted narrative. On the approach of
'Abdu-r-rahмán to Cordova, Yúsuf went out to meet him. There had been a
famine in Andalus for six consecutive years, so that the people were greatly
debilitated from want of food. Since their departure from Seville, the common
soldiers in 'Abdu-r-rahмán's host had subsisted merely upon the herbs and plants
which they found on the road, the officers and rich men not faring much better.
It was then spring-time, and the year in which this happened was ever afterwards
called 'dмu-l-khalaf,10 i. e. 'the year after the famine.' The Guadalquivir
too was considerably swollen, and in some districts had overflowed its banks.
Yúsuf then marched from Cordova, and 'Abdu-r-rahмán came down from Seville,
until they met each other at a place where the Guadalquivir separated the two
hosts. Thence 'Abdu-r-rahмán continued his march up to Cordova, following
the right bank of the river, which being perceived by Yúsuf, this governor re-
traced his steps, and returned to his capital by the opposite bank, watching at
the same time all the movements of his adversary. In this manner both armies
proceeded until Yúsuf pitched his tents in the plain of Musárah,11 west of Cordova,
where 'Abdu-r-rahмán also encamped in front of him. Negotiations then com-
nenced, and messengers crossed from one camp to the other, with a view to
adjust a peace between the belligerents. Yúsuf had given orders to slaughter some sheep, and make a display of their flesh, meaning it, no doubt, as an insult to the son of Mu'áwiyah, whose followers, as we have already observed, were almost starved for want of food. 'Abdu-r-rahmán, however, made every preparation for the coming contest: he caused his men to keep in readiness with their arms, and he himself passed all night awake, to see that his orders were punctually executed.

They relate that Yúsuf was the first who made proposals of peace to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who feigned to accept of them, and thus gained two days, the last of which was the day of 'Arefah of the year 138 (May 14, A. D. 756). Under this belief, 'Abdu-r-rahmán's men passed the night preceding the 'festival of the victims;' but 'Abdu-r-rahmán thought differently in his heart from what he affected in public, and he consequently took every measure to ensure the success of the approaching contest: he also gave orders that Kháled Ibn Zeyd, Yúsuf's secretary, who was at the time in his camp, whither he had been sent with a message from his master, should be kept a prisoner. "If we are defeated," he added, "let him "be put to death; if we vanquish, spare his life." So that Kháled kept saying the night before the battle, "There is nothing I wish for more ardently at this "moment than to see the troops of my master put to flight by those of 'Abdu-r-"rahmán Ad-dákhel."

When the morning of the day of the victims dawned, 'Abdu-r-rahmán, at the head of his cavalry, made a sudden attack upon the camp of his rival. They say that 'Abdu-r-rahmán was that day mounted on a beautiful steed; upon which some of the Yemení Arabs said to each other, "Look at our youthful general; he is "mounted on a swift-footed animal, the better to fly from the field of battle. Who "can assure us that he will not turn back at the first onset, and leave us to fight the "battle ourselves?" 'Abdu-r-rahmán having been informed of this by one of his maulís, rode up to Abú-s-sabáh, the chief of the Yemení Arabs, who was mounted on a grey mule called Kaukab (lightning), and addressed him thus: "O Abú-s-"sabáh! this horse of mine is in the habit of rearing under me, so that it is "very difficult for me to keep my saddle. I wish to make an exchange with "thee; give me that excellent and quiet mule of thine, and take my spirited "horse." Abú-s-sabáh did as he was desired by 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who by this act dissipated the suspicions of his followers. They relate likewise that some time previous to the general engagement 'Abdu-r-rahmán rode before the ranks, and asked his men, "What day is this?"—"Thursday, the day of 'Arefah," answered they. "Well, then, mark my words," replied 'Abdu-r-rahmán, "To-morrow is
"Friday, and the 'festival of the victims' [May 15, A.D. 756]; the contending parties are the Bení Umeyyah on one side, the Bení Fehr on the other; opposed to each other are the sons of Kays and the tribes of Yemen; let this day be a "brother of that of Merj-Ráhitt," which it so much resembles in every respect." These words failed not to inspire courage into the followers of 'Abdu-r-rahmán; for it brought to their mind the battle of Merj-Ráhitt, between Merwán Ibn Al-hakem, 'Abdu-r-rahmán's grandfather, and Adh-dhahhák Ibn Kays Al-fehrí, which, as is well known, was likewise fought on a Friday, and on the 'day of the victims;' the victory remaining to Merwán, who put to death Adh-dhahhák and seventy thousand men of the tribe of Kays, and others allied to it. It is even said that there was a still closer coincidence. At the battle of Merj-Ráhitt there were only three men of the tribe of Kays serving under the orders of Merwán; namely, 'Abdullah Ibn Masádah Al-fezárí, Ibn Hobeyrah Al-moháríbí, and Sáleh Al-ghinawwí: at the battle of Musárah there were likewise only three men of the tribe of Kays serving under 'Abdu-r-rahmán; namely, Jábír Ibnu-l-ala Ibn Sheháb and Al-hossayn Ibnu-d-dajen, both belonging to the tribe of 'Okayl, and Helál Ibnu-t-tofayl Al-'abdarí. After some hard fighting on both sides, victory declared for 'Abdu-r-rahmán. Yúsuf was the first to give way; As-samíl and his followers valiantly kept their ground until all hopes of recovering the day were gone. They say that when As-samíl saw that his men were losing courage, he spurred on a grey mule which he rode, and plunged into the middle of the enemy's ranks, with a view of coming, if possible, to close combat with 'Abdu-r-rahmán. As he was approaching the spot where that prince fought, Abú 'Attá came up to him and said, "O Abú Jaushan! thou hadst better spare thyself for another occasion; this is an ominous day, and every thing must needs go wrong for us. Mark the coincidence: to-day is Friday, and so was the day of Merj-Ráhít; the warriors on both sides are the same; Umeyyah and the sons of Yemen against the tribes of Fehr, Kays, and Kelb. By Allah! I believe in truth that this day will turn out as unlucky for us as the day of Merj-Ráhít."—"O Abú 'Attá!" answered As-samíl, "thou art an eminent man, and thy learning is, no doubt, great; but on this occasion despondency preys on thy mind, and thy reason is clouded by fear:" saying which he rushed forward, whilst Abú 'Attá turned bridie and fled. As-samíl, however, was defeated, and his followers put to flight.

Such is the account of this memorable battle as it has been handed down by historians. 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákhel obtained a most complete victory, and the field was strewn with the bodies of the enemy. Among the prisoners of the day was 'Abdu-r-rahmán, one of Yúsuf's sons, and other distinguished individuals. As-samíl
and Yúsuf contrived to escape: the former retired to a village called Shoudhar (Xodar), in the district of Jaen; the latter, to Merida. They relate that immediately after this defeat Abú-s-sabáh, the chief of the Arabs of Yemen, addressed his followers in these words: "O men, let our victory this day be complete; we have annihilated the party of Yúsuf and As-samîl; let us put to death this beardless youth, I mean the son of Mu'áwiyyah, our present commander. If we do, the empire is ours, and we may then appoint one of ourselves to the command of this country, and be for ever rid of the Bení Modhar." Thus spoke Abú-s-sabáh, but not one of those who heard him made reply; on the contrary, his words were reported to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who kept them in his heart, until a year afterwards, seeing a favourable opportunity, he seized him, and had him executed.

After Yúsuf's defeat, 'Abdu-r-rahmán marched his victorious army to Cordova, which city he entered after remaining for three days encamped outside, that he might allow the family of Yúsuf time to quit the palace. He also showed his generosity and clemency by pardoning all those who had taken up arms against him. After spending a few days in the capital, 'Abdu-r-rahmán received intelligence how the partisans of Yúsuf and As-samîl, after collecting the relics of their army in the neighbourhood of Granada, were again preparing to attack him, and he therefore resolved to go out in pursuit of them. Before his departure, however, he appointed Abú 'Othmán, who, as before related, was the principal instrument of his success, to be governor of Cordova in his absence, and gave him Umeyyah Ibn Zeyyád to act as his secretary. This Umeyyah had formerly held the same office under Yúsuf; but, being a mauli of the Bení Umeyyah, 'Abdu-r-rahmán granted him his pardon, and confirmed him in his appointment. These arrangements being taken, 'Abdu-r-rahmán started in pursuit of the enemy, though not without leaving behind him a considerable body of troops to guard the capital in his absence. It happened, however, that as he was marching to overtake Yúsuf, that general manœuvred so well as to place himself between 'Abdu-r-rahmán and Cordova, whence, by dint of forced marches, he suddenly appeared before that capital, which he entered without resistance, as well as the palace of the governor, Abú 'Othmán, who, with the garrison, threw himself hastily into the tower of the great mosque. He was there besieged by Yúsuf, who offered him security for himself and his followers, if he would surrender. Abú 'Othmán refused, and maintained himself until a peace was concluded between his master and Yúsuf in the month of Safar of the year 139 (July, A.D. 756). The treaty, which included also Yúsuf's late Wizír, As-samîl, stipulated that the two chieftains should be left in the undisturbed possession of whatever property they might have at the time; that Yúsuf should
reside in Cordova, where the palace of Al-horr was assigned to him as a dwelling; but that he should be obliged to present himself before 'Abdu-r-rahmán once every day. To insure the fulfilment of these conditions, Yúsuf was to give as hostages his sons Abú-l-aswad Mohammed and 'Abdu-r-rahmán, the latter of whom, as before related, was made prisoner at the battle of Musárah. This treaty being ratified and peace concluded, both armies returned to Cordova.
CHAPTER II.


In the preceding Book we gave a rapid sketch of the victories of the Moslems and their conquest of Andalus, and of the power which they wielded in that country until the arrival of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákhel, the sovereign under whose sway the consolidation of the Mohammedan empire was achieved, and the preponderance of the Yemenite faction [over the Bení Modhar] fully established, as we shall hereafter relate, if God be pleased.

Ibn Hazm and others describe the dynasty of the Bení Umeyyah of Andalus as the most powerful and glorious of the Mohammedan dynasties; the most afflicting to the enemies of God, and that which gained most renown; since, as it will be shown in the course of this narrative, none other surpassed it in the number and importance of its victories.

We have given elsewhere a detailed account of the adventures of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiyah, of his wanderings through Africa, and of the many dangers to which he was exposed before he could land in Andalus, and establish therein the supremacy of his family; but for the sake of information, and in order to throw more light over this our narrative, we shall here condense the facts already recorded.

According to Ibnu Khalbún and other historians, the dynasty of the Bení
Umeyyah of Andalus originated thus: In the year 132 of the Hijra (beginning August 19, A. D. 749), the Bení 'Abbás overpowered the Bení Umeyyah, and gained possession of the Khalifate. After 'Abdullâh Ibn 'Alî, the uncle of As-saffâh, had put to death Merwân Ibn Mohammed Ibn Merwân Ibn Al-hakem, the last Khalif of that dynasty, the sons of Umeyyah were everywhere pursued for slaughter, and both the surface and the bowels of the earth were scrupulously searched for them. Among those who fled [to escape from their enemies] was 'Abdu-r-rahmân, son of Mu'âwiyyah, son of Hishâm, son of 'Abdu-l-malek, son of Merwân, for whom the partisans and friends of the Bení Umeyyah were preparing an empire in the West, as they saw in him certain signs indicative of his success, which had been prognosticated by his uncle, Moslemah Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek. 'Abdu-r-rahmân himself, who had heard from the lips of Moslemah that he would be the avenger of his family, having upon one occasion entered the presence of his grandfather Hishâm, found his uncle, Moslemah Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, sitting in the room with him. 'Abdu-r-rahmân being then an infant, Hishâm gave orders that he should be taken out of the room. But Moslemah interfered, and, pressing the child to his bosom, said to his brother, "Let him stay, O Commander of the Faithful! and be kind to him; for he will become in time the avenger of the Bení Umeyyah, and the restorer of their empire."—"From that time," said 'Abdu-r-rahmân (from whom this anecdote is borrowed), "my grandfather always treated me with the greatest kindness and distinction." Encouraged by these prognostics, with which he never failed to acquaint his friends, 'Abdu-r-rahmân fled to the West, and took up his abode among the Nefezah, a Berber tribe of Tripoli, to whom his mother Râha belonged. However, Ibn Habîb hearing of his being there, he removed to Maghîlah; others say to Mequînâsah (Mequinez); others, to a district inhabited by Berbers of the tribe of Zénâbah, who treated him kindly, and among whom he was secure. Thence 'Abdu-r-rahmân went to Melîlâh (Melilla). It was from this place that he sent over to Andalus his freedman Bedr, to stir the adherents of his family to revolt against Yûtuf Al-fehîrî, the governor who held the command of that country.

No sooner was 'Abdu-r-rahmân firmly seated on the throne, than he dispatched emissaries to Syria, Egypt, and other Mohammedan countries, with instructions to find out the surviving members of his family, and invite them to settle in his dominions. Accordingly several individuals, or adherents, of the proscribed race of Umeyyah, who had hitherto lain concealed from the spies of Al-mansûr [Abû Ja'far], hastened to obey his summons, and arrived in Andalus, where 'Abdu-r-rahmân received them with every mark of attention and respect. As the names of all those who entered Andalus on this occasion have been preserved by many
diligent historians, we shall extract from their works such passages as are calculated to throw light on this interesting subject.

"During the reign of this Sultán," says one, "numbers of illustrious Moslems quitted the land of their fathers, and settled in Andalus. Several of the Bení Merwán too, encouraged by the success of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, flocked to him from the East. A contemporary writer has said, 'When Ad-dákhel saw himself firmly seated on the throne, he bestirred himself to collect around him the relics of his family, and, having dispatched emissaries for that purpose, succeeded in bringing to Cordova several of the relatives and adherents of his family. God Almighty was pleased to assist him in the undertaking, and to permit that he should extend over them the hand of protection.'"

Alluding to this, the historian Al-hijári has said, "'Abdu-r-rahmán was in the habit of saying to his courtiers, 'Among the many favours bestowed on us by the Almighty, the greatest, after making us the master of this empire, is his allowing us to collect in this country our kindred and relatives, and enabling us to give them a share in this empire, which we hold through his interference. 'There is no power or strength but in God! His is the empire!'"

In this manner there came to Andalus a brother of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, named Al-walíd Ibn Mu'áwiyyah; two sons of the Khalíf Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek; a cousin of his named 'Abdu-s-sellám Ibn Yezíd Ibn Hishám; and two nephews, Al-mugheyrah Ibn Al-walíd and 'Obeydullah Ibn Abán Ibn Mu'áwiyyah. There came, besides, 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Omar, Abú Suleymán Foteys Ibn Suleymán, 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Bashar, Habíb Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, and many others, to all of whom he gave pensions and lands, as well as command in his armies, and government in the provinces, by which means his empire was strengthened, and he was enabled to subdue all his enemies.

Among the above-named individuals, 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Omar was the one who contributed most powerfully to the consolidation of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's power. He was the son of 'Omar, and the grandson of the Khalíf Merwán Ibn Al-hakem. His father 'Omar had, when young, been intrusted to the care of his own brother 'Abdu-l-'azíz, governor of Egypt, where he resided until his death. When the bearers of the black colours ('Abbássides) appeared in Syria, 'Abdu-l-malek, who was residing in that country, fled to Egypt; but not considering himself secure there, he took his departure, accompanied by ten men of his own family, and arrived in Andalus, where he found his relative 'Abdu-r-rahmán already seated on the throne. This was in the year 140 (beginning May 24, A. D. 757). 'Abdu-r-rahmán honoured and distinguished him greatly: knowing that he had filled offices of trust under the Khalífs of his family, he gave him the government of Seville, and
appointed also one of his sons, named 'Omar, to that of Morór. They relate of this 'Abdu-l-malek, that when he perceived that notwithstanding the separation of Andalus from the Eastern empire, it was still the custom to say the khotbah for Abú Ja'far Al-mansúr in all the mosques, he advised 'Abdu-r-rahmán to have the name of that Khalif omitted in the public prayers, and brought to his recollection all the injuries which the Bení Umeyyah had sustained from the Bení 'Abbás. At first, 'Abdu-r-rahmán would not listen to his advice, and the prayers continued as before; but, on 'Abdu-l-malek insisting strongly, he at last gained his object. They say that as 'Abdu-r-rahmán upon a certain occasion refused to accede to his entreaties on the subject, 'Abdu-l-malek said to him, "If thou refuse to comply "with my request, O Amir! and allow Al-mansúr's name to be mentioned in the "prayers, I will certainly destroy myself." Upon which, 'Abdu-r-rahmán, moved by his determination, and not choosing to lose so zealous a servant, granted his request; and from that day the Khalif's name was no longer proclaimed from the pulpits, as it had been during the first ten months of his reign.

This 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Omar was an excellent poet. Seeing one day at Seville a solitary palm-tree, which brought to his recollection the place of his birth in Syria, and the friends he had left there, he exclaimed, in a fit of irrepressible sorrow,—

"O palm-tree! like myself, thou art alone in this land; thou also art away from thy kindred.
"Thou weeppest, and closest the calix of thy flowers. Why? dost thou lament the generating seed scattered on the mountain?
"Yes, I do; for although they all may take root in a congenial soil [like that] watered by the Euphrates,
"Yet orphans are they all; since the Bení 'Abbás have driven me away from my family."

Another of the Bení Umeyyah was Jazi Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz, brother of the Khalif 'Omar Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz. He went to Andalus, and settled there. He died before 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and was a virtuous and exemplary man, following in most things the steps of his brother the Khalif.

Among the illustrious individuals who settled in Andalus under this reign may be counted Abú-l-ash’ath Al-kelbi, who was far advanced in age when he arrived in Cordova. This man preserved traditions from his mother, who held them herself from 'A’yeshah. (May God's favour be on her!) He became a great favourite with 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who admitted him to his privacy; and he was generally esteemed for his amiable temper and his virtues: he had, however, one great fault, namely, that of being somewhat fond of turning men and things into ridicule, and
indulging in jests. The following is given as an instance: When the Sultán 'Abdu-r-rahmán heard of the death of Habíb Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn 'Omar Ibn Al-walíd Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Merwán, who had been his most intimate friend, and for whom he always showed more deference than for any other member of his family, he began to weep, and to implore the Almighty to forgive the sins of the deceased. Abú-l-ash'ath, who was standing by the side of the Sultán when Habíb’s death was announced, and whose jests 'Abdu-r-rahmán was in the habit of bearing with extreme patience and good humour, said aloud, and as if he were addressing the deceased,—“ O Abú Suleyman! thou hast descended to the grave, and it was not until thou wast comfortably lodged there that the Khalíf began his “lamentations.” Hearing which, 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who could scarcely suppress the smile on his lips, turned round, and went away. The preceding anecdote is related by the historian Ibnu Hayyán in his Muktabis, as well as by the Hásedh Ibnu-l-abbár, who borrowed it from him.

We have said elsewhere that a treaty was concluded between 'Abdu-r-rahmán and Yúsuf, in virtue of which the latter was to reside in Cordova. It was not long, however, before Yúsuf infringed the conditions he had agreed to observe. In the year 141 (beginning May 13, A.D. 758) he left Cordova secretly, and, putting himself at the head of his numerous followers, tried to raise the country against 'Abdu-r-rahmán. According to the historian Ibnu Hayyán, this happened thus: It appears that Yúsuf was possessed of considerable property in land in the neighbourhood of Cordova, which he was enabled to retain by one of the articles in the above-mentioned treaty. Some people, however, having disputed with him the title by which he held some of his estates, they went before the magistrates, who decided in favour of the claimants and against Yúsuf. When the sentence was communicated to that chief, he complained bitterly of the injustice, and uttered some strong expressions against the son of Mu'áwiyah; which being speedily reported to that monarch by the enemies of Yúsuf, led to a misunderstanding between them. At last Yúsuf, fearing for his life, secretly left Cordova, and retired to Merida, where he had numerous partisans, and was soon surrounded by twenty thousand adventurers from all parts of the country. His power having gradually increased, Yúsuf flattered himself that he could successfully contend against the arms of Ibn Mu'áwiyah; who was no sooner acquainted with Yúsuf’s movements, than he gave orders to his generals to attack the rebels, whilst he himself went out of Cordova with a powerful army, and took up his quarters at Hisnu-l-mudowwar (Almodovar), a town at some distance from that capital. In the mean while, 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn 'Omar Ibn Merwán, who was governor of Seville, had gone in pursuit of the rebels with all the forces he could
muster. He met Yusuf, with whom he had several sharp encounters, until at last he completely defeated him, killing most of his men, and putting the remainder to flight. Yusuf, however, contrived to make his escape, and reached the neighbourhood of Toledo; but, whilst he was in one of the villages of that district, he was met by a man named 'Abdullah Ibn 'Amru Al-ansári, who, having recognised him, said to those who were with him, "This is no doubt the Fehrite [Yusuf], "who has taken refuge among us because the country is against him. To kill "him would be a service to him and to this country;" saying which, he dealt him a blow with his sword, and stretched him dead at his feet: after this he cut off his head, which he carried to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who, on his return to Cordova, ordered that the event should be announced to the inhabitants by the public crier, and that the head of Yusuf should be nailed under the central arch of the bridge. He then ordered 'Abdu-r-rahmán, the son of Yusuf, to be beheaded, and his head to be placed beside that of his father; which order was punctually obeyed, the heads of the father and son being placed on two spears under the gate of the royal palace. Thus the governor Yusuf ended his days, after having been in command of Andalus for a period of upwards of nine years. He was the son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Habib, son of Abú 'Obeydah, and the great-grandson of 'Okbah Ibn Náfi' Al-fehri, the founder of Cairwán, who, during the Khalifate of Mu'awiyyah Ibn Abí Sufyán, had been governor of the Mohammedan conquests in Eastern and Western Africa.

As to his Wizír, As-samíl, he soon shared a similar fate. No sooner was the flight of Yusuf discovered, than he was arrested and thrown into a dungeon. He was afterwards summoned to the presence of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who interrogated him as to the place whither Yusuf had gone. "I do not know," answered As-samíl. "Well, then," replied 'Abdu-r-rahmán, "thou shalt remain in prison "until thou dost know. Thy son was seen in his company before he was missed, "and I make thee responsible for his re-appearance."—"Thou mayest do thy "worst," retorted As-samíl, "but, were Yusuf here under my foot, I would not "raise it to give thee the opportunity of seizing on him." Hearing this, 'Abdu-r-rahmán caused him to be cast into a dungeon, together with the two sons of Yusuf, Abú-l-aswad Mohammed, afterwards called Al-l'aml (the blind), and 'Abdu-r-rahmán. These latter, however, succeeded some time afterwards in bribing some of their guards, who procured them the means of escaping from prison. Abú-l-aswad fled to the provinces, where he excited a rebellion against his sovereign, and maintained himself until he died of a natural death in 169 (beginning July 13, A.D. 785. 'Abdu-r-rahmán was not so successful: being a very corpulent man,
his own weight overcame him, and he fell: he was discovered, brought back to prison, and put to death as we have elsewhere related.

They say that As-samil, who was in prison with them, obtained intelligence of their plans of escape, but would not follow them, and remained. However, after the death of Yúsuf, 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent some people, who strangled As-samil in prison, and he was found dead on the following morning. Others say that he was poisoned, and that one day as the Sheikhs of the Bení Modhar went to see him in his prison, they found him a corpse, having close by his side a cup,7 as if he had been drinking; upon which one of the beholders exclaimed, " By Allah! " O Abú-1-jaushan, we need not be told that thou drankest the potion; but there " can be no doubt either as to the hand that administered it." As-samil was the son of Hátim, son of Shímr, son of Dhú-jaushan; others make him the son of Hátim, son of 'Amrí, son of Junda', son of Ash-shímr, son of Dhú-jaushan. His ancestor, Ash-shímr, had been one of the most illustrious citizens of Kufah, and one of the murderers 8 of Huseyn Ibn Abí Tálib (may God be favourable to him!). As to As-samil, he entered Andalus in the suite of Balj Ibn Beshr, with other noble Syrians and Arabians. He had previously fought in the Maghreb (Western Africa) against the Berbers, at the orders of Kolthúm Ibn 'Iyádh, then governor of the Mohammedan settlements in Africa. He distinguished himself by his bravery and his experience in military affairs. To these qualities he owed his rapid promotion in the army, and the great favour he always enjoyed with Yúsuf, who intrusted to him the command of his armies.

As-samil was a tolerably good poet, but an uneducated man, and could not write: he was very fond of intoxicating liquors, and was often inebriated. Notwithstanding these faults, he obtained the command of the Arabs in Andalus; for, although Yúsuf was nominally their Sultán, he was completely the master of that chieftain, over whose mind he exercised the greatest influence. As-samil obtained the command at the same time with Yúsuf, in the year 129: he retained it until it passed into the hands of the Bení Umeyyah, whose empire ceased not to increase in extent and strength until the fourth century of the Hijra, when their empire was overthrown, and their power vanished away, as did that of other mighty dynasties which preceded it. Thus are the immutable decrees of the Almighty irrevocably fulfilled on his creatures. God is great! God is great! There is no God but him, the merciful, the compassionate!

In the year 146 (beginning March 20, A.D. 763), Al-'ala Ibn Muglíth Al-yahssobi sailed from Eastern Africa with a view to re-establish the supremacy of the Bení 'Abbás, and to plant their black banners in Andalus. He landed with
a small force on the western coast, and took possession of Beja, where he fortified himself. Having called upon the inhabitants of that city and the surrounding districts to aid him in his undertaking, great multitudes answered his call, and he soon saw himself surrounded by considerable forces, with which he began to molest all those who remained faithful to the cause of the Bení Umayyah. No sooner was 'Abdu-r-rahmán informed of his landing, than he hastily collected some troops and marched against him: he overtook him in the neighbourhood of Seville, whither Ibn Mughith had marched in the hope of reducing that wealthy city; and a battle ensuing, the victory remained on the side of 'Abdu-r-rahmán: Mughith himself, and most of his officers, falling into his hands. Having ordered the execution of all his prisoners, the victorious monarch caused their heads to be secretly conveyed to Cairwán and Mekka, and to be cast at night into the squares and principal streets of those two cities, together with the black banners of the 'Abbássides, and the dispatches and credentials which Ibn Mughith had brought with him from Abú Ja'far Al-mansúr. Another account says that when the unfortunate general was brought into the presence of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, that monarch ordered first the hands of his enemy to be cut off, and then his feet; he then had him beheaded, together with the principal chiefs of the insurrection. In order the better to strike terror into his enemies, 'Abdu-r-rahmán caused labels, inscribed with the names of the deceased, to be suspended from their ears; their heads were then stored in sealed bags, together with the black banners of the house of 'Abbás, and the whole given to a trusty merchant, who was directed to convey his cargo to Mekka, and deposit it in public places at a certain time. The merchant did as he was ordered. It happened that Abú Ja'far Al-mansúr, the reigning Khalif, by whose orders the expedition had been undertaken, was in Mekka at the time, whither he had gone on pilgrimage, and the bags were secretly placed at the door of his tent. When the guards saw them in the morning, the circumstance was communicated to Al-mansúr, who immediately opened them himself, when lo! the first thing that met his eye was the gory head of his trusty servant Ibn Mughith: he then broke out into maledictions against 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and exclaimed, "The fate of this unfortunate man (meaning Ibn Mughith) sufficiently discloses to us the wicked intentions of that demon. God be praised for placing a sea between "us!"

Owing to this occurrence, Al-mansúr always bore 'Abdu-r-rahmán great hatred, and never failed, as long as he lived, to do him all the harm he could, by causing inroads to be made into his dominions, and stirring up the Arabs of Andalus to
rebellion. Yet Al-mansúr, though he hated him so intensely, would often speak of him in the highest terms, extolling his sagacity and his prudence, and doing justice to his military talents. He used to call him Sakru-l-koraysh⁹ (the hawk of Koraysh), on account of his deeds in Andalus, the many dangers he had escaped on his way to that country from the East, and the rapidity with which, though destitute of resources, and with only a handful of followers, he had snatched so mighty an empire out of his hands, and transmitted it as an inheritance to his posterity.

Upon one occasion he told his courtiers, "Do not wonder at the dimensions and strength of this our empire; what is really wonderful is the enterprise, wisdom, and prudence displayed by the youth of Koraysh; when, destitute of friends as he was, he hesitated not to thrust himself into the paths of perdition, and to invade a distant island, difficult of access, and defended by a well appointed army. See how, profiting by the feuds and enmities of the rival tribes, he has caused them to rise in arms against one another; how, by prudence and good government he has gradually gained the hearts of his subjects and quelled their rebellious spirit; how, in short, he has overcome every difficulty, and made himself sole master of the country."

A very striking resemblance has been pointed out as existing between 'Abdu-r-rahmán and his contemporary and rival, Abú Ya'kúb Al-mansúr, of the house of 'Abbás. Both were equally distinguished for prudence, vigour, and talents for administration; both displayed the same energy in humbling the pride, and the same unflinching severity in chastising the rebellions of their subjects. They had yet other points of resemblance: both their mothers were natives of Barbary, and each of them put to death his own nephew; since, as is well known, Al-mansúr killed the son of his brother As-seffāh, and 'Abdu-r-rahmán ordered the execution of Al-mugheyrah Ibn Al-walíd Ibn Mu'áwiyah. But to return.

In the year 151 (beginning Jan. 26, A. D. 768,) there was another revolt against 'Abdu-r-rahmán. The rebels, having mustered in large numbers, marched against the capital. This intelligence being brought to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, orders were sent to 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Omar, the governor of Seville, immediately to attack the enemy. 'Abdu-l-malek, after giving Umeyyah,¹¹ one of his sons, the command of the van, marched against the rebels. In this manner Umeyyah suddenly came up with the enemy; but finding their numbers too great, and not daring to engage them, he fell back upon his father's army. When 'Abdu-l-malek saw his son thus flying before the rebels, his indignation was roused to the highest pitch, and he said to him, "How camest thou, O coward, thus to abandon the post intrusted to thy care? The people of Andalus and Africa know how we came hither to escape from death, but thou meetest it;" saying which, he ordered him to be beheaded;
which was done. He then called together his friends and relatives, and said to
them, "Are we come from the East to the extreme limits of these regions; and
" have we gone through so many dangers and privations, to be now so sparing of
" the few sparkles of life which still remain in our bodies? Let us throw away the
" scabbards of our good swords, and perish rather than be vanquished." Thus
saying, he placed himself at the head of his troops, and charged the enemy with
great determination. The people of Seville,¹² and the Arabs of Yemen, were com-
pletely defeated: so great was their loss on this occasion, that they never afterwards
recovered the blow. Thirty thousand bodies on both sides remained on the field
of battle, and 'Abdu-r-rahmán himself was severely wounded. When 'Abdu-r-
rahmán, who came up after the battle, heard of the exploits achieved by his
trusty relative, and saw the blood ooze from his wounds and drop from his
sword, the hilt of which actually clave to the palm of his hand, he rewarded
him most munificently, and said to him, "O cousin! I have ordered my son
" and heir Hishám to marry one of thy daughters,"¹³ to whom I will give so much
" out of my treasury as dowry. I likewise give thee so much, and thy sons so
" much; I give thee and thy sons such a castle and such a town, and appoint
" thee besides to the office of Wizír."

In the year 163 (beginning Sept. 16, A. D. 779), according to Ibnu Hayyán,
'Abdu-r-rahmán put to death 'Abdu-s-sellám Ibn Yezíd Ibn Hishám,¹⁴ better
known by his patronymic Al-yezídí. He likewise ordered the execution of his
own nephew, 'Obeydullah Ibn Abán Ibn Mu'áwiyah Ibn Hishám. It appears
that these two individuals, with many others, had entered into a conspiracy to
dethrone 'Abdu-r-rahmán. A mauli of 'Obeydullah, who was in the secret, and
had assisted in their plans, discovered them to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who immediately
caused the guilty parties to be arrested, and sentenced them to death. Abú
'Othmán, his chief Wizír, was likewise in the conspiracy; but 'Abdu-r-rahmán,
grateful for his past services, spared his life.

In the year 167 (beginning Aug. 4, A. D. 783), says Ibn Hazm, another of
'Abdu-r-rahmán's nephews, whose name was Al-mugheyrah Ibn Al-walíd Ibn
Mu'áwiyah, was put to death on the charge of having formed a conspiracy to
dethrone his uncle. The same fate befel Hudheyl Ibn As-samíl Ibn Hátim. His
own brother, Al-walíd, Al-mugheyrah's father, he exiled to the opposite coast of
Africa, though he gave him permission to take with him his sons, family, and
treasures. It is said in the Mas'hab that on the day in which 'Abdu-r-rahmán
ordered the execution of his nephew, one of the favourite maulís of that monarch
entered his presence, and found him absorbed in thought, and with signs of deep
sorrow on his countenance. After some time 'Abdu-r-rahmán raised his head, and
said to him,—"It is a wonder to us, how, after all our endeavours to place these people in a situation of security and comfort, and after risking our life, until God, whose motives are a mystery, was pleased that we should carry our purpose, they should be so ungrateful as to array themselves in arms against us. They come to this country, flying from the swords of our enemies; and yet, when we receive them with open arms, and give them a share in the empire which God destined for us alone,—when we grant them security, and surround them with every comfort and luxury,—they stir their arms, inflate their nostrils, fancy themselves superior to us, and try to resist that power which the Almighty has placed in our hands! But God has chastised their ingratitude by permitting us to pry into their secrets, and by turning against them the blows which they aimed at us."

In this same year (A. H. 167) 'Abdu-r-rahmán made known his intention to march to Syria at the head of his army, and take the empire from the Bení 'Abbas. He accordingly began to make every preparation, and wrote to his relatives, maulis, and partisans of his house, apprising them of his determination. He was to leave his eldest son, Suleymán, to command in Andalus in his absence, whilst he himself, at the head of his troops, was to invade Syria. However, the rebellion of Huseyn Al-ansári, who rose about this time at Saragossa, disconcerted his plans, and frustrated his purposes.

Besides the above rebels, 'Abdu-r-rahmán had to reduce many others of the principal Arabian tribes, who, during his reign, rose in various parts of his dominions, although God was pleased to render him victorious over every one of them. In their number may be counted a Berber who passed himself off as a descendant of Fátimah, the daughter of the Prophet. This man raised the standard of revolt at the town of Santa Maria, and the mischief lasted for two years, until one of his own followers treacherously slew him.

Hayyát Ibn Mulábis Al-hadhramí, governor of Seville, 'Abdu-l-ghaffár Ibn Hamíd Al-yohssebi, governor of Niebla, and 'Amrú Ibn Tálút, governor of Beja, are also counted among the Arabian chieftains who opposed the authority of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and rose in arms against him. After the death of Abú-s-sabáh, the chief of the Yemení Arabs, whom 'Abdu-r-rahmán, as above related, caused to be executed, the three illustrious individuals just named swore to revenge the murder of their friend; and having collected the troops of their respective governments, marched upon Cordova. But they were met by the troops of the Sultán, and defeated with awful carnage: all the above-named chieftains remained dead on the field of battle, or were overtaken and put to death in their flight; though there are not wanting historians who assert that they contrived to escape
from the slaughter, and were some time afterwards pardoned by 'Abdu-r-rahmán.

Al-huseyn Ibn Yahya Ibn Sa'id Ibn Sa'd Ibn 'Obádah Al-khazrejí rose likewise at Saragossa in the year 157 (beginning Nov. 20, A. D. 773), assisted by Suleymán Ibn Yosdhán Al-arabí Al-kelbi, the principal chief of that insurrection. They maintained themselves for some time against the arms of 'Abdu-r-rahman, until at last Al-huseyn treacherously killed Suleyman, and Al-huseyn himself fell into the hands of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who had him executed, as we have related.

In the year 163 (beginning Sept. 16, A. D. 779), Hasan Ibn 'Abdi'l-'aziz Al-kenání rose at Algesiras; but on the arrival of the troops sent against him by 'Abdu-r-rahmán, he embarked on board a vessel, and sailed for the East. But in order to check in future the rebellious spirit of the Arabian tribes, whom he found animated with a strong hatred towards him, 'Abdu-r-rahmán began to cease all communication with their chiefs, and to surround his person with slaves and people entirely devoted to him; for which end he engaged followers and took clients from every province of his empire, as well as from Africa. He sent people over to enlist Berbers in his service; and those who came to him he treated so well as to make their comrades desirous of following them. In this manner, says the historian Ibn Hayyán, 'Abdu-r-rahmán collected an army of slaves and Berbers, amounting to upwards of forty thousand men, by means of whom he always remained victorious in every contest with the Arabian tribes of Andalus; his empire was strengthened, and raised on solid foundations.

Whilst the Moslems of Andalus were thus revolting against their sovereign, and striving to overthrow his empire, the people of Galicia were gathering strength, and their power was greatly increased. Fruela, son of Alfonso, who was their king at the time, attacked the fortresses and towns on the Moslem frontiers; and after expelling their inhabitants, took possession of them, and peopled them with his own subjects. In this manner he took the cities of Lugo, Portokál (Oporto), Zamora, Kashtelah, and Shekúbi'ah (Segovia), which remained in the hands of his posterity until Al-mansúr Ibn Abí 'A'mír retook them some time before the overthrow of the dynasty of Umeyyah; although soon after, alas! they fell a second time into the hands of the unbelievers, who, as we shall hereafter relate, reconquered the whole of Andalus. May God Almighty be praised! His is the empire!

Károloht (Charlemagne), King of the Franks, and one of the most powerful sovereigns of that nation, after warring for a length of time with 'Abdu-r-rahmán, sent him an embassy, and solicited an alliance with him by marriage; but the latter having met with an accident in the loins, which injured his virility, the
design was abandoned. Károlo, however, sought his friendship and alliance, and again insisted on the marriage; but this was declined, although a peace was concluded between the two sovereigns.

Whilst the above events were taking place, 'Abdu-r-rahmán,—whose passion for building equalled, if it did not surpass, that of his predecessors of the house of Umeyyah,—was daily adding to the embellishments of his capital by works which he superintended himself. One of his first acts was to supply Cordova with water, by means of an aqueduct which came from the neighbouring mountains. He planted a most delightful garden, to which he gave the name of Mun'yat Ar-risáfah, in remembrance of a splendid villa near Damascus, which his grandfather Hishám had built, and where he himself had spent the first years of his life. Finding the spot a very charming one, he erected in the middle of it a most magnificent palace, which he ornamented with every luxury which could be procured; and moreover made it his residence in preference to the old palace inhabited by the governors of Andalus. Being passionately fond of flowers, he commissioned an intelligent botanist to procure for him in the East such among the fruits and plants of that country as could be naturalized in Andalus; and in this manner he introduced the peach and the pomegranate called Safari. Ibnu Hayyán has preserved us four verses, which he is reported to have spoken extempore at the sight of one solitary palm-tree which grew in the middle of his garden.

"In the centre of the Rissáfah grows a palm-tree, born in the West, away from the country of the palm-trees."

"I once exclaimed, 'Thou art like me; for thou resembllest me in wandering and peregrination, and the long separation from relatives and friends."

"Thou [also] didst grow in a foreign soil, and, like me, art far away [from the country of thy birth]."

"May the fertilizing clouds of morning water thee in thy exile! May the beneficent rains, which the poor implore, never forsake thee!""

But whilst 'Abdu-r-rahmán expended a portion of his treasures in this and other delightful dwellings, he was meditating a work far more meritorious in the eyes of the Almighty, and which would insure him a place in Paradise; we mean the erection of a magnificent place of worship, that which existed being in a ruinous state, and being, besides, insufficient to hold the great concourse of people who flocked to prayers. We quote the words of Ibnu Hayyán.

"In the year 170 (beginning July 2, A. D. 786), 'Abdu-r-rahmán began the building of the great mosque, which was constructed on the site of the old one. Though he did not live to see that magnificent edifice completed, he is said to
"have expended on it the enormous sum of eighty thousand dinárs. He surrounded
"Cordova with a thick and strong wall, the work beginning in the year 150, and
"continuing for the greater part of his reign. He also supplied his capital with
"water, built himself a palace, and erected mosques, baths, bridges, and castles
"in every province of his dominions."

'Abdu-r-rahmán, says Ibnu Hayyán, was kind-hearted, and well disposed to
mercy. He was eloquent in his speech, and was endowed with a quick perception;
he was very slow in his determinations, but constant and persevering in carrying
them into effect; he was exempt from all weakness, and prompt in his movements;
he was active and stirring; he would never lie in repose or abandon himself
to indulgence; he never intrusted the affairs of the government to any one,
but administered them himself, yet he never failed to consult, on such difficult
cases as occurred, with people of wisdom and experience; he was a brave and
intrepid warrior, always the first in the field; he was terrible in his anger, and
could bear no opposition to his will; he could speak with much fluency and
elegance; he was likewise a good poet, and composed verses extempore; he was,
in short, a beneficent, generous, and munificent prince. He always dressed in
white, and wore a turban of the same colour, which he preferred to any other;
his countenance inspired with awe all those who approached him, whether friends
or foes. He used to attend funerals, and recite prayers over the dead; he often
prayed with the people when he attended the mosque on Fridays and other
festivals, on which occasions he was in the habit of ascending the pulpit, and
addressing his subjects therefrom. He visited the sick, and mixed with the people,
attending their rejoicings and recreations. One day, as he was returning from a
funeral, he was met in the street by an impudent man of the lower orders, who,
fancying he had been wronged by a sentence lately passed against him, addressed
him thus: "May God prosper the Amír! Thy Kádí has wronged me, and I
"come to appeal to thee for justice."—"If what thou statest be right, O man!"
said 'Abdu-r-rahmán, "thy wrong shall be redressed." But the man, extending
his hand, seized the bridle of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's horse, and said, "O Amír! I
"entreat thee for God's sake to grant my request. Move not from this spot
"until thou order thy Kádí to do justice unto me: there he is in thy suite." Hearing this, 'Abdu-r-rahmán's indignation was roused: he looked round for his
followers; but saw that there were only a few, and those at some distance behind
him: he then called the Kádí, and told him to do the man justice. On his return
to his palace, one of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's favourites, who disapproved of his frequent
ramblings without a sufficient escort, represented to him the great danger to which
he had voluntarily exposed himself, and said to him, "May God preserve thy life,
“O Amír! These continual ramblings do not become a powerful Sultán like thee; for if once the eyes of the vulgar become accustomed to the sight of thee, all salutary dread and respect will vanish away.” These words had the desired effect on 'Abdu-r-rahmán; for not only did he abstain ever afterwards from accompanying the funerals, and mixing with the crowds, but he advised his son and successor Hishám to do the same.

The same historian (Ibnu Hayyán) relates, that when, by the submission of Yúsuf Al-fehri, 'Abdu-r-rahmán was freed from all his enemies, and firmly seated on his throne, men hastened to Cordova from every province of Andalus to take the oath of allegiance to him. For several days the palace of 'Abdu-r-rahmán was crowded with governors and chiefs, who came to swear fealty to him; and 'Abdu-r-rahmán would receive them with great affability on appointed days, and after confirming them in their respective offices and land tenures, he would converse with them, and address them in words which delighted them, and attached them to him. He would also distribute among them dresses, food, and sundry presents. In this way they all returned to their homes, highly pleased and satisfied, repeating to each other the kind words they had listened to, expatiating in praises of their sovereign, and invoking the favours of God for him. There happened to come before 'Abdu-r-rahmán on one of these occasions a man who belonged to the division of Kenesrín, who, after humiliating himself in his presence, addressed him thus: “O descendant of the righteous Khalifs and honourable Lords! to thee I fly, and under thy shelter I take refuge from calamitous times and the injustice of fate. Money is scanty, and my family is numerous; my situation becomes every day more precarious, and riches are given to thee that thou mayest distribute them more amply. Thou art the Lord of praise and glory, the imparter of gifts, and the hope of the destitute.”—'Abdu-r-rahmán immediately answered, “We have listened to thy words, and remedied thy wants; we have issued orders that thou shouldst be helped against fortune, and regret the miserable plight to which thou hast been reduced. Let all those who are in the same condition with thyself apply to us for help, and make known to us their poverty or misfortunes, either personally, or by means of memorials placed in our hands, in order that we may alleviate the blows of fate, and, by remedying their poverty, avert the malignant rejoicings of their enemies.” He then ordered a large sum of money to be given to the Arab, who left the room highly rejoiced, and in utter amazement at the Amír's eloquence, readiness of wit, and unbounded liberality. 'Abdu-r-rahmán, moreover, issued orders that all those who came to him with petitions should be admitted to his audience-room without delay, that he might attend to their cases, and listen to their complaints. In this manner,
says the author above cited [Ibnu Hayyán], numbers of poor distressed people, who had either met with some misfortune or were the victims of iniquitous judgment passed upon them, would flock to the Amúr's hall on the days of public audience, when they invariably obtained the redress of their wrongs. It was 'Abdu-r-rahmán's custom to dine in company with such among his courtiers and public officers as happened to be with him at the hours of his meals, and whoever came to him upon business at those hours was by him invited to sit down and partake with him.

Of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's wit and eloquence several traits have been preserved by the historians. Ibnu Hayyán relates, that having once received a letter from Suleymán Ibn Yuktán Al'-arábí, in which that chieftain tried to deceive him, he made the following reply: "Let me alone with thy frivolous excuses, whilst thou art quitting the path of duty; extend thy hands towards obedience, and hold by the strings of the multitude; do not persevere in thy disobedience and rebellion, and let the fate of thy predecessors be a warning to thee, for God is never unjust to his servants."

After the taking of Saragossa, and the execution of the rebel Huseyn Al-ansáří, whose head, together with those of the principal inhabitants of the city, was fixed on stakes, 'Abdu-r-rahmán's courtiers hastened to congratulate him on a victory so signal, and which had realized his most ardent hopes. Among those who approached him was a man who had not been present at the siege, and who yet complimented him like the rest in a tone of voice both loud and rude. Turning sharply towards him, 'Abdu-r-rahmán said, "By Allah! were it not that this is a day in which He who is over me has granted me a most special favour, and in which it is therefore incumbent upon me also to bestow my favours upon those who are under me, I would have thee most severely punished for presuming to address me in that disrespectful manner, as if thou wert accosting thy father, thy brother, or thy wife, and entirely disregarding the respect due to royalty."

'Abdu-r-rahmán has been accused of ingratitude to those to whom he was most indebted; and certainly his treatment of his freedman Bedr, who was the principal instrument of his success, who shared his privations and misfortunes, accompanied him in his flight as well as in concealment, and sought out an empire for him in the East or West, by sea or land, cannot be excused. No sooner had he risen to power than he deprived him of all his honours, cast him into prison, and, at last, exiled him to the confines of his empire, where he died in great poverty and affliction. The author of the Mas'hab [Al-hijáí] relates that Bedr once wrote to his master from his place of exile as follows: "I should have thought that, after crossing the sea, and traversing the deserts, in order to procure thee a kingdom,
"thou wouldst have rewarded me otherwise than by thus humiliation in the eyes of my equals, and giving matter of cause for the malicious joy of my enemies, making me poor and destitute, and no longer useful to my friends, causing those who honoured and esteemed me to keep aloof, and those who hated me to hate me the more. I verily think that had I fallen into the hands of the Beni 'Abbás, I could not have been worse treated by them than I have been by thee. But God is over all things, and to Him we must all return." What reason Abdu-r-rahmán may have had thus to act towards his faithful servant Bedr is only known to God, who looks into the interior of men's hearts, and unravels their secrets: perhaps Abdu-r-rahmán had reasons for thus acting towards his faithful servant; or perhaps the latter was calumniated, as often happens, by people who knew his low origin, and saw with envy his rapid rise in honours and fortune.

Nor was Abdu-r-rahmán more grateful to Abú 'Othmán, the Arabian chieftain who was the first to raise the standard in his favour; for when Abdu-r-rahmán saw his power firmly established, he would no longer attend to him, nor to those who, like him, had most contributed to his success. At last, Abú 'Othmán, seeing himself ill-treated, and his applications disregarded, caused a nephew of his, on the female side, to revolt in one of the castles in the district of Elvira. Abdu-r-rahmán dispatched some troops against him, and the rebel was taken and beheaded. After this, Abú 'Othmán seduced one of Abdu-r-rahmán's own nephews, to whom he painted in bright colours how easy it would be to revolt against his uncle and deprive him both of his life and throne; but Abdu-r-rahmán, having received intelligence of the conspiracy in time, seized on the persons of his nephew and the principal conspirators, and had them all beheaded, with the exception of Abú 'Othmán; for, although he was repeatedly told that he was one of their number, and that it was he who had instigated his nephew to revolt and had assured him of success, he would always answer, "Let Abú 'Othmán alone; for he is the Abú Salmah of this dynasty, and I would on no account give the people cause to say that I treated him as the Beni 'Abbás treated Abú Salmah; I intend, however, to inflict on him a chastisement worse than death itself." He then sent for him, and, after charging him with his treacherous conduct, deprived him of all his honours and emoluments, though some time afterwards he re-instated him in his office, and took him again into favour.

The next person who was most instrumental in Abdu-r-rahmán's elevation to power was Abú 'Othmán's son-in-law, Abdullah Ibn Kháled, who shared with him the duties of the Wizírate. It appears that when Abú-s-sabáh, the chief of the Yemení Arabs, revolted, he gave out as a reason that certain terms agreed to between himself and 'Abdullah, in his master's name, had been violated by Abdu-r-
rahmán. After the capture and execution of that chieftain, 'Abdu-r-rahmán removed Ibn Kháled from his office, and swore never to employ him as long as he lived. 'Abdullah, accordingly, passed out of memory at the court, and remained without taking any part whatever in the affairs of the government. Another man who most strenuously contributed to 'Abdu-r-rahmán's accession, and at first shared his intimacy, was Temám Ibn 'Alkamah, who, as already mentioned, crossed the sea to him, and was the first to announce to him the good tidings of the rising in his favour. 'Abdu-r-rahmán, however, soon forgot his past services, and his son and successor, Hishám, put to death a son of Temám,²⁹ as well as a son of Abú 'Othmán. Alluding to this event, Ibnu Hayyán says, "The execution of the two youths, ordered as it was by the son of the man to whom their lives ought to have been most precious, well convinced their disconsolate fathers of the truth, that no one has a right to expect praiseworthy deeds from his own kindred.³⁰ Indeed, if we compare the fate of those who were the principal instruments of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's success, and who gave him the empire, with that of those who resisted his authority and were subdued, we shall find that the fate of the former was the more lamentable and severe of the two."

The first who filled the office of Hájib to 'Abdu-r-rahmán was his mau³ Temám Ibn 'Alkamah: he lived to a great age. He was succeeded in that office by Yúsuf Ibn Bokht Al-fáresí, a freedman of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán, who left a numerous posterity in Cordova. The next was 'Abdu-l-kerím Ibn Mahrán, of the posterity of Al-hárith Ibn Abí Shamr Al-ghosání, who was succeeded by 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mugheyth Ibn Al-hárith Ibn Huwirath Ibn Jabalah Ibní-l-ayham, whose father had been the conqueror of Cordova, as before related; after this, Mansúr the eunuch, the first of his class who obtained that office under the Bení Umeyyah: he retained his office until the death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán.

Ad-dákhel had not Wizirs, properly speaking, who administered the government in his name; but he had a certain number of Sheikhs who sat in council and assisted him with their experience and advice. The first in rank among these was the aforesaid Abú 'Othmán; then came his son-in-law 'Abdullah Ibn Kháled; then Abú 'Abdah, governor of Seville; then Shoheyd, son of 'Isa, son of Shoheyd. This last-named individual was the descendant of a Berber, others say a Greek, who was made a prisoner in the first wars of Islám, and became a slave of Mu'áwiyah Ibn Merwán Ibn Al-hakem: from him are descended the Bení Shoheyd, an illustrious family of Cordova. The next were, 'Abdu-s-sellám Ibn Basíl, also a Greek, and a freedman of 'Abdullah Ibn Mu'áwiyah, whose posterity obtained great renown in the Wizírate and in other offices; Tha'lebah Ibn 'Obeyd Ibn An-nadhdhám Al-jodhámí, governor of Saragossa; and 'Asoleem Ibn Moslem
Ath-thakefi. This latter, who was one of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's most zealous partisans, was a very brave man. It was he who at the battle of Cordova (Musáraḥ) set the example to the troops, by swimming across the river. His posterity afterwards attained great renown as public functionaries under various reigns.

The first Kátibs or secretaries appointed by 'Abdu-r-rahmán when he assumed the supreme power, and took possession of Cordova, were Abú 'Othmán and 'Abdullah Ibn Kháled. He then named to that office Umeyyah Ibn Yezíd, a mauli of Mu'áwiya Ibn Merwán, who, as before stated, had also been secretary to Yúsuf Al-fehrí. This Umeyyah had likewise a seat in the council-room, where he was much esteemed for his experience and his talents. It is said that he was implicated in the conspiracy of Al-yezídí against 'Abdu-r-rahmán, but that he died before that monarch was apprised of it, when Al-yezídí was in consequence put to death.

Ibn Zeydún relates, that when 'Abdu-r-rahmán took possession of Cordova he confirmed Yahya Ibn Yezíd Al-yahssobí in the charge of Kádi-l-jamád'í (supreme judge), which he was then filling. After him he appointed Abú 'Amru Mu'áwiya Ibn Sáleḥ Al-hemsí; 31 after him 'Omar Ibn Sharáhil; 32 then 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Taríf. Jodrán Ibn 'Amru was judge 33 to the army.

'Abdu-r-rahmán died in the year 172 (beginning June 10, A. D. 788), after a reign of thirty-three years and four months, counted from the day of his landing on the coast of Almuñečar to that of his death. Others say that he died in 171, during the Khalifate of Harún Ar-rashíd. He was buried within the palace of Cordova, his son 'Abdullah reciting the funeral service over his body. He was born in the year 113 (beginning March 14, A. D. 731), at Deyr-hinná, in the territory of Damascus, or, according to other authorities, at Al-'aliyá, a town of the jurisdiction of Tadmor. His mother was a native of Barbary; her name was Ráha. His father, Mu'áwiya, died in the year 118 (beginning January 19, A. D. 736), at the age of twenty-one, and during the lifetime of his own father, the Commander of the Faithful. Hishám intended him as his successor in the Khalifate, and had him educated accordingly. Mu'áwiya having upon his death-bed intrusted the guardianship of his sons to their grandfather Hishám, the Khalif took care of them, and especially of this 'Abdu-r-rahmán, to whom he allotted, for his maintenance, his own share in the revenue of Andalus, the prince sending thither a man named Sa'id Ibn Abí Leyla 34 to collect it in his name.

The dates given by Ibnu Hayyán differ slightly from the above. We here transcribe his words: "'Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákhel was born in the year 113, "or, according to other writers, in the year before, at 'Aliyá, in the district of "Tadmor; others say at Deyr-hinná, in the territory of Damascus, where his "father Mu'áwiya died in the lifetime of the Commander of the Faithful, Hishám
"Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, who was his father, and destined him for his successor in the
Khalifate. It was this Mu'áwiyyah who interceded for Al-kamet, the poet, when
Hishám had unjustly decreed his death.

Ad-dákheľ died on the 24th day of Rabi'-l-akhar of the year 171 (Sept. 30,
A. D. 787), being then fifty-seven years old: some writers make him sixty-two
years of age at the time of his death. He was buried within the royal palace
of Cordova, his eldest son 'Abdullah reading the funeral service over his body.

He was fortunate and successful in all that he undertook, and conquered all
his enemies, as we have sufficiently demonstrated in our account of his battles.

As a further proof of his good fortune, we might add what an historian relates
of him; namely, that the banner which he assumed on his first landing in Andalus
was never defeated, and that it was not until that banner was lost that the
empire of the Bení Umeyyah gave signs of decay." Such is the narrative of
the trustworthy historian Ibnu Hayyán, from whose works we have already transcribed enough to render any information on this last topic superfluous.

One of the historians of the West, after copying the above passage from Ibnu Hayyán, draws the following picture of 'Abdu-r-rahmán: "The Imám 'Abdu-r-
rahmán Ad-dákheľ was a man of very sound judgment and quick perception;
he was deeply learned, and could express himself with facility and elegance;
he was slow and prudent in his determinations, but firm in carrying them into
effect. Not once did he unfurl his banners against his enemies that he did
not return victorious from the field of battle. He was exceedingly liberal, and
well versed in the science of government: he always dressed in white, and
wore a turban of the same colour. He used to visit the sick and attend
funerals, saying his prayers at the mosque in common with the people on
Fridays and other festivals; he harangued his troops himself, and raised the
banners with his own hand; he appointed Hájibs and Kátibs: his army
amounted to 100,000 men."

'Abdu-r-rahmán was surnamed Ad-dákheľ, (i. e. the enterer,) because he was
the first of his family who entered Andalus, and Sakr Koraysh (the hawk of
Koraysh), owing to the rapidity with which he subjected that country to his
rule. As elsewhere related, he abolished the rule of the Bení 'Abbás in Andalus,
and founded in that country a powerful empire for his posterity, restoring to his
race in the West that supremacy which they had lost in the East, and preparing
for them the way to the Khalifate. Although, at the beginning of his reign,
he was troubled by frequent rebellions in the provinces, and by the invasions
of the generals sent by As-seffáh, he, nevertheless, vanquished and subdued
all those who opposed him, and ultimately abolished the spiritual rule of the
Bení 'Abbás by forbidding the mentioning of the Khalif's name at prayers from the pulpits of the mosques. Yet, neither 'Abdu-r-rahmán nor his immediate successors assumed any other title than that of Amíru-l-moslemín (Commander of the Moslems of Andalus), out of respect for the seat of the Khalifate, which was still the abode of Islám, and the meeting-place of the Arabian tribes. However, after the year 300 of the Hijra, his namesake, 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir, the eighth Sultán of his family, seeing the state of affairs in the East,—where the Bení 'Abbás had been overpowered by foreigners, who left only a shadow of power in their hands,—and yielding to the entreaties of his subjects and the advice of his most eminent theologians, took the titles of Amíru-l-múmenín (Commander of the Faithful), Imám³⁸ and Khalif, which his successors also assumed, as we shall relate hereafter.

Ibn Zeydún says that 'Abdu-r-rahmán had a clear complexion and reddish hair; he had high cheek-bones, with a mole on his face: he was tall and slender in body, wore his hair parted in two ringlets, could only see out of one eye, and was destitute of the sense of smelling. He left twenty children, eleven of whom were sons, the remainder daughters.
CHAPTER III.

Accession of Hishām—His interview with an astrologer—His justice—Liberality—Wise administration—Rebellion of Suleyman—Taking of Narbonne—Wars with the infidels—Expedition to Galicia—To Alava—Rebuilding of the bridge of Cordova—Several Theologians leave Spain for the East—They meet Mālik Ibn Ans—Death of Hishām—Al-hakem ascends the throne—His uncles rebel against him—Taking of Barcelona by the Franks—Wars with the Galicians—Revolt at Cordova—Exemplary chastisement of the rebels—Death of Suleyman—Wars with the Christians—Defeat of the Franks—of the Galicians—Dreadful famine—Death of Al-hakem—His government—Respect for the learned.

On the death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, his son Hishām, surnamed Abú-l-walíd, who had been previously appointed his successor, ascended the throne. His mother’s name was Halal. He was born on the 4th of Shawwāl, A. H. 139 (Feb. 28, A. D. 757), that is, one year after his father’s arrival in Andalus. When the empire devolved on him he was absent at Merida, of which city he was governor, as his father, with a view to train him in the duties of administration, had, from his earliest youth, given him several offices to discharge: he was, accordingly, proclaimed at Merida in 172 (A. D. 788).

Hishām was not 'Abdu-r-rahmán’s eldest son; but that monarch, who always showed a great predilection for him, and knew his excellent qualities, preferred him to his other sons, and named him his successor. They say that whenever 'Abdu-r-rahmán inquired how his two sons, Suleyman and Hishām, spent their time, the answer he received was invariably this: “If thy son Hishām receives company, “his hall is thronged with learned men, poets, or historians, who discuss the “exploits of the brave, and converse about military affairs, and so forth; whereas “the hall of thy son Suleyman is always filled with sycophants, fools, and cowards.” By means of this and other similar reports, Hishām rose high in his father’s esteem, in proportion as his brother Suleyman descended, until that monarch decided upon naming him his successor to the empire, to the prejudice of his elder brother.

One day, as 'Abdu-r-rahmán was sitting in his hall, surrounded by his courtiers, he repeated the following verses, and asked Hishām whether he knew where they were to be found:

“If thou consider his brilliant qualities, thou wilt easily find out who his “father was, and who his ancestors,—who is Yezīd and who is Hajr.
"Observe his generosity, his piety, his good faith, his logical acuteness, 
whether he is sober or intoxicated [after a banquet]."  

No sooner had he uttered them, than Hishám exclaimed, "O my Lord! those " verses are the composition of 'Amrú-l-kays, King of Kindah, and it seems as " if they had been written on thy account." So pleased was his father with this answer, that he ordered many bounteous gifts to Hishám, who from that moment rose high in his estimation. They relate that as Suleyman, who was also present at this interview, went out of the audience-room, he asked some one whose verses they were, and repeated them until he knew them by heart; he then said, "To gain my father's affection I have nothing more to do than learn by heart some of the sayings of the Arabs;" and that when these words were reported to 'Abdu-r-rahmán he was struck with astonishment, and became more convinced than ever of the great disparity between his two sons.

Soon after his accession to power, Hishám sent for a celebrated astrologer who resided at Algesiras, and whose name was Adh-dhobí. He was a man of great reputation for his knowledge of astrology, and of the influence of the stars upon mundane affairs, which he had studied in the writings of Ptolemy. In compliance with Hishám's orders the astrologer repaired to Cordova, where, immediately on his arrival, that monarch closeted himself up with him and addressed him thus: "I doubt not thou hast already divined the reason of thy being " sent for; I need not, therefore, give thee any further explanation. Tell me " now, with God's permission, what thy science discloses to thee respecting my " future destiny." The astrologer hesitated to give answer, and said, "Pardon " me, O Amír! I am but a novice in that science; and it is beyond my power " to execute thy commands, as I am not at all deserving of the honour of observing " a subject so superior to myself in rank and dignity."—"Heed not that," replied Hishám, "I raise thee to my own station, and thou wilt thereby become competent to the task."

Some days after this interview, the astrologer was again summoned to the presence of Hishám, who said to him, "What I asked thee the other day has kept " me since in a state of great agitation, although God knows I place no confidence " in things which are amongst His impenetrable secrets, and the knowledge of " which he has reserved to Himself. Yet I ardently desire to hear what thou hast " to predict to me: man is naturally fond of inquiry, and he is bound by the hope " of reward, as well as by the fear of punishment." Adh-dhobí then said, "Thy " reign, O Amír! will be glorious and fortunate: it will be marked by victories " over thy enemies: its duration, however, if my calculations be right, will only " be eight years or thereabout." After a moment's reflection, Hishám lifted up
his head, and said, "O Adh-dhibi! I am not in the least alarmed at thy pre-
diction, though it may be the unerring admonisher who informs me by thy
tongue; for if the time of life allotted to me be spent in adoration of the
Almighty, when the hour comes I will say with resignation, 'May His will be
done!'") Hishám then dismissed the astrologer, after rewarding him munificently,
and from that day abstained from the pleasures of this world, and made justice and
benevolence the sole guide of his actions.

Among the anecdotes related of Hishám, and which show his love of justice
and his liberality, the following is one: As he was once, in his father's lifetime,
journeying out of Cordova, he halted on an eminence close to the banks of the river
(Guadalquivir), whence he saw a man from Jaen, whom he well knew—having on
a previous occasion rendered him some service—running in great haste and trepi-
dation towards the spot where his tent was pitched. Hishám immediately guessed
the cause of the man's fear and hasty flight: he had perhaps experienced some
ill-treatment from his brother Suleymán, then governor of Jaen; he had escaped
his vengeance, and was now hastening to implore his help. He therefore gave
orders to his attendants, that on the arrival of the man he should be immediately
introduced to his presence. This being done as he desired, and the fugitive being
conducted to his tent, he addressed him thus: "O Kenání! I know not what has
brought thee here; but I should say that thou art fleeing from some calamity."—
"Thou sayest right, O my Lord!" replied the man; "I am trying to avert
misfortune from my head. Listen to my tale: A member of my tribe [Kenánah]
has put to death a man belonging to another tribe: according to custom I have
handed over to the tribe of the deceased the usual expiation-money, that they
may distribute it among his family and relatives; yet thy brother Suleymán,
knowing how much I am favoured and distinguished by thee, is not satisfied,
and wishes to proceed further in this affair." Hearing this, Hishám lifted up a
curtain leading to the interior of his tent, and stretching his hand towards one
of his slave girls, who happened to be sitting behind, cut off a beautiful pearl
necklace which she wore, and presented it to him, saying, "Take this, O'Kenání! Liberaity.
and sell it; it is worth three thousand dinárs: do not part with it for less; keep
the money to redeem thyself and thy people, and no one shall injure thee."—
"O my Lord," replied the man, "I came not hither to ask for thy gifts, nor do
I want money; the expiation price being already paid down. I came to complain
of the crying injustice done unto me, and to implore thy powerful assistance; for
if thou protect me in this matter, and thy intercession for me is made public,
I shall grow in importance among those who hate me, merely because thou
befriendest me."—"How is that to be accomplished?" said Hishám. "Thou
"must write to thy brother," answered the man, "and let him know that thou "claimest my person, and that I must henceforth be under thy protection."—"Very "well, I will do so; but keep the necklace nevertheless." Hishám immediately 
rode off to Cordova, and, entering the royal palace, begged leave to see his father. 
He happened to arrive at a time when 'Abdu-r-rahmán had retired into the interior 
apartments, and did not wish to be disturbed by applications. He said, notwithstanding, on hearing of his son's arrival, "Nothing can bring my son Abú-l-walíd "[Hishám] hither at this time of the day save business of the most pressing nature; "let him come in." Hishám entered the apartment, and, after giving his father the 
salám, stood in a respectful attitude before him. 'Abdu-r-rahmán motioned him 
to sit down, and state his business. "May God prosper the Amír, my lord and "father!" exclaimed Hishám. "How can I sit down when those [who claim my "interference] stand injured and oppressed? It behoves those of my rank and "station not to sit down unless they be content and satisfied, and I cannot be "so unless the Amír puts me at my ease by granting my request. Otherwise "I shall go back to my people."—'Abdu-r-rahmán then said to him, "God forbid "that thou shouldst leave my presence discontented and disappointed. Sit down, "were it only that we may accede to the prayers of one who intercedes: speak out, "and tell us thy business." Hishám then sat down, as commanded, and related 
to his father the whole of the case: upon which 'Abdu-r-rahmán gave orders that 
the expiatory sum paid to the tribe of the deceased should be taken out of his 
Treasury, and that Suleymán should be instructed not to proceed further in the 
matter, and to suspend all proceedings against the Kenání. Upon which Hishám 
left the palace, highly pleased and gratified, and expatiating in praise of his father's 
generosity and justice. When the Kenání came to take leave of Hishám, to return 
to Jaen, he said to him, "This certainly exceeds my expectations, and thy favours "come down upon me more profusely even than I could have wished. Here is "the necklace thou gavest me; I do not want it, let it be restored to its owner. "I shall not be the less grateful for the singular service I have received at thy "hands." Hishám, however, refused to take it back, saying, "We never take "back what we have once given."

Like the Khalif 'Omar Ibn Abdi-l-'azíz, Hishám followed the maxim of sending 
men of probity and virtue, and on whom he could rely, to the various prov-
inces of his empire, to inquire into the condition of his subjects, and ascertain 
the opinions of the inhabitants respecting the conduct of their governors and magis-
trates; and if in this manner any one of his public officers was convicted of having 
committed injustice, he would deprive him of his situation, oblige him to make due 
amends, and for ever afterwards exclude him from his service. So eminent were
the virtues, so upright the conduct of this sovereign, that when the celebrated theologian, Zeyád Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, better known by the surname of Shabattún, left Andalus for the East in search of learning, the Imám Málík Ibn Ans, to whom he related some of Hishá́m's most praiseworthy acts, is said to have exclaimed, "May the Almighty preserve his life, and make him one of our select [disciples]."³

At the onset of his reign, Hishá́m was compelled to make war on members of his own family and other rebels, who resisted his authority, or raised the standard of revolt in various corners of his empire. His eldest brother Suleymán especially, to whom he had been preferred by his father, shook off his allegiance, and appeared in arms against him, assisted by another brother, called 'Abdullah. After many sanguinary encounters between the royal troops and those commanded by his two brothers, Hishá́m repaired in person to the seat of war; and the wheel of fortune turning in his favour, he defeated the rebels, and compelled them to have recourse to his clemency. Thus rid of his internal enemies, Hishá́m turned his arms against the infidels.

In the days of Hishá́m, the celebrated city of Narbonne⁴ was again wrested from the Christians. His Galician vassals having sued for peace, Hishá́m only granted it to them on very hard conditions; one of which was their having to carry a certain number of loads of earth⁵ out of the demolished walls of the conquered city, Narbonne, to the gate of his own palace in Cordova, to be used there in the construction of a mosque, opposite to the Bábū-l-jenán (gate of the gardens); and not only was the mosque built of those materials, but a large quantity still remained piled up in front of the royal palace.

In the spring of the year 175 (beginning May 9, A. D. 791), having put himself at the head of a powerful army, he reached the districts of Alava and the Castlés,⁶ met the unbelievers, and defeated them completely. In the same year (175) God again sent down victory to his arms; for, having dispatched one of his generals, named Yúsuf Ibn Bokht⁷ Al-fáresí, against the Galicians, that chief penetrated into their country at the head of considerable forces, and met their king, Bere-mundoh (Bermudo), whom he defeated, making great slaughter among his followers, and reducing a considerable portion of his states.

In the ensuing year, A. H. 176 (beginning April 27, A. D. 792), Hishá́m sent to Alava, forward his Wizír 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhéd Ibn Mugheyyth on a similar service; and this general reached the districts of Alava and the Castlés, wherein he committed all manner of depredations.

After this, in the year 177 (beginning April 17, A. D. 793), Hishá́m sent the same general in another direction. This time 'Abdu-l-malek marched to Ariúnah (Narbonne) and Jerundah (Gerona), laid waste the territories adjoining those two
cities, and subdued the whole country of Seritányah (Cerdagne).\textsuperscript{8}  'Abdu-l-malek, moreover, having penetrated far into the country of the infidels, put their armies to flight wherever he met with them.

Another invasion was made by the command of Hishám in the year 178 (beginning April 6, A. D. 794). 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhed penetrated far into Galicia, and reached Ashtorkah (Astorga), where the King of the Galicians, assisted by the King of the Basques, seemed disposed to make a stand; but not daring to come to close quarters with the Moslems, the two kings retreated into their states, whither they were hotly pursued by 'Abdu-l-malek. Hishám, moreover, had previously sent by another route some forces,\textsuperscript{9} which joined 'Abdu-l-malek in the enemy’s country, and laid it waste. They were opposed by the troops of the Franks, who at first obtained some trifling advantage over them, though the Moslems at last returned safe and victorious.

Among the praiseworthy actions of this Sultán, one is the restoration of the famous bridge of Cordova,\textsuperscript{10} which, as before related, had been erected by As-samh Al-khaulání, governor of Andalus, during the Khalifate of 'Omar Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz, and was proverbial for its beauty and dimensions. Hishám designed it himself, and inspected the work till its completion. Happening on a certain day to ask one of his Wizírs what the people of Cordova said about it, the Wizír replied, “They say ‘that the Amír’s only motive in rebuilding this bridge is, that he may pass over it when he goes out hunting.” Hearing which, Hishám bound himself by a most solemn oath never to pass it again; a vow which he is known to have kept most scrupulously as long as he lived.

During the reign of this Sultán several eminent doctors left Cordova and other cities in Andalus to make their pilgrimage to Mekka. Among their number were, Fara’ún Ibn-l-‘abbás, 'Isa Ibn Dinár, Sa’íd Ibn Abí Hind, and others, who, on their return to Andalus, failed not to diffuse the rays of theological science which they had diligently gathered in the East. Some, moreover, who had there become acquainted with Málík Ibn Ans, and had adopted his religious opinions, began to describe him as a man eminent by his talents and virtues, and to speak of the extent of his learning, and the great honour and estimation in which he was held all over the East; by which means the fame of that celebrated theologian spread throughout Andalus, his doctrines were publicly taught, and his religious opinions satisfactorily explained. This prepared the way for the rejection of the rite of Al-aúzátí, and the adoption of that of Málík Ibn Ans, which happened soon after, under the reign of his successor [Al-hakem I., the son of Hishám]. They say that Abú 'Abdillah Zeyánd Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Zeyád Al-lakhmí, better known by the by-name of Shabattán, whom Andalusian writers designate more generally under the
honourable surname of 'the theologian of Andalus,' was the first who contributed by his writings to spread the knowledge of the religious opinions entertained by that illustrious Imám. This Shabattún was as virtuous and modest as he was learned. They relate of him, that the Sultán Hishám wished once to appoint him to the charge of Kádí of Cordova; but this Zeyád obstinately refused, under the plea that he was unworthy of that office. Hishám wished to compel him to accept it, but he fled; when the people said to the Sultán, "O Hishám, if all men were like Shabattún, there would be peace in this world." Hishám then sent for him, and pardoned him; when, having previously received a safe conduct, he returned to his house. They relate of him, that whilst he was thus contending with his sovereign, Hishám offering him that high office, and Shabattún refusing to accept of it, some of the Wizírs called upon him, and declared to him the Sultán's determination that he should accept the appointment offered to him; upon which he said to them, "Do not importune me; for if you make me once take a dislike to the office, I shall behave in such a manner that you shall soon wish to see me out of it again. For instance, were my wife such a one, thrice divorced [by some of you], to come to me, laying claim to any thing remaining in your hands, I would most certainly issue orders for its restoration, and make you besides answer for keeping it." When the Wizírs heard Shabattún express himself in this way, they saw that he was in earnest, and they went and reported the conversation to the Amír, who no longer insisted upon Zeyád accepting the office of Kádí. But to return: This Zeyád, having become acquainted with Málík Ibn Ans, read the Mowattá under his direction; he also learned under Mu'áwiyah Ibn Sáleh, whose daughter afterwards received lessons from him. Zeyád 11 died, according to some writers, in the year 204 (beginning June 27, A.D. 819); others advance his death eleven years [193]; others place it in 194; others in 199: the first date, however, is the most commonly received: but God only knows the truth of the case!

Suwwár Ibn Tárik Al-kortobi, a freedman of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I., was another of the eminent men who left Cordova under this reign, to travel in the East. He visited the city of Basrah, where he met with Al-asma'í and other distinguished characters of the time. He then returned to Andalus, where he was appointed preceptor to Al-hakem. He left several sons; among whom the most distinguished was Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Suwwár, who also made a pilgrimage to Mekka.

After a prosperous reign of seven years and nine months, some historians say eight [months], Hishám died in the year 180 (A.D. 796). 12 He is counted among the good and virtuous monarchs, full of military ardour, and zeal for the promotion of the faith. Among the commendable acts of his administration one was his continuing and completing the construction of the great mosque of Cordova, which
his father 'Abdu-r-rahmán had begun, and left intrusted to his care. He had also the merit of not exacting from his Moslem subjects more taxes than the zeka‘h or tithe prescribed by the Korán and the Sunna (traditionary law). May God have mercy on him! His age, when he died, was forty years and four months, having been born, as above stated, in the month of Shawwály of the year 139. His mild temper, his generosity, and his love of justice, were such that his subjects gave him the surnames of Ar-rodha, (the amiable), and Al-‘dáil (the just). Among the laudable practices introduced by him, the historian Saken Ibn Ibráhím records the following: He instituted a night-watch, composed of honest citizens, who went their rounds; and if any disturber of the public peace was apprehended, he was fined according to his offence: the produce of the fines was then sent to such poor people as were found in the mosques in dark and rainy nights.

On the death of Hishám, his son Al-hakem, whom he had previously designated as his successor, ascended the throne. Soon after his accession, Al-hakem increased the number of his mamelukes and guards, formed a body of cavalry, which he kept in constant readiness for action, infused vigour into every branch of the administration, and took into his own hands the direction of affairs. In consequence, however, of the civil wars which broke out between him and his two uncles, the infidels seized the opportunity to invade the territory of the Moslems. Having made an incursion into the districts of Barcelona, they reduced that city in the year 185 (A.D. 801), the Moslem garrison withdrawing to such other fortresses as acknowledged their sway in those parts.

Al-hakem dispatched an army to Galicia, under the command of his Hájib, 'Abdu-l-kerím Ibn ['Abdi-l-wáhid Ibn] Mugheyth, who penetrated far into that country, and wasted it. As he was returning from this expedition, he found the enemy posted on the heights, and occupying the passes by which he had to cross; but he defeated them with great slaughter, and succeeded in reaching the dominions of Islám in safety.

Al-hakem had also internal enemies to contend with; and, among other rebellions which he had to put down, the most serious and formidable was that of the inhabitants of one of the suburbs of Cordova. It originated thus: Al-hakem having since the commencement of his reign shown great propensity to worldly pleasures, some of the most eminent theologians of Cordova, and other men distinguished by their piety and learning, as Yahya Ibn Yahya Al-leythí, the disciple of Málik Ibn Ans, and one of those who delivered traditions from the mouth of that Imám, Táliít the theologian, and others, revolted against him, and proclaimed in his stead one of his relatives. The scene of this commotion was the western suburb of Cordova. Al-hakem, who had a body of troops encamped close to his
palace, marched against the rebels, whom he defeated and dispersed. He then entered the suburb, which he razed to the ground, not sparing even the mosques, and expelled the inhabitants. Some of them fled to Africa, and settled at Fez, where they peopled a quarter of the city called after them Medinatu-l-andalusin (the town of the Andalusians); others went to Alexandria. Those who fled to the latter city, being in considerable number, created some disturbances there, and subsequently revolted against the authorities of the place; upon which 'Abdullah Ibn Tâhir, 19 who was governor of Egypt for the Khalîf Al-mâmûn, son of Harûn Ar-rashîd, attacked and defeated them, and transported the remainder to the island of Akritis (Crete), which they conquered, and held until, after a considerable length of time, the Franks 20 dispossessed them of it. During their occupation of Crete the Andalusians were governed by kings of the posterity of Abû Hafîs 21 'Omar Ibn Sho'ayb, surnamed Ibnu-l-ghâlîth, a native of Betrûh (Pedroches), who was their leader at the time of their attack on the island. The last of them was 'Abdu-l-'azîz.

Yahya Ibn Yahya, one of the principal conspirators, fled to Toledo; but having some time after obtained a safe conduct from Al-hakem, he returned to Cordova, and was pardoned. The same happened with Tâlût, who not only obtained forgiveness, but rose afterwards to the favour of his sovereign.

Tâlût was the son of 'Abdi-l-jabbâr Al-ma'âferî. 22 He had made a pilgrimage to Mekka, and visited Misr (Cairo), where he met the Imâm Mâlik Ibn Ans, and profited by his lessons: he then returned to Cordova. After the taking of the suburb where the rebels had fortified themselves, Tâlût at first took refuge at the house of a Jew; but after some time he went to one of his friends, Abû Bessâm, the Kâtib, who, he trusted, would intercede for him, and obtain his pardon from Al-hakem. Far from this, Abû Bessâm denounced him, and Tâlût was accordingly summoned to the presence of his sovereign. Being admitted to the hall of audience, Al-hakem reproached him in the harshest terms, and charged him with his crime; saying, "How camest thou to rebel against me? thou, a disciple of the Imâm Mâlik, from whom thou must have heard, that the long rule of a bad king is preferable to civil war for one hour? By Allah! thou must have heard thy master say so."—"I did," answered Tâlût, humbly. "Well, then," said Al-hakem, "return to thy dwelling; thou art forgiven." He then asked him where he had been concealed; and Tâlût informed him that he had remained for a whole year at the house of a Jew, whom he named, and had afterwards gone to his friend the Kâtib, Abû Bessâm, who, instead of sheltering and interceding for him, as he had expected, had been treacherous, and denounced him. Hearing this, Al-hakem grew very angry, and not only deprived Abû Bessâm of his office, but...
issued an order in writing that he should never again be employed in the public service. Ever after this, Abú Bessám, who followed the profession of the law, became an object of ridicule to his comrades, who used to say to him, "Thou camest here, no doubt, to proclaim the doctrines of thy friend Tálút."

After the defeat of his two uncles, who disputed the empire with him, and the eldest of whom, named Suleýmán Abú Ayūb, fell in an encounter with his troops in 183 (A. D. 799),23 Al-hakem turned his attention towards repelling the attacks of the Christians on his territory. During the civil wars in which Al-hakem had been engaged, the Christians, profiting by the separation of the Moslem troops from their frontiers, had often assailed the defenceless points of the Mohammedan territory, reduced the castles, led the inhabitants into captivity, and committed all manner of ravages and depredations. But, in order to check their progress and chastise their insolence, Al-hakem determined upon sending yearly expeditions against them, and dispatched army after army, under the command of his best generals, to waste their territory, and put every thing before them to fire and sword. We shall here mention a few only of the memorable wars undertaken during his reign.

In the year 192 (beginning Nov. 5, A. D. 807), Ludhwik, son of Carl, King of the Franks, collected his forces, and marched to Turiasonah (Tarazona),24 which he besieged. Al-hakem sent against him his eldest son 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who defeated him, God Almighty being pleased that the Moslems should vanquish their enemies. But, as the Franks became every day bolder on account of the wars which Al-hakem had to sustain against the rebels of Toledo,25 and were assailing his frontiers, it was thought expedient to chastise their insolence. Accordingly, in the year 196 (beginning Sept. 22, A. D. 811), the Amír marched against them in person, and, having invaded their country, took many of their towns and fortresses, laid their lands waste, and followed them every where with slaughter, captivity, and plunder; returning afterwards to Cordova with the trophies of his victory.

Four years after this, in the year 200 (beginning August 10, A. D. 815), Al-hakem dispatched his Wizír, 'Abdu-l-kerím Ibn ['Abdi-l-wáhed Ibn] Mugheyth, against the Franks. The Moslems plundered the country, and razed several fortresses; but they were met by the King of the Galicians at the head of considerable forces. Both armies then encamped on the banks of a river,26 and skirmished for several days, the advantage remaining at first with the Moslems. At last, after thirteen days of incessant fighting, the river, swollen by the heavy rains, overflowed its banks, and the Moslems, though victorious, were compelled to retreat from the field of battle.
In the year 197 (beginning Sept. 11, A. D. 812,) a most dreadful famine prevailed in Andalus, which so much affected the lower classes of people that they died by thousands. In allusion to this calamity, a poet of the court of Al-hakem, named 'Abbás Ibn Násih Al-jezayrí (from Algeziras), composed these two verses:

"Time has brought on sterility and famine, but the calamity itself has proved a benefit to Al-hakem:

"It has insured his rule, and delivered him of many' a rebellious subject." 28

Of this poet ['Abbás] historians relate a very curious anecdote. They say that as he was once travelling in the Thagher (the province of Toledo), he met at Guadalajara with a woman who was crying out at the top of her voice, "Come to our help, O Al-hakem! for thou hast so neglected us of late, that the enemy of God has fallen upon us, and deprived us both of husband and father." Having inquired of her the particulars of her sad loss, the woman acquainted Abú-l-'abbás how she and her family, as they were returning from the fields to Guadalajara, fell in with a party of Christians on horseback, who killed or took prisoners all those who went with her. This furnished Al-'abbás with a theme for that elegant kassidah of his which begins thus:

"I was passing through Guadalajara in all haste, when I heard a plaintive sound issue from a house.

"I listened, and heard a woman say, 'O Abú-l-'assi! towards thee I guide my exhausted camel, to thee I run for assistance and protection.'"

On his return to court, 'Abbás entered the presence of Al-hakem, and recited the above poem, in which he admirably described the fear and consternation of the inhabitants of the districts through which he had passed, and the words uttered by the wretched woman whilst imploring his help. No sooner had Al-hakem heard it, than he issued immediate orders to prepare for war, and three days after he marched to Guadalajara, taking with him the poet 'Abbás. Arrived there, he inquired from what part of the enemy's country the marauding party had come; and being informed of it, he invaded that district, laid waste the land, took many fortresses, destroyed the fields, burnt the houses of the inhabitants, and committed all kinds of ravages, inflicting death on a great number of infidels. After this he returned to Guadalajara, where he summoned the widow to his presence, and, causing the captives taken in his expedition to be brought before him, he had them all beheaded before her eyes. This done, Al-hakem turned towards 'Abbás, and said to him, "Ask the widow now whether Al-hakem's help is effectual, or not." She, being a well-bred woman, replied, "No doubt of that; the Amir has alleviated our sorrow, he has afflicted our enemies, and bestowed his assistance
on the weak and oppressed. May God reward him for it, and make him happy!" Hearing this, Al-hakem could not refrain from showing all the gratification and joy which he felt at the compliment, and said to the poet, "See, O Al-'abbás! how we have run, though we were distant, to this woman's call; and how, collecting our victorious forces, we have by our appearance soothed the grief and satisfied the revenge of the injured, alleviated the sorrow of the afflicted, and relieved those who were in difficulties."—"True, O Amír!" replied 'Abbás; "may the Al-mighty reward thee for all the good thou hast done to the Moslems!" After which he kissed the hand of his sovereign, and retired.

Al-hakem had five Wizírs, who were also the generals of his armies: their names were, Is'hák Ibn Al-mundhir, Al-'abbás Ibn 'Abdillah, 'Abdu-l-kerim Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhéd Ibn Mugheyth, who was also his Hájíb, Foteys Ibn Suleymán, and Sa'íd Ibn Hossán. When he ascended the throne the office of Kádí of Cordova was held by Mos'ab Ibn 'Imrán, after whose death he appointed 'Omar Ibn Busheyr. Then came Al-farej Ibn Katánah, then Besher Ibn Katten, 'Abdullah Ibn Músa, Mohammed Ibn Telíd, Hámid Ibn Mohammed Ibn Yahya. His Kátibs were, Foteys Ibn Suleymán, 'Ittáf Ibn Zeyd, Hcjíj Ibn Al'-okaylí.

Al-hakem died about the end of the year 206 (May, A. D. 822), after a reign of six-and-twenty years. He was then fifty-two years old, having been born in 154 (beginning Dec. 23, A. D. 771) of a concubine of Hisáhám, named Khazraf. The impression of his scal was "In God Al-hakem trusts, and is secure." He was tall and thin, of a very dark complexion, and had an aquiline nose. He left twenty male children, and twenty female.

More than one historian has recorded the fact that Al-hakem was the first monarch of his family who surrounded his throne with a certain splendour and magnificence. He increased the number of mamclukes until they amounted to five thousand horse and one thousand foot. Ibn Khaldún and others say that he was also the first who introduced the practice of issuing a regular pay to the troops; that he formed magazines of arms and provisions; increased the number of his slaves, eunuchs, and servants; had a body-guard of cavalry always stationed at the gate of his palace, and surrounded his person with a guard of mamclukes, the number of which has already been stated. These mamclukes were called Al-haras (the guard), owing to their being all Christians, or foreigners. They occupied two large barracks, with stables for their horses; and one thousand of their number were continually mounting guard on both banks of the river, close to his palace. Al-hakem kept, moreover, several spies, who acquainted him with the state of public opinion, while he himself conducted the affairs of his government, surrounding himself with theologians, doctors, and other learned and honest
individuals. In this way he was enabled to transmit to his posterity a powerful and well organized empire.

There are not wanting authors, like Ibn Hazm, who assert that Al-hakem was a tyrant and a shedder of blood; for which reason all the learned and pious men in his dominions set their faces against him. He put to death the pious and learned theologian Abú Bekr Zakariyyá Ibn Yahya Ibn Mattar Al-ghossání, who, during his residence in the East, had attended the lectures of Sufyán At-thúrí and Málk Ibn Ans, the latter of whom quoted him in his writings. This worthy man, with many other doctors and learned men, was put to death by Al-hakem. He is by others accused of having seized male children, and caused them to be castrated. But whether the charge be true, or not, God only knows. He is said, however, to have shown repentance of this and other acts towards the close of his reign, and to have thenceforth desisted from all violence or oppression. May God have mercy on him!

Al-hakem had a favourite whom he much loved; his name was Zeyád Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán. Being one day in company with him, Al-hakem flew into a violent passion with one of his eunuchs for presenting to him a petition which he did not like to see, and ordered that the slave should immediately have his hand cut off. No sooner had Al-hakem issued the order, than Zeyád, who happened to be present at the time, said to him, "May God prosper the Amír. I was told by Málk Ibn Ans, who held it from Rifá'h Ibn Katham, that 'whoever will refrain from anger, and moderate his passions, shall be secure against the wrath of God on the day of judgment.'" This in some measure appeased the anger of Al-hakem, who said, "Did Málk Ibn Ans really say so?"—"Yes, he did," answered Zeyád; upon which Al-hakem remitted the sentence, and pardoned the offence of his slave.

That he honoured the learned, and always showed the greatest respect for the laws, which he never infringed, choosing for the office of Kádí those people only who enjoyed the reputation of being honest and worthy of their trust, may easily be proved by extracts from the historians of the time. "In this year," says one, "Al-hakem appointed to the charge of Kádí-l-jam'ah (supreme judge), vacant by the death of Mos'ab Ibn 'Imrán, a learned and virtuous theologian of the name of Mohammed Ibn Bashír. He was the son of Sa'id, son of Bashír, son of Sharáhil Al-ma'áferí, an excellent and highly esteemed man, who had likewise been supreme judge of Andalus during the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I., and had shown such impartiality and zeal in the discharge of that responsible office that his justice had become proverbial." Being at Beja, of which city he was a native, when Al-hakem was advised to appoint him to the vacant office, Ibn
Bashír was summoned to the capital. In obedience to the commands of the Sultán, Ibn Bashír repaired to Cordova. As he was journeying thither, he happened to halt for the night at the house of a friend of his, who was a very pious and devout man. Not knowing why he had been sent for, the conversation naturally turned upon that topic, when Ibn Bashír expressed his opinion that it was the intention of Al-hakem to appoint him Káhib; but his friend said to him, "Better than that; I think he destines thee for the office of Kádil-l-jam’ah, now vacant by the death of the person who held it."—"Should such be the case," replied Ibn Bashír, "I will choose thee for my consul."—"Willingly," said his friend; "but before I accept thy offer, let me hear how thou wilt answer the three questions which I am now going to ask thee: first, How dost thou like to live well, to dress handsomely, and to be well mounted?"—"By Allah! I care not for eating, except to appease my hunger; nor for dress, as long as my nudity is covered: as to carriage, I want no other than my feet," was Ibn Bashír’s reply. "So far," continued his friend, "my first question is answered. Now to the second: How dost thou like to see a handsome face, or to gaze at a heaving bosom, or at any other of the charms of the fair, and to indulge thyself in their company?"—"Those are pleasures which I have never tasted, and therefore I shall nowise be disappointed if I am to be deprived of them."—"That is the second. Now, how dost thou like to be praised and extolled by thy fellow-citizens, and how dost thou like to be appointed to the office, and to be superseded afterwards?"—"By Allah!" answered Ibn Bashír, "it is very indifferent to me whether people praise me or vilify me, and I will neither rejoice at my appointment, nor exhibit sorrow at my removal."—"Well said!" exclaimed his friend; "my three questions are answered to my satisfaction, and I accept thy offer: hasten now to Cordova, where the office of Kádi awaits thee." Ibn Bashír accordingly arrived in the capital, and was appointed to the vacant office, as his friend had foretold.

Ibn Wadháh says, "I was told by a man who saw the Kádi, Ibn Bashír, enter the great mosque on the first Friday after his nomination, that he was dressed in a cloak dyed of a deep yellow, and wore sandals on his feet: his loose hair fell profusely on his shoulders. In this garb he preached and prayed [with the people], and afterwards sat to administer justice; and yet if any one neglected to pay him proper respect, or forgot any of the formalities due to his office, he invariably found him (in haughtiness of manner) more distant than the Pleiades. Upon one occasion a man came up to him, and seeing him dressed like a gay youth, his hair scattered and uncombed, his deep-yellow cloak, perceiving traces of kohol and tooth-powder on his face, and of hinna on his
hands, stopped and said, 'Point out to me who is the Kádí.' 'Here he is,' said one of the audience, pointing to Ibn Bashír: but the man would not believe it, and said, 'I see that you are amusing yourselves at my expense; I am a stranger to this city. I ask you who is the Kádí, and you point out to me a flute-player.' 38 However, as all assured him that such was the truth, the man came forward, and made his excuses, and approaching nearer to Ibn Bashír, explained to him his case, and found him more just and impartial than he could ever have imagined. The business for which he had come being at an end, the man began to upbraid the Kádí in an amicable way for wearing his hair so long and untidy, and dressing in coarse raw silk, of a deep-yellow colour. Ibn Bashír answered in the following words: 'I was told by Málík Ibn Ans, that Mohammed Ibn Munkadír wore his hair as I do; and that Hishám Ibn 'Orwah, a theologian of Medína, used a deep-yellow cloak, like mine; and, lastly, that Al-kásím Ibn Mohammed always dressed in coarse silken cloth, like this.'

The same author (Ibn Wadháh) further relates that Yahya Ibn Yahya [the traditionist], being once asked what he thought of the turban, answered, 'That the turban was the usual head-dress for men in the East, and that in ancient times great importance was attached to it.' They then said to him, 'If thou use one, people will not follow thy fashion.' To which he replied, 'Mohammed Ibn Bashír dressed in silken cloth, and people did not imitate him; and yet, was Ibn Bashír deserving that men should oppose him? Were I to put on a turban, people would desert me as they did Ibn Bashír, and I should be without followers.'

One of the first acts of Ibn Bashír, after his appointment to the office of Kádí, was to issue sentence against the Amír Al-hakem in a law-suit pending between him and a citizen of Cordova, respecting the possession of a mill close to the bridge. The suitor having fully proved his right, Ibn Bashír decided that Al-hakem was not entitled to the property; upon which the Sultán summoned the party to his presence, and, having asked him to name his price for it, gave him an order upon his treasury. One of Al-hakem's courtiers, named Músa Ibn Semá'h, 39 once came up to him, to complain of Ibn Bashír, who, he said, had exceeded his authority, and shown partiality against him. Al-hakem said to him, 'I shall soon ascertain whether what thou tellest me be true or not. Go to him immediately, and ask to be admitted to his presence. If he grant thy request, I believe thee, and he shall be punished, and deprived of his office: if he does not, notwithstanding thy importunities, my esteem for him shall increase tenfold; for I am sure he is not tyrannical, and truth is his only pursuit.' Músa did as he was commanded, and repaired to Ibn Bashír's residence. Al-hakem, however, ordered some of his Sclavonian guards to follow Músa thither, and report to him what should take place.
between the two. Shortly after, one of them returned, and told Al-hakem how, on the arrival of Mūsa at the house of Ibn Bashir, he had been received by a porter; who, after acquainting the Kādī with his presence, returned with a message from him thus conceived: "The Kādī begs me to say, that if thou hast any legal business with him, thou hadst better go to court at the hours he administers justice." Hearing this, Al-hakem smiled and said, "I well knew Ibn Bashir to be an upright judge, having no partiality towards any one."

Ibn Bashir held twice the office of Kādī, having been once deposed by Al-hakem, who, however, soon after re-instated him in his office. After his removal, Ibn Bashir quitted Cordova, and repaired to his native city. They relate that some time before this took place, one of his comrades wrote, upbraiding him for his excessive severity, and saying, "If thou follow thy present course, I greatly fear thy removal;" and that Ibn Bashir answered him in these words: "Would to God that I saw myself with my mule Ash-shakrā on the road to Beja!" Shortly after this, the Amīr Al-hakem being greatly offended with him for calling witnesses in a case in which one of his favourites was concerned, he was deprived of his office, and accordingly took the road to Beja, his native city. Ibn Bashir had not proceeded long on his journey before one of the rakkās (runners) of the Amīr overtook him, and bade him return to Cordova. The word rakkās, used in the West, is synonymous with As-sā'ī. Al-hakem again intrusted that office to Ibn Bashir, who, at first, would not accept it; but he was at last prevailed upon by Al-hakem to resume his old functions. That Sultān, moreover, assigned him a pension on his treasury, and gave him one of his slave girls.

Among the remarkable acts of justice of this Ibn Bashir, the following is one. Sa'id Al-khayr, son of the Amīr 'Abdu-r-rahmān Ad-dākhel, having a law-suit pending with another party, appointed a person to appear in his name at court, and to represent him in all ways. The agent accordingly produced a deed signed by several witnesses, all of whom were already dead, with the single exception of the Amīr Al-hakem, and another person living in Cordova. The latter witness appeared in court, and gave his testimony in favour of Sa'id Al-khayr; but the adverse party having insisted upon the appearance of another witness, Ibn Bashir declared his application just, and complied with the request. Sa'id accordingly repaired to the royal palace, and, presenting the deed to Al-hakem, showed him his own testimony attached to it. The deed had been drawn before Al-hakem succeeded to the throne and during his father's lifetime; and therefore Sa'id, fearing that its validity might otherwise be brought into question, requested him to affix a note to it, stating it to have been signed with his own hand. Al-hakem had the greatest esteem for his uncle, Sa'id Al-khayr, and wished justice to be done
unto him; he therefore said to him, "O uncle! we are not by our station called " upon to appear as a witness; for certainly we have been invested in this world " with a power and glory which no one can deny: we fear, moreover, that if " we comply with the Kádí's request, and appear at his court, perchance we shall " sustain such an injury in our character and station as can only be followed by " the loss of our kingdom. Go therefore to court, and try to persuade the Kádí " of thy right. If thou do not succeed, and he should decide against thee, appeal " to me from his sentence, and I will instantly give thee redress." Sa'íd Al- khayr refused, and said, "God be praised! What right has the Kádí to dispute " thy testimony, he being a creature of thine, and appointed to this office by thee? " No, I adjure thee by our religion to put thy signature on that paper, and to state, " besides, what thou well knowest to be the truth, without concealing any thing." " Willingly," replied Al-hakem, "for thou hast addressed me in a way that leaves " me no alternative but to comply with thy request: we would rather choose to " be freed from the obligation; but if thou insist upon it we must needs grant " thy request, and write down such corroborating testimony as will leave no doubt " whatever, and will induce the Kádí to decide in thy favour." Having then summoned to his presence two of the most eminent lawyers of his capital, he wrote down on a piece of paper his testimony, sealed it with his seal, and presented it to them, saying, "Here is my testimony under my own signature and seal; go with it " to court, and show it to the Kádí when he is about to examine the witnesses." The lawyers did as they were commanded, and delivered the paper to the Kádí, who said to them, "I have heard of you, you are both men of integrity and justice." Shortly after, Sa'íd's agent made his appearance, and presented to him a new affidavit, saying, "O Kádí! I hear thou hast received the Amír's testimony; " what sayest thou to it?" Ibn Bashír took the paper, and, after perusing its contents attentively, said to the agent, "This is the testimony; but I want to see the " attestant himself." On hearing this, the agent's amazement was complete; he repaired immediately to his master Sa'íd Al-khayr, and acquainted him with the circumstance. Sa'íd rode to the royal palace, and entering the presence of Al- hakem, addressed him in these words: "Our empire has disappeared, and our " glory is vanished, since thou allowest this Kádí of thine to hold thy testimony " in contempt. God has intrusted to thee the government of his servants, and " made thee the arbiter of their lives and property; and an insult of this kind " should not be borne by one like thee." He then began to abuse the Kádí, and tried to persuade Al-hakem to have him seized and put to death. But Al- hakem said to him, "Why am I to consider myself injured by such a proceeding? " O uncle! the Kádí is a pious and honest man, who does that which he con-
Mohammed Ibn Bashir died at Cordova in the year 198 (beginning Aug. 31, A. D. 813), that is to say, six years before the Imám Ash-sháfe‘í. He was originally from Beja, then the abode of the Egyptian Arabs. Ibn Hárith, citing an author named Ahmed Ibn Kháled, says that he made his first studies in Cordova; he then became secretary to one of the sons of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán, of the royal family of Umeyyah. Having quitted his service, he left Andalus on a pilgrimage, and met Málik Ibn Ans, from whom he received instruction. After spending some time at Cairo, wholly intent upon the acquisition of learning, he returned to his native city (Beja), and devoted himself to the cultivation of an estate he had inherited from his father. Of his virtues and praiseworthy deeds the historians of his time make ample mention; and a detailed account of his life and writings may be found in the biographical work of Ibn 'Ayádh, entitled Al-mudárik, to which we refer our readers, as the copy of it which we possess is in Africa among our books.
CHAPTER IV.

Accession of 'Abdu-r-rāhmān II.—Invasion of Galicia—of Alava—Defeat of Alfonso—'Abdu-r-rāhmān marches against the Galicians—Invasion of Cerdagne—Death of García of Navarre—Taking and destruction of León—Greek ambassadors arrive in Córdova—Account of Yahya Al-ghazzāl—Piratical expeditions of the Northmen—Arrivals from the East—Account of Zaryāb the singer—His reception—He becomes a favourite of 'Abdu-r-rāhmān—Improves the lute—Death of Yahya Ibn Yahya Al-leythī—of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Habīb—Their labours in introducing the sect of Mālik—Death of 'Abdu-r-rāhmān—Revenues of Andalus under his reign—His passion for women—His adventure with Tarūb—Accession of Mohammed I.—His wars with the Christians—with the rebels of Toledo—Earthquake in Córdova—Death of Mohammed—His son Al-mundhir ascends the throne—Is killed in battle with 'Umar Ibn Hafṣūn—Succeeded by his brother 'Abdullāh—Death of 'Abdullāh.

In conformity with Al-hakem’s will, 'Abdu-r-rāhmān succeeded him. Some time before his death, Al-hakem, having summoned to his presence his Wizīrs, his courtiers, the generals of his armies, and the chiefs of the Arabian tribes, exacted from them the oath of allegiance to his eldest son 'Abdu-r-rāhmān, whom he appointed his successor. In case of death, he was to be succeeded by another of his sons, called Al-mugheyrah. 'Abdu-r-rāhmān was then thirty years old.

Soon after his accession to the throne, 'Abdu-r-rāhmān invaded Galicia, where he remained for a considerable time, wasting the country, and annihilating its Christian inhabitants. Owing to these and other victories which 'Abdu-r-rāhmān had gained over the Christians and others during his father’s lifetime, his subjects bestowed upon him the surname of Al-modhaffar (the victorious).

In the year 208 (beginning May 15, A.D. 823) he dispatched an expedition against the country of Alava and the Castles, under the command of his Hājib, 'Abdu-l-kārim Ibn 'Abdi-l-āwādī. This general ravaged the country, and destroyed many towns that lay in his way; he likewise reduced by force of arms several of the enemy’s fortresses, the inhabitants of some of which obtained security and peace on condition of releasing all their Moslem captives and paying the customary annual tribute. After this achievement 'Abdu-l-kārim returned victorious [to Córdova].

Again, in the year 224 (beginning November 22, A.D. 838), 'Abdu-r-rāhmān sent his own relative, 'Obeydullāh Ibnu-l-balensi, with an army to the same
quarter (Alava and the Castles). 'Obeydullah marched thither, and met the enemy, in whose ranks he made great slaughter. After this, Ludheric, King of the Galicians, (Alfonso II. of Leon,) having made an incursion into the district of Medínah-Sálim (Medinaceli) in the Thagher, Fortún Ibn Músa² marched against him, gave him battle, and defeated him with a severe loss in slain and prisoners. After this, Fortún proceeded to a fortress which the people of Alava had constructed on that frontier for the purpose of annoying the Moslems, and, having laid siege to it, took it and razed it to the ground.

After this,³ 'Abdu-r-rahmán in person led his army against the Galicians, whom he defeated, subjugating their country, and taking a number of their castles. After a long campaign, and several incursions made into the enemy's territory, he returned [to Cordova] with captives and plunder.

In the year 226 (beginning Oct. 30, A. D. 840) 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent his army to the country of the Franks, under the command of Músa Ibn Músa, governor of Tuteylah (Tudela). Having penetrated into the country of Seritániyah (Cerdagne), Músa was met by the enemy, and a battle ensued, in which the Moslems fought with desperation, until it pleased the Almighty to put their foes to flight. On this occasion Músa's conduct was worthy of great praise.

In the year 229 (beginning Sept. 29, A. D. 843) he sent his son Mohammed to Pamplona in command of his army. Near that city Mohammed engaged the infidels, and put to death their Lord, Garcia,⁴ one of the greatest princes of the Christians.

In the year 231 (beginning Sept. 6, A. D. 845) an army was dispatched to Galicia. On this occasion, after subduing the country through which they proceeded, the Moslems arrived before the city of Leon, which they besieged, battering its walls with war-engines, until the inhabitants deserted the city; upon which the Moslems entered it, plundered whatever they found, and set fire to it. They then attempted to demolish the walls, but could not accomplish their purpose, owing to their solidity and strength, they being seventeen cubits in thickness: the Moslems, however, succeeded in opening a great breach, and then departed. Some time afterwards 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent his forces to the country round Barcelona. His Hájib, 'Abdu-l-kerín, who went in command of the expedition, after ravaging the districts in the neighbourhood of that city, passed the defiles known by the name of Al-bort (Portae), and penetrated into the country of the Franks, which he scoured in every direction, slaying the inhabitants or taking them prisoners. He also besieged Jerundah (Gerona), the great city [of those parts], and, after wasting the neighbouring districts, returned [to Cordova].

In the year 225 (beginning Nov. 11, A. D. 839), Tufilus (Theophil), King of
Constantinople, a city situated beyond the country of the Franks, sent presents to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, at the same time soliciting his friendship. The Greek, who had of late been greatly harassed by the armies of Al-mámun and Al-mu'tassem, asked 'Abdu-r-rahmán to join forces with him against their common enemies of the house of 'Abbás. To this end he tempted 'Abdu-r-rahmán with the conquest of the empire which his ancestors [of the house of Umeyyah] had possessed in the East; and in a letter which he addressed to him he entered more fully on the subject, and explained his views and intentions. 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent him a valuable present in return by one of the most distinguished men of his court, named Yahya Al-ghazzál, who was renowned for his wisdom and his talents for poetry, and who succeeded in forming an alliance between the two sovereigns. Thus did 'Abdu-r-rahmán's renown grow even above that of the Bení Abbás.

Ibn Hayyán relates, that, on his arrival at Constantinople, the King of the Rûm (the Emperor of Greece) showed great astonishment at his youthful appearance, and was very much pleased with him: he invited him to partake of a repast with him, but this Al-ghazzál refused on the plea that his religion forbade him to drink spirituous liquors. As he was, upon a certain day, sitting in company with the king, the wife of the latter came out [from the royal apartments] dressed in all her finery,—a rising sun in beauty. Al-ghazzál was so surprised that he could not take his eyes from her; and although the king was talking to him at the time, Al-ghazzál paid no attention to what he said. The king, finding Al-ghazzál's behaviour very rude, directed his interpreter to ask him what he was about. Al-ghazzál said to him, "Tell thy master that I am so captivated by the charms "of this queen, that I am prevented from listening to his conversation. Say to "him that I never saw in all the course of my life a handsomer woman than she "is." He then began to describe one by one all her charms, and to paint his amazement at her incomparable beauty, and concluded by saying that she had captivated him with her black eyes. When the interpreter repeated his words to the king, Yahya rose still higher in his favour, and the queen was delighted with his words.

The above is not the only service on which Al-ghazzál was employed by his master, 'Abdu-r-rahmán. Abu-l-khattáb Ibn Dhi'yah relates, in his work entitled Al-muttrib, that he was also sent [on an embassy] to the land of the Majús.⁵ Al-ghazzál was then very near his fiftieth year; but, though his hair was gray, he had still all the appearance of youth and strength. The queen, whose name was Túda, having asked him one day what his age was, he answered in jest, "Twenty." —"And how does it happen," replied the queen, "that thou hast gray hair?" Al-ghazzál then said, "There is nothing extraordinary in that. Hast thou not
"heard it said that the Mehriyyah⁶ breeds though the colour of her hair is gray?"

This answer surprised the queen.

This Yahya Al-ghazzálan was the son of Hakem; he belonged to the tribe of Bekr Ibn Wáyil, and was a native of Jaen: he was surnamed Al-ghazzálan (the gazelle), from his great beauty.⁷ Ibnu Hayyán, in his Muktabis, calls him the physician, the poet, and the 'Alíim, or learned man, of Andalus. He was witty, and much inclined to satire. Having upon one occasion indulged his satirical propensities against Ibn Náfi', surnamed Zaryáb, a favourite of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, of whom mention will occur hereafter, he was banished the kingdom. He then visited 'Irák, where he arrived shortly after the death of Abú Nowás. He lived to the age of ninety-four, and died in the year 250 (beginning Feb. 12, A. D. 864), under the reign of Mohammed, the son and successor of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, having known five sovereigns of the house of Merwán; namely, 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ad-dákhel, Hishám, Al-hakem, 'Abdu-r-rahman II., and his son Mohammed.

In the days of 'Abdu-r-rahmán the Majús (Northmen) made their appearance upon the coasts of Andalus, and took possession of Seville. 'Abdu-r-rahmán having sent an army from Cordova against them, they left their ships, and engaged the Moslem forces, which they defeated after a severe contest; but on the arrival of new re-inforcements from Cordova, the Moslems again attacked them, put them to flight, and plundered and burnt some of their vessels. After this the Majús proceeded to Shidhúnah (Sidonia), where they stayed for two days, collecting plunder in the neighbourhood; but when they heard of the arrival of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's fleet at Seville, they again took to their ships, and sailed towards the coast of Liblah [Niebla], which they overran, carrying some of the inhabitants into captivity. Thence they went [by land] to Beja, and lastly to Lisbon, whence they put to sea, nothing more being afterwards known of them. This event⁸ took place in the year 230 (beginning Sept. 17, A. D. 844), and Andalus was delivered from their ravages. 'Abdu-r-rahmán visited the places which they had entered, repaired the devastations they had committed, and, by increasing the garrisons, secured the country against any future invasion of those barbarians.

During the reign of this Sultán several illustrious men left the East to settle in Andalus. Among the rest was 'Alí Ibn Náfi', surnamed Zaryáb,⁹ a celebrated musician and singer, who had been a mauli of the Khalif Mahdí, and a pupil of Ibráhím Al-maussilí. He came from 'Irák in the year 206 (beginning June 5, A. D. 821), and was so well received by the Amír 'Abdu-r-rahmán, that, according to Ibnu Khaldún, that Sultán rode out to meet him on the day of his entrance into Cordova, and honoured him extremely, distinguishing him above all his courtiers, and granting him several favours. Zaryáb settled in Andalus, and taught vocal
music to the people of that country, founding a school of his own. He left several children, the eldest of whom, named 'Abdu-r-rahmán, inherited his talents, and diffused his science among the people of Andalus.

We have already 10 stated that owing to his master's jealousy Zaryáb was obliged to quit Baghdád. He then repaired to Western Africa, where his talents soon acquired him as great a reputation as he had enjoyed in the East. Having there heard of the magnificence displayed at the court of Al-hakem, and of the great favours which that Sultan conferred on all those whom he took under his protection, he resolved upon writing to him a letter, in which he related to him his adventure and dispute with Is'hák, and how that musician had given him his choice [between exile and bitter enmity]. He likewise acquainted him with his inventions in the art which he said his master had unduly appropriated to himself, and concluded by asking his leave to come to Cordova and devote himself to his service. Al-hakem was delighted at the offer, and sent a messenger to apprise Zaryáb that he might come whenever he pleased; that he wished very much for his arrival, and that he would not fail to reward his services as they deserved. The bearer of the message was a Jewish musician, of the name of Mansúr, who was attached in that capacity to the Sultan's household. Upon the receipt of this message, Zaryáb embarked with his family and children, and, sailing across the Bahru-z-zokkík (the Straits of Gibraltar), landed at Algesiras. But when he had spent a few days only at that port, the news came of the death of Al-hakem; and Zaryáb decided upon returning to Africa: but the Jewish musician, Mansúr, who was with him at the time, dissuaded him from his undertaking, and prevailed upon him to offer his services to Al-hakem's son and successor, 'Abdu-r-rahmán. The Jew therefore addressed a letter to the Amir, acquainting him with Zaryáb's case; and 'Abdu-r-rahmán was so pleased, that he immediately answered, expressing his satisfaction at his arrival, and requesting him not to delay his departure. He then wrote to the governors of the districts and towns on his way to Cordova, to treat him with every honour and respect, and furnish him with an escort and provisions for his journey. When Zaryáb approached the capital, the Sultan sent one of his chief eunuchs to meet him with mules and provisions for himself and family. On his arrival at Cordova, which happened at night, owing to the women who came with him, Zaryáb was lodged in a splendid mansion, where he received every day whatever provisions he wanted for his maintenance and that of his family, besides a khil'ah or dress of honour, which the Amir sent him.

Three days after this, Zaryáb was summoned to the royal presence; and 'Abdu-r-rahmán was so pleased at the interview, that he immediately assigned him a pension of two hundred dinár per month on his treasury, and to each of his four sons,
'Abdu-r-rahmán, Ja'far, 'Obeydullah, and Yahya, twenty dinárs per month. He ordered besides that three thousand dinárs yearly should be paid to him by way of gratuity\(^\text{11}\) at certain festivals: namely, one thousand dinárs at each of the two 'Id\(_\text{s}\),\(^\text{12}\) five hundred at nauruz (new year's day), and five hundred at mahraján (midsummer), and that he should be provided annually with three hundred mudd of grain; namely, two-thirds of barley, and another third of corn: and lastly, he gave him several houses, as well as part of the produce of certain duties raised in Cordova and the neighbouring gardens, besides lands; all which united brought him in a clear revenue of forty thousand dinárs.

When all Zaryáb's requests had been granted according to the Amír's promise, and the latter saw that he had captivated the heart of the musician by his excessive liberality, he began to admit him to his privacy, and to invite him to evening parties, to drink palm-wine and sing to music. So delighted was 'Abdu-r-rahmán with Zaryáb's performance [on the first occasion], that he would listen to no other singer of the many who attended his court, and that he conceived an unbounded affection for him, going so far as to closet himself with him, and make him sit by his side, as if he were his equal, and allowing him to treat him with the greatest freedom. On such occasions, after listening to his songs for some time, 'Abdu-r-rahmán would ask him to tell him stories; and Zaryáb, who was deeply read and well informed, and who was, moreover, gifted with a prodigious memory, would entertain him with anecdotes of Kings and Khalifs, and the remarkable sayings of the wise, of which he possessed an inexhaustible store, only to be compared in extent with a boundless sea. Every day the Amír became more attached to him, and more astonished at what he related, until he would have him at his meals, and honoured him by allowing him to dine with him and with those among his sons who were then grown up. He then ordered his Kátib or secretary to draw up a deed, [which he signed,] by which he granted him all the pensions and gifts above mentioned; and when in the course of time his attachment for him became still stronger, he caused a private door to be made, by which Zaryáb might enter his apartment [unperceived].

They relate that Zaryáb used to say that the Jinn taught him music every night, and that, whenever he was thus awakened, he called his two slave girls, Ghazzalán and Híndah, made them take their lutes, whilst he also took his, and that they passed the night conversing, playing music, and writing verses, after which they hastily retired to rest. In like manner it is related of Ibáhím Al-maussilí, in his admirable work on melody entitled Al-makhúl,\(^\text{13}\) that the Jinn held conversations with him; but God only is all-knowing.

Before Zaryáb's time the lute was, according to the old fashion, composed of
four strings only, which answered to the four elementary principles of the body, and expressed the four natural sounds. Zaryáb, however, added to it another red string, which he placed in the middle, by which addition the instrument was considerably improved, and a more harmonious sound than before produced. The arrangement stood thus: the treble or first string, which was dyed of a bright yellow, supplied in the lute the place of the bile in the human body: the next string to it, which was red, supplied the place of the blood; it was twice as thick as the treble, on which account he called it muthanna, i.e. double: the third was left undyed, and was consequently white, being intended as a representative of the phlegm in the human body; in size it was double the muthanna or second string, for which reason it was called muthallath or triple: the fourth, which was black, was intended to occupy in the instrument the same place as the black humours in the body of man; it was also called bam, and was the largest of all; in thickness it was double the third string. These four strings answered completely to the four natural sounds, harmony resulting from the balance of their opposite properties. The bam, being hot and dry, was opposed to the muthanna, which was hot and damp, and thus a balance was produced; the zeyr, being hot and dry, matched the muthallath, which was hot and damp; so that every nature met with its opposite property, until it was balanced, and the equilibrium was established, as in the body of man, by the counteraction of the contrary elements of which it is composed. One thing, however, was wanting, which was the soul, which co-exists with the blood; wherefore Zaryáb added by the side of the string representing the blood a fifth one, which he placed in the middle, that is to say, under the muthallath and above the muthanna, thus supplying the place of the soul in the human body, and improving the four notes of the lute.

The above was not the only improvement devised by Zaryáb in this department of music: he also introduced the use of eagles' talons instead of the wooden plectra which were formerly in use, and this he did on account of the soft down which covers the claw of that bird, its cleanness and lightness applied to the fingers, and the greater durability of the strings when touched by this method,—a consideration not to be neglected by a man who, like Zaryáb, made so frequent a use of his instrument.

Music, however, was not the only accomplishment of Zaryáb. He was likewise learned in astronomy, in geography or the division of the earth into seven climates, the various productions peculiar to each of them, their temperature, their intervening seas, the order and population of the several countries. He was deeply versed in every branch of art connected with music; and was, moreover, gifted with such a prodigious memory that he knew by heart upwards of one thousand songs
with their appropriate airs; a greater number even than that recorded by Batlomius (Ptolemy), who [first] established rules on the science of music, and wrote upon it. Zaryáb, moreover, was gifted with so much penetration and wit; he had so deep an acquaintance with the various branches of polite literature; he possessed in so eminent a degree the charms of conversation, and the talents requisite to entertain an audience; he could repeat such a number of entertaining stories; he was so acute and ingenious in guessing at the wants of his royal master,—that there never was either before or after him a man of his profession who was more generally beloved and admired. Kings and great people took him for a pattern of manners and education, and his name became for ever celebrated among the inhabitants of Andalus. We shall here give an instance of his immense popularity. At the time Zaryáb entered Andalus it was the fashion among the people of that country, both men and women, to wear the hair over the upper part of the forehead, and hanging down between the temples and the eye; but when they observed that Zaryáb, and his sons, and his wives, all wore their hair parted in the middle, and not covering the forehead, the extremities being placed behind the ears and falling over the temples, just in the manner used now by eunuchs and concubines, they all relinquished the old fashion, and adopted that which he had introduced.

He taught the people of Andalus to extract the murtak from the murddsang\(^\text{14}\) or litharge, to take away the fetid smell of the arm-pits, and for the other purposes for which that substance is employed. Before his time the kings of Andalus used to have their clothes washed in water of roses and other garden flowers, the consequence of which was that they never looked quite clean. He taught them the use of salt [mixed with the above], through which the linen was made clear and white. When the experiment had been tried, every one approved of it, and praised Zaryáb for the invention. He was the first who gathered and ate the vegetable called hilyaun, and by the people of Andalus asfaraj (asparagus), which was unknown to the inhabitants of that country before his arrival. A dish called at-tafdyá, made of force-meat balls and small triangular pieces of paste, fried in oil of coriander-seed, was also of his invention; and to this day (says the author from whom this account is borrowed) a fried dish, greatly resembling the one above described, bears still in Andalus the name of takulliyah Zaryáb (the fried dish of Zaryáb). He likewise taught the people of Andalus to use vessels of crystal instead of gold and silver; to sleep on a soft couch of prepared leather in preference to cotton blankets; to dine from small leathern trays rather than from wooden tables, owing to the greater cleanliness of the former, it being easier to rub out the dirt from leather than from wood. Change of clothing according to the different seasons of the year was another of the improvements intro-
duced by Zaryáb. Before his time the inhabitants of Andalus began to leave off coloured or winter clothes, and to put on white or summer ones, on the day of mahraján (midsummer), which the people of that country call 'ansarah,¹⁶ and which falls on the 24th day of the solar month called Junoh (June) by the Christians. They kept on white or summer clothing until the first day of the solar month of Oktubir (October), that is to say, for a little more than three months; the remainder of the year they wore coloured or winter clothing. Zaryáb, however, was of opinion that in the season intervening between summer and winter, and which they called rabi' (spring), they should wear jubbas¹⁶ of coloured silk, or made of the stuffs called mulham and muharr; and waistcoats of light materials without any lining, owing to their proximity to white or summer clothes, which the people used on account of their lightness and their similarity to the mihshah, or usual cloak of the lower classes. In the same manner he imagined that it would be convenient towards the end of summer and the beginning of autumn to put on a mihshah, like those of Meru [in Persia], and clothes of only one colour, and other similar articles of light-coloured dress, thickly lined and wadded, to be worn chiefly in the morning when the cold began to be sharp. On the approach of winter, however, people were to leave off the above articles of dress, to put on warmer clothing of different colours, lined, whenever the weather required it, with various kinds of fur.

The method which he employed with his disciples was this: whenever a youth came to him for the purpose of taking lessons in vocal music, he made him sit down on the round cushion called musúrah, and bade him exert the full power of his voice. If his voice was weak, he made him tie a turban round his waist,—a practice which is well known to increase the voice, as it thus meets with no impediment on its passage from the chest to the mouth. If the youth stammered, or could not well open his mouth, or if he had the habit of clenching his teeth whenever he spoke, he bade him put inside his mouth a small piece of wood three inches in width, which he was to keep there day and night until his jaws were well expanded. This being done, he made him cry out at the top of his voice, Yá hassám or Ah! telling him to protract the sound as much as possible: if he found that he uttered those words in a clear, powerful, and sonorous voice, he admitted him into the number of his pupils, and spared no trouble or fatigue to make him an accomplished singer; if the contrary, he took no further pains with him. But to return to 'Abdu-r-rahmán.

In Rejeb, 234 (March, A.D. 849), died the distinguished lawyer and traditionist Death of Ya-
Yahya Ibn Yahya Al-leythí, who, as before related, was most instrumental in introducing into Andalus the rite of Málík Ibn Ans. After reading the works of that Imám, under the tuition of Shabattún at Cordova, he was persuaded by his
master to leave his native country and visit the East, where he might take lessons from Mālik Ibn Ans. Yahya, therefore, quitted Andalus at the age of twenty-eight, and arrived at Medina, then the residence of that illustrious divine, under whose guidance he immediately placed himself. They relate that whilst he was one day attending his lessons together with other pupils, an elephant happened to pass before the door of the house in which they were, and there was a cry, "Here is the elephant!" when all those present rushed out to see it, with the exception of Yahya, who kept his seat. When Mālik saw this, he said to him, "Why dost thou not go out like the rest? surely there are no elephants in thy " country!"—"I came not from Andalus to the East," replied Yahya, "to look at " elephants; I came to see thee, who hast not thy like in my native country, and " to profit by thy learning and thy experience." Mālik was very much struck by this answer, and is reported to have exclaimed, "This man is the wise man of Andalus!" an expression which is said to have given rise to that saying so common among the people of that country, "Yahya is the 'A'lim (learned man) of Andalus; 'Isá Ibn Dinár is its Faquih (theologian); and 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Habīb, its Ulema (doctor)." Others give this differently, and call Yahya the Muhadith 17 (traditionist) of Andalus.

Ibn Abī-l-fayādh relates a very curious anecdote of this Yahya. He says, the Amīr 'Abdu-r-rahmān II., having once assembled the chief theologians of Cordova in the palace with a view to consult them upon a case of conscience, stated that he had been guilty of entering his harem on one of the nights of Ramadhān, but that he had since most sincerely repented of what he had done, and wished to know how he could atone for his guilt, or what penance they would impose upon him. Yahya, who was one of those convoked, said, "Let two " consecutive months of fasting be thy penance, O Amīr!" When the other theologians heard Yahya utter this decision, they made no observation whatever; but as they were going out of the palace one of them said to him, "Does not the " sect of Mālik leave an option in similar cases?"—"Certainly it does," replied Yahya, "but had we left the Amīr that gate to escape through, we should have " shown him the way to sin every day by infringing the law one day and repenting " the next; and therefore we have thought it best at once to impose on him the " severest chastisement, that he may not wilfully sin again." Accordingly he would remit nothing of his penance, which 'Abdu-r-rahmān kept most scrupulously, fasting all the time as he was prescribed. As we have stated elsewhere, Yahya took part in the revolt of the western suburb of Cordova against the Amīr Alhakem; he contrived, however, to escape the vengeance of the Sultān, and fled to Toledo, where he lived for some time in concealment, until Al-hakem, hearing
of his retreat, sent him a safe conduct, and he returned to Cordova. He left a son named 'Isá, who imitated him in learning and virtues, and who was the father of a numerous progeny well known in Cordova as the Bení Yahya. To this number belonged Mohammed Ibn 'Abdíllah Ibn Yahya Al-leythí, who left Cordova for the East in 313 (beginning March 28, A. D. 925), and after passing many years at Cairo and Mekka, at both which places he met with many eminent divines, returned to his native city, where he enjoyed great reputation. The Súltán 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir appointed him to be Kádí of Elvira and Bejennah; after which he named him to the office of Kádí-l-kodá, or supreme judge at Cordova, in 326 (beginning Nov. 7, A. D. 937).

In the month of Ramadhán of the year 238 (A. D. 853) died, at Cordova, the celebrated theologian Abú Merwán 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Habíb, the author of numerous works on all branches of science, but chiefly on traditional sayings, jurisprudence, and the ritual of Málík Ibn Ans, whose disciple he had been. The principal of these is his Al-wádhehatu fí madh'hebi Málík (clear demonstrations on the sect of Málík), a book which has always been, and must continue to be, in the hands of every true believer. He wrote also on rhetoric, grammar, and history; and some say that although he was only fifty-three years old when he died, he left nearly one thousand works on different subjects.

We have elsewhere alluded to the introduction of the rite of Málík Ibn Ans and the rejection of that of Al-auza'i in Andalus, upon which event various opinions are entertained by the authors who have treated on the subject; but we shall here transcribe the words of the Háfedh Ibn Hazm relative to that occurrence. "There are two religious sects, which, from the very period of their onset, were surrounded with power and splendour, and spread rapidly among the people,—we mean the sect of Abú Hanifah and the sect of Málík Ibn Ans; the former, because when Abú Yásuf was appointed Kádí, he was intrusted with full powers to name all the Kádís in the countries subject to the rule of Islám, from the most remote provinces in the East to the frontiers of Eastern Africa, and therefore he only appointed those among his friends and disciples who professed his doctrines. The same happened with Yahya Al-leythí among us; for that eminent theologian having gained the favour of the Súltán, who approved of his doctrines, he was consulted upon every occasion; and no Kádí was appointed without his consent, with this singularity, that Yahya himself would never accept office; so that in a very short time the administration of justice was completely in the hands of the friends and disciples of Yahya, or those who, like him, professed the sect of Málík. Man being naturally inclined to improve his position in this world, when the students at law perceived that there was no other way of obtaining
"place than conforming with the doctrines of Yahya, they unanimously adopted his innovations, and in this manner was the rite of Al-′azā′į rejected, and that of Mālik Ibn Ans introduced into this country." Such are the words of Ibn Hazm, but we have already alluded in other parts of the work to other causes for the propagation of that sect. God only knows the truth of the case!

′Abdu-′r-rahmān died in the month of Rabī-′l-akhar of the year 238 (June 22, A. D. 852), after a reign of thirty-one years.19 He was born at Toledo in the month of Sha'bān of the year 176 (Nov. or Dec. A. D. 792); his mother's name was Halawah. He is commonly designated under the surname of Al-′aṣāt (the middle one), to distinguish him from his great-grandfather, ′Abdu-′r-rahmān Ad-dākhel [the first], as well as from his great-grandson ′Abdu-′r-rahmān An-ناسīr lidīnīllah [the third]. Owing to his success in war and his numerous victories over the infidels, he was called by his subjects Abū-l-motref, (the victorious).20 He was well versed on all points of Mohammedan law, and learned in the philosophical sciences.21 His reign was one of peace and splendour. Under his wise administration the revenue of Andalus was considerably increased. Ibnu Sa′id says, that before his time the amount of taxes had never exceeded six hundred thousand dinārs, but that, soon after his accession, they were increased to one million. However, there are various and contradictory opinions as to the amount of the revenue possessed by the Sultāns of Andalus, and we ourselves have elsewhere given a different statement.22

′Abdu-′r-rahmān expended large sums in building palaces,23 and laying out pleasure-gardens, which he supplied with water from the distant mountains, collecting what remained [after irrigation] in large cisterns.24 He constructed every where bridges, and caused mosques to be erected in the principal towns of his dominions; his subjects imitating every where his passion for building. He likewise added two porches to the great mosque of Cordova, but died without completing the work, which was finished by his son Mohammed. Alluding to this, a poet of his court, named Abū-l-mothanna, once said,—

"Thou hast built to God the best of houses, one whose description no mortal can attempt:
"To it the pilgrims resort from all parts of the world, as if it were the sacred temple of Mekka.
"Indeed its mīhrāb, when examined all round, will be found to contain rokn (angles) as well as makām (standing place)."

Another poet has said, with still greater elegance,—

"The mosque which he has consecrated to God is without equal in the world."
"Neither the mosque of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, nor that erected at Mekka by the best of messengers, Mohammed, [can be compared to it.]

"Indeed, its red and green columns shine like so many blocks of ruby and emerald.

"O thou, the firm believer in God, mayest thou live and prosper! may power and success for ever be thy lot!" 26

'Abdu-r-rahmán is reported to have introduced some new regulations respecting royalty, one of which was, that he always veiled himself whenever he appeared in public. 27 He left two hundred children, one hundred and fifty of which were males, and the rest females. 28 He used a seal on which was engraved the following pious motto: "The servant of the merciful ('Abdu-r-rahmán) rests contented on the decrees of God." This gave afterwards occasion to the two following verses of a poet:

"The seal of the Amír shows him to be superior in wisdom to any of his predecessors, since the inscription on it is—
"The servant of the merciful awaits in conformity and satisfaction the decrees of his master." 29

'Abdu-r-rahmán was the first who invented this motto, which the Sultáns of his posterity preserved: he was endowed with great penetration and wit. Among his remarkable sayings the following is one: "Authority and honour are eagerly sought by people who know not their worth; hence the first thing they meet with is disappointment."

He was very fond of women, and especially of a mistress of his named Tarúb, 30 to whom he was passionately attached. She it was, who being angry with him, owing to some offence she had received at his hands, was never appeased until he caused the door of her apartment to be blocked up with bags of money. On another occasion he made her a present of a dress worth one hundred thousand dinárs; and, on his being remonstrated with, and told that such a jewel ought never to have been taken out of the royal treasure, he replied with this verse,—

"She who wears it is still of a higher value and greater estimation, more adorned by jewels, and of a nobler origin."

The following two verses were also composed by 'Abdu-r-rahmán in honour of this mistress:

"When the sun rises every day to give us light, it reminds me of Tarúb.
"I am the happiest of mortals, since I am successful in love and prosperous in war." 31

Having once departed on an expedition to Galicia, and being a long time absent, he wrote to her the following lines:
"The enemy called me away from thy side, and I flew to the battle like the
arrow shot from the bow.

"How many deserts did I cross! and yet one obstacle after another came
to obstruct my path.

"Wherever I go I am tormented by the poison of absence; the stones even
are melted through compassion [at my grief].

"God is working [through me] the triumph of the true faith, which I am
spreading in spite of the worshippers of the crucified.

"Against the infidels I now march, and my invincible host covers the
mountains and the plains." 32

The story of the money-bags, as related by a contemporary historian, runs thus:
"Tarúb, fancying that she had been slighted by 'Abdu-r-rahmán, confined herself
to her room, and refused to come out to the Amír, who, being desperately in
love with her, was very much grieved at her resolution, and made all possible
endeavours to make up the quarrel. Seeing, however, that all his entreaties
were in vain, 'Abdu-r-rahmán dispatched one of his chief eunuchs with orders
to compel her to appear before him; but this attack she also resisted by shutting
the door of her outer apartment in the face of the eunuch, and declaring that
she would not stir out of her room, though it were to avoid death. The eunuch
then returned, and having informed 'Abdu-r-rahmán of the occurrence, as well as
of the girl's determination, asked his permission to break the door open; but,
instead of adopting such a violent measure, the Amír caused the door of her
apartment to be blocked up with bags of dirhems, after which he repaired thither
in person, and tried by kind words to soothe her anger, promising, if she would
come to a reconciliation, to present her with all the treasure heaped up before
her door. To this Tarúb consented, and opened her door accordingly, causing
the money-bags to be carried into her room: she then threw herself down on
her knees, and kissed 'Abdu-r-rahmán's feet. The money she kept; and although
it amounted to such a sum as it would have been wearisome to count, no
portion of it ever returned to the royal treasure."

'Abdu-r-rahmán also loved tenderly two concubines of his, whose names were
Mudathiráh and Ashifí, both of whom he had liberated and married. As to his
mistress Kalam, she was an excellent scholar, who wrote a very good hand, recited
poetry, knew many historical facts by heart, and had considerable learning in
various branches of literature. She was likewise a proficient in music and singing,
which 'Abdu-r-rahmán loved above all other recreations, as would appear from the
manner in which he treated the musician Zaryáb. The histories of the time abound
with anecdotes concerning this prince, which we omit here for the sake of brevity.
After the death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, his son Mohammed succeeded him. The first act of his reign was to send forth an army under the command of Múṣa Ibn Múṣa, governor of Tudela, which ravaged the territory of Alava and the Castles, and took some fortresses. He also dispatched another army to the districts of Barcelona and more remote regions beyond that city, which wasted the land, took some of the fortresses belonging to the former district, and then returned. In the mean while the rebels of Toledo, having sought and obtained the assistance of the Kings of Galicia and Biscay, Mohammed went out in person against them, and, having met them near the Wáda-salit (Guadacelete), made them fall into an ambush which he had prepared, and slew twenty thousand Toledans and twenty thousand infidels.

In the year 245 (beginning April 7, A.D. 859) the ships of the Majús appeared again on the coast of Andalus, where they were met by Mohammed's fleet, which took from them two ships and sank some others, although in this encounter a great many Moslems fell martyrs for the faith.

In the year 247 (beginning March 16, A.D. 861) Mohammed caused an invasion to be made into the territory of Banbilúnah (Pamplona), which country was then governed by a chieftain named Garsiah Ibn Unekoh (Garcia, son of Íñigo,) who had for an ally Ordhún Ibn Adefunsh (Ordoño I). After ravaging the districts round Pamplona, taking several fortresses, and subduing the whole country, the Moslems returned, bringing Fortún, one of the sons of Garcia, a prisoner to Córdova, where he remained twenty years in captivity.

In the year 251 (beginning Feb. 2, A.D. 865) Mohammed dispatched his son Al-mundhir with an army to the territory of Alava and the Castles, which he wasted, committing all manner of ravages and depredations. The Christian king, Ludherik (Alfonso III.), having attempted to stop the progress of the Moslems, was defeated with great loss in killed and prisoners; indeed, the victory gained on this occasion was most splendid.

In the same year (A.H. 251) Mohammed in person led an army against the inhabitants of Galicia, whose country he traversed and wasted in every direction; and two years after, in 253 (beginning Jan. 10, A.D. 867), he also caused an incursion to be made into the territory of the infidels.

In the year 254 (beginning Dec. 31, A.D. 867) the city of Merida was destroyed and deserted by its inhabitants; no vestige whatever remaining of that once opulent city. The cause of its destruction was the repeated insurrections of which the inhabitants had been guilty during the reign of this Sultán, as well as that of his father and predecessor. A certain writer pretends to have heard in the East the following verses, predicting the fate of Merida, many years before that wealthy
city was destroyed and its inhabitants scattered over the rest of Andalus. The author of the verses is not known.

"Woe to Merida! the rebellious city which rears its presumptuous head against the lords of the age!"

"Though its inhabitants [now] enjoy every luxury and comfort, it will soon be as dreary as a desert.

"Woe, woe to Merida! the day that the Sultán shall appear with his forces before her walls!"*

In the year 263 (beginning Sept. 23, A. D. 876) Mohammed again sent his son, Al-mundhir, to the theatre of war, and in the ensuing year (A. H. 264) to the territory of Pamplona, which he wasted. In 268 (beginning July 31, A. D. 881), having ordered him to attack the enemy, Al-mundhir invaded the Christian territory, and returned [to Cordova] victorious, after taking several castles, and collecting considerable spoil.†

In the same year (A. H. 268) a dreadful earthquake was felt in Cordova, accompanied by violent gusts of wind, which threw down houses, towers, and minarets. It began at the hour of al-maghreb (setting sun), and when the people were at prayers. It was attended with thunder and lightning, and, to complete the awful scene, large dense clouds overhung the city, and enveloped it in darkness. So loud and terrific were the claps of thunder, and so often repeated, that the people collected in the great mosque were seized with irrepressible fear; six of them dying on the spot, whilst the rest of the assembly began to fly in all directions, leaving their prayers unfinished. The Imám alone, and a few devout men, remained at their post, intent upon their devotions as before. Mean while the mountains were rent asunder, the castles and palaces were levelled with the dust; the birds left their nests in the branches of the trees, and the wild beasts forsook their dens; the inhabitants, fearing they might be buried under the crumbling roofs, fled to the open country, and there knelt down to invoke the mercy of the Almighty. It was a scene of unparalleled confusion and heart-rending calamity.

After a reign of thirty-five years, the Amír Mohammed died in the month of Safar ‡ of the year 273 (July or August, A. D. 886). He was born in 207 (beginning May 26, A. D. 822). His mother's name was Kahtaz.

Mohammed was a lover of science, which he himself cultivated with success. When Baki Ibn Mokhlid returned to Cordova with the work of Ibn Abí Sheybah,§ and began to expound the doctrines of that theologian, a great number of doctors raised their voices against him, condemned his opinions as dangerous and contrary to the spirit of the established religion, and went so far as to create such disturbances whenever he offered to lecture on the subject, that Baki could not be
heard in public. When the Amír Mohammed was informed of this he summoned Baki as well as his adversaries to his presence, and had the book entirely read to him, part by part, from beginning to end, that he might estimate its contents and decide upon its merits. No sooner was the reading completed than he sent for his chief librarian, and said to him, "Take that book, and have it transcribed for our "own use; its merits are such that we will not be deprived of it for a single "moment." He then addressed Baki in these words: "I see thy learning, and "approve of thy doctrines;" after which he issued orders that Baki should not be molested or opposed in the free delivery of his opinions. The histories of Andalus abound with anecdotes relating to this Baki, whose name has gone down to posterity as that of a man of matchless piety and immense learning. We shall here transcribe the words of an author.

Baki Ibn Mokhlid Ibn Yezíd, surnamed Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-kortobí, the author of the Tefsír 44 and Mesnád, was one of the most eminent traditionists of his time. When still young he left Andalus for the East, and visited the principal cities of Asia and Africa in search of learning. He went to Mekka, Medína, Cairo, Damascus, Baghdad, Kufah, Basrah, &c., where he failed not to see and converse with the most eminent theologians, putting down in writing whatever he heard, until the number of his masters is said to have amounted to two hundred and thirty-four. He was exceedingly austere in his living, and exemplary in his conduct. Al-kusheýrí relates of him the following anecdote. "A woman came once to Baki to say how her son had been taken prisoner by the Franks, and that she could not sleep at night for love of him. 'I possess a small house,' said she, 'which it is my intention to sell, and with its produce to proceed to the country where he is kept a prisoner, to obtain, if possible, his liberation; for my rest is disturbed, and my joy is embittered for the love of him. I want thy advice on this emergency.'—'Willingly,' said Baki; 'leave me for a moment, and I will reflect upon what is to be done.' The woman retired, and Baki began to pray fervently for the accomplishment of the mother's wish and the speedy liberation of her son. Some time after this the woman made her appearance together with her son, and spoke thus to Baki: 'May God have mercy on thee! thy pious interference has been the means of liberating my son.' She then bade her son tell him how he had obtained his liberty, upon which the youth said, 'I was the king's slave, and used to go out daily with my brother slaves to certain works on which we were employed. One day as we were proceeding all together to that spot, I felt all of a sudden as if my fetters were being knocked off; I looked down to my feet, when lo! I saw the heavy irons fall down broken on each side.
"Seeing this, the inspector who was with us came up to me, and charged me with knocking off my irons, and trying to escape; but I assured him upon my oath that I had entertained no such design, and that my fetters had fallen off suddenly without my being aware of it, or knowing how it could be accomplished. He then sent for the smith, and commanded him again to rivet the irons on my feet, and to strengthen them with additional nails, which was done; but no sooner did I rise on my feet than the fetters fell again. The Christians then consulted their priests on the miraculous occurrence, and one of them came to me and inquired whether I had a father. I said, 'I have no father, but I have a mother.'—'Well, then,' said the priest to the Christians, 'God, no doubt, has listened to her prayers; set him at liberty:' which they immediately did.'"

Some time before his death, Mohammed had appointed his son Al-mundhir, surnamed Abú-l-hakem, to be his successor in the empire. Accordingly, no sooner had the Amír breathed his last than messengers were dispatched to his son, who was then absent with the army, apprising him of his father's death, and requesting him to repair to Cordova. Al-mundhir did so, and was publicly sworn on Sunday the third of Rabi'-l-awal (August 7, A.D. 886,) at the hour of noon. The reign of Al-mundhir, however, was of short duration, and mostly spent in war with the rebel 'Omar Ibn Hafsún, a man of Christian origin, who rose during the lifetime of his father, and whose craftiness and perfidy are sufficiently demonstrated in the histories of that time. Upon one occasion Al-mundhir besieged him in one of his strongholds, and so pressed him on all sides, that the rebel could not escape. Seeing himself completely surrounded, and having no hope of deliverance, 'Omar had recourse to the following stratagem. He sent a messenger to Al-mundhir, offering to surrender, and to reside at Cordova, on condition that his life should be spared, and that the Sultán would pledge his word not to molest him or deprive him of his property. Al-mundhir granted his request; and causing the necessary letters of forgiveness and safe conduct to be issued to him and to his followers, received them in his tent, and treated them with the greatest kindness. 'Omar then humbly asked for a certain number of beasts of burden to carry his baggage to Cordova; which was also granted, one hundred mules being put at his disposal, besides ten companies of cavalry to escort his family to that capital. Mean while several Kádis and theologians, who had attended the expedition, seeing the war at an end, took advantage of the convoy, and returned to Cordova; but 'Omar, who meditated treason, followed them at some distance with a band of desperate outlaws, like the hawk hovering over his prey; and when he saw the opportunity, he pounced upon the convoy, slew the guards, released his family and treasures, and again
fled to the mountains. With this man Al-mundhir had to fight many a pitched battle; but, after defeating him in several partial encounters, Al-mundhir fell a victim to his intrepidity, and was killed in a skirmish near Yobaster towards the middle of Safar of the year 275 (July, A.D. 888), after a reign of two years all but fifteen days. He was then forty-six years old, having been born in 229 (beginning Sept. 29, A.D. 843). His mother's name was Athl.

Al-mundhir was a wise and enlightened sovereign: it was a common saying in his time,—"Al-mundhir has rendered Andalus a country of abundance and peace." Such were his ardour and abilities in the field, that he came off victorious in almost every encounter. The people of Toledo having sent him the customary tribute at the commencement of his reign, he returned it, saying, "You may keep it for the expenses of the war, for I shall soon be upon you, if God be pleased."

Al-mundhir was succeeded by his brother, 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed. According to Ibn Khaldún, the revenue of Andalus, before the time of 'Abdullah, amounted to three hundred thousand dinárs; one-third of which went to pay the army, one hundred thousand to the salaries of governors and public officers, the remainder to the coffers of the Khalif. During the reign of 'Abdullah the above sum was considerably increased, and the overplus was spent by him in the civil wars and rebellions with which his reign was troubled, as he had to contend with enemies in every corner of his empire.

'Abdullah was a very pious man; he regularly attended the mosque, and never made use of wine or other intoxicating liquors: he was eloquent and witty. Ibn Hayyán has preserved us several of his verses composed extempore; among which are the following.

It was the custom of 'Abdullah's Wizírs, whenever they were consulted upon the affairs of the state, to present to him their written answer in a wooden case. One of his Wizírs, named An-nadhr Ibn Salamah, having once been consulted upon certain business, sent up his written opinion in the manner above described. Having perused it with attention, 'Abdullah did not approve of the advice, and wrote the following verses:

"Thou art, O Nadhr! always the same: no good whatever can be expected from thee;
"Yet I always knew thee ready to sit in the shade, and partake of a good dinner."  

The following [addressed to one of his women] are particularly praised:

"O Mohjah, my beloved! what gives thee pain? O throne of love! what preys upon thy mind?
"O messenger of the eye! who has looked upon thee with an evil eye?
"Thou hast run away with my happiness, and taken it to the hall, there to
"produce it before thy company."

After a reign of nearly five-and-twenty years, 'Abdullah died in the year 300 (A. D. 912). His mother's name was 'Ishár, and she lived to a great age, for she died only one year before her son.
CHAPTER V.

Accession of 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Invasion of Galicia—of Navarre—of Alava—Theuda, Queen of Navarre—Battle of Al-handik—Defeat of the Moslems—Ample revenge taken by 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Christian nations court his friendship—Greek ambassadors arrive in Cordova—Other embassies—Reception of the Greek embassy—Conspiracy against 'Abdu-r-rahmán’s life detected—Execution of his son 'Abdullah—Conquests in Africa—Death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán—Revenues of Andalus under his reign—Buildings erected by him—His Hájib and Wizirs—Present made to An-násir.

On the death of 'Abdullah, his grandson 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Mohammed, who was put to death by his brother Al-mutref, succeeded him in the empire. Although 'Abdu-r-rahmán was then young in years, and his uncles and grand-uncles were still alive, yet not one of his relatives opposed his accession, but forwarded it strenuously [though to their prejudice] rather than disturb the public tranquillity. On his assuming the command, 'Abdu-r-rahmán found the country disturbed by numerous rebels, and distracted by the civil wars and private feuds of its powerful lords. He, however, succeeded in extinguishing the fire of discord, putting down rebellion, and subjecting the whole of Andalus to his authority. He had reigned five-and-twenty years when this was accomplished, and yet he reigned [afterwards] twenty-five years more, during which time the empire of the Bení Umeyyah in Andalus reached the highest degree of power and splendour. He was the first sovereign of his family who assumed the titles of Khalif and Amíru-l-mámenín (commander of the faithful), and who surrounded his court with a magnificence and splendour which equalled, if it did not exceed, all the pomp and state displayed by the powerful sovereigns of the house of 'Abbas. 'Abdu-r-rahmán waged incessant war with the Christians: at first, he himself led his armies to the field, but having in the year 323 (beginning Dec. 10, A. D. 934) lost the battle of Al-handik, on which occasion God was pleased to afflict the Moslems with a most severe defeat, he abstained thenceforward from commanding his armies in person, although he invariably sent his troops every season to invade the Christian territory. In this manner the Moslems subdued the country of the Franks much
beyond the utmost limits ever reached under the reign of any of his predecessors. The Christian nations beyond the Pyrenees extended to him the hand of submission, and their kings sent him valuable presents, to conciliate his favour. Even the Kings of Rome, Constantinople, and other distant parts, sent him ambassadors asking for peace and suspension of hostilities, and offering to subscribe to any conditions that he should dictate. The Kings of Galicia, Kashtálah (Castile), Pamplona, and other northern nations bordering on 'Abdu-r-rahmán's territory, repaired to his court, kissed his hand in token of obedience, and solicited his friendship and good-will.

According to Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi [Abú 'Amru Ahmed] the accession of 'Abdu-r-rahmán took place at the beginning of Rabi'-l-awal of the year 300 (Oct. or Nov. A. D. 912); for in a work which that author wrote, entitled Al-'ikd (the necklace), he commemorates the above event in the following verses:

"A new moon has begun; and the empire has received fresh strength and vigour.
"O thou [who rulest] by the grace of God, tell me, if I am deficient [in praise], who can pretend to surpass thee?
"For if the month of fasting (Ramadhán) be followed by its fitr, this day is like a festival to the whole age." 6

By the first of the above verses the poet means that 'Abdu-r-rahmán ascended the throne at the beginning of the moon of Rabi'-l-awal.

'Abdu-r-rahmán assumed the surname of An-násir lidín-illah (the defender of the religion of God), by which he is generally mentioned by the historians of his age.

One of the first acts of his administration was to ameliorate the condition of his subjects by suppressing many illegal taxes which had been imposed under the preceding reign. The fact is recorded by Ibnu Khaldún, who tells us that no sooner had 'Abdu-r-rahmán ascended the throne, than he abolished all taxes contrary to the spirit of the Sunnah or body of traditional law, and by causing justice to be equally and fairly administered, by encouraging agriculture and trade, laid the foundations of national prosperity.

'Abdu-r-rahmán was indefatigable in his exertions to humble the pride of the Christians, whom he defeated and slaughtered on several occasions. In the year 308 (beginning May 22, A. D. 920), for instance, he invaded Galicia at the head of a considerable army, and ravaged that country. The King Ordhún Ibn Adefúnsh (Ordoño II., son of Alfonso), assisted by the King of the Franks and the King of the Basques, advanced to defend his dominions, but in vain: 'Abdu-r-rahmán defeated them both, wasted their territories, reduced their strongholds, and demolished several of their fortresses.
Again, in the year 312 (beginning April 8, A.D. 924), he invaded the land of Banbilúnah (Navarre), penetrated far into the theatre of war, wasted the country, took and razed many fortresses, set fire to the towns, and put the inhabitants to the sword; and although the enemy fled to the mountains, and occupied the passes with a view to attack him on his retreat, they were unable to make the least impression upon him.

After this, 'Abdu-r-rahman had to contend with some of his own subjects, who had revolted against him and sought the assistance of the Christians. After defeating the rebels in several encounters, An-násir turned his victorious arms against the people of Alava, who had favoured the revolt, and took thirty of their fortresses.

In the year 322 (Dec. 21, A.D. 933), An-násir made an incursion into the mountainous districts of Navarre, whence he marched on Pamplona. Queen Túta(h) (Theuda?), dreading his vengeance, came out to meet him, and put herself under his power; upon which An-násir invested her son Garcia with the sovereignty of the land. This being done, An-násir turned towards Alava, and, scouring the plains, subdued and razed its fortresses.

Some time after this, 'Abdu-r-rahmán invaded Galicia, where Ordhún Ibn Adefúns h (Ordoñó III.) reigned at the time. Not daring to meet him in the field, the Christian king shut himself up within the walls of Oshmah (Osma); but An-násir besieged him in that fortress, took and demolished Burghosh (Burgos) and several other strong places, and defeated the Christian forces in many encounters; after which he returned victorious to Cordova.

In the year 325 (beginning Nov. 18, A.D. 936), hearing that Túta(h) (Theuda), Queen of Banbilúnah (Pamplona), had infringed the treaty which subsisted between the two, An-násir invaded her kingdom, subdued the greater part of it, and compelled her to ask for peace; after which he returned triumphant to Cordova.

In the year 327 (beginning Oct. 28, A.D. 938), 'Abdu-r-rahmán undertook an expedition against the Galicians, which ended in the disastrous battle of Al-handik, in which the Moslems were defeated, numbers of them falling under the swords of their enemies. Since the reign of his grandfather 'Abdullah, the Christians of Galicia had held possession of the city of Samúrah (Zamora), on the northern side of the river Dúroh (Duero), which they had fortified with the utmost care, and in which they had placed a numerous and well-appointed garrison. From this place the Christians were making continual incursions into the Moslem territory, leading the defenceless inhabitants of the opposite banks into captivity, and committing all manner of excesses and depredations. There was still another cause for the expedition. A rebellious chieftain, named Umeyyah Ibn Is'hák,
had taken refuge at the court of the Christian king; and being a shrewd and intelligent man, well versed in military affairs, he gave the enemy the best advice, and often conducted their armies into the very heart of the Moslem territory. This Umeyyah was the brother of Ahmed Ibn Is'hák, one of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's Wizírs, whom that Sultán caused to be put to death for some civil offence of which he had been guilty. At the time of his brother's execution, Umeyyah was governor of a frontier fortress called Shantareyn (Santarem). No sooner did he receive intelligence of his brother's fate, than he fled with a handful of followers to the court of Ramiro, King of the Galicians, whose service he entered, guiding his armies to the defenceless points of the Mohammedan frontier, or to the passes and fords at which he could best assail the territories of Islám. However, whilst Umeyyah, who had all the time retained possession of Santarem, was one day enjoying the amusements of the chase, one of his own slaves, who had remained in charge of the fortress, rose and took command of the place, shut the gates against Umeyyah, and sent a messenger to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, apprising him of what had occurred. Umeyyah, in the mean while, fled to the court of his ally, the King of Galicia, who received him with the greatest kindness, and appointed him his Wizír. This was the motive of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's expedition.

As the historian Al-mes'údí has preserved us an account of this war, we shall here abridge his narrative. "'Abdu-r-rahmán," says he, "having led his army against Zamora, the capital of Galicia,1 which he besieged, Radmir (Ramiro II.), King of the Galicians, hastened to its relief, and encamped in the neighbourhood. 'Abdu-r-rahmán's forces amounted to one hundred thousand men; other authors make their number still more considerable. A contest soon ensued between the two armies, in which the Moslems came off victorious, this being in the month of Shawwál, 327 (July or August, A.D. 939), three days after the eclipse of the sun which happened in the same month.2 The garrison of Zamora, having made a sally, were repulsed by the besiegers, who pursued them sword in hand beyond the moat within the walls of the city. But, as the Moslems were preparing to follow up the advantage, the Christians fell suddenly upon them, and killed fifty thousand of their number.”

The same writer says, in another part of his work, "The city of Zamora was enclosed by seven walls of wonderful structure, the work of one of the early kings [of Galicia]. The space between the walls was occupied by ditches3 and wide moats filled with water. The Moslems succeeded in forcing their way through the first two enclosures, but when they came to the third, they were furiously assailed on all sides by the Christians, who put to death every Moslem they could overtake. Upwards of forty thousand men, others say fifty thousand,
"were drowned in the moats. This was doubtless one of the most signal defeats
ever inflicted upon our brethren of Andalus, either by the Galicians or by the
Basques; and the victory would have been still more complete, had King Ramiro
pursued the remnant of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's army, which, panic-struck as it was,
he would have had no difficulty in annihilating. But by alarming Ramiro with
the fear of an ambush, and alluring him with the rich spoil left by the Moslems
in their camp, Umeyyah Ibn Is'hák prevented him from following up the victory.
Some time after, Umeyyah applied to 'Abdu-r-rahmán for a safe conduct, and,
having obtained it, fled the court of Ramiro, and arrived at Cordova, where he
was graciously received by the Khalif." 14

"Burning to revenge this disaster, An-násir continued to send yearly expe-
ditions under the command of his generals, who invariably came off victorious,
gaining many battles, in which the Galicians lost twice as many men as those
who had fallen on the side of the Moslems at the battle of Al-handik. In short,
"at the moment we write (A.H. 330) the Moslems have regained their superiority
"over Ramiro, the King of the Galicians."

Thus far Al-mes'údí. Other writers have preserved details of this battle, the
year in which it was fought being well known among the people of Andalus as
'A'mu-l-handik (the year [of the battle] of Al-handik). We have already said, that
ever after this defeat An-násir abstained from leading his armies in person, but that
he persevered in the laudable purpose of waging war with the infidels, by directing
the governors of the districts on the frontiers of his empire to make incursions into
the Christian territory.

On the death of Garcia, son of Sancho, King of the Basques, his mother Tútah
(Theuda) succeeded him as regent and guardian of his son. Having shortly after
infringed the treaty subsisting between her and the Khalif, it was decided to chastise
her for her bad faith. Accordingly, in the year 325 (beginning Nov. 18, A.D. 936)
An-násir invaded her dominions, wasted all the territory round Pamplona, and
compelled the faithless queen to implore peace.

When the Christian nations saw 'Abdu-r-rahmán's repeated successes, they were
filled with terror; and all hastened to send ambassadors to him, with a view to
obtain his friendship and propitiate his good-will. Accordingly, in the year 336
(beginning July 22, A.D. 947) an embassy arrived in Cordova with presents from
Constantine, the Emperor of Constantinople. The day in which the ambassadors
made their entrance into the capital was a day of festival, and great crowds of
people collected by order of 'Abdu-r-rahmán to meet them.

Ibnu Khalidún says that the Khalif's troops received new arms for the occasion,
and were completely equipped; the royal apartments were decorated with the
utmost profusion and magnificence, the great hall of the palace was hung with the richest curtains and draperies, and spread with the most costly carpets, while the throne was surrounded on all sides by the sons, brothers, uncles, and other relatives of the Khalif. The Wizirs, and the officers attending on the royal person, were all drawn out, keeping their proper places in the utmost order. The ambassadors were then introduced to the presence of the Khalif, and were struck with astonishment at the splendour and magnificence displayed before them. They approached the throne, and delivered their credentials into the hands of the Khalif, who commanded the learned of his court to address the assembly in speeches in which they should commemorate the superiority of Islám [over every other religion] and the power of the Khalifate, and return thanks to God for the mercies he had dispensed [to the true believers], through the manifestation and support of the true religion, and the humiliation and discomfiture of its enemies. But when the learned men who were present prepared to execute his commands, all failed in their attempt; and they were so overpowered by dread of the august assembly, that they fixed their eyes on the ground, and kept silence. If any speaker rose to address the assembly, he stammered, and was soon reduced to silence by the terror that this most imposing scene produced in his mind. Seeing this, An-násir intrusted the task to Abú ʾAlí Al-kálí, a learned man lately come from ʾIrák, and one of the literary characters attached to the suite of his son Al-hakem, the heir-apparent to the throne. Knowing his high literary reputation, An-násir chose him in preference to any other; but he likewise failed, through want of the necessary resolution. Then rose Mundhir Ibn Saʿíd, a native of Fahsu-l-balútt, who, though not accustomed to speak extempore, and not in the least prepared for the occasion, made a most able speech, wherein he developed and explained admirably the subject given to him, and delivered extempore on the same subject a long poem, with which the assembly was extremely delighted: the astonishment he produced by such an extraordinary performance was so great, that a murmur of approbation ran through the assembly, notwithstanding the solemnity of the occasion; and An-násir appointed him on the spot to the office of Kádl-l-jam’áh (chief justice), in which he greatly distinguished himself by his profound knowledge and eloquence. As the harangue which Mundhir delivered on this solemn occasion is given at large by Ibn Hayyán and other historians, we need not quote it here.

On the departure of the Greek ambassadors, Hishám Ibn Hudheyl accompanied them, with a magnificent present, and with instructions to conclude an alliance, and strengthen the friendship between the two monarchs. At the expiration of two years Hishám returned to Cordova, having faithfully executed the commission intrusted to him. Hishám came attended by ambassadors from Constantine.
After this arrived another embassy from a King of the Sclavonians, whose name was Dhúku, as well as from the King of the Alaman (the Emperor of Germany), and from a King of the Franks beyond the Jebál Al-bort (Pyrenees), named Ukoh (Hugo), besides a similar one from another King of the eastern confines of France, called Kaldoh. These ambassadors were received by An-náṣir in great pomp and state, and he ordered that the officers of his household and others should go out to meet them. On the return home of the Sclavonian ambassadors, 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent along with them Rabi', the Bishop, who reached the court of Hoto (Otho), and returned after an absence of two years.

In the year 344 (beginning April 26, A.D. 955) Ordoño (Ordoño II.) also sent an embassy to ask for a continuation of the peace; which was granted to him: and in 345 (beginning April 14, A.D. 956) he again sent to request that Ferdeland, Count of Castile (Ferran Gonzalez), should also be comprised in the treaty; to which An-náṣir also consented.

Garcia, son of Sancho, had succeeded to the kingdom of Galicia after the death of his father Sancho, son of Fruela; but the Galicians having risen against him, under the command of the above Ferdeland, Count of Castile, this chief, who was one of the greatest men in the country, declined that dignity in favour of Ordoño, son of Ramiro (Ordoño IV.), who was accordingly placed on the throne in his stead. But as Garcia, son of Sancho, was the grandson of Theuda, Queen of Navarre, this princess took his part, and presented herself to An-náṣir in the year 347 (beginning March 24, A.D. 958), imploring the continuance of peace with herself and her son Sancho, son of King Ramiro; and requesting at the same time that he would assist her grandson Sancho, son of Garcia, to reconquer his kingdom, and to take the field against his enemies. For this purpose, Theuda and the two princes repaired to the court of An-náṣir, by whom they were received in state; and not only did the Khalif grant the queen and her son the peace which they asked, but he also sent an army to replace Garcia on the throne of Galicia; which was speedily accomplished, after depriving Ordoño of it, and causing the Galicians to swear allegiance to him. Seeing this, Theuda dispatched an embassy to thank An-náṣir, and likewise sent her letters to all the provinces [inhabited by the Christians], acquainting the people with that event, and with the treacherous conduct of Ferdeland, the Count of Castile. The inhabitants believed her statement, and reprobated the conduct of that chieftain; and An-náṣir, moreover, ceased not to protect and assist him [Sancho] till he died.

With the ambassador of Kaldoh, King of the eastern part of France, who, as related, arrived at the court of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, there came also an ambassador from the King of Barcelona and Tarragona, to solicit peace; which was granted. After
this another embassy arrived, sent by the King of Rúmah (Rome), also soliciting An-násir's friendship. The above narrative is borrowed from Ibn Khaldún, somewhat abridged: we shall now proceed to extract passages from other writers.

Ibnu Hayyán and others state that the empire of An-násir arrived at the highest summit of glory and splendour; that the Greeks and Christians came to him from all parts, courting his friendship, soliciting peace, and sending him immense treasures. "No nation," continues Ibn Hayyán, "heard of him that did not send him ambassadors. The Kings of the Greeks, those of the Franks, and Majús (Northmen), all sent ambassadors to his court, who invariably returned satisfied and contented. Among the embassies dispatched by infidel kings to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, the most celebrated was that of the ruler of Constantinah the Great (Constantinople), who made him a most splendid present, and courted his friendship." We have already stated, on the authority of Ibn Khaldún, that the ambassadors of the Greek monarch arrived in the year 336 (beginning July 22, a. d. 947); Ibn Hayyán places their arrival in the month of Safar of the year 338 (August, a. d. 949): which of the two dates is the right one, God only knows. We shall here transcribe the passage of Ibn Hayyán relating to the arrival and reception of the Greek ambassadors in Cordova.

"No sooner," says that diligent historian, "was the Khalíf An-násir informed of the landing of the ambassadors sent by the Emperor of Greece at Bejénnah (Pechina), than he began to make preparations for their reception, intending to receive them with due honour and attention, and with the greatest possible display. Accordingly he issued orders that Yahya Ibn Mohammed Ibn Leyth and other distinguished people of his court should immediately proceed to that place (Pechina), and should wait upon the ambassadors, taking care that they should be provided with every necessary for their journey to the capital. When they approached Cordova, several generals, followed by their respective bodies of troops fully armed and equipped as in time of war, went out to meet them; and when they came still nearer, two of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's chief eunuchs went out to them, with orders from their master to treat them with the utmost attention and respect, thereby intimating how much he desired to honour them; for the eunuchs of those days were amongst the highest functionaries at court, being exclusively employed in the service of the Khalíf or in that of his harem, and being, moreover, intrusted with the custody of the royal palace. The ambassadors and their suite were lodged in a country-house called Munyah Nasr, which belonged to the Amír Al-hakem, the presumptive heir to the throne, and was situated in the suburb on the opposite (eastern) bank of the Guadalquivir. Here no one, whether noble or plebeian, was allowed to visit them or hold any
communication with them, a certain number of Hájibs or chamberlains being
selected from among the maulis and chief servants of the Khalif’s household to
keep off all intruders. A guard of sixteen men was moreover stationed at the
gate of the palace, who relieved each other four by four, day and night. ’Abdu-r-
rahmán then left the palace of Az-zahrá, where he was living at the time, and
removed to his palace in Cordova, previous to the reception of the Greek
ambassadors. Having appointed Saturday, the eleventh of the month of Rabi’-l-
awal of the above-mentioned year (338), and fixed upon the vaulted hall in his
palace of Az-zahrá as the place where he would receive their credentials, orders
were issued to the high functionaries of the state and to the commanders of the
forces to prepare for the forthcoming ceremony. The hall was beautifully deco-
rated for the occasion, and a throne glittering with gold and sparkling with gems
was raised in the middle of it. To the right of the throne stood five of the
Khalif’s sons in the following order: next to him his eldest son Al-hakem, the
presumptive heir to the empire; next to Al-hakem, ’Abdullah;30 then ’Abdu-l-
’azíz Al-asbagh; and lastly, Merwán. To the left of the Khalif stood his sons
Al-mundhir, ’Abdu-l-jabbár, and Suleymán; ’Abdu-l-malek, being ill at the time,
was not present at the ceremony. Next to them were the Wizírs, each at his post
to the right or left of the throne. Then came the Hájibs or chamberlains, the
sons of the Wizírs, the freed slaves of the Khalif, and the Wákils or officers of his
household. The court of the palace had been previously strewn with the richest
carpets and most costly rugs; silk awnings of the most gorgeous description had
every where been thrown over the doors and arches. Presently the ambassadors
entered the hall, and were struck with astonishment and awe at sight of the
magnificence displayed before them, and the power of the Sultán before whom
they stood. They then advanced a few steps, and presented the letter of their
master, Constantine, son of Leo, Lord of Constantinah the Great (Constantin-
ople). The letter was written in Greek upon sky-blue paper,31 and the
characters were of gold: within the letter was an enclosure, the ground of which
was also sky-blue, like the first-mentioned, but the characters were of silver; it
was likewise written in Greek, and contained a list and description of the presents
which the Lord of Constantinah sent to the Khalif. Upon the letter was a seal
of gold, of the weight of four mithkáls, on one side of which was a likeness of the
Messiah, and, on the other, those of the King Constantine and his son. The letter
was enclosed in a bag of silver cloth, over which was a case of gold with a
portrait of King Constantine admirably executed on stained glass. All this was
enclosed in a case32 covered with a cloth of silk and gold tissue. On the first
line of the ’Inwdn or introduction was written, ‘Constantine and Romanin
(Romanus), believers in the Messiah, Kings of the Greeks,' and in the next,
' To the great and exalted in dignity and power, as he most deserves, the noble
in descent, 'Abdu-r-rahmán the Khalif, who rules over the Arabs of Andalus.
'May God prolong his life!'

Wishing to render this solemn ceremony as imposing as possible, 'Abdu-r-
rahmán ordered that all his Khattíbs (preachers) and poets should attend, that
they might [in the presence of the Greek ambassadors] address the assembly
concerning the power and splendour of his empire, and the consolidation of the
Khalifate under his reign. For this purpose he instructed his son and heir
Al-hakem to select from among the poets of his court, accustomed to extempore
speaking, those who could best accomplish that difficult task.

Accordingly, Al-hakem commanded a dependent of his, named the Faquih
Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr Al-kasiniání, to prepare for the occasion, and to
compose an eloquent harangue to be pronounced before the Khalif on that
day. Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr was perhaps the person best qualified for the task, being
a man of immense rhetorical learning and taste, and deeply learned in the Arabic
language; he therefore prepared to execute the commands of Al-hakem, and
on the appointed day repaired to the hall of audience. Scarcely, however, had
he begun to address the assembly, when the sight of the imposing ceremony,
the dead silence kept by all present, the splendour and magnificence which
surrounded the throne of the Khalif, made such impression on him, that his
voice faltered, his tongue clove to his mouth, and he could not articulate a
single word, and fell senseless on the ground. The task of addressing the
assembly was next intrusted to Abú 'Alí Isma'íl Ibnu-l-kásim Al-kálí Al-
baghdádí, the author of the Amálí (dictations) and An-nuwádir (novelties),
then a guest of the Khalif, having lately arrived from 'Irák, who was reputed
to be a prince in the science of rhetoric, and an ocean of language. 'Get up,'
said one of the assembly to him, ' and raise the fallen man.' Abú-l-kálí rose,
and began addressing the assembly in a clear and intelligible voice: he thanked
and praised God as he deserves, invoked his blessing on the Prophet Mohammed,
but, all of a sudden, he stopped for want of a word which did not occur to
him, and thus put an end to his peroration.'

Such is the account which Ibn Hayyán gives of this occurrence. Ibn Khaledún
says that it was Abú 'Alí who received in the first instance instructions to address
the assembly, and who went to the palace prepared with a harangue: this assertion
is corroborated by the author of the Mattmah [Ibn Khákán]; but, as Ibn Hayyán
derived his information from men who were present at the ceremony, we hesitate
not to give the preference to his version. Be this as it may, it appears certain
that when Mundhir Ibn Sa'id perceived the failure of Abú 'Alí Al-káli, he got up, and, taking up the subject where the unsuccessful speaker had left it, delivered a peroration, composed of both prose and verse, which to this day stands unequalled as a literary composition; and that 'Abdu-r-rahmán was so pleased with the performance, that he appointed him preacher and Imám to the great mosque; and some time after, the office of Kádí-l-jam'áh or supreme judge of Andalus being vacant by the death of Mohammed Ibn 'Isa, he named him to that high post, and made him besides Mokri (reader of the Korán) to the mosque of Az-zahrá.

In the year 339 (beginning June 19, A. D. 950) a conspiracy was discovered at Cordova, the object of which was to put to death the Khalif An-násir and his son Al-hakem, the presumptive heir to the empire. At the head of it was 'Abdullah, one of the Khalif's sons, who, from his ascetic habits and secluded life, had received the epithet of Az-záhid [the austere]. Intelligence of his wicked designs having been conveyed to his father in time, he ordered him into his presence, and had him executed, together with the principal conspirators, on the day of 'Idu-l-adháhí (festival of the victims) of the year 339 (May 13, A. D. 951). It is said that a celebrated theologian, named Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr, had instigated this unfortunate youth to the attempt on his father's life, and that when that individual heard that the conspiracy had been discovered, he destroyed himself. Others say that Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr was innocent of the crime imputed to him; but God only knows: the fact is, that he ended his days in prison on the same day in which 'Abdullah was executed.

Andalus was not the only country where the arms of 'Abdu-r-rahmán were successful; his armies subdued also a considerable portion of Africa, and established in that country the rule of the Bení Umeyyah. The causes which led to that glorious event are variously stated by the historians; but the appearance of the Fátimites in that country, the inveterate hatred which the race of Umeyyah entertained against them, and the mighty consideration of not allowing countries bordering upon Andalus to fall into the hands of those conquerors, are given as the real motives which induced the Khalif 'Abdu-r-rahmán to send his fleets and armies to the assistance of the Bení Idrís, the Bení Sáleh, and other princes attacked, and which led ultimately to the establishment of his rule over the greater portion of Eastern and Western Africa.

In A. h. 305 (beginning June 23, A. D. 917), 'Abdullah, the Shiíte, after reducing the whole of Eastern Africa under his sway, sent his general Mossálah Ibn Habús Al-meknásí against Yahya Ibn Idrís, Sultán of Fez, whom he defeated, and afterwards besieged in his capital. Although Mossálah was then unable to reduce Fez, he returned to Maghreb [Western Africa] in A. h. 309 (beginning
May 11, A.D. 921), took that city, and put Yahya Ibn Idrís to death. A relative of the deceased, named Al-hasan, but who was better known under the surname of Al-hojjám, succeeded some time after in expelling from Fez the governor appointed by Mossálah, and seating himself on the throne of his ancestors. His reign, however, was not of long duration: Músa Ibn Abí-l-'áfiyyah, who was governor of Western Africa for the Fátimites, attacked him in 311 (April 20, A.D. 923), took his capital from him, and put him to death. Again, in 341 (May 28, A.D. 952), the dynasty of the Bení Idrís regained possession of a great portion of their former dominions, with the exception of Fez, which remained in the hands of a general named Maysúr the Shiite.

Subsequently to this, Abú-l-'aysh Ahmed, a prince of the family of Idrís, seeing his dominions invaded by the Fátimites, swore vassalage to An-násir, and sent to implore his assistance. An-násir, however, would not send him any troops unless the Idrísite gave him as hostages the ports of Tangiers and Ceuta. Abú-l-'aysh having refused to comply with his demand, An-násir dispatched a fleet, which ravaged the coast, and compelled that sovereign to accept the terms offered to him. Once master of those two important fortresses, An-násir extended his sway over the surrounding country, until his power was firmly established in Western Africa, and his rule was obeyed from Tihart to Sijilmésah. From every part of that wide-spread region princes and lords came to the court of An-násir to kiss his hand, in token of obedience and vassalage, and to implore his powerful aid and protection. The princes of the Zenátah and other Berber tribes, the Bení Idrís, and other powerful families which held sway in Western Africa, hastened to court his friendship, and offered to hold their respective dominions in his name.

"In the year 305 (beginning June 23, A.D. 917)," says the historian whose words we transcribe, "several members of the royal family of Sa'íd Ibn Sáleh, King of Nokúr, who had been put to death by the Shiites of Africa, took refuge in Malaga, Bejénnah, and other sea-ports in the south of Andalus. No sooner was the Khalif 'Abdu-r-rahmán informed of their arrival, than he sent them splendid robes and costly presents, and issued orders that they should every where be treated with the respect due to their rank, giving them their choice between going to Cordova or any other part of his dominions, or remaining where they were. With the exception, however, of one or two who accepted the Khalif's invitation, and visited him in his capital, the remainder preferred fixing their residence in Malaga, owing to the proximity of that port to their lost dominions, in which they hoped to be re-instated. 'Abdu-r-rahmán promised to aid them against the Shiites of Africa whenever the opportunity should arrive. Accordingly, in the year 306 (beginning June 13, A.D. 918), an
expedition was fitted out in Malaga, and after a short contest Sáleb Ibn Sa’íd was seated on the throne of his father. When the letters announcing this victory arrived at Cordova, ’Abdu-r-rahmán caused them to be publicly read in all the mosques of Andalus; and he immediately sent re-inforcements, as well as provisions, military stores, and money, to maintain the new king in his conquest.”

In the year 332 (beginning Sept. 3, A. D. 943), Mohammed Ibn ’Abdillah Ibn Abí ’Isa, the Idrísite, Kádí-l-jam’áh or supreme judge of Fez, arrived in Andalus for the purpose of joining in the war against the infidels. We have already alluded, in another part of this work, to the hospitable manner in which he was entertained by the Khalif.36 There came also to Cordova during this reign two other members of the royal family of Idrís, whose names were Hasan, son of Al-kásim, better known under the surname of Janún (Kanún?), and ’Isa Ibn Hanún Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-kásim. They made their entry into Cordova on Monday the 12th of Shawwál of the year 33337 (May 27, A. D. 945). They were kindly received and hospitably entertained by ’Abdu-r-rahmán until the month of Safar of the ensuing year (Sept. or Oct. A. D. 945), when both returned loaded with presents to their native country.

On Saturday the 9th of Rejeb of the year 341 (Nov. 28, A. D. 952),” says the historian Ibnu Hayyán, “Hasan, son of Ahmed Al-fádhel, son of Ibráhím, son of Mohammed, and Mohammed, son of ’Isa, son of Ahmed, son of Ibráhím, both descendants of ’Alí Ibn Abí Tálib, arrived in Cordova; and on Wednesday, the 26th of Rabí’l-akhar of the ensuing year (Sept. 7, A. D. 953), ’Isa, Abú-l-’aysh,38 Yahya Ibn Hasan, and Hasan Ibn Mohammed, also belonging to the royal family of Idrís. They fixed their dwelling in Cordova, and left a numerous posterity. Yahya died in 349 (beginning March 2, A. D. 960), and Hasan in the following year: both were buried in the cemetery called Makbaru-r-rabadh (of the suburb) at Cordova; the chief Kádí of that capital, Mundhir Ibn Sa’íd Al-bolúttí, reading the funeral service over their bodies, by the command of ’Abdu-r-rahmán. As to Abú-l-’aysh, it is well known that he met with his death in an encounter with the Christians of the north.”

’Abdu-r-rahmán died at Az-zahrá on the second or third day of the month of Ramadhán39 of the year 350 (October, A. D. 961), of a paralytic fit, at the age of seventy-three. He was born in the year 277 (beginning April 24, A. D. 890), and was only twenty years old when his father Mohammed was put to death. His mother’s name was Moznah. In addition to the honourable appellation of An-násir lidín-illah (the defender of the true faith), ’Abdu-r-rahmán received from his subjects the surname of Abú-l-motref (the victorious). Never was the Moham-
medan empire more prosperous, or the true religion more triumphant, than under his reign. The infidels of Andalus were driven back to the mountainous districts of the north, where they insured their safety only by paying tribute to the Commander of the Faithful. Commerce and agriculture flourished; the sciences and arts received a new impulse, and the revenue was increased ten-fold. Notwithstanding the costly magnificence with which 'Abdu-r-rahmán surrounded his person,—the unusual number of troops which he constantly kept in his pay,—the multitude of eunuchs, Sclavonians, and other servants employed about his palace,—the bounteous gifts which he distributed to the learned, and the splendid buildings which he caused to be erected in various parts of his extensive dominions, in Africa as well as in Andalus,—it is said, that when he died he left in the coffers of the treasury the enormous sum of five millions of dinár.

The amount of the revenue under this reign has been estimated by several contemporary writers at six millions two hundred and forty-five thousand dinár; namely, five millions four hundred and eighty thousand arising from the land-tax levied in the towns and districts, and seven hundred and sixty-five thousand being the amount of indirect taxation, and duties imposed upon goods. As to the sums which entered the royal coffers, being the fifth of the spoil taken from the infidels, they were beyond calculation, and cannot be estimated, as no precise account of them was kept in the treasury books.

Of this immense sum one-third went to pay the troops and the public officers; another third was destined for the Khalif's own use, and the remainder was spent in public buildings. Many, indeed, were the works of public utility which this just and enlightened monarch caused to be erected in various parts of his extensive dominions. As to his capital, Cordova, he is well known to have embellished it and widened its precincts, so that it equalled, if it did not surpass, in size and splendour the proud metropolis of the Bení 'Abbás. His addition to the great mosque of Cordova, and the construction of the palace of Az-zahrá in the vicinity of that capital, are two splendid erections, which will transmit the name of 'Abdu-r-rahmán to posterity. Of both those buildings we have elsewhere given as accurate a description as it was in our power; and therefore we need not now return to the subject.

It is said that after the death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán a paper was found in his own hand-writing in which those days which he had spent in happiness and without any cause of sorrow were carefully noted down, and on numbering them they were found to amount only to fourteen. O man of understanding! wonder and observe the small portion of real happiness the world affords, even in the most enviable position! The Khalif An-násir, whose prosperity in mundane affairs
DYNASTIES IN SPAIN.

and whose widely-spread empire became proverbial, had only fourteen days of undisturbed enjoyment during a reign of fifty years, seven months, and three days. Praise be given to him, the Lord of eternal glory and everlasting empire! There is no God but He! the Almighty, the giver of empire to whomsoever he pleases!

As above stated, 'Abdu-r-rahmán was the first sovereign of the house of Umeyyah in Andalus who assumed the title of Amiru-l-múmenín (commander of the faithful). The authors of the time say that when 'Abdu-r-rahmán saw the state of weakness and abjectness to which the Khalifate had been reduced, and perceived that the Turkish freedmen in the service of the Bení 'Abbás had usurped all authority and power in the state,—when he heard that the Khalif Al-muktadir had been put to death, in the year 317 (beginning Feb. 13, A. D. 929), by one of his mauls, called Múnis Al-modhaffer, 40 he no longer hesitated to assume the insignia of the Khalifate, and call himself Amiru-l-múmenín.

'Abdu-r-rahmán has been described by the historians of the age as the mildest and most enlightened sovereign that ever ruled a country. His meekness, his generosity, and his love of justice became proverbial: none of his ancestors ever surpassed him in courage in the field, zeal for religion, and other virtues which constitute an able and beloved monarch: he was fond of science, and the patron of the learned, with whom he loved to converse, spending those hours which he stole from the arduous labours of the administration in literary meetings, to which all the eminent poets and learned men of his court were admitted. The histories of the time are filled with anecdotes, which show his love of justice, and his respect for the learned; but we shall only transcribe the following as a proof of what has been said of this good Khalif.

Wishing once to buy a house in Cordova for one of his concubines named Hadhiyyah, whom he loved passionately, he fixed upon a very suitable residence belonging to the children of Zakariyyá, the brother of Najdah. The house was situated close to [the street of] the sawyers, in the eastern suburb, and separate from every other building except a bagnio, with a very extensive reservoir of water, which adjoined it on one side. It happened, however, that the children of Zakariyyá, the brother of Najdah, were at that time orphans under the tutorship of the Kádí Mundhir. Having previously sent people to value the house, and the price suitng him, An-násir dispatched a man to the executor of the father's will, with orders to treat in his own name, and purchase the house for him. Upon application, the executor stated that he could not proceed further in the matter without consulting the Kádí himself as tutor of the children, without whose authority the sale, he was well aware, could not be effected. Accordingly the Khalif sent to the
Kádí Mundhir to treat about the purchase of the house, but Mundhir answered thus to the messenger: "Tell the Commander of the Faithful, thy master and mine, that the property of an orphan cannot be sold except for three reasons; necessity, impending ruin, or the offer of more advantageous terms than those on which it was at first obtained. As to the first, my wards are not in want, and therefore they need not sell their property; neither is ruin to be apprehended at present, the house being in good condition, and wanting no repair; as to an advantageous sale, that is the very thing I and my wards desire: and if the Commander of the Faithful chooses to give them such a sum as may make their advantage quite manifest, I have no objection whatever to authorize the executors to sell the property; if not, I shall never give my consent to the transaction." On the receipt of this answer, the Khalif immediately perceived that the refusal to sell the house was merely intended to make him more anxious for its acquisition, and he therefore desisted from any further negotiation. Mundhir, on the other hand, feared lest the Khalif should take a resolution that might be prejudicial to his wards: he ordered the executor to pull down the house, which was done according to his instructions, and made him sell the ground and materials to the agent of the Khalif, for a price higher even than the valuation made by the officers of the Sultán. 'Abdu-r-rahmán, however, having been informed of the transaction, and how the house had been pulled down previous to the sale, summoned the executor to his presence, and asked him whether the charge brought against him was true, and what reasons he had for acting thus. The executor acknowledged the fact; but gave as an excuse that he had been instructed to do so by the Kádí Mundhir. Upon this, 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent for the Kádí, and, when he was introduced to his presence, spoke to him thus: "Is it true that thou orderedst the house of the brother of Najdah to be pulled down?"—"I did," was Mundhir's answer. "And what was thy reason for doing so?"—"I was guided by those words of the Almighty, (may his name be exalted!) 'As to the vessel, [it belonged] to certain poor men who did their business on the sea; and I was minded to render it unserviceable, because there was a king behind them who took every sound ship by force.'"41 'Abdu-r-rahmán said nothing further, and from that moment treated Mundhir, if possible, with greater deference and respect than before.

This Mundhir Al-bolúttí was the most learned theologian of his day. He was deeply versed in all branches of law and literature, and was besides renowned for his probity and his justice. He was born, as before said, at a small town close to Cordova, called Fahssu-l-bolútt (the field of the oak-trees), in the year 265 (beginning Sept. 2, A. D. 878). He filled the office of Kádí-l-jam'áh (supreme
judge) of Andalus during the whole of An-násir’s reign, after whose death he was confirmed in it by his son and successor Al-hakem. He died in 355 (beginning Dec. 27, A. D. 965), and left many splendid works on the Sunnah, or body of traditional law, on religious duties, and against the opinions of philosophers. He was likewise an excellent poet; and the works of Al-fath,42 Ibn Sa’íd, Ibn Hayyán, and others, are filled with extracts from his poems.

Many other illustrious characters graced the court of An-násir, or flourished under this reign, whose names only would fill a whole volume; as Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, the author of the 'Ikd (necklaces); Khalaf Ibn 'Abbás Az-zahráwí, the celebrated physician; 'Abdullah Ibn Yúnas Al-morédí; Abú Bekr Az-zubeydí; Mohammed Al-khoshani; Ibráhím Ibn Ahmed Ash-sheybání: 43 but, brevity being the chief object of our narrative, we shall pass them over in silence, keeping for some other time the mention which they so justly deserve. We cannot, however, refrain from mentioning here one of the most distinguished, namely, Kásim Ibn Asbagh Ibn Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Abú Mohammed; he was a native of Baena, a town belonging to the jurisdiction of Cordova. One of his ancestors had been a freedman of the Khalif Al-walíd, son of 'Abdu-l-malek. After taking lessons at Cordova from Bakí Ibn Mokhlíd, Mohammed Ibn Wadhhdháh, Mutref Ibn Kays, Asbagh Ibn Khalíl, Ibn Meysarah, and others, Kásim departed for the East in company with Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Aymen,44 and with Mohammed Ibn Zakariyyá Ibn 'Abdi-l-‘ala. This was in the year 274 (beginning May 27, A. D. 887). In the course of his travels Kásim visited Mekka, Kúfah, and Basrah, where he attended the lectures of the most eminent professors and theologians of the time, such as Al-mubarrad, Ibn Koteybah, and others. He afterwards went to Cairwán, and returned to Andalus, leaving behind him his two travelling companions. Kásim was deeply versed in the science of traditions, as well as in history; he shone above all in grammar, poetry, and law, being often consulted upon difficult points. He made a collection of all the traditional stories contained in the Sunan of Abú Dáúd. The cause of his writing that work was as follows:

"Having arrived in 'Irák with his friend Mohammed Ibn Aymen in the year 276 " (beginning May 5, A. D. 889), they found that Abú Dáúd, in search of whom " they had come, had died shortly before their arrival in that country. Hearing " this, both friends conceived at the same time the idea of writing a work on the " Sunan, following the chapters of the book of Abú Dáúd, in which they might " introduce such traditional sayings of the Prophet and his companions as each " of them had learned from his different masters. This idea being carried into " execution, each produced an excellent work, which is well known now, and " very much esteemed by students." Subsequently to this, Kásim Ibn Asbagh
published an abridgment of his own work, which he entitled *Al-mujtani bi-s-sunan* (a selection from the *Sunan*). He began it in the month of Moharram, 324 (Dec. A.D. 935), and dedicated it to the Amír Al-hakem, the son and successor of An-násir, whose preceptor he was. It is divided into four parts, and contains two thousand four hundred and seventy traditional allegations.

Kúsim Ibn Asbagh was born on Monday the twelfth day of the month of Dhí-l-hajjah, 247 (Feb. A.D. 862).

Músá Ibn Mohammed Ibn Jodeyr was An-násir’s Hájib: his Wizírs were 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Jeh'war, 'Abdullah Ibn Ya’la, and Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Shoheyd. The latter made his sovereign a present so remarkable for the invaluable articles, costly rarities, &c., of which it was composed, that it became proverbial; it being a common saying among the people of Andalus, when they wished to extol the beauty and value of an object, *Ahsan min hadyati-bn-Shoheyd* (handsomer even than the present of Ibn Shoheyd). As Ibnu Hayyán, Ibnu Khałdún, and other historians have preserved a list of the articles, &c., composing this present, we shall here transcribe their narrative, and will begin with Ibnu Khałdún, who introduces it in his account of the Bení Umeyyah, as a proof of the great power and unmatched splendour and riches of that dynasty when they ruled over Andalus. That diligent historian has also noted the date of the day in which the present was made, namely, on the twenty-second day of Jumáda-l-awal of the year 327 (March 16, A.D. 939). Here follow his words:

"So magnificent was the present which Ibn Shoheyd made on this occasion to the Khalif An-násir that it became famous for its magnitude all over the Mohammédan world; and that even now the memory of it subsists among the people of this country. No Sultán of Andalus, it is generally agreed, ever received a similar one; and it is added, that An-násir and his courtiers were so struck by its magnificence, that they unanîmously declared that such a trait of generosity stood unparalleled in history. Together with the present, Ibn Shoheyd sent an elegant epistle or dedication, in which he expressed his gratitude for the honours conferred on him by An-násir, and thanked that Khalif for his favours. The epistle itself was a model of eloquence, and people eagerly transcribed it or procured copies of it. An-násir was so much pleased both with the letter and the present, that he exalted Ibn Shoheyd in honour and dignity over his fellow Wizírs, and doubled his salary, which he raised to forty thousand dinárs of Andalus, besides one hundred thousand dinárs as a gratuity in the great festivals of the year.

"He also doubled his functions as well as his salary, for which reason he was called *Dhí-l-wizdrateyn* (the holder of the double Wizírate); Ibn Shoheyd being
the first functionary of Andalus on whom that title was conferred, in imitation, no doubt, of Sá'íd Ibn Mokhlid, Wizír of the Bení 'Abbás at Baghád, [who was so called]. To all these honours An-násir added another distinction, namely, that his seat in the council-room should be raised higher than those of the other Wizírs, and that his name should be the first in the list of the government pensioners: in short, his authority and influence at court became immense. The following is the list of the articles, &c., of which the present was composed:

Five hundred thousand mithkáls of coined gold; 45 four hundred pounds of virgin gold, worth, in exchange, forty-five thousand dinárs; and silver bullion to the amount of two hundred bidr. 46 (Ibnu-l-faradhí mentions only five hundred thousand dinárs.)

Twelve pounds of Indian aloes, capable of bearing an impression like wax; one hundred and eighty pounds of aloe-wood, of the best quality; 47 and one hundred of another sort, resembling the muntaki. 48 (However, Ibnu-l-faradhí, who refers to the letter, and to the list of the articles, &c., sent by Ibn Shoheyd, says four hundred pounds of the best aloe, 49 in which there was a piece weighing one hundred and twenty pounds.)

One hundred ounces of pure musk, 50 of the best quality.” (Ibnu-l-faradhí, quoting the above document, says two hundred and twelve.)

Five hundred ounces of pale amber, of the species which preserves its quality without previous preparation. Of this, one piece was to be seen of wonderful dimensions, perfect in shape, and weighing one hundred ounces.” (Ibnu-l-faradhí says one hundred ounces in all, and one piece of the weight of forty ounces.)

Three hundred ounces of the purest camphor, of the best quality; thirty pieces of silk cloth, of various colours and patterns, printed and embroidered with gold, and suitable only for the Khalíf’s dress; ten pelisses, lined with the most costly martens’ 51 fur, from Khorassán.”

Ibnu-l-faradhí’s account differs materially from this. He says, “Of robes of various colours, intended for the Khalíf’s own use, partly white, and partly of other colours, thirty; five cloaks or outer garments, of the same kind and shape as those used by the Faquirs of the Sha’ybí sect, 52 and destined also for the Khalíf’s own use; ten pelisses of the best martens’ fur, seven of which were white, and came from Khorassán, and the remainder of various colours [came from other countries]; six square ’Irákian dresses, also fit for the Khalíf; forty-eight milháf (cloaks) 53 worked in flowers, for daily use; and one hundred more, of the same manufacture, to sleep in at night.”

The reader must have observed that with the exception of the thirty pieces of
silk cloth, not one of the above articles of dress is mentioned by Ibnu Khaldún; but we do not hesitate to adopt the account of Ibnu-l-faradhí, which, from the fact of that author having derived his information from the list itself as well as from the keeper of the presents, is unquestionably entitled to more credit.

"Ten heavy chests containing one hundred sable skins." (In this statement both authors agree.)

"Six 'Irákián tents, and forty-eight horse-cloths made of silk worked with gold, manufactured at Baghdád; four thousand pounds weight of spun silk; and one thousand more of raw silk, of various colours, for spinning; thirty pieces of the stuff called kazun, for saddles." (Ibnu-l-faradhí agrees with the above account; but he observes that the manufactured silk did not make part of the present, but went directly into the hands of the Sáhibu-t-tiráz, or master of the royal robes, who received it from Ibn Shoheyd, and entered it in the books of the wardrobe.)

"Thirty woollen carpets of different colours and patterns, each measuring twenty cubits in length; one hundred rugs, intended for kneeling on at prayer time, of the finest texture and choicest patterns." (Ibnu-l-faradhí adds, 'made in the same way as the carpets.')

"Fifteen silk cushions of the stuff called nukha, having the face of it shorn." (This, Ibnu-l-faradhí observes, was also a stuff for carpets of the finest quality, and such as was only used by very rich people.)

"Of arms and weapons there were, eight hundred suits of armour for horses, to adorn them in processions and public exhibitions." (Ibnu-l-faradhí says only one hundred; but he adds that they were of the most extraordinary workmanship, and highly finished.)

"One thousand shields manufactured at Sultániyyah; one hundred thousand arrows of the best kind.

"Fifteen select Arabian steeds of the choicest qualities, and destined for the Khalif's own riding." (Ibnu-l-faradhí says one hundred more, fit for military incursions, and trained for war.) "Twenty mules for the Khalif's own riding, fully caparisoned and bridled, and having the seats of the saddles covered with a species of 'Irákián velvet, called ghaffárl." (Ibnu-l-faradhí says one hundred steeds, namely, fifteen barbs for the Khalif's own riding; five more of the same class, but chosen among the rest for their superior qualities, most splendidly harnessed and bridled, and having the seats of the saddles covered with 'Irákián velvet, also for the Khalif's own riding; the remaining eighty were suitable for servants and attendants. Besides the mules above mentioned, Ibnu-l-faradhí counts five ambling mules remarkable for their swiftness and easy pace.)
"The slaves were as follows: Forty choice male slaves, and twenty females, with their clothing and apparel all complete. The latter were provided, besides, with all their jewels, ornaments, and musical instruments." (In this both authors agree.)

"Ten kintars (hundred weights) of lump sugar, of dazzling whiteness, and without a speck in it."

"And lastly," says Ibn Khaldún, "he presented his sovereign with a valuable villa, and the lands attached to it, in the sowing of which many thousands of mudd of grain had been expended by the giver. The stone only for the several buildings erected on the estate had cost eighty thousand dinárs in one year. There were besides twenty thousand trees of the finest and most durable wood, very straight, and in the best condition, the actual value of which was fifty thousand dinárs."

So far Ibn Khaldún; but Ibn-l-faradhí, who, as we have stated elsewhere, saw and transcribed the epistle which Ibn Shoheyd sent along with the present, has preserved some details which we think worthy of insertion in our present narrative. He says, after mentioning the male and female slaves,—"For a long time before, Ibn Shoheyd, who accompanied or commanded almost every expedition sent against the Christians, had destined a certain portion of his share in the spoil to purchase handsome captives of both sexes, as he himself informs us in his epistle, where he says that he bought them with the produce of victory, and through the favour dispensed to him by the Amír."

The epistle ended thus, according to Ibn-l-faradhí: "And when I heard that my illustrious master (may God grant him his help!) had deigned to cast his eye over the estate in the Kanbáníyyah," I immediately directed the Sultán’s agent, Ibn Bakiyyah, to purchase it from the owner; and I did not rest until I heard that he had completely succeeded, and that the deeds were already drawn in the Khalif’s name. The same thing was done with respect to another estate in the vicinity of Jaen, called Sheyrah. When I heard that it had been described to the Khalif, who was pleased to inquire about it, I never ceased importuning the owner of it until he sold it to me, with all its buildings, plantations, fields, woods, and waters; the whole being duly transferred to Ibn Bakiyyah, who, I hope, will reap the next harvest thousands of mudd of every kind of grain. When, moreover, I ascertained that it was the Khalif’s wish to build upon the latter estate, I immediately gave all my attention to forestall his wishes, and thought of the many spots which his gracious majesty had been pleased to visit, in order to perpetuate his memory in their buildings. (May God prolong his life, and reward him [afterwards] even beyond his expectations!) Knowing
"that the foundations, the pillars, and the greater portion of the house were " built of free-stone, I conceived and fixed upon a plan of improvement, which I " caused immediately to be executed; having spent in one year only what I " received from his servant, Ibn 'A'issim, for twenty consecutive years [as the " amount of my salary], since the total expense incurred in the building amounted " to about eighty thousand dinârs, without counting the produce of the estate " during that time, which was likewise spent in the object, nor the sale of timber, " which is so abundant that when his servant Ibn Khalil wanted upwards of three " hundred and twenty thousand trees [for the purpose of building], and could only " procure about two thousand every year, I undertook to furnish him the remainder " out of this estate, which I did; the value of the timber which I then delivered " into his hands being, at the lowest estimate, between fifty and sixty thousand " dinârs."

The donor of the above present, Abû 'A'mir Ahmed 59 Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn 'Omar Al-'adí, belonged to one of the most illustrious families of Andalus. His ancestor Shoheyd had been present at the conquest of that country by Târik Ibn Zeyád. His father 'Abdu-l-malek had served in the armies of 'Abdullah, and gained great reputation by his courage and his talents; and by him Ahmed was early trained to arms, and acquired that superiority in military affairs which made him the scourge of the infidels and the idol of the Moslems. He was so successful in his expeditions against the Galicians and Franks, that he amassed considerable riches, and was enabled to present the Khalif An-násir with a gift such as no subject ever before presented to his master.

Ibn Bessâm relates of him, that he had once a Christian page so exquisitely handsome that no human eyes ever saw the like of him before. This page he once introduced to An-násir, who no sooner cast his eyes on him than he said to Ibn Shoheyd, "Where and how didst thou acquire such an inestimable jewel?" "It came to me," answered Ibn Shoheyd, "by the blessing of God." "By the Lord!" replied An-násir, "were any one to make me a present of the stars, or let me choose between the moon and this page, I should not hesitate for an instant:" upon which, Ibn Shoheyd, having prepared a suitable present, sent it to 'Abdu-r-rahmán along with his page, to whom he said on parting, "Go, my son; thou "must form part of the present I destine for the Commander of the Faithful. "Were it not for the love I bear him, I would sooner have parted with my soul "than with thee."

The same author [Ibn Bessâm] relates another curious anecdote respecting An-násir, which he pretends to have received from a man who held it from another, who had it from the Khalif's own lips. Wishing on a certain day to be bled,
An-násir sat himself down under a pavilion in the palace of Az-zahrá, which overlooked the whole city, and sent for his chief physician, who, having come immediately, took out his lancet, and bound the hand of the Khalif, preparatory to his bleeding him. He was going to operate, when lo! there came a starling, which perched itself on a beautiful golden vase in the room, and uttered the following two verses, which it continued to repeat all the time the operation lasted.

"O bleeder! take care how thou treatest the Commander of the Faithful;
For wert thou to open one of his arteries, the life of the world might escape through it." 

An-násir was exceedingly pleased at these verses, and he much admired the wit contained in them. Having then inquired who had taught the starling, and dispatched him on such an errand, he was informed that the bird belonged to his wife Marjánah, the mother of Al-hakem Al-mustanser-billah, the presumptive heir to the throne, who, having previously trained the bird to repeat the verses, had sent him on at the time when An-násir was going to be bled; upon which the Khalif made Marjánah a present of upwards of thirty thousand dinárás.

We should never finish, were we to transcribe here the innumerable anecdotes respecting this Khalif, which are scattered like so many loose pearls over the writings of the Andalusian poets and historians, and will therefore proceed to give a notice of his son and successor, Al-hakem.
CHAPTER VI.

Accession of Al-hakem II.—Ceremonies attending his proclamation—Appointment of a Hájib—Al-hakem's wars with the Christians—Piratical incursions of the Northmen—Ordoño IV. visits Cordova—Preparations made by the Khalif for his reception—Ordoño introduced to the royal presence—His address to Al-hakem—The Khalif's answer—Arrival of ambassadors from Catalonia—and from Navarre—The Countess of Castile arrives at court—Transactions in Africa—Settlers in Andalus under his reign—Al-hakem's love of science—His passion for books—Library founded by him—Notice of literary men living at his court—Character of Al-hakem—His death.

On the day after the death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, his son Al-hakem, surnamed Abú-l-ássin and Al-mustanser-billah (he who implores the help of God), ascended the throne. It was on a Thursday. Immediately after his accession, Al-hakem surrounded his person with all the pomp and magnificence of the empire, and sent down his letters to the provinces, apprising the people of his elevation, and calling upon them to swear allegiance to him. On the same day he began to give his attention to the regulation of his empire and the strengthening of his power, to the inspection of the royal palaces, and the review and equipment of the troops. The Sclavonians of the palace were the first to take the oath of allegiance to him: first came the eunuchs of the palace, as Ja'far, the master of the horse and of the royal robes, and other superior officers generally employed in the household of the greatest Khalifs, who were ordered to proceed immediately to swear in all the Sclavonians under their orders; then followed the remaining officers of the royal household, who were inferior in rank to the above-mentioned, whether kátibs, servants, mukaddams (captains), or 'arifs (officers), all of whom tendered their respective oaths.

The people of the palace having been all sworn in, Al-hakem commanded his chief Wizír, Ja'far Ibn 'Othmán, to proceed immediately to the residence of his own brother, Abú Merwán 'Obeydullah, who kept aloof [from the ceremony], and bring him, without accepting of any excuse, to his presence, for the purpose of exacting from him the customary oath of allegiance. He dispatched in like manner Músá Ibn Ahmed Ibn Jodeyr on a similar errand to his second brother, Abú-l-asbagh 'Abdu-l-'azíz. The two messengers, having taken with them a body
of troops, repaired to the house of the two princes, and escorted them to the palace of Az-zahrá, where every thing was prepared for the approaching ceremony, and where a great concourse of courtiers and nobles had already assembled from every part of the city, to pay their respects to the new sovereign. All the brothers of Al-hakem, who were then eight in number, arrived at the palace at night, and were lodged [according to their rank] in the two wings\(^3\) of the palace. The ensuing morning they took their station in the eastern and western halls, whilst the Khalif sat on his throne under the central gilded pavilion, one of those in the southern part of the palace opening upon the marble terrace. The ceremony having commenced, the royal brothers came first: they approached the throne, and inaugurated Al-hakem, reading the formula of inauguration, and taking the customary oath, with all its sanctions and restrictions. Then came the turn of the Wizírs, and of the sons of the Wizírs, and of their brothers, who were quickly followed by the Shortah or body-guard, and by the servants of the palace. This done, the brothers of the Khalif, the Wizírs, and the nobles, took their respective seats to the right and left of the throne, with the single exception of 'Isa Ibn Foteys, who stood in one corner of the hall, that he might swear in the people as they entered. The neighbouring apartments were as usual filled with public functionaries and courtiers who had a right to be present at such ceremonies.

In the hall where the Khalif sat, stood the great eunuchs of the palace, in lines beginning at the right and left sides of the throne, and extending to the end of the apartment, each man keeping his own place according to his rank or dignity. They were all dressed in white tunics, the inner garments\(^4\) being of mourning; and they were armed with swords. Next to them were the servant eunuchs, covered with mail, and having glittering swords in their hands; these were drawn up in two lines over the terrace. On the adjoining parapets were the eunuchs of the guard, with spears in their hands, and the Sclavonian eunuchs, dressed in white, and armed with swords. These were followed by other Sclavonian eunuchs of inferior rank; and after these latter came the archers of the guard, with their bows and quivers. Next to the Sclavonian eunuchs were the black slaves, splendidly arrayed, and covered with glittering arms; they wore white tunics, Sicilian helmets on their heads, and held in their hands shields of various colours; their weapons, moreover, were ornamented with gold. They were drawn up in two lines [from the terrace] to the last parapet. At the gate of As-suddah (Bdबु-स-सुद्दाह) were the chief door-keepers, and outside of it the horse-guard of black slaves, extending in lines to the gate of the domes (Bdबु-ल-अक्बाद). Next to them was the body-guard, composed of the Khalif's own maulis or freed slaves, also on horseback; and after them the rest of the army, and of the slaves, and the archers, succeeding
each other until the lines reached without interruption to the gate of the city leading to the country. The ceremony being over, the Khalif granted the people leave to retire, with the exception of his brothers, the Wizírs, and the officers of the household, who were directed to stay at the palace of Az-zahrá until the body of An-násir should be carried to the palace of Cordova, there to be interred in the cemetery of the Khalifs.

Al-hakem made no alteration in the administration as left by his father An-násir. He confirmed every one of the Wizírs named by his father, and appointed for his Hújib Ja'far Al-asklabi (the Scavonian), who is said to have presented him on the day of his nomination with sundry precious objects, a list of which is given by Ibnu Ilayyán in his Muktabis. The present consisted of one hundred Frank mamelukes, mounted on swift horses, and armed and equipped for war with swords, spears, shields, targets, and Indian caps; upwards of three hundred and twenty coats of mail, of different kinds; three hundred steel helmets; fifty Indian helmets of wood; some European helmets not of wood, called At-teshtanah; three hundred European javelins; one hundred shields of Sultániyyah; ten suits of armour, of solid silver, inlaid with gold; and twenty buffaloes' horns, gilt.

"No sooner was the death of An-násir divulged," says the historian Ibnu Khalíd, "than the Galicians began to make attacks upon the Moslem frontiers. In order to check their progress, Al-hakem put himself at the head of his army, and invaded the dominions of Ferdeland Ibn Ghondisalb [Ferran Gonzalez], besieged Shant Eshtiban (San Estevan de Gormáz), which he took by force of arms, and afterwards destroyed, returning victorious [to Cordova]; upon which the Galicians desisted from their projects, and sought to make their peace with the Moslems."

After this, Al-hakem dispatched his mauli Ghálib to make war on the Galicians. Having arrived at Medínah Sélím (Medinaceli), which was the focus of the war, Ghálib was opposed by a considerable army of the Christians; but he fought with them, putting them to flight, and causing them great loss. After which the Moslems penetrated into the dominions of Ferdeland, which they overran and wasted.

Sancho, the son of Ramiro, King of the Basques (Navarre), having broken the treaties by which he was bound [to preserve peace], Al-hakem sent against him At-tojibí [Yahya Ibn Mohammed], the governor of Saragossa, with a large body of troops. Seeing this, the King of the Basques implored the help of his neighbour, the King of the Galicians, who hastened to his assistance; but At-tojibí, having met and defeated their united forces near Kúriah (Coria), ravaged the districts round that city, and returned home victorious.
After this, Al-hakem directed his generals Ahmed Ibn Ya’la and Yahya Ibn Mohammed At-tojibí to make an incursion into the territory of Barcelona, which was accomplished; the districts round that city being overrun and wasted by the Moslems. He likewise sent Hudheyl Ibn Hishám and his mauli Ghálib into the dominions of the Komes (Count) of Castile, which they ravaged.

Great indeed were the victories gained over the Christians during the reign of Al-hakem, and repeated the incursions made by the generals of his frontiers into the enemy’s territory. We may give as an example the conquest by Ghálib of the town of Kalherah, in the country of Al-bashkans (Basques), which place Al-hakem caused to be peopled by Moslems, as well as the taking of Kottúbíah by the Káyid (governor) of Oshkah (Huesca); on which occasion the Moslems gained considerable spoil in money, arms, provisions, and military stores, exclusive of the sheep, cattle, and mares which they caught in the adjoining plains, of the grain and fruits of all kinds which they reaped, and of the innumerable captives, of both sexes, which they made.

In the year 354 (beginning Jan. 6, A.D. 965) Ghálib made an incursion into Alabah (Alava), accompanied by Yahya Ibn Mohammed At-tojibí and Kásim Ibn Motref Ibn Dhí-n-nún. The three generals scoured the country, and rebuilt Hisn-Ghormáj (San Estevan de Gormáz), which had been destroyed on a former occasion by the Christians.

In the same year (A.H. 354) the ships of the Majús (Northmen) appeared on the coast of the ocean. Having landed close to Lisbon, they overran and ravaged the neighbouring country; but the inhabitants, having risen to arms, fought with them, and drove them to their ships. No sooner was the intelligence of their disembarkation brought to Cordova, than Al-hakem in person repaired to the districts invaded, and provided for the defence of the coast, ordering his Káyidu-l-bahr (admiral of the sea), named ’Abdu-r-rahmán [Ibn] Romáhis, to fit out the fleet and attack them: but it was not necessary; for news soon arrived of their having been defeated everywhere by the inhabitants of that coast, and their having put to sea in great haste and confusion.

After this, happened the arrival in Cordova of Ordhún Ibn Adefonsh (Ordoño IV.), King of the Galicians. As before related, An-násir had supported his cousin Sancho, son of Ramiro, and assisted him in reconquering his kingdom, which Ordoño had usurped, compelling the Christians to return under his sway; upon which Ordoño had sought and obtained the assistance of his father-in-law Ferdeland (Ferran Gonzalez), Count of Castile. Finding, however, that this chieftain was unable to reseat him on the throne, and that Al-hakem continued to bestow on
Sancho the same protection which his father An-násir had so graciously granted to him, he resolved upon appearing at court, and placing himself under Al-hakem's protection. The Khalif received him with all the pomp and state before exhibited on similar occasions, ordering his troops out on the day of his arrival, and commanding the officers of his household to go out to meet him some distance from the capital, as may be read in the work of Ibnu Hayyán, who has preserved an account of this and the preceding arrivals, and of the interview which the Christian king had with Al-hakem. That historian says, that the Khalif bade him sit down, promised him his assistance against his enemies, put on him a khil'ah or dress of honour, and wrote a deed with his own hand, by which he engaged to aid him against his cousin Sancho, on condition that he should acknowledge himself the vassal of Islám, and forsake the alliance of the Count of Castile. Ordoño swore to fulfil the stipulated conditions by placing his right hand on the deed, and gave his son Garcia as an hostage. He was then dismissed with presents and horses for himself and followers, being escorted by the principal Christians who lived in Cordova under the protection of the Khalif, that they might the better establish his authority over his subjects, and reseat him on his throne. His son Garcia remained in Cordova according to the stipulation. The following particulars are borrowed from Ibnu Hayyán.

Towards the end of Safar of the year 351 (March, a. d. 962), the Khalif Al-hakem sent out two of his maulis, named Mohammed and Zeyád, sons of Aflah An-násirí, with a portion of his guard, to meet Ghálib An-násirí, governor of Medínah Sélim (Medinaceli), who was then escorting to Cordova King Ordhún Ibn Adefonsh (Ordoño IV.) This Ordhún, assisted by some small bands of Galicians, who followed his banners, had been trying for some time to excite dissension in the state, and had disputed the throne with a cousin of his, son of his uncle, Sancho Ibn Radmir (Sancho the Fat), who had reigned before him. Seeing that every attempt to seize on the throne had failed, the accursed Christian bethought him of repairing to the court of Al-hakem, without either previously asking his leave, or making any stipulation. The cause of that sudden resolution was his having heard that Al-hakem was preparing an expedition to march that very year against him; and not being in a condition to resist him, he decided upon parrying, if possible, the blow aimed against him, and throwing himself upon the mercy of the Khalif, hoping to be able to incline him to his favour. Accordingly, although he had no safe conduct or security whatever from the Khalif, he placed himself at the head of twenty of his followers, and crossed the Mohammedan frontier. Ghálib An-násirí, a mauli of Al-hakem, who was then
governor of Medinaceli, having on the arrival of the Christian at that city inquired the object of his journey, Ordhún told him that he wished to go to Cordova for the purpose of swearing vassalage to the Khalif; upon which Ghálib offered to escort him thither at the head of a body of cavalry.

No sooner was Al-hakem informed of their arrival than he sent forward the two sons of Aflah with an army to meet them. Having come up with Ordoño's retinue, the generals of the Khalif encamped for a whole day, after which they struck their tents and proceeded to Cordova. At their approach Al-hakem sent out Hishám Al-mus'hafi with a numerous army completely armed and equipped [as for war]. They advanced straight to the gate of Cordova, and passed close by the gate of the palace. On his arrival at that piece of ground between the Báb-u-s-suddah and the Báb-u-l-jendán (the gate of the gardens), Ordhún inquired of one of his escort where the tomb of An-násir lidín-illah ('Abdu-r-rahmán III.) was; and this being pointed out to him opposite the place where he stood within the raudhah or cemetery attached to the royal palace, he immediately dismounted, took off his cap, and having approached the spot pointed out to him, he went upon his knees and prayed fervently for a length of time. After this he put on his cap, and continued his march towards the dwelling assigned to him by the Khalif, which was the palace called An-ná'urah (of the water-wheel). Preparatory to the reception of his guest the Khalif had caused the palace to be strewn with every variety of carpet and cushion, and provided with every description of furniture: his commands were fulfilled in a manner that left nothing to wish for, the Christian king and his suite being treated with the greatest attention and respect. In this manner Ordoño spent the whole of Thursday and Friday. When Saturday came, Al-hakem signified his wish to see the Christian, and accordingly every necessary preparation was made for the forthcoming ceremony. The troops were fully equipped and armed as in time of war; the Sclavonian guard was splendidly attired for the occasion; the Ulema, theologians, Kátibs, and poets were ordered to appear in the audience-hall, whilst the Wizírs and other high functionaries of the state received orders to be each at his post at the appointed hour.

When the day came, Al-hakem appeared seated on the royal throne in the eastern hall of his palace of Az-zahrá, which opened into the terrace, having on each side his brothers, nephews, and other relatives, as well as the Wizírs, Kátís, civil magistrates, and distinguished theologians, and other high functionaries, all sitting in rows according to their rank or station. Among them was the supreme judge of Andalus, Mundhir Ibn Sa'íd Al-bolúttí. Presently Ordoño made his appearance in the hall, being introduced by Mohammed Ibn-l-kásim Ibn Tamis. The upper part of his dress consisted of a tunic of white brocade, of Christian manufacture,
and a surtout\textsuperscript{13} of the same quality and colour. He wore on his head a Christian
cap ornamented with costly jewels. Ordoño came from his dwelling [in Cordova]
to the city of Az-zahrā attended by a select party of the chief Christian residents
in Cordova, as Walíd Ibn Khayrún,\textsuperscript{14} who was the judge of the Christians in
Cordova, 'Obeydullah, son of Kasím Al-matrán (bishop)\textsuperscript{15} of Toledo, and others.
When close to the palace, Ordoño and his suite entered into a passage formed on
each side by bodies of infantry placed in such admirable order that the eyes
were dazzled at their uniformity, and so thickly set that the mind was bewildered
at their numbers. Such was, moreover, the brightness of their armour and
weapons, and the variety and richness of their uniforms, that the Christians were
actually stupified at what they saw, and repeatedly crossed themselves in utter
amazement at the imposing scene; they looked on with their heads down, their
eyelids contracted, and their eyes half-closed [through astonishment] until they
arrived at the outer gate of the palace of Az-zahrā, called Bábú-l-akabá or ' the
gate of the domes,' where all those who had gone out to meet Ordoño dismounted.
The Christian king and the counts of his suite continued on horseback until they
came to the interior gate called Bábú-s-suddah, when all received orders to
dismount, and to proceed on foot, with the exception of Ordoño and Mohammed
Ibn Tamís, who passed mounted under the gateway. These two alighted at the
gate of the central southern pavilion\textsuperscript{16} in the building called Dáru-l-jandal (the
house of the stones) upon a raised platform, the steps of which were covered with
silver cloth. In that very spot Ordoño's rival and enemy, Sancho, the son of
Ramiro, had alighted when he came to visit 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir lidín-illah.
Ordoño sat himself on the platform, and his suite sat before him [waiting for
Al-hakem's pleasure]. Presently one of the Khalif's officers made his appearance,
bringing the permission for Ordoño to proceed; which he did on foot, followed
by his suite. In this way he advanced towards the terrace. Arrived in front
of the eastern hall, where Al-hakem was, Ordoño stopped, uncovered his head,
took off his bornús,\textsuperscript{17} and remained for some time in an attitude of astonishment
and respect, under the impression that he was now approaching the radiant throne
of the Khalif. Being motioned to proceed, he moved on slowly between the two
lines [of soldiers] drawn up along the length of the terrace, which he traversed,
until he came to the door of the pavilion where Al-hakem sat. When he had
arrived before the throne, he threw himself on the floor, and remained for some
time in the most humble position; he then stood up, advanced a few paces, again
prostrated himself, and repeated this ceremony several times, until he arrived at
a proper distance from the Khalif, when he stretched out his hand, and Al-hakem
gave him his. After this he went backwards, without turning away his face, to a
seat covered with gold cloth, which had been prepared for him at about ten cubits' distance from the royal throne, being all the time awe-struck at the imposing scene. Such among his counts and followers, moreover, as had been allowed to enter the royal presence, advanced from behind him with repeated prostrations, and approached the throne of the Khalif, who gave them his hand to kiss; after which they all walked backwards, and placed themselves at each side of their king. Among them came Walid Ibn Khayrun, who, as before stated, was the Kádi or judge of the Christians living in Cordova, and who acted as interpreter for King Ordono on the occasion.

Al-hakem kept silence for a while in order to allow Ordono time to sit down and compose himself; and when he perceived that the Christian had somewhat recovered [from his fright] he broke silence and said, "Welcome to our court, "O Ordono! may thy hopes be realized and thy wishes fulfilled! Thou wilt "find in us the best advice and the most cordial reception, much beyond thy "expectations." When these words were translated to Ordono by his interpreter, his countenance expanded and brightened up with joy; he came down from the raised couch on which he sat, and humbly kissing the earth before the Khalif, exclaimed, "I am the slave of the Commander of the Faithful, my lord and "master; and I am come to implore his favour, to witness his majesty, and to "place myself and my people under his protection. May he be pleased to grant "me his powerful patronage, and consent to receive me into the number of his "slaves! I hope that I come to him with a just demand and with a pure inten-"tion." The Khalif answered, "We look upon thee as one most deserving of "our consideration and esteem, and we are ready to grant thee that preference "and advantage over the people of thy sect which may render thee happy and "content. Let us therefore hear the true cause that brought thee to our court, "that we may place thee within the pale of our authority." No sooner was the Khalif's answer made known to King Ordono than he again prostrated himself, and remained for some time deeply absorbed in prayer. He then proceeded to state his case thus: "I need not remind thee, O Khalif, that my cousin Sancho, "son of my uncle Ordono, came once to this city to implore against me the "help of thy glorious father and predecessor, the Khalif An-nasir, who hesitated "not to grant him the assistance he sought, as the most powerful Kings and "greatest Khalifs are wont to do to all those who seek them and rely on them. "Yet the appearance of Sancho at this court was a compulsory act; his subjects "detested his rule, and so offensive was his behaviour towards them that they "chose me for their king, although, God knows, I had not the least wish to "become such, and had taken no steps whatever to arrive at the throne. How-
ever, I did so at the solicitation of my subjects; upon which my cousin was obliged to fly the country, and take refuge in this city. It then pleased thy pre-decessor (may God have mercy on him!) to restore Sancho to his lost kingdom, and to grant him his powerful aid, without paying regard either to the offers of vassalage I made to him or the rich presents which from time to time I sent to him. This I bore with resignation, for truly the Commander of the Faithful was then, as thou art now, my liege lord. Such was the manner in which my cousin came to Cordova; whereas I am come of my own free will, without having been compelled to do so by my subjects, or having been expelled from my kingdom by them, as he was. I am come confidently to place myself, my people, my castles, and such among my subjects as obey my rule, under the command of the Khalif, that he may decide between us two in his great wisdom." The Khalif replied,—"We have listened to thy words and understood their meaning, and certainly we will soon show thee greater favour, and our benefits shall come down on thee more profusely even than those of my father ever did on thy enemy. True, thy cousin Sancho came to our court first, and put himself under the protection of this our empire; but that is no reason why we should neglect thee on his account. We will therefore diminish none of our favours, and thou shalt return to thy country happy and content; we will collect together for thee the scattered portions of thy kingdom; we will make thee Lord of all the districts which once acknowledged thy sway and are now in the hands of thy cousin; we will give thee our letters patent declaring our decision upon thy right [to the throne] and that of thy cousin; we will, in short, deprive him of his usurped dominions, and favour and protect thee greatly beyond thy most sanguine expectations. We take God to witness of the truth of our words." Again did Ordoño prostrate himself before the Khalif, expatiating in praise of his kindness and generosity. He then rose to retire, walking backwards so as not to turn his face from the Khalif. Having thus arrived where the eunuchs were waiting for him, Ordoño was conducted to the western hall opening upon the terrace, where he plainly exhibited on his countenance the reverential awe with which he had been struck, and his utter astonishment at the magnificence and splendour displayed before him, as indicative of the power and strength of the Khalifate. In passing through the hall, the eyes of Ordoño fell on the vacant throne of the Commander of the Faithful: unable to repress his feelings, he advanced slowly towards it, and, having prostrated himself before it, remained for some time in the most humble position, as if the Khalif were sitting on it. He was next conducted by the eunuchs to a pavilion in the northern extremity of the [western] hall, where he was told to sit down on a raised cushion covered with gold brocade.
Whilst there, the Hájib Ja'far Al-mus'hafi approached him from another part of the palace; seeing which, Ordoño rose from his seat, went up to him, made him a most profound bow, and attempted to kiss his hand, but Ja'far withdrew it, and, addressing him in the most friendly terms, embraced him, and then sat down by his side, and began to converse with him, promising him good success in his enterprise, and assuring him that the Khalif would most certainly fulfil his promise; hearing which, Ordoño's joy was doubled.

After this, at a signal made by Ja'far, a dress of honour, which the Khalif had destined for Ordoño, was produced. It consisted of a tunic of gold tissue, and a bornús of the same material, with a belt of the purest gold, set with pearls and rubies of such magnitude and beauty that the eyes of the barbarian rested complacently on them; and whilst Ja'far was dressing him, he fell down on his knees and prayed aloud [for the Khalif's preservation]. This being done, Ja'far sent for every one of the Christians who came in Ordoño's suite, and gave each a dress according to his rank; after which they all left the room with the greatest humility, returning thanks for the signal favour they had just received. After traversing the same halls and the open terrace through which he had come, Ordoño, followed by the Christians of his suite, arrived at the central pavilion where he had alighted, and where by the Khalif's order a generous steed richly caparisoned, and having the saddle and bridle ornamented with pure gold, was prepared for him. Ordoño mounted, and, accompanied by Ibn Tamís, returned to his dwelling in the palace of the Rissáfah, which had been provided with every article suitable to one of his rank,—furniture, beds, earthenware, &c. In this palace Ordoño and the Christians of his suite stayed until the moment of their departure, receiving daily the choicest provisions for their consumption, and being otherwise provided with every comfort or luxury. For a long time after, the people of Cordova talked of nothing else than the rejoicings of that day, and the glorious manifestation of Islám. The orators and poets, who were present at the ceremony, failed not, as was the custom on such occasions, to deliver extempore speeches or poems allusive to the scene they had witnessed; but as it would take us far from our subject to quote any of those compositions here, we shall omit them for brevity sake.

In the mean while his cousin Sancho, the son of Ramiro, seeing the tempest gather over his head, sent a message to the Khalif, in his own name as well as in that of the counts and bishops of Galicia and Zamora, offering his submission, and imploring him to accept of it, and to continue to him the favours and protection which his father, An-násir, had dispensed to them. Upon which Al-hakem consented to grant his request, on condition that he would demolish all the fortresses
and castles on the frontiers of his dominions and close upon the Moslem territory; [which was done.]

Some time after this, the kings of Barcelona, Tarragona, and other cities, solicited a renewal of the treaty of peace, as it existed before, sending as presents twenty Scavonian eunuchs, twenty kintars of sable-skins, five kintars of martens’ fur, ten suits of Scavonian armour, one hundred Frankish swords, and other articles, which the Khalif accepted, granting their request on condition of their dismantling all the fortresses in the vicinity of the Moslem frontier, from which marauding parties usually started,—of their lending no assistance to the people of their faith in their wars with the Mohammedans,—and lastly, of their endeavouring to deter other Christian nations from joining their forces against the Moslems.

Then came ambassadors from Garcia, the son of Sancho, King of the Basques (Garcia of Navarre), with a number of bishops and counts of that country, to solicit peace; which was likewise granted, notwithstanding the procrastination and deceit which that monarch had lately manifested; upon which they all returned to their country rejoiced and satisfied.

The mother of Count Ludherik Ibn Beláshk (Rodrigo Velasquez) went also to the court of Al-hakem. This Ludherik was a powerful chieftain, whose states bordered upon Galicia. Having first dispatched the great officers of his court to meet the Christian princess, the Khalif received her in state, granted the peace she requested on behalf of her son, and gave her a large sum of money to be distributed among her attendants, besides a rich present for herself. The day of her entrance into Cordova was a day of festival, great crowds of people flocking to witness the imposing sight. She came mounted on a swift mule, the saddle and bit of which were richly ornamented with gold, and the covering made of silk cloth, also embroidered with gold. The audience being over, the princess bade farewell to return to her country; but before her departure [for Castile] she had another audience of the Khalif, who received her as graciously as before, and made her suitable presents for her journey.

After the death of Abú-l-‘aysh, the Idrísite, who, as before related, was killed in an encounter with the Christians of Andalus, his brother, Al-hasan Ibn Kanún, whom he had appointed to govern during his absence, succeeded him in the kingdom. Al-hasan persevered in his allegiance to the Bení Umeyyah, and caused the khotbah to be said in their name in all the mosques of his dominions. Subsequently to this, Balkín Ibn Zeyrí Ibn Menád As-sanhájí, a Berber chieftain residing in Eastern Africa, who had embraced the religious opinions of the ‘Obeydites, invaded also Western Africa, and completed the work begun by Jauhar,
by putting an end in that country to the rule of the Bení Umeyyah. This state of things continued until Mu'izz Ibn Ismá'il, the Fátimite, having heard that the power of the Cordovan Khalifate was daily waxing stronger, decided upon sending into Western Africa his general, Jauhar, to stop the progress of their arms. Ya'la Mohammed Al-yeferení, chief of the tribe of Yeferen, whom An-násir had put in command of Tangiers, went out to meet the Shiite general, but was defeated and slain. Jauhar then laid siege to Fez, which he reduced, putting to death the governor appointed by An-násir, after which he returned to Eastern Africa. When this disastrous news reached Cordova, all good Moslems were greatly afflicted; for the appearance in the neighbouring country of a power so hostile to the principles of the Sunnah or traditional law could not but deeply concern all those who wished for the glorious manifestation of Islám in its full purity. Accordingly, in the year 362 (Oct. 11, A. D. 972), Al-hakem sent his mauli, Ghálib, to Africa, at the head of considerable forces, with instructions not to return to Andalus until he had completely exterminated all his enemies. Ghálib's first step was to invest the impregnable fortress of Hajaru-n-nasr, wherein Al-hasan Ibn Kanún had shut himself up with his women and his treasures. Having reduced it, and taken Al-hasan prisoner, Ghálib proceeded to Fez, which he entered without opposition, re-establishing in that capital, as well as in all Western Africa, the supremacy of the Bení Umeyyah. After this, Ghálib prepared to return with his royal captive to Cordova. Having left Fez about the end of Ramadhán, 363 (June, A. D. 974), he proceeded to Ceuta, where he embarked with all his suite. On his landing at Algesiras he dispatched a messenger to Al-hakem, informing him of the victories he had gained, and of the princes of the house of 'Ali who came [like so many prisoners] with him. Al-hakem had no sooner heard the message than he issued orders that all the civil functionaries of his court, all the Kádis and theologians, accompanied by their respective tabakádt (classes of students), and strong detachments from every division of the army, should go out to receive and greet the victor. The Khalif himself went out some distance from the capital, attended by his courtiers, the principal officers of his household, and his Scavonian guard, mounted on milk-white steeds richly caparisoned and covered with glittering mail. "The spectacle was truly grand and imposing," says that most judicious and entertaining of all historians, Ibnu Hayyán; "Ghálib "rode a beautiful chestnut horse; he was armed cap-à-pidi in a suit of steel armour "inlaid with pure gold. At his right was Al-hasan Ibn Kanún, who had no "sooner perceived Al-hakem in the distance, than he dismounted and proceeded "on foot to kiss the hand of the Khalif, who received him most graciously, and "pardoned him his offences, as well as those of the other [prisoners] who came
"with him, whose number was very considerable, and distributed suitable presents among them."

We have already mentioned the arrival, under his father's reign, of Abú 'Alí Al-káli, the author of the Kitábu-l-amáli (the book of dictations), who came from Bagh dád, and who, being welcomed and distinguished by An-náisir, settled in Cordova, and imparted his immense learning to the people of Andalus. He became also a favourite of Al-hakem, who failed not to profit by his instruction. Al-káli, however, was not the only person of eminence who left the East to settle in the dominions of Al-hakem; for the fame of his repeated successes both in Africa and in Andalus, of his liberality to the learned, and of the tranquillity which prevailed in the territories subject to Islám owing to his wise measures and to his zeal for the administration of justice, induced numbers of illustrious Moslems to repair to Andalus. We shall here mention a few.

Abú Bekr Al-ázrak, a descendant of Moslemah, son of the Khalif 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán: having left Cairo, his native city, for Africa in the year 343 (beginning May 4, A. D. 954), he arrived at Cairwán, where the Shiítes were then all-powerful; but as he refused to embrace the cause of those sectarians, he was persecuted and confined in a dungeon at Mehediyah. He was afterwards released, and crossed over to Andalus in 349 (March 2, 960), and arrived in Cordova, where he settled, and was [afterwards] kindly treated by Al-hakem. Abú Bekr was a learned and virtuous man. He was born in 329 at Cairo; he died at Cordova in the month of Dhí-l-k'adah of the year 385 (Dec. A. D. 995).

Thafar Al-baghdádi, the chief of the scribes of his time, came from Bagh dád, and settled in Cordova. He was one of the many excellent scribes who lived in that capital about the same time, and whom Al-hakem kept in his pay, as Al'-abbás Ibn 'Omar As-siklí (from Sicily), Yúsuf Al-bólútí, and their disciples. Being one of the best for correctness and beauty of hand-writing, soon after his arrival in Cordova the Khalif took him into his service, and employed him in transcribing books, of which duty he acquitted himself in a most admirable manner.

Ismá’il Ibn 'Abdí-r-ráhmán Ibn 'Alí Al-korayshí, a descendant of 'Abd Ibn Zam'ah, the brother of Sawádah, the mother of the believers and wife of the Prophet. (May the favours of God be on her!) On the occupation of Egypt by the 'Obeydites, he left Cairo, his native city, and went to Western Africa, whence he crossed over to Andalus, and settled at Seville. He became celebrated for his works on various subjects.

The Khalif Al-hakem surpassed every one of his predecessors in love of literature and the sciences, which he himself cultivated with success and fostered in his
dominions; indeed he is well known to have converted Andalus into a great market
whereto the literary productions of every clime were immediately brought for sale.
He would besides employ merchants and agents to collect books for him in distant
countries; to which end he would remit to them large sums of money from his
treasury, until the number of books thus conveyed to Andalus exceeded all
calculation. He would likewise send presents of money to celebrated authors in
the East, with a view to encourage the publication of works, or to obtain the first
copies of them. In this manner, knowing that Abú-l-faraj, of Ispahán, who
belonged to the [royal] family of Umeyyah, had written a work entitled Kitábu-l-
aghánl (the book of songs), he sent him one thousand dinárs of pure gold; upon
which the author forwarded him a copy of his work, even before it had appeared in 'Trák.30 He did the same thing with Abú Bekr Al-abhari Al-málekí, who
published a commentary on the Mokhtassar31 of Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakem; and with
other illustrious authors of his days. Al-hakem, moreover, collected round him
and employed in his own palace the most skilful men of his time in the art of
transcribing, binding, or illuminating books; and such literary treasures were
amassed in Andalus as no sovereign ever possessed before or after him, if we except
the library which is said to have been collected by [the Sultán] An-násir, son of
Al-mustadhí-billah,32 of the house of 'Abbás. This immense collection of books
remained in the palace of Cordova, until, during the siege of that capital by the
Berbers, the Hájib Wádheh, who was a freedman of Al-mansúr Ibn Abí 'A'mir,
ordered them to be sold, the remainder being shortly after plundered and destroyed
on the taking of that city by the Berbers. So far Ibn Khaldún, whose narrative
we have abridged; but in order to give an idea of the number of books collected
by Al-hakem we shall here transcribe the words of Ibnu-l-abbár in his Tekmilah
(complement): "Abú Mohammed Ibn Hazm says, I was told by Talid, the eunuch,
who was the keeper of the library and repository of the sciences in the palace of
the Bení Merwán, that the catalogue only of the books consisted of forty-four
volumes, each volume having twenty sheets of paper, which contained nothing
else but the titles and descriptions of the books."33

Another historian, after transcribing the above passage, says, "Al-hakem was
the most virtuous and liberal of men; and he treated all those who came to
his court with the utmost kindness. He amassed such a collection of books
that it is impossible to estimate even approximatively either their value or their
number, some writers stating that they amounted to four hundred thousand
volumes; and that when they were removed [from the palace] six months were
expended in the operation. Al-hakem was a man of irreproachable conduct;
he was learned, and had a quick understanding: his tutors in the various sciences
"were, Kásim Ibn Asbagh, Ahmed Ibn Dahim, Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellám Al-khoshaní, Zakariyyá Ibn Khattáb, and Thábit Ibn Kásim. The latter gave him permission to cite him [in his writings]; and Al-hakem did so, as well as a great number [of other doctors]. He caused works on all subjects to be conveyed to Cordova from every country, however remote, lavishing his treasures in the acquisition of them, until the number of books thus collected was such that they could no longer be contained in his libraries. He was, moreover, so fond of reading, that he preferred the pleasure of perusing his books to all the enjoyments which royalty can afford; by which means he considerably increased his learning, doubled his information, and improved his taste. In the knowledge of history, biography, and genealogy, he was surpassed by no living author of his days. He wrote a voluminous history of Andalus, filled with precious information; and so sound was the criticism which he displayed in it, that whatever he related [as borrowed from more ancient sources] might be confidently believed to be a fact."

"To give an idea of Al-hakem's immense erudition," says the historian Ibnu-l-abbár, "it will only be necessary to record here a well-ascertained fact—though, strange to say, neither Ibnu-l-faradhí nor Ibn Bashkúwál have mentioned it in their works—namely: that not one book was to be found in Al-hakem's library, whatever might be its contents, which the Khalif had not perused, writing on the fly-leaf, the name, surname, and patronymic of the author; that of the tribe or family to which he belonged; the year of his birth and death; after which followed such interesting anecdotes about the author or his work as through his immense reading he had derived from other writers."

We shall conclude our account of Al-hakem by mentioning a few only of the most eminent authors who flourished under this reign, and who contributed by their works to diffuse the rays of science throughout Andalus.

Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn 'Abdún Al'-odhrí, the celebrated physician, was one of the most eminent men of Al-hakem's court. In order to improve his learning in medicine and botany, in both of which sciences he was already very proficient, he travelled to Egypt, where he obtained for some time the direction of an hospital. He then returned to Andalus, and was greatly distinguished by Al-hakem, who appointed him his chief physician.

Ibn Mufarraj [Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed]. This was a learned theologian, who wrote for the use of the Khalif several treatises on the legal decisions of Az-zahrí [Mohammed Ibn Moslem] and on those of Al-basrí [Abú Sa'íd Al-hasan Ibn Yesár]. The poet Ibn Mughith made likewise for the Khalif's own library a collection of the verses of the Bení Umeyyah, similar in size and design to that
which As-súlí had previously made of those of the Bení 'Abbás. Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf At-táríkhí, better known by his surname of Al-warrák (the paper-merchant), wrote by the command of Al-hakem several works on the history and topography of Africa. 

'Isa Ibn Mohammed Abú-l-asbagh became celebrated for his excellent history of Elvira and the lives of eminent men, natives thereof. Abú 'Amru Ahmed Ibn Faraj, a native of Jaen, compiled from the most authentic sources a voluminous history of Andalus, dwelling principally on the commendable deeds of the Sultáns of the house of Merwán (the Bení Umeyyah); and lastly, Ya'ish Ibn Saíd Ibn Mohammed Abú 'Othmán, who had been a disciple of the celebrated Kásim Ibn Asbagh, of Baena, was also the author of a general history of Andalus.

Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malik Ibn Hishám Al-makuwi, Yúsuf Ibn Harún Ar-rámedi, Abii-walid Yúnas Al-bathaliósí, Ahmed Ibn Saíd Ibn Ibrdhim Al-hamdání, were all distinguished poets of Al-hakem's court, and enjoyed the favour of that Khalif. Mohammed Az-zubeydí, the author of the celebrated Kitábu-l-'ayn, one of the best Arabic dictionaries that exist, whom Al-hakem appointed preceptor to his son Hishám; Ibnu-s-síd, who wrote a valuable treatise on the language, besides another work on the same subject in the form of a dialogue, consisting of upwards of one hundred volumes; Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, who, besides his historical cyclopædia, entitled Al-li̇kał (the necklace), composed many excellent works which are to this day the delight of the lovers of literature; and several other authors of note, whose names we omit for the sake of brevity, flourished under this reign.

Al-hakem was a just and enlightened ruler; he attended public worship every Friday, and distributed alms to the poor. Being himself very strict in the observance of religious duties, he caused all the precepts of the Sunnah to be enforced throughout his dominions. Perceiving that the use of wine and other spirituous liquors forbidden by law had become quite common in Andalus, owing to the tolerance or negligence of former Sultáns, he ordered that all the vines in his dominions should be rooted up; but upon being told by one of his wisest counsellors that many poor people would be ruined in consequence of the measure, and that, moreover, if the people were inclined to sin they might import wine from the Christian countries, or make it themselves with figs and other fruits possessing inebriating qualities, he recalled the order, although he directed the Kádís and other public officers to inflict summary punishment on all those who were convicted of dealing in spirituous liquors, or of having used them at weddings and other festivities. In taste for building he was surpassed by none of his predecessors, if we except perhaps his father An-násir. His addition to the great mosque of Cordova—in which he is reported to have spent no less than one hundred and
sixty-one thousand dinãrs out of his own share in the spoil taken from the infidels of Andalus—would of itself be a deed highly meritorious in the eyes of his God and Creator. He lavished, besides, countless treasures in the construction of mosques, houses of reception for the poor, hospitals for the sick, and colleges for the youth; and he ornamented his capital, as well as other large cities in his dominions, with baths, inns, markets, fountains, and other works of public utility.

His forbearance in the exercise of power, and his extreme attention towards learned or pious people, has become proverbial, and we shall give a remarkable instance of it in the words of an author named Abú-l-kásim Ibn Mufarraj. "I was of a contrary opinion to that followed by the Faqih Abú Ibrâhîm on several points of law and traditions, and yet I was in the habit of attending the lectures which he delivered on those sciences at a mosque close to his house, of which he was Imám. The mosque was called the mosque of Abú 'Othmán, and it stood to the north-west of the royal palace; the hour was between the two prayers of noon and sun-set, and the concourse of Talbes [students] and others on that day happened to be greater than usual. We were all listening in silence to what Abú Ibrâhîm had to say, when behold! in came one of the eunuchs of the palace belonging to the class of the letter-bearers, who brought a message from the Khalif Al-hakem. On entering the mosque the eunuch stooped, saluted Abú Ibrâhîm, and addressed him thus: 'O Faqih! the Commander of the Faithful (may God prolong his life!) wishes to see thee, and he is waiting for thee; so make haste: make haste; quick, quick!'—'I hear the Sultán's order,' said Abú Ibrâhîm, 'and would willingly obey it, were it not that I am prevented and cannot [at present] use speed. Go back to thy master and mine, (may God pour his favours on him!) and tell him how thou hast found me in one of the houses of God, (may his name be exalted!) surrounded by a number of students, to whom I am recounting traditions respecting his uncle (the Prophet). Tell him that these students are attentively listening to my words and profiting by my lesson, and that it behoves me not to interrupt the subject upon which I am lecturing to them until the sitting be at an end and the hour come for my dismissing them. Tell him that this consideration only prevents me from repairing immediately to his presence, and that the very moment that I feel free from this assembly of people who are here retained by the bonds of the Almighty and are trying to obtain his grace, I will go to him in person, if God be pleased.' Having spoken thus, Abú Ibrâhîm resumed his lecture, and the eunuch went away not a little astonished at the answer he had received, and greatly concerned about the time he had spent in the delivery of his message. Having, however, communicated to Al-hakem the answer made by Abú Ibrâhîm, the
“eunuch returned shortly after to the mosque in all haste, and said, ‘O Faquih! I have faithfully reported thy answer to the Commander of the Faithful, and he has directed me to say that he hopes God will reward thee for the good thou art doing to religion, and to the Moslems who are profiting by thy lessons; and that when thou hast put an end to thy lecture, thou art to go to him straight. I have been commanded to stay here until thou hast done, in order to conduct thee to his presence.’ Abú Ibráhím replied, ‘Very well—only that I am too weak and too old to walk to the Bâbu-s-suddâh, and moreover it is very painful for me to ride, owing to my advanced age, which has considerably weakened all my limbs. Bâbu-s-sand’âh (the gate of the fabric), which is the nearest gate of the royal palace from here, is shut. If the Commander of the Faithful will condescend to have it opened, in that case I may easily walk to his palace without any injury to my person. I therefore desire thee to return to the Sultán and acquaint him with this my determination, in order that I may hear his pleasure and act accordingly. Go! I see thou art a steady, well-meaning youth, and I wish thee all sorts of prosperity.’ The eunuch took his departure, and returned some time after, saying, ‘O Faquih! the Commander of the Faithful has granted thy request, and ordered the Bâbu-s-sand’âh to be opened for thy reception; he himself is waiting for thee close to it, and through it I left the palace to come here. My instructions this time are to remain by thee, until thou hast finished thy present occupation, and to remind thee of the object of my visit.’—‘I will do so shortly,’ was Abú Ibráhím’s reply. The eunuch then sat down, and waited until Abú Ibráhím had finished his lecture, and had expounded according to his daily practice without suppressing one sentence. The lecture being over, Abú Ibráhím got up and went to his dwelling, where he washed and dressed; after which he repaired to the presence of Al-hakem, entered the palace by the gate of Saná’ah, dispatched the business for which he had been called, and went out by the same gate, which was immediately locked after his departure.”

Abú-l-kásim Ibn Mufarraj continues: ‘I happened that very evening, after quitting the mosque in which Abú Ibráhím had been lecturing, to pass by the gate of Saná’ah, which by the order of the Khalif was continually kept shut, and, to my great astonishment, I found it wide open, as the eunuch had stated, and filled with servants and porters bustling and moving to and fro under the gate-way, and expecting the arrival of Abú Ibráhím. Great was my surprise when I witnessed such a scene, and for a long time after I spoke of nothing else [to my friends] than of what I had seen.” So far Ibn Mufarraj, whose anecdote we have introduced here to show the reader how the Sultáns and the
learned of those times behaved towards each other. (May God bless their souls!)

Al-hākem died on the second day of Safar, A.H. 366 (Sept. 29, A.D. 976), at the age of sixty-three, and after a reign of upwards of fifteen years. He was born in the year 303 (beginning July 16, A.D. 915); his mother's name was Marjān. He left no other male children except Hishām, whom he designated for his successor some time before he died. We have already stated that he used the appellative Abū-l-'āssin, and that on his accession to the throne he assumed the pious surname of Al-mustanser-billah (he who implores the assistance of God).
CHAPTER VII.

Accession of Hishám II.—Conspiracy in favour of his uncle Al-mugheyrah detected—Execution of Al-mugheyrah—Origin of Al-mansúr—Administration of Ja'far Al-mus'hafi—Intrigues of Al-mansúr—His alliance with Ghálib—who is appointed Hájib—Al-mus'hafi falls into disgrace—Is imprisoned and put to death—Al-mansúr's disagreement with Ghálib—Death of that chief—Al-mansúr seizes the treasures of Hishám—Takes Berbers into his pay—Builds himself a castle—Usurps the royal power—Campaigns of Al-mansúr against the Christians of Andalus—Destruction of Leon—Transactions in Africa—Taking of Barcelona—Zeyrí Ibn Menád sends an embassy to Cordova—Visits that capital—Returns to Africa—Quarrels with Al-mansúr—Is forcibly dispossessed of his government—Dies in exile—Campaigns in Andalus—Invasion of Galicia—March of the Mohammedan army—Taking and destruction of Santiago—Death of Al-mansúr.

On the death of Al-hakem, his son Hishám, surnamed Al-muyyed-billah (the assisted by God), who was only nine years old at the time,1 succeeded to the throne. A man, however, named Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir, whom Al-hakem had promoted from the rank of Kádí to that of Wizír to his son,2 succeeded by his intrigues in usurping all the authority of the state, and reigning, as it were, in his name.

According to Ibnu Khaldún, Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir rose in favour with Al-hakem. When that Khalif died and was succeeded by his youthful son Hishám, it was Mohammed who accepted and fulfilled the commission of putting to death Al-mugheyrah, the brother of Al-hakem, who aspired to the throne. This Al-mugheyrah, who was the son of the Khalif An-násir, was at the head of a considerable party in Cordova, who preferred him to his nephew Hishám on account of his more mature age and greater experience in affairs of government; but with the assistance of Ja'far Ibn 'Othmán Al-mus'hafi, who had been Al-hakem's Hájib (chamberlain), of Ghálib, the governor of Medinaceli, and of the Scíavonian eunuchs of the palace, whose chiefs at the time were Fáyik and Júdhar,3 Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mír surprised Al-mugheyrah in his dwelling and put him to death two days after the death of Al-hakem, when Hishám was proclaimed without opposition. This being done, Ibn Abí 'A'mir formed the design of seizing
the person of Hishám and usurping his authority. To this end he began to plot against the great officers of the state, and to raise dissensions among them, setting them against each other, and employing one to kill the other. As he himself belonged to one of the tribes of Yemen, that of Ma‘áfer, being the descendant of one 'Abdu-l-malek, who entered Andalus with Tárik and took a prominent part in the conquest of that country, he had no difficulty at all in attaching to his interests the chiefs of the Yemenite faction, which was then all-powerful. Through their means he rose gradually into importance and became completely the master of Hishám; he forbade the Wizírs to approach the person of their sovereign except on particular days, when they were allowed merely to salute him and then depart. He moreover lavished his gifts on the army, honoured and exalted the learned, and destroyed all those who opposed him. He was wise, provident, brave, had great military talents, and unparalleled zeal for religion. All those functionaries of the state who opposed him and resisted his authority, he destroyed one by one, either by depriving them of the offices they held, or by making them slay each other. All this he did under Hishám’s own signature and by his orders; and he contrived so well, that within a short time after his elevation he rid himself in some way or other of all those who stood in his way. His first attacks were directed against the Scavonian eunuchs of the palace, who formed part of the Khalif’s body-guard. Having instigated the Hájib Al-mus’hafi against them, this functionary expelled them all from the palace, although their number exceeded eight hundred. He then contracted an alliance with Ghálib, the mauli of the Khalif Al-hakem, whose daughter he married, and by court ing his friendship and showing great obsequiousness towards him, he succeeded in obtaining his assistance against Al-mus’hafi, whose influence in the state he ultimately destroyed. Against Ghálib he employed Ja'far Ibn Alí Ibn Hamdún, Lord of Masílah, and general of the Shiites [of Africa], who had a considerable body of Berbers and Zenátah at his command, the same individual who had opposed the authority of Al-hakem at the beginning of that Khalif’s reign. Ja'far he slew with the assistance of 'Abdu-l-wadúd Ibn Jeh’war Ibn Dhí-n-nún, and other grandees of the state, who were the chiefs of the Arabian party.

Ibn Bessám, copying Ibnu Hayyán, says, “When the Khalifate of the Bení Merwán in Andalus came to Al-hakem, the ninth Imam of that family, an event took place which produced the most serious consequences. Among other virtues Al-hakem possessed that of paternal love in such a degree that it blinded his prudence and induced him to appoint a son of his, who was then a child, to be his successor, in preference to any of his brothers or nephews, all men of mature age, well versed in the management of affairs and in the command of
"the armies, capable of making their mandates obeyed, and of maintaining
"themselves in power.
"It has been observed," continues Ibn Bessám, "that the empire of the Bení
"Umeyyah was never so prosperous nor so durable as when the sons succeeded
"the fathers; for when it descended to the brothers,⁴ and they inherited it one
"from another, it declined and showed visible symptoms of decay. Perhaps Al-
hakem foresaw this, and wished to avoid the troubles that might arise, and he
"accordingly designated his son Hishám for his successor. However this may be,
"no sooner had Al-hakem breathed his last, than two of his Sclavonian eunuchs,
"named Fáyik and Júdhar, foreseeing the troubles and calamities that might arise
"from such a measure, conceived the idea of having his brother, Al-mugheyrah,
"raised to the throne instead of the youthful Hishám. 'Methinks,' said Fáyik
"one day to Júdhar, 'we shall never be able to carry our plans into execution
"as long as Ja'far Al-mus'haři lives; he must die.'—'And are we to begin our
"undertaking,' answered Júdhar, 'by assassinating an old man, who is our master
"and our protector?'—'By Allah! I see no other way,' replied Fáyik. They
"then sent a message to Ja'far, to announce to him the death of Al-hakem, and
"at the same time to communicate to him their plans respecting Al-mugheyrah,
"requesting him to give his opinion and advice on the subject. Al-mus'haři's
"answer was thus conceived: 'It is for you two to act, and for me to follow; your
"offices as master of the household and governor of the palaces give you respec-
tively great authority.' Upon which the two eunuchs agreed to carry their project
"into execution. Al-mus'haři, however, left the palace, and, having assembled the
"troops and their officers, announced to them the death of Al-hakem, and informed
"them of the plans of Fáyik and Júdhar to place Al-mugheyrah on the vacant
"throne, to the prejudice of Hishám, the appointed heir. 'If we remain faithful to
"our master's son,' said Al-mus'haři to them, 'the empire is in our hands; if, on
"the contrary, we consent to have another sovereign, we shall lose all power and
"authority in the state.' The soldiers answered unanimously, 'Thy opinion is also
"ours.' Al-mus'haři then hastened to dispatch Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir with
"a body of troops to the residence of Al-mugheyrah, with instructions to put
"him to death. Ibn Abí 'A'mir found Al-mugheyrah in complete ignorance of
"what had occurred; he told him of his brother's death, and how his nephew,
"Hishám, had been seated on the vacant throne. At the receipt of this intel-
"ligence, Al-mugheyrah was thunderstruck; but soon after recovering, he said,
"'I hear and obey the orders [of my new master].' Not knowing how to act,
"Ibn Abí 'A'mir sent a written message to Al-mus'haři, acquainting him with
"what had occurred, and asking for further instructions. The answer was,
“Seize him, and put him to death; if thou do not like the commission, I will send another to execute it.” Al-mugheyrāḥ was accordingly strangled.

The man who executed this sentence, and who was destined to render Islām triumphant, was the son of ’Abdullāh, son of ’A’mīr, son of Abū ’A’mīr, son of Al-walīd, son of Yezīd, son of ’Abdu-l-malek Al-ma’āfīrī; that is to say, of the tribe of Ma’āfīr, a branch of Himyār. Mohammed was born in A.H. 327, (A.D. 939). His mother’s name was Boreyahāh, and she was the daughter of Yahyā Ibn Zakariyyā Ibn Bartal At-temīmī. All those writers who have treated of him, such as Ibn Hayyān, in the history he wrote of the ’A’mīrite dynasty,—Al-fath, in his Mattmah,—Al-hijārī, in his Mas’hab,—and Ash-shekundī, in his At-taraf,—agree that Al-mansūr was originally from a town called Toresh [Torres ?], in the neighbourhood of Algesiras. His ancestor, ’Abdu-l-malek, was one of those noble Arabs who entered Andalus at the same time with Tārik Ibn Zeyād. His father, ’Abdullāh, surnamed Abū Hafss, was born at Algesiras, but removed when young to Cordova, where he learned [sacred] traditions from Mohammed Ibn ’Omar Ibn Lubābah, Ahmed Ibn Khāled, Mohammed Ibn Foteys, and other eminent theologians of his time; composing also various works on the subject. ’Abdullāh left Andalus for the East, where he fulfilled all the duties of a pilgrim. He was an honest and virtuous man, very religious, and he led a very austere life, keeping aloof from kings and great men. He died in Africa as he was returning from his pilgrimage; some say at Tripoli, others at a place called Arkādah. The year of his death is not stated, but it is generally believed that he died towards the close of An-nāsir’s reign.

When still young, Al-mansūr travelled to Cordova, where he studied and settled. Having established a shop or office close to the gate of the royal palace, he for some time earned his livelihood by writing letters or petitions for such among the servants of the royal household as stood in need of them. At last, one of the Sultan’s wives, named Sobha, who was the mother of Hishām, happening to want a confidential secretary, one of the eunuchs of the palace, who was an intimate friend of Al-mansūr, recommended him to that princess, who at first employed him in writing several things she wanted, and afterwards appointed him her secretary. Being a shrewd and intelligent man, Al-mansūr had no difficulty in gaining the favour of the princess, who introduced him to her husband, the Sultan Al-hakem, requesting him to confer on her protégé some lucrative appointment. Al-hakem then made him Kādī of a town; and as Al-mansūr distinguished himself in that capacity, he was shortly after promoted to the office of collector of tithes and duties upon inheritances at Seville. He then returned to Cordova, where he so contrived to gain the heart of Sobha, by the rich presents he made her, and
his attention to her service, that no man in Cordova enjoyed so much favour. His next office was that of master of the mint, which he filled for some time. An interesting anecdote has been preserved, showing his kindness and his excessive liberality even towards strangers, which happened at the time he was at the head of that establishment. Mohammed Ibn Aflah, one of Al-hakem's pages, had once occasion to go to the mint for the purpose of selling some silver ornaments which he possessed. "I had spent at my daughter's wedding," said the page to the author who preserved the anecdote, "more money than I could well afford, so that I was actually reduced to poverty, and had nothing left save a bit and bridle ornamented [with silver]," which I took to the mint, in order to obtain its value in money. Being introduced to Mohammed Ibn Abi 'A'mir, who was at that time master of the mint, and whom I found sitting behind piles of coined dirhems, I made known to him my errand, and told him how I had been reduced to poverty by my daughter's wedding. Having listened attentively to my account, he seemed greatly rejoiced; and having weighed bridle, iron, leather, and all, he gave me the weight in dirhems, with which he filled my cap. I could hardly believe my senses: such a trait of generosity on the part of Mohammed towards a stranger, whom he had never seen, so far captivated my heart, that had he then asked me to enter into a conspiracy to deprive my master Al-hakem of the throne, by Allah! I really think I should have accepted his proposition. I need not add, that, upon counting down the money, I found there was enough to pay my daughter's dowry; which I did, and had besides a large sum left for my own private use."

It was also during his occupation of that office that Al-mansûr caused a palace of silver to be wrought, which he presented to Sobha. It was carried to the dwelling of that princess on the heads of several men; and she was so pleased with the present that from that day forward she became his patron, and that she again introduced him to the presence of her lord and master, Al-hakem, who spoke to his courtiers about it, and exclaimed, "By Allah! this youth (meaning Al-"mansûr) has won the hearts and affections of our women with his presents." It is also related that Al-hakem, who was greatly addicted to astrology and the science of divination, fancied that Ibn Abi 'A'mir (Al-mansûr) was the man mentioned in [the book of the] prophecies. He used to say to those among his courtiers who followed the same pursuits, "Do you not observe the tawny colour of his hands?" On another occasion he said, "If he has a sabre-cut on the head, he is doubtless the man announced." And so it was; for God Almighty decreed that some time after the death of Al-hakem, Al-mansûr should receive some such wound in a souffle with Ghâlib, the governor of Medinaceli, as we shall hereafter
relate. This conversation passed in Al-hakem’s lifetime, and before Mohammed Ibn Abí ‘A’mir had reached the summit of eminence at which he afterwards arrived. Al-mansúr in the mean time did not neglect to make himself agreeable to the Hájib Ja’far Ibn ‘Othmán Al-mus’hafi, whose protection and good-will he also secured.

On the death of Al-hakem, his son Hishám Al-muyyed, who was then twelve years old, succeeded him. The Rúm (Christians) having collected their forces, and made some hostile demonstration upon the frontiers, Al-mus’hafi, who still retained the post of Hájib, sent Al-mansúr with an army against them. God Almighty permitted that the Christians should be defeated, and that Al-mansúr should return victorious from the expedition. This circumstance gained him the affections of the people; and as he was a shrewd and intelligent man, and very liberal [to those who seemed disposed to serve him], he began gradually to open for himself a path to power. To rid himself of the Sclavonian guard, he united himself with Al-mus’hafi, against whom he afterwards employed Ghalib, the governor of Medinaceli, whose daughter Asmá he married; the nuptial festivity being celebrated with a pomp that surpassed any thing of the sort in Andalus. He next destroyed Ghalib, by raising up against him an enemy in Ja’far, the African, the same prince in whose praise the celebrated poet, Ibn Hání, composed one of his best kassídás. In like manner he employed against Ja’far another chieftain named ’Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed Ibn Hishám At-tojibí. In short, such were his craftiness, foresight, and courage, that the historian Ibnu Hayyán has filled one volume with nothing but the enumeration of the well-planned expedients he put into practice, in order to obtain the supreme power. Such is the abstract of Al-mansúr’s origin and the principal incidents of his life, as derived from the works of Ibnu Sa’íd and other historians; but what follows will, perhaps, throw greater light on the career of that celebrated usurper.

By the murder of his uncle, who was dispatched in the manner above related, Hishám saw himself firmly seated on the throne of his ancestors, and [Ja’far] Al-mus’hafi had the entire control of affairs. Ja’far began his administration by showing great zeal for the welfare of the people, as well as great humility and forbearance in the exercise of his functions. He laid aside all unnecessary pomp, and sat along with the Wizírs and other members of the council on a seat similar to theirs. These, however, may be called his only good acts; for soon after he began to distribute the offices of the state [among his friends and relatives], and to retain the public treasures for himself. Mohammed Ibn Abí ‘A’mir, who was in character the very reverse of Al-mus’hafi, observed a different conduct. To the avarice and exclusiveness of that Hájib he opposed the most unbounded liberality, and to his reserve and haughtiness of temper the most
agreeable and prepossessing manners, by which means he so captivated the affections of the people, that Al-mus'hafi bethought him of taking him for his partner in the administration, and appointing him to the post of Wizír. The zeal and talents with which Mohammed fulfilled the duties of his office, and his renewed attention to Sobha, the mother of Hishám, soon procured him the favour of that princess, and he accordingly rose in power and influence. By his courtly demeanour and fascinating manners, he so gained the affections of Sobha, that he became the most esteemed officer of the royal household; and an order from the Khalíf Hishám came down enjoining his Hájib Al-mus'hafi to consult him upon the most arduous affairs of the government, and not to do any thing without his previous consent. In obedience to that command, Al-mus'hafi admitted Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir to his privacy, and treated him as a kind father would his own son, concealing nothing from him, and consulting him upon all business submitted to his consideration. But whilst Al-mus'hafi acted thus towards Mohammed, and relied confidently on him, the latter was secretly betraying him, and trying to destroy him in the princess's favour, by always following a contrary advice, and charging him with the result of such measures as were not agreeable to the people.

Mohammed persevered in this path [of intrigue and deception] until he succeeded in working the ruin of Al-mus'hafi, and opening for himself the way to exclusive power, as we shall presently relate. Certain of Al-hakem's officers being an obstacle to his ambitious views, he exiled some, and put others to death, until he had scattered and dispersed them all, intrusting their offices to creatures of his own, or to people in whom he could confide. He did the same with the Sclavonian guard, which he dissolved and scattered through the country, putting to death the most influential among them, or those who appeared most obnoxious to his views. But as the events which we have just rapidly sketched have been fully related by many diligent historians of those times, we will proceed to give a few particulars from the most authentic and approved writers.

According to Ibnu Hayyán, there existed between the Hájib Al-mus'hafi and Ghálib, the governor of Medinaceli, the Sheikh of the maulis, and the champion of Andalus, a bitter enmity and great rivalship, which caused them always to be at variance with each other. Ghálib being a very influential man, Al-mus'hafi saw his power gradually diminish and his orders continually disobeyed [by Ghálib], until having complained of him to his fellow Wizírs, he was advised to try every means of conciliation and to make his peace with him. No sooner was Al-mansúr informed of Al-mus'hafi's determination, than, fearing his reconciliation with Ghálib, he applied himself to court the friendship of the latter, with a view...
to accomplish the ruin of Al-mus'hafi through his means. It happened soon after, that Ghâlib went out of Cordova to take the command of the army on the frontiers, whilst Al-mansûr also left that capital upon his second expedition against the infidels. Having met together on their return from their respective campaigns, the two generals held a conference together, and pledged themselves to effect in common the ruin of Al-mus'hafi. Al-mansûr returned to Cordova victorious and laden with spoil, by which his fame spread far and wide, and his reputation as a general increased. An order then came down from the Khalif Hishâm, removing Al-mus'hafi from the office of Wâli-l-medînah, which he held at the time, and giving it to Al-mansûr, who was also invested with a khil'âh or dress of honour by his sovereign's hands; all this being done without Al-mus'hafi being previously made aware of it. By obtaining the command of the shortah, or police force, Al-mansûr opened for himself the gate [to power]. His next care was to put in practice all manner of stratagems against Al-mus'hafi, to isolate him [from his friends], and to curtail his influence, until he succeeded in leaving but a small share of real power in his hands. All this he accomplished with the help of Ghâlib, who, as before related, had agreed to connive with him at the destruction of Al-mus'hafi.

Meanwhile Al-mansûr filled the functions of his office (Wâli-l-medînah) in so satisfactory a manner that the citizens of Cordova had no reason to regret the loss of their former governors and magistrates. The greatest tranquillity and order prevailed [through the city], and justice was speedily administered to the delinquent. He continued, moreover, to court the friendship of Ghâlib, and to conciliate his favour by every means in his power. Al-mus'hafi, on the other hand, being made aware of the plans which Al-mansûr was forming for his destruction, wrote a letter to Ghâlib, asking for a reconciliation, and applying, at the same time, for the hand of his daughter Asmá for his son 'Othmân. Ghâlib consented, and the proposed marriage was about to be celebrated, when Al-mansûr, who happened to hear of it, stirred himself and wrote to Ghâlib, cautioning him against Al-mus'hafi, reviving his envy and hatred of that personage, and telling him to guard against some treacherous act of his. He did more: he persuaded the relatives and clansmen of Ghâlib to write to him on the subject, until that chieftain, yielding to their solicitations, broke off all negotiations with Al-mus'hafi, and gave Al-mansûr the hand of the very daughter [Asmá] whom he had promised to 'Othmân. This alliance was concluded in the month of Moharram of the year 367, on the night of naurus (new year's day), August, A. D. 977, the marriage being celebrated with unusual pomp and magnificence: the bride was first conducted to the royal palace, where the Khalif Hishâm received her in state, accompanying her after-
wards to the bridegroom’s dwelling. These marks of distinction increased the power and influence of Al-mansúr, and doubled the number of his followers and adherents, until, compared with him, Ja’far became a mere cipher.

After this the Sultán [Hishám] appointed Ghálīb to the office of Hájib (chamberlain), conjointly with Ja’far Almus’hāfī, who, despairing of ever being able to supplant his rival, gave up all resistance, and ceased to oppose him in the affairs of the administration. Al-mansúr, on the contrary, opposed him secretly, as well as in public, detaching all his partisans, and gaining them over to his party, until Ja’far was actually deserted by all his friends, and had to go alone morning and evening to the palace, enjoying none of the prerogatives and power of his office, which was merely nominal; a deserved punishment for the murder of Al-mugheyrāh and his help to Hishám’s accession!

Subsequently to this, Al-mansúr [Mohammed Ibn Abí ’A’mír] instigated his sovereign Hishám against Al-mus’hāfī, his children, relatives, friends, and every thing appertaining to them. A close account was demanded from them of all sums [belonging to the state] which had passed through their hands; and on the slightest pretext they were fined heavy sums, and reduced to poverty. By this means Al-mansúr succeeded in ruining and destroying that powerful family. A nephew of Al-mus’hāfī, named Hishám, was the first to feel all the weight of his vengeance. This youth had accompanied Al-mansúr in his third expedition against the Christians; and as that general was returning to Cordova with a great number of heads stored in bags, as trophies of his victory, he stole one of the bags, and rode off to the capital, where he beethoven him of presenting them to his sovereign before the arrival of his general. No sooner was Al-mansúr made aware of the fact, than he had the youth seized and confined in a dungeon, where he was afterwards put to death. As to Ja’far, he soon shared the fate of his nephew; for when Al-mansúr had ruined him and reduced him to poverty, so much so that he was compelled to sell him his house in the Rissáfah, which was one of the most magnificent residences in Cordova, he persecuted him for two consecutive years, keeping him sometimes in prison, and sometimes out of prison,—sometimes residing at court, at other times exiled,—always fined in heavy sums of money, until he annihilated him entirely and broke his spirit, when he was cast into one of the dungeons of Az-zahrá, where he ended his days, according to some authorities, from the effects of poison administered to him; and, according to others, from grief and disappointment.

Treating of this unfortunate Wizír, the author of the historical work entitled Raudhatu-l-azhár wa bahjatu-n-naʃus wa nozhatu-l-ubssdr (the flower-garden, the delight of the mind, and the recreation of the eye)," says, "When, in pursuance of

18
"Al-mansúr's orders, Al-mus'hafi was arrested and confined in one of the dungeons of Az-zahrá, those among his friends and relatives, who had accompanied him thither, took an affectionate leave of him, and, with tears in their eyes, gave him the embrace of separation. 'Friends!' said Al-mus'hafi to them, 'this is the last time that you will see me alive; for the moment is come when a prayer must needs be fulfilled, which I have been expecting for upwards of forty years.' His friends having expressed a wish to know what the prayer was, Al-mus'hafi informed them how, during the reign of An-násir, he had been instrumental in committing to prison a man, who remained long in confinement.

'One night,' said Al-mus'hafi, 'I dreamed that I heard a voice saying to me, 'Take such a one out of prison, and whatever prayer he may happen to make in thy behalf will be attended to. I did as I was commanded, and liberated the man. Having then made him come to my house, I acquainted him with my dream, and asked him to form a prayer; upon which he said, I ask God that whoever was concerned in my committal to prison may himself perish in the narrowest dungeon! After this, friends!' added Al-mus'hafi, 'there can be no doubt that the man's prayer is about to be fulfilled, since I was one of those who put him in prison, although I afterwards repented of the deed when it was too late.'"

However, Al-mus'hafi, as before related, died in prison, when his body was given up to his friends for interment; for the following anecdote has been preserved by one of the Kátibs of Al-mansúr, named Mohammed Ibn Isma'íl. "I once accompanied Mohammed Ibn Moslemah to Az-zahrá for the purpose of delivering the body of Ja'far Ibn 'Othmán Al-mus'hafi to his friends and relatives, according to the instructions given us by Al-mansúr. We proceeded to the apartment of the deceased, whom we found stretched on his bed, and covered with an old tattered cloak which one of the gaolers had thrown over him. The body was then washed upon the back of a door, which had been torn from its hinges from one of the rooms; after which it was carried to the burial-place, followed by none save the Imám of the mosque, who had been engaged to recite the funeral prayer over him, and by such among his sons as happened to be in Cordova at the time. The sight of such a scene made me reflect upon the inconstancy of fortune; I recollected having once seen Ja'far ride from his own dwelling to the royal palace, followed by a numerous suite of relatives and adherents. The streets and markets through which he passed were thronged with people of every description, who were desirous to see him or had some petition to present to him. I myself having a memorial to place in his hands, made my way through the crowd, and delivered it to one of the Kátibs or..."
secretaries who rode by his side. Shortly after this, Al-mansúr became the enemy of Ja'far, had him imprisoned, and made him follow him in all his campaigns, treating him with the greatest contempt. I happened, in one of our expeditions to Galicia, to pitch my tent close to that of Ja'far. I recollect very well that Al-mansúr had issued orders that no fires should be lighted that night in the camp, for fear the enemy should discover our position, and defeat his plans of attack; and, by Allah! I saw Ja'far with a little brazier of charcoal, which he dexterously concealed under his clothes, blowing now and then into it, lest the fire should go out. I saw more; I saw 'Othmán, the son of Ja'far, carrying to his tent, and actually bending under the weight of it, a large trough full of flour kneaded with water, the only food which he and his father had to keep themselves from starvation. I then heard 'Othmán repeat the following verses:

'I strove in vain for a change of my fortune; I saw it return as often and faithfully as the free maiden to the appointed meeting.
'By Allah! the days roll on, but I cease not to be tormented by the agonizing thought of my evil fate.
'Days [these are] which invariably bring round a succession of calamities,
'and from which all happiness and joy have taken their departure:
'Nights, the wearisome hours of which no pastime beguiles; and in which my misfortune itself sees nothing [pleasant] to be angry at.
'But what are days but clouds, which pour down their contents sometimes to benefit and sometimes to injure the earth?'\(^{19}\)

Thus died Ja'far Ibn 'Othmán Al-mus'hafí: as to Ghálib An-násirí,\(^{20}\) he soon shared a similar fate. Having accompanied Al-mansúr in one of his campaigns, both generals happened to ascend to the top of a castle for the purpose of reconnoitring the neighbouring country. A dispute having arisen between Al-mansúr and Ghálib [as to the best plan to be adopted], the latter grew exceedingly angry, and said to Al-mansúr, "Thou dog! it was thou who spoiledst the monarchy and dismantledst the fortresses [on the enemy's frontier], with a view to the usurpation of the royal power." He then drew his sword and attacked Al-mansúr, whom he wounded on the head; and he would undoubtedly have killed him, had not some officers, who were present, prevented him by seizing his arm. Fearing lest he might renew the attack upon his person, Ibn Abí 'A'mir precipitated himself from the top of the ramparts; but God permitted that he should find something in the air which broke his fall, and prevented his destruction. His followers then took him up and conveyed him to his tent, where they took care of him until he was entirely recovered. Ghálib, moreover, went over to...
the Christians, and made common cause with them; upon which Ibn Abí 'A'mir, at the head of the Moslem forces, attacked and routed him, until destiny permitted that Ghálîb should die, and that Ibn Abí 'A'mir should obtain by his death that for which he had been toiling. Thus did Al-mansúr rid himself of all those who proved an obstacle to his ambition.

Some time after these events, some coolness was visible in the relations between Hishám and Al-mansúr, owing to the calumnies of ill-intentioned people. Being aware that the mischief could proceed from no other than the servants of the palace, Al-mansúr directed his attacks to that quarter, and he scattered them, or ruined them, leaving none in place except those in whom he could trust, or those from whom he had nothing to fear. He then learned that some of the women of the harem had secretly laid their hands on the treasures of the Khalif, which were always kept within the palace; he ascertained that Sídah (the queen mother) Sobha, the sister of Ráyik,\textsuperscript{21} whose feelings towards him were changed, had taken large sums of money out of the royal coffers, having upon one single occasion abstracted no less than one hundred sealed jars containing gold and silver, which by her commands had been removed on the shoulders of the Slavonian servants, after substituting in their room one hundred others, filled with drugs and other things, taken from the palace of the Khalifs, causing labels to be fixed to them similar to those on the jars which had been removed: she then managed to deceive the city governor, so that she was enabled to take the greater part of her plunder out of Cordova unobserved. The amount of money in gold and silver thus taken out of the royal treasury is said to have been eighty thousand dinárs. Ibn Abí 'A'mir having become informed of all these particulars, summoned to his presence a number of the household, and informed them how the Khalif Hishám, by his natural disposition, was averse to the hoarding of treasures, and that he was besides very much given to devotion, and that should the coffers of the state be drained [through his want of care], great detriment to the public cause would ensue; he therefore advised them to transfer the said treasures to a place of safety where they might be kept; and they were accordingly removed to a strong castle, called Az-záhirah, which Ibn Abí 'A'mir had caused to be built at some distance from Cordova. Five millions and seven hundred thousand dinárs in specie is said to have been the amount of treasure which was taken from the royal palace on this occasion. Sobha, too, was obliged to restore all the sums which she had taken from the treasury and had not yet removed from the palace. Ibn Abí 'A'mir became as intimate as ever with the Khalif Hishám, and made himself known to him for his virtue and his zeal in upholding the foundations of the state; the tongue of envy became dumb, and the plans of the malevolent were defeated.
Having in this manner rid himself of all those who stood near the throne or from whom he might apprehend opposition in the government, Al-mansúr turned his attention towards the army, which he began to remodel so as to place it entirely at his own disposal. For this end he sent people to Africa, to enlist a number of Berbers and Zenátah, whom he divided into companies, the command of which he gave to African chiefs of the tribes of Senhájah, Maghráwah, Bení Yeferen, Bení Birzál, Meknésah, and others. This being done, he seized the person of Hishám and concealed him from the sight [of his subjects]: he then usurped all the authority in the state, and from his private dwelling in Cordova he filled the world with the greatness of the Khalifate and the reverential awe which it inspires, having his absolute will in all things; declaring and carrying on war against the infidels and others, and enjoying all those prerogatives which appertain only to royalty. In order the better to strengthen himself in the position which he had taken, he removed the Arabs from all posts of honour and distinction, and advanced the Berbers, the Zenátah, and others, whom he had invited from Africa.

In this manner he accomplished his purpose, usurping the sovereignty, and ruling with absolute sway. He moreover built himself a strong castle and a palace to reside in, which he named Medínat Az-záhirah, into which he conveyed all the treasures and military stores [of the state], and where he sat, as above related, on the throne of the kings, and caused himself to be addressed in royal style, assuming the titles of Al-hájib and Al-mansúr (the chamberlain, the victorious). All letters, proclamations, and commands, were moreover issued in his own name: he ordered that a prayer should be offered up for him from the pulpit after the usual one for the Khalif Hishám. The rights and insignia of the Khalifate were entirely obliterated, and nothing remained to Hishám Al-muyyed except the putting of his name on the coins and on the skirt of the royal robes called tiráz, two prerogatives which Al-mansúr also enjoyed at the same time; for he caused his own name to be struck on the silver and gold coins, and to be woven into the stuff called tiráz. All other rights and prerogatives were dexterously, and by degrees, snatched from the helpless monarch, who preserved only such a share of authority as his powerful Hájib was pleased to allow him. Al-mansúr moreover formed into an army the Berbers and Mamelukes, and surrounded his person with a multitude of slaves and foreigners, by the help of whom he maintained himself in the position [which he had usurped], and was enabled to overwhelm all those who offered him any opposition, or who attempted to compete with him; and through whose means he accomplished whatever he undertook. He led his armies to the theatre of war, and fought during his administration fifty-six pitched battles, in which he invariably came off victorious; since upon no occasion was the army he
commanded, or even a detachment of it, defeated by the enemy; and never did his banner vanish before them. He sent over his forces to Africa, where he excited dissension among the native tribes and the princes [ruling over them] until they destroyed each other and he became the absolute ruler of Western Africa, the chiefs of the tribe of Zenátah submitting to him and acknowledging his sway. He sent over to Africa his son, 'Abdu-l-malek, against the Bení Khazr and their chief Zeyrí Ibn 'Atiyah, at that time Lord of the Maghráwah and ruler of Fez. Having heard that the Berber chieftain, who had formerly been on very good terms with him, had spoken disrespectfully of him on several occasions, and had often alluded to the state of confinement and seclusion in which he kept his sovereign Hishám, Al-mansúr determined upon chastising him: for which end he prepared a large expedition, the command of which he intrusted to his eldest son, 'Abdu-l-malek, who defeated the rebel and deprived him of his states, as will be related hereafter.

But to proceed with our narrative. " Soon after the death of Al-hakem," says Ibnu Hayyán, " the Christians collected their forces and attacked the Moslems " on the frontiers, extending their incursions till within sight of Cordova; owing " chiefly to their not having found in Al-mus'hafi either the resources or the vigour " which ought to have been opposed to them. They say that upon one occasion " the people of Kal'ah Rabbáh (Calatrava) having complained to him of the frequent " inroads which the Christians were making into their territory, he ordered them to " destroy the bridge"24 upon their river (the Tagus), under the impression that he " would thereby prevent the incursions of the enemy. But this measure was far " from producing the desired effect; and, although the army was then numerous, " and the coffers of the state were well filled, [yet the Christians continued their " incursions.] This was one of Al-mus'hafi's errors. Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir, " on the other hand, having received intelligence from Calatrava, advised Ja'far " to collect his army and march against the enemy, reminding him at the same " time of the eternal chastisements reserved for those who do not wage war against " the infidels. Moved by his arguments, the Hájib summoned the Wizírs to a " council of war, and having taken their advice, decided upon making an incursion " into the enemy's territory; the command of the army being intrusted to Mo-" hammed [Al-mansúr], who received the sum of one hundred thousand gold dinárs " [for the payment of the forces]. Mohammed departed at the head of the army, " and having reached the Thager Al-jaufí (the north-western part of the province " of Toledo), laid siege to a fortified town called Al-hámmah, entered and plundered " its suburb, and, after an absence of fifty-two days, returned to the capital " triumphant, bringing with him a number of captives and considerable spoil.
The news of this success filled the inhabitants of Cordova with joy, and gained Mohammed the hearts of the soldiers, who, perceiving his virtues and his talents, were eager to die in his service.

In the year 372, (beginning June 25, A.D. 982,) Al-mansur made an incursion into the land of the Galicians, with a view to the destruction of Ashtorikah (Astorga) and Liúnish (Leon), two populous cities of those districts. The Christians, however, having received timely intelligence of the immense preparations made by Al-mansur, deserted those cities, and fled to the mountains with such valuables as they could remove; upon which Al-mansur gave up his undertaking, and, after laying waste the country, returned to Cordova. In the spring of the ensuing year (April—June, A.D. 984,) Al-mansur made a sudden irruption into Galicia (Asturias) and marched without opposition to Liúnish (Leon), which he invested and took, putting the inhabitants to the sword. He next ordered the demolition of the fortifications; but finding that, owing to the strength and thickness of the walls, the operation was likely to last some time, he gave up his purpose, and proceeded to Ashtorikah (Astorga), which he also took.

In the year 375,” (beginning May 23, A.D. 985,) says one of the historians of Africa, “Al-mansur sent over his cousin Abú-l-hakem ’Omar with a powerful army against Al-hasan Ibn Kanún, the Idrísite, who had taken possession of the city of Basrah in Maghreb (Western Africa). After besieging him for some time, Abú-l-hakem compelled his enemy to surrender at discretion and throw himself upon the mercy of Al-mansur; who was accordingly consulted as to Al-hasan’s future destiny. But Al-mansur, tutored by experience, would not listen to the voice of mercy, and sent orders for the execution of the unfortunate prince, whose head was accordingly forwarded to Cordova.”

In the month of Dhi-l-hajjah of the year 374 (May, A.D. 985,) Al-mansur left Cordova on a campaign to Catalonia, this being his twenty-third expedition to the land of the infidels. He had previously made immense preparations, and great levies of troops, causing the jihád or holy war to be proclaimed throughout the dominions of Islám. In order to provision his army, he directed his march through the eastern provinces: he thus passed through Jaén, Elvira, Bastah (Baza), and Tudmir. From the latter place he went to Valencia, and, after allowing some rest to his troops, he entered the dominions of Boreyl (Borel), King of the Franks, whom he defeated in a pitched battle, pursuing him till in sight of his capital (Barcelona), which he besieged and took by the sword on Monday the 15th of Safar, A.H. 375 (May, A.D. 985). As usual, Al-mansur took with him to this expedition a number of poets and authors, that they might record his high deeds during the campaign. As their names have been preserved by a
In the year 381," (beginning March 19, A.D. 991,) says the diligent historian Ibnu Hayyán—who, as is well known, has dwelt longer on the events of that time than on any other comprised in his voluminous work—"there arrived in Cordova an embassy from Zeyri Ibn 'Atiyah Al-maghrawi, Lord of the Zenátah, with a valuable present consisting of various rarities and productions of Africa;
among which were two hundred generous steeds; fifty camels of the species called "mehriyyah, which are renowned for their fleetness; one thousand shields covered with the skin of the lamt or hippopotamus; several loads of bows and arrows made in the country of Záb, many civet-cats, giraffes, and other quadrupeds of the desert, as rhinoceroses, elephants, lions, tigers, leopards, and so forth; one thousand loads of the best dates; one hundred and fifty ostrich-feathers; eight thousand pounds weight of the purest ivory, and other curiosities of that country. There were besides several loads of bornuses and other articles of woollen cloth manufactured in Africa." The object of the ambassadors was to announce to Al-mansûr the extensive conquests which their master, Zeyrî, had just made in Western Africa, the greater portion of which he had reduced, causing the Khalif Hishâm to be proclaimed in all the mosques thereof. The news of this success filled the inhabitants of Cordova with delight, and Al-mansûr dismissed the ambassadors with suitable presents and a letter for the Lord of the Zenátah, wherein he granted him in Hishám's name the investiture of all those dominions which he had wrested from the enemies of the house of Umeyyah.

The ensuing year (A. H. 382, beginning March 8, A. D. 992) Zeyrî Ibn 'Atiyah in person visited Al-mansûr in Cordova. This time he brought with him a present still more valuable than the former, containing, among other inestimable objects, a bird that could speak both Arabic and Berber, a musk bull, a wild ox, in shape resembling a horse (the gnu?), and several other extraordinary quadrupeds; two immense lions in iron cages, many loads of dates of the best quality and unusual size. Zeyrî came attended by three hundred black slaves, all mounted on horseback, and three hundred more on foot, besides a large retinue of followers from his own tribe. He was received in state and with due pomp by Al-mansûr, who lodged him in the palace which had belonged to Ja'far Al-mu'ashafi, honoured and distinguished him greatly during his stay in Cordova, conferred on him the title of Wizîr, made him a valuable return for his present, and confirmed him in the possession of his African states. But whilst Zeyrî was in Cordova news came that the chief of the Bení Yeferún, named Yadu Ibn Ya'la, taking advantage of his absence, had suddenly marched to Fez and entered the 'Idwatu-l-Andalus, (or that part of the city peopled by the Andalusians,) where he fortified himself. Zeyrî returned in all haste to Africa, and, having put himself at the head of his forces, marched against his adversary, with whom he had many sharp encounters, until at last he defeated and slew him, and regained possession of the capital in the year 383 (beginning February 25, A. D. 993).

In the course of time, however, Zeyrî Ibn 'Atiyah betrayed the cause which he had espoused, and became the bitterest enemy of Al-mansûr. What induced
that chieftain to take such a determination is not well known, but the fact is that he began to speak of the Hajib in the most injurious terms; which reaching the ears of Al-mansur, he issued orders for the withdrawal of the pension which Zeyri received yearly from the treasury of Cordova in his quality of Wizir. Enraged at this, Zeyri commanded that Al-mansur's name should no longer be mentioned in the khotbah or public prayer as before; although he persevered in his allegiance to the Khalif Hishám, whom he acknowledged as his rightful sovereign. He then prepared to resist any attacks that should be made upon him.

Al-mansur first sent an army under the command of a Sclavonian eunuch, named Wádheh, who landed at Tangiers and proceeded towards Fez; but, being opposed by Zeyri at the head of his Zenátah, he was defeated with great loss, and obliged to fall back upon Tangiers, where he was immediately besieged by the victor. Al-mansur then sent his son 'Abdu-l-malek, who not only defeated Zeyri in a pitched battle near Wáda-mena, on the 15th of Ramadhán, 387 (Nov. A.D. 997), but laid siege to Fez, and took that city, which he gave in sovereignty to the chiefs of the Zenátah, together with the rest of Western Africa, comprising the province of Sijilmésah and others.

When the news of this victory reached Cordova, Al-mansur ordered that his son's letter to him should be read to the people in the mosque of Cordova, as well as in the principal cities of his dominions, and that public rejoicings should be made in commemoration of so signal a victory. He himself liberated fifteen hundred slaves, and distributed large sums of money to the poor. Zeyri, however, after the loss of his capital, retired to Tihart, where he spent some time; but, not considering himself secure, even in that remote spot, he went still further [to Ashir, in the country of the Senhájah], where he died in the year 391 (beginning Nov. 30, A.D. 1000). Zeyri was succeeded by his son Al-mu'izz, who hastened to make his submission to Al-mansur; upon which the Hajib, being pleased to pardon his father's offence, gave him possession of his family dominions on condition that he should acknowledge himself the vassal of the Khalif Hishám, and should yearly remit to Cordova a certain stipulated tribute. Al-mu'izz did so; and remained faithful to the Beni Umeyyah until the overthrow of their empire by the Sultáns of the race of 'Alí Ibn Abí Tálib.

Whilst the events above related were passing in Africa, Al-mansur was prosecuting his success against the Christians of Andalus. In the year 375 (beginning May 23, A.D. 985,) he made an incursion into the country of the Galicians, and took by storm one of their most populous and best-fortified cities. Some time after, he overran and wasted the districts of Alava and Pamplona, and in the ensuing year he took and destroyed the city of Zamora. We should
never have done, were we to enumerate all the expeditions undertaken by Al-
mansúr to chastise the rebellious Christians of Andalus, and to establish among
them the supremacy of Islám. Suffice it to say, that during the long period
of his administration, he never failed to conduct his army twice every year, either
against the Franks or against the Galicians; and that in all his campaigns, which
appear to have been fifty-two in number, God Almighty was pleased to grant victory
to his arms, and to send down confusion and disappointment on the obdurate
unbelievers. We cannot, however, dismiss this interesting subject without transcribing
from the work of Ibnu Hayyán his account of Al-mansúr's fiftieth expedition
into the land of the infidels, which ended in the taking and destruction of their
capital, as it will afford our readers an idea of the march and arrangements of
Al-mansúr's armies, and the prosperous issue of all his military undertakings.

"Shant Yakoh (Santiago) is a city in the most remote part of Galicia, and
"one of the sanctuaries most frequented, not only by the Christians of Andalus,
"but by the inhabitants of the neighbouring continent, who regard its church
"with veneration equal to that which the Moslems entertain for the Ka'bah at
"Mekkah; for their Ka'bah is a colossal idol (statue) which they have in the
"centre of the church. They swear by it, and repair to it in pilgrimage from
"the most distant parts, from Rome as well as from other countries beyond [that
"city]; pretending that the tomb, which is to be seen within the church, is that
"of Yá'kob 48 (James), one of the twelve apostles, and the most beloved by 'Isla
"(Jesus). May the blessing of God and salutation be on him and on our Prophet!
"The Christians call this Yá'kob (a word which in their language means Ya'kúb)
"the brother of Jesus, because, while he lived, he was always with him. They say
"that he was Bishop of Jerusalem, and that he wandered over the earth preaching
"the religion [of Christ], and calling upon the inhabitants to embrace it, until
"he came to that remote corner of Andalus; that he then returned to Syria, where
"he died at the age of one hundred and twenty solar years. They pretend likewise
"that after the death of Yá'kob his disciples carried his body and buried it in that
"church, as the most remote part where he had left traces [of his preaching].
"None of the Moslem sovereigns [who preceded Al-mansúr] had ever thought
"of penetrating as far as that city, or reducing it under the sway of Islám, owing
"to its inaccessible position, the strength of the spot on which it is situated, and
"the many dangers to be encountered on the road to it. The undertaking was
"reserved for Al-mansúr.

"That general left Cordova in the summer of the year 387, on Saturday, the
"23rd of Jumáda-l-akhar (July 3, A.D. 997), this being his forty-eighth expedition against the unbelievers. Al-mansúr entered the enemy's territory by

VOL. II. 2 c
the city of Kúriah (Coria). On his arrival at the city [capital] of Galicia ⁵⁰ he "was met by a considerable number of the Christian counts, who acknowledged "his authority, with their respective forces, all mounted and equipped [for war]. "Having joined the Moslem troops, all together crossed the Christian frontier. "Al-mansúr had previously given orders that a considerable fleet, well manned "with experienced mariners, and having a body of infantry on board, should "be fitted out at a port of the western coast of Andalus, called Kasr Abí Dánis.⁵¹ "He had also caused provisions, arms, and every kind of military stores [for "the use of his army] to be put on board as evidence of his foresight in military "affairs. Following his instructions, the fleet sailed along the coast to a port "called Bortokal (Oporto) at the mouth of the river Dúroh (Duero), which it "ascended to the spot where Al-mansúr intended to cross over to the opposite "bank. There the fleet cast anchor, opposite to a fortress situated [on the right "bank]. A bridge was then constructed with the vessels, by means of which "the troops crossed over [to the other bank]; and having been plentifully supplied "with the provisions on board the fleet, they prosecuted their march into the "enemy's country. Thence the army directed its course to Santiago, traversing "extensive districts, and crossing large rivers and deep estuaries, into which the "green sea [Atlantic Ocean] pours its tides. The army then spread itself over "the rich plains and well-cultivated districts of Fortárish ⁵² and the neighbouring "country. They then came to a high inaccessible mountain to which there "was no approach or path, and the sides of which were so precipitous that the "guides [confessed] they had never seen the like of it; but by the command "of Al-mansúr the pickaxe was employed upon the rock, and after much exertion "and labour a passage was opened sufficiently large to allow the army to pass "through it. The Moslems, however, were amply rewarded for their fatigues "on this occasion; for no sooner had they passed that range of mountains and "crossed a river called Wáda-Minoh (Miño) than they found themselves among "wide-spread plains and well-cultivated lands, through which they arrived at a "monastery called Deyr Kasán,⁵³ then at the valley of Balanbu ⁵⁴ upon the shores "of the ocean, and next at the fortress of Shant Beláy (Sanpaya), which last "was taken and plundered of every valuable. From this place the army crossed "over to a neighbouring island on the ocean, where a great number of the "population of the districts attacked had taken refuge; but the Moslems took "all those who were on the island prisoners. Thence the army went to the "mountain of Morasiah, which is surrounded on most sides by the ocean, and "having traversed it in all directions, expelled all those who were on it, and "collected considerable spoil. After this the Moslems crossed two estuaries of
the sea by certain fords which their guides pointed out to them; and having
also crossed the river Ulah (Ulla), found themselves in the midst of rich
extensive plains, well cultivated and filled with inhabitants. Thence the army
went to a place where there was a church dedicated to St. James. This
sanctuary is held in great estimation by pious Christians, who look upon it
as second only in sanctity to the church where the tomb is kept, and repair
to it from the most remote parts [of Christendom], from Nubia, from the land
of the Kobts, and other distant countries. This place the Moslems completely
destroyed.

The next march brought the army to Santiago, the doomed city. This was
taken on Wednesday, the second day of the month of Sha'bán (Aug. 10, A. D. of Santiago.
997). The Moslems found the city deserted; they took all the spoil which could
be found, destroyed the public buildings and fortifications, and razed its church
to the ground: the tomb only of St. James was preserved, Al-mansúr having
appointed people to take care of it, and prevent any profanation. All the public
buildings [of Santiago] were very solid and of wonderful structure; yet they
were so completely destroyed, that nobody could have imagined [to see the flat
surface] that they had stood there only the day before.

After wasting the neighbouring country the army arrived at the island
(peninsula) of Shant Mánikas (San Cosme de Mayança), where that region
terminates abruptly upon the ocean, a spot which no Moslem had ever reached
before, and which no human foot had trodden except that of its native inhabitants.

There being no land to be seen beyond that island where the horses could move,
Al-mansúr ordered a retreat, after having penetrated where no Moslem had
ever been before him. Passing again by Santiago he directed his march to
the country occupied by Beremund Ibn Ordhún (Bermudo, son of Ordoño,) with
a view to the destruction and wasting of his territory. Having in this way
arrived at the districts of the allied counts who were in his army, he ordered
his soldiers to desist from further ravages, and passing rapidly through their
territory, arrived at a castle called Beliko, which he had reduced [on a former
occasion]. Having there assembled the Christian counts who had assisted
in the enterprise, he rewarded each man according to his rank, distributing
dresses of honour among them and their followers; after which he dismissed
them to their respective countries. In this campaign Al-mansúr gave away
to the Christian princes and others who had shown themselves the friends of
the Moslems, two thousand two hundred and eighty-five pieces of the silken
stuff called tirást, of various colours and patterns; twenty-one dresses of seal-
skin; two dresses of the stuff called anbar; eleven of scarlet cloth; fifteen
"marshät; seven horse-cloths made of brocade; two dresses of the same stuff manufactured in Greece; and two others lined 58 with weasel-skin.

"From Beliko Al-mansúr dispatched messengers to Cordova with letters, in which he informed [the people] of the conquests he had achieved, the victories he had gained, and the immense spoil which the Moslems under his orders had taken from the infidels. The whole of the army then reached Cordova loaded with plunder, after experiencing [during the whole campaign] the favours and protection of the Almighty. They say that the Moslems found no living soul at Santiago except an old monk who was sitting on the tomb of St. James.

"Being interrogated by Al-mansúr as to himself and what he was doing in that spot, he answered, 'I am a familiar of St. James;' upon which Al-mansúr ordered that no harm should be done unto him. It is also related that Al-mansúr ordered the bells of the church to be removed to Cordova on the shoulders of Christian captives, to be suspended [as lamps] from the ceiling of the great mosque, to which a considerable addition was then being built by his orders.'

But we have already recorded the fact in our description of that capital.

We have elsewhere slightly alluded to the state of confinement and seclusion in which Al-mansúr kept his sovereign Hishám. Indeed all contemporary historians relate that his person was so carefully concealed from the sight of the public, that many of his subjects never saw him once during their lives. It is true that now and then Hishám would ride out with some of his women to some garden or pleasure-house [in the neighbourhood of Cordova]; but on such occasions he and his women were covered with bornuses, which concealed their figures and prevented their being recognised by the people passing: a numerous escort, moreover, cleared the road by which they had to pass. In this manner Hishám reached the place of his destination, and, after spending some hours there, was conducted back to his palace with equal care and secrecy. If Al-mansúr was absent from Cordova on some military expedition, he took care to appoint confidential people, who saw his orders executed and kept a vigilant eye over Hishám, taking care that none of his subjects should see him or approach him on any consideration. However, towards the close of his administration, Al-mansúr relaxed a little in his conduct; for, hearing that the people of Cordova, most of whom had never seen Hishám, murmured at his confinement, and even gave out that he had put him to death, he produced him in public, and rode that celebrated cavalcade, to witness which an innumerable concourse of people left their dwellings. Hishám rode out ornamented with all the insignia of the Khalifate, whilst Al-mansúr walked before him with a rod in his hand, leading his master's steed by the bridle. In this manner they paraded the principal streets
of Cordova, and the eyes of the people feasted on what had so long been concealed from them.

By this and other contrivances Al-mansur managed to concentrate in himself all the power of the state, and to usurp the inheritance of the Bení Umeyyah. Fearing lest the members of that royal family should revolt against him or oppose the execution of his ambitious designs, he secretly dispatched, under various pretences, all those who stood nearest to the throne, or who seemed more dangerous to him, and the remainder he exiled to the provinces, obliging them to hide themselves in obscure and retired cells, and to exchange the splendour and magnificence of their convivial halls for a life of misery and privation in lonely woods and dreary deserts. Alluding to this rapid change of fortune, a poet has said—

"O sons of Umeyyah! where are now your [princes shining like] full moons in the dark night? where are your constellations? where your stars?

"Your lions were absent from their native forests when this usurper seized on your empire." 59

In the month of Safar, A. H. 392 (Jan. A.D. 1002), Al-mansur prepared to invade for the fifty-second time the country of the infidels, intending to direct his attacks on the side of Kashtelah (Castile). Having summoned from Africa a considerable body of troops, which met him at Toledo, he reached the banks of the Dúroh (Duero), in the neighbourhood of which he committed great ravages and depredations. Having thence ascended the river, he penetrated into the dominions of the Count of Castile (Sancho Garcez), whom he found encamped near a castle called Kal’at An-nosor (the castle of the eagles), with innumerable troops collected from the neighbouring Christian kingdoms. Al-mansur attacked and defeated him with great loss. 60

On his return from this expedition Al-mansur was seized by an acute disorder, Death of which caused his death. He, nevertheless, continued to wage war against the infidels, and to waste their territory, until, his disease increasing, he was placed in a wooden litter, on soft cushions, and covered with an awning and curtains. In this manner he was carried on the shoulders of his men, surrounded by his troops, until he arrived at Medínah Sélim (Medinaceli). His physicians being greatly divided as to the nature of his complaint, it naturally aggravated until his life was despaired of. He used to say, "I leave behind me twenty thousand clients, all of whom are happy and contented; may they to-morrow have no worse master than myself!" Perhaps he meant that twenty thousand warriors attended him on that expedition; but, according to all accounts, the armies of Andalus in his time amounted to a much greater number, since he is said to have
once passed in review on the plain of Cordova upwards of six hundred thousand men; and a contemporary historian relates that at the time of the expedition into Galicia, which terminated in the taking of Astorga and Leon, the invading army consisted of twelve thousand mounted Africans, five thousand Andalusians, and forty thousand infantry, besides an immense number of volunteers, who joined the expedition, and flocked under the banners of Al-mansür for the purpose of participating in the rewards awaiting the Moslems who fight for the extension of the true religion. But to return.

In his last moments Al-mansür showed great solicitude for the future destinies of Cordova, and it is added that he began to weep, and expressed himself as if he feared the immediate dissolution of the empire he had so powerfully extended and strengthened. Some time before his death he sent for his son 'Abdu-l-malek and some of his most confidential friends, and instructed them respectively [as to the management of the government after his death]. He then desired to be left alone with his son, to whom he repeated such instructions as he had already given him in the presence of the others. Whenever 'Abdu-l-malek offered, with tears in his eyes, to quit the room, that his father might take some rest, Al-mansür retained him, and insisted upon his remaining. Then observing tears on his countenance, Al-mansür reproached him with his want of courage, saying, "This is to me the first signal of the approaching decay [of this empire]." He ordered him to give the command of the troops to his brother 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and expired on Monday, the 25th of Ramadhán of the year 392 (Aug. 7, A. D. 1002), at the age of sixty-five, as he was born in the year 327 (Oct. 28, A. D. 938), or the year of Al-handik ('Aму-l-handik), as it was called by the people of Andalus, owing to the disastrous battle of that name fought under the walls of Zamora between the Christians and the Moslems.
BOOK VII.

CHAP. I.

State of literature under Hisham II.—Arrivals in Cordova—Notice of Sá'id Al-laghúwi—Anecdotes respecting Al-mansúr—His love of justice—His attention to business—His wisdom and sagacity—His experience in military affairs—Other anecdotes of Al-mansúr—Buildings erected by him.

It has been remarked, that after the death of Al-mansúr the Mohammedan empire in Andalus began to give visible signs of decay: the Christians, who during the administration of that victorious Hájib had been almost reduced to the condition of slaves, put aside all their former fears, and, assailing the Moslem territory on all sides with the greatest fury, aimed many mortal blows against the sinking body of Islám. Although the valiant Almoravides, and the still more brave Almohades, stayed for some time the ruin of the common cause, yet their splendid victories were of no avail; and scarcely two centuries had elapsed since the death of Al-mansúr, when Toledo, Saragossa, Valencia, Cordova, Seville, and other important cities, which had once proved so many impregnable bulwarks, fell one by one into the hands of the enemy of God, and prepared the way for the final subjugation of the peninsula by the insolent and accursed Christians. (May the Almighty destroy them all!)

Before we proceed to give an account of the heart-rending calamities by which the Moslems of Andalus were afflicted; of the interminable feuds and sanguinary civil wars in which the petty rulers of that country became constantly engaged one against another; of their frequent revolts against their rulers; of the dastardly cowardice of some, and the overweening ambition of others; of their contempt of all divine and civil laws; of their enormous sins, which accelerated the ruin of our empire in Andalus;—we think it opportune to bring before our readers a few more extracts respecting the reign of Hishám and the administration of his enlightened and never-vanquished Hájib, Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir Al-mansúr.
During the reign of Hisham II., and under the administration of Al-mansur, literature and the sciences flourished in Cordova. Even the Sclavonian eunuchs of the palace cultivated it with the greatest success; and Ibnu Hayyán has preserved the names of several who distinguished themselves by their productions in various kinds of literature. One of them was Fátin, who had not his equal in the knowledge of the Arabic language, and at whose death in 420 (A. D. 1029), a splendid collection of valuable books was sold. A Sclavonian named Habib is said also to have written a work entitled “clear proofs and victorious arguments [in favour] of the excellences of the Sclavonic race,” 1 in which he introduced all manner of entertaining anecdotes, history, and verses of the Sclavonians. Ibn Joljol wrote his history of the Andalusian physicians, and 'Obádah Ibn Mái-s-semá that of the Andalusian poets. Abú-l-mugheyráh Ibn Hazm, who was a Wizír of Al-mansur, Abú-l-walíd Ibnu-l-faradhí, Ibn Sahlíin, Ibnu-d-dabbágh, Ibn Jesús, Abú 'Abdah Hasan Al-laghúwi, and Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr, wrote each a history of his own times. Az-zubeydí wrote the lives of celebrated grammarians who were natives of Andalus, as well as those of eminent lawyers and theologians; and Ahmed At-talamankí those of all the historians, with the titles of their works, &c. We forbear mentioning the poets, theologians, orators, and rhetoricians who flourished under this reign, for they were as numerous as the sands of the ocean.

Many men, too, distinguished by their talents or renowned for their proficiency in some department of science or literature, visited Andalus under this reign, and were induced, through the liberality of Al-mansur, to fix their residence in Cordova. In their number were Ahmed Ibn 'Alí, a native of Baghódád, 'Abdulláh Ibn Ibráhíim, Abú Bekr Al-azrák, Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhíd Az-zubeyrí, surnamed Abú-l-barakát, a native of Mekka, Ahmed Ibn Fadhí Ad-dinawári, and others, who settled in the capital and became celebrated by their writings. 2

Among the most celebrated was Abú 'Alí 3 Sá'id Ibnu-l-huséyn Ibn 'Isa Ar-raba'i, surnamed Al-laghúwi (the philologist), who was a native of Baghódád, but originally from Maussal. Ibn Bessám says that Al-mansur, having heard of his talents for poetry, sent for him and invited him to Cordova, imagining that he would eclipse the fame of the celebrated poet Abú 'Alí Al-kálí, who, as before related, came from Baghódád during the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir. “But Al-“mansúr,” continues Ibn Bessám, “found nothing in Sá'id to justify the high “opinion which he had formed of him; and, moreover, the learned men of “Cordova became his enemies, and spoke in the worst possible terms of him, “of his learning, understanding, and religion. They called him a liar and an “impostor, and they would neither receive traditional information of any sort “from him, nor give credit to his words. When he composed his Fossúss (the
“book of gems), they criticised the work, and threw it, out of contempt, into the "river.” It is true that, if we are to believe the authors of that time, Sá’id was more remarkable for his quickness at repartee, and his facility in composing verses extempore, than either for his learning or his veracity, as the following anecdote will show. One day as Al-mansúr was sitting in his hall surrounded by the highest functionaries of his court and empire, and by all the men of his court eminent for their learning, as Az-zubeydí (Abú Bekr Mohammed), Al-láśsemí, Ibnú-l-’aríf, and others, he said to them, “Here is a man lately come among us “who pretends to be better informed [than any man in Cordova] in these sciences, “and I wish to put him to the test.” He accordingly sent for him, and Abú ’Alí came and prostrated himself before him, and was struck with awe and astonishment at the numerous assembly. Al-mansúr then rose from his couch, and advancing towards him, asked him about Abú Sa’íd As-širáfí, a learned man whom Abú ’Alí pretended to have met in his travels, and to have read under his direction the book of Sibaúyeh. Agreeably to the instructions of Al-mansúr, Al-láśsemí began to interrogate Sá’id about that work, and to put to him several questions respecting the science of grammar; but Sá’id answered not a single one, alleging as an excuse that grammar was not his favourite study: upon which Az-zubeydí said to him, “Will the Sheikh let us know that in which he is most versed, “that we may try his powers?”—“Philology,” answered Sá’id. “Very well,” replied Az-zubeydí; “tell us then what is the measure of aulak.” Upon which Sá’id burst out laughing and said, “Is it to one like me that thou puttest “such a question? Thou hadst better ask a school-boy.”—“That may be,” said Az-zubeydí, “but, such as it is, I am sure thou canst not answer it.” Sá’id’s countenance suddenly changed, and he remained for some time silent; at last he said, “The measure of aulak is af’al.”—“It is not,” said Az-zubeydí; “and “if thy master told thee that, he told thee a most egregious lie.”—“How is that? “does the Sheikh find fault with my derivation?”—“Yes, I do,” replied Az- 

zubeydí. “Well then,” said Sá’id, “it is not to be wondered at, for my principal “strength lies in knowing verses and history by heart, in explaining enigmatic “sentences, and in the science of music.” Sá’id was next attacked by Ibnú-l-’aríf, who disputed some time with him: but the former came off victorious; for scarcely was there a word uttered in the assembly, but Sá’id immediately replied with a quotation in verse, or with some anecdote in illustration of it,—a performance which struck Al-mansúr with amazement. He then showed him the Kitdbu-n-

nawddir, which Abú ’Alí Al-kálí wrote in praise of the Bení Umeyyah, which, being examined by Sá’id, he said to Al-mansúr, “If thou givest me permission, “I will compose a book in thy praise that shall be more valuable than this; I
"say more, I will not touch upon any of the subjects treated by Abú 'Alí." The permission being granted, Sá'íd retired to the jāmi' or principal mosque in the city of Az-záhirah, and wrote his work entitled Al-fossús (the gems). No sooner had he completed it and presented it to Al-mansúr, than the learned men of Cordova, who were all anxious to see how Sá'íd had treated the subject, immediately procured copies of it. What was their astonishment to find upon perusal that not one word or quotation in the book was true, and that no story [of those mentioned] could be traced to a source known to them! They therefore agreed unanimously to expose Sá'íd's impudence, and make his ignorance public to the world. They requested Al-mansúr to have some quires of white paper bound together, so as to present the appearance of a written volume, with the following title, Kitábu-n-nekat (the book of lies); its author Abú-l-ghauth, of San'á. The book was then placed in a spot where Sá'íd might see it when he entered the hall. The stratagem succeeded completely: no sooner had Sá'íd cast his eyes on the volume than he exclaimed, "I know this work well; I read it in such "a country, under the direction of such a Sheikh." Al-mansúr then took the volume into his hands, for fear that Sá'íd should open it and find out the stratagem, and said to him, "Well, then, since thou hast read it, tell us of its "contents."—"It is so long since I perused it, that I am afraid I do not recollect "any portion of it, however small; but this I can say, that it is composed of "detached pieces without either poetry or anecdotes."—"Leave my presence "immediately," said Al-mansúr; "I never saw a greater liar than thou. May "God free me from men of thy stamp!" He then commanded that Sá'íd should be sent out of the room, and his book thrown into the river, as was done.

It was in allusion to this occurrence that one of the poets of Cordova said—

"The book of the gems is now engulphed in the river; may all bad books "meet with a similar fate!"

To which Sá'íd replied in the following verse:

"The gems have returned to their mines, for in the bottom of the sea the "gems are found." 6

Ibn Khallekán relates that Al-mansúr had given Sá'íd five thousand dinárs 7 for the composition of that work.

With all Sá'íd's impudence, and his utter disregard of those qualities which ought to ornament a good poet, he nevertheless was at times extremely happy in his ideas, and no other poet of his time surpassed him in facility of extempore composition. The author of the Bedáya'-l-bedáyat (admirable beginnings) 8 relates that Sá'íd once attended a drinking-party at the house of one of his friends. When it came to his turn to drink, the page who poured out the wine filled Sá'íd's cup out of a jar which he held in his hand. One of the company observing at the
mouth of the jar a drop of wine, which remained fixed to it, begged Sā'īd to describe it in verse; and he said, without the least hesitation,—

"When the fragrancy of the garden reaches us, it puts us in mind of the "sweet-smelling musk:

"So does this jar of ours, with the wine in its mouth; it reminds us of a "bird carrying a ruby in its bill."  

Among the extraordinary anecdotes related of Sā'īd, the following is one. Upon one occasion, as Al-mansūr was sitting in his hall, a man came in and presented him with a beautiful rose-bud out of season; upon which Sā'īd, who was in the room at the time, said extemporaneously:

"O Abū 'A'mir! The rose just presented to thee will put thee in mind of "sweet-smelling musk. See how it hides its head within its calyx, as the timid virgin [hides her "face behind her veil] to avoid the look of a stranger."

Al-mansūr was delighted with these verses; but Ibnu-l-'arīf, who was also in the room, and hated Sā'īd most intensely, and was always endeavouring to do him all the harm possible, went up to Al-mansūr and said to him, "Those two verses "are not the composition of Sā'īd. I have seen them attributed to a poet of "Baghdād who resided in Cairo; and, what is more, I have them at home on "the fly-leaf of a book, and in the handwriting of the author himself." Al-
mansūr having expressed a wish to see them, Ibnu-l-'arīf left the room, mounted a horse, and hastened to the dwelling of a poet named Ibn Bedr, one of the quickest men of his time in composing poetry. Having told him his adventure, he requested him to write a poem in which he might intercalate the two verses delivered by Sā'īd. Ibn Bedr, who, like most of the Cordovan poets, was exceedingly envious of Sā'īd, immediately complied with his request, and gave him the following lines, which he hastened to produce before Al-mansūr:

"I went one night to the palace of 'Abbāsah, when sleep had overpowering "her guards.

"I found her reclining on her nuptial couch, her energies prostrated by the "intoxicating liquor.

"She said, 'Art thou come to me at the first sleep?' I answered, 'Nay, '

"and she threw down her cup.

"And she stretched her hand to a rose, the odour of which thou mightest "compare to sweet-smelling musk;

"A rose hiding its head within its calyx, as the timid virgin [hides her "face behind her veil] to avoid the look of a stranger.

"She then said, 'Fear God, and do not insult thy cousin 'Abbāsah.'
And, turning away from her, I retired carelessly, leaving her disappointed and myself too."  

Ibnu-l-'arif took the verses and pasted them on the back of a book written in the Egyptian hand, with the capitals and heads of chapters in red ink; he hastened with it to the presence of Al-mansûr, who was waiting with the greatest impatience. No sooner had he perused the verses than his indignation was roused to the highest pitch, and he exclaimed, "To-morrow we will summon Sâ'id to our presence; and, unless he gives us a satisfactory answer to this charge, he shall be banished the country." On the ensuing morning Al-mansûr sent for Sâ'id, who, in obedience to his summons, hastened to the palace. He found Al-mansûr's hall thronged with courtiers and other persons who had been expressly invited for the occasion. In the middle of the hall a large tray, containing compartments ornamented with every variety of elegant design, had been placed by order of Al-mansûr. On the roof of the compartments were toys of jasmine made in imitation of females, and under the roof a reservoir of transparent water, the bottom of which was paved with pearls instead of common pebbles; in the water was a snake swimming. When Sâ'id entered the hall and had seen all these curiosities, Al-mansûr said to him, "This day thou must either rejoice and be happy with us, or else thou must be miserable whilst we are rejoicing. There are people in this room who pretend that none of the verses thou recitest are thy own composition, and certainly we have a proof that this is true with regard to some. Look at that tray, the like of which, I assert, was never placed before any other king but me." He then proceeded to enumerate every one of the curiosities that were on it, and continued: "If the charge brought against thee be false, prove it by describing to me in verse both the tray and its contents." Sâ'id immediately said—

"O Abû 'A'mir! are not thy benefits always flowing, and thy enemies on earth always fearing?

"[And why should they not] when the age brings thee every novelty, and presents thee with more wonders than can [easily] be described?

"Here are the flowers which a fertilizing shower engendered, and the stocks of which are covered with fringes of yellow and bright green;

"Which, to complete their beauty, have female slaves standing opposite [to them] with a variety of musical instruments in their hands;

"Seeking shelter under the roofs of jasmine, as the gazelle looks for a shadowy spot [among the trees].

"But that most to be wondered at is, that the maids are looking over a lake enfolding every beauty;
"At the bottom of which are pearls instead of pebbles, and in the waters of which sports a poisonous, painted snake.

"Cast thy eyes around; thou wilt see its shores filled with animals, among which the turtle is one." 14

Such a composition, and in such a spot, at once established Sá'íd's reputation as an extempore poet. Al-mansúr was exceedingly pleased with the verses, which he immediately wrote down himself, for fear he should forget them. There was, however, among the curiosities in the tray, one which Sá'íd had not noticed; it was a ship, in which was a maiden rowing herself with oars of gold. Al-mansúr therefore said to him, "Very well, Sá'íd; I am pleased with thy verses, only thou hast forgotten to mention the ship with the maid inside." Upon which Sá'íd said immediately—

"But what is most to be admired is the crowned maiden in the vessel, whose beauty no tongue can describe.

"If the waves rock her vessel, she fears for her anchor, and dreads the high winds, precursors [of the storm].

"Beauty itself is the pilot of this vessel; holding in her right hand the oar to direct her with.

"Certainly we never saw before this a palm-grove despoil itself of its trees to place them in the hands of maidens.

"No wonder if the upper regions [of thy throne] surpass a garden [in verdure], and are spread with glittering gold and myriads of flowers.

"For thou art a man who has no sooner formed a wish than the necks are stretched out [to accomplish it]; and benevolence itself trembles for fear of thy displeasure.

"If I utter a sentence or pronounce an extempore speech, what else is it for, but to sing thy praises?" 15

So pleased was Al-mansúr with the above two compositions, that he ordered to be given to Sá'íd one thousand dinárs and one hundred dresses; he assigned him, besides, a pension of thirty gold dinárs per month on his treasury, and made him one of his common guests. We have already said that Sá'íd was celebrated above all things for his quickness and facility for inventing lies. Al-mansúr having once asked him what the khanboshár was, he answered immediately, "The khanboshár is a plant which the Arabs of the desert use for thickening their milk.

In allusion to it an ancient poet has said—

'The love of her lies as heavily on my heart, as the khanboshár adheres to the new milk.'" 16

We might multiply the examples of the astonishing facility with which Sá'íd
extricated himself from any difficulty, whenever he was asked what he did not know, but we will abstain for the sake of brevity, and will only cite the following instance of extraordinary coincidence.

Having upon one occasion presented Al-mansúr with a live stag, he wrote by the bearer an elegant kassidah, of which the following detached verses are an extract:

"O refuge of the terrified, asylum of the persecuted, comfort to the vilified!

A slave [of thine], whom thou didst take by the hand, and didst raise from his station, presents thee with a stag."

"I named it Garsiah, and I send it to thee [with a rope round its neck], that the same may happen with its namesake [the Christian king]." 

"Shouldst thou accept [this my present], I would consider it as the greatest favour that a generous man can bestow.'" 17

Now it happened, in conformity with the decrees of the Almighty, that on the very day in which Sá'íd presented the stag to Al-mansúr and named it Garsiah (Garcia), as a good omen, the Christian king of that name (Garci-Fernandez, Count of Castile) was taken prisoner by the Moslems. As Garsiah was one day hunting, he fell in with a party of Al-mansúr's cavalry, who surrounded him, made him prisoner with all his suite, and conveyed him to Cordova. Al-mansúr was so much struck by that coincidence of fate, and moreover was so much pleased with Sá'íd's verses, that he granted him a greater share of his favour than he had ever possessed before, and from that day always defended him against the accusations of his enemies. As a proof of the great favour which Sá'íd enjoyed with Al-mansúr, we shall here transcribe an anecdote borrowed from a history of that Hújib, entitled Al-azháru-l-manthárah fi-l-akhbári-l-máthárah (scattered flowers, or the memorable deeds of Ibn Abí 'A'mir). At the twenty-eighth flower (or chapter) of that work we read as follows: "One day Sá'íd collected together all the rags and tatters of the dresses which Al-mansúr had at different times given him, and having sent for his black slave Káfúr, he directed him to have a shirt made of them, as if it were patch-work." 18 When the shirt was made to fit him, says Sá'íd, "I bade Káfúr accompany me one morning to the palace of Al-mansúr at an early hour. Having been introduced to his presence, I remained with him some time, until, seeing him in good humour, I said to him, 'My Lord! thy slave has a
"request to make."—'State it,' answered Al-mansúr. 'I wish for permission "to introduce here my slave Káfúr.'—'Is it to be now immediately?' replied "Al-mansúr, and he added, 'hast thou nothing more to ask for?'—'No, I have "no other request to make, except that he be admitted to thy presence.'—'Well, "let it be so,' said Al-mansúr; and he accordingly ordered his guards to introduce "the black slave into the room. Soon after Káfúr made his appearance, accoutred, "as before stated, in a shirt made of patch-work. He being as tall and supple as "a young palm-tree, the sight was exceedingly ludicrous. Seeing him enter the "room, Al-mansúr said, 'Here comes the master of beauty and the king of rags. "Pray what is the meaning of all this?' Upon which I answered, 'Let the sight "of my slave be my answer, and know, O my Lord, that thou gavest me this day "the skin of Káfúr full of money.' Al-mansúr smiled, and said, 'May God "prosper those [who like thee] plunge into the depths of enigmatic speech to "return thanks for a favour!' After which he ordered me a considerable sum "of money and a handsome dress, and gave also a very fine dress to Káfúr.'"

But since we have touched upon the history of Al-mansúr, we will not proceed any further without transcribing for the use of our readers the most remarkable anecdotes of his generosity, worldly wisdom, courage, and justice.

The story of Mohammed, the bleeder of Al-mansúr:—

Al-mansúr, desiring once to be bled, sent for his bleeder, Mohammed, who was at the same time his servant and his confidant. The messenger repaired immediately to the dwelling of Mohammed; but not finding him at home, he ascertained upon inquiry that he had just been confined in prison, on a sentence of the Kádí Mohammed Ibn Rúb, before whom he had been convicted of ill-using his wife; as he thought that his favour with Al-mansúr would save him from the punishment he deserved. The messenger then returned, and apprised Al-mansúr of the circumstance, who ordered that the bleeder should be released and brought to his presence, under the custody of one of the guards of the prison, and that, after performing the operation, he should again return to prison. His orders were punctually executed. Mohammed was brought to his presence, and after bleeding his master, as desired, was again marched out to prison. They say that as he was going out of the room, the bleeder began to expostulate; but Al-mansúr stopping him short, said to him, 'No, Mohammed! he is the judge, and, if he be right "in his judgment, it is not in our power to resist his authority or oppose his "sentence: thou art now entirely in his power.' Mohammed returned accordingly to his prison; but, soon after, the Kádí, hearing of the circumstance, managed a reconciliation between him and his wife, and he was set at liberty in consequence.

The following anecdote has been preserved on the authority of Sho'alah. I said...
one night to Al-mansúr, perceiving that he was watching, "I am afraid that my lord sits up too much at night, and that his body wants more sleep and rest than is allowed to it; and yet no one is better acquainted than he is with the ill effects produced by want of proper rest upon the nerves." He replied, "O Sho'alah, kings should never sleep whilst their subjects are at rest; for if I were to have my full sleep, there would be in the whole of this metropolis nothing but sleepers."

In illustration of this, an Andalusian writer has preserved the following anecdote. Al-mansúr was one night sitting [in his audience-room]; it was a dreadful night, the rain came down in torrents, the wind was high, and it was piercing cold besides. All of a sudden, Al-mansúr sent for one of the horsemen of his guard, and said to him, "Go down to Fej-Talayáresh (Tallares) and stop there until thou seest a person pass; seize him, whoever he may be, and bring him hither instantly." The horseman did as he was commanded; he rode to the spot which had been pointed out to him, and waited there nearly all night on his horse in the midst of the cold, rain, and wind, without seeing a single creature whom he might seize and convey to his master, as he had been directed. At last, a little before the dawn of day, and just as the horseman was thinking whether he should not return to the palace and report the non-success of his expedition, a very old man, bent by age, made his appearance, mounted on an ass, and having an axe by his side. "Where art thou going to, my good old man?" said the soldier to him. "I am going to the forest to cut some wood." Surely, thought the soldier to himself, this cannot be the man whom Al-mansúr wishes to see; he is only a wood-cutter going to cut some wood, I shall let him go. He therefore allowed him to pass on; but scarcely had the old man gone a little way, than the soldier recollected Al-mansúr's order, and dreading his vengeance, rode up to him, and desired him to turn round, and go with him to the presence of Al-mansúr. "And what can Al-mansúr want with a poor old man like myself? Pray let me go, and do not hinder me from earning my livelihood. I entreat thee, in the name of Allah, not to detain me."—"I cannot grant thy request," replied the soldier; "my master's orders must needs be obeyed; thou must come along with me." The soldier and his prisoner then proceeded together to the palace, and were immediately introduced to the presence of Al-mansúr, whom they found sitting in his hall, where he had been waiting all night, without retiring to rest. No sooner had he cast his eyes on the old man, than he said to the Sclavonians of his guard, "Search him!" The person of the old man was accordingly searched, but nothing was found on him. "Search then the pack-saddle of his ass," said Al-mansúr impatiently. This was done as he commanded; when, behold!
there was found concealed in the lining a letter from certain Christians, who
were then employed in his service, to their friends, engaging them to make an
incursion into the Moslem territory, and attack certain districts that were not
well defended. The ensuing day an order came down from Al-mansúr for the
arrest of the guilty parties, who, together with the bearer of their message, were
by his orders taken outside the gate of Az-záhirah, and there beheaded.

An eastern merchant, who traded in jewels, once came to Cordova from 'Aden,
a city in Arabia. Having repaired to Az-záhirah, where Al-mansúr was residing
at the time, he asked leave to see him, and, being admitted to his presence, he
forthwith proceeded to display before him all sorts of precious stones, of great
value, which he had with him. Al-mansúr having taken those which he liked
the most, caused the price of the jewels to be paid to the merchant, who, leaving
his presence, returned by the same road he had come, taking with him the money
which he had just received and which he stored in a bag made of a certain stuff
manufactured in Yemen for fine carpets. The road which the merchant had to
traverse was a sandy plain, stretching along the banks of the river: the day was
a hot one, and the sun was high, so that, after travelling some distance, he felt
an inclination to bathe in the river. He accordingly took off his clothes, and,
having placed his bag of money upon them, jumped into the water. Scarcely,
however, had he been in a few minutes, when a kite alighted on the clothes, and
taking the bag for a piece of meat, seized it in its bill and flew away with its prey.
For some time the merchant eagerly followed the thieving bird with his eyes;
but, at last, it disappeared entirely, leaving him in the greatest possible agony
of mind. Seeing, however, that his misfortune had no remedy, he put on his
clothes and went to his dwelling, where the loss which he had just sustained
so much preyed upon his mind as to occasion him a severe illness, through which
he well-nigh lost his life. Upon his recovery the merchant went to see Al-mansúr
a second time for the purpose of showing him other jewels; but he was so altered
in his appearance, and the gloom and sorrow upon his countenance were such,
that the Hájib could not but be struck by it, and he accordingly inquired what
had happened to him; upon which the merchant related to him his adventure.

"Why didst thou not come to us before? we might perchance have told thee
"of a plan to recover thy money or find out the thief. Which way did the kite
"fly?" The merchant answered, "It flew eastwards in the direction of this
"mountain, close to thy palace," meaning the sandy plain. Immediately upon
learning this, Al-mansúr sent for one of his body-guard, and said to him, "Let
"all the old men who live in yonder plain repair immediately hither." His orders
being punctually executed, there soon came before him several respectable old
men, who were the heads of so many families. He then directed them to make
inquiries whether any of the people of the neighbourhood had been observed
suddenly to pass from poverty to affluence, without any well-known cause. The
old men did as they were ordered, and, after investigating the case, returned to
Al-mansûr, and said to him, "We only know of one man in our neighbourhood
who was exceedingly poor some time since [and whose condition is now changed].
"He used to support himself and family entirely by the work of his hands, and
"he and his sons always went on foot [or carried their own loads] for want
"of a beast. We hear that this very day he has bought a nag for himself, besides
"a complete suit of the best materials for each of his sons." Upon this, Al-mansûr
gave orders that the man alluded to should be brought into his presence the next
morning, bidding the merchant to be also ready to appear before him at the
appointed hour. When morning came, the man presented himself to Al-mansûr,
who, upon his entering the room, went straight to him, and in the merchant's
presence addressed him thus: "If any thing which we have lost should have
"fallen into thy hands, what wouldst thou do with it?" Upon which the
man replied instantly, "Here it is, my Lord," and putting his hand into his
trousers' pocket, he took out the very bag which the merchant had lost. At
sight of his lost treasure the merchant shouted with delight, and his joy was so
great that he actually jumped. Al-mansûr then ordered the man to explain
how the circumstance had happened, and he said, "As I was working in my
"orchard under a palm-tree, I saw something drop down a few yards before me.
"I picked it up, and to my great surprise and delight found it to be a handsome
"bag full of money. When I saw it, I thought to myself, I would swear this
"money belongs to our master, Al-mansûr, and that some bird has stolen it from
"his castle and dropped it in his flight in this neighbourhood. I then opened
"the bag, and examined its contents; when my extreme poverty tempted me
"to take ten gold dinârs out of the many which it contained, all the time
"saying to myself, I have no doubt that when my lord Al-mansûr, who is so
"generous, hears of the circumstance, he will not hesitate to give them to me." Great
was Al-mansûr's surprise when he heard the poor man's story. Having
taken the bag from him, he handed it over to the merchant, saying, "Take thy bag
"and count the money; whatever is wanting, thou wilt charge to my account."
The merchant did as he was desired, and, having counted his money, said, "By
"the merits of thy head! there is nothing wanting but the few dinârs he has told
"us of, and those I willingly give up to him from this moment." "No," replied
Al-mansûr, "the priority in this case belongs by right to us, and it is for us
"to reward the man [as he deserves]; we will take nothing from thy joy, it
"must be complete." Saying this, he caused ten dinārs to be given to the merchant instead of the ten wanting, and rewarded the gardener with ten more for his having had the virtue not to appropriate to himself the whole of the sum that fell into his hands. He then said, "Had he confessed [his guilt] before we came "to inquire into it, his reward would have been complete." The merchant then began to praise Al-mansūr, and finding his spirits returned, he exclaimed, "By "Allah! the fame of this deed of thine shall travel the regions of the world; it shall "be said of thee that thou exercisest over the birds of the air the same power "which thou hast over the inhabitants of the land in these thy dominions; there "is no escaping thy will or avoiding thy power." Al-mansūr smiled, and said, "Be moderate in thy expressions, and may God pardon thee!" The assembly then withdrew in utter amazement of Al-mansūr's sagacity in discovering the lost treasure, his readiness to allay the merchant's grief, and the benevolence and forbearance he displayed in the midst of his power.

It is related by Abū Bekr At-tortūshī (from Tortosa),20 who held it from Abū-l-walīd Al-bājī, that as Al-mansūr was once about to cross the frontier and penetrate into the enemy's territory, he ascended to the summit of a hill for the purpose of reconnoitring the neighbouring country. Once at the top, he looked down and saw his troops encamped in the middle of an extensive plain stretching both right and left. Having for a while considered the imposing sight in silence, he turned towards the Mukaddam21 (leader of the van) of his army, whose name was Ibnu-l-mus'hafi, and said to him, "What is thy opinion of an army like that?" —"My opinion is," answered Ibnu-l-mus'hafi, "that it is a well-disciplined and "numerous army."—"I should not be astonished," replied Al-mansūr, "if there "were in an army of that sort one thousand warriors of undaunted courage, and "matchless dexterity in the handling of weapons, capable, in short, of meeting "hand to hand the stoutest champion of the Christians." Ibnu-l-mus'hafi made no reply to the above observation, and kept silence. "Why answerest thou not?" said Al-mansūr to him. "Is there not in my army the number and description "of warriors that I have just named?"—"Certainly there is not," was the officer's reply. Al-mansūr was greatly startled by the answer; yet he said almost immediately, "If there be not that number, at least thou wilt grant that there "are five hundred."—"Not even that number," replied Ibnu-l-mus'hafi. Hearing this, Al-mansūr could hardly suppress his anger. "Wilt thou not grant me one "hundred?"—"Not even fifty," answered Ibnu-l-mus'hafi, with the greatest coolness.—Al-mansūr's indignation could no longer be controlled; he foamed at the mouth with rage, he abused Ibnu-l-mus'hafi, called him an infidel, a traitor, and a coward, and bade him leave his presence immediately, if he valued his head.
Some time after this occurrence a Christian army made its appearance on the plain where the Moslems were encamped, and as Al-mansûr never refused battle whenever it was offered to him by the enemy, he marshalled his troops, and made every preparation for the forthcoming engagement. The Christians, on the other hand, did the same; and the two hosts, having well chosen their ground, divided the extensive plain between them. The two armies were already drawn in line of battle, and the warriors of both nations were waiting only for the signal of their respective commanders to rush upon each other, when, behold! a Christian knight, cased in bright steel, came out from the ranks, and, advancing between the two hosts, began to prance his horse and to brandish his spear, challenging the Moslem warriors to single combat. "Is there any of you," said he, with a terrific voice which resounded through the plain, "who dares to come out?" Presently a Moslem champion sallied out; but, after a few blows were exchanged, he was unhorsed and slain. Great was the joy of the infidel dogs when they saw the Christian knight slay his adversary; their deafening shouts resounded through the air like claps of terrific thunder, whilst the Moslems were dejected and afflicted at the death of their comrade. Elated with success, the Christian knight again rode his steed between the two hosts, and said, "Is there no one to come out and fight me? If your brave men dare not come alone, let two of them, three 'more come out,—I will fight them all.'" Hearing this taunting bravado, another Moslem left the ranks; but alas! he shared the same fate with his companion. "Let three to one come out," cried the Christian with exultation, "one is not 'enough for me.'" A Moslem warrior then presented himself, but he was immediately dispatched like the two preceding ones. Again the infidels rent the air with their exclamations of joy, whilst the Moslems were afflicted and in dismay: a sort of panic fear ran throughout the whole army, which, there can be no doubt, would have been easily defeated, had the Christians then commenced the attack. Meanwhile Al-mansûr was mad with rage, pacing the ground with the greatest inquietude, and not knowing what to do to inspire courage into his dispirited troops. At last he sent for Ibnu-l-mus'hafi, and said to him, "Hast 'thou seen the feats of arms performed by yonder Christian dog?'—"I have," answered Ibnu-l-mus'hafi, "I watched attentively all his movements."—"And 'what is thy advice on this occasion?'—"Explain thy wishes to me," said Al-mus'hafi, "and I will counsel thee to the best of my understanding."—"I wish 'to humble the pride of the Christian, and put a stop to his insulting bravadoes.' "That can only be attained," said Ibnu-l-mus'hafi, "by finding a Moslem who 'will be his superior in courage, strength, and dexterity; but I will see to that.'" Without loss of time Ibnu-l-mus'hafi galloped off to a division of the army where
he knew of some warriors renowned for their former exploits, and, having communicated to them the wishes of their general, a young man belonging to the troops of the Thagher came forwards mounted on a lean, sorry nag, extremely weak about its hind-quarters, having before his saddle a water-skin; the rest of his apparel was equally poor and ludicrous. "Well, my brave youth," said Ibnu-l-mus'hafi to him, "didst thou see the Christian slay thy comrades?"—"I did," replied the young soldier, "and what are thy wishes?"—"I want thee to bring me his head." The youth departed with his water-skin and his sorry nag, and arrived before the Christian, whom he attacked immediately. Scarcely a few minutes had elapsed, when the Moslem soldier was observed galloping back to his ranks with something in his hand, which, at his approach, proved to be the gory head of the Christian knight. Having laid his trophy at the feet of Al-mansúr, he was immediately promoted, and rewarded besides with a very large sum of money. Ibnu-l-mus'hafi then observed to Al-mansúr, "Was I not right when I told thee "that there were not one thousand warriors, nor five hundred, nor one hundred, "nor fifty, nor twenty, nor ten even? The event has proved it. This youth is "one of the very few who can pass under that denomination." Al-mansúr restored Ibnu-l-mus'hafi to his favour, and from that day listened more attentively to his advice.

One of Al-mansúr's soldiers once left his banner [fixed in the earth] on a mountain close to a Christian town. After the retreat of the Moslem army, the Christians of the town, seeing the banner fluttering before the wind on the top of the mountain, felt desirous to get possession of it; but not knowing what troops there might be behind it, they dared not for several days quit the town. Let this be an example of the awe in which the worshippers of the Trinity stood in those glorious times of the servants of the only God; for it is a fact that whenever the proudest kings of the Christians met [in the field] Al-mansúr's invincible host, fear lodged in their hearts; and being convinced that resistance in the open field was of no avail, they invariably took to flight and sought refuge behind the walls of their towns and castles, from which they never moved, but watched from the top the movements of their enemies.

In one of his campaigns to the land of the Franks, Al-mansúr happened to pass between two lofty mountains by a narrow road or defile which led into the heart of the enemy's territory. No sooner had he crossed the pass, than he began, as usual, to make incursions into the neighbouring districts, wasting and burning every thing that lay in his way, and making prisoners right and left. As the Franks made no resistance, Al-mansúr pushed his ravages further into their country for several consecutive days, until, being satisfied with the plunder which he had
collected, he thought of returning by the same road he had come. On his arrival at the narrow pass he found it strongly guarded by the Christians, who had assembled in great numbers to oppose his passage. When Al-mansúr saw the Christians in possession of the pass, he was not the least disconcerted; he returned with his host to the country which he had lately traversed, and having chosen a suitable encampment for his army, set about constructing houses and dwellings for his soldiers, as it was then winter-time. This being done, he ordered his men to provide themselves with agricultural implements, and directed them to plough and sow the neighbouring fields. At the same time he sent marauding parties to plunder the country around, and make prisoners, who, when brought to the camp, were immediately beheaded, with the exception of the children, who were preserved [to be brought up in the Mohammedan faith]. The carcasses of the slain were then, by his orders, thrown at the mouth of the pass; their number being so great that the pass was actually blocked up with them, and that for several miles round the country became a complete desert. In the mean while the Christians sent a message to Al-mansúr, offering to let him pass unmolested with his army, if he would give up all his plunder and captives; but this Al-mansúr most indignantly refused: upon which the infidels sent him a second message, offering to let him pass with both plunder and captives; but Al-mansúr answered, "My men are no longer desirous to cross, but wish to remain where they are. Were they to cross the pass and return [to Cordova], they would soon have to recross it for the ensuing spring campaign. We are therefore determined to stop here till next year, and when we have gone through our campaign then will we cross the pass, and not before." However, the Franks kept importuning him until he granted them the peace they implored, on condition that they would furnish him with mules to carry his plunder and his captives, and would besides supply him with provisions for his army up to the time of his arrival in his own territory; and, moreover, that they should themselves remove the carcasses of their compatriots heaped up before the mouth of the pass; all which conditions the Christians faithfully fulfilled, Al-mansúr and his army passing unmolested through the pass. "By my life," observes the historian from whom the above narrative is borrowed, "there never was recorded a more splendid deed than this, or a case in which divine assistance was made more manifest; for causing the proud enemies of Islam to remove the putrid carcasses of their slaughtered countrymen is an exploit unprecedented in the annals of warfare."

Among the remarkable acts recorded of Al-mansúr, and which are not told of any other prince, one is, that his army was chiefly composed of [Christian] captives taken in his wars with the infidels. It is a well-authenticated fact, corroborated
by the testimony of contemporary historians. That with such troops Al-mansûr
should have been enabled to accomplish what he did, and to defeat, wherever he
met them, the best-appointed armies of the Christians, is only one proof more of
the favours and assistance which the Almighty was pleased to dispense to him.

The above extracts are from the work of Ibnu Hayyân; we shall now transcribe
from the Ashârû-l-manthûrah fl-l-akhbârî-l-mâthûrah before mentioned. It is there
said, in the twenty-ninth flower or chapter, that “As Al-mansûr was one day
sitting under a tent in the plain outside of Cordova to pass in review his infantry
and cavalry, and see them manœuvre, 22 the reviewing field being filled with
spectators, a soldier belonging to the African corps, and whose name was Wâtîr-
mâr Ibn Abî Bekr Al-birzâlî, 23 came up before him, and addressed him in
language ludicrous enough to provoke to laughter a man who has just lost his
friend or his son. ‘O my Lord!’ said he, ‘neither I nor you have a dwelling,
and I am actually in the street.’—‘What then is become of thy spacious and
comfortable dwelling, O Wâtîrmâr!’ replied Al-mansûr to him. ‘Thou hast
expelled me from it. May God show thee his favours! Thou gavest me fields
and lands yielding enough produce to fill my house; but then thou didst expel
me from it, and I am now but an hungry Berber, untrained to adversity. Dost
thou not see that I am like the thirsty camel who is brought to a spring,
and whose head is yet held up so that he cannot drink?’ Hearing this
incoherent speech, Al-mansûr burst out laughing and said, ‘May God preserve
thee from the shafts of calamity! Thy manner of returning thanks for a benefit
is more pleasing to our ears and more gratifying to our hearts than the eloquent
and learned orations of other men.’ Then turning round to the Andalusian
officers who were close to him, he said, ‘Friends, if you ever have to thank
for a benefit, or to ask for the continuance of a favour, do it in this poor man’s
style, with the simplicity of nature, and without either strain or affectation.’
He then gave orders that among the houses then unoccupied the best should
be put at the disposal of the Berber, which was done in compliance with his
commands.”

In the ensuing flower, which is the thirtieth, “Al-mansûr got up one Sunday
morning, when the weather was boisterous, the wind very high, and the rain
fell in torrents. It must be observed that Sunday 25 was a day of rest for the
servants [of Al-mansûr’s household], who were always allowed on that day
some relaxation from their duties; so that both circumstances united made
Al-mansûr think that he would have no applications made to him, and he
exclaimed, ‘I should think that this day we shall be free from importuners and
pretenders! By my life, were one of them to make his appearance in spite
of the raging elements, I swear that he will carry off the first prize.' Thus saying, he left his room, and went to meet his Hājib (chamberlain), to whom he imparted his determination. Scarcely, however, had Al-mansūr retired to his inner apartments, when the chamberlain appeared before him, and with a smile on his countenance said, 'My Lord! three Berbers, Abū-n-nāss Ibn Sāleḥ and two more with him, are now at thy door [asking for admission]. They are dripping wet, and desirous to see thee.'—'Bring them in to me,' was Al-mansūr's answer. The chamberlain hastened to execute his master's orders, and after a little time returned with the three Berbers, who were as wet as a piece of melting salt. Al-mansūr laughed to see them in that plight, and, bidding them to sit down, he inquired from them what had brought them to his palace in such weather, when all men of sense remained quiet at home, and even the birds of the air took refuge within their nests. Abū-n-nāss then, answering for his friends, said, 'O our Lord! it is not every tradesman who sits [waiting for customers] in his shop; there are many who, tempted by gain, come after us and try to deceive us, and take our money from us; but we disappoint them by drawing tighter the strings of our purses. Nevertheless they persevere in their attempt, and wander through the streets, markets, and squares, actually wearing out their shoes and garments for the sake of gain. In a like manner do we wear out thy clothes upon the backs of our horses in an attempt to deserve thy favours. We therefore thought of coming to sit down in this market [to see what we might get].' Hearing this, Al-mansūr laughed most heartily, and, having sent for robes and other presents, he distributed them among the Berbers, who returned to their dwelling highly rejoiced and content with their morning's work.'

In the forty-fourth flower we read as follows: "There was in Cordova during the administration of the Hājib Al-mansūr (Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir) a youth who followed the pursuits of literature, in which he had attained considerable eminence. He occupied his time in reading books on the science of government, and frequented the libraries for that purpose, until he obtained an appointment under government, in the exercise of which he embezzled a considerable sum of money. Being called to account, he was found to be a debtor to the state in three thousand dinārs. Al-mansūr, having been informed of the circumstance, summoned the delinquent to his presence, and charged him with embezzling the public money. The youth then made a profound bow and confessed his guilt. 'What induced thee, young rascal, to appropriate to thyself the Sultan's money?' The youth replied, 'My reason was overpowered, and the temptation to breach of faith seized upon me.'—'By Allah! we intend to make
"an example of thee. Here! a pair of shackles and a smith for this youth, and
away with him to prison.' He then gave particular orders to the jailer to have
him well flogged, and to treat him with the greatest rigour. When the youth
was about to be marched out of the room, he repeated the two following verses:

'Alas! alas! the punishment which awaits me is still greater than I
should have imagined.

'There is no escaping my miserable fate; power and strength only belong
to God.' 26

"When Al-mansūr heard these verses, he said to his guards, 'Stay;' and then,
addressing himself to the youth, 'Hast thou any thing to say in thy defence,
or dost thou conform thyself to thy sentence?'—'I have,' was the youth's
answer. The shackles were then knocked off his feet; and this being done, he
said extempore—

'Seest thou not that Al-mansūr's forgiveness must needs be followed by a
favour?

'Like Allah, who, after forgiving his servants, admits them into Paradise.' 27

"He was right: not only did Al-mansūr set him at liberty, but he pardoned
him the sums which he had embezzled, and exempted him from all further
prosecution on that account."

From the forty-fifth flower: "Al-mansūr, feeling one day indisposed, wanted
to have a cautery applied to his leg. The surgeon was sent for, and, although
when he arrived, Al-mansūr was sitting on a raised throne, surrounded by his
courtiers and administering justice to his subjects, he nevertheless directed the
surgeon to apply the cautery to his leg; which was done, the assembly perceiving
nothing until they actually smelt the burnt flesh and skin, which caused no
little astonishment among them."

From the forty-sixth flower: "Such was the awe in which Al-mansūr was
held by all those who surrounded his person, so rigorous the discipline which
he caused to be observed by the troops, and so great his care in upholding
the royal dignity, that no preceding sovereign ever met with such submissive
obedience to his commands. It is said, that whenever he passed his cavalry in
review, the most profound silence was kept by the soldiers, and that the horses
even were so trained as not to break it by their neighings. One day, as he
was reviewing his troops in a plain in the vicinity of Cordova, he happened
to see something glitter amidst a troop of men. Having inquired what it was
that attracted his eyes, he was answered, that one of the soldiers had unsheathed
his sword, thinking he could do so unperceived. 'Bring the man to me,'
said Al-mansūr to one of his officers. The soldier accordingly came out of
VOL. II.


"the ranks and saluted his general. 'What made thee unsheath thy sword at "a time and in a spot where thou well knowest it is strictly forbidden to do so "without previous leave from the general?' The soldier confessed his guilt, "but alleged as an excuse, that whilst he was in the act of pointing to a comrade "with his sword, the scabbard, which was loose, fell off and left the blade "uncovered. 'Crimes of this kind no excuse can palliate,' replied Al-mansūr, "and he ordered the soldier to be immediately beheaded with his own sword. "He then caused his gory head to be fixed on a spear and to be paraded in "front of the ranks, whilst a proclamation was read to the troops, stating the "crime just committed, and the manner in which it had been punished.'"

But what shall we say of the stupendous buildings erected both in Africa and in Andalus during the administration of Al-mansūr! What of his addition to the great mosque of Cordova, which we have described elsewhere, a work so highly meritorious in the eyes of God that it would, of itself, have procured him a place in Paradise! What of the magnificent palaces and gilded pavilions erected at his command, and which equalled, if they did not surpass, those constructed by the Sultāns of the family of Umeyyah! We have alluded elsewhere to his having built on the banks of the Guadalquivir, at some distance from Cordova, a strong castle, called Az-zāhirah,29 whither he conveyed all the treasures of the state. In the course of time a beautiful palace was erected in the neighbourhood, extensive gardens 29 were planted; houses, too, were built for the officers of his household, as well as barracks for the troops of his body-guard, and Az-zāhirah became, in a very short time, a large and populous city. Ibn Khākān, who alludes to it in the Mattmah, says that Al-mansūr completed the building in A.H. 387, and that in the same year, having made, as usual, an incursion into the enemy's territory, he caused more havoc than he had ever done, penetrating into the most distant and retired districts of Galicia, and collecting more plunder than on any other former occasion.

Az-zāhirah was not the only place built by Al-mansūr. We are told by Al-homaydī that he erected also, at a short distance from Cordova, and in the vicinity of Medīnatu-z-zahrā, a magnificent country-residence, called Munyat Al-āmiriyyah, surrounded by fields and plantations, in which one thousand mudd of barley were yearly sowed, to supply food for a stud of horses which Al-mansūr kept in it. It is related that Al-mansūr was so fond of the horses reared at this place, that on his return from a military expedition he never took any rest until he had summoned to his presence the master of the stud, and had ascertained from him how many colts had died during his absence, and how many were born. In a similar manner he never failed to inquire from his chief architect whether
any portion of the building required repair. At this place Al-mansúr had a manufacture of shields and weapons, of which no less than twelve thousand were made every year; and they say that the number of workmen employed in the manufactory, as well as those of the stud, and other servants, was so considerable, that no less than twelve thousand pounds of meat, exclusive of game and poultry, were distributed to them in the course of the year. Al-mansúr erected also a bridge on the river of Cordova (Guadalquivir), which was begun in the year 378 (beginning April 20, A. D. 988), and finished about the middle of 379 (beginning April 10, A. D. 989), at the expense of one hundred and forty thousand dinárs. It was a very useful work, and one that will perpetuate the memory of Al-mansúr. On the subject of the building of this bridge we recollect having read somewhere a very interesting anecdote. Among the lands which were appropriated for the building of the bridge, there was a patch of ground belonging to an old man of the lower classes. Al-mansúr ordered the inspectors of works to purchase it from him. Accordingly, having called upon the man, the inspectors spoke to him about his land, explained to him the necessity under which they were of appropriating it, as the bridge could not be erected on any other spot, and declared to him that they had received instructions to indemnify him fully for the loss of his property. Not wishing to part with his land, the old man asked what he considered a most exorbitant price, imagining that when the inspectors had heard his unreasonable demand, they would desist from their purpose; but to his great astonishment, no sooner had he mentioned the sum, ten dinárs of gold, and declared that he would not make over his property for a lesser consideration, than the inspectors caught him at his word, paid him the money down, and drew up a deed for the sale. When Al-mansúr was informed of the transaction, he could not help laughing at the old man's ignorance and imbecility; but he ordered his treasurer to pay him ten times the money he had asked, which was done agreeably to his commands. When the old man saw himself in possession of one hundred dinárs, his joy was extreme, and he had well-nigh lost his senses in the excess of his rejoicing. He presented himself to Al-mansúr, whom he thanked for the signal favour thus conferred on him; and the anecdote being circulated among the people, became the subject of history.

The above were not the only public works erected under the administration of Al-mansúr. A bridge was thrown over the river Shenil (Xenil) at Ezija, by means of which a communication was established between that city and the neighbouring country, the roads leading to the city were more frequented, and provisions became more abundant. Granada, Seville, and other cities of Andalus, Ceuta and Fez in Africa, partook alike of the benefits of Al-mansúr's administration in this respect.
Among the meritorious actions of Al-mansûr, the following are particularly recorded. He wrote with his own hand a Korán, which he always carried with him on his military expeditions, and in which he used constantly to read. He collected and kept all the dust which adhered to his garments during his marches to the country of the infidels, or in his battles with them. Accordingly, whenever he halted at a place, his servants came up to him, and carefully collected the dust in kerchiefs, until a good-sized bag was filled, which he always carried with him, intending to have it mixed with the perfumes for the embalming of his body. He also took with him his grave-clothes, thus being always prepared to meet death whenever it should assail him. The winding-sheet was made of linen grown in the lands inherited from his father, and spun and woven by his own daughters. He used continually to ask God to permit him to die in his service and in war against the infidels, and this desire was granted. He became celebrated for the purity of his intentions, the knowledge of his own sins, his fear of his Creator, his numerous campaigns against the infidels, and many other virtues and accomplishments, which it would take us too long to enumerate. Whenever the name of God was mentioned in his presence, he never failed to mention it also; and if ever he was tempted to do an act which might deserve the chastisement of his Lord, he invariably resisted the temptation. Notwithstanding this he enjoyed all the pleasures of this world, which make the delight of kings, with the exception only of wine, the use of which he left off entirely two years before he died. We might fill whole volumes with extracts taken from those works which have been exclusively consecrated to the history of that remarkable man; but, however strong the temptation, we will resist it, and will resume the thread of our long-interrupted narrative, by recounting what happened in Cordova after the death of Al-mansûr.
CHAPTER II.

'Abdu-l-malek succeeds to the post of Hájib—His death—His brother 'Abdu-r-rahmán is proclaimed successor—He prevails upon Hishám to choose him for his successor—A conspiracy is formed against 'Abdu-r-rahmán—who is assassinated—Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbar is proclaimed under the name of Al-muhdí—The Berbers revolt against him—They are expelled from Cordova—They proclaim Suleyman as their king—Defeat Al-muhdí—Take possession of the capital—Suleyman is defeated by Al-muhdí—Restoration of Hishám—Cordova taken by the Berbers—Massacre of its inhabitants—Origin of the Bení Hamúd—'Ali Ibn Hamúd revolts against Suleyman—Defeats him, and puts him to death—'Ali is proclaimed at Cordova—His exemplary justice—He becomes a tyrant—Assassination of 'Ali—His brother Al-kásim is elected by the army—Takes possession of the government—Proclamation of Al-murtadhi, of the house of Umeyyah—He is betrayed and put to death.

About two hours before Al-mansúr died, his son, 'Abdu-l-malek, rode in all haste to Cordova, where he arrived at the beginning of Shawwál (Aug. A. D. 1002), accompanied only by the Kádí Ibn Dhakwkán. When the sad news was divulged [in Cordova], and the Khalíf Hishám ascertained the state in which Al-mansúr lay, he summoned to his presence a number [of civil functionaries], in order to announce to them the fatal news; but such was the excess of his grief, that he could not utter a single word, and he stood speechless as a ghost, endeavouring to explain by signs to the assembly the fatal occurrence which he had to communicate. 'Abdu-l-malek then returned to the camp, and found that his father was dead, and that according to his last instructions he had been interred in the spot where he died, namely, in his palace at Medínah Sélím (Medinaceli). The army then broke up, the greater part going towards Hishám [in Cordova]; upon which 'Abdu-l-malek, after remaining some days at Medinaceli, returned to Cordova, accompanied by those who remained by him; and the singing women of his father's harem put on hair-cloth sacks and coarse blankets instead of the silk and brocade to which they had been used.

Hishám treated the son as he had treated the father; he himself clothed him with a khil'ah or dress of honour, and signed his appointment to the office of Hájib. This, however, was not accomplished without some alteration ¹ among the eunuchs [of the palace]; but, at last, those who leaned were put straight, and the ill-disposed became loyal; things took their right course, the breasts [of the...
Moslems] were expanded, and their hearts were rejoiced, when they heard of 'Abdu-l-malek's victories, and of the extensive districts which he daily conquered from the unbelievers; and the birth of a son [of 'Abdu-l-malek] was hailed as the greatest blessing which Andalus could receive.

In the year 393 (beginning Nov. 9, A. D. 1003) letters came from Al-mu'izz, chief of the tribe of Maghráwah, who, at the death of his father, Zeyri Ibn 'Attiyáh, had become ruler of Fez and Western Africa, [acknowledging Hishám as his liege lord.] 'Abdu-l-malek granted Al-mu'izz the investiture of Western Africa, on condition that he would cause Hishám's name and his own to be proclaimed from the pulpits [of all the mosques] in his dominions, and that he would send every year to Cordova one horse and one shield, besides a certain sum of money, in token of vassalage; all which conditions Al-mu'izz promised to fulfil, sending his son Al-mu'anser as an hostage to Cordova.

'Abdu-l-malek followed in the steps of his celebrated father, as regards the [wise] administration of public affairs and the [yearly] expeditions against the Christians, of which he is said to have made no less than eight, always causing great loss to the unbelievers, as for instance that of 394 (A. D. 1004), when he is well known to have defeated the King of the Galicains, and to have taken and destroyed his capital, the city of Liún (Leon). In commemoration of that exploit, 'Abdu-l-malek received the titles of Seyfu-d-daulah (sword of the state) and Al-modhaffer (the conqueror, or victorious). He died on his return from the country of the Christians, in the month of Moharram, A. H. 399 (Sept. A. D. 1008), or, according to other authorities, in the year before (A. H. 398), although the former date is the most probable. His administration lasted seven years, which were to the Moslems like a succession of festivals, owing to which the period of his rule was called As-sábi' or Al-osbú' (the week), comparing it with the first week after marriage.

After the death of 'Abdu-l-malek, his brother 'Abdu-r-rahmán succeeded him in the charge of Hájib (chamberlain). 'Abdu-r-rahmán assumed on the occasion the surname of An-násir lidín-illah (the defender of the faith); others say that he took that of Al-mámún (the trusted by the grace of God). He followed in the steps of his brother and father as regards the seclusion of the Khalif Hishám, of whose person he was the complete master, and the assumption into his hands of all the powers of the state.

In the course of time, however, he undertook to usurp even the insignia of the Khalifate as he had usurped the power, and to this end he asked Hishám to appoint him his successor to the throne,—a request with which that weak monarch complied, after assembling the counsellors of the state and the notaries to witness the ceremony, and to authorize it by their presence. "It was," says an author of those days, "a very solemn ceremony." The deed [of nomination]
was drawn by Abú Hafss Ibn Burd, and copied in the Khalif's own hand. We here subjoin it:

"This is what the Khalif Hishám Al-muyyed-billah, Commander of the Faithful, stipulates with the people [of this country] in general, and what he himself promises to observe and swears to fulfil, by placing his right hand upon the deed as upon a true and valid contract.

"After mature consideration and long deliberation, after reflecting upon the heavy duties which God has imposed upon him as Imám and Commander of the Faithful, the Khalif Hishám, son of the Khalif Al-hakem Al-mustanser-billah, and grandson of the Khalif 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir lidín-illah,—fearing lest fate should strike him that blow against which no mortal stands secure, and which no living creature has the power to avert; fearing lest death should assail him suddenly, and take him by surprise; fearing, in short, that if he were to die thus, the people of this country would have no banner left under which they might flock, and no place of refuge to which they might run [in case of need]; knowing that were he to present himself to his Creator after so flagrant a dereliction of his duty, he would certainly incur his anger for having neglected the charge intrusted to him, and having gone astray from the path of righteousness and truth,—has determined to select among the Arabs of the tribe of Koraysh, and others having their domicile in this country, one worthy of having this empire transmitted to him [as an inheritance], and of being intrusted with the prosperity and welfare of this nation,—one whose piety, religion, honesty, and good faith shall be notorious, one who shall be known to resist the temptations of sin, and to follow the path of righteousness by practising those duties which are acceptable to his God.

"After searching, therefore, high ranks as well as low, the Khalif Hishám has found none more deserving to be appointed his successor, or to become the heir to the Khalifate after his death, than the trustworthy, honest, and beloved Abú-l-motref 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-mansúr Ibn Abi 'A'mir Móhamed, son of Ibn Abi 'A'mir. (May God prosper him!) And the Khalif has been induced to make this choice owing to the brilliant qualities which grace the said individual,—the generosity of his soul, the greatness of his origin, and the nobility of his descent; his piety, his prudence, his wisdom, his talents, all of which he knows him to possess, as he has watched him, and put him more than once to the trial, and has upon every occasion found him ready to do a good act, and to be the first in the path of righteousness, or to surmount any obstacles however great [in the prosecution of good purposes]; since, in short, he knows him to unite in his own person every good quality. But
" are we to wonder that a man who had Al-mansúr for a father and Al-modhaffer 
for a brother should surpass every one in virtue, and exceed all in generosity? 
Another no less weighty consideration has moved the Commander of the Faithful 
to take this step, namely, that whilst perusing works on the occult sciences 
and turning over the inestimable treasures contained in them, he has discovered 
that he was to be succeeded [in the command of this country] by an Arab of 
the race of Kahttán, respecting whom there exists a well-authenticated tradition 
preserved by 'Abdullah Ibn 'Amru Ibn-l-'ass and Abú Horeyrah, both of whom 
ascribe the following words to our Prophet: 'The time shall come when a man 
of the stock of Kahttán will drive men before him with a stick.' Finding, 
therefore, no person to whom those words can be better applied; knowing that 
every thing that is good is centered in the person of the above-named, and 
that he is, moreover, ornamented with every brilliant quality; that he has no 
rivals and opponents, but, on the contrary, every one [in this country] looks 
up to him for direction, the Khalif intrusts to him the administration of affairs 
during his lifetime, and bequeaths to him the empire after his death. And this 
the Commander of the Faithful does spontaneously, of his own free will, and 
in the presence of witnesses [called for that purpose], and, as such, orders it 
to be transmitted and communicated to his subjects without any second thought 
or restriction, pledging himself in public as well as in private, by word and deed, 
by the stipulation of God, and by his promises, by the protection of his messenger 
Mohammed, and that of the four legitimate Khalífs who were his ancestors, 
and his own share in the intercession, to fulfil it in all its parts, and not swerve, 
change, wander, or fall aside in any part of it; taking God and his angels to 
witness of the truth of his words, and that he bequeaths his empire and transfers 
his sayings and doings to the here present Al-mamún Abú-l-motref 'Abdu-r-
rahmán, son of Al-mansúr, (may God prosper him!) who accepts what is given 
to him, and binds himself to fulfil the duties imposed upon him."

This took place in the month of Rabi' the first, A. H. 399 (Nov. A. D. 1008). 
The Wizírs, the Kádís, and other people present, witnessed the act by affixing 
their signatures to the deed; and from that day 'Abdu-r-rahmán was called 
Wali-l-ahd (presumptive heir to the empire).

In this manner were the wishes of 'Abdu-r-rahmán accomplished, and his name 
proclaimed from the pulpit of the great mosque; but the courtiers and the high 
functionaries of the state were averse to the measure; and it became in time the 
cause of his own ruin, and of the overthrow of his power and that of his family. 
The Bení Umeyyah and the Korayshites were the most opposed to it; they detested 
the rule of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and, moreover, they were much afflicted at seeing the
power of the Korayshites and the rest of the Bení Modhar in the hands of their enemies the Yemenites. They therefore united their counsels, visited each other, and entered into a conspiracy to rid themselves of 'Abdu-r-rahmán. Accordingly, in the year 399 (A.D. 1009), whilst 'Abdu-r-rahmán was absent from Cordova on one of his expeditions to the country of the Galicians, they rushed upon his Sáhibu-sh-shartah (captain of the guard), and slew him at his post, at the gate of the royal palace in Cordova: they then deposed Hishám Al-muyyed, and appointed in his room a prince of the posterity of the Cordovan Khalifs, whose name was Mohammed, son of Hishám, son of 'Abdi-l-jabbár, son of the Commander of the Faithful, 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir lidín-illah, on whom they conferred the honorary appellation of Al-muhdi-billaḳh (the directed by the grace of God).

The news [of this revolution] having reached the point of the frontier where the Hájib 'Abdu-r-rahmán was then [at war with the Christians], he collected the scattered divisions of his army, and returned hastily to Cordova, burning to take vengeance on his enemies. However, when he approached the capital, he was deserted by a great portion of the army and the principal Berber officers, who immediately entered Cordova, and having sworn allegiance to the usurper Al-muhdi, instigated him against the Hájib 'Abdu-r-rahmán, whom they represented as a madman, and incapable of governing the people well. Some of them next went out of Cordova, returned to the camp, and seized on 'Abdu-r-rahmán, whom they beheaded, taking his head to Al-muhdi and to the people of Cordova. Thus was the power of the 'A'mirites overthrown. There is no God but God, He is the only survivor of empires!

On his accession to power, Mohammed assumed the surname of Al-muhdi (the directed). Instead, however, of being contented with the title of Hájib, and reigning in Hishám's name, as Al-mansúr and his two sons had done, he confined that unhappy monarch to an apartment of his palace, gave out that he was dead, and took for himself the titles of Khalif and Imám. One of the first acts of his government was to seize as many as he could of the chiefs attached to the party of the 'A'mirites, and put them to death.

It has been stated above, that the chiefs of the Berbers and of the Zenátah, seeing the bad rule of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and the subsequent overthrow of his empire, had without difficulty embraced the party of the usurper Al-muhdi. The Bení Umeyyah, however, could not forget the assistance which the Berbers had formerly lent to the 'A'mirites, as they ascribed entirely to them the usurpation of the royal power by Al-mansúr and his two sons. They therefore hated them most cordially, and could not bear the sight of them; and had it not been that the Berbers were numerous, and united together by a sense of the necessity of self-preservation, they would undoubtedly have been all destroyed to a man. As
it was, the rabble of Cordova insulted and hooted at them [whenever they met them in the streets], and by their clamours and complaints prevailed upon Al-
muhdi to issue orders that no Berber should be allowed to ride or bear arms within the precincts of Cordova. Moreover, as some of the Berber chiefs were once returning from the palace, their houses were in the mean while attacked by the populace and gutted of their contents. The offended immediately laid a complaint before Al-muhdi, who, not daring to disregard their claims altogether, had the guilty parties put to death. Yet with all this, Al-muhdi hated the Berbers, and let no opportunity pass without showing them all the ill-will he bore them; upon which the Berbers, having received intelligence of his ill designs, as well as of his intention to make a general slaughter among them, called upon their officers to advise them how to act upon the emergency. Having held a secret council, they came to the resolution of dethroning Al-muhdi and of proclaiming a prince of the race of Umeyyah, whose name was Hishám, son of Suleyman, son of the Commander of the Faithful, An-násir lidín-illah. Their meetings, however, could not be held so secretly as not to reach the ears of a few [in-
fluential citizens], who decided upon thwarting their plans. They, accordingly, instigated against them the populace of Cordova, who took up arms, attacked them in their cantonments, and expelled them from the city. This being done, Hishám and his brother Abú Bekr were arrested and conveyed to the presence of Al-muhdi, who beheaded them [with his own hand].

A nephew of the murdered princes, named Suleymán, who was the son of their brother Al-hakem, succeeded in leaving Cordova in disguise, and repaired to the camp of the Berbers, who, after their expulsion from the capital, had pitched their tents at a short distance from it, swearing not to raise them until they had taken ample vengeance on the citizens of Cordova. Suleymán was received with open arms by the Berbers, who hastened to swear allegiance to him, and proclaimed him Khalif under the appellation of Al-musta’ln-billah (he who implores the assistance of God), on condition that he would immediately lead them against their enemies. Suleymán, however, thinking that the time was not yet come to make an attack upon Cordova, dissuaded them from their undertaking, and retired with them to the Thagher (frontiers of Toledo), where he applied for, and obtained, from the son of Alfonso, a strong body of troops to aid him in his war with Al-muhdi. Thus re-inforced, Suleymán advanced by forced marches against Cordova; upon which Al-muhdi, hearing of his approach, went out to meet him at the head of the citizens and of the troops of that capital. Having come to close battle, fortune turned against the Cordovans, upwards of twenty thousand of whom fell by the sword of the enemy. On that disastrous occasion the learned and
the virtuous, the theologians, Imáms, Muezzins, and others, were involved in the same common ruin.  

Suleymán advanced upon Córdova, of which he took possession, without resistance, about the end of the fourth century [of the Hijra]. Al-muhdi fled to Toledo, whence he implored and obtained the assistance of the son of Alfonso for the second time.  

That prince gave him the help he desired, and accompanied him to Córdova. After defeating his enemy at 'Akbatu-l-bakar, near Córdova, Al-muhdi regained possession of his capital, which he entered without opposition.  

After this, Suleymán and his Berbers left Córdova, and scattered themselves over the plains, plundering the inhabitants, and committing all manner of depredations, until they retired to Jeziratu-l-khadhrá (Algesiras). Thither they were followed by Al-muhdi with his Christian auxiliary, the son of Alfonso; but this time the Berbers were victorious: Al-muhdi and the Christians were completely defeated, and were obliged to fall back upon Córdova, whither they were immediately pursued by the victor.  

On his arrival at Córdova, Al-muhdi took Hishám Al-muuyyed-billah out of confinement, showed him to the people, and made them swear allegiance to him, laying down all the power he had usurped, and reserving nothing for himself except the office of Hájib [chamberlain]. This, however, was of no avail to him: Suleymán and his Berbers soon appeared before the walls of Córdova; and the citizens, fearing his vengeance, instigated the servants of the palace and the eunuchs of Hishám against Al-muhdi, whom they represented as the only cause of their troubles and dissensions. Upon this, one of the eunuchs of the palace, named Wádheh Al-’ámírí, having with the assistance of his friends surprised Al-muhdi, put him to death, and restored his master Hishám to his liberty, assuming for himself the charge of Hájib.  

Thus perished Mohammed Al-muhdi at the end of the year 400 (August, A. D. 1010), and after a reign of about ten months. He is represented by the historians of the time, as a man of depraved morals, a tyrannical ruler, and a blood-shedder. Ibn Bessám says that he had a garden in which the heads of his enemies were fixed on stakes sunk in the ground. The following verses were composed by a poet of those times:  

"Our Mahdí (director) has appeared, but [instead of peace and justice] he brings us vice and folly.  
"He has made the wives of the Moslems common to every one; and what was sacred before, is no longer so under his rule.  
"Indeed, those who were hornless yesterday, will to-day see their heads ornamented with horns."
During the reign of this Sultán, and that of his rival Suleymán, the city of Cordova was often exposed to the ravages of an undisciplined soldiery; and the palaces of Az-zahrá and Az-záhirah were completely destroyed. "It is a fact well worthy of remark," says the historian Ibnu-r-rakík, "that [in the course of twenty-four hours] from Tuesday the 15th of Jumáda-l-akhar (A. H. 399), at the hour of noon, to the following Wednesday, Cordova was taken, Az-zahrá destroyed, a Khalif [Al-muyyed Hishám] deposed, and another Khalif [Al-muhdi] appointed in his stead; the power of the Bení 'A'mir was overthrown, and their Wizír, Mohammed Ibn 'Askaléjah, slain; armies of citizens were raised, the succession of the Wizírs was destroyed, and others occupied their places: but the most remarkable fact is, that all this was accomplished by ten men, who were either sellers of charcoal, or butchers, or dung-carriers, and who served in Al-muhdi's army."

Al-muhdi was a man of very dissolute morals, of little or no talent [for the administration], but exceedingly cruel and revengeful. When Al-mansúr usurped the power of the Bení Umeyyah, and, as above related, slew or exiled all the members of that family who stood in his way to the throne, he spared this Al-muhdi, owing to his imbecility and the little consideration which he enjoyed among the people; and yet this very man, whom Al-mansúr had not thought worthy of his notice, was destined to overthrow his well-consolidated power, to destroy all that he had founded, and, in short, to become the heir of his riches and his power. No human wisdom or prudence can prevent the fulfilment of fate; no mortal creature can resist the immutable decrees of the Almighty, whose will must needs be obeyed.

Al-muhdi was a tolerable poet. One night, as he was drinking with some of his guests, a page of his presented to him a branch of myrtle; upon which Al-muhdi extempore the following verses:

"I am presented with a tender branch of sweet-smelling myrtle, whose soft undulations may be compared to thy lion-like gait;

Which resembles thee in gracefulness of step, as thou resembllest it in fragrancy."

Cordova taken by the Berbers.

The siege of Cordova continued with unabated vigour, the inhabitants not being able to gain any advantage over the troops of Suleymán, until at last, the fields, the farm-houses, and the lands round Cordova having been either wasted or set fire to by the besiegers, the scarcity of provisions began to be felt in the capital, and the besieged began to despair.

In the mean time Al-musta'ín pressed the siege more closely than ever. In order the sooner to accomplish his purpose, he sent to the people of Alfonso, inviting
them to come to his assistance with their troops. Hishám, on the other hand, dispatched his Hájib, Wádheh, to the same quarter, to persuade the Christians not to grant this request, promising, if they would withdraw their forces from his enemy, to put them in possession of the fortresses which Al-mansúr had reduced on the frontiers of Kashtellah (Castilla). Upon these conditions Alfonso refused to send the auxiliary troops which Suleyman requested: that chief, however, persevered in his undertaking; and, after a protracted siege, during which the poor people of Cordova were exposed to all the horrors of a famine, he became at last master of the capital on Monday the 6th of Shawwál of the year 403 (April 20, A.D. 1013). A general massacre ensued; the Khalif Hishám was secretly put to death [by the command of the victor], the houses of the inhabitants were sacked and profaned, their women and daughters insulted, wealthy families reduced to poverty, magnificent buildings razed to the ground. There was, in short, no excess of which the infuriated Africans were not guilty on this occasion. Doctors, theologians, Imáms, Kádíís, men distinguished by their virtues, or eminent for their piety and their learning, were involved in the general massacre. Among the victims of that disastrous day, the celebrated traditionist and learned divine, Abú-l-walíd (Abú Mohammed) 'Abdulláh Ibn Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Nasr Al-azdí Al-kortobí, better known under the surname of Ibnu-l-faradhí, was one. This eminent man was versed in various sciences, such as traditions, biographical history, and chronology. He was well acquainted with literature, as appears from the numerous works which he wrote, such as "the lives of Andalusian divines and other men of science," which we ourselves saw and read in Western Africa,—a work admirable for its arrangement and unique in its kind, the same to which an appendix was written by Ibnu Bashkúwál, under the title of Kitábu-s-silah (the book of the joining). He also left a very fine work on that branch of the science [of genealogy] called Al-mokhtalef wa-l-mutalef, or, what is different and alike in the patronyms of men; an excellent history of the Andalusian poets, and several other productions of equal merit. Ibnu-l-faradhí was born on Tuesday, the 21st of Dhi-l-ka'dah, of the year 351 (December, A.D. 962). At the age of twenty-one, he quitted Andalus for the East, made his pilgrimage, and visited most of the large cities in Syria and Egypt, where he met the most eminent professors of the time, and studied under them. He then returned to his native country, where he obtained offices of trust, and was at last appointed Kádí of Valencia. Happening to be at Cordova on the day that Suleyman took that capital by storm, his house was attacked by a party of Berbers, who put him to death. They say that his body lay for three whole days in the court of his house, and was at last privately interred without any ceremony, and without having the funeral service said over it.
Having rid himself of all his enemies, Suleymán imagined that his empire was consolidated and his power strengthened. But he was mistaken; new competitors started up, and he had soon to contend against the very Berber chiefs who had contributed every where to his accession. The Berbers and the African slaves possessed themselves of large towns and populous districts; as Bádis Ibn Habús of Granada, Al-birzdáli of Carmona, Al-yeferaní of Ronda, and Harzún of Sherish (Xerez). Andalus was in course of time cut up into fragments and small principalities, the command of which devolved upon men of the lowest rank in the state, as Ibnu 'Abbád, who rose at Seville; Ibnu-l-afttas, at Badajoz; Ibnu Dhí-n-nún, at Toledo; Ibn Abí 'A'mir, at Valencia; Ibn Húd, at Saragossa; and Mujáhid Al-ámirí, at Denia and the [Balearic] islands. But we are rather anticipating the narrative of events.

Among the Berber chiefs who followed the party of Suleymán Al-musta'in-billah, there were two men of the posterity of 'Omar Ibn Idrís; their names were Al-kásim and 'Alí. They were the sons of Hamúd, son of Maymún, son of Ahmed, son of 'Alí, son of 'Obeydullah, son of 'Omar, son of Idrís, [son of Idrís,] son of 'Abdullah, son of Hasan, son of Huseyn, son of 'Alí Ibn Abí Talib. (May God dispense his favours to them all!) Their ancestor was that same Idrís who, in order to escape the vengeance of Hárún Ar-rashíd, the 'Abbáside, had fled from the East and taken refuge among the Berbers of Africa; in which country he founded a powerful and extensive empire, making war against that Khalif, as did also his son [Idrís], who inherited his empire and built the city of Fez.

'Alí and his brother Al-kásim arrived in Andalus, as before related, during the administration of the Hájid Al-mansúr, who employed them in his armies. Having distinguished themselves in several encounters with the Christians, they were gradually promoted, until each obtained the command of a considerable body of troops of their nation. When the civil war, which the judicious historian Ibnu Khalídun has justly designated under the epithet of “Berberiyyah,” (that of the Berbers), broke out at Cordova, 'Alí and his brother Al-kásim played an active part in all the transactions of the time, helping with the troops under their command to overthrow the power of the Bení 'A'mír, and to place Suleymán, of the race of Umeyyah, on the throne. With a view to reward the services of his partisans, and the more to strengthen his power, Suleymán divided among the Africans the command of his armies and the government of the provinces of his empire. Thus he gave to 'Alí Ibn Hamúd the government of Tangiers, Ghomáráh, and other places in Africa, where that chieftain ruled as master, although he acknowledged himself the vassal of Suleymán.

In the course of time, however, finding that the governors of the provinces had
every where revolted against Suleymán, ’Alí also shook off his allegiance to that Sultan, and began to entertain projects of personal aggrandisement. It is related that the Khalif Al-muuyed Hishám was very much addicted to astrology and the science of divination. One day as he was employed in his favourite pursuits with one of his courtiers, he discovered that the dynasty of the Bení Umeyyah would soon become extinct in Andalus, and would be replaced by another dynasty, of which a man of the posterity of ’Alí Ibn Abí Talib, and whose name began with the letter ’ayn (’A), was to be the founder. Accordingly, when in A. H. 403 (A. D. 1013) Suleymán took Cordova for the second time, and, as before related, confined Hishám to a dungeon, the latter having heard that there was among the Berbers an officer named ’Alí, who was said to be the descendant of ’Alí Ibn Abí Talib, he dispatched him a secret message thus conceived: “Thou shalt certainly become king of this land; for my heart tells me that I shall soon die by the hands of this man (meaning Suleymán): should such be my fate, I intrust my revenge to thee.” To the above circumstance, it is said, was owing ’Alí’s determination to rise in arms against Suleymán, and to dispute the empire with him; others attribute to him different motives. Be this as it may, after appointing his son Yahya to command in Africa during his absence, ’Alí crossed over to Andalus, where, being soon after joined by Khayrán, the Sclavonian [governor of Almeria], he gave out that he was come to revenge the murder of his lawful sovereign Hishám. No sooner, however, was Suleymán informed of his landing, than he hastened against him at the head of his best troops; but after several sharp encounters with the troops [of ’Alí and Khayrán], he was at last completely defeated in the plain of Tálikah (Italica), close to Seville, himself and his brother ’Abdu-r-rahmán falling into the hands of the victor; who, on his arrival in Cordova, which made no resistance, caused them both to be beheaded together with their aged father, Al-hakem. Thus died Suleymán Al-musta’in-billah, after a reign of upwards of three years, counting from his first entrance into Cordova.17

On his obtaining possession of the throne, ’Alí took the surname of An-násir ’Alí is pro-
claim’d at
liddín-illah (defender of the faith). One of the first acts of his administration was to check the licentiousness of the African soldiers, who, under the preceding reigns, had been suffered to commit all manner of ravages, and to indulge their wicked propensities on the peaceable inhabitants of Cordova. He succeeded by his salutary rigour in re-establishing discipline among the Berbers, and justice shone as bright as ever. He used on given days to sit at the gate of his palace to administer justice and redress the wrongs of those who complained to him. On such occasions, numbers of Berbers would be brought before him accused of various offences, and, if convicted, he would have them instantly beheaded before his own eyes,
and in the presence of their tribes, their relatives or friends. The following anecdote, which we transcribe from the work of a trustworthy writer who was an eye-witness, will give an idea of the exemplary justice which 'Ali dealt among the Berbers. "As 'Ali was once riding out of one of the gates of Cordova, called "Bab 'A'mir [the gate of 'A'mir], he met a Berber on horseback, who carried on the saddle before him a load of grapes. Having made him stop, 'Ali inquired where and how he had procured the grapes. 'I seized them like a man,' was the Berber's answer. Upon which, 'Ali caused him to be immediately beheaded, and directed that the head of the delinquent should be placed over the grapes on the horse's back, and then paraded through the streets of the capital, as a warning to the other soldiers of his nation.'"

For eighteen consecutive months did this Sultán persevere in the right path, administering justice with an even hand, and governing his subjects with moderation and wisdom, until, having learned that the Andalusians, who could not tolerate his rule, had raised up Al-murtadhi Al-merwání in the eastern provinces, with the design of re-establishing the sovereignty of the house of Umeyyah, he changed his conduct entirely, and laboured to depopulate Cordova and to exterminate its inhabitants. Accordingly, he relaxed in his severity towards the Berbers, and things soon resumed their ancient course. The chief inhabitants of the place were everywhere insulted, and their houses plundered; the magnificent buildings erected by the Bení Umeyyah were either entirely demolished or gutted of all their valuables, and the ruin of the city proceeded with as much rapidity as it had before done in the worst times: the rich citizens were forcibly dispossessed of their wealth, and men remarkable for their piety or their learning subjected to all manner of indignities. The tyrant went so far as to impose heavy tributes and other illegal taxes, and, in order to raise money, he seized on the persons of several wealthy inhabitants, and confined them to prison, until they should pay the exorbitant sums he demanded as their ransom: he did more; when, after paying the required money into his treasury, the friends and relatives of the prisoners appeared in front of the gaol with led horses to convey them to their respective dwellings, he issued orders for the confiscation of those, and the prisoners were compelled to walk home. Among those who suffered on this occasion was Abú-l-hazm [Jehwar], who became in after-time King of Cordova, was succeeded by his son [Abú-l-walíd], and was the founder of a dynasty which has been included by the historians in the number of the petty dynasties of Andalus.

These and other excesses, of which 'Ali was guilty, alienated from him the good-will of the people, and revolt succeeded revolt in the provinces. At last
Khayrán, the Sclavonian governor of Almeria, who was one of the staunchest partisans of the Bení Umeyyah, seeing the people of Cordova disposed to shake off the oppressive yoke of 'Alí Ibn Hamúd and his Berbers, raised the standard of revolt at Almeria, and caused 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed [Al-murtadhi], a prince of that family, to be proclaimed throughout the districts of his government. Having then sent his letters to all those governors and chiefs who were known to be secretly attached to the cause of the Bení Umeyyah, he prevailed upon some of them to join his banners, and, having collected considerable forces, marched against the capital.

No sooner was 'Alí apprised of that formidable insurrection, than he hastened to take every measure to crush it in its birth; but whilst he was preparing to march against his enemies, he became the victim of treason. He was assassinated whilst in the bath by some of the Sclavonian pages who had formerly belonged to the household of the Bení Merwán. This event took place about the beginning of Dhi-l-ka'dah of the year 408 (A.D. 1017). The Sclavonians who perpetrated the deed were three in number: when they saw that 'Alí was dead, they hastened to a place of safety within the palace, which was known only to them, and hid themselves in it. When his death became public, the people of Cordova were highly rejoiced. The duration of 'Alí's reign is generally computed at two years, but, according to the statement of an historian who verified the fact, he only reigned twenty-one months and six days. Notwithstanding his foreign origin, and his possessing none of those brilliant qualities which draw forth the admiration and praise of the people, 'Alí had many accomplishments which revealed his noble descent and the hereditary virtues of the race of Hāshim.

Among the poets attached to his court, the most celebrated were Ibnu-l-khayyát Al-kortobi, 'Obádah Ibn Mái-s-samá, and Ibn Derráj Al-kastálí (from Cazalla). 'Obádah, who was well known to profess the doctrines of the Shiites, composed a very fine ode in praise of 'Alí, from which the following two verses are taken:

"Your ancestor 'Alí began in the East what another 'Alí has accomplished in the West."

"Let then all invoke the favours of God on him, and salute him; for his is the empire by right divine." 19

The two following are the composition of Ibn Derráj:

"O Sun on the decline! the deep sorrow [on thy countenance] is, no doubt, caused by the thought of thy sad [approaching] fate."

"Intercede for me with the son of the intercessor; bear my message to the son of the messenger [of the Almighty]." 20
After the death of 'Ali, his brother Al-kásim Ibn Hamúd, who was governor of Seville, was raised to the supreme power. This Al-kásim was ten years older than his brother; both were the sons of Hamúd, by the same wife, a descendant also of the house of 'Ali Ibn Abí Tálíb. 'Ali had left two sons: one, named Yahya, whom, as before stated, he appointed governor of Tangiers, Ceuta, and other districts in Africa; the other, called Idrís, who was governor of Malaga at the time of his father’s death. The eldest, Yahya, was undoubtedly entitled to the throne; his father 'Ali having, besides, designated him for his successor: but the affections of the Berbers were greatly divided; some inclining to the son, some to the brother, of their late sovereign. However, the greater number leaned towards Al-kásim, owing in the first place to his being older than his brother 'Ali when the latter took possession of the throne, and, secondly, to his being near Cordova at the time of 'Ali’s death, whilst between them and Yahya there was an intervening sea. They therefore sent messengers to him, to offer him the throne. When the messengers arrived in Seville, they hastened to the palace, and communicated to Al-kásim the news of 'Ali’s death, and the wish of the troops that he should succeed him. At first, Al-kásim showed no joy whatever at the intelligence; he feared, no doubt, that the whole might be a stratagem of his brother to ascertain his feelings towards him; he therefore hesitated to accept the throne offered to him, and retained the messengers near his person until he verified the truth of the matter. He then marched without delay to Cordova, where he was proclaimed [by the troops] six days after the death of his brother.\footnote{21}

Al-kásim’s administration was mild and just; only that, knowing that some of the Berbers were secretly inclined to favour the claims of his nephew Yahya, the governor of Ceuta, to the throne, he intrusted the defence of his person to the African black slaves, of whom he bought a large number, forming them into a body-guard, and intrusting to them the government of the provinces and the command of his armies. The Berbers, however, took offence at this, and in course of time forsook his cause entirely.

Meanwhile the people of Andalus, who detested the rule of the Bení Hamúd, the descendants of 'Ali [Ibn Abí Tálíb,] owing to their deriving their chief support from the Berbers, in whose hands the country actually was, were flocking from all parts to swell the army of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Al-merwání, who, as related, had been proclaimed in the eastern provinces. 'Abdu-r-rahmán was the son of Mohammed, son of 'Abdu-l-malek, son of the great 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir lidín-illah, ninth Sultán of the race of Umeyyah. On the day of his proclamation he had assumed the honorary surname of Al-murtadhi (the accepted). When the people of Cordova and other principal cities heard of this rising, their
II.

rejoicing was extreme; for all were anxious to see the rule of the Bení Merwán re-established in Andalus. Being joined by the forces of several petty kings, who hastened to acknowledge him as their sovereign, Al-murtadhi marched upon Cordova. Among his allies on this occasion were Mundhir At-tojibí, Lord of Saragossa, and Khayrán Al-’ámiri, the Sclavonian, Lord of Almeria. There came also with him some auxiliary troops which the King of the Franks had sent him. Hearing of the approach of Al-murtadhi to his capital, Al-kásim went out to meet him with his Berbers. It happened, however, by some strange coincidence, that Mundhir and Khayrán, though still following the party of Al-murtadhi, were not on very good terms with him at the time, and by no means so well disposed in his favour as they had been at first. “Methinks,” said one of them to the other, “that Al-murtadhi does not put on the same face now that he sees himself at the head of a powerful army, as when he was weak and needed our assistance. Be sure this wily man is meditating some treason against us.” Upon this, Khayrán wrote to Záwi Ibn Zeyri, of Senhájah, one of the most brave and enterprising Berber chiefs in Andalus, who, during the late civil commotions, had made himself master of Granada and the surrounding districts, where he ruled independently, offering, if he would attack Al-murtadhi on his road to Cordova, that he himself, and Mundhir, with the troops of the Thagher (Aragon), and the freedmen and adherents of the Bení ’A’mir, who were always hostile to the Bení Merwán, would immediately desert his cause, leaving him to fight his own battle with the partisans of his family. To this proposition Záwi readily assented, and the plan was concerted between them.

However, on his arrival before the walls of Granada, Al-murtadhi wrote a letter to Záwi, calling upon him to take the oath of allegiance, and promising him great rewards if he would join him with his forces. The letter having been read to Záwi, who, being a Berber, was not well versed in the Arabic language, he directed his secretary to write on the back of it that chapter [of the Korán which begins thus]: “Iá ayyoha-l-káfirúna.” On the receipt of the letter, Al-murtadhi wrote him another, thus conceived: “Beware! for I am marching against thee with a host of the bravest warriors of this country, and assisted by the Franks.” And he closed his letter with the following verse:

“If thou be one of us, I can announce to thee prosperity and success; if the contrary, thou wilt soon experience every calamity.”

When the letter was read to Záwi, he ordered his secretary to turn it over and to write upon the back of it the whole of that chapter [of the Korán] which begins thus: “The emulous desire of multiplying riches and children employeth you until ye visit the grave.” On the receipt of this message the indignation of
Al-murtadhi was roused to the highest pitch: so great was his desire of revenge, that he instantly abandoned the expedition he had concerted, and, instead of marching upon Cordova, the seat of the empire, as he had intended, he deviated from the road, and went to attack Záwi in Granada, believing that he could annihilate him in one hour. The hostilities, however, continued for some days, until Záwi wrote to Khayrán to remind him of his promise, and to say that the time was come for him to accomplish his treason and forsake the cause of Al-murtadhi. Khayrán’s answer was thus conceived: "I have delayed [the execution of my plans] in order that thou mightest appreciate the extent of our courage, and the irresistible fury of our attacks; but when thou next seest us encamped close to him, charge him with thy cavalry, and we shall then take to flight and desert him." It was done as agreed on between them, and on the morning of the next day Záwi made a desperate charge, at the head of all his cavalry, on the troops of his adversary. Al-murtadhi withstood the attack with his wonted bravery; but no sooner had the engagement commenced, than he saw the banners of Khayrán, Mundhir, and the other chieftains of the Thagher, turn away from the field, and he was left to fight single-handed against the troops of Záwi. The contest could not last long; after the slaughter of the greater part of his devoted followers, Al-murtadhi was compelled to take to flight, and it was with the greatest difficulty that he escaped from the field of battle. The unfortunate prince remained for some time in concealment; but Khayrán having sent spies after him, he was discovered and put to death at a place in the neighbourhood of Guadix, whither he had gone for the purpose of crossing over to Africa, and being secure. His head was brought to Almeria and presented to Khayrán and Mundhir, who had by that time reached that city.
CHAPTER III.

Yahya, the son of 'Ali, revolts against his uncle—Marches to Cordova—Takes possession of that capital—The Berbers desert his cause—Al-kásim regains possession of Cordova—The people rise against him, and expel him from the city—Al-kásim goes to Seville—The inhabitants declare against him, and shut their gates—He takes refuge in Xerez—Falls into the hands of his nephew—Is sent prisoner to Malaga—Al-mustadh'her, of the house of Umeyyah, is proclaimed at Cordova—He is put to death, and succeeded by Al-mustakfi [Mohammed III.]—Yahya marches to Cordova, and takes it—The citizens proclaim Hishám Al-mu'tadd, of the house of Umeyyah—They depose him—Death of Yahya.

AFTER the battle in which Al-murtadhi was defeated, the whole of Andalus submitted to the Berbers, and their rule was firmly established throughout the country. Al-kásim caused the tent of Al-murtadhi, which, together with other spoils, had fallen into the hands of the victor [Záwi], to be pitched on the bank of the Guadalquivir at Cordova, as a sign of the victory he had just gained over his enemy. Thousands of people went out of Cordova to see it, and manifested their sorrow by deep sighs escaping from their bosoms.

It was on this occasion that the poet 'Obádah Ibn Mái-s-samá, who, as before stated, was a partisan of the house of 'Ali, recited before Al-kásim that ode of his which begins thus:

"Thine is the victory; Khayrán has gone his way; and God has secured the empire to the descendant of his messenger." 1

The affairs of Al-kásim went on their course; he appointed and removed [governors], spoke and acted, until his nephew Yahya, the son of 'Ali, threw off the mask of obedience, and aimed at depriving him of the empire. It happened thus: Yahya, who, on the death of his father 'Ali, was governor of Ceuta, wrote from that town to the principal Berber chiefs in Cordova, saying, "My uncle has deprived me of my father's inheritance: not satisfied with this, he has also deprived you of the governments and offices won by your good swords, and given them to his black slaves. I am coming among you to claim the throne of my father. Once in possession of it, I will reinstate you in the full enjoyment
of all your rights and privileges, and will reduce the black slaves to their former
condition." The Berbers having agreed to espouse his cause on these condi-
tions, Yahya collected all the vessels he could find in the ports of his dominions,
besides those sent him by his brother Idríṣ, Lord of Malaga, and, having crossed
the sea, landed at that port at the head of considerable forces. Whilst there, he
received letters from Khayrán, Lord of Almeria, reminding him of the alliance which
had once existed between the writer and the father of Yahya, to whose elevation he
had contributed, and asking for his alliance and friendship. But his brother Idríṣ
said to him, "Place no confidence in Khayrán; he is an artful man and a traitor."
—"Well, if it be so," replied Yahya, "we must manage him so as to make his arts
and his treasons useful to ourselves." However, Yahya, relying on the promises
of the Berbers, determined upon attacking his uncle in Cordova. Having sent
his brother Idríṣ to Africa, to govern there in his absence, he placed himself at
the head of whatever forces he could collect, and proceeded by forced marches
to the capital. Al-kásim did not wait for the arrival of his nephew. Knowing
that he could place no reliance on his men, he left his capital secretly and at night,
accompanied only by five trusty servants, and arrived in Seville, where he was well
received by the Kádí Ibnu 'Abbád. The departure of Al-kásim took place on
Saturday, the 28th-of Rabi'-l-akhar of the year 410 (Sept. 1, A.D. 1019). Soon
after, his nephew Yahya entered Cordova, and was proclaimed by the Berbers, the
black slaves, and the inhabitants of the place, on Saturday, the first of Jumáda-l-
akhar (Oct. 3, A.D. 1019) of the same year.  

On his taking possession of the throne, Yahya assumed the surname of Al-
mu'tali (the exalted). Being proud of his noble origin, since he was descended
on his father's side from 'Alí [Ibn Abí Tálib], and his mother also was a descendant
of Fátimah, the daughter of the Prophet, Yahya began to treat the great men of
his court with utter disregard, never admitting them to his presence, and passing
his time in the society of low and contemptible men. This made the chiefs of the
Berbers averse to Yahya; they complained loudly of his ingratitude, and clamoured
for the fulfilment of those conditions on which they had consented to support
his claim to the throne, one of which was that he should immediately recall the
immunities and privileges granted to the guard of black slaves [during the preceding
reigns]. This Yahya immediately granted; but the disaffected, not being satisfied
with the above concession, now made such exorbitant demands, that the treasury
would have been drained and the royal power seriously impaired, [had Yahya
acceded to their wishes.] The black slaves, moreover, not considering themselves
safe in Cordova, fled to his uncle Al-kásim in Seville; their example being soon
followed by all those among the Berbers and Andalusian officers who were offended
at his behaviour, or who had in any measure been wronged by him. In addition to this, it must be said, that not one of the petty kings of Andalus followed the party of Yahya; the greater part still continued to have the khotbah said in his uncle’s name, and a few remained faithful to the Bení Umeyyah, for whom and in whose name they pretended to hold their governments. So that, in point of fact, the power of Yahya did not extend beyond the walls of Cordova, and he soon came to the conviction that should his uncle march against him, he could not defend his capital, and he would inevitably fall into his hands. About the same time Yahya received the intelligence that the city of Malaga, where his brother Idrí̊s commanded in his name, was on the point of renouncing his rule; for, whilst Idrí̊s was at Ceuta, of which city he was also governor, the inhabitants of the former place, profiting by his absence, had sent a secret message to Khayrán, inviting him to take possession of the city; which that chieftain was preparing to accomplish. All these considerations induced Yahya to abandon his capital: he accordingly left Cordova at night, and fled to Malaga with a few trusty followers.

No sooner had Al-ká̊sim heard of his nephew’s abandoning Cordova, than he marched to that place from Seville. He re-entered his capital without opposition, and the khotbah was again recited in his name on Tuesday, thirteen days before the end of Dhi-I-ka’dah of the year 413 (Feb. 10, A.D. 1023). Al-ká̊sim, however, did not long enjoy peace after his restoration; new discords and civil wars breaking out throughout Andalus. The black slaves, it is true, were, to a man, ranged under his banners; but the greater number of the Berbers were attached to his nephew; whilst a third party was formed at Cordova who wished for the restoration of the dynasty of Umeyyah, and expected anxiously the rising of some member of that family. The plans of the latter, however, did not then meet with success; and the consequence was, that fresh dissensions and deplorable calamities ensued. Al-ká̊sim ordered a most scrupulous search to be made throughout his dominions for all the surviving members of the family of Umeyyah, who, in order to avoid the persecution, were compelled to fly to the provinces, and take refuge in farms and country-houses under various disguises.

In the mean while his nephew Yahya was not inactive. Having fitted out an expedition in Malaga, he besieged and took Algesiras, which still held out for Al-ká̊sim. His brother, Idrí̊s, likewise took possession of Tangiers, a city which Al-mámán [Al-ká̊sim] had fortified with the utmost care, and wherein he kept his treasures. Some time after this, dissension having broken out between the Berbers and the citizens of Cordova, they came to blows in the streets. The latter being in a greater number, Al-ká̊sim and his Berbers were compelled to evacuate the place, and to pitch their tents in a field to the west of the city. From that place the
Berbers made most desperate assaults on the city for a period of fifty consecutive
days; but the Cordovans built up with masonry the gates of their city, and made a
most vigorous defence from the top of the walls. At last, seeing the siege pro-
tracted, and provisions growing every day more and more scarce, the Cordovans
decided to make a last effort to drive the enemy from their walls. Having opened
one of the gates, they made a simultaneous and determined attack upon the
besiegers, who were utterly defeated, God Almighty being pleased to grant the
citizens of Cordova a very signal victory over their enemies. This took place
on Thursday, twelve days before the end of Sha'ban of the year 414 (November 2,
A. D. 1023).\(^4\) After this defeat, Al-kásim's army dispersed. The black troops
followed him to Seville, but the Berbers joined his nephew Yahya in Malaga.

On his departure for Cordova, Al-kásim had left a son of his named Mohammed
to command in Seville, assisted by the counsels of two Wizírs whom he appointed.
One of these was Mohammed Ibn Zeyri, one of the principal Berber chiefs;
the other, Mohammed Ibn 'Abbád, then Judge and afterwards Sultán of Seville,
and the grandfather of Al-mu'tamed Ibn 'Abbád, so celebrated in the annals of
Andalus. Ibn Zeyri being an influential man among his countrymen, the
Berbers, and being besides very ambitious, aspired to the supreme power; so
did Ibnu 'Abbád. Accordingly, when Al-kásim with the relics of his army
appeared in sight of Seville, the two chieftains shut the gates of the city in his
face.\(^5\) Al-kásim then tried to force the entrance; but he was repulsed, and several
skirmishes ensued, in which both blacks and Berbers fell in great numbers, Ibnu
'Abbád smiling internally and rejoicing all the time to see the two parties destroy
each other. At last Al-kásim, despairing of gaining possession of the city, sent
in messengers to propose that if his son Mohammed and his family were safely
delivered into his hands, he would immediately raise the siege and retire elsewhere.

These terms being accepted by Ibn Zeyri, his son and family were suffered to
quit the city, and Al-kásim marched to Sherish (Xerez). Scarcely, however, had
Al-kásim had time to establish himself in that fortress, when his nephew Yahya
left Malaga at the head of considerable forces and besieged him in it. Al-kásim
defended himself with great courage for twenty consecutive days, during which time
a great number of warriors fell on both sides. At last the contest ended in favour
of Yahya; for the citizens of Xerez, unwilling to bear any longer the hardships of
the siege, surrendered their city to him; upon which the blacks fled in every direc-
tion, and Al-kásim and his son Mohammed fell into the hands of their incensed
relative. This happened in the year 415 (beginning March 14, A. D. 1024).\(^6\)

They say that Yahya had upon a former occasion taken his most solemn oath
that, were his uncle to fall a prisoner into his hands, he would immediately put him

\(^4\) After this defeat, Al-kásim's army dispersed. The black troops followed him to Seville, but the Berbers joined his nephew Yahya in Malaga.

\(^5\) Al-kásim then tried to force the entrance; but he was repulsed, and several skirmishes ensued, in which both blacks and Berbers fell in great numbers, Ibnu 'Abbád smiling internally and rejoicing all the time to see the two parties destroy each other.

\(^6\) Al-kásim and his son Mohammed fell into the hands of their incensed relative. This happened in the year 415 (beginning March 14, A. D. 1024).
to death, and thus deprive him of all chance of getting possession of Cordova a third time. He nevertheless postponed the execution of Al-kásim until he should take the advice of his counsellors to that effect. Having done so, he was recommended to spare the life of Al-kásim, but to confine him in a dungeon within his own castle at Malaga, that he might in future be safe against his attacks. They say that whenever Yahya was intoxicated, which was of frequent occurrence, he being very much addicted to drinking spirituous liquors, he always showed an inclination to order his uncle’s execution; but that his guests never failed to implore his mercy, and to remind him that his enemy was now under his power and could nowise escape. They say also that Yahya saw frequently in dreams his own father, 'Alí, who forbade him to put him to death, saying, “Al-kásim was my elder brother; he used to be very fond of me when I was a child, and whilst I commanded in this country I always found him obedient to my rule. By Allah! have mercy on him!” Yahya therefore refrained for some time; but having afterwards received information that Al-kásim was tampering with the guards of his prison, with a view to effect his escape and take up arms against him, he had him strangled in his prison, thirteen years, or thereabouts, after his falling into his hands, that is to say, in the year 427 (beginning November 4, A. D. 1035), although there are not wanting historians who assert that he died a natural death. But to return.

After the retreat of Al-kásim and his Berbers from before the walls of Cordova, the inhabitants of that capital remained for nearly two months without a leader, deliberating among themselves whom they would choose for their sovereign. At last, on Tuesday, the 15th of the month of Ramadhán of the year 414 (Dec. 1, A. D. 1023), three princes of the race of Umeyyah presented themselves as candidates; namely, 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Hishám, and brother of Mohammed Al-muhdi, formerly Khalif of Cordova; Suleymán, son of Al-murtadhi, and another one. At first, Suleymán counted the most votes, and it is even stated that the deed of inauguration was drawn in his name, as was customary on such occasions, and that he was publicly proclaimed through the streets of Cordova; but the party of 'Abdu-r-rahmán having prevailed, Suleymán and the other candidate kissed his hand in token of obedience, and he was proclaimed under the name of Al-mustadh'her (he who implores the assistance of God). Immediately after this, Al-mustadh'her ('Abdu-r-rahmán IV.) rode to the royal palace, taking with him his two cousins above named, whom he caused to be imprisoned.

Al-mustadh'her had, on his accession to power, raised several of his partisans to the highest rank in the state, admitting them to his privacy and treating them
with a familiarity and friendship quite unprecedented. In the number were, 
Abú 'A'mir Ibn Shoheyd,\(^{10}\) celebrated for his courage and military virtues; Abú 
Mohammed Ibn Hazm, well known for his satirical and controversial writings 
against the Ulemas of various religious schools; and his cousin 'Abdu-l-wahháb Ibn 
Hazm Al-ghazzál, a youth of very loose morals. This gave offence to the Sheikhs, 
the Wizîrs, and other influential citizens: upon which, Al-mustadh'her threw himself 
for protection into the arms of the Berbers, to whom he granted new immunities 
and privileges. But whilst Al-mustadh'her passed his time with Ibn Shoheyd and the 
two Ibn Hazm, engaged in literary pursuits and in writing poetry, the discontented 
took advantage of the state of things, and began to excite the lower classes of 
Cordova against him, by representing him as a frivolous man who spent his time 
with poets and sycophants. This they failed not to accomplish, the people of 
Cordova being then in a state of the grossest ignorance.

There were at the time in the prisons of Cordova several criminals whose 
detention was deemed necessary [to the welfare of the state]. Among the rest 
was one named Abú 'Imrán, whom Al-mustadh'her caused to be set at liberty 
against the advice of one of his Wizîrs, who urged him strongly to keep him 
in prison. Al-mustadh'her, however, disregarding all warning, caused the prisoner 
to be liberated. This Abú 'Imrán was the cause of Al-mustadh'her's ruin; for 
he, and all those who came out from prison, began to plan his destruction, and 
to substitute perdition for his joy, taking as a pretence to make partizans among 
the people, that Al-mustadh'her neglected the affairs of government and passed 
his time with literary men and poets, as his low inclinations prompted him. A 
conspiracy was accordingly formed, with the assistance of the Berbers, the object of 
which was to deprive him of the throne, and to appoint a relative of his, named 
Mohammed, in his stead. He was assassinated in the month of Dhî-l-ka'dah 
of the same year in which he had been raised to the Khalifate, after a reign of 
forty-seven days,\(^{11}\) he being then in the twenty-third year of his age. When God 
Almighty has decreed that an event shall happen, there is no mortal who can 
prevent its fulfilment!

Mohammed was the son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Obeydillah,\(^{12}\) whom Al-mansúr 
Ibn Abí 'A'mir caused to be put to death, because he was planning a revolt against 
the Khalif Hishám. On his accession to the throne Mohammed took the sur-
name of Al-mustakfi-billah (he who is contented with God). His reign, howeve\(\phantom{x}\) 
was not of long duration; for, sixteen months after his elevation to power, in the 
year 416 (A. D. 1025), Yahya Al-mu'tali, who, since the defeat and capture of his 
uncle Al-kásim at Xerez, had ruled undisturbed over Malaga and Algesiras, 
marched his army to Cordova, and entered that city without opposition, the Khalîf
Al-mustakfi being compelled to fly to the Thagher, where he died soon after.\textsuperscript{13} This Al-mustakfi was the father of the celebrated poetess Waládah, to whom Abú-l-walíd Ibn Zeydún dedicated his risále. Ibn Bashkúwál says, that she was the most eloquent woman of her age, and that in point of learning and taste she rivalled the best poets of her father's court. The histories of the time are filled with entertaining anecdotes respecting this princess; but as we intend to treat of her elsewhere,\textsuperscript{14} and to transcribe largely from the works of Al-fât'h, Ibn Sa'id, and Ibn-l-abbár, who have all written her life, we need not relate them in this place. She lived to a great age, and died on the second day of Safar of the year 480 (May 8, A. D. 1087), although there are not wanting authors who place her death in 484, (A. D. 1091). She was equally celebrated for her chastity as for her beauty, and she never married.

But to return to our account of the Sultáns of the house of 'Alí. No sooner had Yahya entered Cordova, than, leaving a general of his named Ibn 'Ittáf, to govern in his name, he quitted that capital and retired to Malaga, where he began to make preparations for the ensuing campaign against Abú-l-kásim Ibn 'Abbúd, Lord of Scville. Soon after, however, in 417, (beginning Feb. 21, A. D. 1026,\textsuperscript{15}) the inhabitants of Cordova rose against their governor and his Berber troops, fought with them in the streets, and ultimately expelled them from the capital; after which they appointed a prince of the race of Umeyyah, named Hishám, brother of the deceased Al-murtadhi, to administer their affairs. This was done by the advice of the Wizír Abú Mohammed Jehwar Ibn Mohammed, at that time the most influential person in Cordova, and one in whom the people of all classes placed their confidence. As Hishám was then at Lerida, in the Thagher (Aragon), with Ibn Húd, a message was sent to him, offering him the crown, and inviting him to repair to Cordova. Hishám accepted the invitation, and assumed on the occasion the surname of Al-mu'tadd-billah (he who is prepared in God). This happened in the year 418 (beginning Feb. 10, A. D. 1027). Hishám at first did not proceed to Cordova, but remained for three years in the Thagher (Aragon), going from one place to another.\textsuperscript{16} At last, civil war having broken out among the petty chieftains, who about that time began every where to show symptoms of independence, it was agreed among them that Cordova should [notwithstanding their pretensions] continue to be the capital of the Mohammedan empire in Andalus. Hearing of that determination, Ibn Jehwar and the citizens of Cordova entreated Hishám to come among them; which he did, about the close of the year 420 (Dec. A. D. 1029). Hishám was a mild and enlightened ruler, and possessed many brilliant qualities; but notwithstanding all that, some time after his entrance into the capital, the volatile and degenerate citizens of Cordova
They depose him.

Death of Yahya.

They depose him. They grew discontented with his rule, and he was deposed by the army in 422 (A.D. 1031). Hishám left the capital and retired to Lerida, where he died in 428 (A.D. 1036). He was the last member of that illustrious dynasty which had ruled over Andalus and a great portion of Africa for a period of two hundred and eighty-four years, counting from the accession of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I., surnamed Ad-dákhel, in 138 (A.D. 756). There is no God but him! He is the Almighty!

Meantime Yahya had not given up all hopes of regaining possession of his capital, or chastising the rebellion of Abú-l-kásim Ibn 'Abbád, who, as before related, had declared himself independent in Seville. He therefore kept his army continually in motion, besieging either the one or the other of those cities, until the people of Cordova agreed to submit to him, and give him possession of their castles and cities. In this manner Yahya's power increased; but having, in the year 427 (beginning Nov. 4, A.D. 1035), marched against Abú-l-kásim Ibn 'Abbád, Lord of Seville, he was assassinated near Carmona by some of his own men, at the instigation of that chieftain.
CHAPTER IV.

Andalus divided into petty kingdoms—Kings of Malaga, of the family of Idris—Kings of Algesiras—of Granada—Cordova—Seville—Toledo—Saragossa—Badajoz—Valencia—Murcia—Almeria—The Balearic Islands.

We have already alluded in several chapters of this work to the deplorable revolution and disastrous events by which the mighty power of the Bení Merwán was overthrown, and their extensive dominions in Africa, as well as in Andalus, became the prey of ambitious chieftains, thus affording an opportunity to the cruel enemy of God to attack in detail the divided Moslems, and to expel them at last from those countries which they had so long held in their power. We shall now proceed to give a rapid sketch of each of those dynasties which built their power on the ruins of the Khalifate.

And, first, the Bení Hamúd. After the death of Yahya Al-mu’tali, who, as related, was assassinated, in the year 427 (beginning Nov. 4, A. D. 1035), by some of his own followers, the army sent for his brother, Idris Ibn ’Ali, who was at that time in Ceuta, and proclaimed him Amíru-l-múmenín (Commander of the Faithful) and Sultán of Andalus, with the surname of Al-mutáyyed-billah (the confirmed by the grace of God). Idrís was immediately proclaimed in Ronda and its dependencies, in Almeria and Algesiras, as well as in his own family dominions of Ceuta and Tangiers, which he intrusted to the care of his own nephew, Hasan, appointing a eunuch named Najá to administer his counsels. Idrís’ first care was to revenge his brother’s death. Having sent an army to make war against Abú-l-kásim Isma’il Ibn ’Abbád, the father of Al-mu’tadhed Ibn ’Abbád [who reigned afterwards in Seville], after some sharp encounters the head of his enemy was brought to him in the year 431 (beginning Sept. 22, A. D. 1039). Idrís, however, did not long enjoy his victory; he died two days after the head of his enemy was laid at his feet.
After the death of Idrís, the army proclaimed his son Yahya, who did not, however, assume the command; for another party having inaugurated Hasan, son of Al-mu’tali, he [Yahya] took refuge in the fortress of Komáresh (Comares), where he died in the year 434 (beginning Aug. 20, A.D. 1042); some say that he was secretly put to death by the eunuch Najá. According to the historian Ibnu Khaldún, it happened thus: “On the death of Idrís, Ibn Bokennah, who was one of his Wizirs, contrived to have himself proclaimed at Malaga; but no sooner did Najá, the eunuch, who was then at Ceuta, hear of it, than he crossed over to Malaga, bringing with him Hasan, the son of Yahya Al-muta’li, whom he caused to be immediately proclaimed by the citizens and the army under the name of Al-mustanser-billah. When Najá saw his master’s authority fully established in Malaga, he returned to Ceuta, of which city Hasan had granted him the investiture, as well as of all his other possessions in the country of Ghomárah. Hasan died in the year 434 (beginning Aug. 20, A.D. 1042), from the effects of poison ministered to him by a daughter of his uncle Idrís, in revenge for the death of her brother [Yahya Ibn Idrís], whom that monarch caused to be put to death on his accession to the throne.”

“On the death of Hasan,” says Ibnu Khaldún, “Najá again crossed over to Malaga, with the intention of having himself proclaimed by the troops. During his absence he trusted the government of Ceuta and Tangiers in the hands of a Sclavonian eunuch, in whom he placed all his confidence. He set sail and landed in Malaga, where he so far succeeded in his ambitious designs as to usurp all the authority in the state. He was, however, soon after assassinated by the Berbers, who appointed to the vacant throne another son of Yahya Al-mu’tali, named Idrís. Ever since the death of his brother Hasan, Idrís Ibn Yahya had been confined in a dungeon at Malaga.”

No sooner had the Berbers put to death Najá, than they took Idrís out of prison, and, after some previous negotiations, they proclaimed him under the name of Al-‘dli-billah (the exalted by the grace of God) on Thursday, six days before the end of Jumáda 11. of the year 434 (Feb. 6, A.D. 1043). His authority was immediately acknowledged at Granada and Carmona, the khotbah being said in his name in the mosques of those places. This monarch is the one alluded to and praised in a kassídah, composed by Abú Zeyd ’Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mokéná Al-fondákí, a native of Lisbon, and one of the poets mentioned in the Dhakhírah (the hoarded treasure) by Ibn Bessám. This poem, of which we gave some extracts in the first book (vol. i. p. 100), is well known throughout the West, and begins thus:

“Lightning flashes in the ethereal regions, and thy eyes are bathed in tears.
"Its naked swords sport about as freely as the twisted snake in the hands of the players.  
"If the voice of thunder at times speaks a lover's complaint, mine heart too has its sighs and its lamentations."  

Idrís was dethroned in the year 438 (beginning July 7, A. D. 1046), and succeeded by his cousin Mohammed, the son of Idrís Ibn 'Alí, who took the surname of Al-muhdí (the directed), and died in the year 444 (beginning May 2, A. D. 1052).

He was succeeded by his nephew Idrís, son of Yahya Ibn Idrís, who, upon his accession, assumed the title of Al-mu'waffek-billah (he who prospers by the grace of God); but he was not proclaimed Khalíf in the mosques. After a reign of a few months, his cousin Idrís Al-'áli, the same prince alluded to in the above poem, who, since his dethronement, had lived in the castle of Comares, marched to the capital, Malaga, and, having taken possession of it, gave it to his slaves to plunder, in revenge for the injuries he had received at the hands of the inhabitants, most of whom quitted that place and went to settle elsewhere. Al-'áli died in the year 446 or 447 (A. D. 1054-6).

After him reigned Mohammed, son of Idrís, who, on his accession to the throne, assumed the surname of Al-must'ali-billah (the exalted by the grace of God). This monarch was dethroned by Bádís Ibn Habús, King of Granada, who, in the year 449 (beginning March 9, A. D. 1057), marched against him and took possession of his capital, Malaga. After the loss of his kingdom, Mohammed retired to Almería, where he led a private life, until, in the year 456 (beginning Dec. 24, A. D. 1063), the citizens of Melilla invited him to come among them; this he did, when they elected him for their sovereign, and he ruled over them until the year 460 (Nov. 10, A. D. 1067), when he died.

During these events the city of Algesiras and the neighbouring districts were under the sway of princes descended also from the family of Hamúd. When Al-kásim, as before related, fell into the hands of his nephew Yahya, and was by him confined to a dungeon in Malaga, a son of his, named Mohammed, was made to share his captivity. This Mohammed, having some time after succeeded in making his escape, fled to Algesiras, of which city, as well as the surrounding districts, he made himself master, assuming the surname of Al-mu'tassem-billah (he who looks to God for protection from sin). Mohammed maintained himself in possession of his states, until he died in the year 440 (beginning June 15, A. D. 1048).  
He was succeeded by his son Al-kásim, who took the surname of Al-wáthik-billah (he who trusts in God), and reigned until the time of his death, which happened in the year 450 (beginning Feb. 27, A. D. 1058), when the city of Algesiras fell into the hands of Al-mu'tadhed Ibn 'Abbád, King of Seville; and Malaga into those
of Habús, who was the enemy and the rival of Al-mu'tadhed. In this manner was the dynasty of the Sherífs, sons of Hamúd, overthrown in Andalus, after some of them had assumed the title of Khalif, as before related.

About the same time that the Bení Hamúd established themselves in Malaga, a Berber chief, named Záwi, was founding a kingdom in Granada. This Záwi was the son of Zeyri, son of Munád, of the tribe of Senhájah. His kunya or surname was Abú Mothna. He went to Cordova during the administration of Al-mansúr with three of his nephews, named Habús, Mákésen, and Habásah, and a body of Zenátah, whom Al-mansúr took into his service. Záwi having distinguished himself in war against the Christians, Al-mansúr gave him the command of a body of African troops, and appointed him one of his Hájibs, or chamberlains. When Mohammed Al-muhdi, after the assassination of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Al-mansúr, usurped the royal power, Záwi, with the rest of the Berber troops, embraced the cause of Sulcymán, and assisted him in getting possession of Cordova, which was taken by storm on Monday, the 6th of Shawwáld, A. H. 403 (April 20, A.D. 1013), and its unhappy inhabitants subjected to all manner of cruelties practised upon them by a brutal and ferocious soldiery. It is related, that on this occasion Záwi found in one of the palaces at Cordova, called Al-jodrat, the head of his father, Zeyri Ibn Munád, who had been put to death during the Khalifate of Al-hakem Al-mustanser-billah, and that he gave it to his soldiers to have it properly buried.

During the civil wars which broke out in Andalus after the death of Suleyman, Záwi retired to Granada, of which city and its districts he had been appointed governor by that Sultán, and strengthened himself in it. We have related elsewhere (p. 235) how when Al-murtadhi, of the house of Umeyyah, requested Záwi to make common cause with him against 'Alí Ibn Hamúd, the Berber chief refused his application, attacked him on his road to Cordova, and put him to death. In the year 410 (beginning May 8, A.D. 1019) Záwi crossed over to Africa, leaving in command of Granada a nephew of his, named Habús Ibn Mákésen Ibn Zeyri, who took possession of Cabra, Jaen, and other places, and became in time one of the most powerful monarchs of Andalus.

Habús died in the year 429 (beginning Oct. 13, A.D. 1037), and was succeeded by his son Bádíís [Ibn Habús], surnamed Al-modhafffer (the victorious), who acknowledged himself the vassal of the Bení Hamúd of Malaga, and said the khotbah in their name. Shortly after his accession, Bádíís had to defend himself against Zohayr, the Scavonian King of Almeria, who invaded his dominions at the head of considerable forces; but Bádíís marched against him, defeated him, and put him to death. This happened in Shawwáld of the year 429 (July, A.D. 1038). Mo-
hammed Al-birzáli, Lord of Carmona, having been attacked by the King of Seville, solicited the aid of Bádis, who, joining his forces to those of Malaga, commanded by Ibn Bokennah, defeated and slew Isma'il, the son of that monarch, and sent his head to Idrís [Al-mutáyyed]. Bádis likewise made war on Al-kádir Ibn Dhí-n-nún, King of Toledo; and in the year 449 (beginning March 9, A. D. 1057), perceiving the weak state into which his neighbours, the Bení Hamúd, had fallen, he took possession of Malaga, which he added to his own dominions. According to Ibn-l-'askar, Bádis died on the twentieth of Shawwál, A. H. 469 (May 16, A. D. 1077), after a long and prosperous reign. Ibn-l-khattíb says that Bádis was the first [king of his race] who surrounded Granada with walls, and built its kassábah and a palace for his own residence.

He was succeeded by his grandson 'Abdullah, son of Balkín, surnamed Al-Cordova. modhaffer (the victorious), who intrusted the government of Malaga to his brother Temím. 'Abdullah reigned undisturbed over Granada and the neighbouring districts until the year 483 (beginning March 5, A. D. 1090), when he was deprived of his kingdom by Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, the Almoravide, as we shall describe hereafter.

It has been related above (p. 243) how the inhabitants of Cordova, after shaking off the yoke of the Bení Hamúd, appointed a prince of the race of Umeyyah, named Abú Bekr Hishám, son of Mohammed, son of 'Abdu-l-malek, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir, to rule over them; and how, after administering the affairs of the state for nearly three years with great justice and moderation, the inconstant citizens of Cordova deprived the monarch of their choice of his power, and expelled him from their city. As there remained no other member of the house of Umeyyah to whom they could offer the throne, the people of Cordova met together, and determined upon giving the command to Abú-l-hazm Jehwar Ibn Mohammed, a man of much wisdom and experience, who had once been Wizír of the Bení Umeyyah under the administration of the Bení Abí 'A'mír. Jehwar at first assumed no other title than that of Wizír of the Bení Umeyyah. It appears, even, that with a view to reduce to obedience the petty rulers of Andalus, he pretended that Hishám Al-muuyyed-billah was still living; and, having caused prayers to be said in his name, he wrote to the Kádí Ibn 'Abbád [Mohammed], King of Seville, to Al-mundhir, King of Saragossa, and to Ibn Dhí-n-nún, King of Toledo, inviting them to send in their allegiance to Hishám, and to acknowledge Cordova as the capital of Andalus. None, however, listened to his words; upon which, Jehwar, perceiving that his stratagem produced not the desired effect, published that Hishám was dead, and usurped the royal power. He governed, however, with great moderation and justice, although his rule was scarcely obeyed beyond the walls of Cordova. At his death, which happened in the month of Safar, 435
(Sept. or Oct. A. D. 1043), Jehwar was succeeded by his son, Abú-l-walid Mohammed, who followed in the steps of his father, until, broken down by infirmities and old age, he abdicated in favour of his son, 'Abdu-l-malek. This latter did not long enjoy his power; for soon after his accession he lost his life and his throne, as we shall relate hereafter. 15

Among the most celebrated petty dynasties of Andalus was that of the Bení 'Abbád, Kings of Seville and Al-gharb (Algarve), one of whom was Al-mu’tamed Ibn 'Abbád, whose fame spread widely both in the East and West, and whose deeds are recorded in the Kalídíd and the Dhakhtrah, in a manner that leaves nothing to desire. The historian, Ibnu-l-lebbánah, 16 has said that there never was a dynasty which more resembled the powerful one of the Bení 'Abbás of Bagh dád in extent of generosity and the number of their virtues; and under that impression he composed that celebrated work of his, entitled Al-’itímad fl akhbár Bení 'Abbád (the support: on the history of the Bení ‘Abbád). 18 We have already quoted (vol. i. p. 395) two verses composed by an African poet in derision of the dynasty of ‘Abbád:

"Among the things which make me dislike Andalus are the names Al-
"mu’tadíd and Al-mu’tamed [assumed by its rulers];
"Names of kings whose dominions are not in that country. It is, indeed,
"like the cat, in the tale, trying to swell himself into a lion."

But there can be no doubt that the poet who wrote these verses entertained a bad feeling towards Andalus in general, or that dynasty in particular; for the works of poets and historians abound with anecdotes indicative of the splendour and magnificence with which the kings of Seville surrounded their courts, the boundless prodigality with which they rewarded authors and poets, and the love and enthusiasm which they themselves showed for the sciences.

The founder of this dynasty was Mohammed Abú-l-kásim, Kádí-l-jam’ah (supreme judge) of Seville. He was the son of Isma’il, son of Karis (or Koraysh), 17 son of 'Abbád, son of 'Amru, son of Aslam, son of 'Amru, son of 'Ittáf, son of Na’im, of the tribe of Lakhm, of the posterity of An-no’mán, son of Al-mundhir Ibn Mái-s-samá, the last King of Hírah. The first member of that illustrious family, who settled in Andalus, was 'Ittáf, who entered that country in the suite of Balj Ibn Beshr, the Syrian, in the year 123 (A. D. 741). 'Ittáf was originally from a pretty town called Al-arish, situated on the skirts of the desert which separates Syria from Egypt. He settled at Yaumeyn, a town in the district of Toshénah [Tocina], belonging to the jurisdiction of Seville. The first individual of the family who attained any celebrity was Isma’il, son of Koraysh, surnamed Abú-l-walíd, who became Sáhibu-sh-shorttah to Hishám Al-mu‘yyed-billah, and filled for some time the functions of Imám at Seville. 18 At his death, his son
Mohammed, surnamed Abū-l-kāsim, succeeded him in some of his offices, and became at last Kādī and Wizīr of Seville. We have elsewhere related (p. 240) how, when in the year 414 (A. D. 1023) Al-kāsim Ibn Hamūd appeared before the walls of Seville, flying before his nephew Yahya, the inhabitants of that city determined upon shutting their gates in the face of that Sultān, and administering their affairs by themselves independently of the Benī Idrīs; for which end they appointed a council composed of three individuals. The Kādī Ibnu 'Abbād was one of them; but being an ambitious and shrewd man, and possessing great influence in Seville, he succeeded in getting rid of his colleagues and usurping all the power to himself. After slaying Yahya Ibn 'Alī, who was besieging him in Seville, the Kādī Ibnu 'Abbād imagined that he could not effectually consolidate his empire and expel the Idrīsites from Andalus, unless he succeeded in uniting under one common standard all the partisans of the house of Umeyyah. For this end he procured a man resembling in age and appearance the Khalīf Hishām, (murdered during the civil wars of Cordova,) and, causing the khotbah to be said for him in all the mosques of his dominions, assumed the title of Ḥājib (chamberlain), and professed to reign in his name.19 After this, the Kādī Ibnu 'Abbād sent his son Isma'īl against Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Al-bizrālī, Lord of Carmona and chief of the Berber party in those parts; but Mohammed, having called to his assistance the Berbers of Granada and the Benī Idrīs of Malaga, Isma'īl was defeated and put to death in A. H. 431 (beginning Sept. 22, A. D. 1039).

The Kādī Ibnu 'Abbād died on Sunday, one day before the end of Jumāda, the first, of the year 433 (January 23, A. D. 1042).20 He was succeeded by his son Abū 'Amru 'Abbād Fakhru-d-daulah (glory of the state), who, upon his accession to the throne, assumed the surname of Al-mu'tadhed-billah (he who implores the assistance of God). This 'Abbād was a powerful prince, who reduced under his sway the greater part of Andalus. He took Cordova21 from the Benī Jehwar, and also made extensive conquests in Al-gharb (the western districts). The poet Ibnu-l-lebbānah describes Al-mu'tadhed in the following words: "Al-"mu'tadhed Abū 'Amru 'Abbād was a prince whose life was to his enemies what "fetters are to the feet of the prisoner; whose sword never ceased spilling blood "and taking away souls. Such, indeed, was the number of his victims, that he "actually had before the door of his house an enclosure filled with the skulls "of the slain, the spoils of prince and subject.22 There was nothing Al-mu'tadhed "liked so much as to look at this enclosure, and he used to spend the greater part "of his time gazing at it; he would often weep and feel compassion for his victims. "Such anecdotes are related of his cruelty, that it is better that they should be "kept away from human ears and not brought to light.
“Al-mu’tadhed was a good poet. The two following verses, which he composed when the city of Ronda fell into his power, are remarkable:

‘Thou shalt be strengthened, O Ronda, and made a bulwark to our empire.

‘We will soon provide thee with spears and sharp-edged swords.’”

Al-mu’tadhed Ibn ’Abbád died in Jumáda, the second, of the year 461 (May, A.D. 1069), after a prosperous reign of about twenty-eight years. He was succeeded by his son Abú-l-kásim Mohammed, surnamed Al-mu’tamed ’ala-illah (he who relies on God), who was then twenty-nine years of age, having been born at Beja, in Al-gharb (Estremadura), in 432 (beginning Sept. 10, A.D. 1040).

The Kádí and learned theologian Abú Bekr Ibn Khamís [’Abdu-l-jabbár As-sikílí], when he comes to treat of the Bení ’Abbád, says as follows: “Such were the brilliant qualities of Al-mu’tamed, that, although his praises are in every body’s mouth, yet enough cannot be said of him to do him justice. I will now relate some of his adventures, to which I will add some of the poetical compositions which I have read of as attributed to him; for he was as well versed in literature as he was excellent in poetry. His name was Mohammed, and his kunya or surname Abú-l-kásim, like his grandfather the Kádí [Abú-l-kásim]. He assumed the supreme power after the death of his father, Al-mu’tadhed. Alluding to this event, a poet, named Al-hosrí, has said,—

‘’Abbád is dead, and yet a noble shoot remains [of the parent tree].

‘The dead therefore is alive, only that the dhád [of Al-mu’tadhed] is turned into a mín [Al-mu’tamed].’”

“Al-mu’tamed,” says the historian Ibnu-l-lebbánah, “continued to reign in prosperity until the year 475 (beginning May 31, A.D. 1082). In that year the Jew, Ibn Shálíb, came to Seville with a number of Christian knights, for the purpose of receiving the yearly tribute which Al-mu’tamed was in the habit of paying to Alfonso. The Jew and his suite alighted at one of the gates of the city, whither, after they had made known the object of their visit, the Sultán immediately sent them the money required, by one of the high officers of his court. The Jew, however, refused to receive it, saying, ‘I will not take this money; I will take nothing but pure gold, and next year we will not be satisfied with any thing short of the whole wealth of the country: return it to him.’ The money was accordingly returned to Al-mu’tamed, who was no sooner acquainted with the Jew’s insolent speech, than he ordered some of his guards to drag the Jew and his suite to his presence, and to cut the strings of the tent wherein they were. His commands being executed, and the Christians brought before him, Al-mu’tamed ordered that the Jew should be nailed to a stake, and his companions sent to prison.
When the accursed Jew heard his sentence pronounced, he said to Al-mu'tamed,

"Thou wilt not do this, for I will redeem myself with my weight in gold;"

to which Al-mu'tamed replied, "By Allah! wert thou to give me possession

of Africa and Andalus, I would not take it [as a ransom for thy life]." The Jew

was accordingly nailed to a stake, [and the Christians of his suite sent to prison].

The news of this occurrence soon reached the ears of the Christian [king],

who wrote immediately to Al-mu'tamed, demanding the release of his prisoners;

a request which was readily granted.

However, the Christian [king] swore to assemble an army as numerous as the

hairs upon his head, and such as would enable him to penetrate to the Straits

of Gibraltar. This was about the time when the commander of the Moslems,

Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, was occupied in the siege of Ceuta; upon which Al-mu'tamed

[fearing lest Alfonso should put his threat into execution] crossed over to Africa,

and had an interview with the Amír of the Almoravides, who promised him

his help. Al-mu'tamed then returned to Andalus, and stimulated the Moslem

rulers of that country to make war against the infidels. Then came the landing

of Yúsuf [with his army], and the celebrated campaign of Zalákah, in which

the unbelievers were most completely dèfcated; after which, Yúsuf returned

[to his African dominions]. He came a second time, when Al-mu'tamed began to

suspect that his intention in taking possession of the country was to seize on the

nut and leave the shell; and he was not mistaken; for Yúsuf had formed the

design of depriving the rulers of Andalus of their states, for which end he began

to plan all manner of stratagems. He sent from Ceuta to ask Al-mu'tamed to

give up to him the city and port of Jezíratu-l-khadhrá (Algesiras); a request which

Al-mu'tamed refused to grant him under various pretences. However, in the

twinkling of an eye, one hundred sail made their appearance before Algesiras;

upon which Yezíd, son of Al-mu'tamed, who commanded there, let loose some

pigeons to apprise his father of the occurrence. Al-mu'tamed then ordered him

to give up the island; which he did, Yúsuf soon after taking possession of it.

This was not the first time that Yúsuf had done so; for it is asserted that,

whenever he crossed over to Andalus, he insisted upon being made the master

of that place, and that even when he crossed for the first time, he would not

embark until Al-mu'tamed had agreed to put him in possession of that port,

as a security to himself. It is also asserted that Yúsuf did this at the instiga-

tion and by the advice of some Andalusians.

After this, Yúsuf determined upon making war against the rulers of Andalus,

and disposessing them one by one of their states. To this end he sent from

Africa bodies of troops under the command of officers of his court, with instruc-
tions to besiege them [in their capitals]. In this manner he sent [an army] to besiege Al-mu'tamed in Seville. It must be observed that the inhabitants of that city were tired of that prince's rule, and that the love which they had always professed for the Beni 'Abbád had been changed into hatred and contempt, owing to several reasons, but chiefly because Al-mu'tamed was well known to indulge in many reprehensible excesses, such as the drinking of spirituous liquors, and listening to music and the singing of female slaves. About this time, therefore, the generality of the people of Seville wished to get rid of Al-mu'tamed as soon as possible. When Al-mu'tamed saw himself reduced to the last extremity, he sent to implore the assistance of the Christians; but [the general of] Yúsuf having detached a division of his army to attack them on the road to Seville, they were defeated and their designs frustrated. After this, Yúsuf equipped a fleet in Africa, and sent it to blockade Seville, the siege of which was pressed with more vigour than ever. All this time Al-mu'tamed was plunged in pleasure, and had intrusted the government [of his kingdom] to his son Ar-rashíd; the consequence was, that, when he least expected, the Almoravides were within Seville. At last, hearing that the enemy were already in possession of part of the city, Al-mu'tamed awoke from his dream, and roused himself up from his intoxication. He mounted a horse, armed himself with a scimitar, and, dressed as he was, without any defensive armour, he rushed, followed by a few slaves, upon the Almoravides, who had just penetrated into Seville by the gate of Al-faraj (Bábu-l-faraj). Advancing upon a drum which they had with them, he cut it in twain with his scimitar, and then [sword in hand] he attacked the enemy, who fled before him in great confusion, throwing themselves down from the top of the ramparts. Al-mu'tamed remained on the spot until the gate was built up; alluding to which, these two verses were composed, which begin thus:

'If the people have plundered the enemy.'

When the breach had been repaired and the gate stopped, Al-mu'tamed went to inspect the rest of the fortifications. When he arrived at the gate of the dyers (Bábu-s-sabbághín), he found his son Málék stretched dead upon the ground; and having implored the mercy of God upon him, he retired to his castle. Affairs soon grew worse, and the enemy entered the city on every side; upon which, Al-mu'tamed, having previously asked security for himself and those who were with him, surrendered himself to the general of the Almoravides, who furnished him with vessels to cross over to Tangiers. Al-mu'tamed was there met by a poet named Al-hosrí, who had some time previous written and dedicated to him a work containing selections from the best poets. Al-hosrí
"was very far from imagining that he would ever see Al-mu'tamed in such a spot
dand in such a plight, and presented the book to him. Al-mu'tamed took it into
his hands, and said to the poet, 'Lift up that rug, and take whatever thou
mayst find under it; by Allah! I have nothing else to give thee.' Al-hosri did
as he was directed, and found a quantity of gold. After this, Al-mu'tamed was
conveyed to Aghmát, where he was kept prisoner for the rest of his days. He
died in 488 (A.D. 1095). Al-mu'tamed had several sons, four of whom held
"empire, namely, Al-mámún, Ar-rashíd, Ar-rádhi, and Al-mu'tamed."

One of the most powerful among the petty dynasties which rose out of the ruins Toledo
of the Khalifate was that of the Bení Dhí-n-nún, kings of Toledo, in the northern Thagher. This family were at one time in possession of a powerful empire, and
their ostentation and luxurious habits reached an extreme point. From them were named the nuptial feasts known in the West as the I'dhárú-dh-dhúnún (the
wedding-feasts of the Bení Dhí-n-nún), and which, owing to their magnificence
and the profusion and splendour with which they were attended, have become as
proverbial among the people of the West as the nuptials of Búrán are among the
Eastern people. The first sovereign of this family, who reigned in Toledo, was
Isma'il, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Omar Ibn Dhí-n-nún, the descendant in a
right line from As-samh Ibn Dhí-n-nún, a Berber of the tribe of Howárah, who
was present at the conquest [of Andalus].

He was succeeded by his son Yahya, surnamed Al-mámún, he who gave the enter-
tainments above alluded to, and became in time one of the most powerful among
the petty kings of Andalus. This Al-mámún had some communication and dealings
with the tyrant Alfonso, which are well known. He took Cordova from the
hands of Al-mu'tamed Ibn 'Abbád, and killed Abú 'Amru, the son of that monarch,
as we shall hereafter relate. He also gained possession of Valencia, and deprived
Ibn Abí 'A'mir of the sovereignty of that place. During the reign of a grandson of this Al-mámún, by name Al-kádír Ibn Dhí-n-nún, the tyrant Alfonso took
the city of Toledo from the Moslems; for, finding his own power increased through
the extinction of the Khalifate, and perceiving the weak and helpless state to which
the Arabs had been reduced by their sins, he overran and plundered the flat
country, and so pressed Al-kádír that he obliged him to surrender his capital,
Toledo, in the year 478 (A.D. 1085), on condition, however, that he should assist
him in gaining possession of Valencia; which he did. There is no power or strength
but in God, the Great! the High!

At the time that the power of the Bení 'A'mir was overthrown in Cordova, Saragossa.
and the usurper Al-muhíd was reigning in their room, Al-mundhir Ibn Yahya
At-tojibi, a descendant of the Tojibites, who played so distinguished a part during
the reign of 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed, was governor of Saragossa. At his death he was succeeded by his son Yahya, who was soon after dethroned by Süleyman Ibn Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Húd Al-jodhámí, who took the surname of Al-musta'ín-billah (he who expects the assistance of God).

The most renowned princes of this dynasty were Abú Ja'far Ahmed Ibn Húd, surnamed Al-muktadîr-billah (the powerful by the grace of God), son of the preceding, who died in A.H. 474 (beginning June 10, A.D. 1081), and his son, Abú 'A'mir Yúsuf Al-mutamen (the trusty). The latter was so much addicted to the study of mathematics, that he composed, among other works on that science, one entitled Kitābu-l-istikmāl wa-l-manādhir (perfection and observatories). He died the same year that Toledo was taken (A.H. 478, A.D. 1085), and was succeeded by his son Al-musta'ín Ahmed, who lost the battle of Huesca in 489 (A.D. 1096). After the death of this prince, who fell a martyr for the faith in an engagement with the Christians in sight of Saragossa, in 503 (A.D. 1110), his son 'Abdu-l-malek, surnamed Imdū-d-daulah (the column of the state), succeeded to the kingdom of Saragossa. The Christian king [Ramiro] having taken from him his capital in 512 (A.D. 1118), he was compelled to retire to a strong fortress in his dominions, where he maintained himself until he died. He was succeeded by his son Seyfu-d-daulah (the sword of the state), who fought many a hard battle with the Christian tyrant, until he made an agreement with him, and removed with his family to Toledo, where he died.

Among the verses of Al-muktadîr some have been preserved in which he praises two palaces which he had erected in his capital; one called Kasru-s-sorūr (the abode of joy), and the other Mejless adh-dhahab (the gilded hall). During the sway of the Almohades, a prince of this family, named Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Húd Al-jodhámí, raised the standard of revolt, and made himself master of the greater part of Andalus; but enough will be said of him in another part of this work.

The city of Badajoz and its district fell likewise to the share of a powerful family, who maintained themselves in possession of their usurped dominions until the arrival of the Almoravides. It was formerly in the hands of Shābūr, a eunuch of the Bení 'A'mir, who, immediately upon the assassination of 'Abdu-r-rahmán and the dethronement of Hishám [by Mohammed Al-muhdí], declared himself independent, assuming the title of Hájib (chamberlain) and the surname of Al-mansúr. At his death the government of Badajoz and its districts passed into the hands of Al-mudhaffer, the author of the work entitled Al-mudhafferî, in fifty volumes. He was succeeded by his son 'Omar, surnamed Al-mutawakkel-billah (he who relies on
God), who was put to death, together with his two sons, by the general of Yúsuf Ibn Táshafín, the Almoravide. In commemoration of that unfortunate event, Ibn 'Abdún wrote his celebrated elegiac poem, the beginning of which we have given elsewhere (vol. i. p. 62): it is one of the finest poems that ever was written.

Valencia and the surrounding districts were in the hands of Abú-l-hasan 'Abdu-l-Valencia. 'azíz Al-ma’áferí, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and grandson of Abú 'A'mir Al-mansúr. He was succeeded by his son 'Abdu-l-malek, surnamed Al-mudhaffer, who was deprived of his kingdom by his father-in-law, Yahya Al-mámún, King of Toledo.

Murcia was in the mean while under the sway of a family called the Bení Tahir, Murcia. who ruled undisturbed over that city and the neighbouring districts for a period of several years, until they were finally dispossessed of their dominions by Al-mu'tamed Ibn 'Abbád, King of Seville.

Almeria was governed in succession by a great number of princes. The first was the Scavonian eunuch Khayrán, who, as before stated, had been governor of the province during the administration of the Hájib Abú 'A'mir Al-mansúr, and who, at the overthrow of the dynasty of Umeyyah, raised the standard of revolt against the sovereigns of the house of Hamúd. At his death, which happened in 419 (beginning Jan. 30, A.D. 1028), Khayrán was succeeded by another Scavonian eunuch, named Zohayr, who added to his dominions the city of Xatiba and other populous districts. This Zohayr was slain in 429 (beginning Oct. 13, A.D. 1037), in a battle fought under the walls of Granada with the troops of Bádís, King of that city. At his death, the kingdom of Almeria passed into the hands of Dhú-l-wizárateyn Abú-l-ahwass Ma’n Ibn Samádeh, who bequeathed it to his son Mohammed Abú Yahya. This was an enlightened and excellent monarch; he governed his states with great wisdom and justice, until the arrival of the wearers of the veil (Almoravides), who, having laid siege to his capital, took it from his son Ahmed, he himself dying during the siege.

The [Balearic] islands were governed by Mujáhid Ibn 'Abdillah Al-ámirí, surnamed Abú-l-jiyúsh (the father of the army) and Al-muwaffék (he who prospers by the grace of God), a mauli of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-mansúr. At the death of his master, Mujáhid kept possession of Denia [of which city he was governor], and became in time King of the Balearic isles. He was an undaunted warrior and an experienced sailor. He used to keep a considerable fleet always ready for sea, with which he made descents on the coast of Afranj (France), and Antaliah (Italy). As long as he lived, no Christian vessel dared furrow the waters of the sea of Shám (Mediterranean).

Al-homaydí says that Mujáhid was born at Cordova, where he filled offices.
of trust. "After the assassination of his patron 'Abdu-r-rahmán, when the civil
war broke out in Andalus, and the armies of the contending parties disputed
with each other the possession of the provinces, Mujáhid, with a number of
his followers, repaired to the islands to the east of Andalus, which are fertile
and extensive. These he subdued, keeping the inhabitants under his obedience.
From thence, having equipped a fleet, Mujáhid sailed to Sardinia, a large island
of the Rúm, which he almost entirely conquered. This happened in the year
406 or 407 (A. D. 1015-17). Soon after, however, discord broke out among
his men; upon which the Rúm, having received re-inforcements, attacked Mujáhid
and sank some of his ships. In order to save the remainder, Mujáhid set sail
against the advice of experienced mariners, and the consequence was that the
greater part of his vessels were either dashed against the rocks or lost at sea."—
I was told," says Al-homaydí, "by Abú Mohammed 'Alí Ibn Ahmed [Ibn "Hazm], who held it from Abú-l-fotúb Thábit Ibn Mohammed Al-jorjání, who
accompanied Mujáhid to the conquest of Sardinia, that the latter entered with
his fleet a port against the advice of Abú Kharúf, the chief of the sailors,
who warned him not to go in. Scarcely, however, had the fleet entered the
bay, when a storm arose, which scattered and separated the vessels of the
Moslems, and cast them on shore, where the Christians were lying in wait;
so that they had nothing to do but to slay and make captives [of the Moslems]
at their pleasure."

Mujáhid returned to the Andalusian [or Balearic] islands, and some time after
took possession of the city of Denia, wherein he fixed his residence until he died
in 436. After the death of Mujáhid, his son 'Alí succeeded him in his dominions;
but soon after a freed slave of his father, named Mubashsher, took possession
of the [Balearic] islands and reigned over them under the name of Násiru-d-
daulah. It was in the days of the latter that the Christians made a descent on
the island of Mallorca, and subjected it to their rule, although it was recovered
not long after by the Moslems. 'Alí, however, continued to rule over Denia
and the neighbouring districts until he was expelled by the Almoravides.

Besides the above-mentioned chieftains, who divided among themselves the
inheritance of the Bení Umeyyah, there were many other governors who assumed
the sovereignty in the small districts and towns over which they ruled. Such
were Habíb, a Sclavonian eunuch, brother of Shábúr, King of Badajoz, who ruled
for some time over Tortosa and the adjacent districts.

That portion of Andalus known under the name of As-sahlah was erected into
a kingdom by Dhú-r-riyásateyn 'Abúd Ibn Razín, a Berber chief attached to the
party of the Bení 'A'mír. There was also a King of Liblah (Niebla) and the
Island of Saltis in the western part of Andalus ['Abdu-l-'aziz Al-bekrí], and a King of Carmona [Al-birzálí], and Kings of Ronda, Huesca, Xatiba, and other cities; but as all these petty sovereigns were generally more or less dependent on the more powerful states of Andalus, with which their own dominions became in time incorporated, we shall not stop to give an account of them.
CHAPTER V.

Origin of the Asturian kingdom—Progress of the Christian arms—Taking of Toledo by Alfonso VI.—Conquests of Sancho I. of Aragon—Battle of Paterna—Taking of Barbastro—Massacre of the inhabitants—Excesses committed by the Christians—Barbastro retaken by the Moslems—Ambitious projects of Alfonso—His insolent request—Al-mu'tamed puts to death his ambassador—Alfonso prepares to revenge the outrage—Marches against Seville, and besieges it—Al-mu'tamed decides on calling Yúsuf to his aid—Sends him an embassy—Account of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín—His negotiation with the rulers of Andalus—His answer to the ambassadors of Al-mu'tamed.

We have already stated, on the authority of several historians, (p. 34,) that the first Christian who, after the conquest of Andalus by the Arabs, collected his countrymen round him and showed symptoms of resistance, was a barbarian named Beláy (Pelayo), from among the people of Ashturish (Asturias) in Galicia, who, during the administration of Al-horr Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ath-thakefí, the second governor of Andalus, fled from Cordova, where he was retained as an hostage for the security of his countrymen, and repaired to his native mountains. This event took place six years after the conquest of Andalus, that is to say, in the year 98 of the Hijra. The Christians [of those parts], having taken up arms with him against the lieutenant of Al-horr, expelled him from the country and became masters of it. The historian 'Isa Ibn Ahmed Ar-rázáí relates this differently. He says: "In the days of 'Anbasah Ibn Sohaym Al-kelbí, [governor "of Andalus,"] there rose in the land of Galicia a contemptible barbarian whose "name was Beláy (Pelayo), and who was the first among the Christians to show "signs of resistance. This man began to stir up the Franks to keep the Moslems "out of those districts which remained still in their hands," a thing for which they "had never yet shown any inclination. The Moslems at that time were the "masters of [almost] all Andalus, and they had expelled the Christians [from "those districts formerly occupied by them]. They had pushed their conquests as "far as Ariúnah (Narbonne), which they took, and they had also reduced the city "of Banbilúnah [Pamplona] in Galicia; so that there remained nothing [in the "hands of the Christians] but a ridge of mountains, to which they had fled. Here "a prince, named Beláy (Pelayo), also took refuge with three hundred followers, "whom the Moslems ceased not to pursue and to attack, until the greater part
of them died of hunger, and Pelayo remained with only thirty men and ten women, whose sole food consisted of honey which they gathered in the crevices of the rock. In this manner they supported themselves, until information [of their existence] was brought to the Moslems, who despised them and said, 'What are thirty barbarians? They cannot but be destroyed, and we shall be rid of them;' and yet their strength and numbers have since increased in such a ratio that it can no longer be concealed. This Pelayo died in the year 133, (beginning August 8, A.D. 750,) after a reign of nineteen years, and was succeeded by his son Fáfilah (Favila), who reigned two years. Fáfilah was succeeded by Adefonsh, son of Beytro or Pedro (Alfonso el Católico), the progenitor of the [royal] family of the Alfonsos, who are now reigning, and who have retaken what the Moslems had conquered of their country.

So far Ar-rázi, whose narrative we have somewhat abridged. Other historians state that the number of Christian kings who reigned in Andalus [since the rising of Pelayo], to the end of An-násir's reign in 350 (A.D. 961), was twenty-two.

The historian Al-mes'údî, after relating the disastrous battle of Samúrah (Zamora), which, as is well known, was fought in the days of An-násir, says as follows: This victory gave to the Galicians and Basques the superiority over the Moslems as they took from them many towns on the frontiers of Afranjah (France), such as the city of Tarkúnah (Tarragona), which was lost to the Moslems in the year 330, (beginning Sept. 25, A.D. 941,) and other important towns and castles, which had been in their hands [since the conquest]; so that at the moment we write, in A.H. 336, (beginning July 22, A.D. 947,) the Moslem frontier on the eastern side of Andalus is the city of Tortúshah (Tortosa), and on that part of the coast of the Mediterranean which is in the vicinity of Tortosa going towards the north, the cities of Afraghah (Fraga), on the great river [Ebro], Léridah (Lerida), and, lastly, Balaghi (Balaguer).

Most of the conquests made by the Christians were, however, recovered under the administration of the Hájib Al-mansúr, who not only defeated the infidels wherever he met them, but took also Barcelona in the East, and Santiago in the West, both courts of their proudest kings. But alas! during the civil wars into which Cordova was plunged soon after the death of Al-mansúr,—when the parties contending for power scrupled not to implore the assistance of the Christians, and to admit them into the capital,—the cruel enemy of God again raised his head with pride and exultation, and began to attack the Moslems, whose weakness and folly he had witnessed. The division, too, of Andalus into several petty kingdoms, which followed immediately after the overthrow of the house of Umeyyah, afforded the Christians considerable facilities to execute their wicked
designs; for, whilst they united their forces, and even invited the people of distant nations to share in the attack, the Moslem rulers [of Andalus] saw with perfect unconcern, perhaps with secret joy, the dominions of their neighbours or rivals exposed to all the devastations of the Christian foe.

About the year 467, (A.D. 1074,) Adefunsh (Alfonso VI.), son of Ferdeland (Fernando), united under his rule almost the whole of Christian Andalus. Being a man of great resolution, and well acquainted with the pitiful state of Mohammedan affairs, he formed the design of subjecting the whole country to his detestable rule; and for that purpose began to attack all those among the rulers [of Andalus] who refused to pay him tribute. Accordingly, he invaded the dominions of the King of Toledo, and, after seven years' siege, made himself master of that capital in the year 474 (beginning June 10, A.D. 1081). There are, however, various dates given for the loss of that city; some authors saying that it happened in 474 (A.D. 1081), as above stated; whilst others assert that it surrendered to the Christians on the 15th day of Moharram of the year 478 (May 12, A.D. 1085). Ibn Khallekán, [in the life of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín,] says, in the new moon of Safar of the same year [478] (May 28, A.D. 1085,) after a long siege; Ibn 'Alkamah, on Wednesday the 20th of Moharram, A.H. 478 (May 17, A.D. 1085); and he adds that the battle of Zalákah was fought the year after. Be this as it may, certain it is that the King of Toledo at the time was Al-kádir-billah [grand-] son of Al-mámún Yahya Ibn Dhi-n-nún, who, in return for the capital of his dominions which he gave up to Alfonso, received from that monarch the promise that he would help him to get possession of Valencia; which he did.

"Toledo," says one of the historians [of Andalus], "was a very ancient and "strongly fortified city, full of primeval buildings of the time of the 'Amalekites "(Phœnicians or Carthaginians), who were its founders. It is situated on the "banks of a large river called Tajoh (Tagus), has a kassábah or citadel of mar-"vellous strength, and a bridge of wonderful structure, consisting of only one "arch, through which the stream passes with great rapidity and force. Close "to the banks of the river is a na'úrah or water-wheel, rising to the height of "ninety cubits, by means of which the water of the river is made to ascend to "the bridge, and is from thence conveyed, by means of subterraneous pipes, to "the city, for the use of the inhabitants." In times of old, Toledo was the court and residence of the ancient monarchs of Andalus; it was there that the enchanted palace was, which the Gothic kings warned each other not to open, until Roderic opened it and found inside the picture of the Arabs, as we have related elsewhere (vol. i. p. 262).

After the overthrow of the dynasty of Umeyyah, and when the governors, chiefs,
and other influential men of Andalus divided among themselves its provinces, Toledo and the neighbouring districts were occupied by the family of Dhi-n-nún, one of whom was Yahya Ibn Isma'il, surnamed Al-mámún, who became in his time one of the most powerful kings of Andalus. He not only took Cordova from the Bení 'Abbád, but made himself formidable to the other kings of Andalus by his power and his resources.

Ibn Bedrún, in his commentary upon the 'Abdúniyyah, speaks of a palace built at Toledo by this Al-mámún [Yahya] Ibn Dhi-n-nún, in the construction of which that monarch is reported to have lavished his treasures. He made a lake, and in the middle of the lake a kiosk [of crystal], to the top of which the water of the lake was made to ascend by geometrical art, and then fall down on all sides to mix itself with the water underneath. The pavilion was therefore enclosed within a shower of limpid water, which, being constantly renewed, was kept always cool, and Al-mámún would sit inside the pavilion without the water touching him; he could, moreover, have wax-tapers lighted within, if he chose. One day, as he was sitting in this pavilion, he heard a voice, saying,

"Thou hast erected everlasting palaces; but thy dwelling in them will be of short duration.

"The arák affords sufficient shade to the traveller who is daily exposed to the rays of a scorching sun."

Some time after this adventure Al-mámún fell ill and died.

Al-mámún was succeeded by his [grand-]son, Yahya Al-kádir, under whose reign, as above stated, Toledo was reduced by Alfonso. It is generally related, that the Christian king remained for seven consecutive years encamped before the city, destroying the fields and plantations, cutting down the trees, and intercepting the supplies sent by other Moslem princes, until Al-kádir consented to surrender the city to him upon certain conditions which Alfonso swore to fulfil.

Thus fell the city of Toledo. Ibn Dhi-n-nún [Al-kádir] left his capital in the most wretched and ignominious plight possible. He carried an astrolabe in his hand, with which he intended to take the auspicious hour for setting out [for Valencia]. At the sight of such behaviour the Moslems were dumb with astonishment, and the unbelievers laughed with contempt.

About the taking of Toledo we find the following in Ibn Bessám: "At the time that civil wars were succeeding each other in Toledo, and that dire calamities were daily being heaped on the inhabitants of that place, when the Franks were striving to convert their happiness and their joy into misfortune and exile, there happened in Toledo a most marvellous circumstance, which was looked upon by every one as the harbinger of its approaching ruin. Corn had remained
"stored in the subterranean magazines of that city for upwards of fifty years, "without showing the least sign of corruption; and was, moreover, in such "abundance, that, as long as the siege lasted, no restriction whatever was imposed "upon the people, who could use it in any quantity they liked. Yet when it "came to the year in which the enemy of God took possession of Toledo, the "corn began gradually to grow damaged, and corruption at last seized the whole "of it. This miraculous occurrence warned the citizens of Toledo that it was "the will of God to visit them with the gales of affliction and adversity; and "so it was; for, shortly after, the enemy of God took Toledo, and reduced the "inhabitants of that wealthy city to his obedience."

"Alfonso," continues Ibn Bessám, "began to govern the people with justice "and moderation, hoping to gain them over to polytheism, and make them "embrace his abominable religion; but, seeing that he could not accomplish "this, he set about polluting the principal mosque and turning it into a church "for the celebration of his detestable rites. The very day in which Alfonso "issued his orders to that effect, which was one day of the month of Rabi' "the first, A. H. 496, (Oct. 14, A. D. 1102,) the Sheikh Al-moghámí (may God "show him mercy!) happened to go into the mosque and to say his prayers, "bidding all those who were present to do the same, and to read a certain chapter "of the Korán. Presently the Franks (may God Almighty exterminate them all!) "make their appearance in the mosque and begin to pull down the kiblah. Not "one of them, however, dared interrupt the Sheikh in his devotions, or expel "him from the mosque; God protecting him and the pious Moslems who were "with him, until he had finished reading his prayers, and had performed a "prostration, when he raised his head and wept profusely before he quitted the "mosque."

One day, a traitor Moslem said to the Christian king, "Thou shouldst put "on a crown like those of thy ancestors, who preceded thee in this kingdom;" and he answered, "Not until we have taken your city, Cordova, and taken the "bells which hang there as lamps, that I may ornament my royal diadem with "them." God, however, was pleased to give Alfonso the lie, sending against him the commander of the Moslems and defender of the faith, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin, to prop up the tottering edifice of Islám, and to humble the pride of the insolent Christian.

But whilst the Galicians were assailing the Moslems on their northern frontier, the Franks (Aragonese) were not inactive. In the year 456 (beginning Dec. 24, A. D. 1063) they collected in large numbers and laid siege to Valencia, whose inhabitants were then untrained to war, and as little used to the hard life of a
camp, as to the handling of the spear and the sword. They were, on the contrary, plunged in pleasure and sloth, and thought of nothing but eating and drinking. At this juncture the Franks appeared in sight of the city, showing an inclination to become the guests of the Moslems, to join their convivial parties, and to take up their abode in the city. In this hope, however, they were completely disappointed, and, although they tried to deceive the inhabitants, they were themselves deceived. At last they retired from before the walls of Valencia; upon which the citizens, thinking that they were flying before them, went out in large numbers to attack the enemy, commanded by their king, 'Abdu-l-'azíz Ibn Abí 'A'mír, and arrayed in all their finery. The Franks, however, had only retreated to a short distance from Valencia, to a place called Paterna, where they lay in ambush. No sooner had 'Abdu-l-'azíz and his host made their appearance than they rushed upon them, threw their ranks into confusion, and, following up the pursuit, slew or took prisoners all the Moslems, with the exception of a few. In allusion to this, a poet of that time composed two verses, which we have given elsewhere (vol. i. p. 68), and need not repeat here.7

The same thing, observes Ibn Bessám, happened afterwards to the people of Toledo; for when the enemies of God, after slaying numbers of the Moslems in a battle, showed themselves before their city, the citizens came out to them dressed in all their finery, and were defeated. Among the spoils made by the Christians on this occasion were no less than one thousand ghifárah,8 besides other [useless] articles of dress.

In the year 456 (A.D. 1064), the Christians took the city of Barbashter (Barbastro), one of the strongest places in all the Thagher (Aragon). Ibn Hayyán calls it the kassábah (citadel) of the country of Birtanieh,9 and says that it was close to Saragossa. Its capture is thus related by the above historian: "The army of Al-ardecelis 10 encamped before Barbastro and besieged it. Yúsuf Ibn Suleymán Ibn Húd [at that time King of Saragossa], instead of hastening, as he ought to have done, to the relief of the city, left the inhabitants to defend themselves as they best could; and the consequence was that the enemy got possession of it, as we will presently relate. The Christians besieged it for forty consecutive days without gaining any advantage, until, having received intelligence that the garrison were divided and had quarrelled among themselves, owing to the scarcity of provisions, they pressed their attacks with increased vigour, and succeeded in introducing five thousand of their best men at arms into the suburbs. The Moslems were astounded, and betook themselves to the inner city, where they fortified themselves. Great battles then ensued between the two hosts, in which no less than five hundred Franks fell. At last
"it happened that the subterraneous aqueduct, by means of which the city was
supplied with water from the river, got out of repair; several large stones having
fallen into and choked the course, the progress of the water was arrested, and
the supply cut off from the river. Upon which the inhabitants of Barbastro,
despairing of their lives, hastened to the camp of the enemy, and bought security
for their persons and property at the price of certain sums of money, and a
number of slaves, which they immediately delivered into the conqueror's hands.
No sooner, however, had the Christian king received the money and other articles
stipulated in the convention, than he violated it; and, falling on the poor
inhabitants, slaughtered the whole of them, with the exception of the Káyed
Ibnu-t-tawil, and the Kádí Ibn 'Isa, who, with a few more of the principal
inhabitants of the place, contrived to escape from the general massacre. The
spoil made by the Christians on this occasion, whether in money, furniture,
or apparel, exceeds all computation; since we are assured that the share of
one of their chiefs only, who was the general of the cavalry," amounted to
about fifteen hundred young maidens, besides five hundred loads of merchandise,
dresses, ornaments, and every description of property, the whole of which he
carried to his stronghold. The number of Moslems who perished or were
made captives on this occasion amounted to one hundred thousand souls;
although others reduce that number to about one-half.
Among the extraordinary occurrences of this siege, the following is one. At
the time when the aqueduct got out of repair, and the supply of water was
cut off from the city, there was a woman standing on the ramparts, who entreated
all those who came near to give her a sip of water for herself or her son.
Presently a Christian soldier made his appearance, and told her that if she would
give him every thing she had on,—dress, jewels, &c.,—he would bring her some
water wherewithal to quench her thirst; and the woman did not hesitate one
moment to accept the bargain.
The reason which induced the Christian king to order the massacre of the
inhabitants was this. They say that when he entered Barbastro and saw the
numbers of the population, fear lodged in his heart, and he became apprehensive
lest the Moslems of the neighbouring districts should come to their assistance,
and aid them to regain possession of their city. He therefore decided on
exterminating them all, if he could, and ordered a general slaughter; which lasted
until upwards of six thousand Moslems fell by the swords of the Christians.
At last the king ordered the massacre to cease, and commanded that such of the
inhabitants as remained should be spared, and allowed to quit the city. When the
order was made public, the rush of the people to the gate [of the city] was such
"that a considerable number of them lost their lives by suffocation; others were
"wiser, they let themselves down from the walls by means of ropes; all, however,
"ran to the river in order to quench their thirst. About seven hundred of the
"principal inhabitants of the place, fearing for their lives, waited until their fate
"should be known. When the massacre had ceased, and the Christians had
"taken as many captives as they wanted, and the remainder had either fled through
"the gates, or let themselves down from the walls, or perished in the pressure,
"it was announced by the public crier that the slaughter had ended, and that
"every citizen might return in safety to his dwelling; then they left their place of
"concealment and hastened home to their families. No sooner, however, had they
"arrived there, than, by the command of their king, the Franks (may the curses
"of God fall on their heads!) summoned them out of their houses, and led them
"all into captivity with their wives and children. May the Almighty save us from
"a similar calamity!

"Another portion of the inhabitants fled to the top of the neighbouring
"mountains, and fortified themselves there; but, being destitute of water, they
"were on the point of dying of thirst, when messengers arrived from the king
"to grant them security and pardon. They then came down from the mountains
"more dead than alive, owing to the raging thirst to which they had long been
"exposed, and were allowed to proceed unmolested wherever they pleased; but
"having fallen in with a party of the enemy's cavalry, who were not aware of
"the truce entered into with them, they were all put to death with the exception of
"a few who contrived to escape."

The same writer adds, "It was an invariable custom with the Christians, Excesses com-
"mited by the Christians.
"whenever they took a town by force of arms, to ravish the daughters in the
"presence of their fathers, and the women before the eyes of their husbands and
"families. But on the taking of Barbastro the excesses of this kind committed
"by them pass all belief;" the Moslems had never before experienced any thing
"like it. In short, such were the crimes and excesses committed by the Christians
"on this occasion, that there is no pen eloquent enough to describe them.

"When the Christian king had made up his mind to return to his own country,
"he selected from among the sons and daughters of the Moslems the most beau-
tiful maidens and the handsomest boys; and having also selected from among
"the married women those who were the youngest and prettiest, he sent them
"onwards to his capital, intending to present them to his superiors in rank and
"dignity. He himself, after leaving in Barbastro a garrison of fifteen hundred
"horse and two thousand foot, returned to his dominions.

"We will put an end to this afflicting and heart-rending narrative," continues
Ibnu Hayyán, "by recording an anecdote which will of itself convey a sufficient "idea of the manifold sufferings of the Moslems on this occasion. Some time after "this catastrophe, a Jewish merchant went to Barbastro for the purpose of "redeeming the daughter of one of the principal inhabitants, who had escaped "from the massacre. At the division of the spoil, the maiden had fallen to the "lot of a count, whom the Jew well knew, one of those left in charge of the city "[after the king's departure]. The Jew went to the count's residence, and, "causing himself to be announced by the servants, was admitted into his presence. "He there found the Christian occupying the part of the house where its late "Moslem proprietor usually sat; reclining on his very couch, and clothed in his "most valuable robes. The room, however, with its carpets, cushions, and "hangings, was in the same state as when its owner left it on the fatal day; and "nothing had been changed or touched of its [arabesque] paintings and ornaments. "His female slaves, with their hair tied, were all standing by his bed-side, ready to "obey his will.

"The count," said the Jew, "welcomed me, and inquired the object of my visit; "which I told him plainly and without disguise, pointing to the many maidens "who were in the room, and in whose number was the one I came to redeem. "The count smiled, and said to me, in the language of his nation, 'Be quick, then, "and if the girl thou seekest be among these, point her out to me; if not, thou "mayst go to my castle, where thou wilt find many more among my prisoners "and captives; look for the person thou meanest,—we will then come to terms.' "I replied, 'I need not repair to thy castle, the person in search of whom I am "come is among yonder maidens; if thou consentest to part with her, I am ready "to meet thy demands.'—And what hast thou brought to tempt me?' said the "count. 'I have brought thee fine gold in quantity, and costly and new mer-
"chandise,' was my answer. 'And thou, no doubt, flatterest thyself that thou "hast brought things to tempt me, and which I do not possess already. O "Bahjah!' said he, addressing one of his female slaves, 'take some of thy fellow-
"servants with thee, and bring here the large chest, that we may show him some "of our own property.' The chest was brought into the room, and Bahjah "proceeded to take out, first, a bag containing ten thousand gold dinárs; next, "several bags full of dirhems; lastly, many trays covered with gold ornaments, and "jewels in such profusion, that, when displayed before the Christian, there were "enough to cover him withal, and conceal him [from my view]. The count then "said to Bahjah, 'Bring yonder wardrobe closer;' which she did, taking out such "a profusion of costly silken and cotton robes, as well as gold and silver brocades, "of every colour and pattern, that I was actually bewildered, and saw plainly that I
"had brought nothing with me to be compared with the least valuable of the articles exhibited before me. But what was my astonishment when the Christian told me that what I saw was but a small portion of the treasures which he possessed, and that he had so many other precious articles of all sorts, that nothing could be produced which was either new or desirable to him. He then swore by his God, that had he possessed none of the valuable objects [exhibited] before me, and had I come for the express purpose of offering them to him as a ransom for the fair captive, he would still not part with her; and he added, 'This maiden is the daughter of the late owner of this house, who, if I am rightly informed, was a man of rank and influence among his fellow-citizens; and for this reason I intend to keep her in my service, as the people of her nation were wont to do with our women, whenever they fell into their hands, at the time that they were all-powerful in this country. Now that the scales are turned, and that we have the superiority over them, we do as they did; nay, we do still more. Seest thou yonder youthful and delicate maiden (pointing to one who stood in the room with a lute in her hand), she is actually trembling from fear of my anger.'—'Take thy lute,' said he to her in his barbarous jargon, 'and sing to this our visitor in thy plaintive strain.' The maid took the lute, as she was commanded, and sat down to tune it; and I saw the tears rolling down her fair cheeks; but, the Christian darting upon her a look of anger, she attempted to sing some verses which I did not understand any more than her Christian master; although, strange to say, he kept drinking draughts of the liquor he had before him, and giving signs of mirth [as if he understood the meaning of them]. At last, seeing that I could not gain my object, I took leave of the count, and went elsewhere [about the city] to dispose of my goods, when I saw in the hands of the commonest Christians such amount of plunder and captives as left me completely bewildered.

"About the end of Jumáda, the first, of the ensuing year (A. H. 457)," continues Ibnu Hayyán, "the news came to Cordova that Barbastro had been retaken by the Moslems. This happened thus: Ahmed Al-muktadir Ibn Húd, through whose criminal negligence that city had been lost, (since, in order to revenge himself upon the inhabitants who had gone over to his brother, he had suffered them to become the prey of the Christians,) wishing to silence those who spoke ill of him, to wash out the indelible spot cast upon his character, and to atone for a sin which nothing short of the immense forgiveness of God can obliterate, marched to Barbastro at the head of his own troops and the re-inforcements which his ally 'Abbád [Al-mu'tadhed] had sent him. Having there attacked the unbelievers, Ahmed displayed so much courage and performed such feats
"of arms, that even the cowards [in his army] hesitated, and felt an inclination "to behave well. (May God pour his favour on the brave!) The Moslems and "the unbelievers fought with renewed fury, until, at last, God was pleased to grant "the victory to the former, and to disperse their enemies, who turned their backs "in confusion, and ran tumultuously towards the city gates, followed by the "Moslems, who entered along with them, and slaughtered the whole of the "garrison with the exception of a few, who fled the field of battle [in another "direction], of a few children whom compassion saved from death, or those "among their principal men who redeemed themselves by the payment of heavy "ransoms. All the rest were either put to death or made slaves, together with "their wives and children.

"In this manner was the city of Barbastro restored to the Moslems by the "will of the Creator of all things, with the loss of about fifty of the bravest "Moslems only, who fell martyrs to the faith, and whose names God immediately "wrote down, to give them entrance into Paradise. The loss of the unbelievers "was very considerable, since it amounted to one thousand horsemen and five "hundred foot. The city was purified from the filth of idolatry, and cleansed "from the stains of infidelity and polytheism."

But to return. No sooner did the tyrant Alfonso see himself master of Toledo, and of all those towns which had formerly acknowledged the rule of Al-kádir Ibn Dhí-n-nún, than he began to entertain the project of reducing the whole of Andalus under his sway. He accordingly made successive incursions into the territory of Ibn Al-afttas, King of Badajoz, as well as into that of Al-mu'tamed Ibn 'Abbad, at that time King of Seville, taking so many of their towns and castles, and causing such havoc and ruin, that those monarchs, together with many other petty princes, consented to pay an annual tribute to Alfonso, rather than have their dominions continually exposed to his devastating fury.

What follows is extracted from the Raudhu-l-mu'attar fi dhikri-m-modon wa-l-akttár, by the Faquih Abú 'Abdillah Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Abdi-l-mu'anem Al-himyari. "Whilst Al-mu'tamed was occupied in making war against Ibn Samádeh, King of "Almeria, he let pass the time at which he used to pay his annual tribute to Al-"fonso. However, he sent it to him as usual; but the Christian king was so highly "displeased and incensed [at the delay], that he would not receive it, and required "that Al-mu'tamed should, in addition [to the tribute], give up to him certain "fortresses which he named. He went still further; he asked that his wife, "Alkomjittah (Constanza?), who was then with child, should be allowed to "reside in the great mosque of Cordova, that she might be delivered [in that "sacred spot]. Alfonso was induced to make this extraordinary request at the
instigation of his bishops and priests, who recommended the measure to him
on account of a church of great veneration among the Christians, which stood
once westward of the great mosque, and was pulled down by the Moslems, in
order to build on its site the present magnificent structure. He asked, therefore,
that his wife should be allowed to reside at Medinah Az-zahrá, a city west of
Cordova, built by An-násir lidín-illah, who expended much time and treasure
in its construction, ornamenting it with the most costly rarities, with coloured
jaspers and transparent marbles, as well as with the far-famed [marble] fountain
resting on a single pillar, which he caused to be brought to Cordova from distant
lands, and in the acquisition of which he is said to have spent immense sums,
without counting those spent in the transport [to Cordova], and the salary of
the men employed [in the operation]. 'Abdu-r-rahmán, moreover, laboured
himself in the building, watching its progress, and encouraging the workmen;
the pleasure which he derived from that occupation being so great, that he
once left off going to the mosque for three consecutive Fridays; and when he
appeared on the fourth, the austere theologian, Mundhir Ibn Sa‘id Al-bolúttí,
who was then the Khattib (preacher), alluded to him in his sermon, and, in the
presence of the assembled multitude, threatened him [with the fire of hell], as is
well known. The palace of Az-zahrá was one of the most magnificent residences
ever built by a king in the dominions of Islám. Those who wish for further
information may consult the work of Ibnu Hayyán.

But, to return to Alfonso. His physicians and priests advised him to procure
a residence for his wife at Az-zahrá, in order that she might visit the mosque of
Cordova every day until the time of her delivery should come, thus combining the
salubrity and amenity of the spot with the sanctity and virtues of the place where
she was expected to be confined. The bearer of the message was a Jew, who was
one of Alfonso’s ministers. As may be presumed, Al-mu’tamed indignantly
refused to grant his indecent request. The Jew insisted, but the King of Seville
replied that he would never consent to it. Again the Jew repeated his demand
a third time, treating Al-mu’tamed in a very indecorous manner, and using
language which that spirited monarch could not well brook; upon which, being
unable to bear his impudence any longer, he seized an inkstand, which was close
by him, and hurled it at the head of the Jew. The missile was aimed with
such dexterity, and directed with such force, that it lodged in the skull of the
Jew, whose brain fell down his throat. After this, Al-mu’tamed ordered that
the Jew should be nailed to a post, with his head downwards, at the entrance
of the bridge of Cordova; which was done as he commanded.

When Al-mu’tamed’s anger was cooled, he sent for his theologians, in order to
"consult them as to the justice of what he had done with the Jew; upon which, "one of them, whose name was Mohammed Ibn-t-tallâh, told him that he was "perfectly justified in doing so, since the ambassador had outstripped the bounds "of his embassy, and uttered words which deserved death. Mohammed then told "his comrades, 'I have hastened to give him my advice, from fear he should not "persevere in his laudable purpose of opposing the enemy, and not permitting "Alfonso to inflict such an affront upon the Moslems.'" 14

The above is differently related by Ibn-l-lebbânah, in his history of the Bení 'Abbád, as well as by Ibn-l-khattâb 15 in the article 'Al-mu'tamed.' We here subjoin a third version, borrowed from the historian Ibn-l-athîr, in his Kâmîl (complete history). "Al-mu'tamed Ibn 'Abbád was the most powerful king in "Andalus, and the one who possessed most dominions, being master of Cordova, "Seville, and other cities; yet with all this he paid tribute to Alfonso every "year. On the taking of Toledo by Alfonso, Al-mu'tamed, as usual, sent him "the tribute; but the Christian would not receive it, and wrote to him a threat-en ing letter, saying, that unless he surrendered to him all his fortresses, and "kept only the plains and the open towns for the Moslems, he would march "his army to Cordova and take that city [from him]. The ambassador intrusted "with this message proceeded with a numerous suite, amounting to five hundred "horsemen. Al-mu'tamed lodged him, and divided his followers among the "officers of his army, to whom he afterwards gave instructions to put every one "of their infidel guests to death; which was executed according to his orders. He "then sent for the ambassador, and, seizing him by the throat, he shook him and "beat him until the eyes came out of his head. Three men only [out of the five "hundred] escaped the general massacre; they returned to Alfonso, and told him "what had happened. Alfonso was then on the road to Cordova, which he was "going to besiege; but when he heard the news brought to him, he returned "immediately to Toledo, to provide himself with battering machines and stores "for a siege, and to increase his army.

"When Alfonso heard what had been done with the Jew, he swore by his God "that he would march upon Seville, and besiege Al-mu'tamed in his palace. To "that end he collected two armies; giving the command of one to a Christian dog, "who was one of his most enterprising generals, with instructions to march to "the province of Beja, in the western part of Andalus, and, after laying waste its "lands and districts, to proceed by the road of Liblah (Niebla) to Seville, where he "promised to meet him on a certain day in sight of the suburb called Taryánah "(Triana). Accordingly, Alfonso put himself at the head of numberless troops, "and, following a different road from that taken by his general [in command of
"the other army], arrived, according to his promise, in sight of Seville, after laying waste and destroying every thing on his way to that city. His general did the same, and both armies encamped on the bank of the Guadalquivir, opposite to the palace of Ibn 'Abbád. One day, during his stay there, Alfonso wrote an abusive letter to Al-mu'tamed, in which he said to him, 'My stay at this place has already been too long. The heat is great and the flies intolerable; make me a present of thy palace, that I may solace myself in its shadowy gardens and keep away the flies from my face.' On the receipt of this letter Al-mu'tamed wrote on the back of it—' We have perused thy letter, and understood its arrogant and taunting contents; we intend to procure thee shortly such a shadowy spot, made of the hide of the lamt (hippopotamus), as thou wilt comfortably lie under, if God be pleased' [meaning the shields of the Almoravides].

When Al-mu'tamed’s letter was brought to Alfonso, and he had its contents read over to him, he understood the meaning [of those expressions], and became suddenly thoughtful and silent, as a man who is taken by surprise. Being, however, a very shrewd and treacherous man, he began to circulate through Andalus the rumour of Al-mu'tamed’s intentions, and how he was planning to call to his help Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, the Almoravide, and give him the entrance into Andalus. The generality of the Moslems were delighted at this news, as it opened to them the gates of hope. Not so the petty kings of Andalus, who had no sooner ascertained Al-mu'tamed’s real designs, and the step he had taken without consulting them, than they began seriously to occupy themselves in that business. Some wrote to him; others had interviews with him; all warned him against the determination he had taken, and made him fear its consequences, saying to him—' A kingdom without heirs and one long sword do not find room in the same scabbard.' To this Al-mu'tamed replied with that saying which became afterwards a proverb [among the people of Andalus], ' Better be a camel driver than a driver of pigs,' meaning that he would rather be Yúsuf’s prisoner, and guard his camels in the Desert, than become the captive of Alfonso, and keep his swine in Castile. He then said to those who upbraided him for his resolution—' My present position is of two sorts, one of doubt, and one of certainty, and I must needs choose between the two. As to the one of doubt, it is whether I am to apply to Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín or to Alfonso, since it is equally possible that either of the two with whom I treat may either keep his promise faithfully or not keep it at all. This is the position of doubt; as to that of certainty, it is, that if I lean for support on Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, I do an act agreeable to God; whereas if, on the contrary, I lean on Alfonso, I am certain of incurring the wrath of God; and, therefore, the position...
"Of doubt being in the present instance clear and evident, why should I leave "what is agreeable to God to take that which is offensive to him?" These reasons "allayed in some measure the fears of the petty kings of Andalus, and they "desisted from their reproaches.

"Al-mu'tamed having made up his mind [to implore the assistance of Yusuf], "wrote to Al-mutawakkel 'Omar Ibn Mohammed [Ibn Al-afttas], King of Badajoz, "and to 'Abdullah Ibn Habús As-senháji, King of Granada, commanding" them "to send their chief Kádis [to Seville], which they did. He himself summoned "to his presence the Kádi-l-jam'ah (supreme judge) of Cordova, whose name "was Abú Bekr 'Obeydullah Ibn Ad'ham, and who was one of the wisest men "of his time. When the three Kádis had been assembled in Seville, Al-mu'tamed "added to them his own Wizir, Abú Bekr Ibn Zeydún, and having signified to "them his intention to send them all four to Africa, as ambassadors to Yusuf "Ibn Táshefín, he gave them the necessary instructions, and provided them with "the means to cross over to Africa, leaving entirely to their discretion the com- "position of the address to be made to that sovereign, and recommending par- "ticularly to his own Wizir, Ibn Zeydún, to uphold his master's royal dignity."

The historian Ibnu-l-athír, after relating what Al-mu'tamed did with the am- "bassadors [of Alfonso], and his putting them to death, and the fears of the kings "of Andalus when they heard of his rash act, says, "That a number of chiefs "collected together [in Cordova], and went to the dwelling of the Kádi Abú "'Abdillah Ibn Mohammed, whom they addressed in the following words: 'Dost "thou not perceive the humble and abject condition to which the Moslems [of "this country] have been reduced, paying tribute [to the infidels], after being "so long in the habit of receiving it [from them]. The Franks have subdued "the greater part of Andalus, a small portion of which only remains in the "hands of the Moslems. If the present state of things continue for any length "of time, we may be sure that the Christians will soon regain in this country "the position they held [before the conquest]. We have thought of an expedient "to save ourselves from the impending ruin.'—'And what is that?' said Abú "Mohammed to them. 'To write to the Arabs of Africa [to come to us], and "to lavish upon them on their arrival half our riches. We will then go out "with them to fight for the cause of God.' To this Abú 'Abdillah replied— "'I only fear that if they once come among us they will not leave this country, "and will settle in it, as they have done in Eastern Africa; they will leave the "Franks alone, and they will set about [destroying] us; and yet, with all that, "the Almoravides are better [than the Christians], and more closely connected "with us [by religion].' The assembly then requested Abú 'Abdillah to write
"to the commander of the Moslems [Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín], asking him to cross over
"to Andalus, or to send an army to their assistance. While they were occupied
"in these transactions, Al-mu’tamed Ibn ‘Abbád went to Cordova. Immediately
"upon his arrival, the Kádí Ibn Ad’ham went up to him and informed him of
"what had been determined upon in the assembly. That monarch approved of
"the plan, and told Ibn Ad’ham that he should be his ambassador to the African
"king; but Ibn Ad’ham refused to accept the charge offered to him, as he wished
"to keep clear of all the consequences. Al-mu’tamed, however, insisted, and
"he went."

The reader must have observed some slight discrepancy between the account
of Ibn ‘Abdi-1-mu’anem (Abú ’Abdillah Ibn ‘Abdillah), and that of Ibnu-l-athír; but as both authors are well known to have borrowed their information from
the most authentic sources, we have preferred, in pursuance of the plan which we traced out to ourselves in the composition of the present work, to afford our
readers several versions, however contradictory and opposite, of the same event, rather than deprive them of the least particle of useful information.

"During the course of these events Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín Al-lamtúní was estab-
lishing his power in Africa, and extending the sway of the Almoravides. When
he had conquered the whole of Western Africa, and founded the cities of Morocco
and Telemsán, the new;18 when all the Berber tribes, dreading his vengeance, had
submitted to his rule and obeyed his commands; when, in short, he had reduced
large districts and extensive provinces under his sway, he conceived the design of
crossing over to the island of Andalus, and, after turning it over in his own
mind, began to prepare the ships and other things necessary for the undertaking.

When the petty kings of Andalus were informed of Yúsuf’s project, they
disapproved of his intended passage to their island, and made every warlike
preparation to resist it. Yet they were all unwilling to incur his enmity, as
by doing so they would have been placed between two enemies, the Franks
on the north, and the Moslems on the south. At that time the Franks were
more successful than ever they had been against the Moslems; and they plun-
dered and laid waste every thing before them. Now and then only a peace would
be concluded between the contending parties, in consideration of a certain tribute
which the Moslems agreed to pay annually to their enemies. Yet with all this
the Franks were in no less awe of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, the ruler of the West,
whose fame and military exploits had already reached their ears. They knew of the
reach of his authority, the extent of his empire, and the rapidity of his conquests;
they were well aware of the intrepidity of his followers, the wearers of the veil,
and of the Sheikhs of the tribes of Senhájah; and they dreaded their dexterity in
wielding all the weapons of war, from the sharp-edged sword,—which, handled
by them, cuts a horseman in twain,—to the ponderous lance, which goes through
both horse and rider.

These reasons rendered Yusuf formidable to all those who sought to attack
him; so that at the same time that the kings of Andalus were anxious to take
shelter under the shade of his power, they feared for their dominions, lest Yusuf
should cross over in person, should inspect [and like] their country, and keep it
for himself. No sooner, therefore, were the rulers of Andalus apprised of
Yusuf's determination to cross the Straits, than they sent to acquaint one
another of that circumstance, and to ask each other's advice as to how they
should act in the emergency. Al-mu'tamed Ibn 'Abbád, King of Seville, being
the most powerful among them, as well as the one who enjoyed the greatest reputa-
tion for his courage and his abilities, the rulers of Andalus naturally clung to him
for advice. After much deliberation it was unanimously agreed among them,
to ascertain whether Yusuf really intended to cross over to Andalus, and if so, to
write to him, asking him to desist from his undertaking, and to say that they
were under his obedience. The letter, which was written in the name of all by a
Ká'tib of Andalus, ran thus:— 'If thou desist from thy undertaking, and do
not attack us, thou wilt act generously, and thy name will not be coupled
with an unjust or dishonourable deed. On the other hand, if we answer thy call
and acknowledge thee for our master, we shall do that which is wise and prudent,
and our names will not be coupled with a foolish and inconsiderate act; we have
therefore chosen for thee and for ourselves that which is generous and wise;
we will acknowledge thee as our lord and sovereign, and thou wilt remain where
thou now art, and allow these poor dwellers in tents to continue as they
are; for upon their preservation depends, in a certain measure, the duration and
strength of thy empire.'

Yusuf Ibn Tashfín, although endowed with a clear understanding and much
wit, did not understand the Arabic language; so when he received the above
letter with the presents from the kings of Andalus, he handed it over to his
secretary, who was equally well versed in the language of the Arabs as in that of
the Almoravides, and asked him what it meant. 'O King!' said the secretary to
Yusuf, 'this letter is from the kings of Andalus, who exalt and honour thee, and
acknowledge thee as their master, and place themselves under thy obedience;
they beseech thee not to treat them as enemies, since they are also Moslems
and dwellers in tents, and not to attack them, since they have already enough
to do to fight the infidels beyond their settlements. They tell thee that their
territories are narrow and exhausted, and will not bear armies [like thine].
"They conclude by entreating thee not to withdraw from them that generous protection which thou hast dispensed to all those who have submitted to thy rule in the West.' Yúsuf then said to his secretary, 'What thinkest thou of all this?'—'O King!' answered the secretary, 'thou must know that the splendour of a crown is such that it must be owned by those even who are unwilling to [own it]; that it is therefore incumbent upon a king, who has power and riches, to forgive, whenever his forgiveness is implored, and to give away whenever he is asked: the more largely and profusely he bestows his gifts, the more his fame spreads and the more his power increases, and his dominions extend; for if once it becomes an honour to be the vassal of such a king, people will flock to him on all sides without difficulty, and he will become the heir of an extensive empire without waiting for the death of others. Know that one of the great kings of yore, well versed in the means [to be employed] to arrive at empire, said,—The generous man becomes a lord [among his own people]; the lord rises to be a chief; the chief is the ruler of the country.'

'When Yúsuf heard his secretary utter the above sentiments, he was at once convinced of the soundness of the advice and the truth of his words, and he accordingly directed him to write an answer to that effect in his name, and read it over to him before he sent it to Andalus. The secretary then wrote as follows:

'In the name of God the merciful! the compassionate! [This letter is] from Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, who salutes you all, and invokes upon you the mercy and the blessings of God. (May they descend at once on the saluter and the saluted!)

Know ye that whatever you possess of empire, in the broadest acceptation [of this word], is perfectly secure in your hands, and that you are welcome to its possession; that we entertain for you all the greatest regard and esteem, and that therefore we are anxious to see good faith and amity exist between us, and hope that you will treat us as brothers. God is the imparter of help both to you and to me.'

The letter being written, the secretary read it in his native tongue to Yúsuf, who approved of its contents. Having then prepared some suitable presents for the Andalusian rulers, among which were many valuable shields covered with the skins of the lant, and which could not be procured elsewhere than in his own dominions, Yúsuf gave his reply to the messenger and dismissed him.

When the kings of Andalus received Yúsuf's letter, and had perused it, they were extremely satisfied, and they praised and extolled above all things the modesty and moderation of that Sultán. Rejoiced at the idea of having him for an ally, their souls were inflamed, and their courage rekindled to oppose the Franks; and when, in the course of time, they saw that all their efforts to
humble the pride of the infidels proved useless, they no longer hesitated to send another embassy to Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin, requesting him to cross over to Andalus, or to send an army to their assistance.

Such was the state of affairs when the ambassadors of Al-mu'tamed arrived at his court. Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin had [for some time past] seen at the capital of his dominions numbers of men from the frontier towns [reduced by Alfonso], who came with tears in their eyes and sorrow in their hearts, calling to God and their brothers in Islám [for protection], and imploring the Kádís and theologians of his court and the Wizírs of his government to intercede for them. Yúsuf had listened to their prayers, and sympathised with their sufferings; his heart had melted at the narrative of their misfortunes. Just as the ambas- sadors of Al-mu'tamed were crossing the Straits, Yúsuf was sending emissaries over to Andalus [to ascertain the real state of the country]. The ambassadors arrived [at Morocco], and Yúsuf received them with every show of attention and honour, and promised to give the help required, which being reported to Al- mu'tamed, he fitted out a fleet at Seville to communicate with the governor of Ceuta, and to keep him well informed of the movements of Yúsuf. After various negotiations between the ambassadors of Al-mu'tamed and Yúsuf, the Kádís returned to Seville, and the Almoravide Sultán crossed the Strait, and landed without the least difficulty at Al-jezíratu-l-khadhrá (Algesiras), the inhabitants of which opened their gates, and went out to him with all sorts of provisions, and erected a market-place, to which abundance of provisions was taken [from the neighbouring districts]. It having been announced by the public crier that Yúsuf had arrived in the country [for the purpose of waging war against Alfonso], numbers of volunteers flocked from all parts to his banner, until the public squares and the mosques [of the place] would no longer hold them.” So far the author of the Raudhú-l-mu'attar.

Ibn Ad'ham and the rest of the ambassadors found Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin at Ceuta, and, having delivered to him the credentials [of Al-mu'tamed], proceeded to describe to him the state of Andalus, and the constant fear in which the Moslems were of Alfonso’s power.
CHAPTER VI.

Yúsuf crosses the Strait—Marches to Seville—Preparations of Alfonso—His dream—His message to Yúsuf—March of the Mohammedan army—Arrival at Badajoz—Yúsuf's letter to Alfonso—The Christian king tries to deceive the Moslems—His plans known and disconcerted—His attack upon Al-mu'tamed's camp—Perilous situation of that monarch—Yúsuf marches to his aid—Extricates him from his danger—Takes and plunders the Christian camp—Alfonso is wounded in the thigh—Flees the field of battle—Dies of sorrow and disappointment—Yúsuf visits Seville—Is magnificently entertained by the king of that city—The Almoravides evince a disposition to remain in Andalus—Advice given to Al-mu'tamed—Yúsuf's departure for Africa.

Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin had no sooner heard the report of the ambassadors [of Al-mu'tamed], than he gave immediate orders for the crossing of his army, which came [to Ceuta] one division after the other. When all had arrived, Yúsuf crossed the Strait and joined Al-mu'tamed in Seville. This monarch had also made immense preparations, since, besides the troops of Seville and a considerable force sent him by the people of Cordova, he was joined by numbers of volunteers from the different provinces of Andalus. Ibn Khallekán says, that Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin had camels transported to Andalus in such numbers that the country was actually filled with them, and that their cries reached the sky. The people of Andalus had never seen camels, and their horses were greatly frightened at them. The sight of one of those animals, or his cry, was enough to make a horse rear and throw his rider. It was a good idea of Yúsuf's to take camels to Andalus, and to train them to war, and surround his camp with them, for they were afterwards of great assistance to him by throwing into disorder the Christian cavalry.

But let us again see what the author of the Raudhu-l-mu'attar says on this topic, who not only has dwelt at full length on the history of Andalus, but was a native of that country, although I am unable to say to what tribe he belonged, or in what city he had his dwelling. "When Yúsuf, with all his army, had "crossed [the Strait] and landed at Jezíratu-l-khadhrá [Algesiras], he marched "to Seville in the finest order, army after army, general after general, and tribe "after tribe. Al-mu'tamed sent his own son to meet him, and issued orders "to the governors of the districts [through which Yúsuf had to pass] to furnish
him and his army with provisions, and whatever else they might want. Every
where Yusuf met with a reception that pleased him exceedingly, and he was
highly rejoiced. In this manner the several divisions of his army marched under
their respective commanders until they arrived in sight of Seville. At the
approach of Yusuf, Al-mu'tamed went out to receive him, escorted by one
hundred cavaliers and the principal officers [of his court]. At a short distance
from the spot where Yusuf had encamped, Al-mu'tamed put his horse to a
gallop, which being perceived by the people of the camp, they also went out
towards him. Yusuf then left his tent and met Al-mu'tamed alone, when both
princes shook hands and embraced each other, and showed friendship and sin-
cerity, thanking God for his favours, and recommending to each other courage
[in the field] and compassion [towards the Moslems]. They congratulated each
other upon their determination to wage war against the infidel, and prayed to
God Almighty that he would render their act pure and acceptable to him.
They then separated; Yusuf returned to his camp, Al-mu'tamed to his own
quarters, where, having collected together the presents, gifts, and provisions
which he had brought for Yusuf, he sent them to the tent [of that monarch].
Al-mu'tamed and Yusuf passed that night under their tents; but on the ensuing
morning, after the prayer of sunrise, all mounted on horseback, and the former
having proposed to ride on to Seville, Yusuf accepted the proposition, and
gave orders to that effect. Once in the capital of Al-mu'tamed, the Africans
witnessed enough of the splendour of royalty to make them glad. There was
no king of Andalus but who either hastened to Seville in person, or sent some
one to represent him, appearing there at the head of his own army, or sending
it under the command of an experienced general. [It is true] the people of
the Desert had done the same with respect to Yusuf, every one of the tribes
or districts [of Western Africa] sending down their contingent of men to assist
in the undertaking.

On the other hand, when Alfonso had ascertained that Yusuf was marching
in hostile array against him, he summoned to arms all the men of his own and
the neighbouring kingdom, as well as those of the countries beyond them;
his priests, bishops, and monks raising every where their crosses and displaying
their gospels [in order to engage the people in the contest]. By these means
he collected round him an innumerable host of Franks and Galicians, and
established couriers to inform him of the movements of each army.

These preparations being complete, Alfonso wrote a letter to Al-mu'tamed,
in which he said to him,—'Your friend Yusuf is no doubt tired of his native
country, and has crossed the seas [in order to fix himself here]; but I am likely
"to give him occupation for the rest [of his days]. He was evidently so much "taken with you, and wished so much to see you, that he spared you the trouble "[of going over to him], and he came here to meet you in your country, and to "show you all the friendship and regard which he has for you.' Having then "assembled his favourites and the members of his council, he addressed them "in the following words: 'Methinks that were I to allow the enemy to cross "the passes [leading] to this my kingdom, and to engage my army on this side "of the mountain barriers [which encompass this country], if the fortune of war "decides against me, the Africans will doubtless take possession of this country, "and mow down its inhabitants at one stroke; whereas if, on the contrary, I "try my forces with theirs on the skirts of their country, and the fortune of "the day were to turn against us, they will be satisfied with the advantages "[gained] and will not follow us beyond the mountains, for fear of leaving the "passes at their back; or if they do follow us, it will not be before they have "made fresh preparations, and some time has been spent [in them]. This plan, "I imagine, will prove a preservative to our country, and a sort of palliative to our "defeat. If, on the contrary, the enemy should be beaten and we prove victorious, "I shall have over them, and in their country, that very advantage which I "fear they may reap in ours. I am, therefore, determined to fight them in the "very heart of their country.' In conformity with this resolution, Alfonso, having "taken with him the élite of his army and his choicest troops, advanced towards "the passes which lead into the Moslem territory, leaving the rest of his forces "behind. It is related that when Alfonso saw the flower of his troops formed "in line of battle, he could not help exclaiming in raptures, 'With such men "as these I engage to fight the genii, the demons, and the angels of heaven.' "According to the lowest computation the army which Alfonso chose to accompany "him on that expedition consisted of forty thousand men, clad in coats of bright "mail, without counting their [mounted] followers; but the Christians stared "with amazement at those who made such low reckoning, and declared that "their numbers were still greater. All agree, however, that the Moslems were "on this occasion less numerous than the unbelievers.

"Whilst these events were passing, Alfonso dreamt one night that he was His dream. "riding on a huge elephant, which was all the time beating a drum with his "trunk. Being greatly terrified by this vision, he consulted his priests and "monks about it, but he found no one who could explain its meaning to him. "At last he bribed a Jew to go over to the Moslem territory, and try to ascertain "its meaning from some learned man well versed in the interpretation of dreams. "Having found a Moslem who professed to explain dreams, the Jew related to
"him Alfonso's vision as if he had seen it himself, and requested him to explain it for him; but the Moslem, discovering the imposture, said immediately, 'Thou liest; thou never hadst such a dream, and unless thou tell me who dreamt it, I will give thee no explanation.' The Jew, seeing the imposture discovered, told him the truth, but entreated him to keep it a secret. 'Thou tellest the truth now,' said the interpreter of dreams; 'it was Alfonso, and he only, who dreamt the dream, and the meaning of it is that a great calamity is about to befall him and his army. The dream may be explained in those words of the Korán,—'Seest thou not how thy Lord has dealt with the people of the elephant?' As to the elephant beating [the drum] with his trunk, the meaning of it is that Alfonso will receive a wound in his face, which will also happen on the same day.' The Jew returned to Alfonso, to whom he related the interview he had held with the interpreter; but, instead of imparting to him the explanation which the astrologer had given him, he offered him a satisfactory one, more suitable to his position and views.

They relate that Alfonso wrote a letter to Yúsuf, which a traitor Moslem composed for him, wherein he used very abusive language, and endeavoured to intimidate that Sultán, by greatly exaggerating the forces, military stores, and provisions which he had at his disposal. When the letter arrived and was read to Yúsuf, he ordered his secretary Abú Bekr Ibnu-l-kossayrah¹ to answer it. Abú Bekr, who was a learned and elegant writer, retired and soon returned with a long epistle full of rhetorical beauties, which being read to Yúsuf, he said to him, 'That answer is too long; bring me Alfonso's letter.' Abú Bekr did as he was commanded, and Yúsuf wrote these words upon the back of it,—'He who shall live will see.'² When Alfonso read these words he trembled with fear, and soon became convinced that he had to deal with a man against whom all his power would be useless.

However, after spending some time on the passes, Alfonso marched with his army towards the western provinces of Andalus. He was there met by the Sultán Yúsuf, who advanced against him. Al-mu'tamed had remained behind, occupied in some pressing business; but when he had dispatched it, he followed his track with an army composed of warriors trained to border warfare, and the chiefs of Andalus. His son 'Abdullah led the van, and as he was marching he recited extempore the following verses, which have since become celebrated:

'Joy is near at hand; it shall come to thee [coupled] with wonderful events.

'From this blessed expedition thou canst not fail shortly to return victorious:
‘For God grants thee his help, whilst he sends down destruction upon the
worshipper of the crucified.
‘We may, indeed, expect a day as glorious as that of Koleyb.’

The [allied] armies arrived at Badhalios (Badajoz), and encamped outside the
walls. The king of that city, Al-mutawakkel ‘Omar Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-
afftas, went out to meet the Moslems some distance from this capital with
refreshments and provisions, and showed them every possible attention and
respect. He brought them news of the movements of Alfonso, and told them
that he was already in the neighbourhood with all his forces. Upon the receipt
of this intelligence, Yúsuf advanced against the enemy, and the two hosts were
soon in sight of each other. Fearing some stratagem of the enemy, Al-mu’tamed
sent out experienced people to examine and reconnoitre the camp of the Al-
moravides; he himself, after seeing the sentries placed at the gates [of the
camp], as well as detachments of cavalry and infantry [to guard against a
surprise], would go out every night and ride outside the camp, so that if a
soldier left his tent he was sure to find Al-mu’tamed going his rounds.

When the two armies were in presence of each other, Yúsuf wrote to Alfonso,
offering him one of the three [conditions] prescribed by the law; namely, Islám,
tribute, or death. The letter was a long one, and elegantly written. Among
other things which it contained was the following: ‘We understand, O Alfonso!
that thou didst once express the wish of coming over to us [in Africa], and
didst regret thou hadst no vessels to allow thee to do so. Thy wishes are now
accomplished. Here we are, ready to meet thee wherever thou pleasest, and
we shall see how thy prayers have been attended to. It is a thing well known,
that infidels never pray except in the path of error.’

At the receipt of this letter the unbeliever was highly indignant; he flew
into a most violent passion, and returned an answer indicative of the miserable
state [of his mind]. His bishops and monks then raised their crosses in the
air, and displayed their gospels, pledging themselves to die [for their religion].
On the other hand, both Yúsuf and Al-mu’tamed addressed their respective
followers; after which, theologians, and other men distinguished by the sanctity
of their lives, assuming the functions of Khattébs or preachers, erected temporary
pulpits from which they preached to the soldiers, stimulating them to show
courage and resolution in the approaching contest, and warning them against
cowardice or flight.

On Wednesday morning, at break of day, the scouts came to the camp of Yúsuf
and informed him that Alfonso had struck his tents and was close at hand.
On the receipt of this intelligence, the Moslems fell into their ranks and prepared
"for battle; but Alfonso's courage failed [when he saw the fine order in which "they were], and, instead of advancing to the attack, he had recourse to artifice "and deceit, so that the Moslems returned to their encampment and passed that "night in their tents. On the following morning, which was Thursday, Alfonso "sent a message to Al-mu'tamed, thus conceived: 'To-morrow is Friday, and "a holiday for the people of thy creed; so is Sunday for those of ours; let the "battle, then, take place on the intermediate day, which is Saturday.' Al-
mu'tamed hastened to communicate to Yúsuf the message he had received; "at the same time intimating to him his conviction that it was merely intended "to deceive, and that Alfonso really meant to attack them on Friday. He there-
fore advised that Sultán to keep his men in readiness the whole of Friday. "This was done as he proposed; the men received orders to be prepared for "battle, and the sentries to be on the alert.

"In the middle of the night of Thursday, a devout and holy Faquih, named "Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed Ibn Romeylah Al-kortobí, who followed the camp of Al-
mu'tamed, awoke in great exultation and delight, saying to all those whom "he happened to meet, how he had that very night seen in a dream the messenger "of God [Mohammed], who had assured him of the victory, and told him that "he himself would fall a martyr for the faith at sunrise of the ensuing day. "Accordingly, Abú-l-'abbás prepared himself; he passed a part of the night in "prayer, and anointed and perfumed his head. This circumstance having been "reported to Al-mu'tamed, he hastened to communicate it to Yúsuf, as one proof "more of the treason which the infidel king was meditating.

"The same night [of Thursday], two horsemen, belonging to the army of "Al-mu'tamed, came and informed that prince, that having, according to his "instructions, spied Alfonso's camp, they had heard a confused noise as of "troops marching to and fro, and soldiers getting their weapons ready. Shortly "after other horsemen arrived at full gallop into the camp, bringing positive "information of Alfonso's movements. These were quickly followed by some "scouts whom Al-mu'tamed had sent into the Christian camp to ascertain, if "possible, what were the intentions of the enemy. They returned, saying, 'We "sharpened our ears and listened; and heard Alfonso say to his people,—Al-
mu'tamed is well practised in Andalusian warfare; the Africans are not; for, "however intelligent and experienced in military affairs the latter may be, they "are totally unacquainted with this country and its different modes of warfare. "It is clear, therefore, that on the present occasion they are entirely guided by "the advice of Al-mu'tamed: against him, then, must your attacks be first "directed, and your utmost courage and perseverance be displayed; for, if once
you defeat him, the victory over the Africans will be easily gained. For my part, I do not think that Al-mu'tamed can resist you long, if you attack him with vigour and determination.'

Upon the receipt of this information, Al-mu'tamed dispatched his Kátib, Abú Bekr Ibnu-l-kossayrah, to inform the Sultán Yúsuf of the approach of Alfonso, and of his plan of attack, and to ask him at the same time to re-inforce his army with some troops. Ibnu-l-kossayrah galloped through the camp, until he reached the tent of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, to whom he delivered his master's message. Yúsuf answered, 'Go and tell Al-mu'tamed that I will shortly hasten to his assistance;' saying which, he directed one of his generals to take a body of troops, which he named, and to attack and fire Alfonso's camp as soon as he saw him engaged with Al-mu'tamed. Ibnu-l-kossayrah then returned to his master; but scarcely had he had time to communicate the answer of which he was the bearer, when the troops of the infidel king made their appearance.

Al-mu'tamed [and his men] fought with the courage of despair, but the troops of Alfonso being greatly superior in numbers, the Moslems were surrounded and hemmed in on all sides. The struggle now became fiercer than ever, and the furnaces of war burned with additional violence; death exercised its fury among the followers of Al-mu'tamed, who himself performed on that day such feats of arms as no warrior in his army could equal. Meanwhile the King of Seville was anxiously expecting the re-inforcements which Yúsuf had promised to him. He kept looking in the direction of the African camp, but no troops came; the Christians, on the other hand, repeated their attacks with increasing fury, until, at last, the Andalusians, disheartened by their own loss, and not seeing the Africans come to their assistance, began to lose courage. Some of them even gave way, and in their number Al-mu'tamed's own son, 'Abdullah. However, that monarch continued fighting until he was thrice wounded; he received a sabre cut on the head, which went through his helmet and lodged in his head, as far as the temples; he received another sabre cut in the right hand, and a thrust of a spear in his thigh; he had three chargers killed under him, and whenever he was dismounted he was immediately supplied with another steed. Often did he seek death in the ranks of the enemy by rushing into the middle of them and dealing blows right and left. In that situation, and whilst the blood was dripping from his wounds, Al-mu'tamed happened to think of a pet child of his, surnamed 'Abú Hálshim, whom he had left behind [in Seville] owing to a slight indisposition, and he exclaimed—

'O Abú Hálshim! the sword [of the enemy] has fractured my bones; but God gave me courage and endurance throughout the bloody conflict.
[Even now] amidst the clouds of dust [raised by warriors' feet] I think of thy little person, and yet the pleasant thought induces me not to flee."

At last the expected re-inforcements came, and Al-mu'tamed was extricated from his perilous situation. The first among the generals of Yúsuf who came to the assistance [of the Andalusians] was Dáwūd Ibn 'A'yeshah, an experienced and brave officer. Next came Yúsuf himself with banners displayed and drums beating, the sounds of which resounded loudly through the air. This being perceived by Alfonso, he sent against the Africans a body of his best troops; he in person followed them with the greater part of his army. Yúsuf then hastened towards them, and having charged the enemy at the head of all his forces, made them fall back upon their cantonments. The relics of Al-mu'tamed's division gathered round Yúsuf's host; the men began to sniff up the odoriferous gales of victory, and congratulate each other upon their forthcoming success. This done, the Moslems again charged the enemy together and at once; the earth quaked under the hoofs of their horses; the sun was obscured by the clouds of dust rising under the feet of the warriors; the steeds swam through torrents of blood. Both parties, in short, fought with equal animosity and courage. At last, Al-mu'tamed and Yúsuf met together, and they united in a furious and irresistible charge; upon which the Andalusian fugitives, seeing the Africans closely engaged with the Christians, returned little by little [to the camp], and joined also in the attack, which was so spirited and so well conducted, that the Christians gave way every where, and took to flight. Alfonso then fled the field of battle, not without having received a wound in one of his knees, which made him lame for the rest of his life."

According to Ibn Khallekán (in the life of Yúsuf Ibn Tāshofín), when, as above related, Alfonso had nearly destroyed Al-mu'tamed's division, Yúsuf summoned round him his best infantry, and the cavalry of Senhājah and the chiefs of the principal [Berber] tribes, and, putting himself at their head, led the attack against the camp of Alfonso, which he surprised and entered, putting to the sword all the troops left for its defence. The stormy din of drums, the clash of clarion and trumpet, filled the air; the earth quaked [under the weight of the warriors], and the neighbouring mountains echoed the thousand discordant sounds. The Christians [who were closely engaged with Al-mu'tamed] seeing the Moslems in possession of their camp, returned to expel them therefrom; upon which, the Amír, Yúsuf, went out [to assist them, and having repulsed the assailants] returned to the camp, and expelled the Christians from it. Again the enemy returned to the attack, but they were a second time repulsed, and the camp remained in the possession of the Moslems. In this manner the attacks succeeded each other, until the
Amir of the Moslems summoned his own body-guard, composed of black slaves, and, having picked out four thousand of them, armed with sharp Indian swords, short spears of Zdb, and shields covered with hippopotamus-hide, he directed them to dismount and join the fight, which they did with awful execution, cutting the horses' houghs, spearing their riders when on the ground, and throwing confusion into the enemy's ranks. In the middle of the conflict Alfonso attacked, sword in hand, a black slave who had spent all his javelins, and aimed at his head; but the black avoided the blow, and, creeping under Alfonso's horse, seized the animal by the bridle; then taking out a khanjar, which he wore at his girdle, he wounded the Christian king in the thigh, the instrument piercing both armour and flesh, and pinning Alfonso to his horse's saddle. The rout then became general, the gales of victory blew, and God sent down his spirit to the Moslems, rendering the true religion triumphant. A charge more desperate than the others at last expelled the Christians from their camp, and completed their discomfiture. Every where the infidels turned their backs before the Moslems, quietly giving up their throats to the caresses of the swords, and their bodies to the thrusting of the spears. Those who escaped fled to a small eminence in the vicinity of the camp, where they tried to make a stand. They were immediately surrounded by the cavalry of the Moslems, and would inevitably have been taken had not night come on, under cover of which Alfonso and his followers were enabled to come down and escape destruction, when they must already have felt the fangs of death upon their throats. The Moslems, however, took possession of every thing they found in the Christian camp,—stores, weapons, provisions, tents, vases, and so forth.

But let us hear what the author of the Raudhu-l-mu'attar says on the subject. *Flees the field of battle.* After the defeat of his army, Alfonso ascended a small eminence close to his camp, with five hundred of his knights, every one of whom had been more or less wounded in the conflict: from thence they all disappeared in the course of the night. All those who did not follow the example of their king were either killed or taken prisoners; the number of those who died in the battle or after it being so great that the plain was actually covered with their bodies, and that the heads of the slain, piled up in various places, formed several pulpits from which the muezzins called the faithful to prayer: indeed, had Alfonso stayed to contemplate the field of battle, he would have found it a terrible lesson to him and to his followers.

As it was, when he arrived at his city [Toledo], and began to inquire about his friends and courtiers and the brave warriors of his army, and was told that every one of them was either slain or a captive in the hands of the Moslems, —when he perceived that wherever he went there was nothing but wailings and
"lamentations,—he fell suddenly into a dejected state of mind, and neither ate nor drank, until he actually died of sorrow and disappointment. He left no male children, and was succeeded by a daughter, who shut herself up in Toledo." 

"Immediately after the battle, Al-mu'tamed went to see Yúsuf, shook hands with him, congratulated him upon the victory he had gained, and thanked and praised him [for the assistance he had lent to the common cause]. Yúsuf, on the other hand, thanked Al-mu’tamed for his exertions, and the courage which he had displayed in the contest. Yúsuf having, in the course of conversation, asked Al-mu’tamed how he was when his timely aid came to extricate him from his dangerous position, that monarch answered him, 'Thou hadst better ask [the fugitives]; there they are before thee.' 

"Al-mu’tamed wrote from the field of battle, announcing to his son in Seville the victory which the Moslems had gained. The letter was thus conceived: "

"From the camp of victory, this Friday, the 20th of Rejeb, [A. H. 479]. God has exalted the faith, and rendered the Moslems victorious, granting them a manifest victory, routing and putting to flight the idolaters and unbelievers; He has made the latter taste the awful punishments and excruciating tortures which await them [in hell]. Praise [be given] to God for the signal favours he has just granted to us, and the contentment and joy he has this day sent down unto us by breaking down the power and scattering the forces of Alfonso, annihilating the whole of his army, and committing so many of his followers to the raging fires of hell, where they will not fail to be subjected to those everlasting torments which are reserved for the infidels. Our victory was complete: we took and plundered his camp, and put to the sword the whole of his men, his most renowned warriors and stoutest champions; the slaughter being so great that the Moslems are now piling up the heads of the slain, and raising towers from which to proclaim the hours of public prayer. Praise [be given] to God for all his favours. As to me, I received a few slight wounds, which at first were painful enough, but are now closed. Praise be given to God. Fare thee well.'"

In this battle numbers of Moslems won the crown of martyrdom, among whom were several chief and doctors distinguished by their virtues or their talents, such as Ibn Romeylah, whose dream we have related above, Abú Merwán 'Abdu-l-malek Al-masmúdí, Kádí of Morocco, and others. (May God Almighty have mercy on their souls!) Yet the loss of the Moslems was trifling when compared with that experienced by the Christians. For many years after the field of battle was so covered with the carcasses of the slain, that it was impossible to walk through it without treading on the withered bones of some infidel.

The Moslems remained four days encamped on the field of battle, occupied in
collecting the spoils of the enemy. When every thing had been got together, 
Yúsuf’s pleasure was consulted with regard to the partition; but Yúsuf would 
not touch any portion of the spoil, and gave it to the Andalusian chieftains to 
be divided among them, saying, “I came not to this country for the sake of 
plunder; I came for no other purpose than that of waging war against the 
infidel, and thereby deserving the rewards promised to those who fight for the 
cause of God.” When the Andalusian princes saw Yúsuf’s generous conduct 
with regard to the division of the spoil, they praised his liberality, and thanked 
him for it.

But to return to the principal subject of our narrative. “The battle being over, 
Al-mu’tamed invited Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín to accompany him to Seville, and the 
latter having accepted the invitation, both princes repaired to that capital, ac-
 companied by a numerous and brilliant escort. When Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín saw 
Seville, which, as is well known, is one of the most splendid and magnificent cities 
[in the world], he could not remove his eyes from the sight, and his mind was 
absorbed in the contemplation of its many beauties. Seville is situated on the 
banks of a large river, into which the tide pours the waters of the sea, and 
which is navigated by merchant ships trading between Maghreb (Western Africa) 
and Andalus. To the west of the city lies a fertile district, twenty parasangs in 
length, in which are upwards of one thousand hamlets surrounded by orchards 
and gardens, where the vine, the olive, and fig-tree grow in great luxuriance. 
The district is called Sharaf (Axarafe), and constitutes one of the greatest 
beauties of Seville, there being no other city in the West to be compared to 
it on this account. On one side of the city are the palaces of Al-mu’tamed and 
of his father, Al-mu’tadhed, both extremely beautiful [in their proportions], and 
most splendid in their decorations. In one of these palaces, which was furnished 
for the occasion with every requisite article, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín was lodged 
with his suite, Al-mu’tamed taking care that they should be daily provided with 
food, drink, clothes, beds, &c., and appointing persons to see that all the wishes 
of his royal guest were fully gratified. Such, indeed, was the attention and 
courtesy which Al-mu’tamed displayed on this occasion, that Yúsuf could not 
forbear showing his gratitude, and thanking him for his hospitality.

There were in the suite of Ibn Táshefín [Yúsuf] several courtiers who were 
dexterously calling the attention of that Sultán to the comforts and luxuries 
by which he was surrounded, and to the pleasures and enjoyments which his 
host was daily procuring for him, as well as instigating him to adopt a similar 
mode of living. One of them said once to him, ‘Among the great advantages 
which power confers upon a king, one is that it enables him to pass his life
in pleasure and comfort, as this Al-mu’tamed and his colleagues [the petty kings of Andalus] are doing.' Ibn Tāshefīn [Yūsuf] was a wise and shrewd man; he was neither too prompt in his determinations, nor too slow in carrying them into effect; and as he had passed the greater part of his life in his native deserts, exposed to hunger and privation, he had no taste for the life of pleasure and enjoyment which was recommended to him, and he accordingly rejected the advice of his counsellor, saying to him, ‘It strikes me that this man (meaning Al-mu’tamed) is throwing away the power which has been placed in his hands; for there can be no doubt that the sums of money which he is daily expending to support all this pomp and vanity were formerly in the hands of his subjects, from whom he cannot have obtained them by legal means, but through unjust proceedings, to spend them in the indulgence of forbidden pleasures and frivolous pastimes; and instead of giving his attention to the good administration and defence of his kingdom, and to the welfare and prosperity of his subjects, he thinks of nothing else than satisfying the cravings of his passions.' And by my life,” observes the author from whom we borrow the above narrative, "Yūsuf was right when he said so.

"After this, Yūsuf Ibn Tāshefīn inquired how Al-mu’tamed conducted himself in his pleasures; whether he always led the same dissipated life, or whether he sometimes refrained and lived more soberly. The answer was, that Al-mu’tamed always led the same life [of dissipation and pleasure]. ‘And do Al-mu’tamed’s friends, do his allies, and the high functionaries of his court, approve of his conduct and imitate him?’—‘No, they do not.’—‘Well, then, how are they pleased with him?’—‘They are not pleased at all,’ was the courtier’s answer. Hearing this, Yūsuf kept silence, and remained for some time wrapt up in his thoughts.

"In this manner Yūsuf passed some days at Seville. One day, during his stay at that city, a man badly dressed presented himself at the gate of Al-mu’tamed’s palace, and asked to be admitted into that monarch’s presence. Permission being granted to him, the man, who was one of those endowed with intelligence and foresight in mundane affairs, entered the hall where Al-mu’tamed was, and having previously bowed down to the earth before him, addressed him thus: ‘May God prosper thee, O Sultán! It behoves him who has received a benefit to show his gratitude for it, and give good advice in return. I am thy subject, and although my condition [in life] is one of the humblest, yet I deem it incumbent on me to bestow on thee such warning and advice as may hereafter insure thy rule in this country. Know, then, that it has reached my ears that one of the Africans who came in the suite of thy
"guest, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, has uttered certain expressions, indicating that his
countrymen consider themselves and their king more deserving than thyself of
the comforts and pleasures [which this thy kingdom affords]. I have been
thinking of an expedient, which, if thou art inclined to listen to me, I will
proceed to state.'—'Speak,' said Al-mu'tamed impatiently. 'This man,' con-
tinued the stranger, 'whom thou hast allowed to pry into thy kingdom, is
well known to have sprung like a lion upon the kings of various countries,
and to have dispossessed them of all their dominions. Witness the Zenátah
of the opposite coast, whose chiefs he attacked in succession, and deprived of
all their power, and would mercilessly have destroyed, had not the sight of
the luxuries and comforts by which thou art surrounded suddenly filled him
with a desire to seize on thy kingdom; nay, on the whole of this island; for
I do not imagine that thy colleagues, the rulers of Andalus, will fare better
than thou. Indeed, I am told that Yúsuf is constantly being importuned by
his sons, relatives, and others, who all wish him to fix his residence in this
happy and fertile kingdom of thine. Now that he has humbled the pride of
Alfonso, destroyed his army, and delivered thee from him, he will have no
difficulty in accomplishing his design; for, in delivering thee from an enemy,
he has also deprived thee of the most powerful auxiliary thou couldst have
against him. I can, however, procure thee a better ally and a warmer friend
than Alfonso himself could be, if thou wilt only follow my advice and seize
the favourable opportunity which presents itself to-day, and not let it pass
as thou didst that of Alfonso.'—'And pray what is it?' said Al-mu'tamed.
'That thou seize the person of thy guest, keep him a prisoner in thy palace,
and threaten not to release him unless he issues orders for all Africans to leave
this island forthwith and cross over to the deserts whence they came. This
being done, and when not even a child of his nation remains in this country,
thou wilt, in concert with the other rulers of Andalus, adopt such measures
as may be required for the protection of this sea and its shores against any
vessels of his that should attempt a passage. When all these preparations
are made thou wilt release him, but not without having first compelled him
to swear a most solemn oath never again to return to this island, unless there
be a previous agreement between thee and him. Thou wilt, moreover, ask
him for hostages, to insure the fulfilment of his word; for I have no doubt
he will grant thee any thing thou mayst ask him, his life being more valuable
to him than all that is required of him. He will then be satisfied with his
own native soil, which none else but him can like, and will not covet other
people's countries. Thou wilt be delivered of him, after being delivered of
Alfonso; and thou wilt remain in thy present condition, enjoying every pro-
sperity: thy fame will spread among the kings of this island; thy power will
increase, and thy kingdom extend; and when the people of this country know
what thou hast accomplished, they will praise thy act and extol thy wisdom.
Kings shall dread thee, and thou wilt be enabled to accomplish any thing thou
pleasest for the extension of thy empire and the protection of thy dominions.
Know, therefore, that thou art called by Heaven to do a deed which shall satisfy
the nations, and without which oceans of human blood shall flow.'
When Al-mu'tamed heard the man's speech, he seemed to approve of it, and
began to ponder in his mind whether he should seize the opportunity which
presented itself to him or not. Whilst he was absorbed in his thoughts, one
of his courtiers, whom, like many others, Al-mu'tamed was in the habit of
admitting to his parties of pleasure, addressed himself to the counsellor, and said:
'It is not for princes like Al-mu'tamed, who is the pattern of every virtue, to
commit such a treacherous act as to seize the person of his guest.'—'No
matter,' replied the man, 'treason always takes the right from the hands of
its possessor, to protect the man who is hard pressed by his enemy.'—
'Injury with good faith,' replied the courtier, 'is preferable to prudence with
injustice.' The counsellor would go on defending his opinion, but Al-mu'tamed
dismissed him, after thanking him for his good advice, and making him a hand-
some present.
It appears, however, that Yúsuf got intelligence of what had passed; for when,
on the morning of the ensuing day, Al-mu'tamed came up to him, as usual, with
costly presents and valuable gifts, he took leave of him and departed on the
same day. Some historians relate that Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín dwelt outside of
Seville, and that when he had been there three days news came to him from
Maghreb (Western Africa), which required his presence in that country; that
[Al-mu'tamed] Ibn 'Abbád accompanied him one day and one night, after which
Yúsuf, seeing that his wounds were sore, begged and entreated him to return
to his capital, which Al-mu'tamed did, not without appointing his own son,
'Abdullah, to accompany his illustrious guest to the sea shore, and to cross
over to Africa with him.'

On his return to Seville, Al-mu'tamed sat one day in public, and the people
were admitted to his presence. He was then congratulated upon his victory,
the Korán was read [in his presence], and the poets who stood on each side
of his throne recited poems in his praise. 'I was present that day,' says
'Abdu-l-jelîl Ibn Wahbûn,13 "and I recited before Al-mu'tamed a poem which I had composed for the occasion; the reader [of the Korân] read that passage which stands thus: 'If ye do not help him, God will nevertheless render him victorious [against his enemies].’ I then recited my own composition, which, by Allah! turned entirely upon the meaning of that verse."
BOOK VIII.

CHAP. I.

Yusuf again crosses over to Andalus—Lays siege to Toledo—Deprives 'Abdullah Ibn Balkín of his dominions—His generals subdue the rest of Andalus—Seyr, the Almoravide, attacks the King of Saragossa—Takes the castle of Roda—Dethrones the Kings of Murcia and Almeria—Puts to death Ibn Al-afttas, King of Badajoz—Preparations against Al-mu'tamed—Al-mu'tamed besieged in Seville—Implores the aid of Alfonso—Taking of Seville by the Almoravides—Al-mu'tamed is conveyed a prisoner to Africa—His son 'Abdu-l-jabbár revolts in Andalus—Is killed in the attempt—Death of Al-mu'tamed—Death of Yusuf Ibn Tāshefīn—Accession of 'Ali—His campaigns with the Christians of Andalus—Taking of Saragossa by the Aragonese—'Ali returns to Andalus—Alfonso I. invades Andalusia—Arrives before Granada—The Christians of Granada transported to Africa—'Ali goes to Andalus the fourth time—His death.

Yūsuf had no sooner left the shores of Andalus than Alfonso began again to plan the destruction of the Moslems. Having put himself at the head of considerable forces, he invaded the dominions of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, King of Murcia, and laid siege to a strong castle, called Aleyt (Aledo), which he attacked so vigorously that he soon after took it by storm. Leaving a large force for the defence of the place, Alfonso retired into his own dominions; but the Christian garrison of Aledo made so many incursions into the dominions of Al-mu'tamed, that this Sultán was again compelled to cross over to Africa, and implore Yūsuf's assistance. Accordingly, in the month of Rabi'-l-awál of 481 (May or June, A. D. 1088), the commander of the Moslems again landed at Algesiras at the head of a considerable army, and, having united his forces to those of Al-mu'tamed, marched to Aledo, which he besieged. Owing, however, to some misunderstanding which arose among the Andalusian chieftains, Yūsuf was unable to reduce the place, and after some slight incursions made into the neighbouring districts of the enemy, he crossed over to Africa.

In the year 483 (beginning March 5, A. D. 1090), Yūsuf Ibn Tāshefīn visited Andalus for the third time, in order to wage war against the infidels. Having penetrated as far as Toledo, the court and capital of Alfonso, he besieged it; but, although he repeatedly attacked the city, laid waste all the country around,
and prevented provisions and stores being conveyed to it, he was in the end compelled to raise the siege and return to his dominions across the sea. They say that on this occasion not one of the Andalusian chieftains joined the banners of Yúsuf, although they had been particularly requested to do so, which so incensed that Sultán, that he decided to chastise them for their negligence, and to deprive them of their dominions.

Among the Andalusian rulers who would not answer the summons of Yúsuf was 'Abdullah Ibn Balkín, who not only did not join that Sultán with his forces, but had actually concluded a treaty of alliance with Alfonso. Upon him Yúsuf first wreaked his vengeance. At his approach, 'Abdullah shut the gates of his city, and made some show of resistance; but his mother having advised him to try by his submission to quiet Yúsuf's anger, he went out to meet him, and gave him the salád. After this he returned to Granada to prepare for the reception of his illustrious guest; but Yúsuf had no sooner gained admittance into 'Abdullah's palace than he seized the person of his host, and sent him in irons to Aghmát, together with his brother Temím, governor of Malaga, after taking possession of the immense treasures which that Sultán had amassed during a long and prosperous reign. This 'Abdullah was the grandson of Bádís, son of Habús, founder of the dynasty of the Zeyrītes of Granada.

In the month of Ramadhán of the same year (A. H. 483), Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín quitted Andalus for Africa, leaving one of his best generals, named Seyr Ibn Abí Bekr, with a body of troops to prosecute the war against the unbelievers. After allowing some days' rest to his men, Seyr led them against Alfonso, whose kingdom he invaded, plundering and laying waste the land, slaying and making captives of the inhabitants, reducing the best fortified towns and the strongest and most inaccessible fortresses. In this manner he penetrated far into the Christian territory, collecting rich spoils and immense treasures. Having left bodies of infantry and cavalry to garrison the places which he had taken from the enemy, Seyr sent to apprise Yúsuf of his success, and to inform him that whilst his own troops were performing a service of danger on the frontiers, waging incessant war against the Christians, and leading at the same time a life of hardship and privation, the kings of Andalus were plunged in pleasure and sloth, and their subjects were enjoying a happy and easy life. He therefore requested him to send him his instructions respecting the said kings, and to inform him how he was to deal with them. Yúsuf's answer was thus conceived: "Order them to accompany thee to the enemy's country; if they obey, well and good; if they refuse, lay siege to their cities, attack them one after the other, and destroy them without mercy. Thou shalt begin with those princes whose do-
HISTORY OF THE MOHAMMEDAN

"minions border on the enemy's frontier, and shalt not attack Al-mu'tamed
" until thou hast reduced the rest of Mohammedan Spain to thy obedience. To
" every city or town which may thus fall into thy hands thou shalt appoint a
" governor from among the officers of thy army."

Agreeably to his instructions, Seyr first turned his arms against Ibn Húd [King
of Saragossa], who was then [residing] at Rottah (Roda), a strong castle with
great art and skill, having abundance of fresh water springing up at great
height, and in which there was, moreover, such a quantity of provisions and stores
of all kinds collected by the kings his predecessors, that time only could consume
them. This castle Seyr besieged; but perceiving that he could not reduce it,
owing to its marvellous strength, he had recourse to the following stratagem. One
day he raised the siege, struck his tents, and went away some distance from the
castle: having then selected a division of his army, he dressed them in the Christian
fashion, and directed them to approach the castle, as if they were friends, and came
to sell them provisions; whilst he himself with the remainder of his forces lay
concealed in the neighbourhood. It happened as Seyr had anticipated. No sooner
had the garrison of Roda perceived the disguised Africans, than, seeing them in
small number, and not suspecting any treason, they came out of the castle, and
the governor among them; upon which, Seyr left his place of concealment, and,
rushing suddenly upon the governor, seized him with his own hand, made him
prisoner, and obliged him to surrender his castle.

Seyr next attacked the Bení Táhir in the eastern parts of Andalus. Having
advanced upon Murcia, where ['Abdu-r-rahmán] Ibn Táhir was ruling at the time,
he invested that city with all his forces, and compelled that chieftain to surrender
the place to him and cross over to Africa. The taking of Murcia happened in the
month of Shawwál of the year 484 (A. D. 1091).

The campaign of Murcia being at an end, Seyr next attacked Al-mu'tassem
Ibn Samádeh, King of Almeria. He sent against him a division of his army
under the command of Abú Zakariyyá Ibn Wásinis, or, according to other au-
thorities, of Mohammed Ibn 'A'yeshah. Having shut himself up in the citadel,
which was of wonderful strength, Ibn Samádeh at first made a stout resistance;
but hearing that the Almoravides were in possession of the city, and were pre-
paring to invest the citadel, he fell into a low state of mind, and died of sorrow.
His son Hosámu-d-daulah then surrendered to the Almoravides, and crossed over
to Africa in a ship which lay at anchor in the bay.

Seyr then marched to Badajoz, where a king of the dynasty of Al-afttas, named
Al-mutawakkel 'Omar Ibn Mohammed, of whom previous mention has been made,
was reigning at the time. Seyr besieged him [in Badajoz], made him prisoner,
and seized on all his dominions and treasures. Some time after he put him to
death, together with his two sons, Al-fadhl and Al-‘abbás.

Only Al-mu’tamed remained. Seyr wrote to acquaint Yúsuf with what he
had done, and to ask him for further instructions respecting the Sultán of Seville.
Yúsuf’s answer was, that he should propose to him to cross over to Africa with
all his family and household: if he consented, he was to be nowise molested;
but if he refused, he was to make war against him and to besiege him in his capital;
and, when taken, to transport him to Africa, like the rest of the Andalusian rulers.
Accordingly, Seyr sent a messenger to Al-mu’tamed, acquainting him with Yúsuf’s
pleasure, and begging to be informed what his intentions were; but Al-mu’tamed
returned no answer; upon which Seyr besieged him in his capital, which he took
by storm, and having made Al-mu’tamed his prisoner, sent him over to Africa
with his family and children, as we are about to relate in the words of an Anda-
lusian writer.

Seyr had no sooner heard of Al-mu’tamed’s disobedience to the orders of Yúsuf
Ibn Táshefín than he prepared to execute that Sultán’s commands. Accordingly,
having detached a portion of his army to Cordova against Al-fat’h Al-má&mín,
one of Al-mu’tamed’s sons, he himself, with the remainder of the Almoravides,
marched to Seville. After taking possession of Carmona, which surrendered to
him on Saturday the 27th of Rabí’ the first, before the hour of sunset, Seyr
advanced upon that capital, which he invested. Meantime, Abú ’Abdillah Ibnu-I-
háj, who went in command of the forces sent against Cordova, after reducing on
his road the cities of Bæza and Ubeda, and the castle of Al-balate, appeared in
sight of that city, which he soon after took by storm, on Wednesday the 3rd
day of Safar. Al-má&mín was taken prisoner and immediately beheaded. Another
of Al-mu’tamed’s sons, whose name was Yezíd Ar-rádhí, shared a similar fate.
His father had appointed him governor of a strong castle called Ronda, to the
north of Malaga. Seyr having dispatched against him one of his officers, named
Jerúr Al-hashemí, he was taken and put to death, and his head brought to the
camp of Seyr, who had it paraded on a spear before the walls of Seville.

Al-mu’tamed, seeing himself surrounded by enemies, sent to implore the aid
of Alfonso, who sent an army to his relief; but Seyr having detached ten thousand
horse under an experienced officer, named Abú Is’hák Al-lamtúní, the Christians
were kept in check, and did not proceed beyond Almodovar. The siege meanwhile
was prosecuted with unabated vigour; Al-mu’tamed defended himself with great
courage for a whole month, until the Almoravides having fought their way into
the city, he was compelled to surrender. The poet Ibnu-l-lebbánah has preserved
some details of this memorable siege, from which we borrow the following passage:
“During the siege of Seville by the Almoravides under Seyr, a party of Al-
mu’tamed’s men meditated treason against him; but that Sultan received intel-
ligence of their plans, and was enabled to defeat them. Although their crime
was proved, and he was advised to seize their persons, and take away their lives,
he was prompted by his magnanimity and his generosity to leave them un-
molested, and allow them to fly from the city.

“One day Al-mu’tamed quitted his palace to inspect the fortifications and
encourage the garrison by his example. He was dressed in a wide tunic [over
his armour], and in his hand glittered a sharp scimitar, which soon became
notched and tarnished through repeated striking. Having arrived at one of the
city gates, he found there a warrior renowned for his courage and strength, who
had just forced his way into the city. The warrior aimed a blow at him with his
spear; but the weapon buried itself in Al-mu’tamed’s tunic without touching his
body. Al-mu’tamed let fall his scimitar on the back of the warrior’s neck, and
made his head roll on the ground. At sight of this exploit,” adds Ibn-u-
lebbânah, “several of the Almoravides, who were standing on the top of the
city walls, threw themselves down, the enemy abandoned the gates of which they
had taken possession, and directed their steps elsewhere. We all thought that
after this [manifestation of fear] the city would be freed from the enemy, and
that the cloak of protection was once more thrown over us; but we were greatly
mistaken: on Sunday, the 21st of Rejeb, affairs grew all of a sudden much
worse, and the Almoravides entered the city on the river side.”

Another historian says that the Almoravides took possession of Seville on the
22nd day of Rejeb;9 that they had no sooner entered the city than they began
to slay the inhabitants and to plunder their houses. Al-mu’tamed then left his
palace, mounted and armed, taking with him his son Malik, surnamed Fakhru-d-
daulah (glory of the state), who was soon after put to death by the Almoravides,
and trampled under the horses’ feet. After performing prodigies of valour, Al-
mu’tamed returned to his palace, dejected in spirits and torn by affliction. When
night came on, he sent his eldest son, Ar-rashid, to the tent of Seyr Ibn Abi Bekr; but
the Almoravide general would not receive him, and commissioned one of his
slaves to hear his message. Ar-rashid then returned to his father, and told him
that there was no hope of mercy; upon which Al-mu’tamed took an affectionate
leave of all his family, and, hiding his face in his hands, waited with resignation for
his fate. Shortly after Seyr entered the palace, and having communicated to
Al-mu’tamed the orders of which he was the bearer, told him to prepare to go
to Africa. Accordingly, having embarked with his family and children on board
a galley prepared for him, he sailed under an escort to Tangiers, where he landed in
the month of Sha'bán. Soon after there came an order from Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin, enjoining him to go to the castle of Aghmát; and he was accordingly removed to that fortress with such among his wives, children, and servants, as consented to share his captivity. Al-mu’tamed’s eldest son, surnamed Ar-rashíd, accompanied him thither. His name was ’Obeydullah, and his kunyá or appellative Abú-1-hasan. His father, who destined him for his successor, had caused him some time previous to be proclaimed as such at Seville. Al-mu’tamed was likewise followed to Aghmát by his wife ’Itimád, who was the mother of most of his children, to whom he always was more deeply attached than to any other of his women. Her name at first was Romeykiyyah, and she was so named from her master, Romeyk Ibn Hejáj, of whom Al-mu’tamed had purchased her. The surname of ’Itimád was given to her by Al-mu’tamed. She was a good poetess, and well versed in literature. She died at Aghmát some time before her husband.

Historians have recorded many acts of gallantry of Al-mu’tamed towards his wife Romeykiyyah, among which we select the following one. That princess happened one day to meet, not far from her palace in Seville, some country women selling milk in skins, and walking up to their ankles in mud. On her return to the palace, she said to her royal spouse, “I wish I and my slaves could do as those women are doing.” Upon which Al-mu’tamed issued orders that the whole of his palace should be strewn with a thick paste made of ambergris, musk, and camphor, mixed together and dissolved in rose-water. He then commanded that a number of vessels, slung from ropes of the finest spun silk, should be procured; and thus arrayed, Romeykiyyah and her maids [went out of the harem and] splashed in that mud. It is likewise related that on the same day in which Al-mu’tamed was deprived of his liberty and throne, some angry words passed between him and Romeykiyyah, as is often the case between man and wife. In the middle of the dispute, Romeykiyyah, whose pride was wounded, said to Al-mu’tamed, “By Allah! I never saw any good come from thee.”—“Not even the day of the mud?” inquired Al-mu’tamed, meaning by that the day in which, to satisfy a mere whim of her’s, he had spent treasures the amount of which no one but God can estimate. When Romeykiyyah heard this answer she blushed and kept silence.

Al-mu’tamed remained in confinement till the moment of his death, which took place four years, or thereabouts, after the taking of Seville by Seyr Ibn Abí Bekr. Some time before his death one of his sons, named 'Abdu-l-jabbár, made an attempt to re-establish the power of his family in Andalus; but he failed, and perished in the undertaking. The event is thus related by a credible historian:
An influential citizen of Malaga, named Ibn Khalaf, was put under arrest, together with other friends and relatives of his, for some misdemeanour of which they were accused. One day, however, Ibn Khalaf and his comrades broke out of their prison and fled. Having arrived at night before the castle of Montmayur (Montemayor), Ibn Khalaf and his followers surprised and expelled the governor, but did him no harm. Whilst they were thus engaged, there happened to pass near the castle a man whom they did not know at first, but who, upon inquiry, turned out to be 'Abdu-l-jabbár, son of Al-mu'tamed. Hearing who he was, Ibn Khalaf and his friends immediately chose him for their commander, and conducted him to the castle, where he remained, the people [of the country] thinking all the time that he was Ar-rádhi. Some time after a ship, called the ship of Ibn Zaraká, arrived from Western Africa, and cast anchor in the port of As-sajrah (Sagra), close to the castle; and the crew, having landed, [entered the castle, and] took the banners, the drums, and all the stores and provisions which it contained. In this manner the rebellion increased and spread. The mother of 'Abdu-l-jabbár then came to the castle; upon which the prince sent messengers to Algesiras and to Arkosh (Los Arcos), and seeing that they were well received, repaired thither in person, and made his entry into that fortress in the year 488 (A.D. 1095).

When Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín heard of the rising of 'Abdu-l-jabbár, he sent orders to Agmád to have Al-mu'tamed put in chains. It was in allusion to this that he composed these two verses:

"Chains! do ye not know that I am a Moslem? I will watch at night,
until ye are moved to pity.
"Abú Háshim will gaze on ye, until he melts your iron heart."  

'Abdu-l-jabbár, however, did not maintain himself long in his position. No sooner was Scyr Ibn Abí Bekr apprised of his rebellion, than he sent against him a body of troops, who besieged him for some months in his castle of Arcos, until he was killed by an arrow shot by the enemy. After the death of 'Abdu-l-jabbár, his partisans still held out, but they were at last overpowered and slaughtered to a man.

Al-mu'tamed died at Agmád in the month of Rabi' the first, of the year 488 (March or April, A.D. 1095). Ibnu-s-seyrafi says in Dhi-l-hajjah of the same year (Dec. A.D. 1095). He was born at Beja in the year 431 (beginning Sept. 22, A.D. 1039), and had occupied the throne of Seville for a period of twenty-seven years, from 461, when he began to reign, to 488 (A.D. 1095), when he was dethroned and conveyed to Africa, as above related.

The histories of Andalus are filled with praises of this monarch. "Al-mu'tamed," says Ibnu-l-kattá', in his work entitled Lamahu-l-malh (sallies of wit), being a
biography of the Andalusian poets, "was the most liberal, high-minded, and " munificent of all the rulers of Andalus, owing to which circumstance his court " became the meeting-place of the learned, and his capital the resort of poets and " literary men; so much so that there never was a king at whose court a greater " number of eminent men were assembled."

He was himself an excellent poet, as appears from the many elegant verses which Al-fat'h, Ibnu-l-hijārī, Ibnu Sa'id, and, above all, Ibnu-l-lebānāh, cite in their works. The last-mentioned writer, who was one of Al-mu'tamed's Wizirs, and visited that prince in his confinement, made a collection of all his verses, as well as of those of his father and grandfather, which he entitled *Sakītu-d-doror wa lakītu-zohor fī sha'ri-bni 'Abbād* (the falling of the pearls and the spreading of the flowers: on the poetry of the Bení 'Abbád). Ibn Bessám, in the *Dhakhirah*, gives also many, which he describes as being sweeter than the blooming calyx of odoriferous flowers. "No poet," he says, "ever equalled him in tenderness " of soul, and in the sentiment which prevailed throughout his verses. Wishing " upon one occasion to send the women of his harem from Cordova to Seville, " he went out and travelled part of the road with them from night till sunrise " of the ensuing day; he then took leave of them, and returned [to Cordova], " repeating extempore several verses, of which the following two form part:

' I accompanied them when night had spread her impervious veil, so as to ' conceal to the sight the traces of the travellers.

' I stopped and took leave [of them]; and the hands of morning stole from ' me those bright stars.'

"This last idea," observes Ibn Bessám, "is exceedingly beautiful."

Among the singular and extraordinary circumstances connected with Al-mu'tamed one is, that when he was buried at Aghmát and the funeral service was read over his tomb, the prayer of the stranger was chanted, as if he had been an adventurer, without having regard either to the nobility of his birth, or to the extension of his empire, or the splendour and magnificence of his court; or to his having ruled over Seville and its districts, Cordova and its Az-zahrá. Such, however, are the ways of this world.

We might fill volumes with anecdotes respecting that prince; but as we have already given in the seventh chapter of this work several extracts from the *Kaldijudu-l-ikiyán* and other works where the biography of Al-mu'tamed is given at large, we will abstain from dwelling any longer on the subject. Suffice it to say, that the memory of that illustrious Sultan is still alive in the West, and that his tomb at Aghmát is well known and much frequented by travellers. The Wizir Lisáníu-d-dín Ibnu-l-khattíb once went to that place for the express purpose of
visiting the spot where Al-mu’tamed lay (may God show him mercy!); and his mind being disposed to reflection by the sight of it, he composed those celebrated verses which we intend giving hereafter, when we come to treat of his poetry,—sweeter than the odoriferous gales of spring, and more beautiful than beauty itself.

We also visited the tomb of Al-mu’tamed, and that of Romeykiyyah, the mother of his children, when we were at Morocco in the year 1010 (A.D. 1601). We arrived at Aghmát, and, not knowing where that prince was buried, we proceeded to inquire from such of the inhabitants as we chanced to meet. For some time our inquiries were unsuccessful, but at last an old man, bent with age, showed us the place, saying, “Here lies a king of Andalus, and by his side she whom his heart loved tenderly.” We recognized the spot, such as Ibn-l-khattīb described it in his verses,—a gentle eminence. We remained for some time fixed to the spot, assailed by fear and thought; our mind soon carried us away to the contemplation of the impenetrable mysteries of Providence, and we could not help exclaiming, “Praise to Him who gives the empire to whomsoever he pleases! There is no God but Him! He is the heir of the earth, and of every thing that is on it, and he is the best of heirs!” But to resume the thread of our narrative.

In the year 500, some historians add in the month of Moharram (Sept. A.D. 1106), died at Morocco the commander of the Moslems, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín. Some time before his death he had appointed his son Abú-l-hasan ‘Alí to be his successor, and caused him to be recognized as such throughout his African, as well as Andalusian dominions. They say that when he felt his end approach, Yúsuf sent for him, and recommended to him three things. He was not to disturb the African tribes inhabiting the gorges of the Atlas or the deserts to the south [of Morocco], such as the Masmúdah and others; he was to conclude a peace with Ibn Húd, the Sultán of Saragossa, in order to allow him to carry on war against the infidels; and, lastly, he was to fix his court at Seville, not at Cordova.

On the death of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, which, as above related, happened in the year 500 (Sept. A.D. 1106),

18 his son ‘Alí, surnamed Abú-l-hasan, succeeded him. ‘Alí was then twenty-three years old, having been born at Ceuta in the year 477 (beginning May 9, A.D. 1084). He followed the steps of his able father, although he fell short of him in some things. In Andalus he kept off the enemy of God from the dominions of Islám, and made incessant war on the Christians.’ He was equally prosperous in Africa, until God Almighty decreed the rising of Mohammed Ibn Tuimarta, surnamed Al-mahdí, the founder of the dynasty of the Al-muwáhhedún (Almohades), who ceased not to sap the
foundations of the Lamtunite dynasty until he nearly accomplished its ruin; for, although he himself never could reduce Morocco, he conquered extensive provinces, and appointed for his lieutenant and successor 'Abdu-l-múmen Ibn 'Alí, who, in the year 541, took that wealthy capital by storm, and became in time the ruler of the West.

'Alí crossed four times to Andalus; once in the lifetime of his father. He crossed a second time in the year 503 (beginning July 30, A.D. 1109), when he reached as far as Toledo, and besieged it for some time. Although he could not reduce that city, owing to the strength of its walls, he nevertheless took Talavera, Majoritt (Madrid), Wáda-l-hajaráh (Guadalaxara), and other fortresses and towns of those districts, defeated the Christians whenever they dared show themselves, and collected incredible spoil. Meanwhile his general, Scyr Ibn Abi Bekr, was inflicting terrible blows upon the Christians of Al-gharb (Algarve), who, profiting by the absence of the Almoravides, had extended their conquests in those parts. Scyr retook the cities of Shantireyn (Santarem), Battaliós (Badajoz), Bortokál (Oporto), Yéborah (Evora), and Alishbúnah (Lisbon), and purged the whole of those western provinces from the filth of the infidels.

Whilst these events were passing, Adefunsh Ibn Radmir (Alfonso I. of Aragon), king of a nation of Franks called the Barcelonese, was grievously afflicting the Moslems upon their north-eastern frontier. Having defeated and slain Al-musta'ín Ibn Húd in an encounter near Tudela, in A.H. 503, he thought of nothing less than subjecting the whole of the Thagher (Aragon) to his detestable rule. Accordingly, he kept going backwards and forwards to Saragossa, casting a wistful eye over that city, and hovering in its immediate neighbourhood, as the hungry vulture over his prey; but Temím Ibn Yúsuf, whom 'Alí had left to govern Andalus in his absence, was so much on the alert that the Christian monarch found no opportunity to carry his wicked plans into execution. At last, in the year 512 (beginning April 23, A.D. 1118), thinking that the time was come to strike a decisive blow, Alfonso sent [messengers] to the land of Afranjah (France), summoning all the Christian nations there to assist him in his undertaking; and the people of those countries, having answered his call, flocked under his standard like swarms of locusts or ants. Alfonso soon found himself at the head of innumerable forces, with which he encamped before Saragossa. In order the more effectually to attack the city, he came provided with lofty wooden towers placed upon wheels, by means of which his men could approach the walls; he also brought thundering machines which he planted against the city, as well as twenty manjanik or catapults. The siege lasted until the provisions were exhausted, and the greater part of the population had died of hunger, when
those who remained sent a message to Alfonso, asking for a truce, and offering, if they were not relieved within a certain time, to surrender the town to him. The [grand-]son of Ramiro granted their request; but as no succour came, the people of Saragossa were obliged, at the expiration of the truce, to open their gates and surrender their city to the enemy. The Christians had not been many days in possession of Saragossa when a body of twelve thousand cavalry, which the commander of the Moslems, 'Ali Ibn Yusuf, had sent to its relief, appeared before the walls; but finding that the infidels had taken the city, the Almoravides went away without attempting even to snatch it from their hands. Saragossa, however, was not the only city which that accursed Christian reduced; he took also Kal'at Ayúb (Calatayud), and other important towns of those districts, and soon after he defeated the Almoravides at a place called Kutandah (Cutanda). This city," says a contemporary writer, "the name of which some authors write with a kef, and others with a kaf, is a town of the district of Daríkah (Daroca), in the province of Saragossa, in the upper Thagher (Aragon). Near it the Moslems (may God restore them to their pristine vigour!) were completely defeated by Alfonso, with the loss of about twenty thousand volunteers, although, strange to say, not one of the regular army perished in the action. The Moslems were commanded on the occasion by the Amir Ibráhím, son of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, the same prince to whom Al-fat'h dedicated his Kalýidu-l-'ikiyán. Among the illustrious Moslems who died martyrs for the faith on that disastrous day, we may count the Sheikh Abú 'Ali As-sadfí, and his equal in virtue and talents, Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Al-fará. Both went out of Valencia to fight against the enemy of God, but never returned to their friends."

The Kádi Abú Bekr Ibnu-l-‘arabí was also present at the battle, but he escaped alive. It is related by more than one historian that when the discomfited army entered Valencia, a man came up to Abú Bekr and asked him how he was, and that he answered, "I am like one who has lost both his tent and his cloak," thereby meaning that he had lost all that he possessed in this world. The above is a proverb well known in the West, and it means that whoever has lost his clothes and his tent has lost every thing in this world.

The news of these disasters induced the commander of the Moslems again to cross the Strait at the head of his Almoravides. In the year 513 (beginning April 13, A.D. 1119), he landed at Algesiras, and, after staying some time first at Seville and then at Cordova, directed his march towards the western provinces of Andalus, where he caused the ravages of a storm. His presence, moreover, was enough to cast terror into the hearts of the enemy, whose stoutest warriors fled for refuge behind the walls of their castles. Having recovered some of the
lost fortresses, and provided for the government of Andalus, which he again in-
trusted to his brother Temím, the commander of the Moslems crossed over to
his African dominions in the year 515 (beginning March 21, A. D. 1121).

'Ali Ibn Yusuf had no sooner quitted the shores of Andalus than the Christians
of every denomination began to get into motion and to prepare themselves for fresh
aggressions on the Moslem territory. Alfonso, the King of Toledo, had, it is true,
died of sorrow and disappointment when he heard that his only son [Sancho], the
heir to his crown, had been slain in a battle with the Almoravides; but there
remained to the east of the Mohammedan possessions another Alfonso, who proved
equally destructive to the worshippers of the true God. Elated with his past
successes, and with the taking of Saragossa, he made an incursion into the south
of Andalus, and having traversed the greater part of that country in his march,
arrived before Granada, where he encamped.

According to the author of a history of the Almoravides, entitled Anwáru-l-
Arrives before
Granada.

jalîyyah flî târîkh dawlatî-l-morâbêtîyyah (the rays of dazzling light: on the history
of the Almorábite dynasty), the Mu’áhidîn or Christian population of Granada
were the cause of this invasion, for they had frequently written to Ibn Radmir
(Alfonso), inviting him to come among them, and promising to rise in arms
the moment he should show himself in those parts. Accordingly, about the
beginning of Sha’bán of the year 515 (October, A. D. 1121), Alfonso started [from
his dominions] at the head of a numerous and well-appointed army, without
acquainting any one with the object of his expedition, and proceeded to Valencia,
where there was a body of Almoravides under the command of Abú Mohammed
Ibn Yedersen. After besieging the city in vain for several days, Alfonso raised
his camp and proceeded to Jezirah-Shukar (Alcira), where he was not more
fortunate, for the inhabitants made a valiant defence. He then went to Denia
and to Xatiba, and thence to Murcia, and afterwards to Beyrah (Vera). After
this he crossed the valley of Al-mansûrah (Almanzora), descended to Burséímah
(Purchena), and halted some time at Wáda Taghlah. He then went to Bastah
(Baza), and thence to Wádi-Ash (Guadix), in the neighbourhood of which he
halted, taking up his quarters at a village close to that city, called Al-kasr
(Alcazar). Here Alfonso remained for about a month, making attacks upon the
city of Guadix, which, however, he could not reduce. After this he marched to
Dejmah (Dierma), close to Granada, and encamped there. It was at day-break of
the great festival, or 10th of Dhi-l-hajjah, that the tents of Alfonso were first
seen in the distance in an eastern direction: the inhabitants were thrown into
the utmost consternation by the sight, and the prayer of fear was said in the
mosques; the people flew to arms and prepared for resistance. Alfonso, however,
made no attack upon the city; and, after remaining for about ten days encamped at Dejmah, where the Christians of the neighbourhood brought him provisions for his host, he raised his tents on the 25th of Dhí-l-hajjah (March 5, A. D. 1122), and went to Marsénah [Marchena], and thence to Yenish; and the next morning to a town called As-sekáh, in the district of Kal'ah Yahssob. After stopping three days at that place, Alfonso took the road to Bayénah (Baena), passed by Kabrah (Cabra), where he halted some days, and went to Al-lusénah (Lucena). Having received intelligence that the Almoravides of Granada, under the command of Temím Abú Táhir, were in pursuit of him, he went to Belali, and thence to Fahssu-d-danisúl, where he was overtaken by the Moslems. A battle ensued, in which the Moslems had at first the advantage; but their general having given orders to remove the tents from a low to a high ground, the order was misunderstood, a panic struck the troops, and the Christians made themselves masters of their camp.

Alfonso next went towards the sea shore by the road of Shalúbániah (Salobreña). They say that as he crossed the deep and narrow valleys watered by the river of that name, he exclaimed in his native language, "What a fine tomb this would make, if we had any one to throw the earth over us!" From Shalúbániah Alfonso took a western direction and reached the coast of Belesh (Velez-Malaga), where he caused a small boat to be made, and, sending out people to fish for him, ate of the fish which they brought him, as if he had made a vow, or wished to have his memory perpetuated by the exploit. From Velez-Malaga the Christian king returned once more to Granada, and pitched his tents at a village called Dolar, three parasangs south of Granada. After staying two days there he removed to the town of Hamadán, in the neighbourhood of which there were some notable skirmishes between his host and that of the Moslems. Two days after he marched to Al-faraj, and encamped at a place called 'Ayn Atesah, but perceiving that the Moslems were surrounding him on every side, he marched in the direction of Al-borajelát, thence to Al-laghún, and lastly to Wádi-Ash (Guadix). Here, seeing that the cavalry of the Almoravides were close upon him, and that he had lost a number of his bravest knights, he determined upon returning to his own dominions. Accordingly he took an eastern direction, and passing by Murcia, Xativa, Denia, Valencia, &c., reached the capital of his kingdom, not without having lost in the expedition the best part of his warriors.

It has been said above that the Al-mu'áhidín or Christians living in the territory of Granada were the principal cause of Alfonso's invasion, since they had not only instigated him to penetrate so far into the Mohammedan territory, promising him every aid and assistance in their power, but they had provided his army with
every necessary, had guided him, and numbers of them had joined his banners. The traitors, however, did not escape the chastisement which they deserved. At the solicitation of several respectable citizens of Cordova, Seville, and other places, the celebrated Kádí Abú-l-walíd Ibn Roshd (Averroes) crossed over to Africa, and, having had an interview with 'Alí, explained to that Sultán the dangerous situation in which the Moslems of Andalus were, having to fight enemies abroad and guard against traitors at home. He besought him to remedy the evil, by ordering the transportation of the Christians who lived about Granada, and the other districts lately overrun by Alfonso; and the commander of the Moslems, yielding to his solicitations, issued the requisite orders, and thousands of that treacherous population were embarked and removed to Meknásah, Salé, and other towns of Western Africa.

In the year 515, the commander of the Moslems crossed over again to Andalus, in order to put down some serious disturbances which had arisen in Cordova, and also to wage war against the infidels. He had not been long in that country when messengers came to him from Africa, announcing the rising of Mohammed Ibn Tiumarta, better known in history by the surname of Al-mahdī (the leader). 'Alí, therefore, crossed over to Morocco, and never afterwards visited his Andalusian dominions, the government of which, as before, he intrusted to his brother Abú Táhir Temín, and at his death, which happened in 520 (A. D. 1126), to his own son Táshefin.

'Alí died at Morocco in Rejeb of the year 537 (Jan. or Feb. A. D. 1143). His death, however, was not made public until three months afterwards. He appointed his son Táshefin to be his successor, and desired to be interred in the public cemetery, which was done. He had reigned thirty-six years and seven months.
CHAPTER II.


On the death of 'Alī Ibn Yúsuf, his son Tāshefīn, surnamed Abú Mohammed, succeeded him. The whole of his reign—which was of very short duration—was spent in war with the Al-muwáhhedún or Almohades, whose rising under his father's reign we have recorded. Although their leader, Abú 'Abdillāh Mohammed Ibn Tiumarta, had died in 524 (August, A.D. 1130), his successor 'Abdu-l-múmen had since followed in his track, and was fast overthrowing the tottering empire of the Almoravides. Tāshefīn fought several engagements with them, in some of which he came off victorious; but in 539 (A.D. 1144), having left his capital, Morocco, to attack 'Abdu-l-múmen, he was defeated by that general near the city of Telemsán, and compelled to take refuge within its walls. Shortly after, not deeming himself secure there, he fled to Wahrán, whither he was followed by the victorious Almohades. For some time Tāshefīn defended himself valiantly; but at last, seeing that he could not escape the hands of his enemies, he determined upon leaving the city at night and retiring to a castle which he had built on the sea shore, hoping to be able from thence to cross over to Andalus. 'Abdu-l-múmen, however, having received intelligence of his plans, ordered that the city should be more closely invested, that the sentries should be doubled, and fires lighted at certain distances in his camp, to prevent the Sultán's escape. On the 27th of Ramadhán, A.H. 539 (March 23, A.D. 1145), Tāshefīn left Wahrán under cover of night, accompanied by a few confidential servants. He rode a celebrated mare called Rithánah, a very swift animal, but whilst galloping over
the mountains she fell down a precipice, and the body of Tāshefīn was found the next morning stretched at the bottom of a deep ravine.

Tāshefīn was succeeded by his son Abū Isḥāk Ibrāhīm, whom he had left to command at Morocco during his absence; but 'Abdu-l-mūmen, after reducing Telemsān, in A.H. 540, and Fez and Salē in 541, marched against that capital, which he besieged and took in Shawwāl, A.H. 541 (March, A.D. 1147), putting to death the unfortunate Ibrāhīm, who fell a prisoner into his hands.

During the wars between the Almoravides and Almohades, the Moslems of Andalus were left a prey to the murderous infidels, who attacked them everywhere with the greatest fury, took their cities and towns, and led thousands of them into captivity. In this manner the Christians of Toledo extended their ravages to the very walls of Cordova, and thought of nothing short of establishing their abominable rites in the very city which had so long been the citadel of Islām. On the other hand, Alfonso, King of the Franks (Catalonian and Aragonese), whose conquests we have recorded above, was not inactive; he surprised several fortresses bordering upon his dominions, and carried fire and sword into the very heart of the Mohammedan territory. God, however, was pleased to deliver the Moslems from the demon’s mischief; for having laid siege to Fraga, a considerable town of the Thagher (Aragon), the general of the Almoravides hastened to the assistance of the besieged, defeated the Christians, and put Alfonso to death. This happened in the year 528 (A.D. 1134).

The above period [of civil war in Africa] was also remarkable for the rising of several chieftains, who, seeing the Almoravides engaged with their enemies the Almohades, took the opportunity to assume independence and to shake off the African yoke. On his departure for Africa, Tāshefīn had appointed a Lantūnite chief, named Ibn Ghāniyyah [Yahya Ibn 'Ali], to govern Andalus during his absence; but what with the Christians of every denomination who assailed his frontiers, and what with the Moslems of Andalus themselves, who showed every where symptoms of disaffection and wished to rid themselves of the Almoravides, that chieftain was unable to stem the torrent of calamity and misfortune which broke out more furiously than ever in the fair dominions of Islām. At last, when the people of Andalus saw that the empire of the Almoravides was falling to pieces; when they heard that Tāshefīn had been slain, and that his son, Abū Isḥāk Ibrāhīm, was shut up in his capital and surrounded by his enemies, they waited no longer, and, casting away the mask of dissimulation, broke out into open rebellion against their African rulers. In the same manner as at the overthrow of the house of Umeyyah the provinces of their vast empire had been parcelled out among their generals and governors, so now every petty governor, chief, or
man of influence, who could command a few followers and had a castle to retire to in case of need, styled himself Sultán, and assumed the other insignia of royalty; and, as the historian Ibnu Khalidún has judiciously remarked, Andalus afforded the singular spectacle of as many kings as there were towns in it. As some writers, but especially Ibnu-s-seyrafi, Ibn Sáhibi-s-sálat, and others, have written in detail the events of this period of confusion and anarchy, which they have designated by the name of Al-fitnatu-th-thdniyyah (the second civil war), to distinguish it from that which followed immediately after the massacre of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-mansúr, we will abstain from relating them here, having done it already in our work entitled Azhdru-r-riyddh fi akhbár Kádhí 'Iyádh (the flowers of the garden: on the history of the Kádhí 'Iyádh). Suffice it to say, that Ibn Hamdín rose at Cordova; Ibn Maymún ['Ali Ibn 'Isa] at Cadiz and the neighbouring districts; that Ibn Kasí [Ahmed] and Ibn Wazír [Seddaray] shared among themselves the whole of that country which had once belonged to the Bení Al-afttas; that a chief named Maymún Al-lamtúni rose in command of Granada; and lastly, that Ibn Mardánísh Al-jodharni took possession of Valencia and a great portion of the east of Andalus. Among these chieftains some were of Andalusian origin, and detested alike the rule of the Almoravides and that of the Almohades; others belonged to some of the tribes which Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin led into Andalus, such as the Lamtínah, Senhájah, Zentáah, &c., and they were naturally hostile to the Almohades. All, however, shortly disappeared before the victorious banners of 'Abdu-l-múmen, who deprived all and every one of them of their usurped dominions, and subjected the whole of Andalus to his rule. The last-named chieftain, however [Ibn Mardánísh], maintained himself longer than any other, and fought successfully against the Almohades, as we shall hereafter relate.

The Almohades invade Andalus.

In the month of Dhi-l-hajjah of the year 539 (June, A. D. 1145), an army of Almohades, commanded by Abú 'Imrán Músá Ibn Sa'íd, landed at Jeźírah Taríf (Tarifa), of which place they took possession, as well as of Algesiras and the surrounding country. Early in the ensuing year Malaga and Seville shared the same fate. Three years after, Yahya Ibn Ghániyyah surrendered to them the city of Cordova, and shortly after Jaén. In the year 546 (beginning April 19, A. D. 1151), 'Abdu-l-múmen announced his intention of crossing over to Andalus. Having made every ostensible preparation to that effect, he left his capital, Morocco, and proceeded to Kasr 'Abdi-l-kerím, where he passed his troops in review; but the news which he there received from Eastern Africa induced him to relinquish his purpose and repair to that country. Hearing, however, that the Moslems of Andalus were much pressed by the Christians, who had lately
taken Almeria, he sent thither one of his sons, named Abú Sa'íd, with orders to recover that city.

Almeriyyah (Almeria) was a fine city situated on the coast of the sea of Shám (Mediterranean). It was the port of Andalus, and the resort of merchants from Eastern Africa, Egypt, Syria, and other distant parts. It was the maritime arsenal of the Bení Umeyyah, and the port where those fleets were equipped which furrowed in all directions the waters of the Mediterranean, spread devastation over its shores, and allowed no Christian vessel to sail in it. Almeria was celebrated all over the East and West for its pottery, its glass, its silken robes of every colour and pattern, and many other articles of trade, which its merchants shipped to all parts of the world. The fertility of the soil, moreover, the abundance and cheapness of provisions, the sweetness of its waters, the mildness of the air, and the salubrity of its climate, made it a favourite residence for the Moslems, who went to settle there from all parts of Andalus, until its population could not find room within its precincts. All these advantages, and many others which we do not specify, made Almeria a desirable prize to the Christians, who for a long time past had cast a wistful eye over its delightful fields and well-filled storhouses.

At last, in the year 542 (A.D. 1147), As-soleytán (Alfonso II. of Castile), King of Toledo, assisted by a Christian fleet which came from Jenewah (Genoa), besieged Almeria by sea and land. Ibn Mardanish, King of Valencia, the only Moslem who could effectually have defeated the plans of As-soleytán, entered into some secret compact with him and kept away: the consequence was, that, after besieging that city for some time, the infidels lodged themselves in one of the suburbs, and having from thence attacked the citadel, took it by storm on Friday, the 20th of Jumada the first, 542 (October 16, A.D. 1147).

It is related by Abú Zakariyyá Al-ja'ýdí, on the authority of Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Sa'ádáh Ash-shátibí Al-mo'ammár (the long-lived), that about two years or so before the taking of Almeria, a respectable inhabitant of that city, whose name was Abú Merwán Ibn Ward, saw in a dream an old man of imposing height, who approached him, and, placing his hands suddenly on his sides from behind, shook him with great violence until he made him wake all terrified; after which he bade him repeat the following verses:

``Up, up with thee, thou careless and deceived man! do not sleep;
``For God has some hidden views concerning the people [of this town].
``There is no escape, [to his will they must submit,] and yet not abuse
``what is detrimental to them;
``For otherwise they would be guilty of a crime against the Lord of
``mankind.```
This happened in the year 540 (beginning June 23, A.D. 1145). About two years after (A.D. 1147) the Rûm (Castilians) took possession of Almeria. The above anecdote is borrowed from the Háfedh Ibnu-l-'abbár, who relates it in a work of his entitled Tekmîlah (complement).

Among those who gained the crown of martyrdom on this occasion one was the celebrated Imám Ar-rusháttí, whose entire name was Abú Mohammed Ibn 'Alí Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Alí Ibn Khalaf Ibn Ahmed Ibn 'Omar Al-lakhmí Ar-rusháttí Al-meriyí, a man deeply versed in sacred traditions, biography, history, and other sciences, the author of an excellent work entitled Iktîbâsu-l-anwâr wa iltimâsîsu-l-azhâr al-nasâbi-l-sihâbat wa rawâtî-l-athâr (the borrowing of lights and the begging of flowers; on the genealogy of the companions and selected traditions of their times), which many a scholar learned under him. It is an excellent work, in which Ar-rusháttí collected [much that is useful], without failing in any part of his arduous task. He wrote it on the model of the celebrated Kitâbâsu-l-ansâb (book of lineages), by the Háfedh Abu Sa'id Ibn As-sam'ani. Ar-rusháttí was born at a small town of the province of Murcia, called Auriwelah (Orihuela), in the year 466 (beginning Sept. 5, A.D. 1073); he died, as above related, at the storming of Almeria, on the morning of Friday, the 20th of Jumâda the first, 542 (October 16, A.D. 1147). The surname of Ar-rusháttí was given to one of his ancestors owing to a large mole on his body, which his nurse, who was a Christian woman, called in her language rusháttah (roseta), whence he was called Ar-rusháttí. The above is borrowed from the Wafíyydtu-l-‘âdân (the deaths of the illustrious), by Ibn Khallekán.

Treating of the taking of Almeria [by the Castilians], Ibn Hobeysh, the last of the traditionists of Andalus, says as follows: "I was in the castle of Almeria when the Christians took possession of that city, and presented myself to the chief of the Christians, As-soleytán, who was the son of the daughter of Alfonso, and I said to him,—'I know of a tradition which traces thy genealogy to Hirkal (Heraclius), the Emperor of Constantinople.' The Christian [king] seemed pleased at this, and told me to repeat the tradition, which I did, as I had learned it; upon which he said,—'Thou and all those who are with thee are free; you may go out [of the castle] without paying any ransom.'" This Ibn Hobeysh was the master of Ibn Dihyah, and of Ibn Haut-illah, and of Abú-r-rabi' Al-kalá'î, (may God show them mercy!) His entire name was 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Yúsuf, but he was better known by the surname of Ibn Hobeysh. He was the author of several works, and one in particular on the first conquests of Islám, which he inscribed to Abú Ya'kúb Yúsuf Al-mansûr.
In the year 545 (beginning April 29, A.D. 1150), Alfonso, King of Toledo and Galicia (Alfonso II. of Castile), marched to Cordova with forty thousand cavalry, and laid siege to that capital. The inhabitants defended themselves with great vigour; but the scarcity of provisions began to be felt, and they were in great tribulation. 'Abdu-l-múmen had no sooner heard of their dangerous situation, than he sent an army of twelve thousand horse to their assistance. On the approach of the African forces, Alfonso raised the siege and retired into his dominions, upon which the Káyid Abú-l-ghamr As-sáyib, who commanded in Cordova, gave up that city to Yahya Ibn Maymún, who was 'Abdu-l-múmen's general, and acknowledged the supremacy of the Almohades. On the morning of the day following the arrival of Ibn Maymún, the Christians were seen returning to their encampment before the city, upon which that general left a portion of his forces for the defence of Cordova, and with the remainder crossed over to Africa. Some time after, Alfonso, despairing of reducing that capital, raised the siege and returned to his kingdom.

In the ensuing year [A. H. 546] 'Abdu-l-múmen sent to Andalus another army of twenty thousand men, under the command of Al-hentétí [Abú Hafss], who had instructions to retake the city of Almeria, which, as above related, had some time previous fallen into the hands of the Christians. When the news of their disembarkation became known, Maymún, the Lord of Granada, Ibn Ilmushk, and other chieftains, hastened to pay their respects to the general of 'Abdu-l-múmen, and to place themselves under the obedience of that Sultán. They all instigated him to make war against Ibn Mardanish, King of the eastern provinces of Andalus; but the latter had no sooner received intelligence of their plans, than, fearing for himself, he sent an embassy to the Christian Lord of Barcelona, imploring his help against the Almohades. The Lord of Barcelona granted the request of Ibn Mardanish, and sent him an army of ten thousand men, under a brave and experienced general. Meanwhile the Almohades were marching against Ibn Mardanish; but when their general [Al-hentétí] heard of the arrival of his Frank auxiliaries, he retraced his steps and proceeded towards Almeria. Having arrived there, Al-hentétí invested the city on every side; but the want of provisions soon compelled him to raise the siege and to return to Seville, where he remained some time. It was not till some months afterwards that the Moslems succeeded in wresting that city from the hands of the enemy, after a siege of seven months.

"In the year 546 (A. D. 1151)," says an African historian, "Síd Abú Hafss and Síd Abú Sa'íd, sons of the Commander of the Faithful, 'Abdu-l-múmen, marched to Almeria, and besieged the Christians, who held its kussábah. Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Mardanísh, King of the eastern parts of Andalus, then hastened
to attack the princes, who had thus to defend themselves against the Christians inside and against the Moslems outside. At last, Ibn Mardanish, perceiving all the shame of his act, in thus attacking his brethren in religion whilst engaged in the extermination of the Christians, desisted from his undertaking and marched off, leaving the execution of his vengeance for another opportunity. When the Christians inside the castle [of Almeria] saw Ibn Mardanish raise his tents and go away, they said [to each other], 'Surely Ibn Mardanish would not decamp, unless he had heard that the Almohades were on the point of receiving re-inforcements.' Upon which they offered to capitulate, and surrendered [the city] to the Moslems.'

This Ibn Mardanish was a man of Christian origin, who, profiting by the confusion which followed the overthrow of the Almoravide dynasty, had made himself the master of Valencia, Murcia, and other towns in the east of Andalus. According to Ibn Sáhibi-s-salat, who, as is well known, wrote a history of the Almohades, in which he treats at full length of this and other chieftains who resisted their authority in Eastern Africa as well as in Andalus, Ibn Mardanish was the son of Sa’d, son of Mohammed, son of Ahmed, son of Mardanish. His name was Mohammed, and his kunyá or appellative Abú ’Abdillah. He was, however, better known by the surname of Ibn Mardanish. His father, Sa’d, had served under the Almoravides. He was governor of Fraga when Ramiro, King of the Franks, besieged that city in the year 528 (A.D. 1134). His uncle, Mohammed, surnamed Sáhibu-l-basit (the hero of Albacete), had also been one of the most distinguished warriors of his time. Trained to arms under the eyes of his father and uncle, Ibn Mardanish soon became a very experienced captain. He entered the service of Ibn ’Ayádh, King of Murcia, who, in reward for his eminent services, appointed him governor of Valencia, and gave him his daughter in marriage. On the death of Ibn ’Ayádh, Ibn Mardanish retained possession of Valencia, and shortly after added Murcia, Jaen, and other cities to his dominions. He was a very powerful monarch when the Almohades arrived in Andalus. But to return.

In the year 555 (A.D. 1160), the Commander of the Faithful, ’Abdu-l-múmen Ibn ’Ali, after subjecting the whole of Eastern Africa to his rule, and retaking the city of Mahdiyyah, which the Sicilians had taken in 543 (beginning May 21, A.D. 1148), as well as Safaks (Sfax), and other towns of that coast, returned to Fez. After making a short stay in that city, ’Abdu-l-múmen marched to Ceuta, where he embarked for Andalus. He landed at Jebal-Tárik (Gibraltar), which from that day was called Jebalu-l-fatah (the mountain of the entrance or victory), and ordered that a strong fortress should be erected on the top of it. He traced out
the building with his own hands, and when, after remaining for two months there, and providing for the government of Andalus, 'Abdu-l-múmen returned to his African dominions, he appointed his son Abú Saʿíd, then governor of Granada, to superintend the building and report its progress to him. One of the architects employed was Hájí Yaʿysh, the geometrician. This Yaʿysh, who was an excellent engineer, is said to have constructed some wonderful machines during his residence at Jebal-Tārik (Gibraltar), and among others a large windmill, which stood on the very top of the mountain.

During 'Abdu-l-múmen's residence at Gibraltar, the Almohades made several incursions into the enemy's territory by his express command. A body of eighteen thousand horse, having penetrated into the district of Badajoz, defeated Ibn Errink (Alfonso Enriquez), reduced Bájah (Beja), Yéborah (Evora), Al-kasr (Alcazar do Sal), and other towns which the accursed Christians had taken some time before, and returned victorious and laden with plunder to the dominions of Islám.

In the year 556, in the month of Jumáda the first (May, a. d. 1161), an Andalusian chieftain named Ibráhîm Ibn Humushk, who was the father-in-law of Ibn Mardanîsh, and made common cause with that rebel, took by surprise the city of Granada. According to Ibnu-l-khattîb this happened thus: "Síd Abú Saʿíd, son of 'Abdu-l-múmen, who was then governor of that city, having crossed over to Africa to assist his father in putting down a rebellion, Ibráhîm and his partisans among the Almoravides thought the opportunity a favourable one again to take the field against their enemies, the Almohades. Putting himself at the head of a band of resolute followers, Ibráhîm approached Granada secretly and at night, and entered it by a gate which his partisans had left open [for him]. Having then attacked the Almohades who composed the garrison, he killed a great many of them and obliged the remainder to take refuge in the kassábah, which he besieged immediately, battering its walls and throwing inside all sorts of projectiles. When this intelligence reached Morocco, Abú Saʿíd hastened to the assistance of the besieged, taking with him his own brother, Síd Abú Mohammed Abú Hafss, and a considerable body of African troops. Ibn Humushk, however, was not discouraged by the arrival of so powerful an army; he sallied out of Granada, formed his troops in the spot called Merju-r-rokád (the field of the sleepers), and engaged the Almohades, whom he defeated, notwithstanding their superior numbers, making great slaughter among them, owing to the trenches and canals into which the plain before that city is cut up for the purpose of irrigation, and which arrested the flight of the fugitives. Among the slain was Síd Abú Mohammed: his brother, Síd Abú
"Sa'íd, escaped, and reached Malaga with the relics of his army. As to Ibn "Humushk, he returned to Granada with his prisoners, whom he caused to be "taken near the walls of the kassábah, and there slaughtered in the presence "of their friends. Meanwhile the Khalíf 'Abdu-l-múmen, who had put down "the insurrection, and was then at Salé, being informed of this disaster, dispatched "another large army to Andalus, under the command of another of his sons, "named Abú Ya'kúb, assisted by the Sheikh Abú Yúsuf Ibn Suleymán, one of "the bravest and most experienced warriors of the time. These troops, which "were joined by many thousands of volunteers anxious to wage war against the "infidels, arrived at Dilar, a hamlet close to Granada, where they encamped. "This happened in 557 (A. D. 1162). Meanwhile Ibn Humushk, seeing the "tempest gather over his head, had sent to apprise his son-in-law, Ibn Mardanísh, "of his perilous situation, and to beg him to come to his assistance. No sooner "had Ibn Mardanísh received the message, than having quickly raised in his "dominions an army composed of Christians and Moslems, he hastened to his aid "and encamped with his forces on an eminence close to the suburb inhabited by the "people of Baeza 19 (Albayzin), which still bears his name, Kudyat Ibn Mardanísh "(the hillock of Ibn Mardanísh). The two armies came soon after to an engage- "ment in the Vega of Granada, when, after a bloody and hard-contested battle, "fortune decided in favour of the Almohades, and Ibn Mardanísh fled to Jaen. "Some time after this, Ibn Humushk and his son-in-law having quarrelled, "the former made his submission to the Almohades. The cause of their quarrel "was this: Ibn Mardanísh divorced his wife, the daughter of Ibn Humushk, "who, accordingly, returned to her father. Having, some time after, sent for "a son of hers to be educated at her father's house, her late husband refused "to comply with her request, and would never deliver up her son. At last, "seeing her application disregarded, the mother said one day,—'After all, what "is the son of a dog but a puppy? Let him keep him; I do not want him,' "which expressions she caused to be circulated among the women of Andalus. "From that moment Ibn Mardanísh and Ibn Humushk became sworn enemies, "and the latter, in order the better to revenge himself, embraced the party of the "Almohades in 565 (beginning Sept. 24, 1169), and served under them against "Ibn Mardanísh. In the year 571 (beginning July 21, A. D. 1175), however, Ibn "Humushk asked for leave to cross over to Africa, and, having obtained it, "settled with his family and children at Meknásah, where he died in Rejeb of "572 (January, A. D. 1177).”

In the year 558 (A. D. 1163), 'Abdu-l-múmen made public his intention to cross over to Andalus, and summoned the tribes of the Desert to engage in the holy
war. He left Morocco on Thursday the fifth of Rabi' the first of that year (Feb. 11, A.D. 1163), and arrived at Rabáttu-l-fatah (the station of the victory, now Rabát), where he passed in review three hundred thousand men of the Arabian tribes of Eastern Africa and of the Zenátah and other [tribes] professing the doctrines of the Mahdí, and one hundred and eighty thousand volunteers, who hastened also to that town for the purpose of sharing the reward promised to those who fight against the infidel. God, however, had decreed that this formidable armament should never quit the shores of Western Africa; for whilst the Commander of the Faithful, 'Abdu-l-múmen, was making every preparation for the crossing, death, whose fierce blows spare neither the great nor the small, surprised him on Friday the 6th of Jumáda the second of the same year (May 12, A.D. 1163).
CHAPTER III.

Accession of Yusuf I.—Conquests of Alfonso Enríquez.—Death of Ibn Mardanîsh.—Yúsuf lays siege to Toledo.—Dies before Santarem.—Is succeeded by Ya’kúb Al-mansûr.—Who attacks and defeats the Christians.—Battle of Alarcos.—Death of Ya’kúb.—He is succeeded by Mohammed An-násîr.—The Moslems lose the battle of Al’ákab or Las Navas.—Its fatal results.—Accession of Yúsuf II.—’Abdu-l-wáhîd.—Al’ádîl.—Idrîs Al-mámmûn.—As-sa’îd.—Al-murtadhî.—Al-wâthîk.

On the death of ’Abdu-l-múmen, his son Yúsuf, surnamed Abú Ya’kúb, received the oaths [of the Almohades]. When the affairs of the government had been settled, and the foundations of the kingdom strengthened, Yúsuf crossed over to Andalus, in order to exhibit in that country the benefits of his government. This happened in 566 (beginning Sept. 13, A.D. 1170). He landed in Andalus, accompanied by ten thousand horse of the Almohades and Arabs, and proceeded to Seville, where he fixed his court.

Some time before the landing of Yúsuf, a Christian named Ibn Errink (Alfonso Enríquez) had been committing great depredations in the western parts of Andalus, and had even reduced some considerable towns,¹ as Turjeloh (Truxillo), Yéborah (Evora), Káseresh (Cazeres), and others; but Yúsuf had no sooner arrived in Seville than the accursed Christian shut himself up in his stronghold, and the Moslems were for some time delivered from his mischief.

Yúsuf’s arrival had also the effect of checking the progress of Abú ’Abdîllah Mohammed Ibn Sa’d Ibn Mardanîsh, who, as before related, ruled undisturbed over Murcia and the greater part of Eastern Andalus; for no sooner did he hear of that Sultán’s landing than fear lodged in his heart, and he fell dangerously ill and died: some authors say that he was poisoned.

On the death of Ibn Mardanîsh, his sons and relatives presented themselves to the Commander of the Faithful, Yúsuf, then residing at Seville, placed themselves under his rule, and delivered the whole of their dominions into his hands.
Yúsuf received the princes kindly, married them to his own daughters, and raised them to a station higher even than that which they occupied before.

This being done, the Commander of the Faithful began to give his serious consideration to retaking from the Christians those districts and towns which they had subdued [under the preceding reigns]. After a successful campaign his dominions were considerably enlarged, and his victorious army ravaged the Christian territory to the very gates of Toledo, which city he is said to have besieged [for a length of time]. But all the Christian nations of Andalus having collected their forces to attack him, and famine, moreover, having seized on his army, he was compelled to raise the siege and to return to Morocco, the capital of his [African] dominions. From thence he proceeded to Eastern Africa, and having appeased the troubles which agitated that country, returned to Morocco.

In the year 580 (beginning April 13, A. D. 1184), the Commander of the Faithful again crossed over to Andalus at the head of considerable forces. This time he directed his march towards the western provinces, and laid siege to Shantireyn (Santarem), one of the greatest cities of the enemy. He remained encamped before it for a whole month, until he was attacked by a disease which caused his death in the same year [A. H. 580]. He was carried on a litter to Seville. Others say that he was killed by an arrow shot by the Christians; 2 but God only knows the truth of the case. It was Yúsuf who ordered the building of the great mosque of Seville,—which, however, was not completed till the reign of his successor,—and who put the maritime arsenal of Ceuta 3 in its present efficient state.

Yúsuf was succeeded by his son Abú Yúsuf Ya’kúb, surnamed Al-mansúr-billakah (the victorious by the grace of God), a monarch whose fame travelled far and wide, who upheld the glory of the Almohade empire, who raised the banners of holy war, suspended the balance of justice, and spread the decrees of civil law,—rendered Islám triumphant, ordained what is right and forbade what is wrong, and made his orders obeyed over near as well as distant [lands], of all which acts history affords abundant records. During the reign of this Sultán the Christians of Andalus received many a severe blow, for he triumphed over them on several occasions, and principally at Alarcos, where the victory equalled—if it did not surpass in importance—the celebrated one of Zalákah. The learned and celebrated poet, Abú Is’hák Ibráhím Ibn Ya’kúb Al-kánemí, a black of Súdán, has said in allusion to this Sultán,—

"Well may his Hájibs conceal him from my view; my reverence [for him] is such that I see his image on the curtain.

"My knowledge of his virtues prompts me to approach, but fear and respect fix me to my place." 4
“In the days of Ya‘kūb,” says an African historian, “conquests succeeded each other without interruption. The first thing that he did on his taking possession of the command was to direct his attention towards Andalus and to inquire into the state of that country. Having collected a numerous army, he landed at Algesiras on Thursday the third of Rabi’ the first of the year 585 (April 20, A. D. 1189), and started immediately for the west of Andalus, where he committed the ravages of the tempest. He then proceeded to Seville, and after providing for the welfare of the country in general, and steadying the warriors in their ranks, he returned to Morocco, the capital of his dominions.”

Again, in the year 586 (beginning Feb. 7, A. D. 1190), having received intelligence that the Franks had taken Shilb (Silves), one of the principal cities of Al-gharb, Ya‘kūb marched thither in person at the head of considerable forces, and having laid siege to the city, restored it to the rule of Islám. Immediately after he sent forward [into the enemy’s country] a large army of Arabs and Almohades, which reduced four other towns of those which had been taken by the Christians forty years before. The Lord of Toledo [Alfonso II. of Castile] feared Ya‘kūb, and asked him for a truce, which he granted to him, to last for five years, after which he returned to Morocco. It was on this occasion that the Káyíd Abú ’Abdillah Ibn Wazir Ash-shelbí (from Silves), one of the general officers of the army stationed at Seville, composed that beautiful ode, in which he addresses Al-mansúr, and congratulates him upon his successful campaign against the Christians. Abú ’Abdillah had attended the expedition as commander of the van. The ode begins thus:

“When we met, the spears were crossed, and the blows [followed each other] like the revolutions of the millstone.

“The sharp Indian swords sported on our necks and on those of our enemies; some [of us] kept their saddles, and some fell;

“Not a breast but what had an arrow fixed in it; not a jugular vein but what had afforded a lodging to the scimitar.

“We fought until no refuge was left save the helmet and the spear, and the greatest courage was displayed on both sides.

“At last we charged and they staggered; [the victory was ours], for the staggerer soon after falls.”

This Abú ’Abdillah was a very experienced officer and an excellent poet. An-násir, one of the Sultáns of the posterity of ’Abdu-l-múmen, appointed him governor of Kasr Abí Dánis; but when Ibn Húd, who afterwards rose against the Almohades, made his entrance into Seville, he caused Abú ’Abdillah, [who was residing there,] to be arrested and put to death.
But to return to Al-mansūr. When the truce made with the Christians was over, or nearly so, a large party of them invaded the Moslem territory, and began to plunder and lay waste the country, and to commit all manner of ravages and depredations, which being reported to Al-mansūr, who was then absent in Africa, he resolved upon chastising their insolence. Having, accordingly, collected a numerous and well-appointed army, that Sultán crossed the Strait and landed at Jezírat Al-khādhrá (Algesiras), in Rejéb of the year 591 (A. D. 1195). The Christians of Andalus were no sooner informed of the landing of Ya’kūb, than they began to collect troops from the most remote parts [of Christendom], which being done, they marched against the Almohades. They say that soon after his arrival at the port of Salé for the purpose of crossing over to Andalus, Ya’kūb fell so dangerously ill that his physicians despaired of his life, upon which Alfonso, who was aware of the Sultán’s indisposition, sent him an embassy, threatening, abusing, bragging, and thundering; asking to be put in possession of some of the fortresses bordering upon his dominions. The result, however, is well known; Ya’kūb met the infidels at the head of his forces, and gained over them a victory which equalled, if it did not surpass in importance, the victory of Zalákah. Indeed, some writers assert that it exceeded it in every respect.

Alfonso with his Christian auxiliaries having encamped at Alark (Alarcos), a spot in the district of Badajoz, Ya’kūb marched thither at the head of his forces, and the two hosts were soon in presence of each other. Some time before the battle, Ya’kūb devised the following stratagem. Knowing that the Christians would attack in preference that part of the camp where he himself was, he bade his kinsman, the Sheikh Yahya Ibn Abí Hafss, change place with him, and to occupy with his troops the space round the royal pavilion. This Ibn Abí Hafss was the uncle of Abú Zakariyyá Al-hafssí, who afterwards became Sultán of Eastern Africa, as well as of a portion of Andalus whose inhabitants said the khotbah in his name. It happened as Ya’kūb had foreseen. The Christians, thinking that the banners in the middle of the camp marked the spot where Ya’kūb and his body-guard were, directed a most furious attack upon that quarter; but it availed them not; for they had exchanged only a few blows with the Moslems, when Ya’kūb fell unexpectedly upon them and defeated them most completely.

This memorable battle was fought on Thursday, the 9th of Sha’bán, A. H. 591 (A. D. 1195), which year, moreover, is well known all over the West as ’Amu-l-alark (the year of the battle of Alarcos). Never was there a more signal victory gained by the Moslems of Andalus. It is said that the loss of the Franks amounted to one hundred and forty-six thousand men, besides thirty thousand prisoners. The amount of spoils, too, said to have been gained on this occasion is almost incredible: some
authors say one hundred and fifty thousand tents, eighty thousand horses, one hundred thousand mules, and four hundred thousand asses; as the infidels, having no camels, used those animals to carry their baggage. Another account says sixty thousand suits of armour, and that the horses, mules, &c., were innumerable. As to the money and jewels, they were beyond calculation. A captive sold for one dirhem, a sword for half a dirhem, a horse for five, and an ass for one. All this spoil Ya’kúb divided among the Moslems agreeably to law. The relics of the Christian army fled to Kal’át Rabáh (Calatrava), where they fortified themselves; but the Sultán Ya’kúb followed them thither, and, after besieging them some days, took possession of the place. The Christian king, Alfonso, fled to Toledo with a few followers, in the worst possible plight. They say that when he arrived in that city, he had his head and beard shaved, turned his cross upside down, and swore not to sleep in bed, approach a woman, or mount a horse or mule, until he had revenged his defeat. He then began to collect troops and warlike stores from distant islands and countries; but he was again met by Ya’kúb, who, having defeated him, pursued him to Toledo, which city he besieged and battered with war engines, until he was on the point of taking it. The mother of Alfonso, accompanied by his wives and daughters, then came out of the city, and, with tears in her eyes, implored the conqueror to spare the city. Being moved to compassion, Ya’kúb not only granted the request, but, after paying them due honour, he dismissed them with splendid presents in jewels and other valuable articles. The Amír then returned to Cordova, where he passed a month occupied in the distribution of the spoil among his soldiers. Whilst there, ambassadors came to him from King Alfonso to sue for peace, which the Amír granted, as he had just heard of the rising in Eastern Africa of Al-mayúrkí, who was assisted in his rebellion by Korkúsh, the mameluke of the Bení Ayúb, Sultáns of Syria and Egypt; so that the people of Andalus for some time enjoyed security and rest.

After a prosperous reign of fourteen years and eleven months, Ya’kúb Al-mansúr died at Morocco, on Friday, the 22nd of Rabi’ the first, A. H. 595 (Feb. A. D. 1199). His body was conveyed to Tínmelel, where it was buried by the side of his father and grandfather. As to the report that this Sultán abdicated his royal power, and travelled to Syria, where he died and was interred in the district called Beká’h, there is not the least foundation for it, although Ibn Khallekán says something to that purpose. No author, however, has so well exposed the unsoundness of such a statement as the Sheríf Al-gharnáttí (Abú-l-kásim Mohammed) in his commentary upon the Makssúrah of Ibn Házem, who says, “This is one of the stories of the vulgar, who were in love with that Sultán.” Ya’kúb completed the building of the great mosque of Seville, and erected several useful or ornamental
works in other parts of his dominions. He was a powerful monarch, dreaded by his enemies and respected by his equals. In the year 587 the Sultán Saláhu-d-dín (Saladin), son of Ayúb, sent an embassy to solicit his aid against the Franks who had attacked him on the coast of Palestine; but this Ya’kúb would not grant, because Saláhu-d-dín had not in his letter addressed him by the title of Amíru-l-múmenín (Commander of the Faithful). Such, however, was Ya’kúb’s benevolent disposition that, although highly offended with Saláhu-d-dín, to whom he returned a despicable present, he rewarded munificently the ambassador of that Sultán, whose name was Ibn Munkid; having given him on one occasion, for a poem of forty verses, a thousand dirhems, being at the rate of one thousand for each verse, adding, when he gave him that large sum, “This we give thee, not for Saláhu-d-dín’s sake, but for thy learning and poetry.” Ibn Munkid left Andalus in 588 (A. D. 1192).

Ya’kúb Al-mansúr was succeeded by his son Abú ‘Abdillah Mohammed, surnamed An-násir li’dín-íllah (the defender of the faith), whose reign proved so fatal to the cause of the Moslems, and principally to those of Andalus; since, having in the year 609 (A. D. 1212) collected an army amounting to six hundred thousand warriors, he not only accomplished nothing advantageous to the cause of religion, but actually sustained one of the most complete defeats that ever disgraced the arms of Islám. The author of the Adh-dhakatratu-s-saníyyah fl tárıkhi-d-daullati-l-meríníyyah (the valuable treasure: on the history of the Merínite dynasty), says that Mohammed was so astonished and pleased with the number of his troops that he thought himself invincible. The Franks, on the other hand, made [ample] preparations [to resist him], and they fought the celebrated battle of Al-’akáb, which the Moslems lost, and the result of which was that the greater part of Maghreb was deserted and that the Franks conquered the greater part of Andalus. Out of the six hundred thousand men who entered the field of battle only a few escaped; some authors even state that their number did not reach one thousand. This battle was like a curse, not only to Andalus, but to the whole of Maghreb, and the defeat is to be ascribed to the bad policy of An-násir; for, although the Moslems of Andalus were well trained to war and accustomed to fight with the Christians, that Sultán and his Wizír entirely disregarded their advice, and even offended some of them; and the consequence was that the minds of the Andalusian officers were alienated and the Christians gained an easy victory. However this may be, certain it is that this defeat may be regarded as the real cause of the subsequent decline of Western Africa and Andalus,—of the former country, because the loss sustained in the battle was so great that her districts and towns were almost depopulated through it,—of Andalus, because the
enemy of God was thereby enabled to extend his conquests; for, after the death of An-násir, the empire of the Almohades became convulsed, the princes of the royal family, who held the government of Andalus, each seized the opportunity of extending his own power and authority; and in the subsequent decline of their empire at Morocco, they came at length not only to hire the enemy’s troops, but to surrender to the Christian kings the fortresses of the Moslems, that they might secure their aid against each other. At last the Andalusian chieftains and the descendants of the Arabs of the time of the Bení Umeyyah, such as Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Húd Al-jodhamí, Ibn Mardanísh, and others, united together and expelled them from the country, as we shall hereafter relate.

On the death of An-násir, which happened at Morocco in Sha'bán of the year 616 (Oct. or Nov. A.D. 1219), his son Abú Ya’kúb Yúsuf Al-mustanser (he who implores the help of God), succeeded him; but as he was fond of pleasure and repose, the affairs of the Andalusian Moslems, far from improving, went on declining rapidly, and the empire of his family became still weaker. He died without posterity at Morocco on the 12th of Dhí-l-hajjah, 620 (Jan. A.D. 1223), and was succeeded by his father’s uncle, ‘Abdu-l-wáhéd Ibn Yúsuf Ibn ‘Abdí-l-múmen, whose rule, however, was not more prosperous than that of his predecessors. A relative of his, named Al-‘ádíl Ibn Al-mánsúr, who was then at Murcia in Andalus, considering himself more entitled to the crown than his kinsman, raised the standard of revolt, and was proclaimed without opposition in all those towns which acknowledged the rule of Islám in that country.

‘Abdu-l-wáhéd’s rule was not of long duration; for no sooner had the news of Al-‘ádíl’s revolt reached Morocco, than he was deposed and strangled there on the 21st of Sha'bán, 621 (A.D. 1224). Meanwhile the Christians of Andalus were stirring against Al-‘ádíl, who marched against them at the head of his forces. Having, however, fought a pitched battle with them, he and the Moslems under his orders sustained a most severe and shameful defeat, which was like an ulcerated wound [to the body of Islám]. At last Al-‘ádíl fled over the Straits, and landed in Africa with the intention of going to Morocco, leaving a brother of his, named Abú-l-’ala Idrís, to command at Seville during his absence. After some negotiation [with the Sheikhs of the Almohades], Al-‘ádíl entered Morocco; but shortly after, the same parties, having risen against him, secured his person, and appointed in his stead Yahya, son of An-násir (Yúsuf II.), a youth without experience, and totally incapable of conducting the affairs of the Moslems.

On the receipt of this intelligence, Abú-l-’ala Idrís assumed the title of Khalíf at Seville, and was immediately proclaimed by the Moslems of Andalus under the surname of Al-mámmún (the trusted by the grace of God). In the course of time he
was also recognized at Morocco, although he would still dwell in Andalus. At last an Andalusian chief, named Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf [Ibn Húd] Al-jodhámí, having revolted against him and defeated his troops in several encounters, Idrís was compelled to abandon Andalus to him, and to cross over to Africa, where he ceased not to carry on war against Yahya Ibn An-násir, until he put him to death in the year 633 (beginning Sept. 15, A.D. 1235), and became the only ruler of Western Africa; although, as above related, the empire of Andalus was for ever lost to him and to the Sultáns of his race.

Idris died in the year 640 (beginning June 30, A.D. 1242), and was succeeded by his brother As-saíd (Idris II.), who was killed near a castle distant one day’s march from Telemsán, in 642 (beginning June 8, A.D. 1244). As-saíd was succeeded by 'Omar Ibn Ibráhím Ibn Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-l-múmen, surnamed Al- Al-murtadhi, murtadhi-billah (the accepted by the grace of God); but his dominions having been invaded in 665 (beginning Oct. 1, A.D. 1266), by Al-wáthik, better known Al-wáthik, by the surname of Abú Dabús, he fled [from his capital], was taken prisoner, and conveyed before Abú Dabús, who put him to death. Al-wáthik himself was slain in the year 668 (beginning August 30, A.D. 1269) by the Bení Merín, who subjected the whole of Western Africa to their rule. He was the last member of the dynasty founded by 'Abdu-l-múmen, one of the most powerful dynasties of Islám.
CHAPTER IV.

Account of Ibn Húd—Prophecy in his favour—Rises in the province of Murcia—Subdues the greater part of Andalus—Proclaims the Khalif of Baghdad—Some chiefs dispute his authority—The Christians take Merida and Badajoz—Attack and conquer the island of Mallorca—the governor of Minorca capitulates with them—Siege and taking of Valencia by the Aragonese—Ferdinand III. takes Cordova.

Idrís Al-mámún was, as before stated, the last Sultan of the posterity of 'Abdu-l-múmen who held rule in Andalus, for his successors were too much occupied in Africa, where the Bení Merín were daily assailing their empire, ever to think of reconquering their dominions across the sea. The Moslems of Andalus then perceiving the helpless state in which they were left, turned their eyes in another quarter, and began to look about among themselves for men capable of conducting the government in those perilous times, and stemming the torrent of Christian invasion.

Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Al-jodhámí was descended from Al-musta‘ín Ibn Húd, fourth Sultan of Saragossa of the dynasty called the Bení Húd. According to Ibnu-l-khattîb the cause of his revolt was as follows: about the time that the dynasty of the Almohades began to show visible signs of decay, there prevailed an impression among the people of Murcia and other cities in the east of Andalus, that the power of their African rulers was shortly to be overthrown by a man named Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf, who would rise in arms against them, expel them from the country, and restore the Mohammedan empire to its pristine power and splendour. Other authors assert that it was an astrologer who communicated that information to one of the Almohades, saying, “There will soon rise in this country against you a man from the ranks of the army whose name will be Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf,” and that by order of the prince, to whom the information was communicated, a strict search was made all over Andalus, when all those who bore that name were put to death without mercy, and among them a citizen
of Jaen. They add that Ibn Húd was not aware at first either of the existing prophecy or of the orders issued for the apprehension of all those bearing a name similar to his. One day a wise man, dressed in the garb of a faquir, came up to him in Murcia and said, "Why art thou still here? Dost thou not know "that a kingdom awaits thee? Away, away! Look for Al-kashi,¹ and he will "pave thee the way to power." This Al-kashi was nothing more than a cele-
trated brigand, who, at the head of a few desperadoes, infested the roads about Murcia, and practised all manner of cruelties and extortions upon the country people, or the travellers who fell into his hands. On the ninth of Rejab of the year 625 (June 13, A. D. 1228), Ibn Húd left Murcia secretly and joined Al-kashi, to whom he imparted what the faquir had told him. The brigand chief received him kindly, and, as he knew him to be descended from kings, had no difficulty in giving up to him the command of his small force. Shortly after, the two chiefs, having made an incursion into the Christian territory, returned to their usual haunts, with many captives and rich booty, which being divulged, soon brought them numbers of adventurers anxious to enlist under their banners. Little by little, Ibn Húd’s partisans increased, until, seeing himself at the head of a respectable force, he caused himself to be proclaimed [king] by his men at a place called As-sokheyrah,² in the neighbourhood of Murcia. At the news of this rebellion, Síd Abú-l-’abbás, at that time governor of Murcia, left that city at the head of considerable forces, and attacked Ibn Húd; but he was defeated with great loss, and obliged to return to the seat of his government. Shortly after the inhabitants of Murcia rose against their governor, expelled him and his Almohades, and pro-
claimed Ibn Húd, who repaired thither at the head of his forces, and made his triumphant entry about the end of 625, or the beginning of 626. Denia, Xatiba, and other cities of the east of Andalus soon followed the example of Murcia. Ibn Húd himself reduced Granada, Malaga, and Almeria; and towards the close of the year 626 (Nov. A. D. 1229), Cordova, Jaen, and other important cities, sent also their allegiance to him. Seeing himself the sole master of Andalus, Ibn Húd hesitated not to assume the title of Amíru-l-moslemín (commander of the Moslems), and to dispatch an embassy to Al-mustanser Al-’abbásí, the reigning Khalif at Baghdád, requesting to be allowed to hold his dominions from him, and to mention his name in the public prayers. Ibnu-l-khattíb relates that the ambassadors returned to Andalus in 631 (beginning Oct. 6, A. D. 1233), bringing a favourable answer from the Khalif, together with a letter granting Ibn Húd the investiture of all the dominions which he then held or might acquire in future. That Sultán was then at Granada, and he ordered that the letters of the Khalif should be read to the people, which was done in the principal mosque of the place.
Ibn Húd himself was present at the ceremony, and he stood dressed in the sable uniform [of the 'Abbássides], and holding in his right hand a black banner. The same historian adds that the day when the ceremony took place happened to be one in which prayers for rain had just been said, and that no sooner was the Khalif's letter read to the people than the sky was suddenly obscured by clouds, and the rain began to fall in torrents. On this occasion Ibn Húd assumed the honorary surname of Al-mutawakkel 'ala-illah (he who relies on God).

Ibn Húd did not long enjoy in peace his newly-acquired sovereignty. Other chieftains rose in various parts of Andalus, and either assumed the same titles and authority which he had usurped, or refused peremptorily to acknowledge him as their sovereign. Among the former was Ibnu-l-ahmar [Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf], who, in the year 629 (beginning Oct. 28, A. D. 1231), rose at Arjona, and having made himself master of Jaen, Granada, Malaga, and even Cordova and Seville, became eventually the sole ruler of Andalus, and the founder of a powerful dynasty. Among the latter we may count Abú Jemíl Zeyyán Ibn Mardánísh, a descendant of that Mohammed Ibn Mardánísh whose wars with the Almohades we have elsewhere related. This chieftain, who enjoyed considerable power and influence in the eastern districts of Andalus, made himself master of Valencia and the surrounding country, where he maintained himself until the accursed Christians reduced that city in the year 636 (A. D. 1238), as we shall hereafter relate.

Another chief, named Al-bájí (Abú Merwán Ahmed), of the posterity of the celebrated theologian Abú-l-walíd Al-bájí, revolted at Seville, and held the sovereignty of that place until he was treacherously slain in 631 by a lieutenant of Ibnu-l-ahmar.

Whilst the above-mentioned chieftains divided among them the provinces of Andalus, or were at war against each other, the Christians of every denomination were furiously assailing the dominions of Islám. In the year 627 (beginning Nov. 19, A. D. 1229), for instance, they occupied the whole province of Merida, and from that time woe and perdition fell to the lot of the wretched inhabitants of that once flourishing district (may God restore it to the rule of Islám!). Merida had been the capital of Al-jauf, both in the times preceding the [Arabian] conquest, and in those of the Cordovan Khalifate; but subsequently the city of Badajoz became the court and residence of the rulers of those districts. Between Merida and Cordova the distance is five days' journey. As before stated (p. 256), Merida, Badajoz, and the neighbouring districts had formerly been subject to Al-modhaffer Mohammed Ibn Al-mansúr Ibn Al-afttas, a personage well known in history, and whose biography may be read among those of the illustrious men of the Dhak-hírah and Kaláyid: he was without dispute the most learned and accomplished
of the kings of his age; he was likewise the author of many excellent works, and, among others, of that admirable production entitled *At-tedkhar* 5 *Al-modhaffer* 1, in fifty volumes, which treats of all and every department of science, such as battles, biography of illustrious men, proverbs, history, and, in short, of all the branches of polite literature. His son Al-mutawakkel [‘Omar Ibn Al-afttas] was likewise one of the [eminent] men mentioned in the *Dhakhírah, Kaláyíd, and Mas’hab*. But to return.

Ever since the rebellion of Ibn Hud and the departure of Idrís Al-mámnún for Africa, the whole of Al-gharb or Western Andalus had acknowledged the rule of the former. Accordingly, no sooner did the people of Merida, Badajoz, Cazeres, and other towns of those districts, hear of the arrival of the Christians among them, than they sent to implore the assistance of Ibn Hud, who hastened thither at the head of his best troops. Ibn Hud found the Christian king (Alfonso IX. of Leon) encamped before Merida, which he was besieging. He attacked him with great fury, and was at first successful; but in the end his troops were worsted, and he was compelled to relinquish his enterprise. Shortly after the Christians took possession of Merida, 6 and some time after of Badajoz.

"At the time that the people of Andalus rose against the descendants of 7 'Abdu-l-múmen, Abú Yahya Ibn Abí 'Imrán At-tinmeelí was governor of Mallorca. In his days the island was taken by the Franks." Such are the words of Ibnu Sa‘íd. Ibnu-l-abbár places the conquest of that island on Monday, the 14th of Safar, A. H. 627 (Jan. 12, A. D. 1230). Al-mákhzúmí, 8 in his history of Mallorca, gives the following details:—"Mallorca was governed at the time by an Amír, named Mohammed Ibn ‘Alí Ibn Músá, who, being a man of quality and influence among the people of the extinct dynasty of [the Almohades], had been intrusted with the government [of the Balearic Islands], which he held ever since 606 (beginning July 5, A. D. 1209). Happening once to want some timber, which in the neighbouring island of Iviza is very abundant, Mohammed sent thither some light vessels under the convoy of a few of his war galleys. The Christian governor of Tortosa, having received intelligence of the departure of the expedition, sent out a fleet to capture the Moslem vessels, and succeeded; upon which Mohammed was so angry at the loss of his ships that he resolved upon declaring war against the Christians and making a descent upon their territory. In an evil hour did he form such a determination; for he lost his dominions in the contest. An occasion soon presented itself for carrying his project into execution. About the end of Dhí-l-hajjah of the year 623 (Dec. 7 A. D. 1226) news came to him that a vessel from Barcelona had appeared in sight of Iviza, and that another ship from Tortosa had also come up with it. Upon the receipt of this intelligence, Mohammed dispatched his son with some
"armed vessels in chase of the enemy. The son of Mohammed having entered "the harbour of Iviza, found lying there at anchor a large Genoese galley, which "he attacked and took. This done, he sailed in chase of the Barcelonese ship, "which he likewise boarded and took. This trifling success had the effect of "completely turning the head of the governor of Mallorca, who from that moment "fancied himself a conqueror, and thought that no king could resist his victorious "arms, forgetting that he was as ill-fated as the camel cursed with sterility, and that "the Christians would not fail to take ample vengeance for the injury they had "received. And so it happened; for the people of Barcelona had no sooner heard "of the capture of their vessel, than they said to their king, who was of the posterity "of Alfonso, 'How does the king like to see his subjects used in this manner? "We are ready to assist thee with our persons and our money to revenge this "insult.' The king, taking them at their word, immediately raised an army of "twenty thousand men in his dominions, and, having equipped a considerable "fleet, set sail for Mallorca with upwards of sixteen thousand soldiers. This took "place in 626 (A. D. 1228); but as these immense preparations could not be made "secretly, the news of the armament soon reached the governor of Mallorca, who "began also to collect his forces, and prepared to repel the invasion. Having "selected upwards of one thousand cavalry, he distributed them about the island, "and he raised besides another body consisting of one thousand horse from among "the country people and the inhabitants of the capital; his infantry amounted "to eighteen thousand men. All these levies were ready by the month of Rabi' "the first, of the said year (A. D. 1228). Unluckily, however, all these active "preparations were counteracted by the following unfortunate event. One day "Mohammed ordered the captain of his guards to bring into his presence four "of the principal inhabitants of the town, and when, in pursuance of his order, "they appeared before him, he caused them to be immediately beheaded. Among "the number of these victims were two sons of his mother's brother, Abú Hafss Ibn "Sheyri, a man of rank and influence in the island. The people went to him "and related what had occurred, warning him against the tyrant, and saying, "'By Allah! this state of things can no longer be endured; the Amír is not fit "either to govern us or defend us, and as long as he rules our lives will be entirely "at his mercy.' After this declaration, the citizens bound themselves to revenge "the blood spilt by the tyrant, and Ibn Sheyri having consented to become their "chief, they determined upon ridding themselves of the Amír at all hazards. It "was on a Friday, about the middle of the month of Shawwál (A. D. 1228). What "with the fear of Mohammed's vengeance, should their plans be discovered, and "the dread caused by the enemy, who was known to be at no great distance from
the island, the citizens were actually trembling. Presently Mohammed summons
his presence the captain of his guards, and commands him to bring before him
fifty of the principal citizens, the most distinguished by their birth, wealth,
or talents. The tyrant’s orders were immediately complied with, and the fifty
individuals stood before him: they were all expecting to be marched to immediate
execution, when, lo! a horseman appears, dressed as a courier, who, being
introduced into the Amír’s presence, informs him that the Christian fleet,
composed of upwards of forty sail, is in sight, and making for the shore.
No sooner, however, had the horseman finished his recital, than a second mes-
senger from a different quarter rushed breathless into the audience chamber,
saying, ‘The Christian fleet is in sight, and I can count seventy sail.’ The fact
was soon ascertained, and the news found to be true. Mohammed then pardoned
the fifty citizens who had been sentenced to death, and having apprised them
of the arrival of the enemy, bade them go and prepare for the defence of the city.
Accordingly they all went home, and were received by their families as if they
had risen from the tomb. Soon after the news arrived that the Christians were
just at hand, and that their fleet was composed of one hundred and fifty sail.
After crossing the bay, the Christians made for the harbour [intending to
land]; but the Amír having sent against them some infantry and cavalry, with
orders to station themselves on the shore and to remain there encamped both
day and night, they were prevented from landing. At last the Christians gained
their object; and on the 18th of Shawwál (A. D. 1228), which was a Monday, an
engagement took place in which the Moslems were completely defeated. After
this, the enemy marched to the city and encamped on the deserted and unculti-
vated plain, close to the gate of Al-kahl, whence they made several assaults
upon the city, and were on the point of taking it by storm. When Ibn Sheyrí
saw that the Christians were masters of the neighbouring country, and that
the city could not hold out much longer, he left it secretly and made for the
interior of the island, with such among the inhabitants as would follow him.
On Friday, the 11th of Safar, A. H. 628 (Dec. 18, A. D. 1230), the Christians
made a general attack on the city, and on the following Sunday became masters
of it; when in the massacre that ensued no less than twenty-four thousand of the
inhabitants were inhumanly sacrificed for the fault of a single individual. The
Amír was taken and subjected to all manner of torture, under which he
expired forty-five days after his capture. As to Ibn Sheyrí, he betook himself to
the mountainous part of the island, in which were many places strongly fortified
by nature, and having collected around him a force of sixteen thousand men,
"he defended himself bravely for some time, until he was killed on Friday the 10th of Rabi' the second, of the year 628 (Feb. 14, A.D. 1231).

"This Ibn Sheyri derived his pedigree from the sons of Jubalah Ibn Al-ahyam Al-ghostání. The remaining fortresses in the island were taken by the Christians about the end of Rejeb of the same year, 628 (May, A.D. 1231); and by the month of Sha'bán all those who succeeded in making their escape reached the dominions of Islám." The above is borrowed from the work of Ibn 'Omayrah Al-makhzúmi.

There were at Mallorca several distinguished theologians and eminent poets. Among the latter was one named Ibn 'Abdi-l-wali Al-mayurkí, who composed the following verses:

"Who can be secure against thy looks, or thy slender waist, bending like the Indian cane?
"My blood boils when I see thee; my eyelids hang down and preclude my vision.
"Thy bewitching looks tempt me, and yet I fear not the temptation of Satan."

Not far from Mallorca is another island called Menorkah (Minorca), which was governed at the time by the noble, righteous, and learned Sheikh Abú 'Othmán Sa'id Ibn Hakem Al-korashí. When the Christians, as above related, took possession of Mallorca and put to death its Amír Abú Yahya, Abú 'Othmán, who owed his appointment to the latter, made his peace with the enemy, and agreed to pay them an annual tribute on condition that no Christian should land on the island. The treaty was ratified, and Abú 'Othmán remained master of Minorca, which he governed with great moderation and wisdom.

Abú-l-hasan 'Alí Ibn Sa'id says, "I was told by one of the inhabitants of Mallorca, who, after the taking of that island by the Christians, took refuge in Minorca, that the governor received him very kindly, and tried several times to persuade him to settle in that out of the way island. He told me that he once rode out with Abú 'Othmán, who, having observed that his sword-belt was so tight that it actually left a mark upon his neck, sent him a handsome present in money besides a dress called ghonbáz, with a paper containing the following verses:

' The sword-belt always reveals the excellence of its bearer, especially on days of trepidation and haste.
' The best thing that men can use on such days is a sharp heavy sword which makes necessary the wearing of a ghonbáz.'"
The ghonbás is among the people of the West a kind of coarse dress, which covers and protects the neck.

The governor Abú 'Othmán was originally from a town in the western part of Andalus, called Tabirah (Tavira). He was a patron of literature, and many are the works celebrated for their merits in Western Africa which were dedicated to him, as the book entitled 'the soul of the trees and the spirit of the verses,' and others.

Valencia was another of the cities which fell into the hands of the Christians during the above period of civil war and confusion. As early as the year 488 (A.D. 1095), that city had been taken by the Kanbittūr (El Cid Campeador); but the Almoravides had retaken it from them, and it had remained the abode of Islám until Jakmish (Jayme), King of Aragon, the same who conquered the island of Mallorca, took it in the year 636, as we are about to relate.

When Abú Ahmed Ibn Jeháf, who was Kádí of Valencia, assumed the command in that city, and proclaimed Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, Al-kádir Ibn Dhí-n-nún, the same who had been expelled from Toledo by Alfonso, marched thither at the head of his forces, and besieged him in it; but Ibn Jeháf having, with the assistance of a body of Almoravides, made a sudden attack upon the camp of Al-kádir, defeated that Sultán and put him to death. It appears, however, that Ibn Jeháf exceeded the limits of his authority; for the same party of the Almoravides [who had assisted him against Al-kádir] now deserted him and left him to fight single-handed against his enemies. In this extremity the Kádí of Valencia sent to implore the assistance of Yúsuf, who promised to send troops to his aid, but the succour never came. In the mean while, Yúsuf Ibn Ahmed Ibn Húd, King of Saragossa, who was the enemy of Ibn Jeháf, instigated the tyrant Rudherik (Rodrigo Diaz de Vivar) to march to Valencia, which he did, taking possession of that city after a short siege. They relate that Ibn Jeháf surrendered the city by capitulation, and that Rodrigo asked him to give up [to him] the treasures of Al-kádir Ibn Dhí-n-nún; that Ibn Jeháf swore that he knew nothing of them, and that Rodrigo told him that he would put him to death if he found them; that he discovered them in his possession, and caused him to be burned alive. Rodrigo, moreover, plundered Valencia, and almost destroyed it.

The taking of Valencia by the Kanbittūr [El Cid Campeador], may the curse of God fall on his head! happened in the year 488 (A.D. 1095). Some authors refer it to the year before [A. H. 487]. But let us hear the account of Ibnu-l-abbár, who, alluding to that deplorable event, writes as follows: "Valencia was besieged by the Kanbittūr for a period of twenty months, after which it was taken, some say by capitulation, others by storm. The Christians set fire
to it and destroyed it. Among the Moslems who perished that day in the
flames was the learned Abú Ja'far Ibnu-l-bana, the celebrated poet (may God
have mercy on him and forgive him his sins!). Some years after the Amír
of the Moslems, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin, sent thither one of his generals, named
Abú Mohammed Modhzeli, who retook it from the enemy in 495 (beginning
Oct. 25, A. D. 1101). Valencia was then governed by a succession of Almo-
"ravide chieftains till the time of Yahya Ibn Gháníyyah; who, at the breaking
out of the civil war in the sixth century of the Hijra, was expelled from that
city by Merwán Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz. This latter ruled over Valencia and the
neighbouring districts until the year 539 (beginning July 3, A. D. 1144), when
the army rose against him, deposed him from the command, and appointed in
his stead Ibn 'Iyádh, King of the Eastern provinces of Andalus. Merwán fled
to Almeria."

After this, Valencia fell into the hands of Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Mardanísh, who
succeeded Ibn 'Iyádh in the kingdom of Murcia. Abú 'Abdillah appointed a
brother of his, named Abú-l-hejáj Yúsuf Ibn Sa'd Ibn Mardanísh, to be governor
of the city, and he kept the government of the place until he made his submission
to the Bení 'Abdi-l-múmen.

Under the Almohades, Valencia continued to be ruled, as before, by African
princes, the first of whom was Síd Abú Zeyd 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Síd Abú
'Abdillah Ibn Abí Hafss, and grandson of the Commander of the Faithful, 'Abdu-l-
múmen Ibn 'Alí. When, as before related, (p. 324), Al-'ádíl raised the standard
of revolt at Murcia, fortified himself [in that city], and assumed the supreme
command under pretensions which concealed his ambitious views, and when
Abú-l-ala [Idris] Al-mámún followed in his steps, a chief named Zeyyán Ibn
Abí-l-hamalát Ibn Abí-l-hejáj Ibn Mardanísh, who was one of his most influential
partisans, laid siege to Valencia and took it by storm. Síd Abú Zeyd fled to the
Christians.

The affairs of Valencia grew worse and worse; the enemy went on reducing its
towns and districts, until the King of Barcelona laid siege to it. Zeyyán then
implored the aid of Abú Zakariyyá Ibn Abí Hafss, Sultán of Eastern Africa, and
sent as his ambassador the celebrated Kátib Abú 'Abdillah Ibnu-l-abbár Al-
kodhá'i, the author of the Tekmilah (complement), of the A'tábu-l-kottáb (the
degrees of the scribe), and other works. Ibnu-l-abbár presented himself to that
Sultán, and recited before him that celebrated kassidah of his, rhyming in sin, which
has since become so celebrated both in the East and West.

The Sultán hastened to their assistance; he fitted out his fleet and sent it to
Valencia with money, provisions, and stores of every description. But when the
African fleet appeared [in sight of Valencia] they found that the garrison had been reduced to the last extremity, and shortly after the enemy of God took possession of that city by capitulation on Tuesday, the 17th of Safar of 636 (Sept. 29, A. D. 1238), May God Almighty restore it to the Moslems!

Not satisfied with the taking of Valencia, the tyrant Jayme prosecuted his conquests in those eastern districts, plundering and destroying wherever he went, and putting to the sword the unfortunate Moslems. On the other hand, Ferdeland (Ferdinand III. of Castile) was not inactive. After a siege of several months he reduced Cordova; and on Sunday, the 23rd of Shawwal of the year 636 (May 29, A. D. 1239), that seat of the western Khalifate, repository of the theological sciences, and abode of Islam, passed into the hands of the accursed Christians. (May God destroy them all!). In the year 645, moreover, the above-mentioned infidel, Ferdeland, King of Kastellah, besieged the city of Seville by sea and land, and took it by capitulation on Monday, the 5th of Sha'bán of the ensuing year (A. H. 646), after a siege of one whole year and five months, or thereabouts. The historian Ibnu-l-abbár, in his biographical dictionary entitled Tekmilah (complement), at the article Abú 'Alí Ash-shalúbeyn, says, “Ash-shalúbeyn died [at Seville], during the siege of that city by the Castilians, on Thursday, the 15th of Safar of the year 645 (June 21, A. D. 1247). The year after Seville was taken by the enemy.” The same author, Ibnu-l-abbár, says that the rout of Aynajah, in which the Hásedh Abú-r-rabi' Al-kalā'í was killed, happened on Thursday, the 20th of Dhí-l-hajjah of the year 634 (August, A. D. 1237), and that Abú-r-rabi' never ceased fighting in the foremost ranks, striking the infidels with his sword, encouraging the Moslems, recalling the fugitives, and reminding them of the pleasures of Paradise, until he himself was slain. Abú-r-rabi' used to say that he would live to be seventy, having, when only a boy, had a dream to that effect; and so it was; for at the time he was killed he had just entered his seventieth year. The Hásedh Abú 'Abdillah Ibnu-l-abbár wrote an elegy rhyming in mim on the death of Abú-r-rabi'. One of the historians of Andalus says that Abú-r-rabi' was the disciple of Abú-l-kásim Ibn Hobeysh, and of his class or school. He wrote several works, among which the following are most celebrated: Misbáhu-dh-dholam fl-l-hadith (the lamp of darkness: on sacred traditions); Al-arba'án 'an arba'ín sheykhan liarbâ'ín min-issâhibah (the forty traditions collected from forty doctors who held them from forty of the companions of the Prophet); Al-iktifâ fl-maghâzi rasûli-llah wa maghâzî-l-thalithi-l-kholafâ (the sufficient: on the wars of the messenger of God and the three [first] Khalifs); Meydânu-s-sâbiktn wa halbatu-s-sâdiktn-l-musaddiktn flî gharas kitâbî-l-isti'dîb (the hippodrome of the active and the arena for the sincere who fulfil their religious duties: or a treatise on
the meaning and objects of the Isti‘áb),—this last work he is said to have left incomplete;—Al-mu‘ajem fī men wāfskat kunyatuhu min wajahi-s-sihābat (a dictionary of the names of those companions who bore the same kunyā or surname); Al-dīlām bi-akhbārī-l-bokhārī-l-imām (the signs: on the history of the Imām Al-bokhārī); Al-mu‘ajem fī mashyakhhati Abī-l-kāsim Ibn Hobeysh wa barndmej rawdātihi (a biographical dictionary of the masters of Abū-l-kāsim Ibn Hobeysh, and an index to those doctors who learned under him); Jenā-r-rotab fī sena-l-khotab (fresh gatherings: on the art of preaching eloquent sermons); and several others.

We have related elsewhere (p. 313) how the city of Almeria, after remaining for a length of time in the hands of the enemy, was recovered by the two Almohade princes [Abū Sa‘īd and Abū Hafṣ] in the year 546 (beginning April 19, A. D. 1151). The city, however, had been almost destroyed [during its occupation by the Christians], and would have been entirely deserted, had not ’Abdu-l-mu‘ām appointed as governor a chief named Abū-l-‘abbās Ahmed Ibn Kemmāl, who was a native of it, and who took pains for its preservation. A sister of this Abū-l-‘abbās was made prisoner at the taking of Bejennah (Pechina) by [the troops of] ’Abdu-l-mu‘ām, and conveyed to the palace of that Sultān, with whom she rose so much in favour that she obtained for her brother the government of his native [town]. Abū-l-‘abbās was a man of a generous and benevolent disposition.

Among the governors of Almeria during the rule of the sons of ’Abdu-l-mu‘ām, in the seventh century of the Hijra, one of the most distinguished was the Amīr Abū ’Imrān Ibn Abī Hafṣ, the uncle of Abū Zakariyyā [who became afterwards] ruler of Eastern Africa. But to return.

When, in the year 625 (A. D. 1228), the people of Andalus, as before related (p. 326), revolted against their Sultān Al-māmūn [Idrīs], of the posterity of ’Abdu-l-mu‘ām, and Ibn Hūd rose in arms at Murcia, a chief named Abū ’Abdillah Mohammed Ibn ’Abdillah Ibn Abī Yahya Ibn-u-r-remīmī, a descendant of that Ibn-u-r-remīmī from whom the Christians had taken Almeria [in A. H. 542], rose in that city and proclaimed Ibn Hūd. This being done, Ibn-u-r-remīmī repaired to Murcia, where Ibn Hūd was at the time, and acquainted that chief with what he had done. Ibn Hūd received Ibn-u-r-remīmī kindly, and, as a reward for the important service he had just performed, appointed him governor of Almeria, chose him for his Wizir, and intrusted to him the entire management of his affairs. Things continued in this state for some time until Ibn-u-r-remīmī dexterously persuaded Ibn Hūd to have the castle of Almeria repaired and fortified, in order that it might be made a bulwark [to his kingdom]; but the truth was that Ibn-u-r-remīmī intended it as a stronghold for himself. Ibn Hūd acceded to his request, and the castle of Almeria was accordingly repaired and strongly
fortified. It happened that [in one of his visits to Almeria], Ibn Húd left under the care of Ibnu-r-remímí a mistress of his on whom he doted; but Ibnu-r-remímí, who was also passionately fond of her, violated the laws of hospitality, and seduced her. Intelligence of their criminal intercourse being secretly conveyed to Ibn Húd, he hastened to Almeria, intending to take ample revenge on the governor; but Ibnu-r-remímí was beforehand with him, and had him strangled whilst in his bed. Ibnu-l-khattíb relates the above differently: he says that

"Ibn Húd had promised his wife never to marry another as long as she lived. "When, however, he rose into power, his eyes fell on the daughter of a Christian chief taken in one of his campaigns: she was one of the most beautiful creatures that ever lived, and Ibn Húd became so deeply enamoured of her that he determined upon living with her, notwithstanding the solemn promise he had made to his wife. In order, however, to conceal his guilt from the latter, he gave her in charge to his lieutenant, Ibnu-r-remímí, the governor of Almeria, who, they say, conceived likewise a strong attachment for the woman, and seduced her. Finding that she was pregnant, and that Ibn Húd, who was shortly expected in Murcia, could not fail to discover the guilt, Ibnu-r-remímí had recourse to the following stratagem. When he heard that Ibn Húd was close to Almeria, he went out to meet him, and invited him to come to his palace. Ibn Húd accepted the invitation, and in the dead of night four men stole into the sleeping apartment of that Sultán and suffocated him with the pillows of his bed. On the morning of the following day, it was announced that Ibn Húd had died suddenly during the night; notaries and witnesses were called in to certify the fact, and his body was placed in a coffin and sent by sea to Murcia. The death of Ibn Húd took place on the 24th of Jumáda the second, of the year 635 (Dec. 12, A. D. 1237)."

After the death of Ibn Húd, Ibnu-r-remímí made himself master of Almeria. A son of his revolted against him, and after several revolutions and events which would take us too long to relate, the city fell into the hands of Ibnu-l-ahmar, King of Granada, whose posterity retained it until the infidels took it from them when they conquered the whole of Andalus, as we shall hereafter relate. There is no conqueror but God!

As to the Bení Húd, the last of the family was Al-wáthík,26 son of Almutawakkel. Being hard pressed [in Murcia] by Alfonso of Barcelona, he sent to implore the assistance of Ibnu-l-ahmar, offering himself as his vassal. Ibnu-l-ahmar granted his request, and sent him some troops under the command of Ibn Ashkilúlah, who took possession of Murcia in his master’s name, and had him proclaimed [in the mosques]. After this, Ibn Ashkilúlah returned to Ibnu-l-
ahmar; but on his road [to Granada?] the Christians attacked and defeated him. Al-wáthik then returned to Murcia for the third time, and remained [sovereign of that place] until the enemy took it from him in the year 658 (A.D. 1260), and gave him instead of Murcia a fortress of its district called Yozar, in which he resided until his death. Some authors state that this was at the hour of noon of Thursday, the 15th of Shawwáli (A.H. 668),—that Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Húd, son of the Wáli of Murcia, presented himself before that city with a party of Christian nobles and knights, and put them in possession of it. In him ended the dynasty of the Bení Húd. God is the heir of the earth and of all that which is on it!
CHAPTER V.

Origin of the Bení Nasr—Account of Mohammed Ibnu-1-ahmar—His revolt at Arjona—His wars with Ibn Húd—He takes possession of Granada—Attacks and defeats the Christians—Dies—Is succeeded by Mohammed II.—Death of Don Nuño de Lara—The Infante Don Sancho is defeated and slain—Taking of Quesada and Alcaudete—Death of Mohammed II.—His son Mohammed III. succeeds him—His brother Nasr revolts against him—Compels him to abdicate—Ferdinand of Castile takes Gibraltar—The Aragonese besiege Almeria—Revolt of Abú Sa'id and his son Abú-l-walíd Isma'il—The latter defeats Nasr—Forces him to abdicate—Battle of Elvira—Death of Don Pedro—Taking of Christian fortresses—Assassination of Isma'il.

It now behoves us to speak of the Bení Nasr, a powerful dynasty which reigned for nearly three centuries at Granada, and is well worthy of mention, not only because Lisánu-d-dín Ibnu-1-khattíb was Wízír to one of them, but because they were the last [Mohammedan] rulers of Andalus, since from one of them the Christians conquered the whole of that country, as we shall hereafter relate.

The origin of this dynasty is thus given by the historian of Africa, Abú Zeyd 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ib Khalidún Al-hadhramí. "The Bení Nasr were originally from Arjúnah (Arjona), a castle in the jurisdiction of Cordova. Their ancestors had been officers of rank [in the army], and were well known in that country as the Bení Nasr, or the sons of Nasr. They connected their genealogy with Sa'd Ibn 'Óbádah, Lord of the tribe of Khazrej. The head of the family, towards the close of the dynasty of the Almohades, was Nasr [leje Mohammed] Ibn Yúsuf, better known as Ash-sheikh (the Sheikh); his brother's name was Isma'il: the former especially enjoyed considerable influence among his kindred. When the fortune of the Almohades began to decline, and rebels rose against them in Andalus,—when the Sids² or members of the royal family began to give up their castles and fortresses to the Christian king,—when, in short, Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Húd rose at Murcia, and, having proclaimed the reigning Khalif of the house of 'Abbás, took possession [in his name] of the eastern provinces of Andalus,—the Sheikh [Ibnu-1-ahmar] prepared also for rebellion, and in the
year 629 (beginning Oct. 28, A.D. 1231) caused himself to be proclaimed Sultán of Andalus, although he ordered that the name of Abú Zakariyyá [Yahya Ibn Abí Hafss], Sultán of Eastern Africa, should be mentioned in the public prayers, as Commander of the Faithful. In the following year, A. H. 630 (beginning Oct. 17, A.D. 1232), Jaen and Sherísh (Xerez) submitted to him. All this Ibnu-l-ahmar accomplished with the assistance of his relatives the Bení Nasr, and of the family of Ibn Ashkilúlah, to whom he was related by marriage. Subsequently to this, in the year 631 (beginning Oct. 6, A.D. 1233), hearing that Ibn Húd had received from Baghdád a favourable answer to his petition, Ibnu-l-ahmar sent in his allegiance to that Sultán. Then happened the rebellion at Seville of Abú Merwán Al-bají, who, taking advantage of the departure of Ibn Húd [from that city] to return to Murcia, rose and declared himself independent. With this chieftain Ibnu-l-ahmar entered into a treaty of alliance, giving him one of his daughters in marriage, and promising to defend him against Ibn Húd on condition that he would acknowledge himself his vassal. Al-bají accepted the proposition, and Ibnu-l-ahmar accordingly entered Seville as its lord in 632 (beginning Sept. 25, A.D. 1234); but in the course of time he had Al-bají seized and put to death, through the means of Ibn Ashkilúlah, whom he sent thither for that purpose.

One month after the above event, the people of Seville returned to the allegiance of Ibn Húd, and expelled [the troops of] Ibnu-l-ahmar; but in 635 (beginning Aug. 23, A.D. 1237), the latter prince made himself master of Granada by means of his secret partisans there. An influential citizen of that place, named Ibn Abí Kháled, who was his friend, having risen against Ibn Húd, prevailed upon the citizens to proclaim Ibnu-l-ahmar, and, hastening to Jaen, where that Sultán was at the time, tendered to him the allegiance of the inhabitants. Immediately upon the receipt of this news, Ibnu-l-ahmar dispatched Ibn Ashkilúlah to Granada with a portion of his forces; he himself followed with the rest of his army, and having taken up his abode in that city, built the fortress of the Al-hamrá (Alhambra), as a residence for himself. Soon after the acquisition of Granada, Ibnu-l-ahmar obtained possession of Malaga, and in the year 643 (beginning May 28, A.D. 1245) received Almería from the hands of Ibnu-r-remíñí, the Wizír of Ibn Húd, who had risen and taken the command of the place. Ibnu-l-ahmar was next proclaimed by the people of Lorca, who, in 663 (beginning Oct. 23, A.D. 1264), sent their allegiance to Granada.

During the events above related the Christians reduced several important cities of Andalus, chiefly through the division and perversity of their Mohammedan rulers. At the commencement of his reign, Ibnu-l-ahmar had entered into an alliance with the Christian king [Ferdinand III. of Castile], for the purpose of
obtaining his aid [against Ibn Húd]; and the infidel king had accordingly sent him occasional succours of troops. Ibn Húd, on the other hand, wishing to detach the Christian from the cause of Ibnu-l-ahmar, had offered him thirty castles on the western frontier of his dominions, if he would forsake that Sultán and assist him to take possession of Cordova: the offer was accepted, and the castles delivered to the Christians. At last, in the year 633 (beginning Sept. 15, A. D. 1236), the enemy took possession of Cordova (may God restore it to Islám!), and, in the year 646 (beginning April 25, A. D. 1248), laid siege to Seville, Ibnu-l-ahmar himself co-operating with his forces [against the Moslems]. After a vigorous and long protracted defence, the city was taken by capitulation, and the Christians became masters of its districts. Murcia also fell into their hands in 665 (beginning Oct. 1, A. D. 1266); in short, the Christian king [Ferdinand III. of Castile] ceased not to assail the dominions of Islám, and to take district after district and castle after castle until the whole of the Moslem population were driven to the coast between Ronda in the west and [Almeria in] the eastern parts of Andalus, about twenty marhala in length and one marhala or less in width from the sea to the furthermost point on the northern frontier.

Subsequently to this, Ibnu-l-ahmar grew angry, and sought to obtain possession of the rest of the island; but he found the task too difficult, and was unable to accomplish his purpose. Troops, however, sent by the Bení Merín and other African dynasties, occasionally crossed over to his assistance, and with them Ibnu-l-ahmar was enabled to keep the Christians at bay. For instance, in the year 660 (beginning Nov. 25, A. D. 1261), according to previous stipulation, the Sultán of Western Africa, Ya'kúb Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakk, sent him three thousand warriors, whose arrival Ibnu-l-ahmar welcomed, and with whom he repelled the attacks of the enemy, and inflicted serious losses upon them. On the return of these auxiliary troops to Africa, others kept continually going over in their stead, until the death of the Sheikh Ibnu-l-ahmar, which happened in 671 (A. D. 1272).”

So far Ibn Khaldún, who, as is well known, resided some time at Granada, and must have been in possession of authentic records respecting the founder of the dynasty of the Bení Nasr; but as we are also able to quote from Ibnu-l-khattíb, whose works abound with precious information respecting the establishment of that dynasty and the high deeds of its members, we will in future quote from him.

Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Ibn Khamíss Ibn Nasr, Ibn Kays Al-khazrejí Al-ansári was descended from Sa’d Ibn 'Obádah, the companion of the Prophet. This Sa’d was the son of Suleymán, son of Hárithah, son of Abí Khalífah, son of Tha’lebah, son of Taríf, son of Khazrej,
son of Háritchah, son of Tha'lebah, [son of] Al-'ala, son of 'Omar, son of Ya'rob, son of Yash'hob, or Yashjab, son of Kahtán, son of Hemisa', son of Yemen, son of Bent, son of Isma'il, son of Ibrahim. His kunyā was Abú 'Abdillah, and he was also surnamed Ibnu-l-ahmar and Al-ghālib-billah (the conqueror by the grace of God). Both historians and genealogists have all acknowledged the illustrious origin of this family, which, as above stated, was descended in a direct line from Sa'd Ibn 'Obádah, Lord of the tribe of Khazrej, and one of the companions of our holy Prophet. Ar-rázá, among others, in his genealogical treatise asserts that two men of the posterity of that illustrious individual entered Andalus at the time of the conquest; one settled at Tékerúna, the other at a village close to Saragossa, which, from the name of his tribe, was called Kariat Khazrej.

Mohammed was born in 591 (A.D. 1195) at Arjúnah (Arjona), in the territory of Cordova, where he inherited from his father extensive estates, which he cultivated himself. I was told by the Kátib Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Al-lúshi (from Loxa) Al-yahssóbí, whom I once met in Jaen, that his grandfather had a mare of the best qualities, which he used to mount whenever he had to repel an attack of the enemy, or to make an incursion into his territory. In this manner the animal became known among the Christians of the neighbouring districts for its excellent qualities and its aptitude for border warfare, until the King of the Christians, happening to hear of it, sent a message to Al-lúshi, requesting him to sell him the mare and fix his own price. Al-lúshi, however, was so much attached to the animal that he could not bear to part with her at any price, and he accordingly refused to sell her to the king. They say that on the night of the day on which he received the message from the infidel king, Al-lúshi dreamt a dream, and heard a voice saying to him, 'Go to Arjona and take thy good mare with thee; when there, thou shalt inquire for a man named Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf, and when thou hast found him, thou shalt sell thy mare to him, for he shall certainly ride on it, and be the conqueror of Jaen and other towns, by which conquests thy posterity shall be benefited.' Al-lúshi at first paid no attention to this warning; but having heard the same voice a second, and even a third time in his dreams, he at last began seriously to think about it. Having inquired from a friend of his named Ibn Ya'ysh, who was well acquainted with the surrounding country and its inhabitants, who the person could be who was described to him in his dream, Ibn Ya'ysh told him that it could be no other than Ibnu-l-ahmar. Al-lúshi, therefore, proceeded to Arjona and took up his abode in the town. No sooner was his arrival made known, as well as the object of his journey, than Ibnu-l-ahmar and some of his relatives went to Al-lúshi's lodgings
and began to bargain for the mare; but the price which he asked was so
exorbitant that Ibn-l-ahmar declared his inability to pay the sum demanded.
At last Ibn-l-ahmar, having offered to pay a portion of the money down and
the rest by instalments, Al-lushi accepted the offer, and Ibn-l-ahmar took
the mare home. The bargain being concluded, Al-lushi took Ibn-l-ahmar
to the mosque of the castle, and there disclosed to him the dream which he
had dreamt. Ibn-l-ahmar paid him the sum agreed between the two, and
Al-lushi returned to Jaen.
Scarcely had a year elapsed after this occurrence, when Ibn-l-ahmar assumed
the royal title at his native town, and soon after took possession of the wealthy
city of Jaen. Historians, however, are at variance as to the cause which impelled
him to do so, some saying that it was some injustice done him by one of the
governors of the district which prompted him to revolt.
After Jaen, Ibn-l-ahmar took Granada. He also made himself master of
Seville in the last days of Rabi' the first, of the very year in which he rose,
that is, in 629, and remained in possession of that city for nearly thirty days.
He also took Cordova on the 11th day of Rejeb of the aforesaid year: both
those cities, however, returned to the possession of Ibn Húd.
Ibn-l-ahmar was frequently at war with Al-mutawakkel [Ibn Húd], who,
as above stated (p. 336), was Sultán of Murcia, Almeria, and the greater part
of Eastern Andalus, and who at one time made himself master of almost the
whole country. He once defeated him most completely in the neighbourhood
of Seville, whither Ibn Húd had gone for the purpose of chastising the revolt
of Al-báji. Having joined his forces to those of that rebel, Ibn-l-ahmar
attacked the camp of his adversary and routed his army, obliging Ibn Húd
to embark for Murcia. This happened in 629. Five years after (A. H. 634),
Ibn Húd was again defeated with great loss by Ibn-l-ahmar, in the district
of Elvira, near Granada.
At the beginning of his reign, Ibn-l-ahmar showed every attention and respect
towards the kings of the opposite coast [Western Africa], as well as towards
those of Eastern Africa, and he went so far as to have the khotbah said for the
latter in all the mosques of his dominions, hoping thereby to obtain their help
and assistance [against the Christians]. He also said the khotbah for the Sultán
of Baghdád, Al-mustanser Al-'abbásí; but in the end he would acknowledge
no sovereign but himself.
Ibn-l-ahmar was at Jaen when the people of Granada proclaimed him at the
instigation of Ibn [Abí] Kháled, and he entered that city in the last days of Ra-
madhán of the year 635 (May, A. D. 1238). The historian Ibn 'Azzár says that
Ibnu-1-ahmar arrived at Granada in the evening, and encamped outside the walls. The ensuing morning, at dawn of day, he entered the city, and rode to the castle towards sunset. Abú Mohammed Al-bastí (from Baza), who saw Ibnu-1-ahmar ride through the city, says that he was dressed in a tunic of the stuff called milaf, striped, the sleeves of which were open at the sides. Just as Ibnu-1-ahmar arrived at the gate of the kassábah, the voice of the muezzin was heard in the distance, calling the people to the prayer of the setting sun; upon which, without going any further, Ibnu-1-ahmar went into the mihráb of the mosque, and recited the first chapter of the Korán, and went into the castle of Bádis, preceded by men bearing wax-tapers.

Ibnu-1-khattíb goes on to relate how Ibnu-1-ahmar assisted the Christian king (Ferdinand III. of Castile) in the reduction of Seville, Carmona, and other towns of Andalus, after which he continues,—

In the year 643 a peace was concluded between Ibnu-1-ahmar and the King of the Christians, and a treaty signed, one of the conditions of which was that Jaen should be given up to the Christians. Some time before Ibnu-1-ahmar had completely defeated the infidels near a castle called Bolullos, at one day’s march from his capital. Ibnu-1-ahmar, however, repented of what he had done, and in the year 662, after causing his son Mohammed to be sworn as his legitimate heir, he summoned the [African] tribes to aid him in the holy war. Having made every necessary preparation, he invaded the Christian territory.

As long as he lived, Ibnu-1-ahmar was on terms of amity and friendly correspondence with the rulers of Western Africa, the Bení Merín, who had built their empire on the ruins of that of the Almohades. One of the most powerful monarchs of that dynasty was Ya’kúb Ibn ’Abdi-l-hakk, who, having received an embassy from the people of Andalus, imploring his powerful assistance against the Christians, crossed over to that country and gained a most signal victory over the infidels, as we shall hereafter relate. Ya’kúb was succeeded by his son Yúsuf, to whose court Alfonso, King of the Christians, came for the purpose of obtaining his aid to regain possession of his kingdom. After Yúsuf reigned Abú Thábit, and after the latter Abú Rabi’ Suleymán, who was succeeded by Abú Sa’íd ‘Inán; but as it is not our object in this place to write the history of that dynasty, we will resume the thread of our interrupted narrative.

Ibnu-1-ahmar died on the 15th of Jumáda II. of the year 671 (Sept. 10, A.D. 1272). His death happened in this way. Having heard that some Christian chieftains had with their united forces made a foray close to his capital, he sallied out to meet them. As he was returning to his palace, he stumbled and fell down; he was immediately put on a horse and conveyed to his palace, supported by one of
his slaves, named Sábir, the elder. Shortly after, on Friday, the 29th of Jumáda
the second, after the prayer of 'asr (before sunset), Ibnu-l-ahmar died, and was
immediately buried in the makborah (cemetery) of the old mosque, on the hill
of Sibkah. He was born at Arjona in the year 591 (beginning Dec. 13,
A. D. 1194), known in Andalus as 'the year of Alarcos,' because the celebrated
battle of that name was fought in it. His proclamation took place on a Friday
of the year 626. He was the father of three sons; Mohammed, who succeeded
him in the empire, Farej, and Yúsuf, who died before him.'

On the death of Ibnu-l-ahmar, his son Mohammed, surnamed 'Abú 'Abdillah, succeeded him. He was then thirty-eight years old, having been born at Granada in the year 633. No sooner had he ascended his father's throne, than he began to give his most serious consideration to the enlargement of his dominions at the expense of the infidels. Ibnu Khaledún relates, that when Mohammed Ibnu-l-ahmar saw his death approach he sent for his son and gave him his last instructions, among which one was that in his wars with the Christians he was always to implore the assistance of the Bení Merín, who had inherited the empire of the Almohades in Western Africa. Accordingly, when in the year 672 (beginning July 17, A. D. 1273) Mohammed Al-fakih (or, the theologian, as the King of Granada is called by that historian,) heard that the Christians were about to carry the war into his dominions, he sent over an embassy to Ya'kúb Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakk, Sultán of Fez and Western Africa, soliciting his aid against the infidels; and that sovereign, having graciously acceded to his request, sent first his own son at the head of an army, and himself followed shortly after. Having taken Jezíratu-l-khadhrá (Algesiras) from the hands of a rebel who had gained possession of it, he converted it into a receptacle for his warriors. Mohammed, moreover, gave up to the African sovereign Tarifa and the castles appertaining to it; and when every thing had been arranged, the two kings united, put to flight Don Nuño, the general of the Christians, dispersed his army, and routed every where the troops of the Castilian king, sending large bodies of cavalry to make predatory incursions into his dominions. At last, through fear of the Africans, Mohammed made his peace with the Christians, and Ya'kúb returned to Africa. In the course of time, however, the kings of Granada recovered Algesiras, Tarifa, Ronda, and all the fortresses which this Mohammed had given up to the Bení Merín. So far Ibnu Khaledún, whose narrative we have somewhat abridged.

The victory above alluded to was gained by the united forces of Mohammed and Abú Ya'kúb Yúsuf on the 15th day of Rabi' the first, of the year 674 (Sept. 8, A. D. 1275), Don-Núnoh (Nuño Gonzalez de Lara), the general of the Christians,
and several of his best officers, remaining dead on the field. Shortly after, God was again pleased to send down victory to the Moslem banners, and to spread woe and confusion through the ranks of the infidels; for Sancho Al-mitrán (Archbishop of Toledo), having made an incursion into the Moslem territory, the troops of Granada overtook him near the town of Martosh (Martos), and completely defeated his army, he himself remaining among the dead.

In the month of Moharram of the year 695 (Nov., A. D. 1295), shortly after the death of Sancho, son of Alfonso, the Castilians prepared to invade the territory of Granada; but Mohammed, having received intelligence of their movements, marched against them, and, having laid siege to Kijâttah (Quesada), reduced that important city, besides several small towns and fortresses which depended on it. Having left a sufficient garrison for the defence of the place, Mohammed returned to Granada. In the year 699 (beginning Sept. 27, A. D. 1299) he besieged the town of Al-kabdhák, and, after a few vigorous attacks, made himself master of it. The Christian garrison then took refuge in the kassâbah, a place well known in the surrounding country for its strength; but the Moslems took it by storm shortly after the hour of noon, on Sunday, the 8th of Shawwât (June 27, A. D. 1300), and put the garrison to the sword. After repairing the fortifications, in which he himself worked, helping to dig the moat with his own hands, Mohammed converted the place into a ḥibbâth or border fortress, and, leaving a body of chosen warriors to defend it, returned to his capital.

After a prosperous reign of thirty years and one month, Mohammed died suddenly at Granada on Sunday, the 8th day of Sha‘bân of the year 701 (April 9, A. D. 1302). There are not wanting historians who assert that he was poisoned by his son and successor. He was interred apart from his ancestors, to the east of the great mosque, in the gardens adjoining his palace. In aftertime his grandson Abú-l-walîd, and Abú-l-hejâj, son of the latter, were interred by his side. He had three sons; his successor, Abú 'Abdillah, Faraj, who died in the lifetime of his father, and Nasr, who succeeded Abú 'Abdillah on the throne.

Mohammed, surnamed Abú 'Abdillah, succeeded. He was one of the greatest monarchs of the Nasserite dynasty. Having been educated under the eye of his father, and trained from early youth in the duties of government, he displayed immediately upon his accession that sagacity and tact by which the monarchs of his family, surrounded as they were by enemies, were particularly distinguished.

Soon after his accession to the throne he made an incursion into the enemy's territory. The result was the taking of the town of Al-mandhar,17 which he entered by force of arms, and the captivity of all the garrison. Among the prisoners was the lady of the place, a woman of matchless beauty, the brightest gem among
the Christians. She was marched into the capital with the rest of the prisoners, splendidly mounted and attired, and shining with beauty. She became afterwards the wife of the Sultán of Western Africa.

In the year 703 (beginning Aug. 14, 1303), the Sultán being displeased with his relative the Reys Abú-l-hejáj Ibn Nasr, governor of Guadix, for some act of his administration there, removed him from his government. Abú-l-hejáj, who was then residing at court, began secretly to form a party in his favour both at the capital and at Guadix, which being reported to Mohammed, he caused him to be arrested and brought to his presence, when he was immediately executed. By his death civil war was prevented. In the month of Dhi-l-ka’dah of the same year [A. H. 703], after the death of his Wizír, Abú-s-sultán 'Azíz Ibn 'Ala Ibn 'Abdi-l-mun'am, of Denia, Mohammed named to that office one of his own secretaries, named Abú 'Abdillah Ibnu-l-hakím, in whom he placed all his confidence. The Wizír, who was a shrewd and ambitious man, failed not to take advantage of his position, and to gain over the mind of his sovereign, whereby he effected his own ruin, as we shall presently relate.

In Shawwál of the year 705 (April or May, A. D. 1306) Mohammed took Ceuta from Abú Tálib 'Abdullah Ibnu-l-kásim, son of the Reys and Faquih, Imám and traditionist, 'Abu-l-'abbás Al-'izáfí.13 By this victory Mohammed became the master of immense wealth belonging to the merchants of that port, besides countless treasures amassed by that chieftain. The chief inhabitants of that place were also led prisoners to Granada, where, at the beginning of Moharram of the ensuing year (A. H. 706), they received orders to appear in the presence of the Sultán. Mohammed received them in state, surrounded by his ministers and his guards. Some of the prisoners, however, having recited verses in praise of him, his heart was touched, and he set them all at liberty, assigning to each of them a house to reside in and a suitable pension for his sustenance.

This excellent monarch could not escape the shafts of treason. A considerable party having been formed in his own capital in favour of his brother Nasr, he was compelled to abdicate on the day of Al-fitr of the year 708 (April, A. D. 1309). According to Ibnu-l-khattib the event happened thus. "Early in the morning of that day a party of the principal citizens went to the dwelling of his brother: thence they repaired to the house of the Wizír Abú 'Abdillah Ibnu-l-hakím, who, however, received timely intelligence of their arrival and escaped. Thence, after proclaiming, as they went along, the prince Abú-l-jiyúsh Nasr, they took the direction of the royal palace, which they surrounded on all sides. In the mean while the house of the Wizír Abú 'Abdillah 19 was attacked by the mob, and gutted of all its valuable contents, besides the treasures which he had amassed in books,"
"jewels, weapons, &c., which God alone could estimate. Towards the end of
the day, a party of the revolted went up to the Sultán, and, having removed
him from his palace to another house, compelled him to abdicate in favour
of his brother. Mohammed consented, witnesses were called in, and a deed
prepared which he signed. After this he retired to a pleasure-house outside
the capital, called the palace of Seyd, whence, after a short stay, he proceeded
to Almuñécar."

No sooner was Nasr raised to the throne than he had to defend his dominions
against enemies at home and abroad. The first act of his administration was to
appoint to the charge of Wázír, 'Attík Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-múl, and after him,
Mohammed Ibn 'Ala Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Al-háj,20 by whose intrigues he was after-
wards deprived of his throne.

In the year 709 (beginning June 10, A. D. 1309), the King of Castile, Herando
(Fernando IV.), laid siege to Algesiras. He remained before that city from the
21st day of Safar till the end of Sha'bán, when, despairing of reducing the place,
he raised the siege, though not without making himself master of Gibraltar. In
the mean while, the Lord of Barcelona, another Christian king, arrived before
Almeria in the first days of Rábi' the first, of the aforesaid year (August,
A. D. 1309). He laid siege to the city, which he closely invested, after completely
defeating an army sent for its relief. In this manner he remained encamped
before the city, daily pressing the siege more and more, until, towards the end
of Sha'bán, God Almighty was pleased to permit that the infidel should retire from
before its walls.

Scarcely was Nasr delivered from his enemies, the Christians, when all his
attention was engrossed by the revolt of one of his relatives, named Abú Sa'id
Faraj, who was governor of Malaga and its district, as well as of Ceuta, which,
as above related, the dethroned Sultán took in 705. Abú Sa'id was the son of
Isma'il, the brother of Mohammed Ibn-l-ahmar, the founder of the Nasserite
dynasty. Having repaired to Granada for the purpose of tendering the oath of
allegiance to Nasr, he was there persuaded by some of the chiefs and high
functionaries at court to rise against the usurper. Accordingly, on his return to
Malaga, Abú Sa'id raised the standard of revolt, and caused his own son Abú-l-
walid Isma'il to be proclaimed. This happened on the 17th day of Ramadhán of
the year 709 (Feb. 18, A. D. 1310). Some months after, Abú-l-walid marched to
Antikeyrah (Antequera), of which he made himself master: the city of Almeria
also submitted to him; not so Belesh (Velez), the inhabitants of which shut their
gates and refused to admit him into their town; but Abú-l-walid, having sent for
some besieging engines, destroyed part of their walls and forced them to surrender.
Towards the end of Jumáda the second, of the year 710 (Nov. A. D. 1310), Nasr was suddenly struck by a fit of apoplexy: so severe was the attack that the physicians thought he was dead. No sooner was the news spread through Granada, than the partisans of the dethroned monarch hastened to Almuñecar, and besought him to assert his right to the throne. He, accordingly, set out for that city, borne in a litter, and entered Granada in the beginning of Rejeb of the same year (Nov. A. D. 1310). What was his astonishment, and that of his friends, to hear on their arrival that Nasr had recovered from his illness! By his brother’s order, Mohammed was removed from the house where he alighted to the palace of his eldest brother Faraj, and in the first days of Shawwál of the same year (Feb. A. D. 1311) it was rumoured that he was dead. There are not wanting those who assert that he was privately put to death, and that his body was thrown into a fish-pond in the garden of the palace. He was buried in the cemetery of As-sabíkah, by the side of his grandfather Al-ghálib-billah. He was born at Granada on Wednesday, the 3rd of Sha’bán, 655 (Aug. 16, A. D. 1257). He died on Monday, the 3rd of Shawwál, A. H. 713 (Jan. 26, A. D. 1314).

Whilst these events were happening, the rebel Abú Sa’íd and his son Abú-l-walíd were strengthening themselves in their position, and collecting forces with which to march against Granada. At length, on the 1st day of Moharram of the year 712 (May 8, A. D. 1312), Abú-l-walíd, having put himself at the head of his troops, advanced against Granada and encamped at a hamlet called Karyatu-l-’otasha, at a short distance from that capital. Nasr went out to meet him, and on the 13th of the same month (May 18, A. D. 1312) a battle was fought, in which the former was defeated. Whilst fleeing the field of battle, Nasr was thrown off his horse into a pond for the use of cattle; he was, however, extricated with great difficulty by his own men, and reached Granada in safety. Abú-l-walíd returned triumphant to Malaga, where, soon after, in the month of Rabi’ the first, he received from Nasr propositions of peace, which he accepted. Things were in this state when, in the month of Ramadhán of the year 713 (Dec. 27, A. D. 1213), a revolution broke out at Granada. The inhabitants of that city, being displeased with the administration of Nasr’s Wizír, Abú ’Abdillah Ibnu-l-háj, surrounded the palace of that Sultán, and vociferously demanded that the person of the obnoxious functionary should be given up to them. A sally made by the Sultán’s guard soon dispersed the mob, and the chiefs of the insurrection fled for refuge to Malaga, where they persuaded Abú-l-walíd to assume the supreme command and march against the usurper. Abú-l-walíd did as they advised him, and, having marched to Lúshah (Loxa), reduced that city in Shawwál, 713 (January, A. D. 1314). From Loxa Abú-l-walíd returned to Malaga to provide himself with fresh stores, and
to guard against the inclemency of the weather, it being then winter time. He then marched to Arshidúnah (Archidona), where he was met by the Sultan's army, under the command of 'Abdu-l-hakk Ibn 'Othmán. A battle ensued in which victory was long uncertain: at last the troops of Granada gave way and fled in the utmost confusion, being pursued by the victors to the very gates of the capital. The inhabitants of the Albayzin, one of the suburbs of Granada, having opened the gate of Elvira to Abú-l-walid, he penetrated into the city, and, having surprised the old kassābah, made himself master of it, and took up his abode in the house which had once belonged to Ibnu-l-mūl, the Wizir. Nasr fled to the Al-hamrá (Alhambra) with his women and treasures; but shortly after he was compelled to surrender and submit to the same conditions which he had imposed upon his brother Mohammed. He left Granada on the 21st of Shawwāl, 713 (Feb. 8, A. D. 1314), and retired to Guadix.

The reign of Abú-l-walid Isma'īl Ibn Faraj was one of the most prosperous that the Moslems of Granada ever had. It is true that in the year 716 (beginning March 25, A. D. 1316) his army was defeated by the Castilians, who reduced Matamcnos, Hisn-Bejj (Bexiçar), Hisn-Tishkar (Tiscar), and Thoghúr Rútt (the fortified lines of Rute); but three years after, in 719, the Moslems took ample revenge for those losses, and destroyed an army commanded by one of their princes, who himself perished in the action.

In the year 719 (Feb. 20, A. D. 1319), the Christian kings collected their forces against Granada, and the tyrant Don Betroh 23 [Pedro, Infante of Castile,] appeared before that city with innumerable forces, bringing with him no less than twenty-five Christian princes. The cause of the war was as follows: the Sultan Abú-l-walid Isma'īl having repaired to the frontiers [of his kingdom] for the purpose of providing for their defence, and passing in review the troops stationed there, the Christians resolved upon attacking Algeziras. On the other hand, Abú-l-walid having heard of their intentions, made every preparation to repel the invasion, collected troops, fitted out a fleet, and put his kingdom in a state of defence. The Christians, seeing the Moslems prepared to receive them, assembled at Toledo, and came to the determination of wresting the whole country from the hands of the Moslems.

To that end they made every warlike preparation, and collected immense stores, as well as war engines and besieging machines, which came to them by water from distant parts, and, when every thing was ready, they marched to Granada. Some writers add that the king, Don Betroh, repaired to Toledo, where he had a conference with the head of the church, 24 whom the Christians call Bābū (Pope); that he worshipped him, went on his knees before him, and communicated to
him his design of conquering whatever provinces still remained in the hands of the Moslems; that the Bábá, in short, strengthened him in his purpose. The Moslems of Granada and other cities had no sooner heard of the immense preparations made by the Christians than they began to tremble with fear, and decided upon imploring the help of Abú Sa‘íd Al-meríni, Sultán of Fez. They accordingly sent an embassy to that sovereign, but it produced no effect, and the Moslems had no other resource left than to put their trust in God (may his name be exalted!). However, soon after the Franks arrived in sight of Granada, with forces so numerous that the earth was literally covered with them; but the victorious God, he who knows no partner in his victories, decreed that the Christian multitude should be routed, and their king, Don Pedro, slain, with all his suite. The affair happened thus: the Sultán Abú-l-walid sent forward [against the Christians] the Sheykhu-l-ghozát Abú Sa‘íd 'Othmán Ibn Abi-l-ala Al-meríni, with a chosen division of the bravest and best trained troops. Abú Sa‘íd left Granada on Thursday, the 20th of Rabí’ the first (May 12, A. D. 1319). On Saturday evening a body of Christian cavalry came suddenly down upon some villages, upon which Abú Sa‘íd sent against them a body of mounted archers, who surrounded them and cut them off from the main body of their army. Some of them fled towards the camp of their king, and the Moslems pursued them all night till the morning of the next day, slaying all those who fell into their hands, so that but few escaped alive. This was the first victory. On Sunday, the Sheikh Abú Sa‘íd marched to meet the enemy with five thousand Moslem warriors, all men of tried courage and experience. The Christians, seeing them in such small number, wondered how a handful of men dared attack so considerable an army as theirs was; yet the Moslems made so desperate an attack that the Christians gave way immediately, and began to fly in every direction; the Moslems pursuing them sword in hand for three days, and dealing death among them. They say that the number of infidels slain on this occasion amounted to upwards of fifty thousand, besides as many more who perished in the river, owing to their not being well acquainted with the fords. As to those who died in the mountains and ravines of that district, their number was beyond computation. The whole of the twenty-five princes who had accompanied Don Pedro, as well as himself, fell in the action. The battle over, the people of Granada went out to collect the spoils of the enemy and to bring back the prisoners. The spoils were immense, consisting of forty-three hundred weight of gold, and one hundred and forty hundred weight of silver, besides weapons, armour, horses, &c. The number of prisoners amounted to seven thousand,—it is so stated in a letter which a citizen of Granada
wrote to a friend of his in Egypt,—and the spoil found on the field was so great that, for six months after the battle, prisoners, horses, and property belonging to the Christians, were sold in the markets of Granada. The news, moreover, of this splendid victory was sent to the most remote parts [inhabited by Moslems]. Among the prisoners were the wife and children of the king, and although she offered for her ransom the city of Tarifa and the fortress of Jebalu-l-fatah (Gibraltar) and eighteen more castles of that district, the Moslems would not accept of it, and she remained in captivity. As to the Christian king, Don Pedro, he was slain during the action, and his skin, being stripped from his body, was stuffed with cotton, and suspended over the gate of Granada, where it remained for years. A very extraordinary circumstance connected with this battle is that only thirteen horsemen, others say ten, were slain on the side of the Moslems, whose whole force consisted only of fifteen hundred horse and four thousand foot, or even less; whereas the loss of the Christians, who were as numerous as the sands of the desert, was truly enormous. Ibnū-l-khattīb places this memorable battle on the 6th of Jumāda the first, 719 (June 26, A.D. 1319). 27 He says that the body of Don Pedro was put in a wooden coffin and suspended from the walls close to the gate of Ya’kūb, to the left-hand side as one comes down from the Alhambra.

After this defeat the Christians sued for peace, which was granted to them; but at the expiration of the truce, Isma’īl took the field in person and besieged the fortress of Ashkar, close to Baeza. As its defences were strong and the walls very thick, he attacked it with his largest engines loaded with naphtha, by means of which he threw into the place large iron balls. 28 One of these fell on the top of one of the towers and destroyed it completely, upon which the garrison were so terrified that they surrendered to him on the 24th of Rejeb, 724 (July 17, A.D. 1324).

On the 10th of Rejeb, 725 (June 22, A.D. 1325), Isma’il marched to Martosh (Martos), which he invested and took after a short siege. Shortly after his return from that expedition Isma’il was assassinated by a cousin of his named Mohammed, who was the son of Isma’il, better known by the surname of Sāhibu-l-jeztrah (the governor of Algesiras). Mohammed had been present at the siege of Martos: having whilst there been guilty of some misdemeanour, he was summoned before his sovereign, who, in the presence of the assembled courtiers, reproved him for his conduct and spoke very severely to him. Mohammed resented the insult, and swore to revenge it. On his return to Granada he watched his opportunity, and, with the aid of his relatives and servants, attacked and murdered Isma’il as he was going from his palace to a mejless or temporary throne which had been
erected for the purpose of his administering justice to his subjects. This happened on Tuesday, the 27th of Rejeb, 725, three days after his return from Martos (July 18, A.D. 1325). Isma'îl left four sons: Mohammed, who succeeded him on the throne; Faraj, who died a prisoner in the citadel of Almeria in 751; Abû-l-hejáj Yúsuf, who was also Sultan; and, lastly, Isma'îl.
CHAPTER VI.

Accession of Mohammed IV.—Gibraltar recovered from the Christians—Its fortifications repaired by Abú-l-hasan—The Africans put to death the King of Granada—His brother Yúsuf succeeds him—Battle of Tarifa—Assassination of Yúsuf—Accession of Mohammed V.—His half-brother Isma'îl revolts against him—Mohammed takes refuge in Guadix—Crosses over to Africa—Ibnu-l-khattîb's account of these transactions—Isma'îl is dethroned and put to death—Is succeeded by Mohammed VI.—Assassination of the latter by Pedro, King of Castile—Mohammed V. recovers his kingdom—Lamentable fate of his Wizîr, Ibnu-l-khattîb.

Isma'îl was succeeded by his son Mohammed, surnamed Abú 'Abdillah, who was born on the eighth day of Moharram, 715, (April 14, A.D. 1315). Soon after his accession he marched in person against the Christians, and took from them the city of Kabrah (Cabra). He also besieged Kasharah (Casares?), and would have taken it, had not the Castilians thrown succours into the place.

In the days of this Sultán the fortress of Jebal-Târik (the mountain of Târik), or, as it is otherwise called, Jebal-Al-fath (mountain of the entrance or victory), was wrested from the Christians, after having been in their possession upwards of twenty years.

We have stated elsewhere (p. 345) that, owing to the intimate alliance existing between the Kings of Granada and the Sultâns of the race of 'Abdu-l-hakk or Bení Merín, as well as to the frequent expeditions which the latter sent to Andalus for the purpose of assisting their Moslem brethren in their contest against the infidels, Gibraltar, Algesiras, Tarifa, and other ports of that coast, had been intrusted to their keeping by one of the Sultâns of Granada. In the year 708, however, the Castilians, profiting by the absence of a portion of the African garrison, which had been summoned to Africa, invested Gibraltar and made themselves masters of it without much difficulty. When the news of this disaster reached Africa, Abú-l-hasan ['Alí Ibn 'Othmán] Al-merînî, Sultán of Fez, who knew the importance
of that fortress, and had spent his treasures in repairing and increasing the fortifications, resolved upon wrestling the valuable prize from the enemy. Accordingly, taking with him one of his sons,\(^1\) Abú-l-ḥasan sailed thither with his fleet, and, being soon after his landing joined by the troops of Granada under the command of Mohammed himself, he closely invested the place, and made himself master of it.

No sooner had Abú-l-ḥasan reduced Gibraltar under his sway than he began to give his attention to repairing its buildings and increasing its fortifications, spending immense sums of money in building houses and magazines, as well as a jāmi' or principal mosque, and erecting new walls, towers, and even a citadel.\(^2\) Before, however, these improvements were fully completed, the Christians invested Gibraltar by sea and land; but their attempt was frustrated by the gallant defence of the Moslems, commanded by the King of Granada, and they were compelled to raise the siege. After this the Sultán Abú-l-ḥasan again applied himself further to strengthen Gibraltar, by causing a thick wall to be built at the foot of the rock, surrounding it on all sides, as the halo surrounds the crescent moon; so that the enemy could discover no prospect of success in attacking it, nor did there appear any way through which he could force an entrance. In the course of time, however, Algesirês became the prey of the infidels in consequence of the defeat which Abú-l-ḥasan, together with Ibnu-l-ahmar [Abú-l-hejāj Yúsuf], suffered at Tarifa; and Gibraltar was afterwards taken from the Bení Merín by Mohammed, surnamed Al-ghani-billah, Sultán of Granada, to whom Lisánû-d-dîn Ibnu-l-khattīb was Wizîr.

But to return. Soon after the Christians had raised the siege of Gibraltar, the Sultán Mohammed was assassinated by some African officers to whom he had rendered himself obnoxious. As he was one day about to embark [for his dominions] he was assailed by a party of horsemen who lay concealed behind a projecting rock, and put to death. His mangled body, stripped of every thing, remained exposed on the ground, but was afterwards carried to Malaga and interred in the public cemetery close to the Mun' yat or country villa of Seyd.\(^3\)

On the same day on which Mohammed was assassinated, that is to say, on Wednesday, the 13th of Dhī-l-hajjah, 733 (Aug. 24, A. D. 1333), his brother Yúsuf, who was then at Wáda Sefáyin (the river of the ships),\(^4\) close to Algesirês, was proclaimed [by the army]: he was then nearly sixteen years old. It was he who, in Shawwâl, 749 (January, A. D. 1349), appointed Lisánû-d-dîn Ibnu-l-khattîb to the office of Wizîr. During his reign the Africans under Abú-l-ḥasan were defeated near Tarifa with awful loss. An African historian expresses himself thus in relation to that deplorable event.
"Having crossed the Strait for the laudable purpose of waging war against the infidels and helping the Moslems of Granada in their desperate struggle with the Christian power, as had once been the custom of his noble ancestors, as well as of almost all the sovereigns of the different dynasties that ruled over Western Africa, Abú-l-hasan landed on the coast of Andalus with an army amounting to upwards of sixty thousand men, and was immediately joined by the forces of Granada, under the command of Abú-l-hejáj. Alas! God Almighty, whose decrees are infallibly executed upon his creatures, had decided in his infinite wisdom that this proud armament should be dispersed like the dust before the wind, and that Abú-l-hasan himself should return to his dominions vanquished and fugitive,—that the sharp-edged swords of the infidels should shine over his head and those of his men. We will not inquire how it happened; but the fact is, that thousands of Moslems won that day the crown of martyrdom; that the ranks of doctors and theologians were frightfully thinned, the law of the sword being executed on their throats: the Sultán's own son, and all his harem, fell into the hands of the victorious enemy; his treasures became the prey of the idolaters, who from that day thought of nothing short of subjecting the rest of Andalus to their abominable rule. Among the illustrious Moslems who perished on that occasion was 'Abdullah As-salmání, the father of the Wizír Lisánú-d-dín Ibnu-l-khattíb. He was an able physician and an eminent scholar. The battle of Tarifa was fought on Monday, the 7th of Jumáda the first, of the year 741 (Oct. 29, A. D. 1340).

Yúsuf Abú-l-hejáj was one of the most enlightened sovereigns of the Nasserite dynasty. In his days justice was administered with an even hand, literature and science flourished, and public order prevailed. Unluckily for the Moslems of Andalus, his reign was not of long duration; for, in the year 755 (beginning Jan. 25, A. D. 1354), he was assassinated by a madman whilst performing his devotions in the mosque of his palace. The event is thus described in a letter which the Wizír Ibnu-l-khattíb addressed, in the name of his brother and successor, Mohammed, to Abú 'Inán [Fáris], Sultán of Western Africa.

"As Abú-l-hejáj was performing the last prostration of his prayer, a madman rushed upon him and wounded him with a khanjar or yataghán. The assassin was immediately secured. The Sultán, who had been mortally wounded, made some signs, as if he wished to speak; but, after uttering a few unintelligible words, he was carried senseless to his palace, where he died shortly after his arrival. The assassin, in the mean time, was given up to the infuriated mob, who murdered him and burned his body. Abú-l-hejáj was interred on the evening of Sunday within the Alhambra, in the cemetery reserved for the princes..."
of the royal family. He left three sons: Mohammed, who succeeded him; "Isma'il, and Kays."

Mohammed, surnamed Al-ghani-billah (he who is contented with God), succeeded. Some time after his accession he dispatched to Fez his Wizir, Lisaniu-d-din Ibnu-l-khattib, with instructions to implore the aid of Abú 'Inán [Fáris], son of Abú-l-hasan, against the common foe. Upon being introduced to the Sultán's presence, and before he had delivered the message of which he was the bearer, Ibnu-l-khattib uttered extempore some verses which called forth the admiration of all those present, and were so much approved of by the Sultán, that before listening to what Ibnu-l-khattib had to say, he told him, 'By Allah! I do not know what the object of thy visit is, but whatever it may be, I from this moment grant thy request;' and so he did, for, after loading him with presents of all kinds, he promised to send troops to the assistance of his master, and dismissed him highly pleased and satisfied with the result of his mission. This circumstance elicited from the celebrated Kádí Abú-l-kásim Ash-sheríf, who formed also part of the embassy, the very just remark, that there never was an ambassador who obtained the object of his mission before he had made it known, save Ibnu-l-khattib.

"Mohammed had reigned scarcely five years," says the historian Ibnu Khaldún, "when a half-brother of his, named Isma'il, assisted by another of his relatives, of the name of Abú Sa'id, revolted in Granada; and, taking advantage of the absence of the Sultán, who was then residing at a country place out of the Alhambra, scaled at night the walls of that fortress, and made himself master of it, after putting to death Redwán, the Wizir of Mohammed. This took place on the 27th day of Ramadhan, 760 (Aug. 23, A.D. 1359), and, on the following day, Isma'il Abú-l-walíd was proclaimed by the troops and the citizens.

"In the mean time the dethroned Sultán, having found means to escape from his pursuers, repaired to Guadix, where he established his authority. When the news of this revolution and the murder of Redwán reached Fez, the Sultán, Abú Sálim, was highly displeased, for he was the friend both of Mohammed and his minister. He sent immediately [to Andalus] a theologian of his court, named Abú-l-kásim Ibn Sheríf, with instructions to invite the deposed Sultán to his court. On his arrival [at Granada], Abú-l-kásim negotiated with the great officers of the state and the ministers of the usurper, that Mohammed should be allowed to leave Guadix and proceed to Africa unmolested, and that all those individuals who had been arrested and imprisoned for their fidelity to the deposed Sultán should be set at liberty. In their number was the Kátib Abú 'Abdillah Ibnu-l-khattib, who, owing to his intimacy with
the Hajib Redwán, and his well-known attachment to the dethroned Sultan, had been confined to prison. Another writer says that Ibnu-l-khattib owed his liberation to Ibn Marzúk, the Wizir of Abú Sálim, who was an old friend of his ever since his stay at Granada; for he had no sooner heard of his friend's imprisonment than he prevailed upon his master the Sultan, whose confidence he enjoyed, to send an embassy to Andalus, &c. However this may be, Ibnu-l-khattib was released and allowed to proceed to Guadix in company with Abú-l-kásim, the African ambassador. On his arrival there, Ibnu-l-khattib found his master preparing to cross over to Africa. Mohammed took his departure at the end of Dhí-l-ka'dah, and he accompanied him and arrived in this country at the end of 760 (Nov. A.D. 1359). On the news of Mohammed's approach, Abú Sálim went out in state to receive him, and he was soon after admitted into a hall of the royal palace crowded with courtiers, theologians, poets, and doctors. It was on this occasion that his Wizir, Ibnu-l-khattib, uttered ex-tempore that celebrated ode of his, rhyming in ra, the argument of which was to implore his aid in favour of his master, and to ask him to restore him to the possession of his throne.

'O Vicar of God! May the Almighty increase thy power as the full moon shines through the shadows of night.

'May the hands of his omnipotence avert from thee that [evil] against which mortals have no power.'"

Ibn Khaldún, from whom the above details are borrowed, says, "Such was the effect produced upon the audience by Ibnu-l-khattib's verses that they were unable to suppress their tears. When the interview was over, Mohammed retired to the palace which had been prepared for him, the apartments of which he found strewed with the finest carpets, and the stables well provided with generous steeds, with their trappings and saddles ornamented with gold. Handsome robes of the most costly stuffs were sent in, as well as slave girls for him and those of his suite; in short, nothing was wanting to make their residence at court agreeable. Mohammed, moreover, was treated with every distinction, and, whether he rode or walked out of his palace, the same honours were paid to him as to the Sultan, only that Mohammed would never assume the titles of royalty, out of respect for his host. Mohammed and his suite stayed at Fez until the year 763, when they all returned to Andalus, and that Sultan regained possession of his throne."

So far Ibn Khaldún, whose narrative differs in some material points from that of Ibnu-l-khattib, since he places the revolution of Granada and the murder of Redwán on the 27th of Ramadhán, and the latter writer, who is no doubt right,
CHAP. VI. DYNASTIES IN SPAIN. 359

says that it happened on the 28th. The date of Mohammed’s departure from Guadix is also differently given. Ibnu-l-khattīb, in his Lamahatu-l-bedriyyah, says “that it took place the day after the festival of the victims (the 11th of Dhī-l-hajjah);” Ibn Khaldūn says, in Dhī-l-ka’dah; but perhaps this was an error of the scribe, who, instead of Dhī-l-hajjah, wrote Dhī-l-ka’dah. But as we are enabled to furnish the lovers of information with Ibnu-l-khattīb’s own account of these transactions, we will transcribe it here, in order that they may compare the narratives of both historians.

Lisānu-d-dīn Ibnu-l-khattīb, in his historical work entitled Al-lamahatu-l-bedriyyah fī tārikh daulati-n-nasriyyah (the shining rays of the full moon: on the history of the Nasserite dynasty), says, “The Sultán Abū ’Abdillah had upon his accession to the throne confined his half-brother Isma’il to one of his father’s palaces, near the river Dároh (Darro), which he provided with every thing required for that prince’s comfort, allowing him besides a considerable pension upon his treasury. He had also sent thither Fátimah, the prince’s mother, and all her sons. It appears, however, that on hearing of Yūsuf’s death, the mother of Isma’il was enabled, through the treasures which the deceased had left in her apartments, to create a party against his son Mohammed. Fátimah had a daughter whom Abū-l-hejāj had married to his nephew the Reys Abū ’Abdillah, son of the Reys Abū-l-walīd, son of the Reys Abū ’Abdillah (he who was once proclaimed king at Andarax),10 son of the Reys Abū Sa’īd, the father of their race, and the stock from which the other branches of the family were descended. This daughter Fátimah gained over to her interests, and she persuaded her husband to enter into the plot. The Reys Abū ’Abdillah, having therefore succeeded in attaching to his party all the discontented, sallied forth one night with about one hundred armed men, and directed his course towards a certain quarter of the Alhambra. Here, however, he found himself suddenly stopped by walls of considerable height, which he had not the means of scaling; but ladders were procured, and the conspirators ascended to the ramparts. Having put to death a sentry who came in their way, in order to secure his silence, they rushed sword in hand within the precincts of the castle, uttering seditious cries, and murdering all those whom they happened to meet. This took place a little before daybreak on the 28th of Ramadhán of the year 760 (Aug. 24, A.D. 1359). The conspirators first attacked the residence of the Hājib Redwān,11 and breaking open the doors, rushed into his harem and murdered him amongst his children and wives; after which they fell to plundering the contents of his house. In the mean time another division of the conspirators, with the Reys at their head, hastened to Isma’il’s place of confinement, and having liberated him, made
him mount a horse which they had brought for the purpose, and took him triumphantly through the city, beating drums, and proclaiming him as their Sultán.

At the time these events were taking place, the Sultán Mohammed was absent from the Alhambra, having gone, together with a son of his, to reside at a delightful country seat close to Granada, called Jennat-ul-’arif (the garden of the inspector), a spot well known for the luxuriance of its trees, which never admit the rays of the sun, as well as for the healthiness of the air, which is continually refreshed by running streams of limpid water. This garden was only separated from the royal residence by a high and strong wall, defended by a deep moat. In this place the Sultán was suddenly awakened by the clatter of arms, the cries of the assailants, and the beating of drums in the distance. Not knowing what caused the tumult, Mohammed went out in the direction of the Alhambra; but finding that the conspirators occupied all the avenues, he retraced his steps, and God was pleased to provide for his salvation; for, having mounted a fleet steed which was always kept saddled and prepared for him, he galloped off to Guadix, where he arrived safely the same morning, and presented himself to the governor of the castle, who was very far from suspecting what had happened to him. Mohammed was soon after visited by the chief inhabitants of the place, who all swore to protect him, so that he not only reigned undisturbed over Guadix and its immediate neighbourhood, but soon saw himself at the head of numerous followers, who hastened to him from all parts.

Meanwhile his brother, the usurper, dispatched an embassy to the King of Castile, offering to renew the treaty of peace then existing between the two countries. Pedro—for such was the name of the Christian king at the time—happening then to be at war with the people of Barcelona, readily assented to the proposition. Isma’il, however, did not long enjoy the power which he had usurped. Scarcely were six months elapsed since his proclamation, when the same man who had contributed to his accession precipitated him from his throne. Abú ’Abdillah revolted against him, besieged him in the Alhambra, took him prisoner, and put him to death, together with his brother Kays, on the 4th of Sha’bán, 761 (June 20, A.D. 1360). Isma’il was born on Monday, the 28th of Rabí’ the first, of 740 (Oct. 3, A.D. 1339); he was surnamed Abú-l-walíd.

Abú ’Abdillah [Mohammed VI.13] was immediately proclaimed, and reigned for about two years, at the expiration of which, seeing himself pressed on one side by the rightful sovereign, who burned to revenge the outrage done to him, and to recover the throne of his ancestors, and on the other side by Pedro, King
of Castile, he came to the strange resolution of throwing himself on the mercy of the latter and repairing to his court. He might just as well have thrown himself into the mouth of a hungry tiger thirsting for blood; for no sooner had the infidel dog cast his eye over the countless treasures which Mohammed and the chiefs who composed his suite brought with them, than he conceived the wicked design of murdering them and appropriating their riches; and on the 2nd day of Rejeb, 763 (April 27, A.D. 1362), he was assassinated, with all his followers, at a place called Tablada, close to Seville.

But to return to the dethroned Sultán: the people of Guadix persevered firmly in their allegiance to him, protected his person, and swore to devote their lives and property to his defence. Things continued thus until the day of the festival of the victims, [10th Dhí-l-hajjah] of the year 760 (A.D. Nov. 2, 1359), when an ambassador of the Sultán of Western Africa came to Guadix to say that if Mohammed would repair to his court and fix his residence in Fez, he would be treated as a friend and ally. Soon after his dethronement, Mohammed had sent an embassy to the king of the Christians, imploring his help against the usurper. Pedro received his ambassadors well, but dismissed them with only vague promises of help. Seeing, therefore, that his request was not complied with, Mohammed resolved upon accepting the Sultán's offer, and he accordingly set off on his journey on the day after that festival [11th of Dhí-l-hajjah], followed by a numerous retinue of the inhabitants of Guadix, some on horseback and others on foot. Mohammed arrived at Marbella, on the coast, whence he crossed over to Africa. He made his public entrance into Fez on the 6th day of Moharram of 761 (Nov. 27, A.D. 1359), after experiencing on his way thither the greatest marks of distinction and hospitality. On his approach the Sultán rode out to meet him, and having embraced him with the greatest cordiality, conducted him to his capital, where he allotted him a fine palace for his residence, and a considerable pension for his daily expenses.

At last, on the morning of Saturday, the 27th of the month of Shawwál of the year 762 (Aug. 29, A.D. 1361), after a stay of upwards of twenty-one months, Mohammed returned to Andalus. During his absence in Africa, the King of Castile had often sought his alliance, and made the result of his operations depend upon the Sultán's arrival. Soon after his arrival [at Guadix], the Sultán caused a kubbah or pavilion to be erected close to the garden of Al-mussárah, in order to review his followers. When the people had assembled round him, and he had ordered the banner to be unfurled, he put on the regal dress which had been presented to him by the Sultán of Western Africa, and, in the midst of popular acclamations, and the beating of drums and playing of
"instruments, his horse being led by the bridle, he proceeded to manifest his
intention of marching against the enemy. His authority was so much increased
by this public manifestation of his sentiments, that his party was soon strengthened
by all those who had been formerly obliged to quit the country, and who now
flocked under his standard; and Mohammed had thus an opportunity of judging
how much he was beloved by the generality of his subjects, from the alacrity
with which they hastened to place themselves under his obedience, and the
joyful voices with which they proclaimed his name. Indeed, God Almighty was
pleased to receive our good master under the shade of his mercy, and to incline
in his favour the hearts of his subjects, by persuading them that he was injured
and ill-treated by the usurper. Mohammed, therefore, was defended by the
brave, and his cause speedily embraced by the righteous and the honest. He
is now residing in Ronda, where he has established his rule and reigns un-
disturbed, as well as over the neighbouring districts. The charge of Wizir to
this Sultán is now filled by the Sheikh and Káyid Abú-l-hasan 'Alí Ibn Yúsuf
Ibn Komáshah Al-hosrí, and that of Kátib or secretary by the Faqih Abú
'Abdillah Ibn Zomrád."

The above is borrowed from the \textit{Lamahatu-l-bedriyyah fī táríkh daulati-n-nasriyyah}, so often quoted in the course of our narrative. The reader, however, must know that after the death of the usurper, Abú 'Abdillah, who, as before related, was assassinated by the tyrant Don Pedro, Mohammed returned to Granada and recovered his lost kingdom. We find that he made his triumphant entry into his capital on Saturday, the 20th of Jumáda the second, 763 (April 6, A. D. 1362).

We have already stated that after a short stay in Africa, Mohammed returned to Andalus, and regained possession of his father's dominions in 763. According to Ibnu-l-khattíb this happened thus: "On the first breaking out of the rebellion
by which Mohammed was deprived of his throne, 'Othmán Ibn Yahya Ibn
'Omar, Sheikhu-l-ghozát, or commander of the African volunteers, fearing the
vengeance of the usurper Isma'il, deserted over to the Castilians in company
with his father. Shortly after, Yahya crossed over to Africa, but 'Othmán
remained in Andalus, supporting with all his might the cause of the deposed
Sultán. Perceiving, however, that the Castilian king was unwilling to grant
the promised assistance, and that he could not otherwise serve his master's
cause, 'Othmán wrote to 'Omar Ibn 'Abdillah, at that time Wizír of Abú Sálím,
asking to be put in possession of one of the fortresses still held in Andalus
by the Bení Merín, that he might thence wage war against the usurper. It
happened that the above Wizír was a great friend of mine, as there had existed
between us an intimacy of very long standing, and my master having con-
"sulted with me about 'Othmán's proposition, I approved of it, and went imme-
diately to the dwelling of the Wizír 'Omar, who, at my request, issued orders "that the castle of Ronda should be given up to the friends of the deposed Sultán, "which was done, 'Othmán taking immediate possession of it in his name. Shortly "after, Mohammed sailed for Andalus; and his presence having infused new vigour "into the souls of his partisans, the whole of the Gharbia or western districts "submitted to him: he then took Malaga, and marched to Granada, which sur-
rendered to him without opposition, and he thus saw himself again in possession "of his father's dominions."

Ibnu-l-khattíb had remained behind in Africa for the purpose of escorting the wives and sons of Mohammed, whom that Sultán left behind on his departure for Andalus. Immediately after his return [to Granada], he was restored to the post of Wizír, which he occupied before, and to the unlimited confidence of his sovereign, especially after the disgrace of 'Othmán, who was exiled to Africa in Ramadhán of the year 764 (June or July, A.D. 1363); but, alas! envy, against whose poisonous shafts no mortal stands secure, chose him for the butt of her malignity, and he fell a victim to the most atrocious calumny, and the most perfidious and treacherous slander, as we will hereafter relate.

It would appear that the great favour which Ibnu-l-khattíb enjoyed with his sovereign—who showed such regard and affection for him that he would consult him on the most trifling business, and admit him and his sons to his private parties—displeased some envious and ill-intentioned people about the court, who from that moment began to indispose the mind of the Sultán towards him by calumnies and false reports. Ibnu-l-khattíb, however, having received timely intelligence of their wicked plans, sought to avert the intended blow by embracing the party, and serving the cause, of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, son of Abú-l-hasan, Sultán of Western Africa, against his cousin 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Abí Yaghalús, son of the Sultán Abú 'Alí, son of the Sultán Abú Sa'íd, son of the Sultán Ya'kúb Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakk, who was a competitor for the empire. After many events and wars, which it would take us too long to relate, 'Abdu-r-rahmán had been obliged to cross over to Andalus, together with his Wizír Mes'úd Ibn Másái, and to take refuge in Granada, where they were kindly received by the Sultán in 767. Shortly after, 'Alí, son of Bedru-d-dún, who occupied the post of Sheikhu-l-ghozát, or general of the African volunteers in Granada, died, and 'Abdu-r-rahmán was appointed to the vacant office. This show of favour towards the exiled prince displeased 'Abdu-l-'azíz, who had no sooner solidly established his power by the death of the Wizír 'Omar Ibn 'Abdillah, whom he caused to be executed, than he dispatched an embassy to the Sultán of Granada, to complain bitterly of his having been
shelter to his enemy, whom he knew to be in correspondence with the discontented in Africa, and to ask him to deliver this enemy into his hands. On the receipt of this message Mohammed was greatly perplexed, and having consulted with Ibn-l-khattib, the latter advised him to seize the persons of Ibn Abi Yaghalus and his Wizir Mes'ud, and thereby free himself from all responsibility, on condition, however, that 'Abdu-l-'aziz should restore them to all the honours and dignities of which they were in possession before their revolt. Mohammed followed the advice of his Wizir, and an agreement was accordingly entered into between that sovereign on one side, and the ambassador of the Sultán 'Abdu-l-'aziz, named Abú Yahya Ibn Abi Medín, on the other, purporting that both 'Abdu-r-rahmán and his Wizir Ibn Másáí should be arrested, which was done. Shortly after this, Ibn-l-khattib, having received intelligence that his enemies were again at work, and had strongly prejudiced the mind of his sovereign against him, fled from Granada. He no doubt imagined that the Sultán would in the end listen to their calumnies, and that as they were his sworn enemies, he had no chance of escape from them. However this may be, having asked his master's leave to visit the frontiers, he hastened thither, accompanied by a handful of horsemen, taking with him his eldest son 'Ali, who was a favourite of Mohammed. Having arrived at Jebalu-l-fatah (Gibraltar), he embarked on board a vessel which 'Abdu-l-'aziz, who was in the secret, held in readiness for him, and sailed for Ceuta, where he arrived after a few hours' passage, and was received by 'Abdu-l-'aziz with every mark of attention and respect.

In 774, 'Abdu-l-'aziz died, and was succeeded by As-sa'íd Ibn Abi Fáris, then an infant; upon which the Bení Merín, leaving Telemsán, returned to Western Africa. Ibn-l-khattib went thither also in the suite of the Wizir Abú Bekr Ibn Gházi, who was then at the head of affairs, and settled at Fez, where he bought houses and lands, and passed his time in building and planting, intending to fix his residence in that city. Abú Bekr, moreover, confirmed Ibn-l-khattib in all the honours and prerogatives which he had enjoyed under the Sultán 'Abdu-l-'aziz. In the mean time, Mohammed of Granada, having discovered the flight of his Wizir, was exceedingly angry with him, and even swore to put him to death if ever he should fall into his hands. Ibn Khaldún says, that during his residence at Telemsán, Ibn-l-khattib had instigated the Sultán 'Abdu-l-'aziz to take possession of Andalus, and that he had described to him the facility of the enterprise; and it is even added that 'Abdu-l-'aziz went from Telemsán to Western Africa for the express purpose of making preparations for the expedition. When Ibn-l-ahmar (Mohammed) received intelligence of his plans, he sent him an embassy with a splendid present, consisting of different objects of Andalusian manufacture,
besides fine horses, swift mules, handsome Christian slaves, and so forth, asking that his Wizir Ibnu-1-khattib should be given up to him. 'Abdu-l-'aziz, however, refused to grant his request, and Ibnu-1-khattib remained at his court, enjoying all his favour and confidence. On the death of 'Abdu-l-'aziz, Ibnu-1-ahmar (Mohammed) renewed his solicitations with the Wizir Abú Bekr; but he was again refused, and his ambassador even dismissed from court. Enraged at the insult, Ibnu-1-ahmar released 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Alí Yaghalúis from his captivity, and having provided him with a fleet, sent him over to Africa. He himself left Granada, at the head of considerable forces, and laid siege to Gibraltar. Hearing of his movements, Abú Bekr Ibn Gházi sent to Ceuta a cousin of his named Mohammed Ibn 'Othmán, to defend that place against any attempt of Ibnu-1-ahmar, whilst he himself marched to encounter 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who had been proclaimed by the inhabitants of Battúyyah. After besieging him some time in that town, Abú Bekr raised the siege and retired to Tezzá, and thence to Fez; upon which his enemy advanced upon the former city and made himself master of it. Whilst the Wizír Abú Bekr Ibn Gházi was deliberating as to what steps he should take, news came to him how his cousin, Mohammed Ibn 'Othmán, had proclaimed at Ceuta Ahmed Ibn Abí Sálim, better known by his surname of Dhú-l-daulatýn (he of the two reigns), because he was twice Sultán, this being the first time. The reasons which prompted that governor to take such a step are said to have been as follow. During the siege of Gibraltar, which Mohammed reduced almost to the last extremity, a correspondence was established between that Sultán and Ibn 'Othmán, in which the latter failed not to complain most bitterly of the Wizír Abú Bekr Ibn Gházi, and to declare that he was prompted to make war by no other reason than the uncourteous manner in which his just request had been denied. The two parties soon came to an understanding; it being agreed between them that Mohammed Ibn 'Othmán should immediately proclaim at Ceuta one of the sons of the Sultán Abú Sálim, who were in custody at Tangiers, by which means the Moslems would have a grown-up prince for their ruler instead of a mere child, as As-sa’íd Ibn Abí Fáris was at the time; and the choice of Ibnu-1-ahmar fell on Ahmed Ibn Abí Sálim, whom he saved, as it were, from certain death. Ibnu-1-ahmar, moreover, entered into a compact with Mohammed Ibn 'Othmán, the conditions of which were,—first, that the fortress of Gibraltar should be given up to him; that all the princes of the Bení Merín should be sent over to him, that they might be under his custody and keeping; and, lastly, that the person of Ibnu-1-khattíb should be delivered into his hands. Mohammed having accepted the above conditions, rode from Ceuta to Tangiers, and having released Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed [Ibn Abí Sálim] from his place of confinement, took the oath of
allegiance to him, and induced the inhabitants to do the same, their example being soon after followed by the inhabitants of Ceuta and Gibraltar; upon which Ibnu-l-ahmar raised the siege of that fortress and went away. Shortly after, Mohammed Ibn 'Othmán sent orders, in his master's name, to the governor of Gibraltar, to surrender the place to Ibnu-l-ahmar; upon which that Sultán hastened thither from Malaga, and as the inhabitants were desirous to return under his rule, he took possession of that important fortress, the last which the Bení Merín ever possessed in Andalus. Ibnu-l-ahmar then sent a splendid present to Abii-l-‘abbās, and at the same time sent him a body of troops, and a considerable sum of money, to help him in his enterprise. After many events and wars, which we pass over at present,—as it is our intention to relate them at full length in another part of this work,—Abú-l-‘abbás defeated his adversary, and at the beginning of 776 (June, A. D. 1374), took possession of Fez, into which he made his triumphant entry, accompanied by his Wizir Mohammed Ibn 'Othmán, and Suleyman Ibn Dáwūd, the chief of the Bení 'Askar.

We have already stated that an agreement had been entered into between Abú-l-‘abbás and the Sultán Ibhu-l-ahmar [Mohammed V.], at the time the former was proclaimed at Tangiers, that as soon as he gained possession of the throne he would seize on Ibnu-l-khattīb and deliver him up to him. Accordingly, when the Sultán Abú-l-‘abbás Ahmed, after defeating the troops commanded by Abú Bekr Ibn Ghāzī in the outskirts of Fez, invested that capital, Ibnu-l-khattīb, fearing for his life, fled with him to new Fez. A few days after, Suleyman Ibn Dáwūd put the Sultán in mind of his promise, and Ibnu-l-khattīb was accordingly arrested and confined to a dungeon, and messengers were dispatched to apprise Ibnu-l-ahmar of his capture. This Suleyman was the sworn enemy of Ibnu-l-khattīb, owing to the following reason. During his residence in Africa, Mohammed had promised him that if ever he was restored to his kingdom, he would appoint him to the office of Sheikhu-l-ghozāt, or general of the African volunteers. Accordingly, no sooner had Mohammed reconquered his kingdom, than Suleyman crossed over from Africa, sent by the Wizir 'Omar Ibn 'Abdillah, asking for the fulfilment of his promise; but this was opposed by Ibnu-l-khattīb on the plea that the office could not be filled except by princes of the posterity of 'Abdu-l-hakk, and his application was accordingly refused. Suleyman, therefore, had to return to Africa disappointed, and swearing revenge against Ibnu-l-khattīb. Subsequently to this, Suleyman returned to Andalus to take the command of Gibraltar, the government of which had been given to him, when an official correspondence was necessarily kept up between the two, in which they not unfrequently disclosed the hatred and animosity which they entertained for each other. However, when the news
of Ibnu-l-khattib's capture reached Granada, Ibnu-l-ahmar sent for Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Zomrok, who had succeeded Ibnu-l-khattib in the office of Katib and Wizir, and sent him to Africa with instructions. Abú 'Abdillah having presented his credentials to the Sultán Abú-l-abbás, Ibnu-l-khattib was sent for and made to appear before a privy council, presided over by that Sultán in person. He was then charged with certain expressions contained in letters written to his friends, in which he had cast ridicule over Abú-l-abbás, and when the witnesses had been examined he was conducted back to prison. The judges were then consulted whether he deserved death or not. A theologian of Fez undertook the defence of Ibnu-l-khattib, upon which Suleymán, fearing lest his innocence should be proved, and he should lose the pleasure of anticipated vengeance, secretly instigated some of his own servants to put that illustrious individual to death. The assassins did as they were ordered; they went to Ibnu-l-khattib's prison at night, accompanied by a dwarf, who had come in the suite of the Granadian ambassador, and strangled him. On the ensuing day his body was taken to the cemetery close to Bābu-l-mahrúk, and there buried. Thus perished the phoenix of the age, the prince of the poets and historians of his time, and the model of Wizírs.

During our stay in Fez we visited several times the spot where that eminent man lies buried, which, as above stated, is close to the gate formerly called Bābu-sh-shar'iah (the gate of the law), and now Bābu-l-mahrúk (the gate of the burnt man). The earth over his tomb has not been removed, and remains in the same state as it was then. It is true that in order to reach it, it is now necessary to descend considerably. It is commonly believed at Fez that the body of Ibnu-l-khattib was exhumed by his enemies and burnt on the very night of its interment, owing to which the gate was called Bābu-l-mahrúk. But that is not the case; for it is a well-known fact that the gate in question received its name during the reign of a Sultán of the posterity of 'Abdu-l-múmen, owing to a rebel who rose in arms against that dynasty having been made prisoner and burned close to it, which event took place long before the birth of Ibnu-l-khattib, and even that of his father 'Abdullah. The last time we visited the tomb of that extraordinary man our sorrow was so great and our feelings were so excited, that we were well-nigh overcome by our grief; even now the memory of his virtues and endearing qualities, which has been carefully preserved in our family by the Sheikh Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Al-makkarí At-telemsání, who was one of his tutors, brings tears to our eyes, and makes us detest his vile detractors. God's will must be done. There is no God but him!
CHAPTER VII.

Accession of Yüsuf II.—Fatal predictions—Reign of Abú-I-hasan—His brother Az-zaghal proclaimed at Malaga—Troubles in Castile—Rival factions in Granada—Discontent of the people—The Christians take Alhama—The Moslems try to retake it—Fail in the attempt—Siege of Loxa by the Castilians—The Granadians attack and defeat them—Revolution at Granada—The Castilians are defeated near Malaga—Abu 'Abdillah usurps the throne—Is defeated and taken prisoner by the Castilians—His uncle Az-zaghal succeeds him—Conquests of the Christians—Policy of Ferdinand—He besieges and takes Loxa—Abú 'Abdillah is proclaimed in the Albayzin—Revolution at Granada—Taking of Velez-Malaga—Malaga besieged and taken—Siege and taking of Baza—Surrender of Almeria—The Sultan Az-zaghal makes his submission—Abú 'Abdillah summoned to surrender his capital—Makes preparations to defend himself—War between Abú 'Abdillah and Az-zaghal—Abú 'Abdillah reduces some fortresses—Az-zaghal crosses over to Africa—Granada besieged—Surrenders to the Castilians—Terms of the capitulation—The King of Castile makes his entrance into the Alhambra—Ultimate fate of Abú 'Abdillah—The capitulations are violated—The Moslems compelled to embrace the Christian religion—Their revolt in the Alpuxarras—Their feigned conversion—Their ultimate expulsion.

Accession of Yüsuf II. After the death of Mohammed, which happened in the year 793, his son Yüsuf II. succeeded, in whose days the Moslems of Granada received many a severe blow from their Christian neighbours. Yüsuf was succeeded by his son [Mohammed VI.], under whose rule the Mohammedan empire still went on decaying, until it became an easy prey to the infidels who surrounded it on every side, like a pack of hungry wolves, God Almighty permitting that the sins of preceding generations should be visited upon the wretched inhabitants of Granada. If we are to believe the historians of that city, numerous were the warnings which the Moslems of Granada received of the approaching chastisement of Heaven, and the ruin of their empire was more than once announced. We recollect having read once, in the handwriting of the learned Háfedh, Kátib, and historian, Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibnu-l-haddád Al-wádi-ashí (from Guadix), who resided at Telemsán, the following anecdote, which we here transcribe, vouching for its veracity. “I was told by the Faqih Sídí Hasan, son of the Káyid and general, the honourable Sídí Ibráhím Al-'arráf, that he was present at the taking down of the talisman known as the weather-cock, which once stood on the top of the old kassábah at Granada, and was removed on account of the improvements and repairs about to be made in that building. I saw it with my own eyes; it was of a heptagonal shape, and had the following inscription in verse:
The palace at fair Granada presents to the eye of the observer a talisman turning round with the succession of time.

The horseman on its weather-cock, although a solid body, turns with every wind.

This, to the wise man, reveals many a mystery.

Indeed, after subsisting a short time, a calamity will come which shall ruin both the palace and its owner.'

When it came to the reign of Abú-l-hasan 'Alí Ibn Sa’d 4 An-naserí Al-ghálebí Al-ahmarí, one of the Sultáns of that family, public opinion declared against him, especially when a brother of his, named Abú ’Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Sa’d, better known by the surname of Az-zaghal,5 received the oath of allegiance and was proclaimed at Malaga, with the assistance of some Christian captains whom he had taken to that city in his company. Mohammed remained at Malaga some time; after which he went to join his brother, and made his peace with him, the captains and chiefs, who had contributed to his elevation, remaining in that city without a leader.6 Things went on in this way until after some time the people of Malaga rose in arms and proclaimed also Abú-l-hasan, whereby the civil war was concluded, and that Sultán [Abú-l-hasan] became the supreme master of all the Mohammedan dominions in Andalus.

No sooner did Abú-l-hasan see himself firmly seated on the throne than he made war against the idolaters, and took from them several castles and strong places; the lightnings [of victory] shone in his favour and against the infidel enemy; they feared him, sought his friendship, and sued for peace. The armies of Abú-l-hasan having greatly increased in number, he decided to review them. To this effect he caused his architects to erect a platform out of the Al-hamrá, or castle of Granada. The review began on a Tuesday, the 19th of the month of Dhi-l-hajjah of the year 882 (March 24, a. d. 1478), and the troops ceased not passing daily before him till the 22nd of Moharram of the following year of 883 (April 24, a. d. 1478), when the review was completed. On this occasion the soldiers were clad in suits of polished steel armour, dressed in gorgeous silken robes, mounted on fleet steeds, and having their swords, spears, and shields richly embossed with gold and silver. One day when the Sultán was as usual seated under the pavilion and the troops were passing before him, the summit and the sides of the neighbouring hill of As-sabíkah being crowded with spectators who had left their dwellings for the purpose of witnessing the pageant, God permitted that all of a sudden the rain should fall down in torrents, and that the river Hadároh (Darro) should overflow its banks. Such was the fury of the devastating element, which came pouring down from the neighbouring
"mountains, carrying along large stones and whole trees, that it destroyed every thing on its way, and that houses, shops, mills, inns, markets, bridges, and garden-walls were the prey of the devastating flood. The water reached as far as the square where the great mosque stands. So frightful an inundation had never before been experienced in the country, and the people naturally looked upon it as the harbinger of the dreadful calamities which awaited the Moslems in just chastisement for their perversity and their sins.

"About this time the Castilian nobles were divided among themselves; one taking possession of the kingdom of Cordova, another of that of Seville, and a third of Xerez. Instead, however, of profiting by their dissensions, Abú-l-hasan gave himself more than ever to pleasure, and, trusting the government into the hands of his Wizírs, entirely neglected the affairs of the state, and allowed his army to be corrupted and to lose its discipline and courage. He also concealed himself from the sight of his subjects, and gave up all idea of military enterprise or attention to the affairs of the administration; all which was undoubtedly the work of God, that his supreme will might be accomplished. At the same time new taxes were imposed and all manner of oppressions and injustices practised upon his subjects, who began openly to condemn his administration and to execrate his rule. This was not all; fancying that the Christians would not attack him, on account of the civil wars in which they were then engaged, Abú-l-hasan caused several of his best generals to be executed. It happened, however, that the King of Castile took possession of the kingdom after a long and bloody civil war; and having compelled the rebellious nobles, who had opposed his authority, to submission, was now enabled to turn his arms against the Moslems.

"The Castilians soon found the means of mischief, as well as an opportunity of taking possession of the Moslem dominions under the following distressing circumstances. Abú-l-hasan had by his wife, a daughter of his uncle the Sultán Abú 'Abdillah Al-ajsar (the left-handed), two male children, Mohammed and Yúsuf; but he had another wife, on whom he doted, and by whom he had likewise issue. She was a Christian lady, and, as the monarch had always evinced the greatest predilection for her, fears were entertained lest he should neglect the sons he had by his noble cousin for those of the Christian captive. This naturally gave rise to dissensions and quarrels among the officers of the state and the servants of the palace, and two factions were formed, some inclining to the sons of his wife and some to the sons of the Christian captive.

"About this time, too, and when the Moslems of Granada were most disturbed by their private feuds and the cause above alluded to, the truce which the Christians
had concluded during their internal divisions expired. The people of Granada,
moreover, complained to the Sultán of his Wizir and civil officers, who, they said,
Oppressed them and treated them with unwonted tyranny and injustice. This
increased the discontent still more, and things went so far that the inhabitants
of Granada loudly demanded the removal of the obnoxious Wizir and the other
public functionaries; and as their petitions were disregarded by Abú-l-hasan, new
scenes of trouble and confusion ensued. The disaffection of the inhabitants and
the weakness of the government soon became known to the Christians, who, at
the expiration of the truce, marched against Al-hammah (Alhama) and took it by
surprise. This event happened in 887 (Feb. a. D. 1482); the Castilians being com-
manded on the occasion by the Lord of Cadiz.11 The assailants took the castle
and fortified themselves in it. They thence attacked the town, the streets of
which they filled with infantry and cavalry, slaying all the Moslems they met,
and taking the women captives; for they surprised the inhabitants in the middle
of their sleep, as if they were so many drunken men, and, therefore, unable to
offer resistance. Those whose fate it was to die were killed by the Christians:
some, however, contrived to escape, leaving their wives and children behind
them, and the Christians in entire possession of the town and what it contained.
No sooner did the news of this disaster reach Granada than both the high and
the low hastened out to the relief of Alhama. The Christians were ten thousand
in number between horse and foot; they were preparing to depart with their
plunder and return to their country, when, having discovered the van-guard of
the Moslem army, they retraced their steps, and shut themselves up in the citadel.
They were soon besieged by the people of Granada, who proceeded forthwith
to invest the town. After this, the army of the Moslems being considerably
re-inforced by fresh bodies of cavalry and infantry which kept arriving from
Granada and other cities of the Moslem dominions, the siege was carried on with
increased vigour, and the greatest efforts were made to deprive the besieged of
water, by destroying the subterranean pipes which supplied the garrison. It soon
became evident, however, that Alhama could not be taken by force, upon which
the soldiers gave license to their tongues, and began to pour abuse and ridicule
upon their own officers and upon the Wizir who went in command of the army.
Things were in this state when scouts came to the camp to announce the
arrival of the Christians in great force to the relief of Alhama; upon which the
Moslems raised their camp, and went forward to encounter the enemy. No
sooner, however, did the Christians, who were commanded on this occasion by the
Lord of Cordova, hear of the approach of the Moslems, than they turned back
and fled before our victorious army, alleging the inferiority of their numbers.
"In the mean while the Lord of Seville,\(^{12}\) having collected a large army, consisting of cavalry and infantry, hastened to the relief of the besieged in Alhama. The news of his arrival having reached our camp, the soldiers grouped together, and began to declare that they were unable to carry on the siege for want of provisions and the requisite engines and stores, having left Granada in haste, and without time to make the necessary preparations. Owing to the above reason it was deemed expedient to return to Granada, in order to be there supplied with everything requisite for the undertaking. The order for departure was accordingly given, and the Christian re-inforcements entered Alhama whilst the Moslems were departing from before its walls.

Immediately after the Christians had entered Alhama, their officers held a council of war, in which it was discussed whether they should abandon the place or keep possession of it: having decided for the latter course, they repaired and increased the fortifications, and furnished the place with all kinds of military stores and provisions, so as to render it capable of sustaining a long siege, after which the Lord of Seville returned to his own states, having previously distributed among the soldiers the spoil made in the city, and leaving part of his forces to re-inforce the garrison.

Some time after this the Moslems returned again to the siege of Alhama, which they pressed with greater vigour than ever. Having one day attacked a part of the wall which was not well guarded, and finding little resistance, the Moslems made a lodgment within the walls, pursuing sword in hand the enemy, who fled before them. They had penetrated far into the place, when, alas! a large body of troops came to the assistance of the fugitives, and the few Moslems who had gained an entrance into the town were either put to the sword or dashed down the precipitous sides of the mountain on which the town is situated, few of them escaping with their lives. Most of the warriors who fell on this occasion were people from Bástah (Baza) and from Guadix. The Moslems were disheartened by the reverse, and they lost all hope of ever taking Alhama by force of arms.

In the month of Jumáda the first, of the same year, information was received at Granada that the King of Castile was marching to the Moslem dominions at the head of an innumerable army; people then met together, and began to ask each other about the probable destination of the expedition. This, however, was soon ascertained; the Christians having shortly after laid siege to the city of Loxa, which they sought to reduce, and to add it to Alhama and the other conquests.

An army of Moslems then sallied out from Granada, well provided with stores and provisions of every kind, and, having attacked the Christians, who were besieging the city, they defeated them with great slaughter, and took part of
"their heavy artillery.\textsuperscript{13} Still the Christians persevered in the siege of Loxa; but "the Moslems having received new re-inforcements from Granada, again offered the "Christians battle, challenged them to come out of their tents, defeated them with "great loss, and took and plundered their camp, which they had abandoned, leaving "behind them all their provisions and heavy baggage. This victory happened on "the 27th of Jumáda the first, of the same year\textsuperscript{14} (July, A. D. 1482).

"On the very same day in which this signal victory was gained, Abú 'Abdillah "Mohammed, and Abú-l-hejáj Yúsuf, sons of the Sultán Abú-l-hasan, fearing "lest their father, influenced by his Christian concubine, should deprive them of "their inheritance, and prefer his other sons to them, made their escape from "Granada, and took refuge in Guadix, which place submitted to them, as well "as Baza, Almeria, and even Granada in course of time, their father being obliged "to withdraw to Malaga, which continued faithful to him.

"In the month of Safar of the year 888 (March, A. D. 1483), all the Christian "chiefs [on the frontiers] collected their forces, and marched together towards "Malaga and Velez. They were about eight thousand men, commanded by the "Lords of Seville, Xerez, Ezija, Antequera, and other cities; notwithstanding "which they were unable to reduce one single fortress. Having, moreover, "dispersed in the passes and ravines of the mountains, they were attacked by "the people of Malaga and Velez, who went on pursuing and killing them wherever "they fled, until they arrived near Malaga, when some escaped, but the greater "part were killed or made prisoners. It is asserted that upwards of three thousand "Christian knights were killed in this memorable rout, and that the prisoners, "in whose number were an uncle of the Castilian king,\textsuperscript{15} the governors of Seville, "Xerez, Antequera, and thirty more of their principal noblemen, amounted to "two thousand. The spoils gained by the Moslems in gold, silver, jewels, horses, "and arms, were great and valuable. At the time of the attack of Malaga by "the Christians, the Sultán Abú-l-hasan was absent from his capital,\textsuperscript{16} having "gone to Almuñécar; he had, however, left his brother Abú 'Abdillah with a "portion of his army to defend the city.

"About the end of the same month (April, A. D. 1483), the people of Malaga "invaded the Christian territory; but they suffered a complete defeat, in which "most of the chiefs of Western Andalus\textsuperscript{17} were slain.

"When the Sultán Abú 'Abdillah, son of the Sultán Abú-l-hasan, who, as Abú 'Abdillah "above related, had taken possession of Granada, saw his authority firmly es- "tablished there, as well as at Almeria, and almost every other large city, with "the exception of Malaga and the Al-gharbía (western district), which remained "faithful to his father, he determined upon becoming, if possible, master of all
"the Mohammedan dominions. Accordingly, when he heard that his father had
gone to Almuñécar, he left Granada, at the head of the troops of that city, and
other forces collected from the eastern parts of his dominions, and invaded the
territory of Malaga; but having encountered his father's army at a place called
Ad-dab, a battle ensued in which Abú 'Abdillah was defeated, and obliged to
return to his capital. Some time after this, Abú 'Abdillah, the Sultán of Granada,
hearing of the advantages which his father and uncle in Malaga had gained over
the Christians, and the rich spoils they had collected on the occasion, pre-
pared also for an expedition against the infidels. Having, accordingly, collected
the forces he had at hand, and those of the eastern districts, he started on the
first day of Rabi' the first, of the same year (April, A.D. 1483), and arrived
soon afterwards in the territory of Lucena, slaying and making captives, plunder-
ing and wasting the country. But the Christians of the neighbouring districts,
having assembled under the Lord of Cabra, guarded all the mountain passes
in the rear of the Moslems, and cut them off from their country. In this situa-
tion the Moslems were completely defeated, and almost the whole of the army
were either made prisoners or slain. Among the former was the Sultán himself,
who, at first, was not recognised; but the Lord of Lucena, who knew him,
coming up, claimed him as his prisoner, and seeing that the Lord of Cabra
wished to snatch his prize from him, departed that very night with his prisoner
to the court of the King of Castile, who, in acknowledgment of his signal service,
raised him to the highest rank among his captains, and ever after intrusted to
him every important enterprise.

When the news of this disaster reached Granada, the chief inhabitants of that
capital met together to deliberate, and came to the resolution of sending a
deputation to Malaga to offer the throne to Abú-l-hasan, which they did, the
deputies presenting him with the allegiance of their countrymen. Abú-l-hasan,
however, having some time previous lost his sight from a paralytic affection,
and being, moreover, old and infirm, excused himself from resuming the govern-
ment, and having renounced in favour of his brother Abú 'Abdillah, retired to
Almuñécar, where he remained till he died. Abú-l-hasan, therefore, was suc-
ceeded by his brother Abú 'Abdillah, better known by the surname of Az-zaghal.

During this time Abú 'Abdillah, the son of Abú-l-hasan, continued in captivity.

In the month of Rabi' the second, of the year 890 (April or May, A.D. 1485),
the Christians invaded the territory of Malaga with considerable forces, and
reduced some castles and fortresses, as they had already done in the preceding
year. Having laid siege to a fortified town called Dhekwán, they battered
its walls until they made a breach through which one thousand men at arms
penetrated into the place. There happened, however, to be within the fortress at
the time a considerable body of Moslems from the western districts and from
Ronda, who, falling suddenly upon the enemy, slew every one of those who had
entered the town. Notwithstanding their discomfiture, the Christians persevered,
until at last the garrison was obliged to capitulate and go out, surrendering the
place to the enemy.
In Jumáda the first, of the same year (May or June, A.D. 1485), the Christians
besieged Ronda, which they knew to be ill defended, as the greater part of the
garrison had gone to the assistance of their brethren of Dhekwán and other
fortresses besieged by the enemy. After battering the walls with their heavy
artillery, the Christians made a large breach, and the garrison was obliged to
capitulate. After the surrender of Ronda, the whole of the neighbouring districts
of which that city was the capital submitted to the Christians, so that no place
remained to the west of Malaga which did not acknowledge the rule of the
infidel king; who, after distributing his army among the fortresses recently
conquered, in order that he might afterwards more effectually besiege Malaga,
returned to his dominions.
On the 19th of Shábán of the same year (Aug. 31, A.D. 1485) Az-zaghal left
Granada for the purpose of inspecting his dominions, and providing for the
fortification of a certain castle on his frontier. As he was residing in the latter
place, news reached him that the enemy was in sight. Indeed, on the morning of
the 22nd of Sha‘bán (Sept. 3, A.D. 1485), the Christians were to be seen
encamped before the castle,18 whither they stole secretly during the night.
However, when the enemy at daybreak saw our troops encamped near the
castle, they formed their squadrons and attacked their van-guard with great fury.
The first onset was unfavourable to the true believers, who, fighting in disorder,
were easily broken, the Christians penetrating even to the tent of the Sultán;
but, recovering soon afterwards, the battle became general; and God Almighty
being pleased on this occasion to endow the faithful with fresh vigour and
courage, the Christians were ultimately defeated with great slaughter. The
Moslems, however, were prevented from following up their success by the fear
of the main body of the Christian army, commanded by the King of Castile in
person, which was advancing towards that part of the country; for it was evident
that as soon as the fugitives should meet with the advancing troops they would
retrace their steps. The Moslems collected on this occasion considerable spoil,
and took a number of guns,19 which they placed in the neighbouring forts. After
this, nothing occurred till the month of Ramadhrán (Sept. or Oct. A.D. 1485),
when the Christians laid siege to Cambil, battered its walls, and, when the breach
had been made practicable, took the place by storm. When the Moslems who
were in the castle saw the Christians in possession of the town, they surrendered
by capitulation, and left the place, with their property and children, to retire to
other countries inhabited by the Moslems. Through the reduction of Cambil, in
the Alpujarras, many of the neighbouring villages remaining unprotected, the
inhabitants fled for refuge to other quarters, and many towns and forts fell into
the hands of the enemy,—such as Mushákar (Muxacar), Illora, and others; for
the Christian king so pressed the territory of the Moslems on all sides, that he
attacked no fortress which he did not take, and invaded no district which did not
immediately surrender to his arms.

Not satisfied with his rapid success in the way of arms, the Castilian monarch
employed artifice and deceit to weaken and subdue what remained of the Moslem
dominions. He first granted liberty to his prisoner, the Sultán Abú 'Abdillah,
and having furnished him with men, money, and other requisites, and given him
a khila'h or dress of honour, sent him on towards the districts to the east of Baza,
with the promise of helping him to the re-conquest of all his father's dominions.
He also pledged his royal word that whoever among the Moslems would acknow-
ledge the authority of his ally, Abú 'Abdillah, and swear allegiance to him, should
be included in the treaty of peace existing between the two sovereigns, and enjoy
all the security and advantages insured by the same. Abú 'Abdillah accordingly
set off for Velez-Malaga, the inhabitants of which city submitted to him; after
which he caused the treaty of peace concluded with the Christian king to be
read to the inhabitants in the market-place. This circumstance was soon made
public, and being spread over the country by the demons of mischief, the Bálisín
(people of Baeza), who inhabited a separate suburb of Granada [the Albayzin],
people at all times notorious for their proneness to rebellion, their infidelity, and
their attachment to the Christians, began to plan a revolt in his favour. Being
joined in the attempt by some wicked and ill-disposed people, who were anxious
to sow division amongst the Moslems, as well as by many honest citizens, who, per-
ceiving the weakness of the state, were anxious to see peace once more established,
they raised the standard of revolt; and, urged on as they were by the demons of
discord and civil war and their wicked agents to infamous acts and contemptible
deeds, they proclaimed Abú 'Abdillah, the captive and friend of the infidels, for
their Sultán. The consequences of this measure were that discord and civil war
broke out in Granada, no doubt by the will of the Almighty, who had decreed
that this doomed country should fall a prey to the enemy. The inhabitants
of the Albayzin persisting in their revolt, they were assailed with stones and
other missiles thrown from the towers and walls of the neighbouring castle, and
the fire of civil war raged more fiercely than ever. This rebellion broke out on the 3rd of Rabi' the first, of the year 891 (March 9, A.D. 1486), and lasted till the middle of Jumáda the first following (June, A.D. 1486).

Whilst the two parties were thus contending, the intelligence was received at Granada that Abú ’Abdillah had taken possession of the city of Loxa, and that he showed a disposition to settle his differences with his uncle Al-zaghal, who still held the castle of Granada, and to make peace with him. Abú ’Abdillah offered to leave his uncle the undisturbed possession of Granada and the rest of his dominions, on condition that he would give him, as a fief to be held of his crown, Loxa or any other city, which it should please him to grant him, and that both sovereigns should in future act in concert against the enemies of their faith. While these negotiations were on foot, the King of Castile invested Loxa with a numerous army, well provided with all the necessaries for a siege. The Sultán Abú ’Abdillah occupied it with a body of troops raised among the inhabitants of the Albayzin, who, on hearing of his entrance into Loxa, had repaired thither to the assistance of their chief, and in order to fulfil the duties of the jihád. The people of Granada, however, and those of other places, fearing lest the siege of Loxa should only be a stratagem of the enemy, never went to the relief of that city. The Christians in the mean time pressed the siege with increased vigour, until alarming rumours began to circulate among the besieged, purporting that the attack had been preconcerted between the Castilian and Abú ’Abdillah during the captivity of the latter. This and the taking of one of the suburbs induced the inhabitants of Loxa to surrender their city on the 26th day of Jumáda the first, of the year 891 (May 23, A.D. 1486).

After the taking of Loxa, most of the inhabitants took refuge in Granada; Abú ’Abdillah only remained behind, which circumstance convinced the Granadians that his entrance into Loxa had been for the mere purpose of putting the Christians in possession of that city, in pursuance of a plan preconcerted between him and the King of Castile, and no doubt as the price of his ransom. To this it must be added, that the Sultán’s son, who had been retained as a hostage by the Castilians, was now liberated, and that several messages and negotiations passed between him and his partisans of the Albayzin, so that no doubt remained as to the truth of their suspicions. After the reduction of Loxa, the King of Castile returned to his own states, again taking with him the captive Sultán. About the middle of the ensuing month of Jumáda the second (June, A.D. 1486), he attacked Al-birah; and after he had demolished part of the walls with his artillery, the inhabitants capitulated and removed to Granada. He next besieged
the fortress of Moclin, the inhabitants of which defended themselves with great courage; but perceiving that they were surrounded on every side, that provisions were getting scarce, and that they had no hope whatever of relief, they also capitulated and retired to Granada. As to the people of Columbera, they surrendered without making any resistance, and, like the people of the other towns and castles, betook themselves to Granada.

After these conquests the enemy besieged the fortress Mont-ferid, into which they threw combustible matter and other projectiles. Having in this manner set fire to a magazine where the provisions and military stores of the garrison were kept, the place capitulated, and the inhabitants removed also to Granada. The Christian king next attacked Sakhrab, which he reduced in like manner, and having taken several more of the neighbouring fortresses, he filled them with men and stores, in readiness for the intended siege of Granada.

The Castilian then returned to his dominions, taking his prisoner with him. Before his departure, however, he entered into an agreement with Abú 'Abdillah, that whoever voluntarily submitted to his rule should enjoy peace and security. The rumour of this treaty soon circulated about the country, as also that this concession was owing to a war which had just broken out between the Castilian and the King of France. In pursuance of this plan, the captive Sultán presented himself at Velez-Malaga, where he was well received by the inhabitants. From thence he sent to all the neighbouring towns, describing himself as the bearer of peace and security, and promising that whoever submitted to his authority should have nothing to fear in future from the hostilities of the Christians, such being the condition of a treaty which he said he had in his possession, signed by the King of Castile, and to the observance of which that sovereign had pledged his word. Very few people, however, placed any reliance in these promises, if we except the inhabitants of the Albayzin, who rose immediately in favour of Abú 'Abdillah, and accepted the peace which he offered, making themselves the advocates of his truth and sincerity, and even using reproachful and insulting language towards the inhabitants of Granada, who adhered to the party of his rival; whereby discord and confusion reached the extreme. Not contented with this open manifestation of their sentiments, the people of the Albayzin wrote to inform Abú 'Abdillah that were he to repair among them, with such proofs and documents as he said he was the bearer of, they would undoubtedly rise in his favour and acknowledge him for their sovereign. Accordingly Abú 'Abdillah entered the Albayzin secretly, and when he was least expected; and, having made himself known to the inhabitants of that
suburb, caused a proclamation by the Christian king to be read in the markets
and at other public places, promising security and protection to all those who
would acknowledge his rule.

The people of Granada, however, having called to mind his treacherous con-
duct at Loxa, placed no reliance on his words, and would not accept the peace
which he offered to them. The entrance of Abú 'Abdillah into the Albayzin
is said to have taken place on the 16th of the month of Shawwál of the year 891
(Oct. 17, A. D. 1486). His uncle, who was then in the Alhambra, retired to the
fortress, and civil war commenced; the King of Castile assisting his ally with
men, arms, money, wheat, gunpowder, and other articles; so that the power of
the rebel increased, war raged more fiercely than ever, and men became accustomed
to massacre and plunder. This state of things lasted until the 27th of Moharram
of the year 892 (Jan. 24, A. D. 1487), when the people of Granada, with the Sultán
at their head, attempted to storm the Albayzin, the doctors of the law having
previously declared that whoever formed alliance with the Christians, or tried to
subdue the country through their assistance, as also all those who abetted Abú
'Abdillah in his plans, were guilty of rebellion against God and his Messenger.
Their attack, however, being feebly conducted, did not succeed.

After this the Sultán of Granada sent for the military chiefs and governors
of all the principal cities and districts in his dominions, such as Baza, Guadix,
Almeria, Almuñecar, Velez, Malaga, and others; and, being all assembled in the
capital, they bound themselves by a most solemn oath to act unanimously
against the enemies of their religion, and to hasten to each other's assistance
in case of attack from the Christian. The news of this compact having reached
the Albayzin, the Sultán [Abú 'Abdillah], who reigned there, was so terrified
that he sent immediately to apprise his ally, the King of Castile, of the deter-
mination taken by the Moslems; he himself shortly after quitted the Albayzin,
and repaired to the neighbourhood of Velez with all his forces. From thence
Abú 'Abdillah dispatched his Wizir to Malaga and to Hisn-Al-munshát,24 to
induce the inhabitants of those two places to submit to him, by showing them
a copy of the treaty which he had concluded with the King of Castile, and
alarming them with the prospect of danger from the Christians. This so far
succeeded that the inhabitants of Malaga and Hisn-Al-munshát submitted to
him, chiefly through fear of the Castilian king, and of his vengeance, and urged
on by their ardent wish for peace. It was not so with Velez; for when the chief
men of Malaga met the inhabitants and explained their motives for acknowledging
the authority of Abú 'Abdillah, the latter refused to depart from what they had
promised to the Granadians and to the other Moslems of Andalusia.
The King of Castile then advanced towards Velez-Malaga, and laid siege to it in the month of Rabi' the second, of the year 892 (April, A.D. 1487). When the news of this expedition reached Granada, the Sultán assembled his council, and, having consulted them as to what was to be done, it was unanimously decided to march to the assistance of the besieged, according to the agreement entered into with them. The Sultán therefore left Granada on the 24th of Rabi' the second (April 23, A.D. 1487), at the head of the forces of Guadix, and various detachments from the Alpujarras.

When the Moslems came in sight of Velez-Malaga they found the Christians besieging that city by sea and land. Having encamped on a hill in the neighbourhood, they soon after attacked the Christians with great vigour, and uttering their war-cries, but in very little order. Whilst the Moslems were advancing to the charge, news came to the Sultán Az-zaghal that the Lord of the Albayzin had been proclaimed in Granada. The Moslems therefore engaged the Christians irresolutely, and the consequence was that before the action became general, they fled in great disorder, although their opponents gave evident signs of terror at their approach. There is no power or strength but in God!

The revolt at Granada having become known amongst the people, the army retired to Guadix, and the Christians, who had raised the siege of Velez in order to encounter the Granadians, recommenced their operations against that place; and, having carried the suburb by storm, pressed closely on the besieged.

The revolt in Granada took place on the 5th of Jumáda the first. When the people of Velez saw the determination of the enemy to take possession of the city, and that no hope of succour was left them after the retreat of the Moslem army, they offered to capitulate, and the terms being agreed upon, they marched out of the city on Friday, the 10th of Jumáda the first, of the same year.

After the taking of Velez, all the towns east of Malaga, including the fortress of Komáresh (Comares), surrendered to the Christians, who, elated with success, proceeded to the siege of that capital. The inhabitants of that city, as before related, deemed themselves included in the peace subsisting between the King of the Christians and the Sultán of the Albayzin, to whom they had submitted; but, regardless of the treaty, the Christian king encamped before Malaga, amply provided with ammunition and every kind of military stores. Some time previous, and whilst he was besieging Velez, the people of Malaga had sent the Christian king a present by their governor, who was a Wizir of the Sultán of the Albayzin; and in order the more to propitiate the Christian monarch they sent along with the present the Christian governor of Xeres, who had been a prisoner in their hands.
ever since the defeat of the Christians near that city; but the King of Castile, unmoved by these marks of allegiance, persisted in his determination, giving out as an excuse that the fortress of Jebal-fároh (Gibralfaro) still obeyed the Sultán of Guadix.

The King of Castile invested the city by sea and land; the inhabitants made a most desperate defence by discharges of their artillery from the ramparts of the city, as well as by frequent sallies of cavalry and infantry. The siege was prosecuted with increased vigour, and maintained with equal constancy, until the blockade, being more effectually established by means of ditches and outposts on the land side, and of additional vessels by sea, all assistance from without was intercepted. However, a chosen body of Morábits having succeeded in escaping the vigilance of the Christians, made their entrance into the city, and, with their assistance, new sallies were made against the enemy and severe battles were fought. But the enemy, having succeeded in bringing their artillery to bear against the walls, got possession of one of the suburbs, from whence they so annoyed the inhabitants, and guarded so effectually the avenues of the city, that the scarcity of provisions began to be severely felt, and after some days the people were obliged to feed on the flesh of their camels, horses, and asses. In this extremity the Moslems implored the help of their countrymen at home and of the Africans on the opposite shore; but all in vain,—no one stirred in their defence. Famine soon spread its ravages in the city, whose bravest defenders daily fell victims to its fury. Yet with all this the ardour of the inhabitants was unimpaired, and the same obstinate resistance was offered to the attacks of the Christians as before. At last, weakened by their losses, and despairing of receiving any assistance, either by land or sea, the inhabitants of Baza began to negotiate with the Christians, and to ask for such terms as had been granted to other places taken by them. They were told, that if they would only surrender the castle and the fort, the king could not fail to treat them well. This, however, was a mere deception on the part of the Christians, for, once in possession of the city, they made all the inhabitants captives. The taking of Malaga, which was followed by the surrender of every town or village in its immediate neighbourhood, happened about the end of Sha'bán of the year 892 (August, A. D. 1487).

In the year 893 (A. D. 1488), the enemy marched to the districts of Ash-sharkiyah (Axarquia) and of Velez, notwithstanding their being both comprised in the treaty. In vain did the inhabitants sue for peace; their prayers were completely disregarded; and although, as above related, the whole of that district was comprised in the capitulations granted to the Sultán of the Albayzin, the Christians, regardless
of their promise, treated the inhabitants as enemies, and subjected the country to
their rule.

After this the King of Castile returned to his dominions; but in Rejeb of the
following year (June or July, A. D. 1489), he again returned to the district of Baza,
and having reduced all the fortresses and castles in the neighbourhood of that
city, laid siege to the capital itself. Baza happened to be well garrisoned and
provided for a long siege; for, when the Lord of Guadix heard of the intentions
of the enemy, he hastily collected the troops of Almería, Almuñecar, and the
mountainous districts of the Albushrát (Alpuxarras), and threw himself into that
city shortly before the arrival of the Christians before its walls. A series of
bloody battles was fought between the assailants and the besieged, in which the
Moslems had generally the advantage, upon which the Christians, despairing
of taking the city by assault, removed their camp to some distance from the
walls, and the inhabitants could go in and out of the town without being
molested. Things remained in this state during the months of Rejeb, Sha'bán,
and Ramadhán, the Moslems remaining all the time encamped outside the walls
and ready to repel the attacks of the enemy. After this the Christians began
to press the siege with greater vigour; and having brought their heavy artillery
and battering engines nearer to the walls, they made repeated assaults, and
possessed themselves of some of the avenues leading to the city, so as to render it
very difficult, if not altogether impossible, to leave or enter the town. In Dhi-l-
ka'dah and Dhi-l-hajjah things grew still worse, and provisions of all kinds
became exceedingly scarce. About the end of the latter month the Moslems,
having examined the extent of their stores, found that they had but very few
in their magazines; but they still persevered in their resistance, in the hope that
the Christians would raise the siege at the approach of winter. But, alas! what
was their astonishment when, instead of returning to their country, they saw them
actually building houses and huts, no doubt with the intention of passing the
winter before their city! At sight of these preparations the inhabitants of Baza
were seized with terror and despair, and they accordingly began to negotiate a
capitulation on the same terms as had been granted to the surrounding places. The
Christian king, however, thinking that the besieged had no provisions left, and
that their only object was to obtain favourable conditions, sent officers into the
city to examine and report to him the state of the garrison; but the Moslems,
guessing what his intentions were, put together all the provisions they had in the
city, and displayed them in the markets and other public places on the passage
of the Christian officers, so that they might be deceived, and think that
the garrison could hold out much longer; whereas they were all reduced to the
"last extremity. War, indeed, is nothing more than fallacy and deceit. The plan
"was executed as it was conceived; one of the Spanish grandees entered the city
"on the excuse of settling the terms of the capitulation, but in reality to look
"about and to ascertain the true state of the garrison, their means of defence, the
"provisions which they had in store, &c., and to gain thereby a knowledge to guide
"the Christians in the negotiation. Being deceived by appearances, the Christian
"proposed to grant the people their lives and property, with liberty to remove
"wherever they chose. These terms, however, were made to extend only to the
"citizens of Baza, and on no account to the troops who had come to their as-
"sistance from Guadix, Almeria, and Almuñeear, who, by an article of the treaty,
"were to be expelled from Baza by the inhabitants themselves before the capitula-
"tion was signed. However, the people of Baza not choosing to subscribe to these
"terms, the negotiations were interrupted for some time, until at length the
"Moslems, fearing lest their miserable condition, which they had so well managed
"to conceal from the enemy, should become manifest, gave their full assent to
"the proposed terms; namely, that the capitulation should not include the people
"of Guadix, Almeria, Almuñeear, and the Alpuxarras. The whole of those ex-
"tensive districts then entered under the dominion of the Christians by means of
"stipulations mutually agreed on between both nations, and with circumstances
"some of which became public whilst others remained always a secret. Some of
"the great people received money, and had other advantages and preferments.

"On Friday, the 10th of Moharram of the year 895 (Dec. 4, A. D. 1489), the
"Christians entered the castle of Baza and took possession of it, without the people
"of the town knowing on what terms it had been surrendered. They were told
"that such of the Moslems as chose to remain in the town should enjoy peace
"and security, while those who preferred settling elsewhere would be allowed
"to quit it with their arms and property. After this the Christians expelled the
"Moslems from the city, and forced them to reside in the suburbs through fear of
"their revolting.

"From Baza the King of Castile advanced towards the district of Almeria, the Surrender of
"whole of which submitted to him. Some time previous the Sultán of Guadix
"had gone to Almeria for the purpose of meeting the Castilian king and putting
"the Christians in possession of all his towns, castles, and fortresses; and having
"done so, the infidel king gave him the investiture of all those dominions on
"condition that he would do him homage for them. This done, both sovereigns The Sultán
"went together to Guadix, where Az-zaghal put the King of Castile in possession
"of the citadel about the beginning of Safar of the same year (December 24,
"A. D. 1489)."
“All the dominions under the Sultán of Guadix having thus passed in the twinkling of an eye from the hands of the Moslems into those of the Christians, nothing was left to the former except Granada and its immediate dependencies; the King of Castile, therefore, having placed garrisons in the fortresses lately reduced, followed up his plans of conquest as steadily as ever. By his orders the governors of castles and towns adjacent to the Moslem territory began to court the friendship of our governors, by giving them money and presents in the name of their master, who, they said, was impressed with their fidelity and good qualities; but, in reality, his object was only to increase his preparations of men and stores, and to provide such things as were requisite for his military projects.

He then took Borju-l-malèhah and other castles, and having repaired their fortifications, and garrisoned them with troops, he converted them into so many outposts from which to besiege the capital. Meanwhile the King of Castile showed the greatest friendship for the Sultán of Guadix, and remained faithful to the treaty concluded with him; but at the same time he circulated false reports respecting the Sultán of Granada, and endeavoured to surround him with his artifices and wily stratagems. He accordingly dispatched that same year a messenger to Granada, who, in an interview with the Sultán, proposed to him the surrender of the castle of the Alhambra, in the same manner and on the same terms that his uncle had surrendered Almeria, Guadix, and other fortresses and towns; in return for which the Christian king his master offered to give him great riches, and the sovereignty of any city he should choose in Andalusia.

Now, some people pretend that the Sultán of Granada, dazzled by these inviting offers, feigned to accept the tendered proposition, and that the Christian king immediately marched his army to take possession of the Alhambra and of the city of Granada, agreeably to the secret contract entered into by the two sovereigns. At this crisis the Sultán of Granada assembled the officers of state and military commanders, the divines, the nobles and plebeians, and informed them of what the Christian king required, and how his uncle, by becoming the subject of the Christians, had been the cause of the breach of the contract formerly agreed to between him and the King of Castile. ‘We have only to choose,’ said the Sultán to them, ‘between submitting to him or fighting for our independence.’ It was unanimously agreed to adhere strictly to the conditions of the treaty; but, if necessary, to have recourse to arms and defend the country to the last. Accordingly, the Sultán went out of Granada at the head of his army.

Some time after this, the King of Castile encamped with his host in the
"meadow of Granada, and began to summon the inhabitants to surrender to him, threatening, in case of refusal, to destroy their crops. An answer in the negative being returned to him, he put his threat into execution, and burned and destroyed fields and plantations. This happened in the month of Rejeb of the year 895. After several skirmishes between the Moslems and the Christians, the latter became convinced that nothing of any importance could then be undertaken against Granada; and after demolishing some forts, and repairing the fortifications of others, for example, Borju-l-maléhah and Hamadán, which they garrisoned and provided with every necessary, they returned to their territory. During the enemy's absence the Sultán of Granada attacked one of the castles held by the Christians, and, having taken it by storm, put the garrison to the sword; after which, leaving a sufficient force in it, he returned victorious to Granada.

"In the same month of Rejeb, Abú 'Abdillah made an incursion into the Alpuxarras, and entered some villages, the population of which, composed of Christians and treacherous Moslems, their friends, took to flight at his approach: proceeding from thence to Andarax, he made himself master of that fortress. This success was speedily followed by the entire submission of the districts of the Alpuxarras, which, being recalled to Islám, again acknowledged the authority of Abú 'Abdillah, and shook off the Christian yoke.

"A war now ensued between Abú 'Abdillah, the Sultán of Granada, and his uncle Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Sa'd Az-zaghal, who marched to the Alpuxarras at the head of considerable forces. In Sha'bán, A. H. 895 (Aug. A. D. 1490), Abú 'Abdillah sallied forth against him, but as his uncle retreated to Almeria, and shut himself up in the castle, the whole of the Alpuxarras, as far as Berja, fell into the hands of the Moslems. However, in the ensuing month of Ramadhan, Abú 'Abdillah, assisted by the Christians, besieged and retook the fort of Andarax. On the other hand, the Sultán of Granada laid siege to Hamadán, a large town, defended by a castle of great strength, filled with men, stores, and ammunition. After battering its walls with their artillery, and making various assaults, in which many a brave soldier fell, the Moslems demolished three towers, one after the other. The besieged then betook themselves to a fourth, which was the principal one; but this last having also been demolished by the artillery of the Moslems, the whole of the garrison, amounting to one hundred and eighty men, were made prisoners, and the conquerors found the town filled with stores, guns, and ammunition, which they took. Towards the end of Ramadhan, the Sultán of Granada marched against Almuñécar; on his way to that city he laid siege to the town of Salobreña, which he took by storm. The castle, however, offered some resistance, especially as the garrison
"was re-inforced by troops which came by sea from Malaga. As the place was
"exceedingly strong, the besieged were enabled to repel the attacks of the Moslems,
"who were pressing the siege. Whilst things were in this state, intelligence
"reached the camp of the Moslems that the King of Castile was again advancing
"towards the meadow of Granada; and accordingly, on the third of Shawwáél, the
"Sultán raised the siege and retired to his capital, where he had no sooner arrived
"than he heard of the appearance of the enemy in the Vega, accompanied by
"such among the traitor Moslems as had forsaken their religion, or become the
"subjects of the Christians.
"After staying eight days in the Vega, the King of the Christians returned
"to his states, having previously dismantled and caused to be evacuated the
"fortress of Borju-l-maléhah and another castle. On his way back to his dominions
"the infidel passed through the city of Guadix, from which he expelled all the
"Moslems, so that no true believer remained either in the city or in its suburbs.
"After this he demolished the castle of Andarax, fearing, no doubt, that the sur-
"rounding country would revolt against his authority.
"When the Sultán Az-zaghal, viz., Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Sa'd, the
"uncle of the Sultán of Granada, saw this, he hastened to cross over to the
"opposite shore of Africa, and arrived at Oran, and from thence at Telemésán,
"where he settled, and where his descendants are residing to this day, being well
"known there under the appellation of Bena-s-sultáni-l-andalus (the sons of the
"Sultán of Andalus).
"After this the King of Castile repaired to the extreme frontiers of his kingdom,
"a war having broken out between him and the Franks. In the mean while, the
"Sultán of Granada marched against Burshénah (Purchena), which he besieged and
"took, making the garrison prisoners of war. About the same time the inhabitants
"of Finiana made an attempt to shake off the Christian yoke; but the Christian
"governor of Guadix having marched against them, the undertaking failed and the
"Moslems were defeated.
"In the month of Dhí-l-ka'dah of the same year, the Sultán of Granada with-
"drew the forces which he had in the Send, and the inhabitants of that district,
"[seeing that they had no defence against the enemy], deserted their homes.
"On the 12th of Jumáda the second, of the year 896 (March 22, A. D. 1491), the
"King of Castile marched his army into the plain of Granada, and began destroying
"the crops, demolishing the towns and villages, and subduing the whole country.
"He also laid the foundations of a town with walls and a ditch, the building
"of which he superintended in person. It had been reported at Granada that
"the Christians intended to raise the siege of that capital and return to their
"country; but if they had any such intention they changed their determination, "for, instead of raising their tents, they remained encamped in the city which "they had built, and pressed the siege with greater vigour than ever. The contest "lasted for seven consecutive months, and the Moslems were reduced to great "extremities; but still, as the Christians were encamped at some distance from "Granada, and the communication between that city and the Alpuxarras was not "yet intercepted, the inhabitants received abundant supplies from the district of "Jebal-Sholayr (Sierra Nevada). But when the winter came on, and frost and snow "covered the ground, the produce of the earth grew less, its conveyance to Granada "became more difficult, and provisions became gradually so scarce, that famine "began to be felt in that capital. The enemy, too, had purposely taken possession "of almost every patch of ground out of the city, so that it became impossible to "gather any crops from the surrounding fields, and the condition of the besieged "became every day more distressing and hopeless. This was about the beginning "of the year 897 (Nov. A.D. 1491). It was evident that the enemy's design "was to reduce the city by famine, and not by force of arms. Things being "brought to this plight, great numbers of the inhabitants quitted Granada and "fled to the Alpuxarras. Provisions grew every day more scarce, and in the month "of Safar of the same year (Dec. A.D. 1491) the privations of the people became "almost intolerable. The inhabitants then began to deliberate among themselves "as to the expediency of surrendering to the enemy. They therefore sought the "advice of their Ulémas and other learned men, who recommended them to look "to their own safety, and consult over the matter with the Sultán. "Agreeably to this opinion, the Sultán convened his officers of state and coun- "sellors, when this important affair was discussed in his presence. The people "then said, 'The Christians are daily receiving re-inforcements, while we have "none to expect; we all thought and expected that, at the approach of winter, "the Christians would have raised the siege and retired to their country, whereas "our hopes have completely failed; they have built a town in front of our city, "and pressed the siege closer than ever. We ought, therefore, to provide for "our safety and that of our children.' It was then unanimously agreed to adopt "this last determination, and it soon became public that the officers of the army, "fearing for their lives and those of the inhabitants, had for some time been "treating with the Christians about the surrender of the city. Negotiations then "commenced, and a capitulation was drawn up on the same terms as that of "Guadix, although with some additional articles; as, for instance, that the Pope "should be a guarantee for the faithful execution of the treaty, and the strict "observance of every one of the articles therein contained, before the Christians
should be put in possession of the Alhambra and the other forts; and that
the king should bind himself by oath, after the Christian fashion, to observe
the treaty. The deputies sent by the people of Granada insisted upon the
insertion of this clause; but it was reported that when they came to discuss
the article together, the Christians bribed the Moslem envoys, and gave them
considerable sums of money, to have it omitted in the capitulation. The treaty
was then read over to the inhabitants, who approved of it and gave it their
sanction, some of the principal citizens signing it with their own hands, and
pledging their allegiance to the Castilian king, who accepted it. This done,
the Sultán of Granada left the Alhambra on the second day of Rabi’ the
first, of the year 897 (Jan. 3, A.D. 1492), and the Christian sovereign immediately
took possession of it, as well as of the other fortresses in Granada, not without
having first received five hundred of the principal inhabitants of Granada as
hostages, to guard against any treachery on the part of the inhabitants.

The capitulation contained sixty-seven articles, among which were the fol-
lowing, viz.: 'That both great and small should be perfectly secure in their
persons, families, and properties. That they should be allowed to continue in
their dwellings and residences, whether in the city, the suburbs, or any other
part of the country. That their laws should be preserved as they were before, and
that no one should judge them except by those same laws. That their mosques,
and the religious endowments appertaining to them, should remain as they were
in the times of Islám. That no Christian should enter the house of a Moslem,
or insult him in any way. That no Christian or Jew holding public offices by
the appointment of the late Sultán should be allowed to exercise his functions
or rule over them. That all [Moslem] captives made during the siege of Granada,
from whatever part of the country they might have come, but especially the
nobles and chiefs mentioned in the agreement, should be liberated. That such
Moslem captives as might have escaped from their Christian masters, and taken
refuge in Granada, should not be surrendered; but that the Sultán should be
bound to pay the price of such captives to their owners. That all those who
might choose to cross over to Africa should be allowed to take their departure
within a certain time, and be conveyed thither in the king's ships, and without
any pecuniary tax being imposed upon them, beyond the mere charge for passage;
and that after the expiration of that time no Moslem should be hindered from
departing, provided he paid, in addition to the price of his passage, the tithe
of whatever property he might carry along with him. That no one should be
prosecuted and punished for the crime of another man. That the Christians who
had embraced the Mohammedan religion should not be compelled to relinquish
it, and adopt their former creed. That any Moslem wishing to become Christian should be allowed some days to consider the step he is about to take; after which he is to be questioned both by a Mohammedan and a Christian judge concerning his intended change, and if, after this examination, he still refuse to return to Islám, he should be permitted to follow his own inclination. That no Moslem should be prosecuted for the death of a Christian slain during the siege; and that no restitution of property taken during the war should be enforced. That no Moslem should be subject to have Christian soldiers billeted upon him, or be transported to provinces of this kingdom against his will. That no increase should be made to the usual imposts, but that, on the contrary, all the oppressive taxes lately imposed should be immediately suppressed. That no Christian should be allowed to peep over the wall, or into the house of a Moslem, or enter a mosque. That any Moslem choosing to travel or reside among the Christians should be perfectly secure in his person and property. That no badge or distinctive mark be put on them, as was done with the Jews and Mudejares. That no muezzin should be interrupted in the act of calling the people to prayer, and no Moslem molested either in the performance of his daily devotions or in the observance of his fast, or in any other religious ceremony; but that if a Christian should be found laughing at them he should be punished for it. That the Moslems should be exempted from all taxation for a certain number of years. That the Lord of Rome (Pope) should be requested to give his assent to the above conditions, and sign the treaty himself.' These, and many others that we omit, were the articles of the treaty.

This matter being settled, and the Christians having taken possession of the Alhambra, and of the city, the king appointed a governor to that fortress, and civil officers and magistrates to govern the inhabitants. On learning the conditions granted to the people of Granada, the inhabitants of the Alpuxarras agreed to the treaty, and made their submission upon the same terms. The King of Castile then ordered the necessary repairs to be made in the Alhambra, as well as in the other fortresses and towers, and applied himself to strengthen its fortifications. Whilst these works were going on, he came daily to the Alhambra, but returned every night to his camp, fearing, no doubt, some treachery on the part of the inhabitants, and he continued to do so until his fears were entirely dissipated. He also entered the city and visited its different quarters, so as to gain exact information of the feeling of the inhabitants towards him, and learn other particulars which he wished to ascertain.

After this the infidel king ordered the Sultán of the Moslems to repair to the Alpuxarras, which he said should be his, and to fix his residence at Andarax.
"In compliance with this order, the [deposed] Sultán repaired to that town, and the Christian troops which occupied the Alpuxarras were immediately withdrawn. However, some time after, the king made use of the following stratagem to induce the Sultán to leave Andalus and cross over to Africa; he pretended that the latter had expressed to him the wish of leaving the country, and wrote to the governor of Almeria in the following terms: 'On the receipt of this our letter, let no one hinder Muley Abú 'Abdillah from going to whichever port of Africa he likes best. Let all those who read the present letter facilitate every thing for his passage, and observe towards him the conditions stipulated in the treaty.' Agreeably to the intimation contained in this letter, Abú 'Abdillah set forth immediately for Almeria, and having embarked at that port, he sailed for the coast of Africa and landed at Melilla. From thence he went to Fez, where he settled. His first intention, however, had been to fix his residence at Morocco, but hearing, on his landing, that the provinces of that empire were sadly afflicted by famine, pestilence, and other calamities, he desisted from his project.

The Sultán Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed, under whose reign the Mohammedan empire in Andalus was overthrown, was the son of the Sultán Abú-l-hasan, son of the Sultán Sa'd, son of the Amir 'Alí, son of the Sultán Yúsuf, son of the Sultán Al-ghani-billah [Mohammed V.], he who was the central pearl in the necklace [of the Nasserite dynasty], the founder of an empire resting upon the most solid foundations, the true Sultán of that illustrious race, he who lost his throne and took refuge in the dominions of the Bení Merín of Fez, and was restored by them to his kingdom, after his pious and generous acts had reached to the highest pitch, and spread the sweetest odour; in short, the Sultán who had for Wizír Lisánu-d-dín Ibnu-l-khattíb, son of the Sultán Abú-l-hejáj Yúsuf, son of the Sultán Isma'íl,—who defeated and killed the Christian king Don Pedro in the plain of Granada,—son of Faraj, son of Isma'íl, son of Yúsuf, son of Nasr, son of Kays Al-ansári Al-khazrejí. The mercy of God be upon them all! After his landing at Melilla, the Sultán directed his course towards the city of Fez, where, complaining of his unlucky fate, and regretting the kingdom he had lost, he settled with his family and his adherents, and built some palaces in imitation of those of Granada, which we ourselves saw and visited during our residence in that city. He died in Fez in the year 940 (A. D. 1538), (may God forgive him!) and was buried in front of the chapel outside of Babu-sh-shari'at (the gate of the law). He left two male children, one named Yúsuf and the other Ahmed, whose posterity may still be traced in Fez; for in our time, when we visited that city in 1037, we were acquainted with some of his posterity, who were
reduced to the necessity of subsisting upon the charitable allowances made to the faqirs and poor people out of the funds of the mosques; and who in fact were nothing more than mere beggars.

Not many years elapsed before the Christians violated the treaty entered into with the Moslems, and began to infringe one by one the settled stipulations. Things even went so far that in the year 904 (beginning Aug. 18, A.D. 1498), they set about forcing the Moslems to embrace the Christian religion under various pretences, the most specious of which was that their priests had written [books] on the conveniency of compelling such Christians as had become Moslems to embrace their former religion. Notwithstanding the clamour excited among the Moslem community by so revolting an injustice, the people being helpless, the measure was carried into execution. Not satisfied with this breach of the treaty, the Christian tyrants went still farther; they said to a Moslem, 'Thy ancestor was a Christian, although he made himself a Moslem; thou must also become a Christian.'

When these proceedings became public, the people of the Albayzin rose up in arms and slew their magistrates; but this was also made an excuse for more rigorous measures, for, soon after, the poor Moslems were told, 'the king has promulgated a law by which any one who revolts against his magistrates is condemned to death, unless he immediately becomes a Christian; so you must either die or be converted to Christianity.'

In short, every Moslem, whether residing in Granada or in the neighbourhood, was enjoined to embrace the religion of the idolaters within a certain time. A few, however, refused to comply with this order, but it was of no avail to them; seeing which, they had recourse to arms, and rose in several towns and villages, such as Belefique, Andarax, and others. Thither the enemy marched his forces, attacking and pursuing the inhabitants, until they almost exterminated them, killing a great number, and making the rest captives, except such as fortified themselves in Jebal-Balanca, and to whom God Almighty was pleased to grant victory over their enemies; for in a battle which took place there they killed a great number of the Christians, and amongst them the Lord of Cordova. After this the Moslems obtained terms of capitulation, and were allowed to cross over to Fez with their families and moveable property, although they were not permitted to take with them more money than that required for their journey.

Such of the Moslems as still remained in Andalus, although Christians in appearance, were not so in their hearts; for they worshipped Allah in secret, and performed their prayers and ablutions at the proper hours. The Christians watched over them with the greatest vigilance, and many were discovered and
burnt. In the mean time they were forbidden the use of arms, and even small knives, or any other sharp instrument made of iron. At last, these and other cruelties having driven the Moslems to despair, they again rose in arms in the mountainous districts, and on different occasions. But the Almighty not being pleased to grant victory to their cause, they were everywhere overpowered and slain, until they were ultimately expelled from the territory of Andalus,—an event which took place in our times, in the year 1017 of the Hijra (A.D. 1610). Many thousands of the unfortunate emigrants went to Fez, thousands to Telem-sán (Tremecen) from Wahrán (Oran); the greater part took the road to Túnis. Few, however, reached the place of their destination; for they were assailed on the road by the Arabs and such as fear not God, and they were plundered and ill-treated, especially on the road to Fez and Telem-sán. Those who directed their course to Túnis were more fortunate; they, for the most part, reached that place in safety, and peopled the desert towns and districts of the country, as also Tetwán, Salé, and the plain of Metidja, near Algiers. Some entered the service of the Sultán of Maghrebu-l-akssá, who formed them into a body, and allotted them for a residence the port of Salé, where they have since made themselves famous by their maritime expeditions against the enemy of God; they have also fortified the castle, and built themselves houses, palaces, and baths, and still continue to reside in that place. A few went to Constantinople, to Egypt, Syria, and to other countries where Islám is predominant, and settled there, inhabiting now, as we have been told, the same places at which they first fixed their residence. God, indeed, is the master of all lands and dominions, and gives them to whomsoever he pleases.
TO THE READER.

Since the publication of the first volume of this translation I have had access to new sources of information, which, as they will be frequently cited in the following Notes, I think it necessary to point out. During a late residence in Oxford I made copious extracts from a volume (Bodl. Lib., No. cxxxvii.) containing the history of 'Abdullah, seventh Sultán of Cordova of the dynasty of Umeyyah, by the celebrated Abú Merwán Hayyán Ibn Khalaf Ibn Huseyn Al-umawi, better known by the surname of Ibnu Hayyán, of whom I gave a short notice in the Notes to the first volume, p. 310, note 3. The volume, which appears to have been the third in the original set, forms part of the history of Mohammedan Spain, entitled Al-muktabis fi táríkh rejíli-l-andalus (the imparter of information: on the history of eminent Andalusians), and it contains the history of Spain from the death of Al-mundhir, in A. H. 275 (A. D. 889), to the accession of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., in A. H. 299 (A. D. 912), a period of about twenty-four years. By means of extracts from this precious volume I have been enabled to supply the deficiency to be observed in Al-makkari, whose account of the reign of 'Abdullah is contained in a few lines. It is a volume in quarto, containing fifty-eight folios, and written in the African character upon coarse brown paper, probably about the middle of the fifteenth century.

I have also used a volume of the Historical Cyclopedia, entitled Al-‘ikd (the necklaces), by Abú 'Amru Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, a writer of the tenth century, which, among other learned treatises upon the history of the Arabs both in the East and West, contains a valuable history of Mohammedan Spain, from the establishment of the race of Umeyyah till the year 322 (A. D. 934); besides a poem of some length upon the yearly campaigns of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., the Sultán of that dynasty under whose reign and at whose court the author lived. It is a large volume in folio, written in the Eastern hand, in A. H. 1100 (A. D. 1689-90), and forms part of the rich collection of oriental MSS. in the possession of Nathaniel Bland, Esq., to whom I am indebted for the loan of it. I am also indebted to my esteemed friend Dr. R. Dozy, of Leyden, for an accurate transcript of that
portion of An-nuwayri's work which treats of the Beni Umeyyah of Spain, as well as of that chapter of Ibn Khaldún's history of Africa which gives the chronology of the Amīrs or governors of Mohammedan Spain under the Khalifs.

The works of Ibn Habīb, Ibn Bessám, and Mohammed Al-khoshani,—all in the Bodleian,—I have likewise used to supply such portions of Al-makkari's narrative as were either obscure or defective; and I have also given occasional extracts from the volume of Ibn Sāhibi-s-salát, upon the conquests and settlements of the Almohades in Spain.

December, 1842.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

BOOK V.

CHAP. I.

1 Mohammedan writers generally give the appellation of as'hdb, i.e. 'friends or companions,' to all those Arabs who were personally acquainted with their Prophet, or who saw him during their lifetime, and handed down to tradition any of his sayings. The name of tābi' (follower) is given to those Arabs who did not see the Prophet, having been born after his death, but who had an opportunity of conversing with the as'hdb and preserving traditions delivered by them, whether respecting the sayings and doings of Mohammed, or the dogmas of the religion preached by him. Both the as'hdb and the tābi's are divided into tabakāt (orders or classes), according to the age in which they lived.

It is evident, however, that none of the first class, and very few, if any, of the second, could have entered Spain; since the death of the Prophet happened in A.H. 8 (A.D. 629), and Māṣa, in whose suite most of them are said to have come, did not land in Spain till A.H. 93 (A.D. 712), an interval of eighty-five lunar or Mohammedan years; but the historians of Spain were not behind those of other Mohammedan countries in extolling the advantages of their native soil. Abū-l-fedā, De Vita et Rebus Gestis Mahometis, p. 156.

2 This author is the 'Abdu-l-malek or 'Abdu-l-mālik Ibn Habib so often mentioned in the course of this translation (vol. i. pp. 37, 40, 113, et passim). The work here cited is in the Bodleian Library, together with other short treatises of the same sort, and an account of the invasion and conquest of Spain, to which I shall occasionally refer in these Notes. See Nicoll's Cat., No. 127.

3 Probably the individual mentioned in vol. i. p. 283 of this translation, although his patronymic differs essentially; he being there called Āl-bajeli, and here Āl-jiyali, or Āl-hoblī, as in the abridgment. However, as both Ibn Habib (loc. laudato, fo. 143) and Al-homaydi (Jadh'watu-l-muktabis, fo. 35) write and point the word thus, Āl-jobeli, (perhaps because he was born at a place called Jobeyl,) I have followed their reading.

4 The same individual mentioned in vol. i. pp. 283, 536, and App. p. xl. I find his name written Ibn Abī Joblah or Jabalah in one of the copies.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

6 Instead of Bení 'Abdi-d-dár, one copy reads Bení 'Abdi-l-kádir. I have already alluded (vol. i. p. 519) to the various meanings of the word mauí, which in its primitive sense implies 'one who clings to another for protection,' 'an adherent.' Slaves liberated by their masters became generally mauúis. The old Spanish word "paniguado" (one who partakes of the bread and water of another man) would seem the most appropriate translation for it; and it is not unlikely that the word mauí, meaning in that language 'a shrewd man,' 'one who lives by his wits,' may be derived from it.

6 B. reads Thábit instead of Thákib. The Tekmilah (complement) is an historical work by the celebrated Ibnu-l-abbár (Abú Bekr Al-kodha'i).

7 Al-muneydhir, whom Conde (vol. i. p. 35) calls ' Almonacir,' is the diminutive of Al-mundhir, and means 'the little counsellor.'

8 That is, Yúsuf Ibn 'Omar, &c., (see vol. i. pp. 37, 182,) whose Isti'áb fi ma'refati-l-as'hib, or 'comprehensive history of the companions,' is mentioned by Háji Khalfah (Fluegel's transl. vol. i. p. 276).

9 Elsewhere written Al-wádhah and Al-wadháh; the meaning, however, is the same. His entire name was Mohammed Ibn Wadháháh Ibn Yazigh Thákib. 28 June A.H. 1008-9. Al-hunaydí (loco laudato, fo. 40, verso) says that he was a mauú of 'Abdu-r-rahén I., and that he made a journey to the East in search of learning. He died at Cordova in A.H. 286.

10 Háji Khalfah (vol. ii. p. 148) mentions this author among the historians of Egypt. His entire name was 'Abi Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahén Ibn Ahmed Ibn Yúnás Al-munajjem, or the astronomer. He died in A.H. 399 (A.D. 1008-9.)

11 'the pass of the table,' or 'the pass of Almeyda;' but whether so called from the shape of the mountain, or from the table of Sulaymán, is not stated. This pass is the defile leading from the mountains in the vicinity of Cordova to the plain wherein that city stands. Ibn Hayyán (Al-muktabis, fo. 70), treating of an incursion made by the rebel Ibn Hafssún within sight of Cordova, during the reign of 'Abdillah, says, أن اسمي من مدينة أستشأ عليه ليلاً حتّى وقف بنفه البيلة البطل علي باب قطة 'he stole out of Ezija, where he had his quarters, at night, and marched until he stood on the mountain-pass of Almeyda, which commands the gate of Cordova.'

12 During the first years after the death of Mohammed, whenever a mosque was to be erected, the laying of the foundations تهسيس was intrusted to one of his companions.

13 All the copies I have consulted read distinctly و قدرة فيها معرف عند باب الحيند بغرب البيلة— but Conde, (vol. i. p. 64,) on what authority it is not stated, says that he was buried near the southern gate of Saragossa. His death is said to have happened A.H. 98, after he had held for some years the government of Saragossa. The word حنش which I have read 'Hansh,' may also be pronounced 'Hunash.'
The year of Yarinuk, or the 13th year of the Hijra, in which the Arabs, under Abū 'Obeydah Ibnu-l-jerrāh, defeated the generals of Heraclius. In like manner the Arabs of Spain called the 479th year of the Hijra 'A'mu-l-zaldkah (the year of Zalaca), and the 591st 'A'mu-l-alarkosh (the year of Alarcos), in commemoration of the two victories gained at those places over the Christians. But there must be some mistake here; for how could 'Ali Ibn Rabāh be present at a battle fought in A.H. 13, and be still living in Spain in A.H. 98? In vol. i. p. 536 of this translation, I have called this tabī' 'Ali Ibn Rabi', by mistake.

15 ذات السؤل is the name of a station on the northern coast of Africa, between Tripoli and Alexandria. This battle is said to have been fought in A.H. 31, and the Moslem fleet to have been commanded, not by 'Abdullah Ibn Sa'd or Sa'id, but by 'Abdullah Ibn Rabī’ah. See Price, Chron. Retros. of Moham. Hist. vol. i. p. 164.

16 The same has been said of Mūsā Ibn Nosseyr elsewhere. See vol. i. p. 298.

17 Ibnu-l-khattib, in his history of Granada, frequently quotes this historian, whom he makes a native of Cairwān.

18 B. says "at five-and-twenty days' march," which is, no doubt, a mistake of the抄写者. The distance, however, is considerably greater than twenty-five miles.

19 The abridgment reads "in his lesser work." Al-bokhārī (Abū 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Isrna'il) made three editions of his history of the Mohammedan traditionists; the "greater," the "middling," and the "lesser." The first he is reported to have written at Medina on the tomb of the Prophet. See Hājī Khalfah, Lex. Bibl. EnCy. sub voc. Tīrīkh.

20 تنبيه و التعنيب لس دخل الأندلس من التابعين is the title of this work, which was unknown to Hājī Khalfah.

21 'Iyād ibn 'Okbah Al-fehri (see App. vol. i. p. 1xii.) He was the son of 'Okbah Ibn Nāfī', the African conqueror.

22 Called elsewhere Al-leyth Ibn Sa’d. He must have been present at the taking of Toledo and other large cities in Spain; for Ibn Habīb and other ancient historians frequently cite him, as well as his brother Yahya Ibn Sa’d, as their authority for the principal events of the conquest. See App. vol. i. p. 1xxiv.

23 The word translated by 'measures' is أكيال, the plural of كيل kil, which means 'a measure for grain.' From kil comes maktīlah, i.e. the toll [in grain] which a miller receives for his grist, and hence the Spanish words 'maquila' (the toll), and 'maquilero' (the man appointed to receive it).

24 This officer is called Zayde Ben Kesadi el Sekseki by Conde (vol. i. p. 36), who attributes to him the taking of Granada. See also vol. i. p. 529, note 77, of this translation.
Elsewhere called Mansûr Ibn Abi Khozaymah.

Yaumu-l-jamal (the day of the camel), or the day of the celebrated battle fought in A.H. 36 (A.D. 656) between 'Alî Ibn Abî Tâlib and the partisans of 'Ayeshah, the widow of the Prophet, who appeared borne in a litter placed upon the back of a camel.

CHAPTER II.

For an account of this work, see vol. i. p. 318, note 28.

Ibn-l-kúṭṭiyyah says that the eldest was named Almond or Elmond, (Olmond?); the second Romulo, and the third Artebás or Ardebasto.

The word Thagher may mean here either the province of Toledo or that of Aragon; it is, however, impossible to determine which of the two is intended, for want of an adjective. If al-adâni (nearest), it would be Toledo; if al-'alî (upper), Aragon.

The name of this general may be written, either 'Mugheith,' as I have it, or 'Mughith,' which would seem to be more correct. I have, however, chosen the former reading, because Rodericus Toktanus, who was well versed in the language of the Arabs, calls him Mogeit.

It would appear that Rodericus Toletanus had consulted the author whose narrative is here introduced by Al-makkari. See Rerum in Hisp. Gest. Chron. lib. iii. cap. xxiii. In the Cron. Gen. (edit. of Zamora, 1541, fo. cciv.) we find, "e dizen que ninguno de los otros Señores de España fue preso "a vida salvo este solo, ca los otros defendieronse ellos por sí o se pleytoaron."

See vol. i. pp. 292-4. The Arabian writers keep silence as to Târik's ultimate fate: I have, in vain, turned over many volumes in the hope of finding some further account of him; but, after his arrival at Damascus, no mention is made of the conqueror of Spain.

Ibn Hayyán, Adh-dhobî, and other writers, allude frequently to a palace which preserved still, in the twelfth century, the name of its owner, Mugheith, the conqueror of Cordova.
The author of the *Kitābu-l-iktifā fī akhbārī-l-khalafā* (see vol. i. App. D.) says positively that igheyth died at Cordova in the palace known by his name (Balātt Mugheyth), and that he left a son, ned 'Abdu-l-wāhēd. Adh-dhobi says that he was in Aragon in A. H. 96. See *Cartas para ilustrar la t. de España*, p. lxxxv.

'*Ammār Ibn Yāsir, one of the most favourite companions of the Prophet, who used to say of him at "truth and justice would ever be found on his side." He was one of the insurgents who revolted against the Khalif 'Othmān; and he followed the banners of 'Ali against 'Ayeshah and Mu'āwiyah, until was slain at the battle of Sefayn, in A. H. 38.'*

Instead of ' Ibn Abi 'Obeydah,' the abridgment reads ' Ibn 'Abdah.' See also vol. i. p. 283. The name of this officer, one of those who signed the treaty concluded with Theodomir the Goth, in A. H. 94, e Casiri, Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 106,) is differently written by the authors whom I have insulted. Some, like Ibn Khaldūn, write it ' Habib Ibn 'Abdah;' others, ' Habib Ibn 'Obeydah;' hers, again, ' Habib Ibn Abi 'Obeydah Ibn 'Okbah;' whilst there are not wanting writers, as Al-homaydī, o call him ' Habib Ibn [Abi 'Obeydah] 'Okbah,'—thus making him the son, instead of the grandson, the celebrated conqueror of Mauritania. I have, however, followed the reading in A., which is also given by An-nuwayri in his history of Africa. See the translation of M. de Slane, in the Journal arliste, ser. iii. tom. xi. p. 564.

This statement is confirmed by Al-homaydī (loc. laudato, fo. 84, verso), who calls him Ibn Mulūmis, heed of Ibn Mulābis.

'Othmān Ibn Abi 'Abdah is another of the chiefs who signed the treaty of Orihucla. 'Abdah frequently written 'Obeydah in copies of this work. If so, 'Othmān was the brother of Habib Abi 'Obeydah.

Abú Zar'ah might also be pronounced Abú Zar'ah, and might be identified with the ' Abuzara ' of dorus Pacensis, Chron. No. 34.

---

CHAPTER III.

Ibn Ghālib (Abū Ghālib Temám) is the same author as is mentioned in vol. i. pp. 35, 77, and 332, note 23. The title of his work is sometimes written Forhatu-l-anfus instead of Forjatu-l-anfus; the meaning is the same.

Huseyn, the son of 'Ali, was put to death in A. H. 61, under the Khalifate of Yezíd Ibn Mu'āwiyah, second Sultán of the race of Umeyyah.
3 I find this word written جزه in every copy of Al-makkari, except that belonging to the library of Gothia, which does not give the vowels. Jewhari writes it Zahrah, and says that Zahrah was the mother of Kelab, son of Morrah, &c.

4 According to Al-kalkashandi (Brit. Mus., No. 7353, fo. 7, verso), the sons of 'Adi, son of Kossay, son of Kelab, together with other branches of the family of Koraysh, were called Adh-dhawdhir (the external), because they dwelt out of the precincts of the temple.

5 By the Beni Al-kasim the author means the family of Abü 'Abdillah Kasim Ibn Kasim, Lord of Alpont or Alpuente, mentioned in vol. i. p. 171, and p. 449, note 11. The life of a poet, named Abü Mohammed Ibnu-I-kasim, who was, no doubt, descended from the same stock, is given in the Mattinah by Ibn Khakán (Brit. Mus., No. 9580, fo. 124).

6 No doubt the same author mentioned in vol. i. pp. 37, 171, and p. 334, note 31; since, according to Al-homaydî (loco laudato, fo. 118), he wrote a work on the genealogy of the Arabian tribes which settled in Spain.

7 Our author here transcribes the words of Ibn Ghâlib, who, no doubt, introduced a notice of this traveller under the head of his native place. The clan or family here named the Beni Waksh or Wakash gave their name to a small town, still called Huccas, in the neighbourhood of Toledo.

Al-makkari gives the life of Ibn Jobeyr in Part I. Book V., among those of the illustrious Moslems who left Spain to travel in the East. "Abû-I-huseyn Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Ibn Jobeyr Al-kenânî Al-andalusi Ashi-shâtibi Al-balensi, the author of the celebrated book of travels, was the descendant of Dhanarah Ibn Bekr Ibn 'Abdâl-m-menî of the tribe of Kenânah. He was born at Valencia on the night of Saturday, the 10th of Rabi' the first, of 540 (Sept. A.D. 1145). Other dates, however, are assigned for his birth. He studied at Shâtibah (Xatiba) under his father Ahmed, and under Abû 'Abdillah Al-assîli (from Arsîla), and Abû-I-hasan Ibn Abi-I-'aysh; the latter being his instructor in the science of reading the Korân. Ibn Jobeyr started from Granada on Thursday, the 8th of Shawwâl of 567 (A.D. 1172), and arrived in Alexandria on Saturday, the 29th of Dhi-I-ka'lah of the same year, after a passage of thirty days from Andalus. He also visited Mekka, Medina, and Al-kods (Jerusalem), Syria, 'Irâk, Jezîrah (Mesopotamia), and other countries. The cause of his leaving Andalus is thus related by Ibnu-r-rakîk. Ibn Jobeyr was the secretary of Abû Sa'id, son of 'Abdu-I-mu'men, governor of Granada. Having once been summoned to his presence to write a letter in his name, Ibn Jobeyr found Abû Sa'id drinking wine, of which he presented him a cupful; but upon Ibn Jobeyr refusing to drink the liquor, on the plea that he had never tasted wine before, Abû Sa'id said, "By God! thou shalt now drink seven bumpers instead of one;" upon which Ibn Jobeyr, seeing no way to avoid the will of the governor, drank the seven glasses of wine, one after the other, as commanded, after which the governor filled him the cup seven times with gold dinârs. Ibn Jobeyr then determined to spend the money he had received upon a pilgrimage to Mekka by way of atonement for his sin; he therefore told the governor that he had made a vow to make a pilgrimage that very year, and Abû Sa'id granted him the permission he required. Ibn Jobeyr returned to Andalus in 581 (A.D. 1182); but, after spending some time in that country, he again sailed for the East, and died at Alexandria on Wednesday, the 27th of Sha'bân of the year 614 (A.D. 1217). Ibnu-r-rakîk says that he died in the ensuing year (A.H. 615)."
The remainder of Ibn Jobeyr’s biography, which occupies upwards of seventy pages in some of the copies, is filled with extracts from his travels relating to Damascus and other cities in the East. Al-makkari, too, takes the opportunity of introducing many long passages from a work of his own, entitled ‘sweet odour of the flowers on the history of Damascus.’ See the Account of the Author and his Writings, vol. i. p. xxxiii.

Ibnu-l-khattib, in his history of Granada, gives also the life of Ibn Jobeyr, with much more detail. One of his ancestors (‘Abdul-s-sellám Ibn Jobeyr) entered Spain in the suite of Balj the Syrian, in the month of Moharram, 123, and settled at Shidhúnah (Sidonia or Cidueña). He made three journeys to the East: the 1st in 578 (beginning May 6, A. D. 1182), when he started from Granada on Thursday, the 8th of Shawwál, and returned to that city eight days before the end of Moharram, 581 (Aug. A. D. 1185). When he heard of the taking of Jerusalem by Saladin, he determined upon journeying a second time to the East, and left Granada on Thursday, the ninth of Rabi’ the first, 585 (April, A. D. 1189), returning on Thursday, the 13th of Sha’bán, 587 (Sept. A. D. 1191). He passed some time at Granada, then at Malaga, and, lastly, at Ceuta. On the death of his wife, the daughter of the Wizir Abú Ja’far Al-wakší, Ibn Jobeyr, who was much attached to her, determined upon making a third pilgrimage. On his return from Mekka he settled at Alexandria, where he died. He left, besides his book of travels, a collection of his own poems, entitled نظام آل البيت في التشيكي من أخوان الزمان and several others.

8 Midrakah, from daraka, ‘to overtake one in the race,’ means a very swift runner. It was the surname of ‘Amru Ibn Elyás, who, it is said, used, when young, to run faster than his father’s camels.

9 Abú-t-táhir is the appellative of Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf At-temní Al-mázení, better known by the surname of Ibnu-l-eshterkuœn, who, according to Háji Khaláfah, and Casiri (vol. ii. pp. 73, 163), died in 538 (A. D. 1143), and wrote a book of Makámát (sittings) in imitation of those of Harírí, entitled Makámático-s-sarakústiyah (the sittings of Saragoossa). Háji Khaláfah (voc. Makómát) says that they were also known by the title of Al-kortaöiyah (the sittings of Cordova), because they were written in that city after the author had perused the celebrated ones by Harírí. As to the title of Al-lázúmíyyah, it appears that they were so called owing to their being written in the kind of poetry called luzúm. Some of the Makámát of Abú-t-táhir were published at Amsterdam, with a Latin translation, by J. Asso del Rio, a Spaniard; “Bibliothca Arabica Aragonensis,” Amstelodami, 1782, 4to.

10 Bení Júda or Júdi جودي as written by Ibn Hayyán. To this family belonged the celebrated Sa’id Ibn Suleýmán Ibn Júdi Ibn Asbatt, who, after the death of Sawwár Ibn Hamdún Al-kaysí, in A. H. 277, was elected chief of the Arabian tribes inhabiting Elvira and Granada, then at war with the Muwallads, or people of mixed blood. Having been confirmed in his office by ’Abdullah, the Sultán of Cordova, Sa’id took the field against ’Omar Ibn Hafsún (chief of the party of the Muwallads), whom he defeated in several sanguinary encounters, until he himself fell a victim to treason, and was assassinated in A. H. 284 (A. D. 897). Ibnu Hayyán, from whom the above details are borrowed, says that Asbatt, the great-grandfather of Sa’id, had been Sáhibu-sh-shórtah, or captain of the guard of Al-hákem I. of Cordova, and that Sa’id possessed the ten qualities which ought to grace a chief; namely, horsemanship, beauty, generosity, facility in writing verses, eloquence, strength, and dexterity in the handling of the spear and the sword, as well as in shooting arrows. Ibnu Hayyán, Muktabis, fo. 22.
11 Called بني ياض Baghidhá by Ibn Koteybah.

12 That is, the tribes which remained after the destruction of Thamúd, alluded to in the Korán. See chapter 27 of Sale’s translation.

13 I find this name written Jozaymah in every copy I have consulted; but there can be no doubt that Al-makkari meant Khozaymah, the son of Midrakah. Jozaymah was likewise the name of a tribe forming part of that of Rabí’ah. See Ibn Koteybah, apud Eichhorn, Table viii.

14—but I find it written إيبان Iyád in As-samání, Al-kalkashandi, and other genealogists.

15 To this family belonged the three physicians known in the middle ages, and frequently confounded together under the generic name of Avenzoar or Abinzohar. See vol. i. App. A.

16 This distinction between the Bení Modhar بنى مضر or Arabs from Yemen, who were descended from the stock of ’Adán, and the sons of Kahttán, or Belédí Arabs, as they are otherwise called, has been completely overlooked by Conde and most of the authors who have written after him. It is, however, of the greatest importance for the historical observer, as it furnishes him with a clue to those inveterate feuds, the source of so many civil wars which distracted the Mohammedan empire in Spain, and ultimately caused its ruin. Conde invariably read إقليام مصر (the tribes of Misr or Egypt), instead of إقليام مضر (the tribes issued from Modhar), which, I need not remark, has led his translators into a variety of mistakes. M. Romey, the author of an excellent history of Spain in French, now in course of publication, is, as far as I am aware, the only one who seems to have understood all the importance of this distinction. He was, however, mistaken in supposing that the ’Abdáiris, or Arabs of the tribe of ’Abdu-d-dár, were descended from the stock of Kahttán, and were therefore comprised among the Arabs of Yemen. ’Abdu-d-dár was the son of Zeyd, son of Keláb, the descendant of Modhar, son of Nezar, son of Ma’d, son of ’Abdán. See Ibn Koteybah, apud Eichhorn, p. 63.

17 Even if the subsequent pages did not afford abundant proofs that the conquerors of Spain lived in most instances in clans or tribes, the study of Spanish topography would convince us of the truth. The names of Alfaharin (Fchr), Beniaux (Aus), Bení Calaf (Khalaf), Jorairata (Horayrah), Julina (Khaulán), Mazan (Mayín), Zalamea (Salámah), and several more towns that I could point out, are all derived from the tribes or families which settled in them.


19 Probably the descendants of Muhlib Ibn Abí Sofrah, whose son Yezíd was the favourite of the Khalif Suleymán, and interceded with him in behalf of Músa. See vol. i. App. p. lxxxvi.

20 The tribes of Aus and Khazrej, two brothers, who were the sons of Harithah Ibn Tha’lebah, &c. See Ibn Koteybah, apud Eichhorn, p. 146, and Table xiii. They obtained the surname of Ansár (helpers), because a few individuals of each tribe assisted the Prophet in his flight from Mekka to Medina. They were very numerous in Spain, especially about Saragossa, where they settled on their arrival.
21 I read plainly ʿAkk the son of ʿAdnán in all the copies; but it is evidently a mistake, since the author is now speaking of those tribes derived from Kahttán, and not of those descended from ʿAdnán. Perhaps ʿAdathán, who was the son of Hazzán, son of Azd, is to be substituted.

22 Instead of Aushalah, mentioned as one of the ancestors of the Bení Hamdán, one of the copies reads Ausalah. There were in the territory of Granada several places named after this tribe, but the one here alluded to was in the Taa or district of Poqueyra. See Marmol, Rebelion de los Moriscos, fo. 64.

As to the Bení Dhaha ُدَبَّهَاء which word Ibn-l-khattib writes ُدَبَّه اَه ء Odh'ha, they were an influential family of Granada. That historian gives the life of one, who was preacher to ʿAbdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, and died in 316. Ibn Hayyán (Al-muktabis, fo. 23) speaks also of a chief named Mohammed Ibn Odh'ha Ibn ʿAbdi-l-lattif Al-hamdání, who was the sworn enemy of Saʿid Ibn Júda (see above, note 10, p. 401), against whom he made war at the head of his tribe.

23 From this family were descended the Abencerrages of Granada so celebrated in romance.

24 Instead of Morúd, son of Málík, son of Odad, the abridgment reads Morúd, son of Ghálib, &c., which is decidedly a mistake. See Ibn Koteybah, loco laudato, p. 141.

25 Concerning this castle, now in ruins, and which has long been supposed to have been inhabited by Count Julian, see my note, vol. i. p. 538.

26 All the copies but one read here ُمَعْقَر Al-mugháfer, by the addition of one point; but I have had no hesitation in adopting the reading as in the text, especially as Al-kalkashandi (loco laudato, under the letter mim) says that Al-maʿáfer was a clan of the tribe of Hamdán ُمَعْقَر يِلُهٌ مَهَدَان

27 I am unable to determine whether the author here called Al-házmí is the same Ibn Hazm, mentioned at p. 21, or not.

CHAPTER IV.

1 It is doubtful whether ʿAbdu-l-ʿazíz in person made war on the Christians. He had concluded a peace with Theodomir, which he not only would not break himself, but prevented others from doing so, defending the Gothic prince even against the attacks of his own countrymen. (Borbón, Cartas, fo. lxxxiv.) In the north of Spain his arms were not inactive. Habíb Ibn Abí ʿObeydah Al-sehari, whom Músa had left in command of part of the forces, with instructions to prosecute the conquest, made an incursion into Galicia; whilst Ayúb Al-lakhmí and Mugheyth carried on the war against the people of Aragon and Navarre; but at none of these expeditions was ʿAbdu-l-ʿazíz present.
2 'Abdu-l-'azîz was not put to death by the army, but by emissaries of Sulaymân. (See App. A. at the end of this volume.) As to the causes which prompted that Khalîf to order his execution, they have been variously stated; some saying that he made an alliance offensive and defensive with the fugitives of Galicia; others, that he embraced the Christian religion, and was meditating the massacre of the Moslems (Adh-dhobî, apud Borbon, Cartas, p. Ixxxii. et seq.); but his having married Roderic’s widow, his determination to keep the treaty made with Theodomir, the slight and irreverent manner in which he spoke of his sovereign, when he heard of his father’s treatment, and last, not least, his wish, real or pretended, to shake off the yoke of the Khalîf—of which we find ample testimony in Isidorus, (Chron. No. 42)—were sufficient motives to induce that revengeful monarch to order his death.

3 'Umm 'Assem is a common name in the East, and does not mean ‘she of the precious necklaces,’ as asserted by Conde (vol. i. p. 58). Adh-dhobî and Ibn Habîb say that her Christian name was Eyilah. The Spanish chroniclers call her ‘Egilona.’

4 The text reads — the historical fragment published by Casiri (vol. ii. p. 325) — which that author translates by Templo Salvatoris, but which means ‘at the synagogue of the Jews.’ Conde, who met with the same passage, mistook the words Kenîsah Rabbînah (the synagogue of the Rabbis) for the name of the village whereat 'Abdu-l-'azîz was residing (vol. i. p. 62); but that a synagogue, and no other place, is here meant, is clearly proved by a passage from Adh-dhobî, cited by Borbon (Cartas, p. Ixxxii.), wherein it is expressly stated that 'Abdu-l-'azîz took up his residence in a synagogue—At the time of the invasion of Spain by the Arabs, the Jews were no longer allowed to profess their religion in public; but the building wherein 'Abdu-l-'azîz dwelt might have been in former times a synagogue, or else have been converted into one; since the Jews of Spain are known to have been restored to all their rights and privileges by the conqueror, in reward for their services at the time of the invasion.

5 With the single exception of the anonymous author of a fragment published by Casiri (vol. ii. p. 325), all other writers whom I have consulted place the death of 'Abdu-l-'azîz in the last days of Dhi-l-hajjah, A.H. 97. The author of the Akhâdîthu-l-siyasat wa-l-imâmât (vol. i. App. E. p. xce.), says, it is true that 'Abdu-l-'azîz was put to death at the end of the year 99; but as the words سبع (seven) and تسع (nine) are easily mistaken, and my copy, moreover, is far from being correctly written, the statement cannot invalidate the testimony of so many other writers: Conde, Hist. de la Dom. vol. i. p. 63; Borbon, Cartas, p. ci.; Casiri, Bib. Arab. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 324; Al-homaydi, fo. 5, &c. The duration of his government is likewise generally stated at two years; but if his father, Mûsà, left Spain in the month of Dhi-l-hajjah, A.H. 94, as asserted (vol. i. p. 292), the government of 'Abdu-l-'azîz must have lasted three years; and indeed we find it so stated in Isidorus Pacensis (Chron. No. 42). The difficulty can only be surmounted by supposing Mûsà to have departed from Spain in the year 95, instead of 94, as stated in vol. i. p. 292.

6 Conde (vol. i. p. 65) did not fully understand the meaning of these words. Compare the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. v.
7 Some writers do not include Ayúb in the number of the Spanish Amirs; no doubt because his appointment, having emanated from the army, was considered illegal. Others, like Al-hasan Al-laghúwi, cited by Borbon (Cartas, p. xcvii.), do include him; but they make him succeed Habib Ibn Abí 'Obeydah, the murderer of 'Abdu-l-'aziz. The author of the Siyāsat wa-l-imdámät (App. p. v.) says, that immediately after the death of 'Abdu-l-'aziz, the army chose 'Abdullah Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán [lege 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abdillah] Al-gháfeki to be his successor, and that Habib and his accomplices repaired to Damascus. I shall often have to point out in the Notes to this chapter and the following, how far the historians, whose works are known to us, disagree respecting the chronology of the Spanish Amirs. Indeed, upon no period of Mohammedan history does there seem to hang so much obscurity as upon that anterior to the establishment of the race of Umeyyah in Spain. The Arabs were then far from having attained the historical acquirements by which they became afterwards so celebrated; and a few verbal traditions are the only records remaining of those early times. With a view, therefore, to illustrate this part of Al-makkari's narrative, and to establish, if possible, in a more satisfactory manner the chronology of this period, I here subjoin a translation of two Arabic fragments, giving the series of the Spanish Amirs, and the length of their respective reigns; one by 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Habib (Bodl. Lib., No. cxxvii. fo. 143); the other from the Reyhánu-l-lebáb, a species of Arabic cyclopaedia, of which I possess a copy.

Chronology of the Governors of Andalus according to 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Habib.

We were told by 'Abdu-l-malek, who held it from Ibrâhîm Ibn Al-mundhir Al-hidhâmi (Al-jodhâmi?), who held it from Al-wâkâdi. He said: Tarik stayed in Andalus one year, counting from the day of his entrance until he quitted it. After him governed Músa Ibn Nosseyr two years and one month; then his son 'Abdu-l-'aziz two years; then Al-horr Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ath-thakefi two years and eight months; then As-samh Ibn Mâlik Al-khâlânî two years and nine months; then 'Anbasah Ibn Sohaym Al-kelbi four years and five months; then Yahya Ibn Salámah [Salmah?] two years and six months; then Hodhayfah Ibnu-l-ahwas Al-'absi was governor one year; then 'Othmán Ibn Abí Nes'ah Al-khath'ami five months; then Al-haytham Ibn 'Obeyd four months. After him governed 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Obeydillah two years and eight months; then 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan Al-fchri four years; then 'Okbah Ibnu-l-hejáj As-selúlî five years and two months; then Balh (Balj) Ibn Beshr Al-kaysî eleven months; then governed after him, some say conjointly with him, Tha'lebah Ibn Salámah Al-îmêlî five months; then came the rising of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Habib, of Umeyyah, and Kattan, and of Yúsuf, with their followers, who, having joined their forces, attacked Balh, defeated and wounded him; and he (Balh) died seven days after the battle. After this Abú-l-khattár governed two years; then [Abú] Thuâbah Al-hidhâmi [Al-jodhâmi] governed one year; then Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán seven [or nine] years and nine months, until 'Abdu-r-rahmán landed and took the country from him.

The same, according to the Reyhánu-l-lebáb wa rey'anu-sh-shebah fi marâtibi-l-adab, by Mohammed Ibn Ibrâhîm:

After the death of 'Abdu-l-'aziz, Al-horr Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-kaysî governed Andalus for two years and three months. After him As-samh Ibn Mâlik Al-khâlânî governed two years and nine months; then 'Anbasah Ibn Sohaym Al-kelbi governed four years and five months; then Yahya Ibn Moslemah (lege Salmah) two years and six months; then Hodhayfah Ibnu-l-ahwas Al-kaysî one year; then 'Othmán Ibn Sa'd (lege Nes'ah) Al-khath'ami five months; then Al-haytham Ibn
'Obeyd [Al-kelabî] five months; then 'Abdu-r-rahnîn Ibn 'Abdillah Al-ghâfekî Al-'akki two years and eight months; then 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan four years; then 'Okbah Ibnu-l-hejâj [As-selâlî] five years and two months; then Balj Ibn Beshr Al-kusheyri ruled eleven months, and died in a battle against 'Abdu-r-rahmîn Ibn Habîb [a chief], who had risen in arms against him; then Abû-l-khattâr Husâm Ibn Dhirât Al-kelbî two years; then Thuâbâh Al-jodâmî one year; then Yûsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmîn Al-fehri nine years and nine months.

8 Kashtelah, or كشتلة Kashtellah, as written elsewhere. Castile (Castella) was at that time called 'Bardulia.'

9 If Al-horr arrived in Andalus at the end of 98, the government ad interim of Ayûb Ibn Habîb must have lasted one whole year, not six months, as here stated. An author cited by Borbon (Cartas, p. c.) says distinctly, that "Ayûb governed Spain from the death of 'Abdu-l-'azîz in Dhî-l-hajjah of 97, to the same month of 98, when he himself was deposed by Al-horr; and that the appointment of Ayûb proceeded from the army, not from the Khalif." This explains why the anonymous writer translated by Casiri (vol. ii. p. 325), and followed by Conde (vol. i. p. 64), says that Spain remained one year without a governor, which must be understood to mean without a governor appointed by the Khalif.

10 The account of Ibn Hayyân is the most probable, as it agrees with the duration of Al-horr's administration. As-samh or As-sammah is the Zama of Isidorus Pacensis, who, by some unaccountable mistake, makes two governors out of one. See also Rodericus Toletanus (Hist. Arab. cap. xi.), who fell into the same mistake, calling the first Zama and the second 'Azam[ah] ben Melich.'

11 See vol. i. p. 212, where the author attributes the erection of the bridge either to As-samh, in A.H. 101, or to his successor 'Abdu-r-rahnîn Al-ghâfekî. Rodericus Toletanus (Hist. Arab. cap. xi.) says that it was built by the former in A.H. 102; but in all probability it was begun under As-samh, and completed under 'Abdu-r-rahnîn. Conde (vol. i. p. 75) attributes its erection, or rather its restoration, to 'Anbasah.

12 The text reads وأمرة إن يخبس مي ارض أندلس ما كان عنوة—Ibnu Khaldûn has only ان يخبس ارض الأندلس—Conde (vol. i. p. 75) translated khamasa by 'divided into five portions,' a signification of which that word may admit; but which, in this instance, cannot with propriety be given to it. The districts which still remained in the hands of the Christians were too inconsiderable to be divided into five portions, much less to be worthy of a description. What 'Omar wanted was a descriptive account of Spain, as well as the fifth of the spoil, or of the taxes levied on the Christian population, which belonged to him by right. See Isidorus Pacensis,Chron. No. 48.

13 Ibnu Hayyân wrote after the overthrow of the dynasty of Umeyyah, and when the conquests of Ferdinand III. of Castile and Ramiro I. of Aragon were daily narrowing the limits of the Mohammedan empire.

14 The word بالدت, which seems a corruption of 'platea,' means here the Roman causeway, near Toulouse, in the vicinity of which the battle was fought. See Reinaud's Invasion des Sarrasins en
France, &c., p. 18, et seq., where this and other events connected with the history of that country are treated with great erudition and skill.

15 Yaumu-t-tarwiyah or ‘the day of the drinking,’ so called because the pilgrims usually drink of the waters of the well Zemzm. It is the 8th day of Dhî-l-hajjah, not the 9th, as erroneously stated by Conde (vol. i. p. 72), and answers to May 10, A.D. 721, which date agrees well with the accounts of the Christian chroniclers, who place the battle of Toulouse in 721. Among the Arabs, however, there are many who postpone the battle till the ensuing year. Besides Conde (vol. i. p. 72) and Adh-dhóbí, apud Casiri (vol. ii. p. 137), there is Al-azáf (Ahmed Ibn Ahmed), cited by Borbon (Cartas, pp. cxxix.), who says positively that As-samh was killed on the 18th of Dhî-l-hajjah, A.H. 103 (A.D. 722). That author adds that As-samh was slain in Asturias, not in France, fighting with Pelayo. Another writer (Mohammed Abú 'Abdillah Al-hijári) corroborates that statement, and says that the death of As-samh took place in the neighbourhood of Leon, in an engagement with the Asturian prince—

Don Faustino Borbon has devoted a whole letter (Carta xvi.) to prove that As-samh died in Spain in A.H. 103, in battle with Pelayo, not in France at the battle of Toulouse, as generally believed. It would, indeed, appear from the quotations which that author inserts in his work, that As-samh invaded France, took Narbonne, advanced as far as Toulouse, and fought the battle, which he lost, and in which he was wounded (another writer says ‘in which he was near being killed, for he was wounded’). As-samh then returned into Spain, and, hearing that Pelayo had besieged Leon, marched against him, and fought with him the battle in which he was slain. Be this as it may, if As-samh was appointed in Ramadhán, A.H. 100, and his death took place in Dhî-l-hajjah, 102, his administration could not have lasted more than two years and three months,—not eight months, as here stated.

16 Instead of 30, one of the copies reads 300. The rising of Pelayo, however, took place some years before, during the administration of Al-horr, in A.H. 99 (A.D. 717-8). That governor, being then occupied in a war with the Franks, sent one of his lieutenants, named 'Alkamah (the Alxaman of Rodericus), against the Asturian rebels; but the Moslems were defeated, and their general slain. "In the year 99, Al-horr," says Adh-dhóbí (fo. 17), "having heard of the rising of the Christians [in Asturias], sent against them his general, 'Alkamah, who was [defeated and] killed." "This date, moreover, agrees better with those given by the Christian chroniclers for the rising of Pelayo: "Antequam Dominus Pelagius regnaret, Sarracenii regnarunt in Hispaniaannis quinque." See Cronicon Complutense necnon Chronicon Conimbricense, apud Florez, Esp. Sagr. vol. xxiii.; see also Borbon, Cartas, p. xiii. et seq.

17 Among the latter is Ibnu Khaldún (fol. 2, verso), who says positively that 'Anbasah 'died a martyr to the faith.' Adh-dhóbí, cited by Borbon (Cartas, p. cxlvii.), employs the word 'he died,' which is generally used to designate natural death. According to Conde (vol. i. p. 78), 'Anbasah died of his wounds, some days after the battle. All, however, agree as to the year of his death (A.H. 107); and Al-azdí (Borbon, Cartas, ubi supra) adds that it took place on the 5th of Jumáda
the 1st (Sept. A.D. 725), which agrees better with the length assigned to his administration than the month of Sha'bán.

18 or Ozrah, as in the abridgment. Al-homaydî (fo. 87, verso) calls him 'Adhrah: Conde, (vol. i. p. 78) Hodeira, which reading, he, no doubt, took from Isidorus Pacensis (Cron. No. 53). He governed the country until the appointment of Yahya, in Sha'bán, A. H. 107.

19 See Conde (vol. i. p. 179), who calls him 'Ben Adra.' Ibnu-l-khattîb, in his history of Granada, treats of a family called the Beni 'Odhrâh, who resided in that capital.

20 Conde (vol. i. p. 78) says that the appointment of this governor took place in the beginning of 107, and his removal in 108! How to reconcile these dates with those given by Al-makkari after Ibnu Bashkúwâl and Ibn Khaldûn, it is by no means easy to determine.

As to the difference in the duration of Yahya's rule, which some writers, as Ibn Khaldûn (loco laudato, fo. 2, verso) and Ibn Habib (see note 7, p. 403), calculate at two years and a half; and others, like the anonymous historian translated by Casiri (vol. ii. p. 326), at one and a half; it may easily be accounted for by the fact, that during Yahya's administration the Berbers, commanded by one 'Othmán, took the title of 'Abdâh or Abi 'Obeydâh, of whom mention will be made hereafter, took possession of Cordova, and deposed the governor. 'Othmán himself remained in power until Hodheyfah dispossessed him. Borbon, Cartas, p. cxlviii.

21 The next governor was not 'Othmán Ibn Abi Nes'âh, as here stated. Al-makkari was led into error by Ibn Khaldûn: there were two governors of Andalus of the same name; one, 'Othmán Ibn Abi Nes'âh Al-khâth'amî, whom Casiri (vol. ii. p. 326) calls Al-johâni, i.e. of the tribe of Johaynâh; and the other, 'Othmán Ibn Abi 'Abdâh or Abi 'Obeydâh Al-korâshî, who signed the capitulation with Theodemir. Isidorus Pacensis (Cron. No. 57) is very explicit: "Hic (Antumam) [sed lege Autumam] ab Africianis "partibus tacitus propterat. Hic quinque mensibus Hispanias gubernavit: post quos vitam finivit, et "missus est alius Autumn nomine."

The period which elapsed between the nomination of Yahya, in Shawwâl, A. H. 107, and the arrival of Al-haytham, in Moharram, A. H. 111, that is, three years and about three months, is designated by Al-azdî under the appellation of Iyânu-l-fitnah (the days of confusion or civil war). According to another historian, cited by Borbon (Cartas, p. cliii.), the Berbers and the [Arabian tribes] slaughtered each other. 'The Arabs themselves were divided, and the two hostile factions of the Yemenites and Modharites fought likewise for the supreme power. This explains why there should be so much discrepancy in the dates assigned for the administration of the four governors who ruled in the short space of three years. Supposing, however, that Yahya's administration lasted eighteen months, from Shawwâl, 107, to Rabi' II. 108,—that 'Othmán Ibn Abi 'Abdâh usurped the power and ruled until the arrival of 'Othmán Ibn Abi Nes'âh, in Sha'bân, 109, not 110, as in the text, which would give him the five months' administration mentioned by Isidorus,—that his successor 'Othmán Ibn Abi Nes'âh ruled six months, till the arrival of Hodheyfah in Rabi' the 1st, A. H. 110, and that the administration of the latter lasted eleven months, until the arrival of Al-haytham in Moharram, A. H. 111,—the chronology of this very intricate period of Spanish history would be satisfactorily adjusted.
The name of this Amír may be pronounced either Hodheyfah, as in the text, or Haddifah. In the copy of Ibn Khaldún preserved in the library of Leyden (No. 1350, fo. 2, *verso*) it is written خديفة بن الأحوص Haddifah Ibnu-l-ahwass; Ibn Habib has خديفة Khaddifah. Isidorus Pacensis (*Cron.* No. 56) writes 'Oddifà.' Rodericus Toletanus (*Hist. Arab.* cap. xii.) 'Odoyfa.'

22 Conde (vol. i. p. 80) calls him Al-kenání; so does Al-azdí, quoted by Borbon (Cartas, p. clii.), and Casiri (vol. ii. p. 325). However, the copy of Ibn Khaldún in the library of Leyden (fo. 2, *verso*) reads Al-kelábì, as here.

23 Ibn Khaldún makes no such statement; at least, the copy in the library of Leyden (vol. iv. p. 2) has not the passage here alluded to. What is meant by أرض مغونشة Ardh Makunshah, which another copy writes مغونشة مغونشة Maghunshah, and the Gotha MS. (fol. 48, *verso*) مغونشة Makushah, I have been unable to ascertain. Al-azdí, cited by Borbon (Cartas, p. cli.), says that Al-haytham, whom he also calls Al-kenání, was a native of Mekka.

24 That is to say, till Jumáda the 1st, A.H. 113, when he was deposed from his command, or put to death, according to other authorities. See Borbon, *Cartas*, p. clii.

25 Conde (vol. i. p. 80) says that this governor went to Spain by the order of the Khalif Hisháam. Isidorus Pacensis, who calls him 'Mammet Alarcila' [Mohammed ben Abdilla?], represents him as being sent to Spain by the Viceroy of Africa to inquire into Al-haytham's administration; which is more probable. The text of Ibn Bashkúwál, which Al-makkari inserts here, reads و قدم بعدة حمید بن عبد الله الأشعجي فولى شریف قال اب بشکوال قدرة الناس عليهم

26 Conde (vol. i. p. 80) says that this governor went to Spain by the order of the Khalif Hisháam. Isidorus Pacensis, who calls him 'Mammet Alarcila' [Mohammed ben Abdilla?], represents him as being sent to Spain by the Viceroy of Africa to inquire into Al-haytham's administration; which is more probable. The text of Ibn Bashkúwál, which Al-makkari inserts here, reads و قدم بعدة حمید بن عبد الله الأشعجي فولى شریف قال اب بشکوال قدرة الناس عليهم

27 'Abdu-r-rahmán was not slain, as stated here, in 115, much less in 116. The battle of Tours, or Poitiers, in which that chief fell, was fought, as Ibn Khaldún afterwards says, in the month of Ramadhán, A.H. 114, which agrees well with the date fixed by the Christian chroniclers, October, A.D. 732. See Reinaud, *Invas. des Sarras*. p. 45, et seq.

28 As to the duration of his rule, it is evident that those authors who state it at two years and a half count the time of his government from the death of As-samh to the arrival of 'Anbasah, and, perhaps, also the short time of his rule after the assassination of 'Abdu-l-'ázíz. See the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. v. Placing the death of Al-haytham in Jumáda the 1st, A.H. 113, the government of 'Abdu-r-rahmán on this occasion would have lasted sixteen months, or else fourteen, if we count the two months that the provisional administration of Mohammed is said to have lasted.

29 'Abdu-r-rahmán is occasionally called Al-'akkí, because he belonged to the tribe of 'Akk, son of 'Adnán; see p. 26.

28 Conde (vol. i. p. 89) writes the name of this governor 'Kotan,' but in none of the copies which I have consulted is the word pointed so as to authorize that reading.

29 The wars of 'Okbah with the French are not well specified. Al-azdí, however, mentions two expeditions across the Pyrenees;
one undertaken in the year 120 to chastise the Franks for some incursion made into the Spanish territory, and another in 121, in which 'Okbah was at first successful; but upon the arrival of Charles Martel the Moslems were defeated with considerable loss, and obliged to shut themselves up in Barcelona. See Borbon, Cartas, p. clxxii.; Isidorus Pacensis, Cron. No. 61; Reinaud, Invas. des Sarrosius, &c., p. 56.

'Okbah, called Aucupa by Isidorus, landed in Spain at the end of 116. He was sent by the Viceroy of Africa, 'Obeydullah Ibn Al-hajáb (not Al-hejáj, as Conde, vol. i. p. 90, calls him), to supersede 'Abdu-l-malek, of whose tyranny and excesses he had received formal complaints. 'Abdu-l-malek was absent from Cordova, making war on the Franks, when 'Okbah, accompanied by 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Habib, landed in Spain, and seized on the capital (Borbon, p. clxix.). On his return to Cordova, 'Abdu-l-malek was imprisoned and deprived of his command. He contrived, however, to escape and take refuge in Barcelona, where it appears that he had numerous partisans. 'Okbah marched against him; but having received intelligence, whilst at Saragossa, of the revolt of the Berbers in Africa, he crossed over to that country and relinquished his enterprise. We are not told whom 'Okbah left to command in Spain during his absence, at what time he departed for Africa, and when he returned; but 'Abdu-l-malek again got possession of the government; and in the year 121, according to Ibn Khaldún, or in the beginning of 123, according to Ar-rázi, he either exiled or put to death his antagonist.

Adh-dhibi, quoted by Borbon (Cartas, p. clxxi.), agrees with Ar-rázi in placing the death of 'Okbah in 123; but he makes him die at Cordova, not at Carcasone, and adds that he was poisoned by 'Abdu-l-malek. — Conde (vol. i. p. 96) says that he died in 124; but little or no reliance can be placed on the statements of a writer who never gives his authority, and whose translations are not always faithful. According to his account, 'Okbah landed in Spain in 118, left it for Africa in 120, and returned in 124. Not a word is said of the revolt of 'Abdu-l-malek, who is represented as being upon the best terms with 'Okbah.

CHAPTER V.

1 Soon after the conquest of Spain, the Berbers who served under the banners of the Arabs, and most of whom, though nominally converted to Islám, still professed the Jewish religion or adhered to the rites of paganism, made several attempts to shake off the yoke of the Arabs. In A. H. 99, under the administration of Al-horr, a Berber, named Khaulán Al-yahúdi (the Jew), rose in arms against the Arabs, and maintained himself in Aragon and Catalonia until he was defeated and put to death in A. H. 100 (Borbon, Carta xiv. et seq.). Again, A. H. 107, during the administration of Yahya Ibn Salmah, the Berbers of Spain rose against their masters, and aimed at their total expulsion from that country, saying, "We conquered Andalus, took its cities, and subdued its provinces; we fought against the Rûm and against the Frank; ours therefore is the country, and ours the spoil, not yours;" (Borbon, loco laudato, p. cxlix.). It was only through the union of the two hostile factions, the Modharites and the Yemenites, that Yahya was at last enabled to put down the rebellion.

2 Conde (vol. i. p. 97) says that Kolthûm died in the action; so does Isidorus Pacensis (Crónic.

410 NOTICES AND ILLUSTRATIONS. [BOOK V.
No. 64), as well as An-nuwayrî (Journal Asiatique, tom. xi. p. 446). The last-named writer calls the chief of the Berber insurrection Meysar Al-matgharî.

The name of Koltûm’s successor, Hondhalah, may also be written ‘Handhalah.’ Ibn Habib (loco laudato, fo. 9, verso) writes it حَنْدَهْلَة Hantalah.

3 According to Conde, who makes no mention of the siege of Ceuta by the Berbers, Balj with other Syrians crossed over to Andalus immediately after their defeat. The whole, however, is explained by Isidorus Pacensis, whose chronicle abounds with interesting details on the history of this period. See Cronic. No. 64, et seq.

4 This is no doubt the Zat (Zeyyûd) Sarracenus of Isidorus Pacensis, who attributes to 'Othmán Ibn Abi Nes’ah what is here recorded of ‘Abdu-l-malek.

5 No details of this rebellion are to be found either in Conde or Borbon; but the author of the Iktifâ fi akhbâri-l-kholafâ (Arab. MS. in my possession) says that the chief of the Berbers on this occasion was Ibn Yeferen Az-zenâtî, who, having revolted a second time under the administration of Hasám Ibn Dhirár Al-kclbî, was taken prisoner in a battle and conveyed to Cordova, where he was nailed to a stake صلابة with a dog at his right hand, a swine at his left, a lizard in front, and an ape behind; all which animals are considered unclean by the Arabs.

6 From the arrival of 'Abdu-l-malek in Ramadhân, a. h. 114, to his execution, in Dhî-l-ka’dah, 123, is an interval of nine years, which is the aggregate amount of the administrations of 'Okbah and 'Abdu-l-malek, namely, five years the former and four the latter. Ar-râzi, it is true, says that 'Okbah ruled the country for six years and four months; but in so doing it is evident that he only counts 'Abdu-l-malek’s second administration, from the death of his rival 'Okbah, in Safar, 123, to his execution in Dhî-l-ka’dah of the same year.

7 One of the copies reads سبعين instead of تسعين ninety.

8 All the copies read here الیهاره Al-hârah except the abridgment, which has الیهه Al-harrah; but I think that الیهه Al-hârah, which means ‘the street,’ is to be substituted. The battle was so called because it was fought at Médina, in the quarter of the city called Al-hârah Benî Zohrah, or ‘the street of the Benî Zohrah,’ between the Syrians, commanded by Moslem Ibn 'Okbah, and the inhabitants of that city, who had revolted against the Khalîf Yezîd. See Price, Chron. Retros. of Moham. Hist. vol. i. p. 416.

9 The expression here used is الإقدميون al-akdimiyûn (the first comers or settlers). Under this denomination all the Arabian tribes which went to Spain before Balj were comprised.

10 'Abdu-r-rahmân entered Spain in the suite of Balj. He had been in that country before, during the administration of 'Okbah As-seldî. (See above, note 30, p. 410.) His father, Habîb, was killed in Africa by the Berbers, in a. h. 123. See An-nuwayrî, loco laudato, p. 446.
Beladii'm (i.e. the people of cities) is the name which the Yemenites or Arabs of the stock of Kahttán gave to their rivals of the stock of 'Adnán; the Syrians who entered Spain with Balj being all Modharites, were descended from the stock of 'Adnán.

'Abdu-1-rahnán was the son of that 'Alkamah (Alxaman) who was killed in battle with Pelayo. He was governor of Narbonne, and commander of the forces on the French frontier.

Conde misunderstood this passage; he makes Balj the vanquished, instead of the victor (vol. i. p. 104). Indeed, the whole of that chapter of his work which treats of the civil war between Balj and Ibn Kattan is a tissue of errors and contradictions. Of Umeyyah and Kattan, the two sons of the unfortunate 'Abdu-l-malck, he makes only one person, whom he calls Omeya ben Cotan, el hijo de Abdelmelic; he confounds 'Abdu-1-rahnán Ibn Habib with 'Abdu-1-rahnán Ibn 'Okbah; and, lastly, he attributes to the latter the exploit here recounted as achieved by 'Abdu-1-rahnán Ibn 'Alkamah. Thus all these writers who have followed Conde in this part of his narrative, Romey not excepted (vol. iii. p. 129), have involuntarily been led into error.

Ibn Habib says 'seven days after.' Al-hunaydí (loco laudato, fo. 77, verso), about a month before, says —See also above, note 7, p. 405.

From Dhí-l-ka'dah, 123, to Shawwál, 124, are the eleven months here recorded. With the sole exception of Casiri (vol. ii. p. 326), who gives Balj only six months' rule, all others agree in this statement.

Isidorus Pacensis makes no mention of Tha'lebah among the governors of Spain.

The manner in which this is expressed makes me suppose that the word 'yâd is here intended for a pagan festivity, a thing not improbable, as most of the Berbers adhered still to their pagan rites. See on this subject the sensible observations of M. Reinaud, Invas. des Sarras. p. 28.

For a long time after the conquest of Spain the Berbers continued to lead a nomadic life, shifting their quarters from one end of the peninsula to the other, and taking their wives and children with them even when engaged in military expeditions. Ibnu-1-abbár (Nat. Lib. Madrid, fo. 127) says that 'Abdu-1-rahnán I. of Cordova was the first who conquered their roving habits, made them build villages and towns, and subjected them to a more sedentary life.

Evidently the same 'Othmán who had been governor of Spain on a former occasion, (see p. 36,) although Conde (vol. i. p. 84) and other writers after him identify him with the Munniz of Isidorus Pacensis (Cron. No. 58), who was put to death by 'Abdu-1-rahnán Al-gháfekí.

If we adopt the date given by Ibnu Hayyán, Tha'lebah had governed the country for about ten months, counting from the death of Balj, in Shawwál, 124. Those who, like Ibn Khaldún, give him a government of two years, count the time during which he seems to have governed conjointly with Balj.
21 It was no doubt at the time of this partition that the small kingdom founded by Theodomir the Goth, and in which he had been succeeded by Athanagild, was taken away from the Christians; the lands in the territory of Murcia or Tudmir being allotted to the Arabs of Misr (Egypt).

22 The civil war of the blind men was kindled,' a proverbial expression to denote that a murderous war has begun between two tribes.

23 The word translated 'love of tribe' is عصبية — which Ibn Khaldún uses frequently to express that tie or bond which keeps together the members of a family. It may also be found in Ibnu Hayyán and other Andalusian writers.

24 As-samil or As-somayl, for this name may be pronounced both ways, belonged to the tribe of Kelāb, descended from 'Adnán, and was consequently a Modharite. Isidorus Pacensis (Cron. No. 68) calls him 'Zumahel; ' Rodericus Toletanus (Hist. Arab. cap. xvii.), 'Zimacl.'

25 The text reads فازم د فاقيم و دع تفع — In the passage of Ibn Khaldún, relating to this event, I read فازم من مجلسه و تفع 'he was made to rise from his seat, and his turban was thrown on one side [in the struggle].’ Al-makkari introduces this passage in the second book of the first part, in nearly the same words, after Ibn Khaldún.

26 Mūrūr or Morir, which in one of the copies is written thus, مورون Maurúd; probably the town of Moron, near Seville.

27 Thuábah was the brother of Tha'lebah Ibn Salámah Al-jodhámí, who held the government after Balj.

28 واذدي لنة Wida-leke, not Guadalete, as this river is now called. See vol. i. p. 527, note 67.

29 See Conde (vol. i. p. 118), who attributes the liberation of Husám to the son of 'Abdu-l-malek and to Ibn 'Okbah ['Abdu-r-rahmán Al-lakhmi].

30 This alludes to a first battle lost by Abú-l-khattár, in which that governor fell into an ambush prepared by As-samil. See Isidorus Pacensis, Cronic. No. 68.

31 According to Adh-dhobi, quoted by Borbon (Cartas, p. cxcvii.), Thuábah governed Spain for one
year and some months. He died about the end of 128. Another writer (ib. p. ccii.) says that he was put to death or poisoned by Yúsuf. It is true that Ibn-l-faradhi gives him a government of two years, but in so doing that historian does not mean that Thuábah governed two whole years, but that he was governor part of the year 127 and nearly the whole of 128. This manner of counting is unfortunately but too frequent among the Arabian historians.

32 All copies read here 'And Abú-l-khattár was deposed, after four years and nine months' [administration], in the year 128.' But this could not be, if his arrival in Cordova took place, as above stated, in Rejeb, a. h. 125. On the other hand, from the death of Balj in Shawwal, 124, to the appointment of Yúsuf in Rabí' the second, 129, there is only an interval of four years and three months; and yet Abú-l-khattár is said to have governed four years and nine months; Tha'lebah ten months (or, according to others, two years), and Thuábah one year (others say two). We have, besides, to make some allowance for a short interregnum, as well as for the whole year during which the Bení Modhar ruled the country after a previous agreement with the Yemenites. It is, therefore, quite clear that the administration of Abú-l-khattár could not have lasted above two years, and that the four years and nine months mentioned by Ibn-l-faradhi must be understood after his taking possession of the government of Eastern Africa, of which country Abú-l-khattár seems to have been some time governor. (Borbon, Cartas, p. clxxxix.) This obstacle once removed, the duration of their respective governments may be thus adjusted: Tha'lebah ten months, from the death of Balj in Shawwal, 124, to the arrival in Cordova of Abú-l-khattár, in Rejeb, 125; Abú-l-khattár two years, till the rising of Thuábah, in Rejeb, 127; Thuábah sixteen months, till his death at the end of 128; and five months of civil war and anarchy, till the death of Abú-l-khattár and the election of Yúsuf, in Rabí' the second, 129.

33 Ibn Khaḍdún is the only historian who mentions this fact. His words are: و نصوا الإحكام which would seem to imply that the government of Spain was carried on in the name of some Viceroy of Africa, called 'Abdu-r-raḥmán Ibn Kethír. By referring to Annuwayrí, I find that the governor of Eastern Africa at the time was 'Abdu-r-raḥmán Ibn Habíb (not Ibn Kethír), who, having left Spain for Túnis in Junáda [the first ?], a. h. 127, obtained from the Khalif the government of that province, which fact is corroborated by Ibn Bashkúwál. See above.

34 Sliakandah, or Sliakandah, became afterwards one of the suburbs of Cordova. See vol. i. p. 328.

35 أهل الصناعات من أسواق قرطبة—literally, 'the working men of the markets of Cordova.'

36 Here are no less than three different versions of the same event. According to one, the battle was contested with great fury; according to the other, the Yemenites, taken by surprise, made no resistance. One author makes Abú-l-khattár fall in the battle; the other says that he escaped, but was taken prisoner and put to death. Ibn-l-faradhi says that Abú-l-khattár was deposed and slain by the Modharítes in a. h. 128. Ibn Khaḍdún places his death in 129, after a sort of truce concluded with the opposite faction. All these contradictions, however, are but a natural consequence of the system pursued by Al-makkári.
A writer, quoted by Borbon (Cartas, p. excvii.), says that Abú-l-khattár was deposed in A.H. 128, and that he fled to Eastern Africa.

37 The text reads

في سرير رحی

38 See p. 15. The whole of this account is borrowed from the work of Ibnu-l-kúṫtiyyah, with a few important omissions, which I will supply with the aid of a manuscript preserved in the Royal Library of Paris, a copy of which is now in my possession. Almond (Olmundo?) left besides two sons: one called Almatto, who is said to have settled at Seville; the other, 'Obbás (Oppas), who died in Galicia.

Artebash, or Ardebaste, left also several sons: one of his posterity was Abú Sa‘íd Al-kúmís (Comes, or the Count). As to Romulo, he was the progenitor of Ja‘far Ibn 'Abdu-r-rahmán Al-kúṫtiyyah, Alfor or Alfaro, Kádí-l-‘ajem or judge of the Christians, in Cordova.

"By her marriage with 'Isa Ibn Muzāḥim (not Ibrāhîm as in the text), Sárah Al-kúṫtiyyah " (the Goth) had two sons, Ibrāhîm and Is’hák. 'Isa having died in A.H. 138, the year in which "'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu‘awiyah entered Andalus, his widow Sárah had several pretenders to her hand,

"among whom the most illustrious were, Hayyat Ibn Mulábis, or Mulámís [حیّة ابن ملمس sic] " Al-mäḋhîjî, and 'Omâyr Ibn Sa‘íd Al-lakhmî. The last named obtained his suit, through the "intercession of Tha‘lebah Al-jodhámî, who was his friend, and applied to 'Abdu-r-rahmán. He had "a son named Jilbâb who became the progenitor of the Bení Seyd of the Bení Hejâj, "of the Bení Mošlemah, and others."

Ibnu-l-kúṫtiyyah, from whom the above particulars are taken, was himself a descendant from the Gothic princess by her son Ibrāhîm. Hence the surname of Ibnu-l-kúṫtiyyah, by which he is generally known. He lived at Cordova, where he distinguished himself by his writings on various subjects, but chiefly on grammar and philology. He was the author of a treatise on the conjugation of verbs تَصَارِيف التَّعْلِيمُ of which his biographer Ibn Khallekán speaks very highly. He does not appear to have written anything historical; but he, no doubt, communicated to his friends and disciples the traditions preserved in his family. The work attributed to him upon the conquest of Spain by the Arabs is undoubtedly the production of one of his disciples. Ibnu-l-kúṫtiyyah died at Cordova in Rejeb, A.H. 367 (A.D. 978). See vol. i. p. 460, note 96, of this translation.

39 Instead of لَبَبَة ابْن لَبَبَة لَبَبَة; for I find that such was the name of one of the masters of Ibnu-l-kúṫtiyyah, who, according to Al-homaydî (Jaddiwatu-l-muktabis, fo. 33), died in A.H. 314. See also vol. i. p. 467, note 155, of this translation.

40 The same individual mentioned at p. 47. I am not sure, however, whether Abú 'Abdah is part of his name or not. His patronymic, Al-‘abādî or Al-‘abdî, which last is, I believe, the correct way of spelling it, would lead me to suppose that Abú 'Abdah was part of his name.
Thus in A.—B. and the epitome read —I have followed the former reading, as agreeing better with the profession and habits of Maymún, who is called lower down a faqir.

These words can only apply to Maymún; but the passage reads as follows:—It is therefore evident that the answer of Artabásh was omitted by Al-makkari whilst transcribing from his authority.

This appears to have been the name of the Xenil on its passage through Ezija. One of the tributaries of the Guadalquivir is now called Guadajoz.

That is, counting from Rabi' the second, A. H. 129, when he was appointed by the Bení Modhar, to Dhi-l-hajjah, A. H. 138; when 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Muáwiyyah defeated him, and gained possession of his capital, the city of Cordova. His confirmation by the Khalif was not obtained till A. H. 132. See Borbon, Cartas, p. cci.

Instead of 'A'mir, one of the copies has 'Amer or 'Omar. He was the son of 'Amru, and belonged to the tribe of 'Abdu-d-dárr. Conde (vol. i. p. 140) attributes to him the taking of Saragossa, which is further down said to have been reduced by Al-habáb.

Al-ázrak means 'a man who has blue eyes;' in Spanish, zarcos.

The name of this chieftain, whom Conde (vol. i. p. 139) makes the secretary of 'A'mir Ibn 'Amru, might be written equally well Al-hebbáb and Al-hobáb (the snake).
BOOK VI.

CHAP. I.

1 This passage is to be found almost word for word in the history of the Bení Umeyyah of Spain by An-nuwayrí, who, no doubt, borrowed it from Ibnu Hayyán. The word, translated by ‘forest,’ is خِيَابَة ُghaydah, in Spanish algayda.

2 This was Hafss Ibn Suleymán Al-hallád, surnamed Waziru-dín Mohammed (the support of the religion of Mohammed), at that time a Wizír of the Bení 'Abbás. His kunyá was Abú Salmah, not Abú Moslemah, as here stated. See Elmacin, Hist. Sarac. p. 94.

3 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Habíb is the same chief who is so often mentioned in the course of the preceding Book, (pp. 18, 43, et passim.) He was appointed governor of Cairwán in a. h. 127. His father Habíb had been a mautí of the Bení Umeyyah. He was the father of Yúsuf Al-fehri, the last governor of Spain.

4 Immediately after there follows in the text one of these anecdotes, which I have not thought proper to translate.

5 The text reads نُوجَذَتْ النَّفْقُ الَّذِي دَعُوتُهَا أَلِهَ مَسْ قَوْمٍ لَوْ بَالٍ أَحَدُهُمُ بِهذَهُ الْجَزِيرَةِ غَرَّنَا نَسَىَ وَ إِنَمَّ فِي بُكْرٍهُ نُوجَذَتْ النَّفْقُ الَّذِي دَعُوتُهَا أَلِهَ مَسْ قَوْمٍ لَوْ بَالٍ أَحَدُهُمُ بِهذَهُ الْجَزِيرَةِ غَرَّنَا نَسَىَ وَ إِنَمَّ فِي بُكْرٍهُ

6 Yúsuf is frequently called ‘a Sultán’ by the historians of Mohammedan Spain, no doubt because he ruled independently, and did not acknowledge the authority of the Khalif.

7 Instead of some dinárs, other accounts say five hundred. Among the Andalusians who went over to Africa, An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 437) gives the names of Wahb Ibnu-l-asfar and Shákir Ibn Abí-l-ashmatt, of whom mention is made hereafter.

8 According to An-nuwayrí (fo. 438), Yúsuf was at Toledo when the news of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's disembarkation was brought to him.

9 On the town of Modrúr or Morúr, see a preceding note, p. 413. An-nuwayrí’s account (fo. 438)
differs a little from this: he calls the governor of Malaga Ibráhím Ibn Shajrah and the governor of Seville Abú Sáleh Yahya Ibn Yahya.

This reads differently in all the manuscripts: A. عام خلق — My own copy, and that belonging to the Gotha Library, read عام الخلق — which reading I have adopted.

—Thus in Ibn Habíb (loco laudato, fo. 156), and Al-homaydí (fo. 4), who describe it as a plain close to Cordova.

Merj-Ráhitt is the name of a place in Syria, where the Khalif Merwán I., of the family of Umeyyah, defeated the followers of Zubeyr. See vol. i. App. p. lxxix. of this translation. The author of a history of Spain under the Arabs, lately published in the French collection, entitled ‘L’Art de vérifier les Dates,’ has mistaken Merj-Ráhitt for the name of a place near Cordova, and describes this battle as having been fought there.

Probably the same individual mentioned at pp. 47 and 71, and note 40, p. 415.

Mohammed Al-khoshání, in his history of the Kádis of Cordova (Bodl. Lib., No. cxxvii.), says that when ‘Abdu-r-rahmán entered that capital, the wives and daughters of Yúsuf came up to him, and that one of them said "Be generous, O cousin! after thy victory;" upon which ‘Abdu-r-rahmán sent for Yahya Ibn Yezíd At-tojibí, at that time Kádi of Cordova, and intrusted Yúsuf’s family to his care.

According to An-nuwayrí, Yúsuf, after surprising Cordova and plundering the palace, retired into the Sierra de Elvira, where he was pursued by ‘Abdu-r-rahmán until a peace was concluded between them.

Al-makkarí treats again of Yúsuf in the sixth Book, among the Arabs who settled in Spain. He says that on the day in which that governor resigned the command into the hands of ‘Abdu-r-rahmán, he repeated this verse of Harakah, the daughter of An-no’mán Ibn Al-mundhir:

فبينا نسوس الناس الأمر امروا: . إذا نحن فيهم سؤفة نتنصف

“Whilst we directed the people the empire was ours; for we divided the market [between the dealers].

CHAPTER II.

1 Compare the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. vii.

2 An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 439) mentions, under the year 147, the departure for Syria of one of ‘Abdu-r-rahmán’s agents, whose instructions were to conduct to Cordova the eldest son of that Sultán, named Suleymán, who had remained behind.
Conde (vol. i. p. 170) says ten sons, or brothers; for it is not easy to determine which of the two he meant by "los diez hermanos Merwanes."

According to An-nuwayri (loco laudato, fo. 440), Yusuf, after collecting his forces at Merida, marched on Cordova, but finding 'Abdu-r-rahman prepared to meet him, he turned westwards, and proceeded against Seville, by whose governor, 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Omar, he was defeated. Conde's narrative is far from agreeing with the above, since among other things he tells us that 'Abdu-l-malek near Lorca, in Murcia, and that he died in the action. See vol. i. p. 171, et seq.

The word translated by 'cup' is قَمُصُ kūs, whence the Spanish 'cazo' is derived. Conde relates differently the death of As-samil, whom he represents as living at Siguenza (no doubt, Shekundah, near Cordova), when he was arrested, conveyed to Toledo, and there executed (Hist. de la Dom. vol. i. p. 178).

A son of As-samil, named Hudheyl or Hadhīl رَجُلٌ was afterwards executed for being implicated in the conspiracy of Al-mugheyrah in A.H. 16. An-nuwayri, loco laudato, fo. 443.

This individual is called Dhū-l-jiyūsh in Elmacin, Hist. Sarac, p. 51; but it is a mistake: his name was Dhū-jaushan, as here stated. He was the officer deputed by 'Obeydullah Ibn Zeyyād to attack Huseyn at Kerbelā. See Abū-l-fedā, Ann. Most. vol. i. sub anno lxi.

'Sakr, whence the Spaniards have made 'sacre,' is a kind of high-bred hawk. Casiri (vol. ii. p. 197) read 'saphar.'

This revolt took place four years later, in 155 (A.D. 772). "In the year 155," says An-nuwayri, "the people of Seville forsook the obedience [of 'Abdu-r-rahmān], and rose under the command of "'Abdu-l-ghaffār and of Haywat Ibn Mulāmis. 'Abdu-r-rahmān was then absent from Cordova, "carrying on war against Shakiā [the Berber], and he had appointed his son Suleyman to command in "the capital [during his absence]. When he received the letters of his son, informing him of the rising "[of those two chieftains], and of their having been joined in the movement by all the Yemenites who "resided in Seville, he collected his forces [to march] against them, but would not enter Cordova then, "[as he did not consider himself secure there,] owing to the repeated news which reached him of the "numbers and strength [of the enemy]. He sent forward against them his cousin 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn "'Omar, who marched to Seville, &c."
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

11 The account of An-nuwayrí agrees with the above; not so that of Conde (vol. i. p. 194), who calls the son of 'Abdu-l-malek, Kásim.

12 The people of Seville, i. e. 'Abdu-l-ghaflár, Ibn Mulámis, and the other chiefs of the Yemenite party, whose rising is above specified. See above, note 10.

13 The expression in the text is ambiguous; but I find in An-nuwayrí قد أتُلْتُ ابنِي وَلِي عَهْدِي which removes all doubt as to the meaning.

14 An-nuwayrí does not mention the revolt of Al-yezidí, but he does that of Al-mugheyrah, under the year 166.

15 Conde (vol. i. p. 188) calls this rebel Abdelgafir, and describes him as being Wáli or governor of Meknásah (Mcquinez) in Africa, from which country he is said to have crossed over to Spain at the head of an army; but in giving this account it is evident that the Spanish translator confounded the rising of 'Abdu-l-ghaflár [Ibn Hamíd Al-yahssóbí] at Seville with that of a Berber named Shakiá, who revolted about four years before, pretending to be a descendant of the Prophet. An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 441) gives the following account of the latter: "His name was Shakiá Ibn 'Abdi-l- 'wáhéd. He was a Berber of the tribe of Meknásah. He could read the Korán and write, owing to which accomplishments he exercised the functions of schoolmaster to his tribe. His mother's name was Fátimah, and he, being an ambitious man, gave himself out as the descendant of Fátimah, the daughter of the Prophet, and took the name of 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed. He rose at Santiberia (not Santamaria, as in the text,) in the year 151 (A. D. 768), and was joined by great numbers of his tribe. He maintained himself until 160, when two of his followers, named Abú Ma'n and Abú Kharím, put him to death, and conveyed his head to 'Abdu-r-rahmán."

16 حيَّاتَ ابن مالبِس—Thus in all the manuscripts except the abridgment, which reads حيَّة Hayát or Haywah. An-nuwayrí calls him Ibn Mulámis; and Conde (vol. i. p. 178) "Hayút Ibn Molemis." The latter author, however, makes him die before, in 143, in great favour with 'Abdu-r-rahmán. He is the individual mentioned at p. 18, and note 14, p. 399.

17 According to An-nuwayrí, the execution of Abú-s-sabáh took place in 149 (A. D. 766). "In this year (A. H. 149) 'Abdu-r-rahmán deposed Abú-s-sabáh from the government of Seville. Hearing, moreover, that the Arabian chief was aiming at revolt, he laid a snare for him, and put him to death;" (loco laudato, fo. 441.) The rebellion here recorded is the same which the author has already described at p. 82, ad finem, evidently without being aware that they were one and the same. Abú-s-sabáh might as well be written Abú-s-sabbáh or Abú-s-sobáh.

18 One of the copies reads Huseyn Ibnu-l-huseyn Ibn Yahya, &c.

19 The events here related took place long after the year 157. "In the year 163 (beginning Sept. 16, 'A. D. 779)," says An-nuwayrí, "'Abdu-r-rahmán made public his determination to carry the war into
"Syria, for the purpose of avenging the injuries which the Beni 'Abbás had done to his family; but the rebellion of Suleyman Ibn Yıdhan [Al-'arabî] and of Al-huseyn Ibn Yahya Ibn Sa'id Ibn Sa'id Ibn 'Obádah Al-ansári, at Saragossa, prevented him from carrying that project into execution." An-nuwayrî does not inform us how the rebellion of those two chieftains ended then, but we are to infer from what follows that it terminated in the death of Suleyman, as Al-makkarî states it. "In the year 165 (beginning Aug. 25, A.D. 781), Al-huseyn Ibn Yahya got possession of Saragossa by treason, and revolted. 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent against him Ghálib Ibn Temám Ibn 'Alkamah at the head of considerable forces, and they carried on war for some time against each other. Al-huseyn detached a portion of his forces, under the command of his son 'Isa, to attack 'Abdu-r-rahmán; but 'Isa was defeated, and his army destroyed. Temám Ibn 'Alkamah [the father of Ghálib] then besieged Al-huseyn in Saragossa; but without success. The ensuing year, A.h. 166 (beginning Aug. 14, 782), 'Abdu-r-rahmán, in person, came to the siege of Saragossa, bringing with him six-and-thirty manjanik or war-engines to batter the walls with. He took the city by storm, put to death Al-huseyn, and expelled the inhabitants, owing to an oath he had taken previous to his marching thither; but some time after he granted them leave to return."

20 This Suleyman Al-'arabî, whom Al-homaydî (fo. 50) calls Ibnu-l-'arabî, is the "Ibn alarabi" of the old chronicles, who is described as having crossed over to France to implore the help of Charlemagne. See the interesting details given on this subject by M. Romney in his Histoire d'Espagne, vol. iii. pp. 228-245.

21 I suspect that both the date of this rebellion and the name of the principal actor in it are incorrectly given, for I find nothing like it in An-nuwayrî, who gives in detail the events of this reign. The reading, too, is different in all the copies. A. و ثّار الّدما حسن ثّار الدما حسن بن عبد العزيز حسن بن عبد العزيز - my copy — the abridgment — the Gotha MS. I should be tempted to establish the reading thus و ثّار الدما [حسن] حسن بن عبد العزيز الثناي 'and Hasan Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azîz rose to revenge the murder of Huseyn Al-ansâri, &c.'

22 Most of the revolts which happened under 'Abdu-r-rahmán's reign are to be ascribed to the inveterate feuds existing between the rival tribes of Modhar and Yemen; 'Abdu-r-rahmán being himself a Modharite, naturally favoured the former. As An-nuwayrî has preserved the history of all these rebellions, I will here translate his account of all those which are not mentioned by Al-makkarî.

"Zoreyk Al-ghosâni. In the year 143 (A.D. 760). Zoreyk Ibn An-no'mân Al-ghosâni rose at Algesiras. He took Shidúnah and Seville; but 'Abdu-r-rahmán having invested those two cities, the rebels begged that monarch's forgiveness, and delivered Zoreyk into his hands." Conde, vol. i. p. 176, calls him "Barcerah ben Nooman Algasani."

"Hishám Ibn 'Adbrah Al-fehri. His rebellion took place in the year 144 (beginning April 10, A.D. 761), at Toledo. He was besieged in that city by 'Abdu-r-rahmán in person, until he surrendered himself on condition that his life should be spared, giving his son Aflah as a hostage for his future good behaviour; but within the same year Hishám revolted a second time at Toledo. He was again besieged by 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who was not able to reduce that city, and returned to Cordova. At last, in the year 146 (A.D. 763), 'Abdu-r-rahmán having sent against him his mauti Bedr and Temám Ibn 'Alkamah at the head of considerable forces, those two generals besieged him in that city, which they took; and conveyed him a prisoner to Cordova, together
"with Haywat Ibn Al-walid Al-yahssobi, and 'Othmân Ibn Hamzah Ibn 'Ab-dillah Ibn 'Omar Ibn Al-khattáb. They were paraded through that city in fetters, mounted on asses, "with their heads and beards shaved, and with no other dress on than a coarse woollen jubbah; after which they were nailed to stakes." See Conde (cap. xvi.), who places these events in the year 148.

Sa'id Al-yahssobi; in Conde (vol. i. p. 185), "Sa'id ben Huscin el Yahseibi."—"Sa'id Al-yahssobi, better known by the surname of Albâtri, rose at Liblah (Niebla) in 148 (A.D. 765). The cause of his rebellion was this:—Being one day intoxicated, he happened to think of the numbers of his comrades, the Yemenites, who had fallen in the battle in which Al-âla Ibn Mughîth was defeated [by 'Abdu-r-rahmân], and he took a banner and raised it. When he came to his senses, and saw the banner raised, he asked his followers about it, when they told him what had occurred. He then was going to take it down; but upon consideration, he left it as it was, saying, 'By Allah! it shall not be said of me that I raised a banner and put it down again without reason;,' upon which he made public his intention to revolt [against 'Abdu-r-rahmân], and was soon surrounded by the Yemenites of that district. Having put himself at their head, he marched to Seville, which he reduced, his forces being greatly increased by the partisans [he had there]. At the news of this revolt, 'Abdu-r-rahmân hastened [towards Seville]. Sa'id shut himself up in a castle called Râghûk, and fortified himself in it: this happened on the 11th of Rabi-l-awal (June, A.D. 765). Sa'id was immediately besieged by 'Abdu-r-rahmân, who invested the castle on every side, and prevented other rebels from joining him. Among the chiefs who on this occasion made common cause with Sa'id Al-yahssobi, was 'Alkamah Al-lakhamî, who, having collected at Shidânah the chiefs of certain tribes, was preparing to march to the assistance of Sa'id. But 'Abdu-r-rahmân, having received intelligence of their movement in time, detached a division of his army under the command of his mauli Bedr, who interposed himself between the castle [of Râghûk] and the enemy, and kept him at bay. The siege, meanwhile, was prosecuted with vigour, until Sa'id, seeing the number of his followers daily diminished by death and desertion, made a sally, and was killed, &c.

After the death of Sa'id, a lieutenant of his named Merwân was appointed by the rebels to succeed him: the siege continued with increased vigour, until [some of] the garrison offered to 'Abdu-r-rahmân to make him master of the castle and of the person of Merwân, if he would only spare their lives. 'Abdu-r-rahmân consented, and Merwân was apprehended and put to death with numbers of his followers. This being done, 'Abdu-r-rahmân marched against Ghiyâth Al-nâzî, one of the chiefs who had assisted Sa'id in his revolt. Having besieged him in his castle, he defended himself for some time; but at last he surrendered on condition that his life should be spared, and he was conveyed [prisoner] to Cordova. Some time after, in A.H. 149, Ghiyâth and his friends having again risen in arms against 'Abdu-r-rahmân, he was taken and executed."

23 The French historians make no mention of this fact. See Reinaud, Invas. des Sarrasins, p. 98.

24 For the etymology of this word see vol. i. pp. 88, 210, and p. 387, note 7.

25 تبدّلت لنا وسط الرصافة نخلة. 
نّدت بارئ الغرب عن بلد النخيل 
فقلت شبيبي بالغرب و النوي. 
و طول أكثّي عن بني و عن اهلي.
26. One of the jund or divisions of Arabs who settled in Syria after the conquest of that country, and took their names from the districts in which they fixed their domicile. The jund or division of Kenesrin established themselves at Jaen, to which they gave the name of the country whence they came.

27. Ibn-l-khattib gives the life of Bedr among those of his illustrious Granadians, no doubt because he resided some time in the city of Elvira; for Granada had not yet risen into importance. He gives him the kunyâ or apppellative of Abû-l-kasr, and says that he was a Greek by birth. An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 442) places his disgrace in the year 156 (A. D. 773), owing to some stretch of authority.

28. Abû Salmah, i. e. ‘the father of salvation,’ was the surname of Khallâl Al-hallâl, or, as some authors assert, Al-khallâl, who was, after Abû Moslem, the principal instrument in the establishment of the Beni 'Abbâs in the East. He was put to death by the command of As-seffâh. See a preceding note, p. 417.

29. It was not Hishâm, but his brother Suleymán, who at that time disputed the empire with him, who put to death Ghâlib, the son of Temâm.

30. اَن لا بَقَدَرْ اَن يَنَظَرِ فِي تَحْسِينٍ ثُرَابِيَّةٍ in all the copies; but on looking into Al-homaydi, in the life of Ibn Khâled, I find the same quotation from Ibn Hayyân, and the passage differently written— which induces me to alter the translation thus: ‘no one has the power of insuring prosperity or success to his own posterity.’

31. Mohammed Al-khoshanî, in his history of the Kâdis of Cordova, treats at length of those theologians who filled the office of Kâdi under 'Abdu-r-râhmân I. Yahya Ibn Yezíd At-tojibi (not Al-yahsosibî, as stated by Al-makkari,) was the first. He was originally from Syria; but he was residing in Africa when Hondalah Ibn Sefwân Al-kelbi, the governor of that country, appointed him to the office of Kâdhi-l-jund or judge to the army [of Spain]. He was succeeded by Mu’sâwiyyah Ibn Sâleh Al-hadhrami Al-hemsî (from Emessa), whom 'Abdu-r-râhmân sent to Syria for the purpose of inviting to Spain his own sister Ummu-l-asbagh and other members of the family of Umeyyah.

32. ‘Omar Ibn Sharâhîl Al-ma’afiri, surnamed Abû Hafss, a native of Beja, in Spain, succeeded Mu’sâwiyyah; but was shortly after superseded by him. He was again replaced two years after, and died in his office. Al-khoshanî, loco laudato, fo. 14.

33. I think that the words Kâdhi-l-jund, which I have translated by ‘judge to the army,’ mean a judge of the territorial division called jund. (See above, note 26.) Al-khoshanî mentions the names of three other individuals who filled the office of Kâdi during the reign of 'Abdu-r-râhmân; namely, 'Antarah Ibn Falâh, Muhâjîr Ibn ٍناَفِیلٍ (Theophil?) Al-korashi (of the tribe of Koraysh), and Mos‘âb Ibn 'Imrân Al-hamdânî.
The author of the *Ahddithu-l-siydsat wa-l-imdmat* confirms this statement, and adds that Sa‘id Ibn Abi Leylah took up his abode at Cordova for that purpose.

White was the favourite colour of the Beni Umeyyah, as black was assumed by the Beni 'Abbás in opposition to them.

Ad-dákhel means 'the enterer, the conqueror,' not the intruder (intruso), as asserted by Conde, vol. i. p. 161. In addition to the above surname, Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi gives him that of Abi-1-motref. The same historian, who, from the fact of his having lived about a century after the death of that Sultan, must necessarily be entitled to great credit, assigns other dates for the accession and death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán. He places the former on Friday the 11th of Dhi-l-hajjah, A. H. 138; the latter on the 10th of Jumáda the first, A. H. 172. He was twenty-eight years of age when he ascended the throne, and sixty years old when he died. His reign lasted thirty-two years and five months.

The Khalif As-seffáh died in A. H. 136 (A. D. 754), two years before 'Abdu-r-rahmán landed in Spain. It was not him, but his brother Abú Ja'far Al-mansúr, who sent expeditions to that country.

The title of Imám first appears on silver coins of this prince in A. H. 300.

---

CHAPTER III.

1 حلال Halal or Holal; but Al-homaydi (fo. 27) calls her Haurí, i. e. 'the black-eyed.'

2 تعرف بابن إبي شبايلة : من خالله أو من يزيد و من حير سباحة ذا بن ائذا و بن ذا . . : و بايل ذا اذا عسا و اذا سكر

Thus in all the copies; in the Gotha MS. fo. 72, verso, the last verse reads differently:

سباحة ذا و بنا ذا و بنذا . . : و بايل

Instead of Hajr, as in the text, Hojr, one of 'Amru-1-kays' ancestors, is to be read.

3 See vol. i. p. 113, where the introduction of the sect of Málik is said to have happened under Hishám's successor.

4 which cannot be more explicit. M. Reinaud (*Invasion des Sarrasins*, &c., p. 105) and Romey (*Hist. d'Espagne*, vol. iii. p. 299) are of opinion that the Arabs did not take Narbonne on this occasion, but merely entered and plundered its suburbs. The French chroniclers do not mention the fact, and it must also be observed that An-nuwayrí, who enters into some details relating to this expedition, does not plainly state that Narbonne was reduced by the generals of Hishám. His
words are—"In the year 177 (beginning April 17, A.D. 793), Hisham sent his general Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdi-l-wahed Ibn Mugheyth with an army to the country of the Franks. The Moslems penetrated into their territory, and reached as far as Narbonne and Gerona. They began by Gerona, where there was a Frank garrison; Abdu-l-malek slew the greater part of its defenders, and battered down its walls; he was on the point of taking the city, when he [suddenly raised the siege and] marched to Narbonne, where he did the same. He then penetrated far into the territory [of the Franks], oppressed the land of Seritaniyeh (Cerdagne), exterminated its defenders, and put to death its warriors. In this manner Abdu-l-malek remained for several months in the enemy's country, destroying their castles, laying their fields waste, setting fire to the villages, and making marauding incursions far into their country, until the enemy came before him [to implore his mercy]. He then returned [to Cordova], taking with him immense plunder and numberless captives. This was one of the most successful expeditions ever undertaken by the Moslems of Andalus."—(Loco laudato, fo. 448.)

5 The expression translated by 'his Galician vassals' is اليعاهدين من أهل جليفية—but it is not likely that the Galicians should have been employed on such a service, on account of the great distance. Rodericus Toletanus (Hist. Arab. p. 18), who, no doubt, borrowed most of his information from the Arabs, says that it was the Franks (Narbonnenses et ceteri Christiani). On this occasion Hisham is said also to have caused the brazen knockers of the city gates to be taken to Cordova. See Marmol, Hist. de Africa, lib. ii. fo. 100.

6 By 's the castles' or 'land of castles' the historian, whose words are here given, means the province of Bardulia, which, from the number of fortresses erected by the Christians to arrest the progress of the Moslems, began then to be called Castella, whence its present name, 'Castilla la Vieja,' Alava or Alabah, as the Arabs wrote it, still preserves its ancient name. Mr. Shakespear has every where read 'Ilia' instead.

7 The name of this Wizir is variously written in the MSS., some having بكح Bokht, as printed; others, نجد Najdah; the abridgment, نجية Najiah. Mr. Shakespear (p. 87) reads 'Nujabah;' Conde (vol. i. p. 227), 'Bath,' (Bokht?).

8 The same expedition alluded to above, which is said to have ended in the taking of Narbonne.

9 These forces were commanded by 'Abdu-l-kerim Ibn 'Abdi-l-wahed, the brother of 'Abdu-l-malek; but Al-makkari has no doubt confounded here two campaigns, that of 178 and that of 179. Let us hear An-nuwayri. "And in the year 178 (beginning April 6, A.D. 794) Hisham sent an army, under the command of 'Abdu-l-kerim Ibn 'Abdi-l-wahed Ibn Mugheyth, to the country of the Franks (read Basques). 'Abdu-l-kerim invaded Alabah (Alava) and the [land of] castles (Castile), where he collected plunder and made captives. Another army, under the command of his brother 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdi-l-wahed, invaded the land of the Galicians, destroyed their capital هار ملكهم, threw down its churches, and collected considerable spoil. However, as the Moslems were returning from this expedition, their [Christian] guides deceived them, and they were afflicted by a great defeat, in which numbers of them fell by the sword of the enemy, and the army lost all its provisions and baggage. Few only escaped this disastrous affair.
"And in the year 179 (beginning March 26, A.D. 795) Hishâm again sent his general 'Abdu-l-malek with a numerous army to make war against the infidels. This time the Moslems marched until they reached Ashtorkah (Astorga), where the King of the Galicians was, with considerable forces raised in his own dominions, or sent him by the kings his neighbours. On the arrival of 'Abdu-l-malek the Christian king struck his tents and fled; but that general followed him closely, laying waste every thing on his passage, and making his queen prisoner—After this, having heard that the king had fortified himself in a deep valley, 'Abdu-l-malek marched against him, and, having attacked him on Friday, the 27th of Jumâda the 2nd, (A.D. 795,) he defeated him, and made great slaughter among his nobles and knights. This being done, 'Abdu-l-malek returned [to Cordova] in safety. Another army, however, which Hishâm sent from another quarter, also made its entry into Galicia in search of 'Abdu-l-malek; but as the Moslems were returning home with their spoil, after laying waste the country through which they had passed, they were opposed by the army of the Franks, who at first gained a slight advantage over them, and caused the Moslems some loss; but in the end the Moslems were able to extricate themselves, and they arrived safe in their own country."

10 See vol. i. p. 212. Rodericus Toletanus (Hist. Arab. p. 18) says that a new bridge was constructed by Hishâm above the Roman one; but the word جد ' he restored,' used by our author, removes all doubt.

11 Al-khoshani (loco laudato, fo. 204) treats of Zeyád among those who would not accept the office of Kâdí. He does not give the year of his death, but Al-homaydî (Jahwatu-l-muktabis, fo. 91, verso) asserts, on the authority of his master, Ibn Hazm, that it took place in the year 204. Al-makkari gives the life of Zeyád in the fifth book of the first part, among those of illustrious Moslems who left Spain for the East.

12 According to An-nuwayrí, Hishâm died on Thursday, the 13th of Safar of the year 180 (April 27, A.D. 796), at the age of thirty-nine years and four months. If we place his accession in Jumâda the first, A.H. 179, which is the date given by Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi (note 36, p. 424), his reign lasted seven years and eight months.

13 Sakn or Saken Ibn Ibrâhîm was one of the historians of Mohammedan Spain. Ibn Hayyán quotes him frequently in his history of the Beni Umeyyah, fo. 2, 6, et passim.

14 According to Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, the accession of Al-hakem took place on the 14th day of Safar, A.H. 180 (April 28, A.D. 796). Al-homaydî, cited by Casiri (vol. ii. p. 199), says on the 16th.

15 These were Suleymán and 'Abdullah, who had already disputed the throne with his father Hishâm. Defeated in several encounters by their brother, they had been compelled to accept the terms offered to them. Suleymán crossed over to Africa, and settled at Tangiers; 'Abdullah was allowed to reside in Toledo. Compare Conde, vol. i. p. 232, and Casiri, Bib. Arab. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 33.

16 This was not the first invasion of the Franks under this reign. In the year 797 (A.H. 181) they had reduced the cities of Narbonne and Gironne, which Al-hakem in person is said to have retaken.
within the same year. Compare Conde, vol. i. p. 234, and Romey, Hist. d’Espagne, vol. iii. p. 321. An-nuwayrí, under the year 185, mentions the taking of Barcelona by the Franks; but nowhere does he say that they had previously taken Narbonne, and that Al-hakem retook it. Under the year 186 he records the loss of Tutelaylah [Tudela], which, he says, was taken by the Franks, assisted by a rebellious governor of those districts, [Bahlúl Ibn Marzúk ?].

17 The author of the Iktifá says his brother, Al-mundhir; Conde (vol. i. p. 245), his cousin, Casim (Kásim), who, he adds, was the first to disclose to Al-hakem the plans of the conspirators. An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, p. 451) calls him Mohammed Ibn Al-kásim Al-merwáni, and says that he not only informed Al-hakem of the conspiracy against his life and throne, but had spies of that Sultán concealed about the house, that they might hear and report to Al-hakem the intentions and designs of the conspirators, and take their names as they went into the house.

18 According to other authorities the revolt took place in the suburb of Shakandah or Secunda, which adjoined the capital on the southern or south-eastern extremity. See vol. i. p. 206. The author of the Reyhínul-l-’lehib says in the southern suburb, contiguous to that of Secunda, on the opposite (or left) bank of the Guadalquivir.

19 Al-makrizí, in his history of Egypt, records the arrival of the Andalusians in Alexandria and the disturbances which they caused there until they were banished the country. See M. Quatremère’s translation of that historian, art. Alexandrie, fo. 94.

20 It was not the Franks, but the Greeks under Armetas, son of Constantine, who retook the island of Crete in a. d. 961. See Cedrenus, vol. ii. p. 508.

21 The 'ᾲπόχαψ or 'ᾲπόχαψ of the Byzantine historians. Conde (vol. i. p. 254) says that he was born at Fahssu-l-bolút, another town close to Cordova.

22 The life of this theologian is given by Al-makrizí among those of the illustrious Moslems who left Spain for the East (Part V. fo. 101), in nearly the same words as those in the text.

23 An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 449) says that Suleyman landed in Spain in A. H. 182. He was defeated by the troops of his nephew, and compelled to retire to Merida, where he was overtaken, made prisoner, and conveyed to Al-hakem, who put him to death and sent his head to Cordova.

24 All the copies I have consulted read here طرابوطة Tarasínah, a corruption of Turiaso or Turiasone, but this can hardly be the place meant. Mr. Shakespear (p. 89) reads Tarragona. Perhaps طرابوطة Tortosa, a city on the banks of the Ebro, ought to be substituted, as it was about that time besieged by Louis le Débonnaire and relieved by 'Abdu-r-rahmán, whom his father, Al-hakem, had sent to the assistance of the besieged. Compare Conde, vol. i. p. 247, and Cardonne, vol. i. p. 122. An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, p. 45) says, “And in this year لدود ليك Ladhuwik, King of the Franks, marched to attack "Tortosa; but Al-hakem, having received intelligence of his movements, sent against him his eldest son "'Abdu-r-rahmán, who penetrated into his territory, and defeated him before he had set foot on the "land of Islám."
25 The rebellion of the Toledans under this reign is so slightly mentioned by Al-makkari, and so inaccurately described in Conde (vol. i. p. 279), that I think it necessary to supply the deficiency with the text of An-nuwayri.

"In the year 219," says that historian, "'Abdu-r-rahmán sent his son Umeyyah against Toledo, whose inhabitants had revolted some time before. Umeyyah marched thither at the head of considerable forces and besieged the city; he cut down the trees, destroyed the crops, and laid waste every thing in the neighbourhood. Still the people of Toledo persevered in their rebellion; Umeyyah, however, being unable to reduce the city, raised his camp and returned [to Cordova], leaving a portion of his forces at Kalát Rabáh (Calatrava) under the command of an officer named Meysarah, better known by his surname of Fate Abí Ayúb (the page of Abú Ayúb). The people of Toledo, hearing of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's retreat, left the city in large numbers and marched against Meysarah, thinking that they would find him unprepared, and might gain some advantage over him. The contrary, however, happened; for Meysarah, having received intelligence of their movements, prepared to receive them. Having laid in ambush for them on the road to Calatrava, he attacked them, threw them into confusion, and made incredible slaughter in their ranks; some few only of their number succeeded in reaching Toledo. The heads of the slain were then collected and carried before Meysarah, who, seeing them in such numbers, was seized with horror; melancholy lodged in his heart, and he died a few days after.

"In the year 220 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent another army [against Toledo]. The Sultan's troops fought frequently with the inhabitants, but gained no decisive advantage over them. In 221, in consequence of the siege of Calatrava by the rebels of Toledo, all the Sultan's forces assembled and besieged that city, which they kept closely invested until the year 222, when 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent his own brother Al-walid, son of Al-hakem, to take the command of the besieging army. The defenders of Toledo had been so reduced in numbers by the sword, and the privations consequent on so long a siege, that Al-walid had no difficulty in gaining possession of the city, which he took by storm on Saturday, the 8th of Rejbub of the same year. Al-walid ordered the restoration of a strong tower which defended the entrance of the bridge, and which had been destroyed by the command of Al-hakem; and after staying in Toledo until the end of Sha'bán of the year 223, to provide for the government of the place, he returned to Cordova."

26 An-nuwayri gives some interesting details on this campaign, which is also mentioned by Conde, vol. i. p. 247. "In the year 200," he says, "Al-hakem sent out an army against the Franks. The Moslems were commanded by 'Abdu-l-kerím, who marched into the very heart of the [Christian] territory, plundering and laying waste the country, demolishing numbers of their castles, and appropriating to himself the treasures of their owners [or feudal lords]. However, when the Christian king saw what was passing [in his dominions], he wrote to all the kings [or feudal lords] of those districts to come to his help, which they did, hastening to his assistance with all their forces from every part of the Christian world. Thus re-inforced, the Christian king went out to meet the Moslems, and encamped opposite to them on the bank of a river which separated the two hosts. After some days spent in skirmishing, the Moslems wishing to cross the river and the Christians preventing them, 'Abdu-l-kerím removed his camp to some distance from the river; upon which the Christians crossed it, and a battle ensued in which the infidels were defeated with great loss, and compelled to fall back upon the river, against which they were so pressed by the Moslems that few of them escaped captivity or the sword; the greater part of their [feudal] lords, officers, and counts remaining prisoners in the hands of the faithful. After this the Franks again collected in great force to prevent the Moslems crossing the
"river, upon which there were thirteen days of continual skirmishing between the two hosts: at last the "rainy season came on, the river swelled, and 'Abdu-l-kerím, perceiving that it was no longer time "to cross it, raised his camp on the 7th day of Dhi-l-hajjah, and returned to Cordova."—*(Loco laudato, fo. 455.)

There can be no doubt that the above account refers to an engagement which, according to Sebastian of Salamanca, took place on the banks of the river Anceo. "Uno namque tempore unus in loco qui "vocatur Naharon, alter in fluvio Anceo pericrunt," Chron. No. 18. The Arabs, however, are there said to have been worsted.

27 Ibn-l-khattíb, who gives the life of Al-hakem among those of his illustrious Granadians, (no doubt because he visited that city at some time during his reign, perhaps when he was waging war against his brothers,) speaks of this poet, whom he calls 'Abbás Ibn Sáleḥ.

29 Abú 'Abdillah Sufyán Ibn 'Adnán At-thauri, (not At-thuri, as in the text,) a celebrated traditionist, whose life is in Ibn Khallekan (Tyd. Ind. No. 265).

30 This is, no doubt, the Zeyád Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, better known by the surname of Shabattún, who who was Kádi of Cordova in Hishám's time. See above, p. 100.

31 Al-khoshaní (locus laudato, fo. 14) gives the life of Mos'ab Al-hamdání, as well as that of his successor in office, Mohammed Ibn Bashír. The former was the son of 'Imrán, son of Shofa, son of Ka'b, son of Ka'bar, son of Zeyd, son of 'Amru, &c.; he went to Spain before 'Abdu-r-rahmán I., and settled at a place to the north of Almodovar called علیار 'Alyár. He was a favourite of that Sultán, who married a sister-in-law of his. On 'Omar Ibn Sharáhil, see a former note, p. 423.

32 Ibn Bashír had formerly been a Kátit or secretary of Mos'ab Ibn 'Imrán.

33 ثقريف حبیبت تلتنغ بالوجهة عمام و النبطي للتواعب الفيعد و ما شاکل ذلك من الشهوات

34 ردا الباصفر—The ridda was a cloak or mantle worn by faqirs or dervishes. As to the word al-mu'áfar, which I have translated by 'deep yellow,' it may also mean of a tawny colour, like that of the fox, lion, &c.

35 The text says نعل صرارة—that is to say, 'soles of leather tied with strings to the ankle,' which the Spaniards call abarcas.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS. [BOOK VI.

36 A proverbial expression, used to denote excess in any thing.

37 The word translated 'tooth-powder' is سواك, which means any dentifrice whatever, and also a small piece of wood used by the Arabs instead of a tooth-brush.

38 زمار, from zamara, to play the instrument called mizmar or to sing to it, may mean either a flute-player or a musician in general.

39 Mūsa Ibn Semā' was صاحب الخيل or master of the horse to Al-hakem.

40 He was replaced by Faraj Ibn Kenānah Al-kenāni, a native of Shidunah (Sidonia), who had just returned to Spain from a journey to the East. Al-khōshanī (lōco laudato, fo. 24) says that Faraj accompanied 'Abdu-l-kerīm Ibn 'Abdi-l-wāhed in one of his expeditions to Galicia, as general of the vanguard; and that, having been sent on against Astorga, he came up with the Christians and defeated them with great loss. A son of this Faraj, named Ahmmed, is said to have written a history of his own times.

41 The meaning of which, as of most law terms, is not sufficiently explained in the dictionaries.

CHAPTER IV.

1 This 'Obeydullah was the son of 'Abdullah Al-balensi, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmān I. His father was called Al-balensi, or the Valencian, because during his contention for the throne with his brother [Hishām] and nephew [Al-hakem], he had always been favourably received by the inhabitants of that city, who defended his cause to the last. An-nuwayrī describes thus the events here alluded to.

"In the year 224 'Abdu-r-rahmān dispatched an army to the enemy's country under the command of " 'Obeydullah, son of 'Abdullah Al-balensi, who reached Alava and the [land of the] castles and met the " infidels, when, after much hard fighting and great slaughter, the Christians were defeated; such " numbers of them being slain that when their heads were piled up in the field of battle a horseman " could not see his comrade."

'Obeydullah had been twelve years before in command of an expedition to the land of the Franks (Catalonia?), from which he likewise returned victorious.

2 This Fortún Ibn Mūsa and his brother Mūsa Ibn Mūsa, mentioned lower down, belonged to the powerful family of the Tojibites, who had extensive domains in the Thagheir (Aragon). See the extracts from Ibn Hayyān hereafter given.

3 This campaign, the only one which 'Abdu-r-rahmān commanded in person, is mentioned by An- nuwayrī under the year 225. "In this year 'Abdu-r-rahmān in person marched against the infidels
"at the head of considerable forces. Having penetrated into the land of the Galicians, he took several "fortresses, plundered and laid waste the land, made numbers of prisoners, and returned victorious "to Cordova."—Loco laudato, fo. 461.

4 Mùsa Ibn Mùsa, the governor of Tudela, having quarrelled with one of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's courtiers, named خویز ابن موسی Khúz Ibn Muwaffek, threw off the allegiance of that Sultán and made an alliance with Garcia, King of Pamplona. 'Abdu-r-rahmán then sent against him one of his generals, named Al-hárih Ibn Yazígh, who at first gained some slight advantage over that rebel; but, having fallen into an ambush prepared by his enemy, was himself taken prisoner and his army destroyed. Being anxious to revenge the defeat which his arms had sustained, 'Abdu-r-rahmán sent his own son Mohammed at the head of considerable forces. Mohammed besieged Mùsa in Tudela, and compelled him to sue for peace. He then directed his arms against Pamplona, defeated the Christians, and killed their king, Garcia. An-nuwayrí, loco laudato, fo. 460.

M. Romey, after Conde, has erroneously placed these events in the reign of Mohammed; he has also laboured to identify the Muza Ben Zeyad El Gedáí of Conde (vol. i. p. 288) with the Mùsa Ibn Mùsa mentioned in this passage. In this, as in many other instances, the French writer, notwithstanding his extensive reading and sound criticism, has been led into error by the Spanish translator.

5 The Arabs give the name of Majús indifferently to all the nations inhabiting the northern parts of Europe.

6 Mehriyyah is the name for a camel of a very fine breed which is mostly to be found in Africa.

7 M. Romey (vol. iii. p. 434) says that Al-ghazzúl means 'the composer of gazelles,' and that Yahya was so called because he excelled in that species of poetry. Such, however, is not the fact. Yahya was so called owing to his personal beauty; it is so stated by Al-makkari, Part I. book v. fo. 131, verso, where he gives the life of that individual.

8 An-nuwayrí furnishes us with some interesting details respecting these people.

"In the year 230 the Majús went out of the remote districts of Andalus against the territory of the "Moslems. They first showed themselves at Lisbon in Dhl-hajjah of the year 229 (Aug. or Sept. "A. d. 844). After remaining in that city for about thirteen days, during which time they had many "severe battles with the Moslems, they marched to تادس Cadiz, and thence to "Shidanah, where they fought a great battle with the Moslems. From thence they advanced "against Seville, where they arrived on the 8th of Moharram (Sept. 24, A. d. 844), and encamped "at twelve parasangs from that city. Four days after, on the 12th of Moharram (Sept. 28), the "Moslems went out against them; but they were defeated with great slaughter. The Majús then came "closer to the city, and encamped at the distance of two miles from it. Again did the citizens of Seville "go out to fight the enemy, but they were a second time defeated with great loss in killed and "prisoners, and the sword of the Majús was not lifted either from man or beast until they actually "gained possession of the city. This last defeat happened on the 14th day of Moharram (Sept. 30). "After staying in Seville one day and one night, the Majús departed to their ships.

"Meanwhile the troops of the Sultán were marching against them, which being known by the Majús, "they went forward to meet them, and a bloody conflict ensued; but the Moslems having summoned up
"all their courage, fought with desperation, and drove them to their ships, after slaying about seventy of
their number. The Moslems allowed them to embark unmolested and withdrew from them. Soon
after another body of troops, sent by the Amir 'Abdu-r-rahmán, made its appearance in the same
districts, upon which the Majús [left their ships and] attacked them with great fury, and obliged them
to retreat. The Moslems, however, returned to the attack, and on the 2nd of Rabi' the first
(Nov. 16, a. d. 844) fought with them a second time. Provisions came in from every district, and
the army was swelled by volunteers; the Majús were attacked and defeated with the loss of about five
hundred men, and four of their vessels, which, after being emptied of all their valuables, were set
on fire.

"The Majús then went to لسأ (Leslah?), and surprised شينبأ (Shinebá?). They landed on an
island close to توديس (Cadiz?), where they proceeded to divide the spoils which they had taken;
but, whilst they were thus engaged, the Moslems sailed up the river and killed two of their men.
From thence the Majús marched to Shidúnah, where they arrived by night, taking possession of
all provisions and stores they found, and making captives of the inhabitants. The Majús remained two
days at Shidúnah; but hearing that 'Abdu-r-rahmán's fleet had arrived at Seville, they proceeded to
Liblah (Niebla), which they surprised and sacked; thence they went to أكسونبأ، لسأ [lege الشونبية
Okunobah (Ossonoba); thence to باجة (Beja); and lastly to أسونبأ، Lishbúnah
(Lisbon). This place was the last where they committed their ravages; for they sailed away and
nothing more was heard of them for some time."

9 See vol. i. p. 121 of this translation, where Zaryáb is said by mistake to have entered Spain under
the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. I find that Al-khoshání, in his history of the Kádis of Cordova,
fo. 206, writes his name thus, زيراب Ziryáb.

10 This account of Zaryáb, which the author of an improved edition of Al-makkári in my possession
intercalated into 'Abdu-r-rahmán's reign, may be found in the sixth book of the first part, fo. 217, of the
original work, together with many other interesting anecdotes respecting that celebrated musician.
Zaryáb is there said to have left eight sons, 'Abdu-r-rahmán, 'Obeydullah, Yahya, Ja'far, Mohammed,
Kásim, Ahmed, Hasan, and two daughters, Hamdúnah and 'Aliyyah, the latter of whom was married
to the Wizir Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz.

11 The word ma'ríf, used in this sense of a gratuity or sum to be received on certain festivals of the year, is not to be found in our dictionaries.

12 نوروز nauzus and مهرجان mahraján are two Persian words having the meaning given to them in the
translation.

13 All the copies I have seen give this passage incorrectly, except that belonging to the library of Gotha,
which has it as above. This induces me to alter the translation as follows: "The same is related of
Ibrahim Al-maussili, who said that the Jinn used to dictate to him his admirable tune called "Al-makhūrī."

mor dustang and murtak are two Persian words, both meaning 'litharge,' a semi-crystalline protoxide of lead which is obtained in separating silver from lead ores.

عيد عنصرة is the feast of Pentecost.

حذاء is a kind of waistcoat, called in Spanish 'aljuba' and 'chupa' also. Golius interprets the word malham by 'genus vestis pannive,' and mulahham in Persian means also a species of garment and a silk cloth. It is likely that it denotes some article of dress worn close to the skin. As to the word سحر which I have translated by 'warm,' I have nowhere found its meaning explained. One of the copies reads سحر.

Al-makkari gives the life of Yahya Ibn Yahya Al-leythi in the fifth book of the first part, fo. 96, as well as that of his son Mohammed.

See vol. i. p. 113 and the corresponding notes.

An-nuwayri puts the death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán on the night of Thursday, the 3rd of Rabi' the first, a.h. 238; but he adds that other writers fixed it in the ensuing month of Rabi' the second. Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi gives the latter date, and adds that he was sixty-two years old when he died; so do Ibn Habib (fo. 157), Ibnu-l-khattib (opud Casiri, vol. ii. p. 199), Mohammed Ibn Ibráhim, the author of the Iktifá, and others. Al-homaydi is the only author who puts it on the last day of Safar. See Conde, vol. i. p. 285; Casiri, vol. ii. p. 199.

He is sometimes called Abú-l-modhaffer, which means likewise 'the father of the victorious.'

As-soyútti, in his Tūrikhu-l-kholafi or 'history of the Khalifs' (Brit. Mus., No. 7325, fo. 230), says that 'Abdu-r-rahmán introduced into Spain the knowledge of [Greek] philosophy. He compares him with Al-mámún in love for the sciences and anxiety to procure the works of ancient philosophers.

See vol. i. pp. 110, 233, and the corresponding notes.

Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi and Ibn Habib allude to a magnificent palace surrounded by gardens which this Sultán caused to be erected on the outskirts of Cordova.

See Rodericus Toletanus (Hist. Arab. p. 23). An-nuwayri (loco laudato, fo. 463) says that he was the first who conveyed good spring water to Cordova, by means of pipes, and built a large cistern or reservoir for the use of the public.
As-soyútti (Tárikhu-l-kholafti, Brit. Mus., fo. 230) says that 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. was the first Sultán of his race who introduced into Spain the use of the ṭirāz (or royal robes with the Khalif’s name woven into the pattern), and who established a mint in Cordova. "Before his time," he adds, "there was no coinage in Spain, all silver or gold money being taken thither from the East." As-soyútti, however, was mistaken when he made this latter statement. As early as the year 139, that is to say, one year after the establishment of the dynasty of Ummeyyah in Spain, coins were struck at Cordova. I possess a silver one bearing the following inscription: In the name of God, this dirhem was struck at Medinat Al-andalus (Cordova) in 139. 'Abdu-r-rahmán was also the first," says An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 461), "who had a number of Faquíhs or theologians attached to his suite, and made them dispute in his presence on points of controversial divinity."

An-nuwayrí says only eighty-seven, forty-five of whom were males.

Elsewhere called Tarab.
This expedition of Músá Ibn Músá is placed by An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 463) in the year 243.


The incursions made by the Northmen under this reign are thus described by An-nuwayrí. "In the year 245 the Majús went out in their ships to Andalus; they reached as far as Seville and set fire to its mosque; they then crossed over to Africa, and, after plundering the cities on that coast, returned to Andalus and landed [on the coast of Murcia]. Having defeated the people of Tudmín in an encounter, they took the castle of Orihuela, and plundering several incursions into the interior, and took plunder and prisoners, after which they set sail and went away. They were, however, attacked at sea by Mohammed's fleet, which took two of their vessels and sank two more. The Majús, irritated at their loss, renewed the attack, when several Moslems died martyrs for the faith [in the conflict]. The ships of the Majús sailed on their course until they reached Barcelona, which they surprised, making its king, Garcia, the Frank, their prisoner. Garcia, however, obtained his liberty by paying ninety thousand dinārs for his ransom."

Alfonso III. is the king called Ludherik by our author; for, as I have observed elsewhere (vol. i. p. 325, note 60), the Arabian writers thought that all the kings of Asturias were descended from the last Gothic monarch.

The abridgment reads the son of Unecoh, as printed; all other copies, including that of Gotha, read Ibn Obechó. There can be no doubt, however, that the individual here mentioned was no other than Garzeanus or Garcia, surnamed Enecho (Iúigo) and Aristá, "Aphros, who about that time revolted against his liege lord Ordoño I., son of Ramiro (not of Alfonso, as in the text), and proclaimed himself independent, in conjunction with Músá Ibn Músá, whose daughter he is said to have espoused (Sebast. Salmant. Chron. No. 26). Yet, as this same Garzeanus, whom Rodericus Toletanus (lib. v. cap. 21) calls Enecho, is said to have been slain in the battle of Albelda (a corruption of Albechó) or Clavijo some years before, he cannot be the sovereign intended.

It is not quite clear that Alfonso III. of Leon was the king here designated under the general appellation of Ludherik. His father and predecessor, Ordoño, was still living in 865.

Conde (vol. i. p. 302) places about this time a maritime expedition which left Cordova for the coast of Galicia. But An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 464) places it seven years before, under the year 246.
The following are the words of the latter historian. "In the year 246 (beginning March 27, A. D. 860) Mohammed ordered the building of several vessels at Cordova. After descending the river to Seville they entered the ocean, and sailed for the shores of Galicia; but a storm at sea scattered them, and scarcely two of their number returned."

No account of this rebellion is to be found in my copy of An-nuwayri, which, like its original in the library of Leyden, wants a few pages; but that author records several other insurrections of the people of Merida, the most formidable of which happened in 213, under the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahman. "In the year 213 the people of Merida put to death their governor, and civil war broke out among them. At the news of their revolt, 'Abdu-r-rahman sent against them an army which besieged that city, destroyed their plantations, and cut down the [fruit] trees, until they were compelled to return to their obedience and give the Sultan hostages for their future good behaviour. The army then left them, after pulling down the city walls. In order, however, to prevent any further resistance on their part, and from fear they should be tempted to repair the fortifications, 'Abdu-r-rahman directed his officers to have the stones thrown into the river; but when the people of Merida saw this, they returned to rebellion, seized on their governor, and repaired the city walls, which they made even stronger than before. In the year 214, 'Abdu-r-rahman dispatched another army to Merida with the hostages given by the inhabitants; but, although the city was closely invested by the royal troops, they could not reduce it. At last, in the year 218, 'Abdu-r-rahman sent a third army, which took the city, although the principal actors in the rebellion had time to escape. In their number was a man named Mahmud Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbar Al-máridí (a native of Merida), who fled with numbers of the inhabitants to a castle called "Monsalut, and from thence deserted to Galicia, &c."

An-nuwayri goes on to relate how Mahmud, who is no other than the Mahzmoth of Sebastianus Salmanticensis (Chron. No. 22), having taken a castle, called Santa-Christina, which belonged to Alfonso III., that monarch marched against him, defeated him in a pitched battle, and put him to death in the month of Rejeb, A. H. 225.

This last expedition was directed in the first place against Sarogossa, where a son of Músa Ibn Músa, named Lob, had just revolted. The royal troops under the command of Al-mundhir laid waste the environs of that city, and took by storm the castle of Rota (the Rotalyehud of Conde, vol. i. p. 299). From thence the army went to the village Borja, then to Lerida, and lastly to the district called Birtunnieh, from whence they penetrated into Castile and Alava.—An-nuwayri, loco laudato, fo. 460.

Mohammed died either on the last day of Safar, or on the first day of Rabi' the first. Al-homaydi (fo. 6) and Conde (vol. i. p. 316) give the former of these dates; Ibnu-l-khattib (apud Casiri, vol. ii. p. 199), Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi (fo. 62), and Ibn Habib (fo. 147), the latter; An-nuwayri (loco laudato, fo. 464) gives the one and the other. He was surnamed Al-amin 'ala-illah (he who trusts in God).
CHAP. IV.] NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS. 437

43 Ibn Abi Sheybah is, I believe, Mohammed Ibn 'Othmán (Ibn Abi Sheybah) Al-kúfi, to whom Háji Khalfah, voc. Túrikh, attributes a general history.

44 The life of this doctor is to be found also in the fifth book of the first part, among those of the illustrious Moslems who left Spain for the East; but the author of the improved edition of Al-makkari, in my possession, has in this instance, as in many others, mixed the biographical notices scattered through the work with the narrative of events.

46 An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 465) says that Al-mundhir, to whom he gives the kunyá or appellative of Abú-l-hakem, was publicly sworn at Cordova three days after the death of his father. His mother's name was Iyyal (stag), not اينل Athl or Athol, as is afterwards stated.

46 Ibn Hayyán (fo. i.), Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, and Al-homaydi, agree in placing the death of Al-mundhir at Bishter or Yobaster. The first-named historian says, "Al-mundhir was slain close to the eastern gate of Bishter, whilst he was besieging [‘Omar] Ibn Hafssún [in that fortress]." An-nuwayrí is the only author I know who says that Al-mundhir died during the siege of Toledo. His words are as follow: "Al-mundhir then took a most solemn oath never again to make peace [with ‘Omar Ibn Hafssún] or raise the siege of Toledo,—even if he should be obliged to transfer to his camp the markets of Cordova,—until that rebel should be in his power. He accordingly besieged him in Toledo, and died during the siege."

Ibn Hazm, in his Noktatu-l-'arus or 'history of the Beni Umeyyah of Spain,' extracts from which may be found in Ibn Bashkiwald, accuses 'Abdullah of having caused the death of his brother Al-mundhir by bribing his surgeon to poison the lancet with which he bled him, which circumstance would lead to the belief that 'Abdullah was not killed in action, as the word بَلْتُ used by Ibn Hayyán and other historians would seem to indicate. Ibn Hazm, however, agrees with the above writers in placing the death of Al-mundhir at the camp before Bishter. Conde (vol. i. p. 324) says that Al-mundhir was slain in battle near Hisn-Webdeh (Huete); but what reliance can be placed in the statement of a writer who makes 'Omar Ibn Hafssún die in 720, of wounds received during the reign of Mohammed, when it is an ascertained fact that he lived during the whole of 'Abdullah's reign, and was not killed until A. H. 306?—who gives him a son called Kaleb, fighting battles with the Sultán's troops in various parts of the peninsula; whereas 'Omar Ibn Hafssún had no such son?—who makes Navarre, Toledo, Catalonia, and Granada, together and at once the theatre of that robber's exploits; when he is known seldom to have made incursions beyond the provinces of Malaga and Jaen, where his principal force was? The origin of all these blunders,—which, I need not observe, have found their way into every modern history of Spain,—lies in a nut-shell. 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, being a Christian renegade and at the head of the Muwallad party, is frequently mentioned in history under the surname of كلب kelb (dog), coupled with his more usual appellation of Ibn Hafssún; Conde, therefore, who had a very imperfect knowledge of the Arabic language, seeing the words كلب ابن حفصون 'the dog Ibn Hafssún,' mistook kelb for a proper name, and gave 'Omar a son named Kaleb ben Hafsun, who fights at Toledo, in Navarre, in Galicia, and every where, and who, I need not repeat, is no other than 'Omar Ibn Hafssún himself.
It now remains to ascertain the situation of 'Omar's favourite stronghold, the castle of Yobashter or Bishter, (for it may be pronounced both ways, according as it is found written بيشتر or بيشتر). Idrisi mentions a town called Bishter in the district of Rayyah, that is to say, in the province of Malaga, which was so called because the Arabs from Ray or Reistán settled in it. Al-homaydi (Jadhwatu-i-muktabis, fo. 54) says that Bishter or بيشتر Yobashter, as the word is invariably written in the Bodleian manuscript, was a castle حصن من عيل ربة of the district of Rayyah, and he also mentions a strong fortress near Malaga called Bobashter, which word may easily be transformed into Yobashter by the single addition of a point. See the Appendix to this volume, p. xviii. Conde (vol. i. p. 295) says that 'Omar's favourite stronghold was a castle called Yebaster, in the mountains of Ronda; and he again mentions a place so called belonging to the Beni Idris of Malaga (vol. ii. p. 16). The same author states in his notes to the geography of Idrisi (p. 44) that Bishter was the modern town of Vilches, situated between the rivers Guadalen and Guarizzaz, which is erroneous, for the district of Rayyah never extended beyond what is now called the province of Malaga. Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi frequently mentions a castle called بيشتر in the neighbourhood of Malaga. Lastly, Ibn Hayyán, who writes Bishter also, mentions it in a manner which leaves no doubt as to its being the same place which other authors write Yobashter, Bobashter, or Bobashter, all the difference consisting in the transposition of the first letter of that word and the addition of one point.

In one passage, especially, he speaks of it in very explicit terms. He says that after the taking of Hisn-Belay (Espeluy) by 'Abdullah in a. u. 278, 'Omar fled to Archidona; but that the inhabitants of that town having refused him admittance, he went further to Bishter, where he was soon besieged by 'Abdullah. From the above and many similar passages which I might adduce, I am inclined to think that 'Omar's castle was situated somewhere between Archidona and Ronda, in that mountain chain extending from Granada to Gibraltar, and which, as well as the neighbouring districts of Malaga, Jaen, Granada, Seville, and Algesiras, was the scene of that robber's exploits; but whether Bishter or Yobashter is to be read, is a point which it is almost impossible to settle, as no place bearing either name remains at present in those parts, with the exception of a small hamlet called Abistar in the Axarquia or mountainous part of Malaga, which might very well be the place called Bishter by the Arabs. However, as the copy of Ibn Hayyán, which is both ancient and faithful, has always بيشتر Bishter, I should have been tempted to adopt this reading, had not the four copies of Al-makkari, which I have used, and the Gotha MS., afforded me the reading بيشتر Yobashter or بيشتر Yobaster.

47 Immediately after the above notice of the public officers at the court of 'Abdullah, Ibn Hayyán proceeds to give a detailed account of all the rebellions and wars by which the long reign of that Sultan was troubled, and the names and genealogies of the principal actors in them. As this period of Spanish history is but imperfectly known, notwithstanding its great interest,—for it was then that the two hostile races in the peninsula, the Arabs and the Muwallads, or people of mixed blood, fought for the possession of power,—I here give some extracts from that valuable work.

**Inauguration of 'Abdullah.**

"On the death of Al-mundhir, 'Abdullah returned to Cordova, carrying the body of his brother upon a camel. He arrived at the palace, called Mun'yat An-na'ūrah, situated on the banks of the Guadalquivir
"below Cordova on Sunday, fourteen days before the end (the 15th) of Safar.
A. H. 275.

On the following morning at dawn of day 'Abdullah removed to the royal palace in Cordova, and,
"having read the funeral service over the body of his brother, caused it to be interred in the cemetery
"called Ar-raudhah, within the palace. On the same day he sat to receive the oaths of the public
"officers and high functionaries of the state, and sent messengers into the provinces, that the governors
"might do the same.

Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, however, says that the inauguration of 'Abdullah took place on Saturday,
"thirteen days before the end (the 16th) of Safar; and another historian, named Saken Ibn Ibráhim,
"says that he was proclaimed by the troops on the same day his brother Al-mundhir died, that is to say,
"on the 15th of Safar, but that he did not enter Cordova till the 17th.

"Names of those individuals who resisted the authority of the Amir 'Abdullah, or revolted against him,
"kindling the fire of civil war in the provinces of his empire.

"Deysam Ibn Is'huk.—This individual took possession of Lora and Murcia; he was fond of
"poets, and very generous towards them. One called 'Obaydis wrote verses in his praise.

" 'Obeydullah Ibn Umeyyah Ibn Ash-shalíyyah.—This rebel assumed authority in the mountains of
"Somontan, near Jaen. He went so far as to lay his hands on Cazlona and other
"important cities. Defeated by 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdullah, one of the generals of 'Abdullah, he was
"obliged to hide himself; but he appeared again and proclaimed 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, to whom he
"became connected by giving his own daughter in marriage to Ja'far, one of the sons of that chieftain.

"He was at last reduced by 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., who gave him Cordova for a residence and employed
"him in his army."—Compare Casiri (vol. ii. p. 47), and Conde, who with his usual inaccuracy designates
this chieftain under three or more different names, calling him at p. 331 (vol. i.) "Obeidula ben Umia,

"Ibrdhán Ibn Hejij ('or Hajiij) Ibn 'Omayr Al-lakhmí, Lord of Seville and Carmona, where he ruled
"for many years, almost independent. He had a body-guard of five hundred horsemen, appointed the
"Kálís and public officers in his dominions, and used the robes called tirdz inscribed with his own name,
"while he affected obedience to the Sultán, whose vassal he acknowledged himself to be on every
"occasion. He was fond of science, and liberal towards the poets who visited his court."—See Casiri,

"'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Merwín Ibn Yúnás, better known as Ibnu-l-jalikí (the son of the Galician) and
"Al-morédi (the native from Kal'ah Morédl). This chief revolted at Badajoz, where he fixed his court,
"embracing the party of the Muwallads against the Arabs. He was besieged in Merida and obliged to
"surrender. He revolted again, seized on the castle of Alhanje, and was one of the chiefs who
"fought under Sa'dán Ibn Fatah As-sarnabeki against Hásim Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz, 'Abdullah's
"general, whom they defeated at a place called Karkar. This 'Abdu-r-rahmán peopled Badajoz
"and surrounded it with walls. A grandson of his, named 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed, lived some time
"in Cordova at the house of the hostages and succeeded his grandfather and uncle in the
"government of that city.

"'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Abi-l-jauwád, Lord of Beja, Mertola, and the adjoining territories, made common
"cause with the former and with Abú Bekr, Lord of Ossonoba, and, like them, embraced the party of
" the Muwallads.
" Bekr Ibn Yahya Ibn Bekr.—This man was the grandson of a Christian named دانُب Zadlaf. His
" father, Yahya Ibn Zadlaf, rose in favour of the pretensions of the Muwallads, and fixed his quarters at
" Santa Maria de Algarbe, in the district of Ossonoba, where he built a strong fortress, the gates
" of which were lined with iron. His son Bekr, who succeeded him, was pardoned by 'Abdullah, who
" granted him the government of Silves. He nevertheless continued to lend his assistance to the
" 'Ajenis (Christians) and Muwallads, whose cause he had espoused. He died at the beginning of the
" reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III.

" Mohammed Ibn لقب Lob Ibn Músá Ibn Músá Ibn Fortún Al-kasawi.—This chief revolted
" in Aragon at the commencement of 'Abdullah's reign. He besieged and took طلسم تدلة Tudela, and put to
" death its governor, Mohammed Ibn طلسم Tamlas. Having enlisted a number of adventurers, he
" commenced war with his sovereign, and upon one occasion marched against Cordova. He fought
" also with the infidels of Alava and Pamplona bordering upon his dominions, and defeated them in
" several encounters, and chiefly in 278. He next gained possession of the city of Toledo in 283, and,
" leaving his son Lob to command in his absence, returned to his states of Aragon. As he was
" besieging Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán At-tojibi in Saragossa, he was killed in a sally made by the
" garrison, in Ramadhán, 285, and his head was sent to Cordova. His son Lob returned to the
" obedience of the Sultán, who granted him سبيله أب the government of Tudela, Tarazona, and the
" surrounding districts, wherein he kept himself faithful, until he was killed in battle with the Christians

The similarity of the names of the members of this illustrious family has led to much confusion among the
writers of Spanish history, who have frequently mistaken Mohammed Ibn Lob (or the Abenlope of
the Cronica General) for his son Lob Ibn Mohammed (Lope). Conde has added to, instead of
diminishing, the confusion, thereby leading into error Romey, who, with all his acuteness and sound
criticism, has been unable to explain satisfactorily this period of history. See Hist. d’Espagne, vol. iii.
chap. xiii. In order, therefore, to clear up the many difficulties of this intricate period of history, I here
subjoin the genealogical tree of the Bení Fortún or Bení Lob.

Fortún

     | Músá
     
     
     
Fortún
     
     
     
     | Músá
     
     
     
Músá

Lob

Mohammed
(killed in 285)

Mutref
(takes Toledo in 283.)

(killed in 294.)

" The sons of Músá Ibn Dhí-ň-nún.—These were three, Yahya, Al-fath, and Mutref. They were the
" sons of a Berber chief, named Músá Ibn Dhí-ň-nún, governor of Santiberia, a descendant
" from As-samh, one of the Berber chiefs who were present at the conquest of Andalus. The influence
"of this family originated thus: Suleymán, the father of Músa, was living at Santiberia when a favourite
"eunuch of the Sultán 'Abdullah fell dangerously ill, on his return from the frontiers of Aragon;
"Suleymán received him in his house, and took care of him; with which the eunuch was so well pleased
"that he prevailed upon his master the Sultán to confer on Suleymán the government of his native town
"and the neighbouring district. Notwithstanding the rebellion of his son Músa, who revolted several
times against his sovereign, Suleymán remained faithful until 274 (beginning May 27, A.D. 887),
"when he died. Músa succeeded to his father's estates; but he was soon after killed in an engagement
"with the troops of the Sultán.

"Yahya succeeded his father Músa in part of his feudal dominions, and at first maintained fidelity to
"his sovereign 'Abdullah. At the time when Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Al-bekrí Ar-riyádí revolted
"against the Sultán and seized on the fortress of Malagon, it was he who marched against him,
"made him prisoner, and sent his head to Cordova, in Rabí the second of the year 303 (Nov. or Dec.
"A.D. 915). As a reward for this signal service, Yahya received a royal diploma conferring on him the
"tenure of his father's estates; but having afterwards shown symptoms of disobedience, 'Abdu-r-
"rahmán III. sent against him his Wizir 'Abdu-l-hamid Ibn Basíl, who took him prisoner, and
"sent him to Cordova with his family, in 321 (A.D. 933). He died at Saragossa in 325 (beginning
"Nov. 18, A.D. 936).

"Al-fat'h Ibn Músa was Lord of Uclés, and made war on the people of Toledo. Having upon one
"occasion gained a signal victory over them, he followed his fugitives with too much ardour, and was
"killed by a soldier named Al-akra' (the bald). This happened in 303.

"Mutref Ibn Músa inherited from his father the town of Webdeh (Huete), which he
"strengthened with new fortifications. He was taken prisoner by Sancho, King of Navarre, and taken to
"Pamplona; but he afterwards made his escape with only three of his followers. He was present at the
"battle of Al-handik, near Zamora, in 327 (A.D. 939), and distinguished himself by his conduct. As a
"reward for his gallant behaviour on that occasion, 'Abdu-r-rahmán conferred on him the government of
"Medinat-Al-faraj (now Guadalajara), where he died in 333 (beginning Aug. 23, A.D. 944).

"The Bení Al-muhájjir or Tújibites, who aimed at independence in Saragossa. The origin of this
"family is thus related. When the Bení Kasi rose in Aragon, during the reign of the Amir Mohammed,
"'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, son of 'Abdullah, son of Al-muhájjir, chief of the powerful
"tribe of the Tújibites, was intrusted by that Sultán with the arduous task of re-establishing his
"authority in those parts. Having succeeded in part, he made himself master of Saragossa; but,
"being deprived of the government of that city by 'Abdullah, Mohammed's successor, he rose in
"arms, together with a son of his, named Ábú Yahya Mohammed, and, in 276, surprised and put to
dead the governor appointed by the Sultán. After a variety of events which it would take too long
to relate, 'Abdullah deemed it prudent to temporize with him, and, in the year 278, granted him
"the government of Saragossa, which he held till the time of his death in 313 (beginning March 28,
"A.D. 925).

"Mohammed Ibn 'Abdú-r-rahmán Al-khódat', better known by the surname of Sheikhu-l-islámi, rose
"in the castle of Callosa (Callosa?), in the province of Tudmír. Having made his submission about
"the close of the reign of 'Abdullah, he obtained the government of the districts which had been
"the theatre of his rebellion. He revolted again under 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., who dispatched an army
"against him. He was besieged in the castle of Alicante and compelled to make his
"submission; but shortly after he revolted a third time. Having been taken prisoner by Ahmed Ibn
Ishâk, the Korayshite, one of 'Abdu-r-rahmân's generals, he was taken to Cordova, where he died in 323 (A.D. 935), at the age of one hundred.

'Abi Wadhâdâh 'Abdu-r-rahmân. This individual was the son of 'Abdullah, son of Mohammed, son of Al-huseyn, son of Wadhâhâh, son of Yahya Ibn Wadhâdâh, a mauli of the Khalif 'Abdu-I-malek Ibn Merwân. During the civil war he took possession of Lorca, in the province of Tudmîr, and was sometimes obedient and sometimes rebellious under the reign of 'Abdullah and part of that of his grandson 'Abdu-r-rahmân, until the latter gave him the city of Cordova as a residence and employed him in his armies. He died in 322.

'Abi Farânak or Farânik Zu'âlal, son of Ya'ysh, son of 'Abdi-l-Isfandiyâr. He rose in a castle of his called Umm-Ja'âr, in the Jauf or north-western districts of Andalus. He maintained his independence for upwards of twenty years, when he died, and was succeeded by his nephew 'Abdullâh Ibn 'Isâ Ibn Kûttî, who ruled unmolested for five years, until 'Abdu-r-rahmân III. reduced him to obedience.

'As-sarnâbäki elsewhere written السربنابي As-sarnâbäki Sa'dân Ibn Fatah. This man, who was the friend and ally of 'Abdu-r-rahmân Al-jâliki (see above, p. 439), took possession of a castle called قبورونة between the Tagus and the city of Kolimbria (Coimbra). He was taken prisoner by the Majûd (Northmen) in one of their incursions during the reign of Mohammed. A Jewish merchant paid his ransom, and freed him, intending to make a good profit; but far from acknowledging his gratitude to him, 'As-sarnâbäki escaped from the Jews, and took refuge in the mountains between Coimbra and Santarem, where he led a life of plunder, attacking alike Christians and Moslems, until Alfonso, King of Galicia, took him prisoner and put him to death.

'Ibnu-s-setâm. His name was Mundhir, and he was the son of Ibrâhim, son of Mohammed, son of As-setâm, son of 'Abî 'Ikrimah, son of Yezîd, son of 'Abdullâh, a mauli of the Khalif Suleyman. Ibn 'Abdi-I-malek. He raised the standard of revolt at a town of the territory of Shidûnîah, which is still called Medinât Benî Selîm from the name of his family. This happened during the reign of 'Abdullâh, and he persevered in his rebellion until a mameluke of his, named علند Alando, killed him by treachery. He was succeeded in command by Walîd Ibn Walîd, who in the course of time submitted to the Khalif 'Abdu-r-rahmân.

'Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-I-kerîm Ibn Elyds rose in rebellion in a castle of the province of Sidonia, called ورد Ward, where he maintained himself during the whole reign of 'Abdullâh, until 'Abdu-r-rahmân III. compelled him to reside in Cordova, where he died, and left posterity.

'Sawwâr Ibn Hamdân Al-mohâribi Al-kaysî, chief of the Arabian party in the province of Elvira, rose against 'Abdullâh in the year 276. He was the friend and companion of Yahya Ibn Sukâlah, the first Arab of those parts who made war against the Muwallads and 'Ajemîs; and he succeeded him in command when that chief was treacherously slain by the Muwallads of Elvira. The first step of Sawwâr was to revenge the death of his friend. He marched against the Muwallads, who were commanded by Nâbîl and Shokhays, and, having overtaken them near مشت شاكر Montexicar (Montexicar), defeated them with great slaughter. This done, Sawwâr proceeded towards the castles of the ملالي renegades and Christians, and reduced them one after the other, slaying all those of the enemy who fell into his hands. The Muwallads then implored the assistance of Ja'd Ibn 'Abdi-I-ghâfir, governor of Jaen, who granted their request, on condition that they should return to the allegiance of the Sultân. Having united his forces with those of the Muwallads, Ja'd marched against
"Sawwár; but he was defeated and taken prisoner. Meanwhile 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, hearing of the unhappy plight of his partisans in the province of Elvira, hastened thither at the head of considerable forces; but he was defeated in a pitched battle, and obliged to fly to his strongholds, leaving his lieutenant, named Hafss Ibn Al-marrah, in command of his forces. Shortly after, in 277, Sawwár fell into an ambush prepared by the Muwallads, and was killed. His body was taken to the capital of the district of Elvira, where the excitement produced by the sight of his mangled corpse was such that it was cut into small pieces and distributed among the women, most of whom ate of it."—(Compare the narrative of Casiri, Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 36, and that of Conde, vol. i. p. 333. The latter, however, says that Sawwár was defeated and slain by 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Bedr, one of the generals of 'Abdullah.)

"Khayr Ibn Shákir, one of the most active and enterprising chiefs of the Muwallad party, who were commanded by 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, rose at Shaudar (now Xodar), in the province of Jaen, and made war against the Arabs of that district. He was killed in 277, by an assassin paid by 'Omar Ibn Hafssún.

"'Omar Ibn Modhammad Al-haterúlí, better known under the surname of Al-málchí, because he was originally from a town of the province of Jaen called Maléhah. He was a Berber, and a common soldier. Having gained possession of a castle called Monteleon, in the above province, he defended himself against the generals of 'Abdullah until, being deserted by some of his friends, he was taken prisoner and conveyed to Cordova, where he died.

"Fehr Ibn Asîl, a soldier of the Sultan's body-guard, who joined the rebels during the civil war. Having a brother in prison as a hostage, he planned the following stratagem for his liberation. One day while the prisoner was walking out, with one of his keepers, Fehr attacked and slew the latter, and released his brother. After this they made themselves masters of a castle called Bes, in which they defended themselves against the troops of 'Abdullah. At last, another rebel, named Sa'id Ibn Walid Ibn Mustanah, who rose in the district of Beghah, and had conceived an enmity against him, succeeded in taking him prisoner and sending him to Cordova, where, by the command of 'Abdullah, he was nailed to a stake by one of the gates of the royal palace, called Bâdu-l'-'adal (the gate of justice).

"Sa'id Ibn Hudheyli.—The rebellion of this individual happened in the castle of Monteleon, in the province of Jaen. The Sultan 'Abdullah having sent against him some troops under the command of one of his generals, named 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Umeyyah, he defended himself gallantly; but was at last obliged to capitulate. He again revolted and joined 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, Sa'id Ibn Walid, and other chiefs of the Muwallad party, in an attack upon Jaen; but Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah, who commanded in that city, went out against them and defeated them with great slaughter near a fortress called Hisn-Jerishah, in the neighbourhood of Jaen.

"Sa'id Ibn Walid Ibn Mustanah, the friend and companion of 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, rose in the district of Beghah, in the province of Jaen. He had four castles of admirable strength, where he resided habitually. The names of these were Al-gháliyah, An-nadhrrah, La-kúneh, and Akót. He was assisted in his rebellion by the three sons of Mattrîh, —Hářith, 'Aún, and Tâlút. The Sultan 'Abdullah went out in person against him in 279 (beginning April 2, 892), when his castles were taken one after the other, and among them that of Karkabúliyah, where he himself resided: he was, in short, compelled to make his submission, but soon after revolted, and died in his rebellion.
"The four sons of Hábil,—and first, Mundhir Ibn Haríd. This rebel rose in the territory of Jaén, and having taken possession of a castle called Marharittah and San Estevan. He led a life of excess, slaying or plundering all those who came near his castle, until he was reduced to obedience during the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., and compelled to reside in Cordova.

"Abú Karónah Hábil Ibn Haríd Ibn Hábil rose conjointly with his brother Mundhir during the reign of 'Abdulláh, and was likewise reduced by 'Abdu-r-rahmán and compelled to reside in Cordova. He escaped, however, and seized on a castle called Marharittah (Margarita ?), which had once belonged to his brother, asked 'Abdu-r-rahmán’s pardon, was forgiven, and obtained the government of the castle.

"'Amir Ibn Haríd Ibn Hábil rose in the castle of Shemit Aštén San Estéban at the same time with his two brothers. He made his submission to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., who employed him in his army and promoted him. He died a martyr for the faith in the battle of Shebt-mánikas (Simancas), in the expedition of Al-handik in 327.

"'Omar Ibn Haríd Ibn Hábil.—His history is the same as that of his three brothers. He accompanied 'Abdu-r-rahmán to the campaign of Badajuz in 327 (beginning Oct. 28, a. d. 938), and was killed by an arrow-shot at the siege of Beja.

"Ibn 'Attif Al-‘okayli.—This individual, whose name was Išhák, was the son of Ibráhím, son of Sakhar, son of 'Attíf, son of Al-hasan, son of Ad-dajen, son of 'Abdulláh, son of Mohammed, son of 'Omar, son of Yahya, son of 'Amir, son of Malek, son of Khowaylad, son of Samán Al-‘okayli. During the reign of Mohammed he remained faithful and accompanied that Sultán in all his expeditions; but when the civil war between the Arabs and the Muwlláds broke out, he embraced the party of the latter, and having made himself master of a castle called Montalese, he defended himself in it against Ibn Hafssún and his followers. In 310 he made his submission to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., who compelled him to reside in Cordova.

"Sa’íd Ibn Sulejmán Ibn Júda or ‘Amir Júdí became general of the Arabs of Granada in 277, after the death of Sawwár, who had been the first to raise the banner against the Muwlláds of those districts. His election having been confirmed by the Sultán 'Abdulláh, he marched immediately against 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, whom he defeated in several encounters. On one occasion he fought personally with that chief, and would have killed him had not his followers snatched him from his hands. Sa’íd was treacherously slain, in Dhi-l-ka’dah of the year 284 (Dec. a. d. 897), by two influential men of his own party, named Mohammed Ibn Othmán Ibn Seyd and Yezíd Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellám.

"Ibn Adhha.—Mohammed Ibn Adhha Ibn 'Abdillatif Al-hamädání, one of the most illustrious Arabs of the province of Elvira. He was the sworn enemy of Sa’íd, who persecuted him incessantly, following him from place to place. The inhabitants of a fortified town called Buflash having invited him to come among them, he accepted their invitation, and took the command of the place. After the death of Sa’íd in 284, he obtained the command of the Arabs of Elvira. He maintained fidelity to the Sultán 'Abdulláh, who appointed him governor of that district. In 313 he was conveyed to Cordova, and obliged to settle there.

"The sons of Muhllib.—These were two, Khalil and Sa’íd, and they belonged to the Berbers of Elvira. The former made himself master of a castle called Kazdeýrah, and the latter of the
"fortified town of Esparraguera, both belonging to the province of Elvira. Khalil having
shown some disposition to return to the obedience of the Sultan, they were both invested with the
government of their respective castles, and directed to make war against 'Omar Ibn Hafsun and
his partisans, which they did. On the death of Khalil, his brother Sa'id obtained the command of both
castles, which he held till his death.

"The sons of Jorj.—Abdu-l-wahhab, son of Jorj, a mauli of Abú 'Othmán 'Obydullah Ibn 'Othmán,
and his cousin Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahman Ibn Jorj, belonged to the rebels of Elvira. The
former made himself master of a castle called Nokâr. He died in 303 (beginning July 26, A. D. 913),
and was succeeded by his cousin Mohammed, who embraced the party of 'Obydullah Ibn Shâliyyah,
and built a castle called Moránia, not far from Xodar, in the province of Jaen. Subdued
by 'Abdu-r-rahman III., he was conducted to Cordova like the other rebels, and obtained command
in the armies of that Khalif. Having accompanied Ahmed Ibn Is'hâk Al-korayshi in the expedition
against the rebels of Tudmir, he was killed at the siege of Alicante.

"Account of the poets of his court.

"Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi and Al-kalafât were two of the most eminent poets of 'Abdullah's
court; they employed their pens in writing verses in praise of that Sultan, and of the various
independent chieftains who rose during his reign. They were rivals and enemies. Al-kalafât gave
Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi the surname of At-talás, and whenever the book of the 'Ikâd, which
was the composition of Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, was mentioned in his presence, he used to say,
"ذَنْكُ حِبْلُ الْقُلُومِ لَا يُقَدَّمُ الْدِّرَ—It is a string of heads of garlic, not a pearl necklace." The third
place after the two above-mentioned poets was occupied by 'Obydullah Ibn Yahya Ibn Idrîs
Al-khâledî, 'Obydís Ibn Mahmúd was another of the distinguished poets of the court of 'Abdullah.
He was a clerk in one of the offices in the royal palace; he fled from Cordova and joined the rebel
'Obydullah Ibn Shâliyyah, who appointed him his secretary. Isma'il Ibn Bedr was likewise a
distinguished poet, but it is my intention to treat of him under the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahman.

"Poets of the tribe of Koraysh, or belonging to the royal family of Umeyyah.

"Al-mundhir Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, son of 'Abdullah, son of Al-mundhir, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II.;
—Ma'lek, son of Mohammed, son of Ma'lek, son of 'Abdallah, son of 'Abdu-l-malek, son of 'Omar,
son of Merwan Ibn Al-hakem, better known under his patronymic Al-merwâni; he was likewise
an accomplished grammarian and a writer on general literature;—Mohammed and 'Omar, the sons
of Ibrahim Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'âwiyah the Korayshite; they were both known as the
sons of Ibnî-l-musnu'; the younger, Mohammed, lived to the times of Abú 'Ali Al-kâli;—the two
sons of Abú Sefwân, also of the tribe of Koraysh, Ahmed Ibn Ibrahim Ibn Kolzam, and Kásim Ibn
'Abdi-l-wâhid, Al-ajelî; this latter travelled to the East; on his return to Cordova in
293 (beginning Nov. 1, A. D. 905) he was assassinated by some of his enemies;—Sa'id Ibn 'Abdi-r-
rabbihi, a cousin of Abú 'Omar Ahmed [Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi], who, besides being a good poet, excelled
also in the knowledge of medicine, which he practised in Cordova;—Is'hâk Ibn Isma'il, better known
by the surname of Al-munâdi;—Sa'id Ibn 'Abdi-l-kaht—these two last were very
good scribes;—Yezid Ibn Rabi' Ibn Suleyman Al-hijâri, known as Yezid Al-bârid;—'Akir Ibn Mas'ûd;
"—Abdu-l-malek Ibn Jehwar, the Wizir;—Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Omar Ibn Shahid [or Shoheyd], the
Wizir;—Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellálm, better known as Ibn Kalmún;—'Amru and Ahmed, the sons
of Faraj, and several others, who will be more fully mentioned in our next volume."

[After the above passages there follows in the manuscript a chronological history of the reign of 'Abdullah, from which I will only extract a few of the most important events.]

"Events of the year 275 (beginning May 15, A. D. 888).—According to 'Isa Ibn Ahmed Ar-rázi,
one of the first acts of 'Abdullah's reign was to take measures to put down the rebellion of 'Omar
Ibn Hafssún. No sooner, however, had that rebel heard of the death of Al-mundhir, than he sent
to Cordova his son Hafss, with one of his principal officers, Ibráhím Ibn Dhamír.

'Abdullah received 'Omar's ambassadors with every honour; he gave orders that Hafss and his
suite should be well lodged and entertained, and having granted them an audience he accepted 'Omar's
submission, and appointed him governor of the district of Rayyah, on condition of sharing the govern-
ment with an officer appointed by him, whose name was 'Abdu-l-wáhháb Ibn 'Abdi-r-rúf. 'Omar
accepted the condition, and remained faithful for some months; but at the end of that time he
again revolted; and began committing all manner of depredations upon the peaceable inhabitants of the
province, carrying his devastations as far as Ezija and Osuna, in the province of Cordova. The
rebels were commanded on this occasion by 'Omar himself, or by a lieutenant of his, named Hafss
Ibnu-l-murráh, who was a man of great experience and courage.

When the intelligence of these disorders reached Cordova, 'Abdullah sent against him one of
his generals, named 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Moslema Al-báji; but the royal troops, having met the rebels
near Osuna, were defeated and their general slain, which success so elated 'Omar that he expelled from
Rayyah the governor appointed by the Sultán, and remained sole master of the province. About
this time the feuds between the 'Ajénis (Christians living under the Moslem rule) and Muwallads
on one side, and the Arabs on the other, grew fiercer than ever, and they made war against each
other in every province of Andalus.

In the same year 'Obeydulláh Ibn Mohammed Ibnu-l-ghamr Ibn Abí 'Abdah, governor of Jaen,
marched against a rebel named Sa'id Ibn خرجة Khanjar, and besieged him in the castle of
Jerishah, where he had fortified himself. He was on the point of reducing the place when he received
orders to raise the siege and to repair the fortifications of حصن أندلوس Anduxar, and to people
it with peasants from the neighbourhood. Scarcely, however, had he begun to put his orders in
execution, when he was attacked by the [inhabitants of the] البرجية Al-borájelah and Al-
assnad, commanded by their respective chiefs, Nábil and Shokhays, who were re-inforced by a body of
cavalry which Ibn Bartil brought from Tudmir to their assistance. Having been attacked by the
royal forces, the rebels were defeated with the loss of seventy-five of their principal officers.

Whilst these events were taking place the district of Sidonia revolted against the Sultán, and the
rebellion soon spread to those of Algesiras, Rayyah, and Liblalh (Nebla). The cause of these troubles
was a feud between the Yemenites or Arabs from Yemen and the Beni Modhar.

In this year 'Omar Ibn Hafssún laid siege to Al-kamênyn, a castle belonging to the Bení
Kháled; but the garrison defended themselves vigorously, and Ja'd Ibn 'Abdi-l-gháfr, governor of
the province of Elvira, hastening to their assistance, they drove the enemy off their walls.

In Sha'bán of this year the inhabitants of Tortosa sent to Cordova to ask for a governor, and the
Sultán granted their request, sending them 'Abdu-l-hákeem Ibn Sa'id Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellálm. 'Abdu-r-
CHAP. IV.] NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS. 447

rahmán Ibn Merwan, better known by his surname of Ibnu-l-jalik (the son of the Galician), applied for
a confirmation of his government [of Merida], and the Sultán granted his request.

The mariners and merchants of Bejennah (Pechina) solicited permission to trade with the coast of
Africa, and to build castles for their defence; 'Abdullah granted their request, and the advantages of
their port having soon attracted thither people from all the provinces of Andalus, they built upwards
of twenty castles, such as Al-hámah (Alhama la seca), Burshenah (Purchena), Al-khábiyjah (Al-habia).

'Aliyah (Olias?), Bení Tárik, and Hisn-Náshir (Nixar). These mariners of Bejennah were
Africans who settled on that coast about the close of Mohammed's reign.

Events of the year 276 (beginning May 5, A.D. 889).—In this year 'Abdullah left Cordova at the
head of his army and laid siege to Bishter; but being unable to reduce that castle, into which 'Omar
Ibn Hafssún had thrown himself with all his forces, he returned to Cordova, leaving the command of the
besieging forces to Mohammed Ibn Dhanin, who took up his quarters at Malaga.

'Omar, however, having evaded the vigilance of that governor, united his forces with those of Al-khuli'
At-tekerání, of Tekerná, and having surprised the town of Estepa, expelled the governor,
and advanced to Osuna, where he did the same. Having, whilst there, received a deputation from the
people of Ezija, he repaired thither and took possession of the city. The Sultán sent against him his
uncle Al-mundhir, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-hakem, who had no sooner arrived at Guadajoz
than he was met by a deputation from 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, who implored forgiveness
for his past offences, and promised fidelity for the future, if the Sultán would grant him the government
of the district of Rayyah, which was done.

About this time also took place the revolt of Sawwár Ibn Hamdún in the district of the Al-borájelah
in the province of Elvira. This Sawwár had been the friend and companion of Yahya
Ibn Sukálah, a noble Arab, who was the first to rise in that district against the 'Ajémis, the Muwallads,
and the Musalimah or renegades. After the death of Yahya, who was treacherously slain by the
Muwallads of Elvira, in A.H. 276 (A.D. 889), Sawwár succeeded him. He made war against the
Muwallads, defeated them in several encounters, and took their strongest castles. Je'd Ibn 'Abdi-l-
gháfir, one of the Bení Kháled, who was governor of Jaen, having concluded an alliance with the
Muwallads, marched against Sawwár; but he was defeated with great loss and taken prisoner. The
Muwallads then, seeing that the royal forces in that quarter were insufficient to defend them from
the Arabian party, applied to their old chief, 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, who hastened to their assistance.
'Omar was defeated and wounded in a bloody battle, and obliged to return to his usual haunts;
he, however, left behind his lieutenant, Hafss Ibnu-l-marrah, to prosecute the war, who, having
some time after laid an ambush for Sawwár not far from Gharnáttah (Granada), put him to death.

According to the poet 'Obédah, in whose hand-writing I have read the events here related, the war
between the Muwallads and the Arabs in the district of Elvira originated thus. When Yahya Ibn
Sukálah rose in rebellion to assert the pretensions of the Arabs بدعاة العرب a number of his countrymen
stationed in those parts surprised and took the castle of Montexicar of the Berbers منشأة البربر
which they repaired and fortified. This being made known, the Muwallads and 'Ajémis, who were very
numerous in the province, and who nourished an implaceable hatred against the Arabian faction, began
'to stir in every direction, and having appointed a chief of their own, named Nábil, who was a man
of courage and determination, they marched against Yahya, whom they defeated and obliged to shut
"himself up in the castle of Montexicar. Yahya, moreover, was some time after decoyed into Elvira,
where the chiefs of the Muwallads were, and treacherously put to death about the beginning of the
year 276 (May, A. D. 889).
"Yahya was succeeded by Sawwár, who, as above related, was at the head of the Arabian party until
the month of Moharram of the year 277 (June, A. D. 890), when he was killed. The poet 'Obádah
relates the following anecdote, which I here transcribe. 'I was once told by one of the elders of
Granada that upon one occasion the Muwallads of Elvira laid siege to the castle of Granada
where Sawwár was at the time. The walls being crumbled and the fortifications
out of order, the besieged fought in the day and worked at night to repair them. One day the
Muwallads shot into the castle a hollow reed containing a scroll with the following verses:

منازلهم منهم تفجأ بل قطع تجاري السفا فيها الرياح الزعازع
و في القلعة الحجراء تدير زعزعة ومنها عليهم تمستدير السوامع

'Tenantless and roofless are the houses [of our enemies]; invaded by the autumnal rains,
traversed by tempestuous winds.
'Let them within the Al-hamrá (red castle) hold their mischievous councils; perdition and woe
surround them on every side.'

"These verses were the composition of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Ahmed Al-'abli (from 'Ablah).
"Sawwár immediately ordered his poet Mohammed Ibn Sa'id Ibn Mokháriíf Al-asídí to reply
"to them, which he did on the spot, in verses full of spirit and elegance.'

"Troubles in Libla (Niebla).
"According to 'Isa (Ibn Ahmed Ar-rázi), in the year 276 an Arab named 'Othmán, better known
by his surname of Ibn 'Amrún, rose at Libla (Niebla), on pretence that he was going to make war
against the Muwallads and the Musálímah (renegades) of that province. Having made a night attack
upon the palace of the governor, whose name was 'Amru Ibn Sa'id Al-kornaysí, Ibn 'Amrún slew
the guards, plundered the palace, expelled 'Amru, and remained sole master of the place. He then
made an incursion into the province of Seville, upon which 'Abdullah sent against him his general,
'Othmán Ibn 'Abdi-l-gháfir, who reduced Ibn 'Amrún to obedience. But war breaking out again
between the Muwallads and the Arabs, Ibn 'Amrún took possession of Hisn-Karkabah,
whilst Ibn Khassib and Ibn 'Ofeyr rose in favour of the Muwallads, the former at Montemayór, the
latter at Jebal-oyún (Gibraleon).

"The rebellion spreads to Seville.
"In the year 276 the spirit of disaffection and revolt spread to the province of Seville, the inhabitants
of which city renounced their allegiance to 'Abdullah. According to Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn
Al-ash'ath, who wrote a history of Seville, the first rebel of those districts was Koreyb Ibn
'Othmán Ibn Khaldún, who, hearing of the rising of Suleyman Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek in
the district of Shídúnah, of 'Othmán Ibn 'Amrún in that of Niebla, and of Jenid Ibn Wahb
'Al-karmúní, who had likewise taken arms with the Berbers of his district [Carmona], declared himself
in open revolt against the Sultan. As each of those chiefs had raised a banner and proclaimed a party,
Suleyman that of the tribe of Lakhm, to which he belonged, 'Othmán Ibn 'Amrún that of
Khoshayn, and Jenid that of the Berbers, called Beránis, Ibn Khaldún proclaimed also the party of the Yemenite Arabs and the tribe of Hadhra-maut, to which he belonged. No sooner had the Muwallads who inhabited Seville and the neighbouring districts heard of the rising of the Arabian chieftains above mentioned, than they entered into a defensive alliance with the Botar and the Beni Modhar, the former of whom were the sworn enemies of the Beránis, and the latter of the Yemenites. Koreyb began by taking possession of a town called Balát or Albalate, close to Seville, where he fortified himself, persuading the inhabitants of the Axarafa to join his banners. When the news of his rebellion reached Cordova, 'Abdullah appointed a governor, named Músá Ibn-l-ássi, who proceeded to Seville, and who by his moderation and talents succeeded in allaying the fire of civil discord; but Koreyb and his lieutenant Jeníd dispatched messengers to the Berbers of the districts of Merida and Medellín, to inform them that the province was badly guarded, and that, if they were to make an incursion, they would undoubtedly meet with the most complete success. Their intention was to harass and molest the Sultán’s troops until they should oblige them to evacuate the province. The Berbers did as they were directed; they invaded the province of Seville, laying waste and destroying every thing on their passage, and, having surprised the town of Tablada, near Seville, put the inhabitants to the sword, and carried away their wives and daughters. Músá then went out against them, and pitched his tents on a hillock called Kudýat Az-zeytân (the hillock of the olive-trees), three miles from Tablada; and the two hosts prepared for the ensuing contest. The night preceding the battle, Ibn Khaldún [Koreyb], who was in Músá’s camp, sent a secret message to the Berbers, to say that in the hottest of the fight he would desert the royalists and go over to them, which he did, the consequence being that the Sultán’s troops were defeated with great loss, being closely pursued by the victorious Berbers to a town called Kariat Wabr or Wabar, in the district of Al-barr, [elsewhere written Al-barr, Aleyr.] After remaining three days at Tablada, the Berbers returned home laden with spoil.

After this came the invasion of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Merwán Al-jalíkí, who hastened to that district from Badajoz. Having pitched his tents near a town called Mora, in the district of Aleyr [or Al-barr, as above], distant three parasangs from the capital, he began to commit every sort of depredation in the neighbourhood, without any one going out to check his progress.

These different troubles contributed in a great measure to diminish the authority of the Sultán in those parts, as the inhabitants, seeing that they were neglected, no longer respected the authority which did not protect them against their enemies.

Moved by these considerations, the Sultán deposed Músá from the government, and appointed in his room Huseyn Ibn Mohammed from Mora. Meanwhile a native of Ezija, named Mohammed Ibn Ghálíb, applied to the Sultán for permission to build a castle and raise troops with which to repress the excesses of the Berbers who infested that province, and principally of one named At-tamáshekah. As Mohammed was a Muwallad, he soon saw himself surrounded by numbers of his party, maulís or freedmen, and Berbers of the tribes of Botar, who willingly took up arms against the Arabian party, commanded by Ibn Khaldún and Ibnu-l-hejáj and their allies the Beránís.

Whilst these events were passing, Saleymán Ibn Mohammed, the rebel of Shidhúnah, built a strong castle not far from Nebrixa. Having by this means collected round him great numbers of adventurers, he once made an incursion into a neighbouring island, where Al-mundhir, the Sultán’s uncle, kept his stud, and, having put to death the director of the establishment, carried away all the horses and mares he found, and retired to a strong castle named Korah, at the extremity of
the Axarafe, and about ten miles from Seville. At the same time 'Abdullah Ibn-l-hejaj, assisted by
Yezigh, who commanded in the Sultan's name. All this was accomplished on the same day by mutual
agreement between the conspirators. When the news of the taking of Carmona reached Seville,
Mohammed, the son of 'Abdullah, who commanded there, wrote to his father, the Sultan, apprising
him of what had happened, and asking for assistance. 'Abdullah summoned his Wizirs and asked their
advice. Some were for putting to death Mohammed Ibn Ghâlib, and giving satisfaction to the Arabian
party; others for rewarding him and making use of him to reduce Ibn Khaldûn, Ibn-l-hejaj,
and their followers, to obedience. The former opinion, which was also that of the Sultan, prevailed;
and orders were accordingly sent to Ja'd Ibn 'Abdi-l-ghâfir, brother of Umeyyah, who had been
governor of Seville, enjoining him to put Ibn Ghâlib to death. Ja'd went out of Seville with his army
as if he meant to besiege Carmona, and when Ibn Ghâlib had joined him with his forces, he seized him
and put him to death. By this means tranquillity was somewhat re-established, and the rebels surren-
dered Carmona to the troops of the Sultan.

When the intelligence reached Seville, the Mowallads, commanded by their chiefs Ibn Shabarkah and Ibn-l-bajileyn, rose in arms, crying aloud for vengeance. They
surrounded the palace of the governor, Mohammed, and would have put him to death, had not
Umeyyah come to his assistance and delivered him from their attacks. Mohammed, not considering
himself safe in Seville, returned to Cordova. This happened in Jamâda the second. [A. H. 276.]

Some time after these events, Umeyyah was killed [by the insurgents], upon which 'Abdullah
appointed his uncle, named Hishâm Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmân, to be governor of Seville, and gave
him as lieutenant Sa'id Ibn-l-abbâs. Shortly after, Al-mutref, one of the sons of the Sultan,
went out against the rebels of Seville at the head of considerable forces. Having defeated them in
several encounters, he returned to Cordova, bringing with him as prisoners Khâled Ibn 'Othmân Ibn
Khaldûn, the brother of Koreyb, İbrâhîm Ibn-l-hejaj, and Moslemâh Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-
malek, of Sidonia.

Then came the murder of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Umeyyah, whom Al-mutref caused to be put to
death, because he was his personal enemy; but 'Abdullah was so angry when he heard of it, that
he had his own son executed for it. After the death of Al-mutref, 'Abdullah sent Ibn Khâmir (or Dhamir) to Al-gharb, with instructions to depose the governor, Mohammed
Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Al-'abdi, and put him to death if he offered any resistance. Ibn Khâmir executed
his commission faithfully. He surprised the governor at a village called Aranbasah, and had
him beheaded in sight of the inhabitants.

About this time the power of the Mowallad faction becoming greater, 'Abdullah was advised by
some of his Wizirs to grant liberty to the Arabian chiefs who were prisoners in Cordova, and to
employ them. They were accordingly conveyed to Seville and set free, after they had severally
taken a most solemn oath never again to rise against their lawful sovereign, but to employ all
their energies in reducing the Mowallad faction. No sooner, however, had they returned to their
respective districts, than they again declared themselves in open rebellion, and refused to pay the
customary tribute. 'Abdullah, however, having through his Wizir, 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed Ibn
Abi 'Abdah, succeeded in dividing them, the rebels made war upon each other, until İbrâhîm Ibn-l-
hejaj took both Khâled and Koreyb prisoners, and put them to death, by which means the Sultan's
authority was re-established in Seville.
"Ibrāhīm wrote to announce his victory to 'Abdullah, and asking to be appointed governor of Seville. The Sultan granted his request, on condition that he should yearly remit to Cordova the sum of seven thousand dinārs, after defraying all the government expenses in the province. Ibrāhīm consented, and Kāsim Ibn Walīd Al-kelbī was given him as lieutenant; but some time after, at the solicitation of Ibrāhīm, Kāsim was recalled, and that chieftain remained sole governor of Seville and its district.

"Rebellion in Saragossa.

"According to 'Isa [Ar-rāzī], in this year Abū Yahya Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmān Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azīz At-tojībī, better known by the surname of Al-ankar, rose in Saragossa and slew the governor. This last event took place on the 17th of Ramadhān. Subsequently to this another chieftain of the Thagher, named Mohammed Ibn Lob Al-kasawi, quarrelled with Abū Yahya, besieged him in Saragossa, and made war against him for twelve consecutive years, until he was slain in one of his attacks upon that city by a Korayshite, who shot him with a javelin from behind a garden fence.

"By the death of Mohammed, the star of the Beni Kāsī was eclipsed, and that of the Tojibites gained the ascendant. The few individuals who remained of the former family surrendered their castles, and, forsaking the alliance of the people of Pamplona, made their submission to 'Abdu-r-rahmān III. There was one, however, who would not submit; his name was Isma'īl Ibn Mūsa, Lord of Lerida. Assisted by his two sons, Mūsa and Mutref, he persisted in his rebellion, and made incursions into the province of Cerdagne. Having in one of those forays taken prisoner a young man named 'Abdu-l-malek, who was the son of Shebrit At-tawīl, (or the tall,) Lord of Oshkah (Huesca), the latter retaliated and made incessant war against them, until he slew Mūsa, took Mutref prisoner, and obtained possession both of Lerida and Britaniyah.

"Treacheries of Ibn Haffūn.

"In this year (A. H. 276) 'Omar Ibn Haffūn left Bishter and laid siege to Albalate, where a chief named Abū Harb Shākir Al-bornasī or Al-berānīsī commanded in the Sultan's name. Abū Harb made a valiant and protracted defence; but having been killed by a random shot, the place surrendered to the rebel. From Albalate 'Omar marched to Algeziras, but the governor, Ibrāhīm Ibn Khāled, met him on the road and obliged him to return to Bishter. Some time after, the people of Algeziras, having expelled their governor Ibrāhīm, appointed two of their people, called Haffūn Al-berānīsī and Mūsa Az-zeyyat, to command them. About the same time, the Arabs of the district of Sidonia rose against the Sultan.

"In this year 'Omar Ibn Haffūn, having made himself master of a strong castle called Hisn-Belay (Espiel or Espeluy ?), in the district of Cabra, began to molest the inhabitants of the Kasbāniah, or territory of Cordova, with frequent incursions. A Christian count, named Sherbil, who was the son of Hajījā Al-kūmīs (the Count), fearing for his life, owing to some offence which he had committed, fled from Cordova, and joined Ibn Haffūn, who gave him the command of part of his forces. Sherbil then began to infest the neighbourhood of the capital to such a degree that the inhabitants dared not go out of the walls, and they lived in as great anxiety and fear as if they were close to the Christian frontier. At length the Sultan sent some troops, who took Sherbil and brought him to Cordova, where he was beheaded, together with Count Hajījā.
"Events of the year 277 (beginning April 24, A.D. 890).—In this year 'Abdullah sent his general, Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abi 'Abdah, against Jaen, where Khayr Ibn Shákir had just revolted; but Khayr having been treacherously slain in the interval by one of his own partisans, the presence of the royal troops in that district was no longer necessary.

In the same year 'Omar Ibn Hafssún strengthened the fortifications of Hisn-Belay, from which he made frequent incursions into the districts of Cabra and Al-yasánah or Alísánah, which latter place was peopled by Jews.

"Events of the year 278 (beginning April 14, A.D. 891).—In this year the power of 'Omar Ibn Hafssún having greatly increased through the enlistment of thousands of adventurers who flocked to his banners from every province, he conceived the design of having the 'Abbássid sultán proclaimed in Andalus. To that end he dispatched an embassy with presents in the Khalíf's name to Ibnu-l-aghlab, governor of Africa, offering to have his master proclaimed; but Ibnu-l-aghlab refused to give his assent, and returned a contemptuous answer, which became celebrated in Andalus.

Meantime 'Omar continued to make incursions till within arrow-shot of the walls of Cordova, and close to the village of Shekundah, on the opposite bank of the Guadalquivir. One night he was daring enough to attack the pavilion of the Sultán, intending to destroy it; but, although there were only a few night watchmen and a score of mamelukes, they defended themselves so well that they repulsed his attack and drove him away.

At length 'Abdullah, wishing to put a stop to the incursions of the brigand, left Cordova at the head of his forces and took the road to Hisn-Belay. On his arrival at Wáda Al-füşhekah or Alfoseca, which is two miles distant from that fortress, 'Abdullah ordered his troops to halt, and encamped on its banks. 'Omar then sallied out of Hisn-Belay, and drew up his forces in front of those of the Sultán. A battle ensued, in which the rebels were completely defeated, and obliged to shut themselves up in their castle. A general assault was then ordered, and 'Omar would have fallen into the hands of 'Abdullah, had he not made his escape on an ass, which a Christian procured him. 'Abdullah prosecuted his victorious march to Archidona, and thence to Bishter, whither 'Omar had fled without stopping. The siege of that fortress was then commenced, and in a skirmish with the rebels no less than five hundred of their number were killed.

This happened on Saturday, the first of Rabi' the first, [A.H. 278.] Despairing, however, of reducing that impregnable fortress, 'Abdullah returned to Archidona, to Al-faneneyn (or Al-kameneyn, see above, p. 446), a castle belonging to the Bení Kháled, and thence to Kustilah, the capital of the district of Elvira, whence, after receiving hostages from the inhabitants, he returned to Cordova.

In the same year the troops of 'Omar Ibn Hafssún evacuated Jaen, and the authority of 'Abdullah was re-established there. One of that rebel's partisans, named As-serráj, who stayed behind, was taken prisoner and nailed to a stake. About the same time, according to Mu'áwiya Ibn Hishám 'Ash-shibenisí, who relates it in one of his works, one of the sons of Count Servando, son of Hossán—Sherbíl, who was a valiant knight, being offended with 'Abdullah, because one of his brothers had been imprisoned, fled from Cordova and joined 'Omar Ibn Hafssún.

* Evidently the same person and event mentioned above; the words Sherbíl and Sherbín being written nearly alike.
CHAP. IV.]

NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS. 453

"In the same year Mohammed Ibn Lob, Lord of Aragon, defeated the Christians with great slaughter.

"About the end of Dhi-l-hajjah (March, A.D. 892), the Sultán appointed 'Obeydullah Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellám, and 'Abdullah the palace Abi of Ibn Lord and repaired Karkabuliyah with of 279. In left Hafssun to his Cordova was gave he siege sent defence, to Ibn year he the of the Ibn in drove wishes this arid, (ict 'Abdullah of considerable banks, some to repaired Events Mi'isa 'Abdi-1-barr of pursued same of 22, of Baghah year to Ibn then sent prevent to obedience command frontier was the a of Ashad him of the CHAP. IV.] NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS. 453

"In the same year the traitor 'Omar Ibn Hafssún had again recourse to his usual deceit. Having shown some inclination to return to the obedience of his sovereign, his hostages were given up to him; but he had no sooner attained the object of his wishes than he revolted again.

"Expedition to Karkabulliyah.

"In the same year [A.H. 279] the Sultán in person set off for the mountainous districts of Bághah (Vega), to make war against Sa'id Ibn Mustanah. After reducing all his castles in succession, 'Abdullah besieged the rebel chief in Karkabuliyah, and compelled him to surrender. This was the last expedition which 'Abdullah commanded before he died: he had under him his general 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Umeyyah.

"Whilst 'Abdullah was occupied in the siege of Karkabulliyah, the people of Elvira revolted, and sent a message to 'Omar Ibn Hafssún to come and take possession of the town. 'Omar hastened thither at the head of his forces, and having repaired the fortifications and put the kassibah in a state of defence, prepared to attack Sa'id Ibn Júdi, the chief of the Arabian party at Granada.

"Events of the year 280 (beginning March 22, A.D. 893).—In this year Al-mutref [the son of 'Abdullah] went out against 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, and besieged him in his castle of Bishter. Having ordered his soldiers to demolish a palace belonging to that rebel, as well as a church which his father Hafss had erected, the infidel dog attempted to prevent it, and a series of skirmishes ensued in which the troops of the Sultán had the advantage, the rebels being repulsed with considerable loss, and the two buildings destroyed. Among the Muwallads slain on this occasion was Hafss Ibnu-1-marrah, one of 'Omar's lieutenants.

"Peopling of Zamora.

"In this year Adefunsh (Alfonso), son of Ordhún (Ordoño), King of Galicia, went to the city of Zamora, and, having repaired its buildings and fortifications, peopled it with Christians of the neighbouring districts. The builders were people from Toledo.

"In the same year 'Abdullah deposed Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr from the command of the forces on the frontier of Tortosa, and gave it to Músa Ibn Foteys.

"Events of the year 281 (beginning March 12, 894), and expedition to Sinjilah.—In this year Al-mutref went out of Cordova to make war against the rebel 'Omar Ibn Hafssún. His general on this occasion was 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Umeyyah. He left Cordova in the month of Safar, and directed his course towards that rebel's haunts. Having arrived at the river Sinjil (Singilis), he encamped on its banks, and sent his light cavalry to lay waste the land. He then encamped at Kartash, opposite to Hisn Ashad or Ashd. Here he was attacked by the rebels, but Al-mutref drove them before him. On the following day there was another skirmish, in which Zeyd Ibn Khaluđn was killed. The rebels fled to Torrox, being pursued by
the Sultan's troops. From Torrox, which he destroyed, Al-mutref went to Loxa, to

Al-faneteyn, to Sahnah, and to Al-fondak. Having laid waste the whole country

between Vega and Kal'at Yahssob (Alcala la Real), he arrived at the city of Sinjilah

Thence he returned to Kal'at Yahssob, to Purchena, to Muriánah, to the halting-

place of Khashash, and to Mun'yat Naar, a country villa near Cordova. He had been

absent in all three months.

Events of the year 282 (beginning March 1, A.D. 895), and execution of Ibn Umeyyah ['Abdu-l-

malek].—In this year happened the expedition against Seville and Sidonia. Mutref left Cordova

in the month of Rabi' the second, accompanied by his general, 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Umeyyah. On

the arrival of the army at a place called Tarbíl, upon the banks of the river Guadaira,

two miles from Seville, Al-mutref ordered his men to halt. One morning he had 'Abdu-l-malek seized

and put to death. He then sent for Ahmed Ibn Hásím Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz Ibn Hásím, and gave him

the command of the army, directing him to assemble the Korayshites, and tell him that he had ordered

the execution of 'Abdu-l-malek because he knew him to be very negligent in his duties, and not to treat

the soldiers as they deserved. The Korayshites, however, not being satisfied with that excuse, sent a

deputation to Cordova, requesting the Sultan to have the death of their general investigated.

Meanwhile the army was marching towards its destination. After encamping at a place called

Ibn Barsis, opposite to Carmona, they removed to Montefique, a fortress

built on the banks of the Guadaira by a man named Tālib Ibn Maulúd. Thence the

army proceeded to Hisn-Amarina, on the Wáda-lekah or Wáda-leke (Guadalete),

near Shidhúnah, thence to Kalsánah, and lastly to Sherish (Xerez). After remaining some

days at the latter place, the army marched to Medinat Ibn Selím, and thence to Bishter, which

was immediately invested and taken. From Bishter Al-mutref went to the island of Kádis (Cadiz).

After passing some days in the island, Al-mutref took the road to Seville. Passing again by Kalsánah

and Nebrishah (Nebrixa), a castle belonging to Suleymán Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, which he

took on the way, he arrived before Seville about the end of Jamáda the second. Soon after, Al-mutref

gave orders that Ibrahim Ibnu-l-hejaj, Kháled Ibn 'Othmán Ibn Khaldún, 'Abdi-l-malek of Shidhúnah,

and their followers, who were kept as hostages in his army, should be brought into his presence. Three

days after, he ordered them all to be strangled, together with Mohammed Ibn Malek Al-korayshí.

Sahmún, the Kátib, was punished with four hundred lashes, and had his tongue cut besides. This

done, Al-mutref returned to Cordova.

In the same year the tribute of Seville, Niebla, and Montemayor, having been received in the capital,

'Abdullah gave orders that all those of the partisans of Ibnu-l-hejaj, Ibn Khaldún, and [Ibn] 'Abdi-l-
malek, who were still in prison, should be set at liberty.

Events of the year 283 (beginning Feb. 18, A.D. 896).—In this year an uncle of the Sultan, whose

name was Hishám, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-hakem, went out of Cordova to make war

against Ibn Hudheyl, the rebel of Tudmír. Hishám left Cordova at the end of Rabi' the second,

accompanied by Abú-l-`abbás Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abi 'Abdah, one of the generals of the

---

This word is written in three different ways in these extracts, Al-faneneyn, Al-kameneyn, and Al-faneteyn; but I cannot
decide which is the correct reading.
"Sultan. The troops marched till they came to a place called Kâmirah, on the banks of the river Belûn. Having encamped in the neighbourhood of a castle called Qal'at Ash'ath, Hisâhî sent detachments of cavalry to lay waste the dominions of Ibn Hudhiyyl.

"In this year Lob Ibn Mohammed began to build the castle of Montleon, on the banks of the Wâda-z-zeytûn (the river of the olive-trees), in the province of Birtâniyâh. Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek At-tawîl, Lord of Huesca, who was the enemy of Lob, armed his retainers and tried to prevent him; but Lob defeated him in several encounters, and took a brother of his, named Fortûn, prisoner.

"In the same year Mohammed, the son of Lob Ibn Mohammed, took possession of Toledo, in the month of Dhî-l-hajjah (January, A. D. 897).

"Events of the year 284 (beginning Feb. 7, A. D. 897).—In this year an expedition left Cordova for Xerez, commanded by the Amir Abân, one of the sons of 'Abdullah. Abû-l-"âbbâs Ibn Abî 'Abdah accompanied him. They left Cordova at the end of Râbi' the first (May, A. D. 897). The object of the expedition was to chastise several rebels who, perched up in their castles, defied all the power of the Sultan.

"The troops had no sooner returned from this service than they were again summoned to war.

"Commanded by the Amir Abân and the general Abû-l-"âbbâs, as before, they departed from Cordova on the 18th of Rejeb (Sept. 1, A. D. 897). The itinerary of the army was as follows:

"to Mont Sant, to Tariifa, to Algesiras, to Mersa Ash-shajrah, to Khandak Al-jennat, to Tarik-khoshayn, to Sohayyl, to Dhekuwán, to the river. Thence the army returned to Kasr Bineyrâh (Pineira), and the next march took them to Wâda Benî 'Abdi-r-rahmân, or the river of the Benî 'Abdi-r-rahmân, opposite to Bishter. After besieging the rebel in his castle, and doing all possible harm to the districts which obeyed his rule, the army returned by the Alpuzarras and Jaen to Cordova.

"On Thursday, seven days before the end of Shaw'âbân, the Sultan 'Abdullah ordered the arrest of his own brother, Hisâhî Ibn Mohammed, of Merwán Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Umeyyah, of Sa'id Ibnu-l-walid, the Syrian, of Ahmed Ibn Hisâhî, the grandson of the Amir 'Abdu-r-rahman II., and lastly, of Mûsa Ibn Mohammed Ibn Zeyyâd. Three days after, on Saturday, the 21st of the same month, they were all executed, together with Yûsuf Ibn Hamdûn Ibn Basil, who had been arrested some time before.

"In the month of Dhî-l-ka'dah of the same year, Sa'id Ibn Jûdi, chief of the Arabian party of Granada, was put to death by his own people.

"In the same year Lob Ibn Ahmed Al-kasawi, Lord of the upper Thagher (Aragon), besieged and took the castle of Aurah, in the territory of Barcelona, then the court and residence of the King of the Franks. A count of that country, named 'Ankadid Ibn Al-mundhir, having attempted to arrest his progress, Lob defeated him in a pitched battle, and obliged him to return to his capital, where he died shortly after of a wound which Lob had inflicted on him. 'Ankadid was succeeded by his son Shinir (Sunarius?).

"In the same year, about the month of Ramadhân, Lob began to build the castle of Balaghî (Balaguer), in the district of Lerida.

"Events of the year 285 (beginning Jan. 27, A. D. 898).—In this year 'Abdâs Ibn 'Abdi-l-'âzîz made war in the district of Karkar or Karki, and in the mountains of Jîl Al-bîrânîs,
subjecting all that country to the authority of the Sultán, after having put to death Ibn Yámín and Ibn 
Maujíl, two of the leaders of the insurrection.

In the same year Lob Ibn Mohammed had an interview with 'Omar Ibn Hafssún in a castle called 
难点 Finilejah, near Jaen. Whilst there, Lob received news that his father, Mohammed, had been 
killed before Toledo on the 18th of Ramadhan (November, A.D. 898).

Events of the year 286 (beginning Jan. 16, A.D. 899).—In this year 'Omar Ibn Hafssún showed his 
partiality towards the Christians, and gave out that he was about to assist them in shaking off the yoke 
of the Moslems, which being reported to خليع التكراري Khair of Tekerná, Yahya Ibn انتنة Intaláh, 
and others among his partisans, they took the first opportunity to desert his cause and make their 
submission to the Sultán.

Events of the year 287 (beginning Jan. 6, A.D. 900).—In this year the general Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed 
left Córdova at the head of considerable forces, and marched to the district of Múrúr, which, as well as 
those of Rayyah and Shidhúnah, he entirely purged from rebels. Having taken prisoner a chief named 
Ishaák, who was one of the staunchest partisans of the infidel 'Omar, he had him nailed to a stake and 
burnt in front of the army.

Events of the year 288 (beginning Dec. 25, A.D. 900).—In this year 'Omar made propositions 
of peace, and offered to make his submission. His offer being accepted, he sent hostages to Córdova.

In the same year happened the rebellion of Ahmed Ibn Umeyyah, surnamed Ibnu-l-kitt (the son 
of the cat), who, having assembled a number of adventurers, made an incursion into the Christian 
territory, and laid siege to Zamora. Having been attacked by Alfonso (III.), son of Ordoño, King 
of Galicia, he was defeated and put to death on the 20th of Rejeb (July, A.D. 901).

Events of the year 289 (beginning Dec. 15, A.D. 901).—In this year the traitor 'Omar Ibn Hafssún 
broke the treaty which he had sworn to keep; for which reason three out of the four hostages given by 
him were put to death.

Events of the year 290 (beginning Dec. 4, A.D. 902).—In this year Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed besieged 
and took Jaen, where he found a rebel named 'Omar Ibn Modham, whom he took with him to Córdova.

In the same year, at the request of Mutref Ibn Habib and Yahya Ibn تطحم Kadhám, two of the 
chief inhabitants of Toledo, Lob Ibn Mohammed sent thither his brother Mutref at the head of a large 
body of troops. Mutref made himself master of the city without opposition.

In this year, on Wednesday, the 28th of Dhí-l-hajjah (Nov. 21, A.D. 903), there was an eclipse of 
the sun visible in Córdova.

Events of the year 291 (beginning Nov. 23, A.D. 903).—In this year, on Thursday, the 6th of 
Jumáda the second (April 28, A.D. 904), the Amir Abán, and the general Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn 
Abi 'Abdah, left Córdova for the district of Rayyah, at the head of considerable forces. Having arrived 
at Bishter, the capital of the district called حاضرة وادي بيشتر Wáda Bishter, they besieged it for 
some time and laid waste the neighbouring country, but, despairing of reducing that fortress, returned 
to Córdova.

Events of the year 292 (beginning Nov. 12, A.D. 904).—In this year there was also an expedition 
against the rebel 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, under the command of the above-mentioned general. The traitor 
this time came down from his stronghold, and was bold enough to engage the royal forces; but he was 
defeated with great loss, close to the river يلوز Yelúz, and obliged to shut himself up in his castle.
Events of the year 293 (beginning Nov. 1, A.D. 905).—In this year the Amir Abán and Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed left Cordova at the head of the army, and marched to the province of Jaen, where a rebel, named Fehr Ibn Aseed, was committing great depredations, and practising all manner of cruelties on the peaceful inhabitants of those districts. Having besieged the castle of Yemes, where the rebel had taken refuge, Abú-l-'abbás took it by storm and made prisoner Fehr, who was sent to Cordova under a strong escort, and, on his arrival there, nailed to a stake. Abú-l-'abbás then repaired to the district of Tekerná, where he also took by assault the castle of Al-kanitt.

Events of the year 294 (beginning Oct. 21, A.D. 906).—In this year the Amir Abán received orders from his father the Sultan to proceed to the district of Algeiras, where serious disturbances had been raised. He left Cordova and repaired to the seat of the rebellion, and having put to death such among the rebels as fell into his hands, re-established his father's authority in the province, and returned to Cordova with a great number of prisoners.

Events of the year 295 (beginning Oct. 11, A.D. 907).—In this year the Sultan determined upon sending an army against 'Omar Ibn Hafssún. Having assembled considerable forces, he gave the command of them to his son Abán and to his general Abú-l-'abbás Ibn Abí 'Abdah, who besieged the traitor in his castle and laid waste the neighbouring country, until, the autumnal rains coming on, they were compelled to raise the siege and to return to Cordova.

Events of the year 296 (beginning Sept. 29, 908).—In this year there was another expedition against 'Omar Ibn Hafssún. The army was commanded, as in the former years, by Abán and Abú-l-'abbás [Ahmed Ibn Abí 'Abdah].

Events of the year 297 (beginning Sept. 19, A.D. 909).—In this year an expedition left Cordova against 'Omar. This time the army was commanded by Abú Umeyyah Al-'āssí, another of the Sultan's sons, accompanied by Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed. After besieging and taking Beldah, one of the strongholds of 'Omar, they proceeded to Santiberia, which they also took; thence to Talheyrhá, and to Hisn-Shubiles (Jubiles), near Granada; after which they returned to Cordova by way of Jaen, taking on the road the castles of Baeza and Haríssah (Ariza?).

In this year there was a dreadful famine in the province of Jaen, which caused the death of thousands, and the emigration of innumerable of families, who went over to Africa.

Events of the year 298 (beginning Sept. 8, A.D. 910).—In this year a body of troops left Cordova against the rebel 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, who was infesting the neighbourhood of Cabra. Not far from the river Guadalfeo, in the hamlet called Matalánátah, there was a collision between the troops of the Sultan and those of the traitor, in which the former had the advantage. Calatrava and Asher, in the district of Rayyah, were taken on this occasion.

Events of the year 299 (beginning Aug. 28, A.D. 911).—In this year considerable forces left Cordova to hunt the rebel [Ibn Hafssún] in the mountain districts of Bisher. On the 28th of Shawwál there was an eclipse of the sun.

Such is in substance Ibnu Hayyán's account of a reign which lasted upwards of five-and-twenty years, and upon which no details are to be found in the historians known to us. This unusual laconicism on the part of writers to whom the works of Ibnu Hayyán were known, and some of whom are even
said to have been his disciples, can only be explained by a natural wish not to dwell upon a reign
the greater part of which was spent in civil wars and dissensions, and which no triumph over the
infidels signalized. To judge from the great mass of historical information contained in the volume,—
the only one known to exist of Ibn Hayyán's Muktabis,—it may be safely asserted that, until the
remaining volumes are found no reasonable hopes can be entertained of ever seeing the history of the Pe-
ninsula fairly disengaged from the mass of error and contradiction by which it is at present disfigured.

One very important fact, among others, is gained by the attentive perusal of the above extracts, namely,—that for a considerable length of time two powerful factions disputed with each other the
empire of Mohammedan Spain, and threatened in their convulsions to overthrow the throne of Cordova.
As one of those factions, the Muwallads, is but imperfectly known, the works of Conde and Casiri
containing no allusion whatever to them, a few words of explanation may perhaps be desirable. After
the battle of Guadalete, which gave the Moslems the empire of the Peninsula, thousands of the Christian
population in the southern provinces of Spain were cut off from their countrymen of the north; for
it is an error to suppose, as some writers have done, that the Christians fled every where before
the invaders, and took refuge in the mountain fastnesses of the Asturias or beyond the Pyrenees.
Thousands of the vanquished population preferred remaining in the districts and towns of their birth,
under the comparatively mild rule of the Arabs, to whom they paid a moderate tribute, rather than
share the privations and dangers of their brethren among the mountains, which became afterwards
the cradle of Spanish liberty. Many there were who, tempted by the brilliant offers made to them,
renounced the faith of their fathers, served in the army, fought against their former brethren, and
opened to themselves the path to honours and riches. The Arabs, however, always looked upon them
as outcasts, and a distinction was established between the proud Isma'ilite and the infidel newly admitted
to the rights and privileges of the Mohammedan community; and in the same manner as the Moriscos
or their sons, converted to Christianity after the taking of Granada, were called Cristianos nuevos (new
Christians) by the Castilian fidalgo, proud of his unstained pedigree and boasting of his religion, the
Christian renegades were known by the appellation of Mosálimah, the plural of Mosélíin, a
word meaning 'one newly converted to Isám.' The sons and descendants of these were called Muwallad, signifying 'any thing or person which is not of pure Arabic origin,' and which, being pro-
nounced then, as it is now, in Barbary, mulad, gave origin to the Spanish words mulato and mula.

Notwithstanding their great numbers, and their influence in the state, the Muwallads were always
treated by the Arabs with the greatest contempt. Had the Arabian and African settlers been less
intolerant and more united together, the Muwallad faction would probably never have raised its head;
but during the interminable wars and sanguinary feuds which raged between the tribes of Arabian
or African origin inhabiting the Peninsula, between the Arabs descended from Modhar and those of
Yemen, between the Berbers of Botar and those of Beránis, the Muwallads sided occasionally with
one or other of those great factions, often obtaining from the victorious party an increase of power.
The Sultáns of Cordova, moreover, frequently found it their best policy to nourish the hatred between
the hostile factions, and to help even the Muwallads against the Arabs; and whenever a sudden coalition
of the tribes of Yemen, or the revolt of some powerful governor, came to disturb the state, they never
failed to obtain the assistance of the Muwallads against their more powerful enemies. It is therefore
not to be wondered at, if, during the reign of 'Abdullah, when the Arabian tribes established in the
various provinces of Spain seem to have come to the determination not to obey the rule of the Bení
Umeyyah, the Muwallads should arm in defence of their rights, no longer protected by a central
government. Assisted by the Mosálímah (Christians converted to Isám), by the Ahlu-dh-dhimmah
(Christians paying tribute), by the 'Ajem (Christians not subdued), and, lastly, by the Muraddiin
(Moslems who had deserted their faith),—all which classes, according to Ibn Hayyán, enlisted under their banner,—they more than once raised the standard of revolt against the Arabs, whether Yemenis or Modhaís, and, led by chiefs of their own, like ' Omar Ibn Hafssún and others, carried plunder and desolation to the very gates of Cordova.

40 'Obeydullah—In Spanish 'butaca' or 'petaca,' which means the same thing.

40 An-nadhr Ibn Salamah Al-kayṣí is mentioned by Ibn Hayyán (Al-muktásib, fo. 4) among the Kádis, not the Wizírs, of 'Abdullah. The following is the account given by that historian of the public functionaries during the reign of that Sultán.

"The names of persons selected by the Amir 'Abdullah to bear with him the weight of the government.

"Hijjás.—'Abdullah confirmed in this office 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Umeyyah Ibn 'Isa Ibn Shahíd; but after some time he replaced him by Sa'id Ibn Mohammed Ibn As-sélím, who discharged the functions of that post until about the close of 'Abdullah's reign, when a slave named Bedr was appointed to the vacant office.

"Wizírs.—These were Al-'abbás Ibn 'Abdi-l-'ázíz Al-merwáni; Al-barr Ibn Málik Al-koryzí; 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdilláh Ibn Umeyyah, who was also commander of the forces; Merwán Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Umeyyah; 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdilláh; Hafís Ibn Mohammed Ibn Basíl, who held at the same time the office of Wádi-l-madínáh or police magistrate; Mohammed Ibn Wálid Ibn Gháním; Abú 'Othmán 'Obeydullah Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abí 'Abdah; Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed Ibn Abí 'Abdah; Scám Ibn 'Ali Ibn Abí 'Abdah. 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Hamdún Ibn Abí 'Abdah;—these four belonged to the same family, and were of the posterity of Abú 'Abdilláh Hossán Ibn Málik Ibn Abí 'Abdah;—Asbagh Ibn Foteys; 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed Az-zejáli; Suleymán Ibn Mohammed Ibn Wansús or Wánesís; Ahmed Ibn Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-'ázíz, who was also commander of the forces; Ja'far Ibn 'Abdi-l-gháfír, also general of his armies; Umeyyah Ibn 'Alkamáh; and Ibráhím Ibn Dhamír.

"The generals of his armies were: 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdilláh Ibn Umeyyah; 'Obeydullah Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abí 'Abdah; Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abí 'Abdah; Asbagh Ibn Foteys; Ja'd [Ja'far?] Ibn 'Abdi-l-gháfír; Ibráhím Ibn Dhamír.

"Kádis.—'Obeydullah Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abí 'Abdah; 'Abdulláh Ibn Mohammed Az-zejáli.

"Kádis.—An-nadhr Ibn Salamah Al-kayṣí; Músá Ibn Zeyád Al-jodhání, a native of Sidonia; Mohammed Ibn Salamah Al-'otbi, who was likewise Imám or president of the public prayer; Ahmed Ibn Zeyád, better known by the nickname of Al-habíb or the rag-picker (Span. Alhabíbe). When 'Abdullah ascended the throne, the office of Kádi was held by Abú Mu'áwiyyáh 'Amir Ibn Mu'áwiyyáh Al-zayedí Al-lakhmí, but he deposed him some months afterwards."

Ibn Hayyán then gives the names of the most eminent theologians who either lived in Cordova under 'Abdullah, or who had distinguished themselves under the reigns of his father Mohammed and his brother Al-mundhir.
CHAPTER V.

1 The events connected with the execution of Mohammed, the father of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., are vaguely told by the Arabian writers. Conde (vol. i. cap. lxii.) says, that soon after the accession of 'Abdullah, his son 'Abdu-r-rahmán (who is no other than the Al-mutref here mentioned) informed him that Mohammed, assisted by his brothers Al-kásim and Al-asbagh, had revolted in Seville, and had refused him admittance in that city. On the receipt of this intelligence, 'Abdullah intrusted the siege of Toledo to his generals and returned to Cordova. The same author states (vol. i. cap. lxiii.) that immediately after his arrival in Cordova, 'Abdullah dispatched his son 'Abdu-r-rahmán Al-modhaffer (Al-mutref?) against his rebellious son Mohammed. 'Abdu-r-rahmán made his entry into Carmona and Seville, which last city his brother evacuated at his approach. Al-mutref having started in pursuit of his enemy, a battle ensued, in which the rebels were defeated with great loss; Mohammed and his brother Al-kásim falling wounded into the hands of the victor. Mohammed was confined in a dungeon, where he died of his wounds, others say of poison administered to him by his brother, others, again, by his father's order, on the 10th day of Shawwál, A. H. 282 (Nov. A. D. 895). Such is, in substance, the account given of these events by Conde, who afterwards says (p. 283), that Al-mutref himself was assassinated at Cordova in Ramadhan of the same year. It is, however, remarkable, that Conde should call the murderer of Mohammed 'Abdu-r-rahmán, whereas Ibn Hayyán, An-nuwayrí, Al-homaydí, and every other historian I have consulted, agree in giving him the name of Al-mutref. Casiri (Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 35) adds nothing to the above facts, except that Mohammed had made an alliance with 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, and that he was killed in action.

An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 467), whilst alluding to 'Abdullah's tyranny, says أن ابْنِهِ مَعْطَرًا قَتَلَ أَخَاهُ مُحَمَّدُ بَنِي عُبَيْدِ اللَّهِ وَالدِّ النَّافِرِ نَمَّ يُبَرَّرُ عَلَيْهِ بَذَلَّتْ بَيْنَاهُمَا دِيَارُ أَخِيَانِهِمَا "Such was his want of feeling that, when his son Al-mutref put to death his brother Mohammed, 'Abdullah not only did not upbraid him for the act, but even told him, 'Much good may thy brother's death do thee; 'Allah! Allah!' " But neither does the author explain the cause of Mohammed's rebellion, nor does he give the particulars or the date of his death.

Ibn Hayyán is the only author who might have cleared up the obscurity; but strange to say, although he generally enters into long and interesting details, he is most despairingly laconic with respect to the death of Mohammed, which he mentions only incidentally in two places of his work. To what cause Ibn Hayyán's silence is to be attributed, is a question not easily solved, for he is, without dispute, the most diligent, as well as the most accurate, historian of Mohammedan Spain. Nor can we suppose that it was owing to a wish not to throw the blame upon 'Abdullah; for, at the time he wrote,
the influence of the Beni 'Umeyyah was no longer felt in Cordova, and he frequently condemns in the strongest terms some of the acts of 'Abdullah's reign.

The only facts to be gleaned from his narrative are as follow: In Jumáda the second of the year 276 (Sept. A.D. 890) Mohammed was already governor of Seville; but whether he had been appointed to that office by his uncle Al-mundhir or by his father 'Abdullah, when he ascended the throne, is uncertain. About the end of 276 (A.D. 890), in consequence of a civil war which had broken out at Seville between the Arabs and Muwallads, Mohammed's authority was disobeyed; he was besieged in his palace, and would have been massacred by the insurgents, had not an Arabian chieftain, named 'Umeyyah, saved him from the hands of the infuriated mob. Soon after Mohammed returned to Cordova by his father's order. An uncle of the Sultán, named Hishám, succeeded Mohammed in the government of Seville; but he seems also to have failed in the attempt to put down the insurrection, for in the same year Al-mutref left Cordova at the head of an army. What became of Mohammed until A.H. 282 (A.D. 895), when he appears at the head of the insurgents in Seville, we are not informed. In the spring of that year Al-mutref, accompanied by one of the Sultán's generals, named 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Umeyyah, a relation of that chief who had saved the life of Mohammed, started for Seville; but, before he reached that city, he had 'Abdu-l-malek arrested and put to death. An-nuwayrí gives as a reason for the perpetration of that murder, that Al-mutref had frequently attempted to remove 'Abdu-l-malek from the command of the forces, but had never been able to accomplish it, owing to the great favours which that general enjoyed with his father the Sultán. He had him accordingly seized under some specious pretext, and put to death.

Soon after, however, 'Abdullah, offended at the execution of his favourite, had his own son, Al-mutref, put to death. The words of Ibnu Hayyán are as follow: 


"When 'Abdullah heard of the death of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdillah 'Umeyyah, whom Al-mutref had killed to revenge some private quarrel of their own, he was exceedingly angry with his son for having done so, and he dispatched him after his victim."

In a separate chapter, entitled باب الفذم (section of vituperation or abuse), where Ibnu Hayyán passes in review the defects and vices imputed to 'Abdullah, after charging him on report with having poisoned his brother Al-mundhir, he adds, "'Abdullah put to death two of his own sons, one after the other; Mohammed, the father of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., who reigned after him, and his brother and enemy Al-mutref. He also put to death his two brothers, Hishám by the sword and Al-kásim by poison."

The above is what we know of Mohammed's fate; but what the objects of his rebellion were, which of the two parties then contending for power—the Arabs or the Muwallads—favoured his views, and, lastly, whether he was the victim of his brother's personal hatred, or of his father's unflinching severity, are points for the critic to decide. The expression of which Al-makkari makes use here—"مَهْدَ قَتْبِيل—أخيه الطرف "Mohammed, he who was murdered by his brother Al-mutref," by no means removes the difficulty, since it might have been in obedience to his father's orders.

2 An-nuwayrí says that Mohammed left thirty-three sons when he died, and that the number of those whom he had by his different wives was one hundred. He likewise says that Al-mundhir left behind him eight sons,—a statement, however, which is contradicted by Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, who, in his
notes and illustrations. [book vi.

history of the Bení Umeyyah, asserts that Al-mundhir died childless. From the narrative of Ibn Hayyán, however, we gather that 'Abdullah had two brothers, Hishám and Al-kásim, and amongst others, two sons, ābān or Ibán and Abú Umeyyah Al-‘ási, who commanded his armies, and obtained many a victory over the enemy. Conde mentions, besides, another of 'Abdullah's sons, named 'Abdu-r-rahmán Al-modhaffer, who is said to have commanded afterwards the armies of his nephew, 'Abdu-r-rahmán III.

3 During the whole of 'Abdu-r-rahmán's reign, one or more expeditions left Cordova yearly to make war against the Christians or to chastise the different rebels who resisted the authority of that Khalif. Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, in his history of the Bení Umeyyah of Spain, forming part of his historical cyclopaedia, introduces a long poem, in which he recounts all the expeditions of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, from his accession down to the year 322, when that author wrote his work. See vol. i. note 38, p. 338.

4 The expression is a remarkable one, و وصل إلى باب السدنة—The word suddah is often used by the writers of Mohammedan Spain as a synonyme of báb (door). There was, moreover, in the royal palace of Cordova a gate called Bábú-s-suddah. See vol. ii. p. 173 of this translation.

بُدآ الْهدَلُ جَدِيدًا : وَالْهدَلُ غَضِبْ جَدِيد ِ: يَانِعَةَ الْهَدَلُ رَيْدِي : أَنَّ كَانَ فُيَّاسُ مُزِيدُ ِ: أَنَّ كَانَ لِلطَّمْوَمِ فَرَرُ : فَالَيْمُ لِلدَّهْرِ عَيْدُ

In the copy of the 'Ikîd, which I have used, the second hemistich of the second verse reads as follows:

مَا كَانَ فِيْهُ مُزِيدُ

6 Sancho, son of García, King of Navarre. Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi (loco laudato) mentions this expedition under the year 308. He says that the campaign began by the taking of a town called وشیة Oshamah, now Osma.

7 Probably Ja'far, son of 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, who about this time held Toledo. His father died some years before, in 306. The expedition said to have been sent into Alava was commanded by Al-modhaffer, the Khalif's uncle.

8 In the same year the troops of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, under the command of a general named Músa, are said to have crossed the Pyrenees, and to have made an incursion into France.

9 If this expedition was really undertaken between A.H. 322 and 325 (A.D. 933-6), Ramiro II., not Ordoño III., reigned then in Leon. The author alludes, no doubt, to some campaign made after 950, the date of that sovereign's accession.

10 The city of Zamora, on the Douro, had been taken several years before by Alfonso III. of Leon. "In the year 280 (beginning March 22, A.D. 898)," says Ibn Hayyán, "Alfonso, the son of Ordoño,
"King of Galicia, rebuilt and peopled the city of Zamora, and repaired its fortifications. The architects were people from Toledo. From that time the city became a nuisance to the Moslem frontier."

No attempt seems to have been made during the reign of 'Abdullah to recover so important a place until the year 288 (A. D. 900), when a member of the royal family, named Ahmed Ibn Mu'awiyyah, indignant at the continuation of the peace with the infidels, collected a body of adventurers and tried, though in vain, to reduce that city.—Compare Conde (vol. i. cap. lxiv.), Casiri (Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 35), and the Chronicle of Sampiro, apud Florez, España Sagrada, vol. xiv. No. 14. Ibn Hayyán (loco laudato, fo. 72) has preserved us an account of this expedition, which, as it contains information not to be found in the above writers, I here translate.

"In this year (A. H. 288) Ahmed, the son of Umeyyah, son of Mohammed, better known by the surname of Ibnu-l-kitt (the kitten), son of Hishám, son of Mu'awiyyah, son of the Amir Hishám, left Cordova secretly, and joined a rebel called Abú 'Ali As-serráj. From thence he repaired to the district of Fahssu-l-baláitt and to the mountain of برانس Beránis, and, having persuaded the Berbers of the tribe of Nefzah that he was the Mahdi, he induced them to enlist under his banners, to wage war against the unbelievers, and retake the city of Zamora. This city had been destroyed and dismantled by the Moslems during the reign of the Amir Mohammed; but King Alfonso rebuilt it, repaired its fortifications, and peopled it with Christians. The distance between Zamora and Leon the Great is two days' march. Against this city Ibnu-l-kitt marched at the head of his followers, and, having encamped close to the river of Ordoño وادي ادودي (rio Sequillo or Urbigo), laid siege to Zamora. The Christians made a sally, but they were defeated with great slaughter, and compelled to shut themselves within the fortress. Having, however, received considerable re-enforcements from Galicia, the infidels again attacked the Moslems, and defeated them with great loss in killed and prisoners. Ibnu-l-kitt, being in the number of the latter, was immediately beheaded, and his head nailed under the principal gate of Zamora. This disastrous battle is still known among the Christians of those parts as Yaum Samúrah (the day of Zamora). It was fought ten days before the end of Rejeb (July, A. D. 901), according to ' Isa Ibn Ahmed [Ar-rázi], who says that he read the statement in the hand-writing of the Khalif Al-hakem. Mu'awiyyah Ibn Hishám treats at full length of this Ibnu-l-kitt in his genealogical work."

11 Medínat Chalisiyáh (the city or capital of Galicia). Zamora is often so designated by Ibn Hayyán and other historians. The word medínat, meaning a large town covering a wide extent of ground, is often used by early Arabian writers to designate the capital of a province or district; because, in consequence of their nomadic habits, one town was sufficient in the territory of each tribe. See vol. i. p. 529, note 2.

12 This battle was fought at Simaneas, on the banks of the Pisuerga, about fifteen miles from Zamora, on July the 19th, A. D. 939. See the sensible observations of M. Romey, Hist. d’Espagne, vol. iv. p. 170.

13 The word which I have translated by ' ditches ' is فضان foslán, the plural of fastil, ' a breast-work, a parapet, and also a trench or dry moat. ' One of the copies reads فضان — which I believe to be a mistake.

14 Conde (vol. i. p. 424) says, on the authority of Al-mesúdí, that, after the unsuccessful attempts
here recorded, ‘Abdu-r-rahmán again attacked Zamora and took it by storm; but I have read attentively the chapter in which that historian mentions the siege and battle of Zamora, and I have found nothing to justify the assertion. Indeed, Al-mes’údí has no more on the subject than the meagre account which Al-makkari has embodied into his history, and which is to be found in the 35th chapter of the Marújú-áh-Dhahab, treating "of the Franks and Galicians, their kings, and their wars with the Moslems of Andalus." Is it probable that ‘Abdu-r-rahmán, defeated before the walls of Zamora with the loss of forty thousand of his best troops, should undertake and achieve the storming of that strong city?

15 Al-makkari treats at full length of this learned man in the sixth book of the first part of his work. His name in full was Abú ‘Ali Isma’il Ibn Al-kásim Ibn ‘Aydhún Ibn Harún Ibn ‘Isa Ibn Mohammed Ibn Suleyán Al-káli. He was born at Menár Jord (one of the copies reads مئنارك) in Diyar-Bekr, in A. H. 288, according to some authors, and according to others in 285. The surname ‘Al-káli’ was given to him because he travelled to Baghdad in company with people from قالي ذبي Káli Káli, a town in Diyar-Bekr. He studied under Abú Bekr Ibn Doreyd Al-azdú, Abú Bekr Al-ánbári, and Ibn Darastuyah, and became one of the most accomplished grammarians of the school of Basrah: he left his native place for Baghdad in A. H. 303, and remained in that city until A. H. 328. ‘Abdu-r-rahmán III. sent for him and appointed him preceptor to his son; he made his entrance into Cordova on the 27th of Sha’bán, A. H. 330 (May, A. D. 942), and by the order of that Khalif a deputation of the inhabitants of Cordova, chiefly composed of Arabs who were originally from Kúfah, went out to meet him. Besides the Kitábu-l-amáli (dictations), which he dedicated to his pupil the Amír Al-hakem, he composed the Kitábu-n-nawádir (novelties), and another work entitled البابعر Al-búri’ (the conspicuous), the subject of which is not stated; but which Casiri (Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 136) says was a dictionary of the Arabic language. He died at Cordova in A. H. 357 (A. D. 968), and left several pupils, among whom were Abú Bekr Az-zubeydí, Ibnu-l-kúttiyah, and others. An author named Abú Mohammed Al-fehri wrote an account of the life and writings of Abú ‘Ali Al-káli.

16 Dhíku, no doubt a corruption from Dux.

17 Kaldoh or Kalodoh, an easy corruption from Carolo; the l and the r being affined letters. The King of France at the time was Charles the Simple.

18 This Rabi’, the bishop, is the same individual mentioned in the first volume of this translation, p. 236, and note 10, p. 502, and who was employed by the Khalif in negotiating with the monk of Gorz, Otho’s ambassador. But the messenger who accompanied him on his return to Germany is there said to have been a layman, named Recemundus, who was one of the Káthibs or clerks of the palace. See the interesting narrative of Joannes à Gorz, Embassy to Cordova, apud Mabillon, Acta Sanctorum Ordinis Sancti Benedicti, vol. v. p. 404, and the sensible observations of M. Romey, Hist. d’Espagne, vol. iii. p. 214, et seq., and Reinaud, Invasions des Sarrasins, p. 187.

19 This date must be mistaken. According to Sampirus (Chron. No. 27), Ordoño the third, not the second, as in the text, died about the middle of August, A. D. 955, at Zamora.
Garcia, son of Sancho, was King of Navarre, not of Galicia. The author, no doubt, means Sancho I., son of Ramiro II., who succeeded his brother, Ordoño III., on the throne of Leon in 955, being shortly after deprived of power by a rebellion of his subjects, headed, as related in the text, by Ferran Gonzales, Count of Castile, and Ordoño IV., son of Alfonso IV.

The usurper Ordoño, whom the Spanish historians do not count in the number of the kings of Leon, was not the son of Ramiro II., but of Alfonso IV. He was called 'El Malo,' or the wicked.

Al-makkari, or rather the historian whose words he transcribes here, has invariably confounded the dethroned King of Leon [Sancho I.], who was the grandson of Theuda, with her own son (Garcia, son of Sancho, King of Navarre), attributing to one the actions of the other; or else Al-makkari himself committed the mistake by transcribing too hastily the words of his authority, which is not at all improbable. The confusion arising from such misplacement of names might easily have been avoided in the translation; but in this, as in other instances, I have preferred translating literally the text of my author, however palpable his errors, rather than introducing any corrections of my own.

Sancho I. was not the son, but the grandson of Theuda; his mother, Urraca, was the daughter of that princess.

That is, her own son, the King of Navarre, and her grandson Sancho, the dethroned King of Leon, surnamed 'Crassus' (the fat), owing to his excessive corpulence, arising from hydropsy. The avowed object of Sancho's visit to Cordova is said to have been to obtain from the Arabian physicians a remedy for his disease; and it is added, that by the juice of certain herbs Sancho was cured, and restored to his former lightness and agility. Sampirus, Chron. No. 26, apud Florez, España Sagrada, vol. xiv.; Ferreras, Hist. de España, Part iv. p. 340.

Sancho, not Garcia, as here stated, was replaced on the throne of Leon by the help of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who furnished him with money and troops for his enterprise.

Some copies read here كَلَّدَة مَلَكَة الأَفْرَنْجَةَ 'Kaldah, Queen of the Franks.' If the reading be correct, which I doubt, it is meant for the widow of Charles, mother of Louis d'Outremer.

Sunoifred, son of Miro, Count of Barcelona.

Upon the probable site of Bejénannah, which was a flourishing town before Almeria rose into importance, see vol. i. p. 359, note 122, of this translation, and the extracts from Ibnu Hayyán.

The same theologian mentioned in vol. i. pp. 150 and 430. He was the son of the celebrated traditionist, Yahya Ibn Yahya Al-leythí.

In other copies 'Obeydullah.'

The text reads رَدْكَ, which might also mean 'vellum.'
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.  

32 The word translated by ‘case’ is جعبة ja'bah, in Spanish ‘aljava’ (a quiver).

33 Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr Al-kasimi, who must not be confounded with Abú 'Amra Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr, although belonging to the same family.

34 The author of the Karttós relates this differently. He says that Mossálah kept Yahya in prison until that monarch revealed to him the spot where his treasures lay concealed, when he set him at liberty, and banished him to Assilah (Arsila). Yahya remained some time at that place, where a relative of his was then reigning; but having left it with the intention of proceeding to Eastern Africa, he fell in with Músa Ibn Abi-l-‘afiyyah, one of Mossálah's lieutenants, who kept him in confinement for about twenty years. Yahya was at length released and suffered to proceed to Mahdiyah, where he died in extreme poverty in A. H. 332 (beginning Sept. 3, A. D. 943). Yahya was the son of 'Omar, son of Idrís. He was the seventh Sultán of his family who reigned over Fez, and the third of his name.

35 My copy has حاجم, as printed; but two copies of the Karttós, which I have consulted, have حاجم. The origin of the surname is thus explained by Ibn Khaledún. In one of the many battles which Hasan had to fight against his uncle, Ahmed Ibn Al-kasim, the former attacked a horseman, and struck his steed three times, one after the other, on the mahjim (that part of the neck where horses are bled); which being reported to his uncle, he is said to have exclaimed, “By Allah! our nephew is a hajjim” (bleeder); and the surname ever after remained to him. The same author quotes the following verse:

و سبيت حاجم و نسبت حاجم ولا كان لعلو في مكان الحاِجِم

“Thou hast been named a bleeder, and yet thou art not such, unless it be through thy striking on the mahjim.”

The word al-hajjim has passed into the Spanish alfageme.

36 There must be some mistake here. The author informs us elsewhere (vol. i. p. 122), on the authority of Al-bekrí, that during the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. the Kádi-l-kodá or supreme judge of Fez, whose name was Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Abí 'Isa, landed in Spain, and was received by that Sultán with all the honours due to his high rank and noble birth (Mohammed being a member of the family of Idrís). By referring to Al-bekrí (Brit. Mus., No. 9577, fo. 87), I find the quotation correct. But then I find the arrival of Abú-l-'aysh Ahmed, son of Al-kasim Kannún or Kannún, the Idrísite, recorded in the Karttós under the same circumstances; from which I conclude that there were two arrivals, that of Mohammed Ibn Abí 'Isa and that of Abú-l-'aysh, both of whom visited Spain during the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and that it was the former, not the latter, as is stated in the Karttós, who met with the brilliant reception described in vol. i. p. 122 of this translation.

37 According to Ibn Khaledún (fo. 99) and Al-bekrí (fo. 87), they were all sent to Cordova as hostages for the fidelity of their family. They came escorted by Ahmed Ibn Ya'la, who commanded 'Abdu-r-rahmán's forces in Africa.

38 Al-bekrí (loco laudato, fo. 87, verso) mentions, besides the names of Hasan and 'Isa, the sons of Jannún (Kannún ?).
Alhomaydi (Jadh’watu-l-muktabis, fo. 8) places the death of ’Abdu-r-rahmán on the first of Ramadán. According to Ibnu-l-athír (’Ibratu-l-ouilt) he died of a paralytic stroke. Immediately after this passage there follows in the abridgment the following account, said to have been borrowed from the historian Ibn Khaldún. “When the Khalif ’Abdu-r-rahmán An-násír saw his power consolidated, he gave all his attention to the erection of palaces and other buildings. His predecessors, Mohammed, ’Abdu-r-rahmán II., and Al-hakem I., had been all fond of building, causing several palaces to be constructed with admirable art and solidity, such as that called مَجِلس الزَّاهِر Mejles Az-záhir, or the pavilion of the flowers; Al-kámil (the complete or perfect); Al-muníf (the eminent), and others; but none was so fond of it as ’Abdu-r-rahmán, who is well known to have erected several stupendous buildings, and among others a palace called Dárú-r-ráudhah, to which he conveyed abundance of water, as well as to the other palaces built by his ancestors. In the construction of this palace, which was close to Mejles Az-záhir, ’Abdu-r-rahmán is reported to have lavished countless treasures, having employed architects and geometrical even from Baghdad and Constantinople. After this he took to building pleasure-houses, and planted the gardens of Mun'yatu-n-núdi’irah, which he supplied with water brought from the top of distant mountains. But the greatest work in which he was engaged was the city of Az-záhrá, which he took for his residence and the court of his empire, causing buildings and palaces to be erected there, and gardens to be planted, which left far behind any such building or garden belonging to his ancestors; making besides spacious recesses for wild beasts, strongly railed in, as well as receptacles for birds, covered with awnings of net-work. He had also an arsenal where all sorts of warlike weapons were made, as well as ornamental work and other articles of workmanship. He ordered an awning to be thrown over the court of the great mosque of Cordova, to guard the people, who frequented it, from the rays of the sun.”

Alluding to the buildings erected by ’Abdu-r-rahmán, I find the following passage in An-nuwayrí, which I deem worthy of being translated. “Az-záhrá was situated three miles from Cordova, on the declivity of a mountain. It was divided into three parts. That nearest to the mountain was inhabited by the Khalif, who had there his palaces, pleasure-grounds, &c. In another resided the servants and eunuchs of the Khalif’s household, and his body-guard, composed of twelve thousand men, splendidly attired, and having swords and belts glittering with gold. A detachment of these accompanied the Khalif whenever he rode out, and mounted guard at his palace. The remaining third was laid out in gardens and pleasure-grounds, over which the palaces of ’Abdu-r-rahmán had a commanding view. The whole was plentifully supplied with water brought from the neighbouring mountains. But the most remarkable building in Az-záhrá was a pavilion overlooking the gardens. It was supported by columns of streaked marble, mounted in gold and inlaid with rubies and pearls. In front of the pavilion was a sea [large tank] filled with zabík or quicksilver, which was kept in perpetual motion, and reflected the rays of the sun upon the pavilion. Twelve years were spent in the building of Az-záhrá, and the number of workmen employed was twelve thousand.”

An-nuwayrí adds, “that twelve Christian workmen of great skill were daily employed in the construction of ’Abdu-r-rahmán’s palace at Az-záhrá, according to the terms of a treaty which the Christians made with him to insure peace.”

This was not the only motive which induced ’Abdu-r-rahmán to take the measure. According to Al-homaydí (Jadh’watu-l-muktabis, fo. 5), the appearance of the Shiites in Eastern Africa, and the assumption by Al-mahdí of the title of Khalif, were the principal reasons. Alluding to this event,
An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 467) says, "'Abdu-r-rahmán was the first sovereign of Andalus who 'assumed the titles of Khalíf and Amíru-l-múmenín (Commander of the Faithful). He was instigated to 'that act by the news of the rising of the Shiites at Cairwán and of their having proclaimed Al-mahdí, 'as well as by the information he received of the weakened state of the Khalifate under Al-muktadír the 'Abbasí. So that there were no less than three Khalífs at the time, Al-muktadír in the 'Irák, 'Al-mahdí at Cairwán, and An-násír at Cordova."

41 This quotation is from the Korán, Súrah 18, verse 78.

42 Al-sat'h Ibn Khákán Al-kaysí gives the life of Mundhir Al-bolútí in his Mattmah (Brit. Mus., No. 9580, fo. 133), among those of the doctor or theologians. Al-makkarí mentions him also in Part i. book v. fo. 97, among the Spanish Moslems who travelled to the East. "Al-mundhir," he says, "left Andalus in A. H. 308. On his return in 339 he was appointed Kádí of Cordova by 'Abdu-r-rahmán, and retained the office until the end of Dhi-l-ka'dah of the year 355 (Nov. A. D. 966), when 'he died under the reign of Al-hakem II. He was buried in the cemetery of Koraysh, in the western suburb of Cordova, and to the north-west of the mosque of Sudhátu-l-kóbra, not far from the house in which he had resided. He left several works on theology and jurisprudence, among which the most celebrated are Akhúmu-l-kórún (decisions of the Korán) and Al-nunassakh wa-l-mansúkh (the original and the copy). Although he professed in secret the sect of Abú Suleyman Adh-dháherí, he is known "never to have uttered decisions in conformity with its opinions."

43 Al-makkarí mentions this individual in the fifth book of the first part (fo. 219), among the Moslems who visited Spain. His full name was Abú-l-ysr Ibráhím Ibn Ahmed Ash-shéybaní; but he was better known by his patronymic Ar-riyádhi. He was a native of Baghdaíd, where he studied under the best professors, such as Al-jáhédh ('Amru Ibn Bahr), Al-mubarrad, Tha'lebah, Ibn Koteybah, &c. While young, he left his native country and travelled through Khorásán, Syria, Egypt, and Africa, where he settled, and became the Kátíb of Ibráhím Ibn Ahmed Ibn Aghlab, Amír of Eastern Africa, and after his death, of his son Abú-l-'abbás 'Abdulláh, and lastly of Zeyádatullah Ibn 'Abbílláh, the last of the Aghlabites. He died at Cairwán in A. H. 298 (beginning Sept. 8, A. D. 910), at the beginning of the reign of 'Obeydullah, the Shíites: he was then seventy-five years old.

According to Ibnu-l-abbár, in his Isfádatu-l-wafídat, Ash-shéybaní visited Andalus during the reign of Mohammed, the son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. He wrote the following works: لفظ البرجان 'the fall of corals,' which Ibnu-r-rakik describes as a history still more voluminous than the 'Oyánu-l-akhbár (fountains of history); سراج البدي 'the lamp of direction,' a commentary upon the Korán; قطب الادب 'the pole of literature,' and others. It was he who first introduced into Africa the literary production known as رسائل السعديين 'the epistles or tracts of the traditionists.'

The above account, however, is in contradiction of what is stated here; for if Ash-shéybaní visited Spain during the reign of Mohammed [A. H. 239-73], and died in 298, he could not have resided in Cordova under 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., whose reign began in A. H. 300.

44 Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-málek (or 'Abdi-l-málik) Ibn Aymén is the same author mentioned at

45 **dhahebu-l-'ayn** means ‘coined gold;’ **dhahebu-l-tibr,** which the Spaniards call ‘oro de Tíbar,’ is virgin gold.

46 A **bidr** is a purse containing ten thousand dirhems. A custom still prevails in Spain of counting money in this way. A ‘talega’ (purse) is equal to one thousand dollars.

47 The Rich MS. reads — but the reading in the abridgment, as well as in the Gotha MS., fo. 77, verso, is .

48 The word **muntaki** means ‘spotless, pure.’

49 i.e. costly or of the best quality, unless the epithet **al-ghāli** applies to the kind of scent called **ghāliyyah,** whence the Spanish ‘algalía’ and ‘agalla.’

50 Musk or misk (Sp. al-misque and almizcel).

51 **Samir** is the **mustela scythica**; hence jackets made of the skin of that quadruped are called by the Spaniards **zamarras,** by the Italians **zinarras,** and by the French **simarras.** The word **zamarras** is now applied in Spain to any sort of skin-jacket.

52 The Sha’ybites were the followers of Sha’yb Ibn Mohammed, who was the founder of a religious sect, differing only from that of the ‘Ajdarians or disciples of ’Abdu-l-kerim Ibn ’Adjar in a few immaterial points. *Kitāb-u-n-nahal wāl-i-melal,* by Ash-sheherastání, Brit. Mus., No. 7251, fo. 100.

53 The **milhaf** or **milhafah** is an outer garment made in the shape of a cloak without sleeves. The Spaniards call it **almallefa.**

54 The word **sordakát,** plural of **sorádik,** which I have translated by ‘tents,’ means also the awning thrown over the court of a house.

55 — The Gotha MSS. reads — Neither word, however, is to be found in our dictionaries; but I have no doubt that the former reading is the correct one, and that the stuff called ‘cazon’ by the Spaniards is here meant.

56 **katifah,** a small carpet, called in Spanish ‘alcatifa.’

57 One of the MSS. reads — but there can be no doubt that **kanbāniyyah** is nothing more than the Latin word *campania* Arabicized.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS. [BOOK VI.

58 The MSS. here present various readings. That in the British Museum has سیرہ Seyrah or Sūrah; my copy and that belonging to the library of Gotha have Sheyrah نی نی فربہ شیرہ—which reading I have adopted.

59 The life of Abū 'Amīr [Ahmed] Ibn Shoheyd is in the Jaddi'watul-muktabis by Al-homaydī, fo. 54, verso, and in the Mutmahu-l-anfūs by Al-fath Ibn Khākān (fo. 47, verso). The latter author gives him the patronymic Asbjā'ī. Conde mentions him frequently, but calls him sometimes 'ben Said,' and at other times 'ben Sahid.' See vol. i. pp. 426, 432, 441, et alibi. See also Romey (Hist. d'Espagne, vol. iii. chap. xv.), who, led into error by the Spanish translator, calls him 'Ahmed ben Saūd Abou Ahmer.'

60 The word translated by 'starling' is زوزر zorzūr, which has been preserved in the Spanish 'zorzal.'

61 إيها الفاقد رفقاً : بايمر اليومنينا انيا تفصص عرقاً : فيه جييا العالمينا

CHAPTER VI.

1 It is elsewhere stated that Al-hakem ascended the throne on Thursday, the 5th of Ramadhdān, two days after his father's death, which agrees with the dates fixed by Al-homaydī, apud Casiri, vol. ii. p. 201.

2 An-nuwayrī, who gives the names of 'Abdu-r-rahmān's sons, does not mention Abū Merwān 'Obeydullah among them. Yet there can be no doubt of his having had one so named; for Al-makkarī mentions, though incidentally, a splendid entertainment which that Khalīf gave on the occasion of the circumcision of the two sons of Abū Merwān 'Obeydullah.

3 The word translated by 'wings' is فصلان fasālin, the plural of fassil, which means 'the projecting angle of a building,' and 'a buttress.'

4 This would indicate that 'white' was the colour used by the Benī Umeyyah for mourning. It is probable that as their rivals the 'Abbāsides appeared clad in sable robes on all public occasions, the Sultāns of Spain adopted white even when in mourning. However, by inserting the conjunction ٌ (and), the meaning might be so altered as to make it appear that the eunuchs wore some garment made of a stuff appropriated for mourning, as, for instance, the شرقة sherkah (Sp. xerga), which the Arabs and the Spaniards generally used for mourning apparel.

5 This general was descended from the Tojibites of Aragon. He was probably the son of Abū Yahya Mohammed, governor of Saragossa, who died in 312. See a preceding note, p. 441.
6 Kotūbiyyah. Mr. Shakespear's copy reads Katūniyyah, by the alteration of one single point. As it is not stated in what part of the Christian frontier this fortress was situated, it is impossible to say what may be its present name. M. Romey (Hist. d'Espagne, vol. iv. chap. xvi.) states it to have been situated in the neighbourhood of Huesca, but the text says only that "it was taken by the governor of Huesca," which is by no means conclusive of its being situated in the vicinity of that place.

7 The same fortress called elsewhere ' Shant Eshitban' or San Esteban de Gormaz, and which appears to have been retaken by the Christians in the interval.

8 See the extracts from Ibn Khaldūn in the first volume of this translation, App. B. p. xxxv., where Ibn Romáhis is said to have been the commander-in-chief of the naval forces under 'Abdu-r-rahmán III.

9 The expedition was no doubt intended against his ally, Ferran Gonzalez, Count of Castile, and not against Ordoño, who had then no dominions subject to his rule.

10 Ghalīb had previously been a mauli or freedman of 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir, whence his surname An-násirī.

11 Elsewhere called kalansuah or a Christian cap. The word kalansuah, which is not of Arabic origin, seems to be a corruption from calantica.

12 Two of the copies read 'Ibn Talmīs;' that belonging to the library of Gotha 'Ibn Tamlas.'

13—in all copies, except the Rich MS., which reads برلنابل. Neither word, however, is to be found in the dictionaries.

14—but the abridgment and the Gotha MS. read ابن خيزران Ibn Khayzaran.

15 It is doubtful whether the individual here mentioned was "the bishop himself" or the "son of the bishop." At all events it is curious enough that he should have a name so essentially Arabic, although this is not the only instance of the kind which occurs in the history of Mohammedan Spain.

16 The text reads برلنابل. The word bortal, which I have translated by 'gate or gateway,' appears to be a corruption from porta or portal. It is one of the many words which the Moslems of Spain borrowed from the language of their Christian neighbours. Instead of Dār al-jandal, which is the reading afforded by all the manuscripts, the copy belonging to the library of Gotha has Dār al-jund (the house or the barracks of the army).

17 Bornús or bornós, which has been preserved in the Spanish 'albornoz.'
18 The word used is dard'h, which means a breast-plate, any garment fitting tight to the chest.

19 It is by mere guess that I have translated the word luzah or laluzah by 'belt.'

20 If the author be not mistaken, this would prove that Mun'yuatu-n-nad'urah and Kasr Ar-rissadfah were one and the same building; for it is said above (p. 161), that when Ordoño arrived in Cordova he was lodged at the Mun'yuatu-n-nad'urah, or 'the pleasure-grounds of the water-wheel.' See vol. i. p. 212, and p. 489, note 40.

21 Thus in the abridgment; but in the original work Al-makkari introduces some fragments of a poem composed on the occasion by 'Abdu-l-málik Ibn Sa'id Al-morádi (see vol. i. pp. 190 and 468 of this translation), after which he quotes some verses supposed to have been the composition of Al-hakem.

22 The arrival of the Catalanian ambassadors in Cordova must have taken place after the successful invasion of their territory by Ahmed Ibn Ya'la and Yahya Ibn Mohammed At-tojibi. See p. 159.

23 I have shown elsewhere (vol. i. p. 380, note 14) that this unnatural commerce was carried on by the French along the Pyrenees.

24 About this time Rodericus Velasconis or Velasci, one of the most powerful counts of Galicia, is said to have entered into a league with other nobles to make Galicia independent of Leon. His mother might, therefore, have visited Cordova with the view to obtain the assistance of Al-hakem.

25 See p. 145. He was killed in A. H. 343 (A. D. 954), in an encounter with the troops of Ordoño III.

26 Mu'izz or Al-mu'izz lidín-illah Abú Temím Ma'd, the fourth of the Fátimites, or 'Obeydites of Africa. He was the first of his family who established himself in Egypt. His general, Jauhar, took Fez in Ramadán, A. H. 349 (Nov. or Dec. A. D. 960), and Balkín Ibn Zeyrí subdued the rest of Western Africa, with the exception of Ceuta, Tangiers, and other fortified places along the coast which remained faithful to the Bení Umeyyah.

27 Hajaru-n-nasr (the rock of the eagles), a strong castle in the neighbourhood of Assilah, south of Fez. See Al-bekri, Mésdlek wa-l-mem'alek, fo. 87.

28 When Abú Bekr Ibn-l-azrak arrived in Spain, Al-hakem had not yet ascended the throne. Al-makkari gives the life of Abú Bekr Al-azrak among those of the illustrious Moélems who visited Spain (Part i. book vi. fo. 217). His name was Mohammed, and he was the son of Ahmed, son of Mohammed, son of 'Abdullah, who was a lineal descendant from 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Merwán, the twelfth Khalif of the race of Umeyyah in the East.

29 One of the MSS. reads here انلكنف, but the abridgment and the copy belonging to
the library of Gotha have **Al-bolütti**, the relative adjective of Fahssu-l-bolütt, or 'the field of the oak trees,' a district near Cordova.

30 Conde (vol. i. p. 466) says that the work which Abú-l-faraj, of Ispahán, presented to Al-hakem, was a history of the Khalifs of the race of Umeyyah in the East and in Spain. In a refutation of the Korán, written by a Spanish missionary in 1511, for the use of the newly-converted Moors of Valencia, the original of which is in my possession, large extracts are given from a work by Abú-l-faraj, entitled **Iydmu-l-'arab** (the celebrated days or epochs of the Arabs), which is quoted as existing in Spain at the time. The work is there said to be divided into seventeen hundred iyám or days. According to Al-homaydî, the correspondence between Abú-l-faraj and Al-hakem took place during the lifetime of An-násir, which is far more probable, as Abú-l-faraj died in A. H. 356. Oriental literature is greatly indebted to Professor Kosegarten for a beautiful and correct edition of the **Kitābu-l-agháni**.

31 **Mokhtassar** (the abridged) is the title of several compilations of traditional law, the most celebrated of which is one by Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn 'Abdī-l-hakem Al-misrî, which, according to Khayr Ibn Khalífah in his Bibliographical Repertory, was greatly in use among students professing the sect of Sháî in Spain.

32 An-násir lidín-illah Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed, the thirty-fourth Khalif of the race of 'Abbás, son of Mustadhi binúr-illah. The library which he collected was destroyed by the Monghús under Hulákû at the taking of Baghdád in A. H. 656 (A. D. 1258).

33 This statement is likewise to be found in Casiri (vol. ii. p. 37), and Conde (vol. i. p. 459), who borrowed it from the same source. It is no doubt exaggerated, unless the forty-four volumes, of which the unfinished catalogue is said to have consisted, contained also a biography of the authors.

34 Ibn Dahim or Ibn Deyham, for it may be pronounced both ways. One of the copies reads ابی دیهم ابی دیلم Ibn Deylam.

35 **al-odhri**; but perhaps it is to be written Al-'adhrí, i. e. 'the native of or born at Adra,' on the coast of Granada.

36 Of Ibn Mughíth ['Abdullah Ibn Mohammed?], the poet, I find no account in Al-makkarí; but there occurs in Part t. book v. fo. 124, a long notice of Ibn Mufarrag, which I here translate.

"In this year (A. H. 378) died the celebrated author Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Ibn Yahya Ibn Mufarrag, of Cordova. His great grandfather, Mufarrag, had been master of the horse to the Sultán Al-hakem I. His father, Ahmed Ibn Yahya, was a man of irreproachable conduct and great piety; he was well known in Cordova by his patronymic Al-kantúrî, from his being born in the quarter of the city called Kantúriah. Mohammed was born in 320 (beginning Jan. 12, A. D. 932). After studying under Kásim Ibn Asbagh, Ibn Deylam, and Al-khoshání, he set out for the East in 338 (beginning June 30, A. D. 949), and arrived at Mekka, where he profited by the lessons of Ibnu-l-arábí, continuing as one of his disciples until that theologian died. He then travelled to Juddah"
and to Medina, visited San’a, Zubeyd, and ’Aden, where he likewise received instruction from the learned of each country. From the latter place he journeyed to Cairo, where he frequented the house of Al-baraki, the friend of Ahmed Al-bezá, As-seyrafi, and other eminent authors. Lastly, he went to Ghazzah, ’Askalân, (Ascalon), Tiberiyah (Tiberias), Damascus, Tripoli, Beyrút, Seydah, Ar-ramlah, Súr, Kaysariyyah, Kolzum, Al-farmá, and Alexandria, in all which cities he endeavoured to form the acquaintance of the theologians most distinguished for their learning; so that, at the end of his travels, the number of Sheikhs from whom he received instruction, and whose conversations or writings he afterwards quoted on his return to his native country, is said to have exceeded two hundred and thirty. He himself was cited by Abú ‘Omar At-talamanki (of Salamanca), and several other doctors. During his stay in Egypt, Mohammed Ibn Mufarraj became acquainted with Abú Sa’id Ibn Yúnas, the author of the history of Misr, which he copied after him.

On the return from his travels in 340 (beginning May 8, A. d. 951), Mohammed attached himself to the suite of Al-hakem, who granted him many favours and distinctions. When that prince ascended the throne, he appointed Mohammed to be Kádí of Ezija, and afterwards of Almeria, and moreover commissioned him to write several works, among which the most celebrated are: a treatise on the Fikh or ‘legal decisions, extracted from the body of traditions respecting the Prophet;’ another treatise entitled ‘legal decisions founded on traditions preserved by the tâbi’s or followers of the companions [of the Prophet];’ and two other works on the decisions of Al-hasan Al-basrî and Az-zahirî; the former consisting of seven thick volumes, the latter divided into several parts. Ibn Mufarraj died in the month of Rejeb, A. H. 378 (Sept. or Oct. A. d. 988).

The above is not the only writer of Mohammedan Spain known by the surname of Ibn Mufarraj. There were besides, 1st, Al-hasan Ibn Mohammed (Abû Bekr), who is often quoted by Ibnu-l-khattîb as the author of a history of Mohammedan Spain entitled 339[l. 380]

The gathering of information on the history of the Spanish Moslems], and is, no doubt, the same individual mentioned by Casiri (vol. ii. p. 141), under the name of Hassanus ben Mohamad; 2nd, Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn ‘Abdi-l-khalîl Ibn Mufarraj, better known by the surname of Ibnu-r-rámiyyah (the son of the Christian or Greek woman), and Al-‘ashshâb (the botanist), whose life is in Ibnu-l-khattîb; 3rd, Abû-l-‘abbâs Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mufarraj Ibn Abî-l-khalîl; and lastly, Nâbit Ibn Mufarraj Ibn Yusuf Al-khath’ami. The individual mentioned in this passage is the same alluded to in the chapter treating of the literature of the Spanish Arabs, vol. i. p. 183 of this translation, notwithstanding that his name is there given erroneously “Mohammed Ibn Yahya,” instead of Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Ibn Yahya. The theologian here and there named Az-zahirî, and whom I identified with Abû ‘Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Sa’id, of Basrah, is no other than the celebrated traditionist Abû Bekr Mohammed Ibn Moslem Az-zahirî, whose life is in Ibn Khallekan (Tyd. Ind., No. 574).

See vol. i. p. 175 of this translation, and Conde, vol. i. p. 459.

Ahmed Ibn Faraj was also the author of a history of the most celebrated rebels during the reign of ’Abdullah, which is frequently quoted by Ibnu Hayyân. See vol. i. pp. 185 and 187 of this translation.

Conde (vol. i. p. 481) mentions an author named “Yaix ben Said de Baena,” who lived at the court of Al-hakem II., and was a favourite of that Sultán, by whom he was employed in transcribing such poems as deserved his approbation. Adh-dhibi gives the life of a poet named Abû ’Othmán Ya’ish Ibn Sa’id Ibn Mohammed Al-warrâk (the bookseller or paper merchant), who is reported to have composed several historical works for Al-hakem. He was alive in A. H. 390.
An-nuwayri places the death of Al-hakem some time before. His words are as follow: "There are various dates given for the death of Al-hakem: some say that he died of a paralytic stroke, the 4th day of Safar; others are of opinion that he died at the beginning of Moharram, and that his death was kept concealed until Saturday, the 10th of the said month, when it was publicly announced to the people. The latter is the most certain. He was born on Friday, the 1st of Rejeb, A.H. 302, and was sixty-three years, six months, and ten days old when he died. His reign had lasted fifteen years, four months, and some days." (Loco laudato, fo. 469).

CHAPTER VII.

1 Other authors, like Ibnu-l-athir and Al-homaydi (Jadh'watu-l-muktabis, fo. 7), say "ten." Of the authors consulted by Casiri (vol. ii. p. 50), one says that "he was twelve years old at the time;" another (ib. p. 202), that "he had just attained his eleventh year;" An-nuwayri (fo. 470) says "twelve."

2 According to Ibnu-l-khattib, in his history of Granada, the appointment of Al-mansûr to the office of Wizfr took place in A.H. 364, two years before the death of Al-hakem. An-nuwayri (fo. 470) says that it was Hishâm who, upon his accession to the throne, appointed Al-mansûr to the post of Wizfr, giving him at the same time the command of the shoftah or police-guard, and the direction of the sekah or mint.

3 جوزر — which is written Jauzar in some copies of this work.

4 Ja'far Ibn 'Ali Ibn Hamdám, Lord of Masilah, was the general appointed by Al-mansûr to relieve Ceuta, when that city was besieged by Balkin Ibn Zeyrí, the founder of the dynasty of the Zeyrites of Africa. He was not a native of Spain, as some authors have erroneously supposed, but of that quarter of Fez called 'Idwatu-l-andalusiin (or the side of the Andalusians), whence he took the surname of Andalusî. Ibn Khallekán, who gives his life, calls him Abú 'Ali Ja'far Ibn 'Ali Ibn Ahmed Ibn Hamdám. See Baron Mac Guckin de Slane's excellent translation of that biographer's work, vol. i. p. 326.

5 This observation can be applied to no other than 'Abdullah, the only Sultan of the dynasty of Umeyyah in Spain, who succeeded his brother [Al-mundhir], and whose reign was troubled by protracted civil wars.

6 Most copies read Al-mughásferi; but there can be no doubt that Al-mu'ísferi is the true reading. See p. 403, note 26.

7 — If this statement be correct, and the work here mentioned do not form part of the Matín, it may be added to the list of Ibnu Hayyán's historical productions. Conde (vol. i. p. 512) mentions also a history of the Bení Abí 'A'mir written by Ibnu Hayyán.
8 Mohammed Ibn Foteys was a celebrated theologian who lived in Cordova during the reigns of 'Abdullah and his grandson and successor 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. Al-makkārī mentions him in the fifth book of the first part, among the Andalusians who travelled to the East. His entire name was Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Foteys Al-gháfeki Al-albírí, i. e. from Elvira, where he died in Shawwál, 319 (A. D. 931), at the age of ninety. Ibnul-khattib (Hist. of Granada, cap. iii.) says that the ancestors of Mohammed Ibn Foteys were originally from the jund of Damascus, one of the five military divisions of Syria: the other four were Hems or Emessa, Filistyn, Kenessín, and Al-urdán.

9 —Sometimes called Rokádah. See the French translation of Al-bekrí in the twelfth volume of the Notices et Extraits, p. 552.

10 Conde (vol. i. p. 491) calls her Sobeiha (Sobeyhah); but all the authors I have consulted write her name Sobha, as printed.

11 —'an ornamented bridle,' says the text.

12 Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Hání Al-andalusi Al-azdí, surnamed Abú-l-kásim and Abú-l-hasán, whose life is in Ibn Khallekán (Tyd. Ind., No. 679). A collection of his kassidas or poems, among which is the one here mentioned, is in the Radcliffe Library at Oxford, Sale Collection, K. 21. The volume contains several poems in praise of Mu'izz, the Fátimite, and of Ja'far Ibn 'Ali Al-andalusi.

13 This chieftain belonged to the powerful family of the Tojibites, whose frequent rebellions at Saragossa and other towns of the Upper Thagher (Aragon) are fully related by Ibnu Hayyán. See the extracts from the Muktabis, note 47, p. 441.

14 The author of the Reyhûnî-l-lebib intimates that Al-mansúr behaved ungratefully to Sobha; for after ridding himself of Ja'far and Ghálib, he stirred up Hishám against his own mother, and destroyed all her influence in public affairs.

15 in some copies; others 'of the eunuchs of the palace.' The abridgment 'of the eunuchs called great Khalifs.'

16 Ghálib had greatly distinguished himself in the African wars during the reign of Al-hakem. It was he who overthrew the dynasty of the Bení Idrís and took Al-hasán Ibn Kannán prisoner. He was the captain of a guard chiefly composed of maulis or freed slaves, and was the son of a Christian.

17 —that is, governor of the city (prefectus urbis). According to Ibnul-khattib, the duties of this officer were the same as those of the Sáhibu-sh-shorthah, or chief of the police guards. See vol. i. p. 104 of this translation. An office called 'Vadalmedina,' no doubt a corruption from Wála-l-medínah, existed at the court of the kings of Aragon. The duties of its holder seem to have been the same with those of the Mohammedan functionary. See the collection of the laws and privileges of Aragon, entitled Fueros y observancias del Reyno de Aragon, Zaragoza, 1517, fo. xliii.
The title of this work is not in Háji Khalfah.

Ghálib is here called An-nasráni, which is evidently a mistake for An-násiri.

But perhaps Fáyik is meant. See p. 175.

My copy adds “on the banks of the river of Cordova or Guadalquivir.”

Gold and silver coins with the name of Al-mansúr are very common; some have only his name, Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir, others Al-hájib Al-mansúr. The oldest I have seen bears the date of 372. There is likewise a very rare copper coin, bearing on one side the inscription Al-mansúr, in Cufic, and on the other a church-bell reversed. There is no date upon it; but there can be no doubt of its having been struck shortly after the expedition of the year 384, which ended in the destruction of the cathedral church of Santiago, the bells of which were carried to Cordova on the shoulders of Christian captives.

The word used does not exactly mean ‘bridge,’ but a dam (sudd, Sp. azuda) thrown across the river in order to collect the waters for the purpose of irrigation, and yet wide enough to serve as a bridge; a very common contrivance in Spain.

According to the author of the Karttíás, Al-hasan had resided in Cordova, as a guest of the Khalif Al-hakem, from Moharram, A. H. 364 (Sept. or Oct. A. D. 974) to A. H. 375 (beginning June 3, A. D. 984), when, owing to a dispute about a large piece of amber which the Idrísite prince possessed, but which he would not make over to Al-hakem, notwithstanding that Khalif had repeatedly asked him for it, and offered him in return any sum of money he should like to fix, his property was confiscated and himself banished from Spain, together with other individuals of the family of Idrís. The block of amber, however, remained in the treasury of the Khalifs, where ‘Alí Ibn Hamúd found it on his taking possession of Cordova in A. H. 407 (A. D. 1016).

The word Kanún or Kenún is written by some authors كنون and جنون also.

Conde (vol. i. p. 511), who mentions this campaign, says that Al-mansúr left Cordova on the 12th of Dhi-l-hajjah.
This passage is not to be found in all the copies of Al-makkari, and I have in vain looked for it in those preserved in the British Museum. I have therefore translated it such as I found it in the edition of the Nafsu-t-tib, made in the eighteenth century by Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abdi-l-málik At-telemsání, and which, as I have stated elsewhere, is fuller than the usual ones of the same work, owing to the editor having in many instances given at full length those passages which Al-makkari only abridged.

One of the copies reads "Ibnu-l-gharif;" but it is a mistake.

Perhaps a mistake for بن النجم 'Ibn al-‘ajjam, 'the son of the astronomer.' His life is not to be found among those of the illustrious Moslems who visited Spain.

— Khayr Ibn Khalifah, in his Bibliographical Repertory, mentions a poet of this name who made a collection of poetry for the use of Al-mansúr.

Casiri treats in two places (vol. ii. pp. 139 and 148) of this Yúsuf, who was a native of Cordova, but originally from Ramédah, a town of Western Africa.

This Merwán Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán is no doubt the Maron mentioned by Conde (vol. i. pp. 449, 531).

An-nakkús means 'the seller of ink.' The abridgment reads Al-najjas, 'the copperasmit.'

The name of this writer, whose life is in Ibn Khallekán (Tyd. Ind., No. 662), in the Muttmak by Ibn Khákán (fo. 144), as well as in Adh-dhóbí (apud Casiri, vol. ii. p. 139), was not Mohammed Ibn Isma'il nor Al-husayn Ibn Mohammed, as stated elsewhere (vol. i. p. 194), but Abú Bekr Mohammed Ibn Al-hasan Ibn 'Abdilláh Ibn Madh'hijl Ibn 'Abdilláh Al-madh'hijí Az-zubeydí Al-isbílí (from Seville). He was a pupil of Abú 'Ali Al-kálí, and gained so much reputation by his works that Al-hakem II. appointed him to be his son's (Hishám) preceptor. Among other works,—the list of which may be found in Ibn Khallekán,—Az-zubeydí made an abridgment of the Kitíbu-l-'ayn, an Arabic dictionary generally attributed to Khalíl Ibn Ahmed Al-faráhidí (vol. i. p. 419, note 5), a copy of which is in the Royal Library at Madrid, GG 5. I have often had occasion to refer to this dictionary, and have always found it of great assistance in explaining numerous words in use among the Western Arabs. Instead of beginning with the letter A— the first of the alphabet, as the generality of Arabic dictionaries do, it commences with the letter E. The reason for this unusual arrangement is explained in the preface. It appears that Khalíl, being unwilling to begin his dictionary by the first letter in the alphabet, owing to certain grammatical objections which he fully explains, put all the letters into a bag, and drew out one which happened to be the letter 'ayn, taking all the letters in succession as they came out. Az-zubeydí wrote besides a work on grammar entitled Al-widáheh (the clear exposer), which is greatly praised by the authors of the time. He is said to have been Kádí of Seville, and Sáhibu-sh-shortah or chief of the police guards of Cordova. He died in a. h. 379, or, according to Al-homaydí (JadNwatu-l-muktabis, fo. 80), in 380. His lives of celebrated grammarians, the title of which I have given elsewhere
after Khayr Ibn Khalífah, is not limited, as I there imagined, to those who were natives of Spain, but contains also the lives of Eastern grammarians. See vol. i. p. 474, note 30, of this translation.

36 — which is perhaps meant for the Christian name Emmanuel or Manuel.

36 This individual belonged, no doubt, to the family of Hání, so celebrated in the republic of letters. See vol. i. p. 453 of this translation.


38 See vol. i. pp. 190, 468, of this translation.

39 Al-balehí or Al-ballí.

40 The author of the Karttás, from whom this account seems to have been borrowed, for Al-makkári did not possess a copy of Ibnu Hayyán’s valuable history, says و أهبال كثير من قسينزاب قطوط الزربد — kottút is the plural of katt or kätt (Sp. gato); zubud is the ‘zybethum.’

41 Neither the lions nor the tigers are mentioned in my copy of the Karttás.

42 The words núb al-fil (elephant’s tooth) have passed into the Spanish marfil. The word alfíl or arfil, meaning ‘a knight in the game at chess,’ is likewise derived from the same root, it being well known that in the Indian game that piece is represented by an elephant.

43 He was the chief of the Berber tribe of Yefrun or Yefren. His father, Ya’la Ibn Mohammed, had been governor of Fez for An-násír (‘Abdu-r-ráhman III.), until he was put to death by the tribe of Kotámah in 349.

44 This account is not correct: according to the author of the Karttás, Zeyrí, or, as Ibn Khállekan writes it, Zirí, died before the town of Ashír, which he was besieging, after having reduced the province of Záb and the districts of Telemáin, Shelf, and Masílah, and causing Hishám to be proclaimed; for it would appear that, notwithstanding his quarrel with Al-mansúr, he still remained faithful to the Bení Umbeyyá. The cause of his rebellion was a personal one. See Moura’s Karttás, cap. xxi.

45 Probably Zamora, although the Christian chroniclers place the taking of that city, together with those of San Estevan de Gormaz and Coyançá, in the autumn of 984.
47 This is elsewhere said to have been his forty-eighth expedition to the land of the infidels, but neither statement is correct; for even supposing that Al-mansûr had made two yearly expeditions,—one in the spring and the other in the autumn,—since the death of Al-hakem, that number could not be made up.

48 Yâkob for Jacobus; the real Arabic name is Ya'kûb. The passage is interesting, as it shows how far popular traditions common to the Christians found their way among a hostile race professing a different religion.

49 Conde (vol. i. p. 530) has erroneously placed this campaign in 384, whereas he describes the expedition which left Cordova in Safar, 387, as directed against Alava and Navarre.

50 Medînah Ghâlisiyah or the city of Galicia. The word medinah is often used by ancient writers in the sense of capital. See vol. i. p. 529, note 2. But what is here meant by Medînah Ghâlisiyah it is not easy to determine. Ibnu Hayyân repeatedly calls Zamora by that name, و سورة هي مدينة غلیسیه—' and Samûrah (Zamora) is the [large] city of Galicia;' but it is evident that Zamora cannot be the city here intended. M. Romey (Hist. d'Espagne, tom. iii. p. 445) is of opinion that by Medînah Ghâlisiyah the author means Gallegos, a village not far from Ciudad Rodrigo; but I think differently: the word medinah is always used to express a large and populous city; and it is unreasonable to suppose that it should have been given to a mere village, of the existence of which during the middle ages we have not the least proof. The wording of the text leads me to suppose that by Medînah Ghâlisiyah the author means the same city of Coria, of which he has just made mention.

51 Idrisî mentions a port on the coast of Al-gharb or Western Ocean called Kasr Abî Dânis.

52 in all the copies. M. Romey (ubi supra), Farthás. The fortress called Shant Belây (San Pelayo or San Payo) might very well be the Sakhr Belây mentioned in vol. i. p. 291 of this translation, and which I conjectured, without sufficient foundation, to be the Sierra de Covadonga. See also p. 546, note 17.

53 in all the copies except the Gotha MS., which reads دیر کسیمان Deyr Kastán or Kostán. Romey (loco laudato, p. 446) reads Deyr-Kosmán, or the monastery Saint Cosmo.

54 — M. Romey reads Belbenu by the alteration of one point. The place called مرسیه موراسیه is the peninsula of Morazo, on the coast of Vigo.

55 — This castle M. Romey (ubi supra) conjectures to be Vallescó, near Ciudad Rodrigo.
— literally, 'of wool of sea-monsters.'

in all the copies, that of Gotha not excepted. But what is meant by dresses 'anbarin (of amber) I cannot conjecture. Neither can I guess what the author means by the word which is not to be found in dictionaries.

The word furu or foru means 'a skin-jacket and the lining of a dress;' hence the Spanish forro, and the French fourrure. The funk is described by Ad-demiiri as a quadruped of the rat tribe.

This is the battle of Calatanazor, about which so many wonders are related by Lucas Tudensis, Chronicon Mundi, lib. iv. pp. 84-88; Rodericus Toletanus, De Rebus Hispaniae, lib. v. cap. 16; and in the Cronica de España, Zamora, 1543.

Conde (vol. i. p. 548) says three days before the end Ramadhan, i. e. on the 27th, which answers to August 9, a. d. 1002. An-nuwayri is the only author who places the death of Al-mansur in 393.

And the death of Al-mansur happened in the year 393, at Medinaceli, on the extreme frontier, as he was returning from one of his military expeditions.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

BOOK VII.

CHAP. I.

which, literally translated, means "clear and victorious arguments against those who deny the excellences of the Sclovonians."

Our author gives the life of Abú Bekr Al-azrak (Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Al-misrî), in the sixth book of the first Part, among those of the illustrious Moslems who left their native places to travel in Spain; but it is there said that he went to Spain during the reign of Al-hakem II. [350-66]. He was born at Misr (Old Cairo) in 343 (A. D. 954); but left his native country, and went to Cairwán, where he settled. Not choosing to take part with the Shiitcs, who were then all-powerful in Africa, he was imprisoned at Mahdiyah (Mchedia), and passed some time in confinement. He was at last set at liberty, and allowed to set out for Spain, where he arrived in 349. He died at Cordova in 385 (A. D. 995).

I Háji Khalfah (v. akhbór) gives the title of this work thus: "The history of the Cordovan Faquihs in later times."

The word aulak, from `ulaka, means 'folly, insanity;' málik, whence the Spanish loco is probably derived, means 'a man who is out of his senses.' The answer returned by Sá'íd is that of a man imperfectly acquainted with his own language.

A work so entitled is mentioned by Háji Khalfah, who attributes it to Jemálu-d-din Abú-l-hasan 'Ali Ibn Dháfer Al-azdî, a native of Cairo, who died in A. H. 623 (A. D. 1226).
There were various Spanish Moslems known by the surname of "Ibnu-l'-arif," or the son of the inspector of works (Sp. alarife). Ibn Khallekán (Tyd. Ind., No. 67) gives the life of one whose name was Abú-l-abbás Ahmed Ibn Mohammed As-senhají. Casiri (vol. ii. p. 135) mentions another, named Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mūsa, who wrote a work which is preserved in the library of the Escurial, No. 728; but as the former is said to have died in A.H. 536, and the latter in 516, neither of them can be identified with the poet here alluded to, who is probably no other than the Abú-l-kásim Huseyn Ibn Al-walid mentioned above, p. 190. Conde (vol. i. p. 518) says that Ibnu-l'-arif presented to Al-mansúr, on his return from one of his campaigns, a book of poetry entitled Kitābu-l-hamám (the book of death). I should think, however, that Kitābu-l-hamám (the book of the ring-dove) would be a preferable reading.

Instead of غدروت in the first verse, B. reads "I went early in the morning;" and انناسها instead of انناسها at the end of the second verse.

The word translated by 'tray' is سفاط, whence the Spanish word 'azafate.'
Some copies read as printed; others, and among them that of Gotha, have
hanbooshar.

The Gotha MS. and my own copy afford a different reading: in the second hemistich of the first verse
فاقتَ أمَرَم لو رست نقل مقالع
"the voices of praise reach her like so many currents," and in the second hemistich of the sixth
فَبِنَفْسَ متوالِع
a kâmus (Sp. camisa, Fr. chemise) made of patch-work.

bard’ah, in Spanish ‘albarda.’

I have carefully collated this passage with a copy of the Səriju-l-molûk, by Abû Bekr At-tortushi, which is preserved in the Bodleian Library, No. 105.

mukaddam means, properly speaking, ‘a leader of the van.’ It is the almocaden of the old Spanish chronicles. In more modern times almocaden was translated into ‘adelantado,’ which has a similar meaning. See Conde, vol. i. p. 501, where this anecdote is very differently related.

These three words have been preserved in Spanish. Al-ardh (the act of passing review) is now alarde; taniz (distinction, separation) is the Spanish tamiz, ‘a sieve;’ al-meydûn (a hippodrome or circus for exercising cavalry) is also used in old Spanish works under the corrupt termination of almidana.

Some copies read ‘Wanzemár.’

The speech delivered by the Berber is full of puns, which no translation can well express.

No doubt on account of their being Christian slaves.

No traces whatever are left of the castle and city of Az-zîhirah, which Al-mansûr is said to have built in imitation of the city of Az-zâhrah, the favourite country-seat of the Cordovan Khalifs. Idrîsî makes no mention of it, which is not to be wondered at, since at the time he wrote his geography the city had ceased to exist. The author of the Reyhûnû-l-levib says that Az-zûhirah stood at about twelve miles from the capital in an eastern direction, and was kept with a splendour and magnificence unparalleled even in the annals of the East. Ibn Khalûdûn, Al-homayûdî, Ibn Bashûkulâl, and other writers I have consulted, add nothing to the above statement. An-nuwayrî is the only historian who, in a passage which I will afterwards give, affords us a few details. Through him we know that the city was also called Bâlis (Velez?), and that it was so close to Cordova that the rebellion of Al-muhdî and the dethronement of Hishám, which happened about the hour of noon, were known there the same day. The city and its palaces were afterwards entirely destroyed by the Berbers, and the building
\[\text{NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.} \quad \text{[BOOK VII.]}\]

materials gradually removed by the inhabitants of the neighbouring districts. No wonder then that no vestige or tradition should mark the site of Al-mansûr’s palace!

29 Al-mansûr is said to have granted privileges and immunities to all those who built or planted in the neighbourhood of his palace.

CHAPTER II.

1 An-nuwayrî (loco laudato, fo. 474) relates that when the news of Al-mansûr’s death reached Cordova, the people assembled in great numbers about the palace of Az-zahrâ’, where Hishâm was residing at the time, asked to see their sovereign, and expressed the wish that he should take the reins of government into his hands; that Hishâm dispatched to them one of his chief eunuchs, named Fâyiz, saying that he had already appointed 'Abdu-l-malek to the post of Hâjîb, and to induce them to go home; but that upon their refusal to disperse, 'Abdu-l-malek in person went out at the head of his guards and charged the mob, making great slaughter among them.

Elsewhere written Liúnis, which is also meant for León. 'Abdu-l-malek made two incursions into Galicia,—one in 394, shortly after his father’s death,—the other in 398. One of them ended in the entire destruction of León. Rodericus Toletanus (Hist. Arab. cap. xxxi.) places the expedition to León in 394, and says that 'Abdu-l-malek was defeated in the attempt.

The author of the Reyhánu-l-lebîb says that 'Abdu-l-malek died of poison which his brother, 'Abdu-r-rahmân, caused to be given to him in an apple.

3 These events are differently related by An-nuwayrî, who gives many interesting details upon the rebellion of Al-muhdí and the assassination of 'Abdu-r-rahmân. After giving the deed of inauguration in nearly the same words as Al-makkârî, the author proceeds to say,—“And when 'Abdu-r-rahmân saw his wishes fulfilled, he abandoned himself to all manner of excesses. After this, he bethought him of making war [upon the Christians]. Hishâm having expressed a wish that he and the soldiers under his orders should put on turbans—a custom which was not in use then—they all did so, and having unfurled their banners, they marched [through the streets of the city] in the most despicable plight, being an object of ridicule and contempt to the assembled spectators who witnessed their departure. This took place on the 12th day of Jumâda the first (Jan. 12, A. D. 1009), and the expedition was called in derision Ghazdtu-t-tin (the war of the mud). 'Abdu-r-rahmân had scarcely reached Toledo, when the news was brought him at the same time of the rebellion of Mohammed, the deposition of Hishâm, and the destruction of Az-zâhirah. The first act of 'Abdu-r-rahmân, on the receipt of this alarming intelligence, was to make his men swear that they would remain faithful to his cause; but, although they all took the oath, they shortly after deserted him and went over to his enemy. The affair happened thus: Hishâm Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbâr, the father of Mohammed, had some time before, under the administration of 'Abdu-l-malek, made an attempt to seize the throne and to depose Hishâm; but intelligence of his plans having been conveyed to that Hâjîb, he was arrested and put to death in the year 397 (Sept. 26, A. D. 1006). His son Mohammed, a daring man, who was in the secret, would readily have followed up his father’s ambitious views, but the fear of 'Abdu-l-malek prevented his
The Mohammed of 'Abdu-l-malek, women. A conspiracy which proved eventually successful. Mohammed was greatly assisted and encouraged in his plans by two influential men, Hasan, son of Yahya, the theologian, and Mutref Ibn Tha'lebah. During his concealment, Mohammed had associated with a number of criminals and adventurers, men ready for any undertaking, however great or dangerous; he had communicated his plans to them, and by giving each five, ten, or more mithkals of gold, he had united under his banners nearly four hundred men. He was, moreover, assisted in his project by a portion of the Beni Merwan, who had seen with indignation the royal power pass from the hands of their own family into those of the Beni Abi 'A'mir, and who were ready to join in any desperate attempt against the latter. On his departure from Cordova, 'Abdu-r-rahman had provided for the administration of affairs; he had inspected the treasuries, and issued the requisite orders, and he had appointed Ahmed Ibn Hazm and 'Abdullah Ibn 'Urur 'Amrah, better known by the surname of Ibn 'Askalajah, who was one of the Beni 'A'mir, to govern the city during his absence. Shanshul ['Abdu-r-rahman] thought, no doubt, that things would go on as prosperously as ever for him, and that the power of his family was solidly established. He was mistaken; Mohammed was all the while trying to overthrow it. About this time a rumour was prevalent in Cordova that a rebel would shortly rise against the Beni Abi 'A'mir and overthrow their power. The report having reached the ears of Ibn 'Askalajah, he ordered a most scrupulous search to be made in the capital; but, although the houses of several citizens were strictly searched, and other measures were put into practice to detect the criminals, the authorities could not discover any clue to the conspiracy. At length, on Tuesday, the 15th of Jamada the second (Feb. 14, A. D. 1009), Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-Jabbar, having chosen thirty of the most resolute among his followers, directed them to arm themselves and to enter Cordova by the gate of the bridge (Babu-l-kantarrah). They were to enter one by one, and post themselves on the rampart overlooking the road and the river, as if they were so many idlers; the spot being one much frequented by the inhabitants of Cordova, who repaired thither in the evening for the sake of recreation and pastime. They were to remain there until they should hear the word of command, which Al-muhdi promised to give them about sunset. The men did as they were bidden; they entered Cordova by the gate of the bridge, and placed themselves in the spot which had been pointed out to them. Mohammed, in the mean time, mounted on a mule, crossed the bridge alone, and presented himself at the gate of Ash-shakkal. The gate happened to be locked; but Mohammed, assisted by another party of his friends, who were standing close to the gate of Al-kantarrah, threw it open and entered under the gateway. The guards within attempted in vain to stop their passage; at a signal from their chief the rest of the conspirators ran to the spot, and having killed all those who opposed them, rushed through the gate into the city. The next thing done was to attack the house of the governor, Ibn 'Askalajah, who was found in his harem, drinking wine with two of his women. Mohammed rushed into the apartment, slew him with his own hand, and, having cut off the head of his victim, triumphantly showed it to his followers. At the news of this success the partisans of Mohammed flocked round their chief from all quarters of the city. The rebels went next to the royal palace, but finding all the doors locked and strongly barricaded, they began to break through the walls in two places, near the gate of the lions (Babu-1-sabbi(300,688),(360,748)), and near the gate of the gardens (Babu-1-jemdo). The guards within made some resistance; they were, however, overpowered, and Mohammed penetrated into the palace by the Babu-1-suddah. They say that the people and the garrison of Az-zahirah received the tidings of Al-muhdi's rising the same day at
the hour of 'asr; but thinking it a stratagem of the governor [to try their fidelity], they refused to give credit to the news: at last, when messengers came to them in succession, and they heard that Mohammed had actually taken possession of the royal palace, they fortified themselves and passed the night [under arms].

Soon after Mohammed had entered the royal palace, he received a message from Hishám, saying that if he spared his life, he would abdicate the empire in his favour. Mohammed's answer was thus conceived: 'God be praised! my object is not to put to death the people of my family, but merely to revenge the injury done to myself and to my cousin. Let Hishám resign the empire to me, and he shall be treated as he ought to be.' Having then sent for the theologians and chief citizens of Cordova, Mohammed told them to prepare a deed, which Hishám signed in their presence, abdicating the empire in favour of Mohammed, who passed that night in the palace.

Meanwhile not a soul stirred at Ba'ís or Az-záhirah, and, notwithstanding the inhabitants of that place were in great number, and all addicted to the party of the Bení Abi 'A'mir, nothing was done by them towards checking the insurrection. Among the functionaries and grandees residing there at the time, were Abú 'Amrn Ibn Hazm, 'Abdulláh Ibn Salmáh, Ibn Abí 'Obyd, Ibn Jehwar, and a multitude of theologians, Wizirs, Scálovonian pages and eunuchs, officers and men of the various divisions of the army, store-keepers, civil officers, &c.

On Wednesday morning, Mohammed I. appointed his cousin, Mohammed, the son of Al-mugheyráh, to be his Hájib, and another cousin of his, whose name was Umeyyah Ibn Ishák, to be governor of the city (Sáhibu-l-medínah). One of the first acts of his government was to authorize the above two functionaries to enter on the rolls of the army all those who chose to enlist, whatever their rank or profession might be. Accordingly, individuals of all classes, and of the most peaceful pursuits, as men given up to devotion, faquirs, theologians, lawyers, the Imáms and muezzins of the mosques, merchants, and rich people, presented themselves to take up arms and to receive the gratuity distributed on such occasions to those who enlisted; their example being soon followed by the country people and the inhabitants of the neighbouring districts. This done, Mohammed dispatched his Hájib, Mohammed Ibn-l-mugheyráh, with a portion of the newly-formed militia, to attack the people of Ba'ís. At his approach, the Wizirs, the Scálovonian eunuchs, and officers devoted to the cause of 'Abdu-r-ráhmán, applied for a safe conduct, and having obtained it, repaired to the camp of the Hájib Mohammed, who, after upbraiding them for adhering to the party of the Bení Abi 'A'mir, granted them pardon and dismissed them. Only one remained with him; his name was Ibn-sh-sharás, and Mohammed purposely kept him near his person, that he might point out to him the spot where the money, jewels, stores, and other valuable objects, were kept at Ba'ís. The inhabitants made no resistance, and Mohammed and his men entered the town on Wednesday night. The spoil made on this occasion was incalculable. In addition to what was taken by the troops at Az-záhirah, all the houses occupied by the maháís or partisans of the Bení Abi 'A'mir, as well as the splendid country residences of the Wizirs and other rich people round Ba'ís, were gutted of all their contents, the doors even were torn from their hinges, and the buildings pulled down for the sake of the wood. At length, after the sack had lasted four consecutive days, Mohammed commanded his men to abstain. It is asserted that the sums which entered Mohammed's coffers, as his share of the spoil, amounted to one million five hundred thousand dinárás and two millions and one hundred thousand dirhems of Andalus, without counting about two hundred thousand dinárás more which were afterwards found secreted underground. On the 19th of Jumáda the second (Feb. 18, A. D. 1009), Az-záhirah was set on fire and reduced to ashes. On the same day Mohammed was proclaimed Khalíf in Cordova, and the khotbáh was recited in his name in the mosque, instead of being recited, as before, in the name of Hishám and
"Shanshul; a proclamation, moreover, was afterwards read, in which the latter was cursed and his misdeeds were enumerated: after which another proclamation was read, in which Mohammed ordered the cessation of the existing forms of government and substituted new ones. On Friday, the 25th of the same month (Feb. 24, A.D. 1009), Mohammed repaired to the mosque and said prayers with the people; he then proclaimed himself, and took the title of Al-muhdi-billah. After Mohammed had descended from the pulpit, one of the Imams ascended it and read a proclamation calling upon the people to put to death Shanshul and his followers: people then came to Cordova from the provinces and from the most remote parts of Andalus, exhibiting a very martial aspect. Mohammed appointed to the command of this army doctors, butchers, saddlers, and weavers, and he went out with them to the Fahsus-s-soradik (the field of the tents), close to Cordova, where he encamped, ordering the people from the provinces to encamp round his tent."

4 The same historian, An-nuwayri, gives the following details upon the assassination of Shanshul. Shanshul had just arrived at Toledo when the intelligence of these events was conveyed to him. He immediately returned to Kal'at Rabah (Calatrava), where he bethought him of swearing in his men a second time. The soldiers, however, showed no inclination to do so, and, when applied to, refused, saying, 'We have been sworn in once, we will not take a second oath.' This made Shanshul suspect that all was not right, and he sent for Mohammed Ibn Ya'la Az-zenati, who was one of the disaffected, and asked him what he thought of their respective positions. Mohammed answered him, 'I can only tell thee that neither myself nor any of those who form part of this army will draw a sword in thy defence.'—'And how am I to know this, what proof hast thou of the army's disaffection?'—'Only order thy cooks and scullions with all their utensils on the road to Toledo, and set out afterwards towards them, and thou wilt then see who follows thee and who does not.'—Thou art right,' retorted Shanshul, 'I shall do as thou advisest.' There was at that time with Shanshul a Christian count named [أبوموسى ابن عمر بن] Ibn 'Aumas, who accompanied him to Cordova in the hope of obtaining his aid against other Christian counts who were his enemies. Perceiving the bad plight of 'Abdu-rahman's affairs, the count advised him to retire with him to his dominions, and to wait there until the storm should have passed over, whence they might both return at the head of an army, and humble their enemies. But Shanshul refused, saying, 'No, I cannot do that, I must needs show myself in the neighbourhood of Cordova; for, if I ever reach that capital, I am in hopes that the people will rise in my favour and against the usurper.'—'Listen to my advice,' replied the count, 'and do not throw away a certainty for what is doubtful. By Allah! thy present position is one of imminent danger, and fortune has declared against thee; the army is in favour of the usurper and against thee.'—'No,' said Shanshul impatiently, 'I will go to Cordova.'—'Do as thou pleasest,' said the count, 'I shall not abandon thee, though it be against my advice, and with the conviction that we go to certain death.' They accordingly set out from Calatrava on the road to Cordova. As they were proceeding towards that capital, messenger after messenger came to inform Shanshul of the state of affairs in that city, and how the people had declared for Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbar [Mohammed], and were making common cause with him. Still Shanshul persevered and would go on. At last, on the 29th of Jumáda the second (Feb. 28), the army halted at a place called Manzal Hani, where the whole of the Berbers deserted during the night. The ensuing day, the rest of the troops followed the example of the Berbers, with the exception of a few of his own private servants and Count Ibn 'Aumas, who, with his Christian followers, remained faithful to him. Again did the Christian count advise Shanshul to consider his dangerous situation, saying, 'It is time yet; let us fly at once, before we are utterly prevented from doing so.'—'No,' said Shanshul, 'I will go on to Cordova; but, before I present myself there, I will..."
‘send my Kádi to obtain a safe conduct for me.’ Even this Shanshúl neglected to do, and he marched
until he arrived at a monastery called Deyr Shús, where he halted on Wednesday, the 3rd
of Rejab (March 3). Meanwhile Mohammed, having heard of the approach of Shanshúl and the
desertion of his troops, dispatched against him his Hájib with two hundred horse. At some distance
from Deyr Shús the new Hájib detached a body of cavalry under the command of an officer named
Ibn Dhari, who had formerly been a mauli of [the Khalif] Al-hakem. Ibn Dhari used all
possible diligence, and arrived before Deyr Shús on Friday morning at break of day. On the approach
of Ibn Dhari, Shanshúl showed himself at one of the loop-holes of the monastery, and said, ‘What dost
thou want? I am ready to obey Al-muhdi.’ After which he ordered the gates to be opened, and he
surrendered himself, together with Ibn ‘Aumas and the Christians of his suite. In the afternoon of the
same day, the Hájib himself came up with the rest of the forces, and having previously sent under
an escort to Cordova the harem of Shanshúl, which consisted of no less than seventy women, took the
road to that capital with all his prisoners. They relate that, on the Hájib’s arrival at Deyr Shús,
Shanshúl went towards him and kissed the earth before him several times. One of those present
having told him to kiss the hoofs of the Hájib’s horse, Shanshúl did so, and kissed besides the fore and
hind legs of the animal. All the while, Ibn ‘Aumas uttered not a word, and had his eyes fixed on the
earth. Before setting out the Hájib made sign to one of his men to take off Shanshúl’s cap which was done. In this manner they marched until sunset, when they halted. On the morning
of the ensuing day, before starting, the Hájib ordered his men to pinion Shanshúl, which was done,
both his hands being tied with great force behind his back. In this way, Shanshúl marched some
distance, until, unable to bear the pain any longer, he exclaimed, ‘Have pity on me, and untie my
hands, that I may rest awhile.’ Being moved to compassion, the Hájib ordered his men to untie his
hands; but he was no sooner free, then he drew, as quick as lightning, a knife which he kept concealed
in his sleeve, and aimed a blow at the soldier who stood nearest to him: before, however, he could wound
any one, he was overpowered, and the Hájib, coming up to him, dispatched him with his own hand.
The same was done with the Christian count, and the heads of both were conveyed to Cordova. The
body of Shanshúl, moreover, was by Mohammed’s order taken to the capital, where it was subjected to
the following operation. The belly was opened and emptied of its contents, and stuffed with scented
roots to preserve it. His head was fixed on a spear, and planted at the gate of As-suddah. The body
was then dressed in a shirt and trowsers, and nailed to a stake at the same gate. In addition
to this, an officer named Ar-rasán, who had been Súhilu-sh-shortah, or captain of the guards of
Shanshúl, was directed to stand beside the body of his master, and to cry out within hearing of
the spectators, ‘This is Shanshúl Al-mámíín; may the curse of God fall on his head and on mine!’
This happened on Saturday, the 4th of Rejab (March 4).

The administration of Shanshúl had lasted four months and some days. He was a man of vicious
habits and depraved morals, indulging in all manner of debauchery and excesses. He was, moreover,
impious man, and things were said of him ill becoming a Moslem. For instance, hearing once
the muezzin summon the people [of Cordova] to the mosque in the well-known words, ‘Come, come to
prayer!’ Shanshúl observed to those who were about him, ‘That man had better say, come to deny
God.’ Other similar impious expressions are attributed to him. Shanshúl left no posterity, and in him
ended the dynasty of the Bení Abí ‘A’mír.

The word Shanjúl, or, as An-nuwayrī writes it, Shanshúl, is written Sanciólus by Rodericus
Toletanus (Hist. Arab. cap. xxxi.), and Sanchuelo by Conde (vol. i. p. 562). Sanciólus or Sanctiolum is
the diminutive of Sanctius (Sancho), i. e. the little Sancho or el Sanchuelo, and it is not improbable that
the word *Shanthtil* was intended by the Arabs for *Sanchuelo*, notwithstanding the explanation given of it by Al-khazrejí. See Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xxiv.

5 By "the son of Alfonso," the author means, no doubt, Sancho Garcés, Count of Castile, who, according to Rodericus Toletanus (*Hist. Arab. cap. xxxiii.*), and the *Annales Complutenses* (sub *Ara m xlvi.*), lent his assistance to Suleymán. But the events here recorded will be better understood with the aid of the following passage. "After appointing a man named Ahmed Ibn Sa'id to be his Wizír, "Suleymán and his men marched to Wádha-l-hajárah (Guadalaxara), which they took. This done, "Suleymán wrote to Wádheh Al-'amírí, then governor of Medinah-Sélim (Medinaceli), persuading him "to embrace his cause and to forsake that of the usurper; but Wádheh, who, shortly after the execution "of Shanshúl, had sent in his allegiance to Cordova and had declared for Al-muhdí, remained faithful to "his oath; and, having declined the advantageous offers made to him by Suleymán, prepared to defend "himself. Meanwhile Al-muhdí, hearing of Wádheh's danger, sent a body of cavalry to his aid, under "the command of a eunuch named Kaysar; but after several sanguinary encounters with the Berbers, "the troops of the Khalif were defeated, Kaysar killed, and Wádheh was obliged to shut himself up in "Medinaceli. From this place, however, Wádheh was enabled so to molest the Berbers and to intercept "their supplies, that for fifteen consecutive days the troops of Suleymán were compelled to feed on the "roots and plants of the earth. At last, unable to bear privation and hunger any longer, the Berbers "determined upon sending an embassy to *ابن مادوي* Ibn Máduyah, the Christian, asking him for "provisions, and to become a mediator between them and Al-muhdí. Suleymán accordingly dispatched "into the Christian country two ambassadors, who, being admitted to the presence of the infidel [chief], "said to him, 'Come to our camp and accompany us to Medinaceli; we want thee to negotiate for us a "peace with Wádheh, the governor, and his master, Al-muhdí; if he consent, well and good; if he "refuse, we will march to Cordova and fight the usurper.' It appears that when the messengers "reached the castle of Ibn Máduyah, they found already there ambassadors both from Wádheh and from "Al-muhdí, who were endeavouring to gain the Christian [chief] over to their cause by the most "enticing offers. They proposed, if he would only refuse his aid to Suleymán, to surrender to him "several fortresses on that frontier, and give him besides a number of horses, mules, and money, "together with jewels, dresses, perfumes, and a variety of other presents; but the Berber ambassadors "having promised in their master's name, that if Suleymán was victorious over his enemy, he would also "give up, without the least hesitation, as much as Wádheh and Al-muhdí had offered, Ibn Máduyah "rejected the offers of the latter, and promised his aid to Suleymán. Shortly after this, the Christian sent "the Berbers one thousand wagons laden with flour of wheat and barley, and other provisions, besides "one thousand head of cattle, fifteen thousand sheep, and every article of dress which they might want. "Greatly comforted by the arrival of these supplies, the Berbers marched to Medinaceli and made "propositions of peace to Wádheh; but, upon the refusal of that governor to enter into any sort of "accommodation with Suleymán, the Berbers set out for Cordova in Moharram of the year 400 "(Aug. or Sept. A.D. 1009). Wádheh started after them with a view to molest them on their march; "but having imprudently engaged in battle with the Berbers, he was defeated with great loss, his camp "was plundered, and he himself had to escape to Cordova with a few followers."

6 Compare the account of Al-homaydí, as translated in the Appendix to this volume, p. viii., *et seq.*, and Conde, vol. i. cap. cv. The account of An-nuwayrí is as follows:—"Meanwhile, although the "danger was imminent, Al-muhdí was living in the midst of pleasures and dissipation, without taking "any measures for the defence of his capital. At last, the arrival of Wádheh and the fugitives from
Medinaceli, in number about four hundred horse, roused him from his apathy. Having pitched his tents in a plain outside of Cordova, called Fahssu-s-sorádik (the field of the tents), he had trenches dug all round his camp, and awaited the arrival of the enemy. Shortly after, one of his eunuchs, named Buleyk, made his appearance in Cordova, at the head of about two hundred horse, being hotly pursued by the vanguard of Suleyman’s army, which was soon after observed to encamp in sight of Cordova. Al-muhdi then issued an order, which was announced to the people by means of the public crier, enjoining all grown-up men, without distinction of classes, to take up arms and join him at Fahssu-s-sorádik. On Saturday, the 13th of Rabi’ the first (Nov. 3, a.d. 1009), the two hosts met. The Berbers commenced the battle by a charge of three thousand of their best cavalry. So spirited was the attack, that the undisciplined militia of Cordova were unable to sustain it, and they fled towards the capital in the utmost confusion, the Berbers pursuing them sword in hand, and dealing death among them. Great numbers died also in attempting to cross the river, or were taken prisoners. Wádheh fled towards the Thagher (the province of Toledo).

As to Al-muhdi, he returned to his palace, and, having gone to the place where Hishám Al-muyyed lay concealed, took him out and made him sit on a raised throne under the gate of An-nakkál (Bábí-l-nakkál), leading to the bridge, that those passing by might see him. He then sent his Kádí, Ibn Dhákwan, with a message to the Berbers, to say, ‘I am Hishám’s inferior; he is the Commander of the Faithful, and I am only his lieutenant and his Hájjib; the empire is his.’ The Berbers answered him,—‘Go along, thou liar! Only yesterday thy master had the death of Hishám announced to the people of this city, and thou didst say the funeral service for him. Thou now tellst us that Hishám is alive and that the Khalifate is his. Whom are we to believe?’ The Kádí excused himself as well as he could, and returned to Cordova. The inhabitants of that capital, in the mean time, went out in crowds to meet Suleyman, who honoured and welcomed them. After which, seeing the inhabitants favourably disposed towards him, he entered Cordova without opposition, and proceeded immediately to the royal palace: Al-muhdi, however, could not be found; he had taken flight.

7 The author is mistaken. Although Al-muhdi might have implored once before the assistance of the Christians, he did not obtain it, until he had been expelled from Cordova by his rival Suleyman; and then, it was not the Count of Castile—who had espoused the cause of his rival Suleyman—but two Catalonian counts, Bermond or Veremundus, of Barcelona, and Armengaud, of Urgel, who joined him with their forces. The following passage from An-nuwayrí will throw some light upon these events.

Suleyman had no sooner gained possession of Cordova, than Ibn Máduyah applied to him for the fulfilment of the stipulated conditions and the surrender of the fortresses on the frontier; but Suleyman said to him, ‘It is not time yet, the castles are not yet in our power; as soon as they are, I will surrender them to thee, according to our agreement.’ Satisfied with this answer, Ibn Máduyah left Cordova on Monday, the 23rd of Rabi’ the first (Nov. 13, a.d. 1009).

After this, Suleyman distributed the government of the provinces [among his partisans]; he quartered the Berbers at Az-zahrá, sent Hishám back to his prison, ordered the body of Shanshúl down from the post to which it was nailed, had it washed, and decently buried in the palace of his ancestors.

As to Al-muhdi, after remaining some days in Cordova, concealed in the house of a friend, he fled to Toledo, where he arrived on the 1st of Jumáda the first (Dec. 20, a.d. 1009). Al-muhdi was very well received by the people of Toledo; but he was soon after disturbed by Hishám, the son of Suleyman, who set out [from Cordova] to attack him on Monday, the 18th of Jumáda the second (Jan. 6, a.d. 1010). Before he reached Toledo, Hishám sent to that city some of his theologians, to induce the inhabitants to forsake the cause of Al-muhdi; but they refused, and remained faithful to the latter.
"About this time a man named Al-korashi Al-harrani, having collected a considerable party, raised the standard of rebellion, and had himself proclaimed king [by his followers]. Suleymán sent against him an officer named 'Ali Ibn ۳۲۱۲ Wâdáh, at the head of considerable forces. 'Ali defeated the rebel, took him prisoner, and sent him under escort to Cordova, where he was put to death immediately upon his arrival. Some time after this, Suleymán in person set out for Toledo, in the hope that the inhabitants of that city would return to his obedience. Having entered the [lower] Thagher, he encamped before Medinah-Selim (Medinaceli), where he was soon after joined by a body of his own armed slaves, as well as by Ibn Moslemah, his Sâhibu-sh-shortah, or captain of his body-guard. On the arrival of Suleymán before Medinaceli, Wâdheh evacuated that fortress and fled to Tortosa, whence he wrote a letter asking that Sultán's forgiveness for any act of hostility committed whilst in the service of Al-muhdi, and promising, if he would pardon his offence, to desert the cause of Al-muhdi and devote himself entirely to his service. Wâdheh, however, was not in earnest when he made such an offer; all he wished was, to gain time and to strengthen the party of his master. Deceived by his promises, Suleymán gave Wâdheh the command of all the forces in the upper Thagher (Aragon), and intrusted to him the prosecution of the war against the infidels. By these means Wâdheh was enabled more effectually to serve the cause of his sovereign. He entered into negotiations with the Christians on that frontier, and obtained their aid against Suleymán by granting them, in his master's name, such conditions as they chose to ask for. Al-muhdi, therefore, was soon joined in Toledo by large bodies of Christians, with whom he set out for Cordova. On the other hand, Suleymán, having been apprised of his enemy's plans, made every preparation for the approaching contest, and issued an order that all the citizens of Cordova should take up arms; but upon their representing to him their inability to cope with a warlike enemy, he exempted them from military service, at the intercession of the Berbers, and left Cordova at the head of the regular troops only. Not far from Cordova, at a place called 'Akbatut-El-bakar (the defile of the cows), Suleymán encountered the forces of his rival, on one of the last ten days of the month of Shawwál. The Berbers had placed Suleymán in the rear with a body of African cavalry, directing him not to move from the spot, even if he were to be ridden over by the enemy's cavalry. This arrangement being made, the Berbers advanced to the attack and charged with great fury. Al-muhdi's Frank auxiliaries not only withstood the shock, but succeeded even in repulsing their assailants: Suleymán, perceiving that the ranks of the Berbers were partially broken, thought the day was lost, and, ordering the retreat, fled with his men to Cordova. Meanwhile the Berbers were sustaining with great courage the attacks of the enemy, killing the King of the Franks, named Armanghid (Armangaud, Count of Urgel), and sixty of their principal officers. Perceiving, however, that Suleymán had left the field of battle, they retired in good order to Az-zahrá, which they evacuated the same night. Suleymán fled to Shâ'tibah (Xativa). His rule had lasted seven months.

The day after the battle, Al-muhdi entered Cordova accompanied by the Franks, who began to commit every excess, plundering the houses, and subjecting the inhabitants to all sorts of cruelty and ill treatment. Al-muhdi and Wâdheh having requested them to march in pursuit of the Berbers, the Christians left Cordova, and, headed by those two commanders, started after the fugitives. Having overtaken them close to Lekeh, a battle ensued which ended in the complete defeat of Al-muhdi, Wâdheh, and his Frank auxiliaries, about three thousand of whom lay stretched on the field of battle, without including in that number those who were drowned in the sea. Buleyk
"The Slavonian, a slave of Wādheh, was among the dead, as well as Takhlañ Ibn Zorzilr, the mañl of the Khalif Al-hakem, and other chief officers of Al-muhdi’s army.

This battle was fought on the 6th of Dhi-l-ka’dah (June 21, A. D. 1010). The ensuing day, the relics of Al-muhdi’s army reached Cordova, the inhabitants of which were thrown into the utmost consternation by the news. Mad at their defeat, the Franks went about the streets of the capital, sword in hand, slaughtering all those whom they suspected of being Berbers; and when requested by Al-muhdi and Wādheh to march against the enemy, peremptorily refused, saying, ‘Our king and our best and bravest men are all slain; we will no longer fight for you.’ They accordingly left Cordova, and returned to their country on Friday, the 23rd of Dhi-l-ka’dah (July 8).

Some authors say that the departure of the Christians from Cordova was at the request of the inhabitants themselves, who were terribly afraid of the Berbers returning and taking revenge on them. So great was their fear of that unruly militia that, whenever a citizen of Cordova happened to meet another in the street, they generally addressed each other [by anticipation] as men who were about to lose their property, or whose children and relatives were about to be executed. After this, Al-muhdi, having obtained a supply of money from the inhabitants, made every preparation to meet his rival, and left Cordova with Wādheh, the slaves, and a certain number of citizens; but they had scarcely marched thirty miles, when they all returned, fearing an encounter with the Berbers. Al-muhdi then ordered deep trenches to be dug round Cordova, and, for further security, a thick and massive wall to be erected behind the trenches. Meanwhile the Berbers were plundering with impunity and infesting the neighbourhood of the capital. Having taken possession of the mountain of Jibil Ibn Hassán, a district abounding in springs, fruit trees, and grain of all sorts, they were greatly refreshed and strengthened through it. Meantime, Al-muhdi was indulging in pleasure and repose; his soldiers were committing all manner of cruelties and excesses, breaking into the houses of the peaceable inhabitants, taking away their property, ravishing their wives and daughters, and murdering all those who offered any resistance.

This state of things met with the disapprobation of Wādheh, who remonstrated strongly; but Al-muhdi took no notice whatever of his complaints, and things continued as before. Although Wādheh followed the party of Al-muhdi, he secretly hated him, owing to his treatment of ‘Abdu-r-rahmán Shanshúl, of whose father, Al-mansúr, Wādheh had been a mañl. Accordingly, being offended at the conduct of that Sultán, he resolved to rid himself of him at any risk, and to this end he began to consult with the principal inhabitants of Cordova as to the best means of carrying his plans into execution. Al-muhdi, in the mean time, hearing of the conspiracy entered against him, collected all the gold, jewels, and other valuables about the palace, and delivered them to Abú Ráfi’, a man from Toledo, with instructions to repair immediately to that city, whither he would endeavour to follow him shortly. He was, however, prevented. On Sunday, the 21st of Dhi-l-hajjah (Aug. 5), or, according to other authorities, on the 8th of the same month (July 23), Wādheh, mounted on horseback, and being followed by the slaves and the border troops, directed his march towards the royal palace, all crying as they went along, ‘Obedience to our sovereign Hishám.’ Wādheh next entered the apartment where he knew that Khalif was concealed, and, bidding him come out, made him sit down on the throne of his ancestors, and invested him with the royal insignia. Al-muhdi was in the bath, when one of his officers, named Ibn Wada’ih, rushed into the room and announced to him what had just taken place. Dressing himself as quickly as he could, Al-muhdi hastened to the presence of Hishám, and attempted to sit himself by his side; but Al-muhdi, as usual, ‘Anbar, the eunuch, took him by the hand, and, having thrown him down from the top of the throne, made him sit
on the lowest step. Hisham then addressed Al-muhdi, and reproached him in bitter terms for his rebellion, and the conduct he had observed towards him, keeping him so long in seclusion. This being done, 'Anbar took Al-muhdi by the hand, made him stand up, and ascended with him to the platform of the palace. Here 'Anbar drew his sabre and attacked Al-muhdi, who clung to him and embraced him. In this position he was pierced by the swords of the Slavonians, the slaves and eunuchs who happened to be there. His head was next cut off, and his body was precipitated from the top of the terrace into the yard, falling exactly on the spot where the body of Ibn 'Askalajah lay after that officer had been murdered by Al-muhdi. Thus perished Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbar, at the age of thirty-five, and after a rule of ten months, counting his two reigns."

I may here observe that the word al-muhdi can be pronounced either Al-mahdi or Al-muhdi, both being surnames assumed by Mohammedan rulers. In favour of the first reading are the verses above quoted and the authority of Rodericus Toletanus, Lucas Tudensis, and the author or authors of the Cronica de España (Part III. fo. cclxix.), who call him "Al-mahadi" or "Al-mahadio." The deed of inauguration itself, by which Hisham transferred the empire to 'Abdu-r-rahmán, the son of Al-mansiir, would lead to the belief that Mahdi, not Muhdi, is meant. Mention is made in that remarkable document of the Mahdi alluded to by the Mohammedan Prophet, who had already been personified by 'Obeydullah, the founder of the dynasty of the Fātimites, and who was again to be represented by Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed, the leader of the Almohades; and it is not improbable that in order to give to his usurpation more solemnity, Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbar should have assumed the title of Al-mahdi. Against such a mass of authority I can only adduce that of my copy of Al-makkari, in which the word is distinctly written al-muhdi—as well as the work of Al-homaydi, who says "and the surname of Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbar is to be written with a dhamma mu, not with a "fataha ma." Mr. Shakespear's copy reads likewise Al-muhdi.

9 Instead of "Az-zahra" the author ought to have said Az-zāhirah. The former city did not suffer on this occasion. An-nuwayri (loco laudato, fo. 479) gives also the passage after Ibnu Rakik.

10 This is contradicted by An-nuwayri, who says that Hisham Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbar was put to death by 'Abdu-l-malek, the son of Al-mansúr. See above, p. 486, note 3.

11 Bermudo III., son of Alfonso V., was then reigning in Asturias and Leon; but there is no evidence of Suleyman ever having applied to him for aid. Sancho Garce's, Count of Castile, whose dominions
bordered to the south on the province of Toledo, is, according to the Christian authorities, the chief who lent his help to Suleymán upon two different occasions. See Rodericus Toletanus, Hist. Arab. cap. xxxvii. It is doubtful, however, whether the Ibn Máduyah mentioned in the passage from An-nuwayrí can be identified with Sancho, or not.

These events are thus related by An-nuwayrí. "Hishám was proclaimed for the second time on Sunday, the 11th of Dhí-l-hajjah of the year 400 (July 24, A. d. 1010). One of the first acts of his reign was to send Al-muhdi’s head to the Berbers, who were with Suleymán at Wâda Shâsh (Guadajoz), hoping that, when they saw it, they would hasten to send him that of the usurper, and that his own power would thereby be consolidated. He was mistaken; the Berbers threatened to put to death the messengers, and refused to acknowledge the authority of Hishám. All hopes of bringing the question to a satisfactory issue having vanished, Wâdheh, who had now been invested with the office of Hájib, gave all his attention to increasing the fortifications of Cordova, and prepared for a stout defence. He ordered the digging of new trenches to impede the progress of the enemy’s cavalry, and repaired every where the walls and towers of the city.

Mohammed Al-muhdi had left a son named ‘Obeydullah, who was sixteen years old at the time of his father’s execution. Having numerous friends in Toledo, ‘Obeydullah fled from Cordova, where he habitually resided, and repaired to that city, where he was well received by the inhabitants. Thence he made repeated excursions, and put to death all the friends of Wâdheh who fell into his hands. At last, a chief, named Mohârib At-tojibi, took him prisoner and sent him to Wâdheh, who put him to death.

After this, Suleymán and his Berbers approached Cordova; but being unable to reduce it, they marched to Az-zahrâ, which they entered on Saturday, the 24th of Rabi’ the first of the year 401 (Nov. 5, A. d. 1010), putting to the sword all those they found there. After remaining some months at Az-zahrâ, the Berbers left it on the 24th of Sha’hán (Feb. 2, A. d. 1011), and began to lay waste the neighbouring country, burning the farm-houses, cutting down the fruit trees, and committing all manner of depredations. From all parts of the province, the country people fled to Cordova with their valuables, to escape the fury of the Berbers, and the population having doubled through immigration, scarcity of provisions began to be felt in the capital, and great numbers died of hunger. It is asserted, that food became so dear in Cordova that a mudd of barley (that is, two kofîc and a half) sold for three hundred dirhems or one hundred mitkâils of pure gold. During this interval, the ambassadors of Ibn Máduyah arrived in Cordova, demanding on behalf of their master the surrender of the stipulated fortresses, and promising not to molest Hishám or his followers, and to make no attempt whatever on the frontiers. The truce was accepted, and several large towns were immediately surrendered to them, besides upwards of two hundred castles, which had been in the hands of the Moslems ever since the reign of Al-hakem Al-mustanser-billah, the father of Hishám. This was not all; Ibn Siális (?), hearing the concessions just made to Ibn Máduyah, sent also his messengers to Cordova, asking for the surrender of certain fortresses, which were likewise given up to him.

Meanwhile, the Berbers were traversing the country north of Cordova, and laying waste every thing on their passage. No town, however great or strong, escaped their ravages, with the exception of Toledo and Medinaqel; and the desolation was so great that a man on horseback might travel for two consecutive months without meeting a single person on his road. The troops of Cordova, moreover, began to murmur against Wâdheh, who, being made aware of their discontent, betheught him of entering into a negotiation with the Berbers. To this end he dispatched to the camp of Suleymán a man named Ibn Bekr, who had an interview with that chief; but as he was returning to Cordova with
the answer he was killed by the troops of the garrison, without Hishám or Wádheh being able to restrain them. The assassins next cut off his head, and, placing it on a spear, paraded it through the streets of the capital. Hearing the fate of his messenger, Wádheh attempted to fly to the Berber 'camp; but an enemy of his, named Ibn Abí Wádá'h, having received intelligence of his intended flight, went to his house with some soldiers, seized him by the collar, and brought him out [into the street]. There, after reproofing him for the bad use he had made of the public money, and the peace he was about to conclude with the enemy, Ibn Abí Wádá'h struck him with his dagger, after which all the others fell upon him and put him to death. Having then cut off his head, they fixed it on a spear, and paraded it through the streets of the capital, whilst his body was thrown on the paved road [before the palace], in the same spot where those of Ibn 'Askalájah and Al-muhdí had been very recently exposed. The house of Wádheh and those of his friends and secretaries were gutted of their contents, and Ibn Abí Wádá'h was appointed Wáli-l-medinah. The death of Wádheh took place on Tuesday, the 15th of Rabí' the first of the year 409 (Oct. 16, A. D. 1011).

The siege of Cordova continued until Sunday, the 3rd of Shawwá́l of the year 403 (April 17, A. D. 1013), when Suleymán took it by storm. Two days after, on the 5th of Shawwál (April 19), Suleymán entered the royal palace, and, having summoned to his presence the wretched Hishám, addressed him in these words,—'Thou didst once offer me the Khalífate, and pledge thy word to that effect; what made thee break thy oath?' Hishám excused himself by saying that he was not the master of his own acts, and had been compelled to do so.'

14 *Silah* means 'a gift' and 'a joint.' But the latter is the appropriate meaning in this case. The contents of the work are a biography of illustrious Moslems born in Spain, and it was so entitled because the author designed it as a continuation of the history of Spain by Abú-l-walíd Ibnu-l-faradhí. The *Silah* itself was continued by a native of Granada, named Ahmed Ibn Ibráhim Ibn Zubeyr, in his *Silatu-s-silah*, or Appendix to the *Silah*; as well as by Ibnu-l-abbár in the *Mushkiliu-s-silah* (the difficult passages of the *Silah*). Ibnu-l-khattib wrote also a work entitled *Al-iýida-s-silah* (the new visitor of the *Silah*), which was intended as a supplement to Ibn Zubeyr.

15 Bádís Ibn Habús was not the first King of Granada. He succeeded his nephew, Záwi Ibn Zeyri. See the Chronological Table of the Bení Zeyri at the end of this volume.

16 By others called خزرعون Ibn Khazerún. Ash-shátibi (*Kitíbu-l-jumán*) says that he was a Berber of the tribe of Maghráwah. He was put to death by Al-mu'tadhéh, King of Seville.

The death of Suleymán took place on Sunday, seven days (Al-homaydí says nine) before the end of Moharram of the year 407 (July, A. D. 1016). See the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. x. An-nuwayrí relates that Suleymán, being asked, in the presence of the Kádís and theologians of Cordova, what he had done with Hishám, answered that Hishám was dead; upon which 'Alí ordered that his body should be disinterred and examined, in order to ascertain whether he told the truth or not. The body was found, and no signs of violence on it.

18 An-nuwayrí (*loco laudato*, fo. 488) says one year and ten months. He was assassinated in Dhlí-hajjah of the year 408 (May, A. D. 1018). Compare the Appendix at the end of the volume, p. xi., and Conde, vol. i. cap. cx.

VOL. II.
In the last days of Dhî-l-hajjah, (May, A.D. 1018,) says An-nuwayrî, ubi supra.

This "King of the Franks" was probably some Catalanian count, serving under Al-murtadî. At that time the Christians of the north-eastern provinces of the Peninsula were frequently to be found fighting under the banners of the Moalems.

The 103rd sûrah or chapter, entitled "the unbelievers." The verse given lower down is as follows:

آن كنت منا بشير. ٌ أولا فايتس بعمن شر

Conde (vol. i. p. 606) says that 'Abdu-r-rahmân was killed in action; but Ibnu-l-khattîb, in the lives of Khayrân and Zawa, relates this in nearly the same terms as the text.

Guadix is not a sea-port. Ash-shâtîbî (Kitâbu-l-jumân) says that he was taken on the sea coast not far from Almeria, which is more probable.

CHAPTER III.

The point of this verse consists in the use of the words khayr and Khayrân; khayr means 'good, prosperity,' &c.

See the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xi., where Al-kâsim is said to have reigned undisturbed until the month of Rabi' the first, 412 (June or July, A.D. 1021). An-nuwayrî (loco laudato, fo. 488) confirms the statement.

Compare the Appendix, p. xii., and Conde, vol. i. cap. cxiii., who has strangely confounded some of the events of this reign.

Conde places the rebellion of the Cordovans against Al-kâsim in 413; but Al-homaydi (App. p. xii.) and An-nuwayrî (loco laudato, fo. 489) agree with our author in referring it to the month of Sha'bân of the ensuing year. See also Casiri, Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 7.
is the Arabic saying which would seem to have given rise to that common Spanish expression, "le dió con la puerta en los hozicos."

An-nuwayrí gives differently the names of the two partners in power of Ibnu 'Abbád. He calls one Mohammed Ibn Maríam Al-'ábi, and the other Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-hasan Az-zubeydí or Az-zubeyrî (loco laudato, fo. 489). See also App. p. xii.

6 Conde (vol. i. p. 610) makes Yahya absent in Africa whilst the events here described were taking place.

7 Al-homaydí (Appendix, p. xii.) and An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 489) place the death of Al-kásim Ibn Hamúd in A. H. 431. It was not Yahya, but Idris I., King of Malaga, who ordered his execution.

8 An-nuwayrí (ubi supra) says on the 13th (Nov. 29, A.D. 1023).

9 The other candidate, whose name is not given here, was Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán. He was the great grandson of Suleyán Al-musta'in-billah. See Al-homaydí's account, Appendix, p. xiv., and the Genealogical Table of the Bení Umeyyah at the end of this volume.

10 Abú 'A'mir Ibn Shoheyd (Ahmed Al-ashja'i) was the son of Abú Merwán 'Abdu-l-málík, and the grandson of Dhi-l-wizáratelyn Abú 'A'mir Ahmed Ibn Shoheyd, who was Wizir to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. See pp. 150-4. The life of the former Abú 'A'mir is in Ibn Khallekán; De Slane's English translation, vol. i. p. 98.

11 An-nuwayrí gives two dates for this event, the 3rd of Dhi-l-ka'dah and the 26th of the same month; but, if Al-mustadh’her reigned forty-seven days, the former is the right one.

12 The genealogy of Mohammed Ibn 'Obeydillah is thus given by Al-homaydí: "He was the son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of 'Obeydullah, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir." He adds, that he was deposed on Tuesday, the 25th of Rabi' the first, 416 (May, A. D. 1025), not in 415, as is erroneously stated by Al-homaydí (App. p. xiv.), after a reign of sixteen months.

13 According to An-nuwayrí (loco laudato, fo. 490), Al-mustakfí was compelled to abdicate "خَالِم وَ تَقَبَّل بِخَلْع نَفْسِهِ" "on Tuesday, the 25th of Rabi' the first" (May 25, A. D. 1025). He was assassinated at the beginning of Rabi' the second (June).

14 In the eighth book of the first part, which, as it contains only selections from the works of Andalusian poets, has not been translated.

15 The governor appointed by Yahya was named 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Ittáf. He was expelled from Cordova about the end of 417 (Feb. A. D. 1027). On Friday, the 29th of Rabi' the second, of the ensuing year (June 8, A. D. 1027), Al-mu'tadd was proclaimed by the inhabitants. Al-homaydí places this latter event one month before, in Rabi' the first (May). See Appendix, p. xv.
An-nuwayrí says that Hisháam remained two years and ten months in the Thoghrúr (the provinces of Toledo and Aragon), going from one place to another, and trying to put down the civil wars and dissensions which had broken out there among the inhabitants. Compare Al-homaydi, Appendix, p. xv., and Conde (vol. i. cap. cxvii.) Hishám’s chief Wízír, named Abú-l-'assí Al-hakém Ibn Sa‘íd, having rendered himself exceedingly obnoxious to the inhabitants, a conspiracy was formed against him, and he was assassinated in A. H. 422. Hisháam then fled to the [upper] Thagher (Aragon), which country he endeavoured to wrest from the hands of its lord, Al-mundhir Ibn Yahya Al-tojíbi. He died at Lerida, in the dominions of Sulcýmán Ibn Húd, on Friday, the 25th of Sâfar, 428 (Dec. 17, A. D. 1036). In this latter statement An-nuwayrí differs from Al-homaydi, who places his death in 427. See Appendix, p. xvi.

An-nuwayrí gives the following details on the death of Yahya. ‘‘That Sultán was at Carmona, waging war against [Abú-l-kásim Mohammed] the Lord of Seville, when, on Sunday, the 7th of Moh-arram, 427, the intelligence was brought to him that a body of the enemy’s cavalry had made a foray to the very gates of Carmona. On the receipt of this news, Yahya mounted a horse, and, followed by a scanty number of his own guards, rushed upon the enemy, who, retreating before him, led him and his men into an ambush, where he was put to death.’’ Conde (vol. i. p. 617) and Casiri (vol. ii. p. 208) have both placed the death of Yahya in 417, which is decidedly an error, since at that time ’Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn ’Ittáf was still governing Cordova in his name. Ibnu Khaldún says that he was betrayed by Mohammed Al-bírzáli, the Lord of Carmona.

CHAPTER IV.

1 According to Al-bekrí, Idrís had also assumed, whilst at Ceuta, the surname of Al-'azíz-billáh. As that geographer has given in his Mesdlek wa-l-memálek a whole chapter on the Bení Hamúd of Spain, which is not to be found in M. Quatremère’s learned translation of that work (Notices et Extraits des MSS. de la Bibliothèque du Roi, vol. xii.), I will occasionally refer to it in the notes to this chapter.

2 It was not Idrís who sent an army to attack the King of Seville; it was the latter, who, incensed at the assistance which the King of Malaga had afforded his enemy, ’Abdullah Ibn Mohammed Al-bírzáli, Lord of Carmona, dispatched against him his eldest son Isma‘il.

3 al-burq la‘im min al-názri‘i
-fi‘rát ‘aynát al-dímm al-a‘úmin
ka‘fárá‘an bá‘a‘di l-lámi‘i‘i
wu l-sawt al-ruh‘á wa‘l-khánis

4 Ibnu-l-khattíb, in his biography of illustrious Granadians, in the life of Bádis Ibn Habás, places the death of Mohammed Ibn Idrís in A. H. 448; but Al-bekrí, who was a contemporary writer, says that he died in A. H. 446. Mesdlek wa-l-memálek, fo. 89. See also the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xxii.
This Mohammed was the son of Idris III., surnamed Al-muwaffek. See the genealogical tree of the Beni Idris at the end of this volume. Al-bekri (loco laudato, fo. 89, verso) says that he was not proclaimed Khalif from the pulpits, as had been the custom of his predecessors; and that shortly after his accession, that is to say, at the beginning of 447, he was dethroned by Bādis Ibn Habūs. That 447, and not 449, is the true date for the dethronement of Mohammed, is proved by a passage of Ibn-l-khattīb, in which it is said that in 447 Bādis appointed his own son Balkīn to the government of the dominions conquered from Mohammed Ibn Idris. The same writer gives at full length a deed signed by Balkīn, and dated Malaga, the 1st of Ramadhān, a. h. 448, appointing the Kādi Abū 'Abdillah Ibn-l- hasan Al-jodhāmī to be his Wizīr.

"In the year 447," says Al-bekri (loco laudato, fo. 89), "the dynasty of the Beni Hamūd was overthrown. The last member of that family retired to Almeria, where he was living in obscurity when a deputation from the people of Melilla landed in Andalus, and after much difficulty found him out, and offered him the sovereignty of their country. Mohammed accordingly crossed over to Africa, where he is now ruling as master over Melilah (Melilla) and Kalu Jārah and the adjacent territory; this present year being that of 460 (A. D. 1068)."

Al-bekri (ubi supra) makes a different statement. He says that Mohammed Ibn Idris was still alive in 460; and Ibn Khaldūn (loco laudato, fo. 99) mentions some transactions in which Mohammed Ibn Idris was concerned in 462. Ceuta and the surrounding territory remained in the hands of the Beni Idris until Yūsuf Ibn Tāshefin, the Almoravide, deprived them of all their dominions.

This statement is confirmed by Ibn Khaldūn (Hist. of the Berbers, fo. 70, verso), who places the arrival of Zawi in a. h. 391, at which time Al-mansūr was still living; but according to Ibn-l-khattīb, in his biography of illustrious Granadians, Zawi Ibn Zeyri landed in Spain during the administration of Al-modhaffer, the son of Al-mansūr [a. h. 392-9], accompanied by two of his nephews, Habūs and Habāsah, who were the sons of his brother, Mākesen Ibn Zeyri. Neither historian states at what time Zawi declared himself independent in Granada, but it was probably soon after the execution of Suleyman, by whom he had been appointed to the government of that city. Upon his accession, Zawi assumed the title of Al-hājjib Al-mansūr.

Ibn Khallekān places the death of Zeyri (whom he calls Zīrī) in Ramadhān, a. h. 360 (July, A. D. 971).

Casiri (Bib. Ar. Hist. Esc. vol. ii. p. 255) and Conde (vol. ii. p. 10) postpone the departure and resignation of Zawi ten years. Ibn-l-khattīb, who assigns as a motive for that determination the discontent caused throughout Spain by the murder of 'Abdu-r-rahmān Al-murtadhi, in which Zawi had so great a share (see p. 235), gives two different dates for the departure of Zawi. In his introduction to his history of Granada he places it [in 410] after seven years' reign; but in the life of Zawi himself, he says that it happened in 416. Ibn Khaldūn (loco laudato, fo. 70, verso), whilst relating the occurrences of Eastern Africa during the rule of the Zeyrites, says as follows: "In the year 410, Zawi returned to Africa, after he had been absent twenty years;" which statement agrees with the date fixed by that historian for the arrival of Zawi in Spain.
11 Habús was the son of Mákesen, who, having revolted against his relative, Bádis Ibn Al-mansúr, the third of the Zeyrites of Africa, was taken prisoner and put to death in 391 (A. D. 1001), together with two of his sons, named Bádis and Mohassen. Záwi, who had assisted his brother Mákesen in his rebellion, was forgiven on condition of crossing over to Spain, which he did, taking with him his two nephews, Habús and Habásah.—Ibnu Khaldún, ubi supra.

Habús was residing at the castle of Asher or Ashed when his uncle Záwi summoned him to Granada to take charge of the government during his absence. He obeyed, but soon after his uncle's departure, at the beginning of the year 411 (May, A. D. 1020), he declared himself independent.

12 Ibnu-l-khattib gives two different dates for the death of Habús, 428 and 429; the former in the historical introduction, the latter in the biography.

13 According to Ibnu-l-khattib, Bádis died on Sunday, the 20th of Shawwál, 465 (July, A. D. 1073). His surname was Abú Mas'úd, and he took besides the titles of Al-hájib Al-modhaffer-billah and An-násir liddin-illah.

The author here called Ibnu-l-'askar is Mohammed Ibn 'Ali Ibn Al-khadhr Ibn Hárun Al-ghosání, who, according to Ibnu-l-khattib, wrote a history of Malaga entitled مطلع الألوار ونبرة الأصبار فيها أحقبت عليه مالقة من الإسلام و الروسا الخير و تقيت مين الدناقين و الأثر (the rising of the constellations, and the recreation of the eyes: [treating] of the eminent theologians and virtuous chiefs of Malaga, together with some account of the remarkable events in the history of that city). A nephew of Ibnu-l-'askar wrote a supplement to that history, which he entitled الآت والاتهام في صلاة الإسلام بجانس الإسلام مس اهل مالقة الكرم (perfection and complement, or the gift of the learned who frequent the literary assemblies of the people of Malaga).

14 Balkín was the son of Bádis, who destined him for his successor, and had him recognised as such under the title of Seyfu-d-daulah (the sword of the state). He gave him the government of Malaga, which he held till his death in 454. According to Ibnu-l-khattib (ubi supra), Balkín died of poison administered to him by a Jew, who was his father's Wizir.

Ibn Khallckán writes this name بلكيين Bolukkin; but my copy of Ibnu-l-khattib, and that of Ibn Khaldún preserved in the British Museum (No. 9575, fo. 70), read always بليكن Balkín, as printed. This is, perhaps, a proper place to state, that Ibn Khallekán's orthography cannot always be adopted respecting proper names of African origin. The word Zeyri, which, in all the manuscripts I have consulted, is written زبري or زبري— he writes زبري Ziri. He writes مئاد Menad instead of مئان Munúd, Sunhájah instead of Sunhájah, &c.

According to Ibnu-l-khattib, the dethronement of 'Abdullah Ibn Balkín took place on Saturday, the 12th of Rejeb, A. H. 483 (Sept. 9, A. D. 1090), or the following day; he was sent to Africa under a strong escort. The author of the Holalu-l-maushiyyah attributes to him a history of his own family and dynasty, entitled Tarihku-z-zeyrín (chronological history of the Zeyrites).

15 The Bení Jehwar are generally counted in the number of the Mohiku-t-tawáyif, or kings of
independent states. It is impossible, however, to determine at what time Jehwar, the founder of the dynasty, assumed the supreme command in Cordova, although it may naturally be supposed that it was soon after the dethronement of Hishám Al-mu’tadd in Dhi-l-hajjah, 420. An-nuwayrí, however, intimates that Jehwar did not take upon himself the government of Cordova till 429. His words are as follow: ‘On Thursday, the 2nd of Moharram of the year 427 (Nov. 6, A.D. 1035), it was publicly announced to the people of Cordova that Hishám was still alive, and prayers were recited in his name. “Things remained in this state until it was said that Hishám was dead, and Abú-l-hazm Jehwar assumed the supreme power.” But is it probable that in the interval between the dethronement of Al-mu’tadd, in 420, and the pretended proclamation of Hishám, Cordova should have remained without a ruler?

16 Ibnu-l-lebbánah is the surname of Abú Bekr 'Isa, a distinguished poet, who resided at Seville, but who was a native of Denia. See vol. i. p. 379, note 6, of this translation. See also M. Weyer’s learned notes to the life of Ibn Zeydún by Al-fath Ibn Khákán, p. 133.

17 Some copies read here كَرِّش; others كَرِيش. The copies of Ibn Khallekán which I have consulted all have كَرِيش.

18 Ibnu-l-khattib, who gives the life of Al-mu’tamed among those of his illustrious Granadians, owing to that prince having visited Granada shortly after its reduction by Yúsuf Ibn Tishefín, says that Karísh, the captain of the middle guard under Hishám, son of Al-hakem, Khalif of Cordova, and that he afterwards became Imám to the principal mosque of Seville.

19 According to the author of the Reghámu-l-lebáb, the individual who personified Hishám on this occasion was a peasant of the neighbourhood of Calatrava, who bore great resemblance to that Khalif. Ibn Bessám (Adh-dhakhirah, fo. 9) gives some interesting details copied from the work of Ibn Hayyán. He says that Hishám was thrice killed and as many times resuscitated. He was put to death by Mohammed Al-muhdí, and publicly interred as if he had died a natural death. He was next restored to life by Wádheh, the Selavonian, who declared that all had been a stratagem of that usurper, and that Hishám was still alive. Suleymán had him strangled when he took Cordova, and privately buried; but many years after the dethronement of Al-mu’tadd, in A.H. 420, the Wizír Jehwar pretended that he was still alive, and caused the khotbah to be recited in his name in all the mosques of Cordova. Perceiving, however, that the inhabitants of that city were not averse to his rule, Jehwar gave out that Hishám was dead, and ruled independently. Lastly, Abú-l-kásím, the Kádí of Seville, wishing to extend his sway to other provinces of Spain, announced that he had found Hishám in a dungeon of the castle of Calatrava.

20 Ibn Bessám (Adh-dhakhirah, fo. 17) agrees with our author in placing the death of Abú-l-kásím Mohammed Ibn 'Abbád about the end of Jumáda the first. He was born on Wednesday, the 21st of Jumáda the second, A.H. 361.

21 It was not 'Abbád [Al-mu’addh], but his son Mohammed, who afterwards reigned under the title of Al-mu’tamed, who took Cordova and dethroned 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Jehwar.
22 Ibn Bessám says that when the Almoravides under Seyr took possession of Seville, they found in a closet within the royal palace several sealed jars, which they at first thought contained money, but which, upon examination, were found to be full of the skulls of his murdered enemies, among which were those of Yahya Ibn 'Ali, Sultan of Cordova; Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Al-birzáli, Lord of Carmona; Al-hajjáj Ibn Khazrán, Lord of Ronda; Ibn Núh, a Berber chiefstain, and others; and that Seyr ordered that they should be given up to the relatives of the deceased.

23 من حَصْنَتْ يا زَنْدَة : فُصِّرَتْ لِلْكِنَا عَدَّة
إِفَادَتْنَاكَ إِبْرَاح: وَأَسِياَفُ لَهَا حَدَّة

24 مات عباد ولكن بقي الفرع الكريم
فكان البيت حبي غير أن الضاد اليم

25 My copy has this differently — فقال اليهودي لا أخذت هذا العيار ولا اخذته منا إلا [ذهب] — "And the Jew said, 'Pieces of this [low] weight cannot be received, and I will take none unless they be first tried and weighed. Next year I shall not "be satisfied, &c.'"

ان يسلب القوم العدو

I am not sure of having seized the meaning of this hemistich, which, being by itself and detached, forms no sense whatever.

27 See the extracts from Ibnu Hayyán, note 47, p. 440. Before the Bení Dhi-n-nún took possession of Toledo, a chief named Ibn Ya‘ish, who is mentioned in Abú-l-fedá (Ann. Mosl. vol. iii. p. 38), had ruled some time over the place.

28 The author alludes, no doubt, to the hospitality which Al-mansúr afforded to Alfonso, when his brother Sancho deprived him of his kingdom.

29 حاَنَد — According to the Cronica de España (fo. cccix., verso) and Rodericus Toletanus (Rerum in Hisp. Gestarum Chronicon, lib. vi. cap. xxii.), Al-mámún left a son, named Hishám, who succeeded him on the throne, but died shortly after his succession. Al-khazrejí (App. p. xxviii.) says positively that he left no male children, and was succeeded by his grandson Yahya. Casiri (vol. ii. p. 214) makes no mention of Hishám; and Conde calls Yahya, in two different places (vol. ii. pp. 57 and 63), the son of Al-mámún. No reliance, however, can be placed on the statement of the latter author, who, in this part of his narrative, is more inaccurate than usual, making of Yahya Al-kádír two persons, father and son, one named "Yahye," the other "Alcadir." See vol. ii. p. 175.

30 The historian Ibnu Khaldún gives the genealogy of Al-mundhir as follows: "He was the son of Mutref, son of Yahya, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Mohammed, son of Hásim [Hishám?], the
CHAP. IV.] NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS. 505

"Tojibite." He was probably the great grandson of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed At-tojibi, one of the chiefs whom Al-mansúr employed as instruments of his usurpation (see above, p. 438): if so, he was descended from Abú Yahya Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán At-tojibi, whose rebellion at Saragossa during the reign of 'Abdullah has been related elsewhere after Ibn Hayyán (note 47, p. 441). Al-mundhir, therefore, did not belong to the family of Húd, as Conde (vol. ii. p. 12) has erroneously stated. The Tojibites and Jodhámites were different tribes.

31 According to Al-morrékoshi, Al-mundhir died in A. H. 414 (March 25, A. D. 1023), and was succeeded by his son Yahya Al-modhaffer, who was assassinated at Granada in Dhi-l-hajjah, A. H. 430, namely, sixteen years after his accession; but how this account is to be reconciled with the words of Al-makkari, "soon after," it is not easy to determine. Casiri (vol. ii. p. 95) translates a passage from Ibn-l-khattib, by which it would appear that it was Al-mundhir, not Yahya, who was murdered by his cousin 'Abdulláh.

32 This work was unknown to Hájí Khalfah.

33 There were two Sultáns of Saragossa surnamed Al-musta'in; one Suleymán, the other Abú Ja'far Ahmed. It was the latter who, in November, A. D. 1096, was defeated at Alcoraza, near Huesca, by Pedro I. of Aragon. See Zuríta, Anales de Aragon, vol. i. cap. xxxii., and Rodericus Toletanus, De Rebus Hispanicis, lib. iv. cap. i.

34 The castle of Rottah or Roda. See App. p. xlvi. In the Cronica de España, fo. ccxviii., this place is called Rueda.

35 The author is mistaken. Shabúr was not succeeded by Mohammed Al-modhaffer, but by (Abú Mohammed) 'Abdulláh Ibn Moslemah Ibn Al-afttas, who was the father of Mohammed and the founder of the dynasty. Neither was Mohammed succeeded by 'Omar, but by his son Abú Bekr Yahya, also surnamed Al-modhaffer and Al-mansúr, who reigned from A. H. 460 to 473.

36 The kingdom of Valencia, from the year 412,—in which it is said to have become independent of Cordova, to the year 495, when that city was taken by the Almoravides,—was subject to so many revolutions, the accounts preserved are so meagre, so obscure, and even so contradictory, that it is next to impossible to settle the chronology even of the most remarkable events. The founder of the dynasty was Abú-l-hasan 'Abdu-l-'azíz, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Shanshíl, and grandson of the celebrated Al-mansúr, who, after the assassination of his father 'Abdu-r-rahmán in 399, fled to Saragossa, where he was kindly received by the governor, Al-mundhir. How soon after his flight he took possession of Valencia it is difficult to say; for it cannot for a moment be supposed, as is asserted by Conde (vol. ii. p. 11), that his rising did not take place till 412. On the death of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, which, according to Casiri (vol. ii. p. 215) and Conde (vol. ii. p. 37), happened in 452, his son 'Abdu-l-malek Al-modhaffer succeeded him, who, in 457, was deprived of his dominions by his father-in-law, Al-mámún of Toledo. Conde mentions another son of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, named 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who, by one of those strange contradictions of which that author is so often guilty, is said to have also been the son-in-law of Al-mámún, and to have succeeded his father. According to Casiri (ubi supra), 'Abdu-l-malek remained only a few days in exile; whereas Conde (vol. ii. p. 58) makes him remain upwards of thirteen years, placing his restoration
in 470, which is more probable, his enemy Al-mámún having died in Dhī-l-ka'dah, 469. 'Abdu-l-malek died shortly after his restoration, and was succeeded by his son Abú Bekr, who, according to the Cronica de España, fo. cccxiv., died in 478.

Ibnu-l-khattīb gives the life of Zohayr among those of his illustrious Granadians. He had been an eunuch in the household of Al-mansūr. After the assassination of 'Abdu-r-rahmān and the usurpation of Al-muhdi, he fled to Cordova with other Sclavonians, and shared the fortunes of Khayrán, who was his friend, and appointed him governor of Murcia. When the latter felt his death approach, he summoned Zohayr to Almería, and appointed him his successor. This happened on Friday, the 3rd of Jumādā the second, a. h. 419. Zohayr governed his dominions with great equity and vigour for a period of ten years and a half. He was killed at the end of Shawwāl, a. h. 429, in a battle fought with Záwi, the King of Granada, whose states he had invaded. Ibnu-l-khattīb adds, that on Sunday, the 24th of Sha'bān, a. h. 425, Zohayr took Cordova, where he reigned for a period of fifteen months.

According to Ibn Khaldūn, Mujāhid was the son of Yúsuf, son of 'Ali, a maulī of Al-mansūr. In the year 400 (A. d. 1010), after the assassination of Al-muhdi, Mujāhid left Cordova with other partisans of the family of Umeyyah, and joined the forces of Al-murtadhī. When the latter was defeated by Záwi and put to death, Mujāhid withdrew to Tortosa, and took possession of it. He then left that city and went to Denia, where he likewise assumed supreme authority.

This contradicts what has been said above, namely, that Mujāhid was governor of Denia when the dynasty of the Benū Umeyyah was overthrown; but all is explained by a passage from An-nuwayrī, cited by M. Weyers in his excellent notes to IbnKhākān (p. 114). According to that diligent historian, Mujāhid was governor of Denia when 'Abdullah Al-mu'ayttī and other distinguished citizens of Cordova, who had escaped the massacre commanded by Suleyman, took refuge in his dominions. Mujāhid treated Al-mu'ayttī with much consideration and respect, gave him a share in the government, guided himself entirely by his advice, and went so far as to resign all his authority into his hands, and to have him proclaimed King of Denia in Jumādā the second of the year 405 (Dec. A. d. 1014). Three months after, in the month of Ramādān (March, A. d. 1015), Al-mu'ayttī and Mujāhid sailed to the Eastern [or Balearic] islands, and took possession of them. In Rabī’ the first of the ensuing year [A. H. 406] (Aug. or Sept. A. d. 1015), Al-mu'ayttī sent Mujāhid to Sardinia with a fleet of one hundred and twenty sail. Mujāhid conquered that island, and remained in it until the end of the year, when a sudden and combined attack of the islanders compelled him to set sail and return to Denia, where, finding Al-mu'ayttī dead, he took possession of the government.

See Appendix, p. xlvii., where Mubashsher is said to have been a liberated slave of Al-murtadhī, King of Mallorca. This Al-murtadhī was probably a nephew of Mujāhid; for Ibn Khaldūn says, ‘that in the year 428 Mujāhid appointed a maulī of his, named Al-aghlab, to succeed his own nephew in the government of the Balearic islands.’ Al-aghlab and Mubashsher are, no doubt, the same person. Al-aghlab means ‘the conqueror.’

'Ali, who was further known by the surnames of Ikhālū-d-dawlah (prosperity of the state) and Al-muwaffak-billah, was taken prisoner on his return from the Sardinian expedition. The ship in which he sailed went on shore, and himself and all the crew were taken by the enemy. 'Ali remained in the
hands of the islanders until his father Mujahid paid a heavy sum of money for his ransom. He married the daughter of Al-muktadir Ibn Húd, King of Saragossa, who, in 468 (beginning Aug. 15, A. D. 1075), deprived him of his states, and took him prisoner to his capital, where he died in 474. Whilst 'Alí was at Saragossa, a son of his, named Seráju-d-daulah [Abú 'Amír], entered into an alliance with the Count of Barcelona, and succeeded, with his assistance, in recovering a portion of his dominions; but he died in 469 of poison, which Al-muktadir Ibn Húd caused to be given to him. Such is the account given by Ibn Khaldún in a passage quoted by M. Weyers (loco laudato, p. 115).

42 Of the small principality of As-sahlah, a word meaning the flat country, we only know that when, after the overthow of the dynasty of Umeyyah, the governors of the provinces refused to acknowledge the authority of Cordova, a chief named Abú Mohammed Hudheyl or Hadhil Ibn Merwán Ibn Razín, who was governor of a town called Santa María Ibn Razín (now Albarracín) after his name, proclaimed himself independent, and was obeyed in all the country extending from the above-mentioned town to the port of Alicante, on the coast of Valencia. Hudheyl was succeeded by his son 'Abdu-l-malek, surnamed Jesímud-daulah (the body of the state), who held the supreme power until A. H. 476, (Casiri says 496,) when he was succeeded by his son Abú Merwán 'Abdu-l-malek, and this latter by his brother Yahya, who was the last prince of the dynasty. See Casiri, Bib. Ar. Hist. Esc. vol. ii. pp. 43, 215. The life of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Razín, who was a distinguished poet, is in the Mattmah, by Ibn Khákán, fo. 38.

43 Abú Zeyd 'Abdu-l-'azíz Al-bekrí, i. e. from the tribe of Wáyil Ibn Bekr, belonged to a powerful family established in Al-gharb or Western Spain since the conquest. On the overthow of the dynasty of Umeyyah, he took possession of Huelba, Gibraleon, Onoba, and the island of Saltis, over which he reigned independent, until Al-mu'tadheid, King of Seville, deprived him of his dominions, as well as Ahmed Ibn Yahya Al-yahssobí, Lord of Liblah (Niebla), and Mohammed Ibn Sa'id, Lord of Ossonoba. 'Abdu-l-'azíz was the father of the celebrated geographer, Abú 'Obeydah Al-bekrí. See vol. i. p. 312, note 7.

CHAPTER V.

1 This account is substantially the same as that introduced at p. 34, after Ibn Hayyán. The historian here quoted was the grandson of the celebrated Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Máṣa Ar-razi, who flourished about the beginning of the tenth century of our era. See vol. i. p. 314, note 10, where I have stated by mistake that "Ar-razi lived towards the end of the fourth century of the Hijra and the beginning of "the fifth."

2 وجد الفوق في مدافعة السنيم عيًا، بتي بايديهم، وقد كانوا لا يطبعون في ذلك

This passage is important, as showing that the Arabs themselves did not pretend to have subdued the whole of the Peninsula.

3 Probably Alfonso V., son of Bermudo II., who reigned from A. D. 999 to 1027.

4 Taragona had long before been taken by the Franks; perhaps طرسة تارازونا is meant; but that city was not taken till nearly two centuries after.
Mariana and other historians place this event in 1087, shortly after the taking of Toledo. Hist. gen. de España, lib. ix. cap. xvii.; Cronica de España, Part iii.; Rodericus Toletanus, De Rebus Hispanicis, lib. iv. cap. xxiii.

Sec vol. i. p. 68, and note 16, p. 376. The name of the town, near which the Moslems were defeated, is here written بتطنة Partana, not بتطنطة Paterna, as in the passage above alluded to. By referring, moreover, to the biographical dictionary of Al-homaydi, at the article Abú Is'hák Ibn Ma'ali At-tarsusi, I find the two verses altered as follows:

لاسوا الجديد الى الزغوي و لستم ۔ حلل الحير عليكم انواتا ۔ ما كان اتقكم و احسكم بها ۔ لولم يكن ببطنها ما كانا

"They put on steel [armour] for the approaching contest, whilst you were dressed in silken robes of various colours.
"What might have been their shame and your glory, at Paterna, had the result been a different one."

According to Ibn Bashkúwál, the غصارة ghifirárah was a sort of turban which soldiers wore over their helmets in time of war.

Birtanieh or Birtaniyah was, according to Idrisí, a district of the Thagher bordering on Valencia.

البرديمي Al-arademir, as Sancho I., son of Ramiro, is sometimes called by the historians of the time. The author of the Holalu-l-mauşiyah, who relates the taking of Barbastro in nearly the same terms as Ibnu Hasyán, calls the followers of Sancho Al-arademiriún.

My copy, and that belonging to the library of Gotha, read حتي ان الذي خص بعض مقدمي العدو لحصنه وهو تابع خيل رومة "the share which one of their chiefs only, who was general of the cavalry of Rome (the Knights of St. John), took to his castle," &c.

The Spanish historians assign as a reason for the atrocities committed at the storming of Barbastro, that Armengaud, of Urgel, Sancho's father-in-law, had been killed during the siege.

Al-muktadir Ibn Húd succeeded his father Suleymán in A. H. 438. His brother Yúsuf Ibn Suleymán, whom two out of the several copies of Al-makkari which I have consulted call King of
Saragossa was probably a rebel only; for no author includes him in the series of the Bení Húd.

14 The following sentence has been omitted in the translation for reasons which those who are versed in the Arabic language will duly appreciate.

15 Ibn u-khattīib's account is in substance the same as that of Ibn u-athīr. He adds, however, that Alfonso dispatched an embassy to Al-mu'tamēd, asking him to set his prisoners at liberty; but that the King of Seville refused to comply with his request unless he gave him possession of the castle of Almodovar.

16 Abū Bekr's account and evidence are not in question.

17 The word 'commanded,' which is here used, would imply that both Al-mutawakkīl Ibn Al-nūhītayn and 'Abdullah [Ibn Balkīn] Ibn Habūs were tributaries of Al-mu'tamēd.

18 Telemsān was taken in A.H. 472 by Modhūdī, one of the generals of Yūsuf Ibn Tāshfīn. Soon after, a new city was built adjoining the old one, which was called Telemsān u-jedid, or Telemsān the new.

19 Ceuta was taken in Rabi' the first, A.H. 447, by Al-mu'izz, son of Yūsuf, who remained in command of the place.

CHAPTER VI.

1 The life of Abū Bekr Ibn u-kossayrah is in the Mattmah, by Ibn Khākān, fo. 121, and in the Dhakhirah, by Ibn Bessām. His name in full was Abū Bekr Mohammed Ibn Suleymān Ibn u-kossayrah Al-kal'ā'; he was a native of Seville, where he died in 508.

2 The author of the Holafu-l-mauṣhiyyah introduces a long letter which Yūsuf is said to have written to Alfonso on this occasion.
Koleyb is the name of a battle fought between the Beni Sheybân and the Beni Taghleb. The war originated in the murder of Koleyb (Wáyil Ibn Rabi'ah) by the Beni Sheybân. Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, 'Ikâ, lib. xvii.

4 According to the author of the Karttds, Alfonso was besieging Saragossa when he received the news of Yúsuf’s landing. See also the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xxxiii.

5 According to the author of the Karttds, the battle was fought at Zalâkah, a place near Badajoz. Rodericus Toletanus (Hist. Arab. cap. xlvii.) says "in campo Zulla "prope Badalloz." The Cronica de España (fo. cccxxi.), "en un logar que dezan en Arabigo Sellaque e "en lenguage Castellano Satalias."

7 It would appear from this, that the camp was several times lost and recovered by the Christians.

8 Yúsuf and his descendants of the dynasty of the Almoravides never assumed any other title than that of Amîrû-l-moslemân (commander of the Moslems). Conde, therefore, is wrong when he calls him Amîrû-l-müménân.

9 The word khanjar, which Conde (vol. ii. p. 141) translates by "hoz" (scythe), means 'a short cutlass,' Sp. alfanje. The author of the Cronica de España (fo. cccxxi.) says that Alfonso was wounded by a spear.

10 The word translated by "tents" is madhârib, the plural of midhrâb, which means 'a large tent or booth.' See p. 452, note 47, where this word occurs, as used by Ibnu Hayyân.

11 Alfonso VI. lived nearly ten years after his defeat at Zalaca. He was succeeded by his daughter Urraca, who was some time after besieged in Toledo by 'Ali, the son and successor of Yúsuf Ibn Tâshefin.

Al-makkari has neglected to give us the precise date of the battle of Zalaca, which, according to all accounts, was fought on Friday, the 22nd of Rejeb, a. h. 479 (Oct. A. D. 1086).

12 Thus in the Gotha MS. انا النضر اخذ الحق من يد صاحبه لادفع الرجل عن نفسه الحذر -which, literally translated, means 'treason takes away the right from the hands of its owner for a man to defend himself [with it] when hard pressed by his enemy.'

13 Abú Mohammed 'Abdu-l-jelîl Ibn Wahbún, whose life is in the Mattmah, by Ibn Khâkân, fo. 180. He was one of the most distinguished poets of his time.
BOOK VIII.

CHAP. I.

1 It has not been said above that Al-mu’tamed crossed over to Africa; but Conde (vol. ii. p. 126) says positively that the King of Seville went over to Tangiers, where he had a conference with Yusuf Ibn Tûshefín. See also the Kartús, translated by Moura, p. 157.

2 These were Ibn ’Abdi-l-‘aziz, Lord of Murcia, and Al-mu’tamed himself. The two princes having quarrelled, the latter laid a formal complaint before Yusuf. The Lord of Murcia was arrested, and delivered into the hands of his rival. The followers of Ibn ’Abdi-l-‘aziz then withdrew in disgust to their own country, and, by stopping the supplies which they had been in the habit of sending to Yusuf’s camp, compelled him to raise the siege of Alcdeo. These events are differently related by Conde, vol. ii. cap. xix.

3 For a description of this castle, which some writers call Rottah Al-yâhid (Rodah of the Jews), see the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xlvi. Al-makkarí, however, is mistaken when he says that Al-musta’in Ibn Húd was the first Mohammedan ruler attacked by Seyr; there is, on the contrary, historical evidence to prove that he was the last assailed. The author of the Holatu-l-maushiyyah gives a letter addressed by Al-musta’in to Yusuf, in which the former implores this Sultan’s mercy, and begs to be left in possession of his family dominions, on the plea that he was as fit as any other man to defend them against the Christians, having been from his early youth trained to border warfare. The same historian adds, that in order to gain the favour of Yusuf, Al-musta’in sent him a splendid present, composed of jewels and costly merchandise, which had once belonged to Al-muwaffek, King of Denia, who was dethroned by Al-muktadir. Al-muwaffek had, it appears, amassed considerable treasures by sending corn to Egypt, whenever the crop failed in that country.

4 The accounts of the dynasty of the Bení Túhir, given by Casiri in the second volume of his Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc., are obscure and contradictory. In one place (p. 215) he mentions three kings of that family; one named Mohammed, another ’Abdu-r-rahmán, and a third Ahmed; whilst in another (p. 42) he translates an article from the biographical dictionary of Ibnu-l-abbár to show that Mohammed Ibn Ahmed was the only king of his family who reigned in Murcia. Conde’s narrative, instead of removing the confusion, increases it, by giving different names to the two princes of that dynasty mentioned by him; so that, without a view of the manuscripts consulted by those two writers, it is next to impossible to decide in this matter. The following account, however, is the most probable.
After the death of Zohayr, who was killed near Granada, on Friday, the 29th of Shawwáli, A.H. 429, Abú Bekr Ahmed Ibn Is'hák Ibn Zeyd Ibn Táhir, who was governor of Murcia at the time, remained master of that city and its immediate neighbourhood. Abú Bekr died in A.H. 457, and was succeeded by his son Abi'i 'Abdi-r-rahmán Mohammed, who, in 461, was deprived of his states by Al-mu'tamed, King of Seville, a chief named 'Abdu-l-'azíz Ibn Rásih being appointed by that Sultan to govern the city in his name. In consequence, however, of a dispute with Al-mu'tamed at the siege of Aledo, 'Abdu-l-'azíz himself or a son of his, named Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz, was deprived of his government in 483, at which time a son of Mohammed Ibn Táhir, named 'Abdu-r-rahmán, was probably appointed by the inhabitants.

5 See the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xli., where these events are differently related. Conde's narrative (vol. ii. p. 173) agrees better with ours. Al-mu'tassem's son is there called 'Obeydollah Abú Merwán, and surnamed Mu'izzu-d-daulah (supporter of the state) instead of Hosómu-d-daulah (sword of the state), as our author calls him. Ibnu-l-khattib, (apud Casiri, vol. ii. p. 214,) gives him the surname of Jesímu-d-daulah (body of the state): the translator, however, did not understand the meaning of the expression فر إلى عودة الشرقية (he fled to the opposite coast of Eastern Africa), which he translated by "ad Hispanic orientalis confina."

6 The deposition of Al-mu'tamed preceded that of the Kings of Almeria, Denia, Xativa, and other cities on the eastern coast of Spain. See the Karttíús, translated by Moura, cap. xxxix., and Conde, vol. ii. cap. xxi.

7 The officer dispatched against Cordova is called بطي باتي Batti by the author of the Karttíús. He is said to have taken first Jaen, afterwards Cordova, and lastly Bacza, Ubeda, Albalate, Almodovar, As-sokheyrah, and Segura. See also Conde, vol. ii. p. 167.


9 The author of the Karttíús, and Conde (vol. ii. p. 169), give the latter date. Ibnu-l-khattib, in the life of Mohammed, says "العشر دقائق من رجب "ten days remaining of the month of Rejeb."

10 Ibnu-l-khattib (loco laudato) says that Al-mu'tamed named his mistress امتاد I'timád, owing to the grammatical affinity of that name to his own, Al-mu'tamed, both being derived from i'tamada, the eighth form of the verb 'amada.

11 This anecdote is to be found in the work entitled El Conde de Lucanor, by the Infante Don Juan Manuel, who lived in the fourteenth century. See edit. of Madrid, 1642, cap. xiv.

12— وظن الناس أنه الراضي Yezid Ar-rádhí had been put to death by the Almoravides. See above, p. 297.
Ibn Khallekán, in the life of Al-mu'tamed, gives the latter date, besides that of the 11th of Shawwáli.

The entire name of this poet was Abú-l-kásim 'Ali Ibn Ja'far As-sa'dí. He was a native of the island of Sicily, where he was born in Safar, A. H. 433. He wrote, among other works, one entitled **الكمام** (valuable pearls selected from the works of Andalusian poets). The life of Ibnu-l-kattá' is in Ibn Khallekán.

These two verses are to be found in the *Dhakhírah* of Ibn Bessám, the second volume of which is preserved in the Bodleian Library. The work is composed of three volumes: the first contains the lives of illustrious men and poets who lived in Cordova, Toledo, Saragossa, Jaen, Granada, and other cities; the second, those of the poets of Al-gharb or Western Provinces, beginning with a concise history of the Beni 'Abbád; the third and last, those of Valencia, Almeria, Murcia, and other cities of the East.

According to the author of the *Holalu-l-maushiyyah*, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefm died on the first day of Moharram (Sept. 1, A. D. 1106). He was then in his hundredth year.

The name of this general is sometimes written سیری. Ibn Khaldün calls him سیر. Ibnu Khaldún calls him سیری Seyr, as printed.

According to the author of the *Kartús*, these conquests were achieved in the month of Dhí-l-ka'dah, A. H. 504. Two years after, in A. H. 506, Seyr died at Seville, of which city he was governor.

This battle is elsewhere said to have been fought in sight of Saragossa; see p. 256. See also the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xlv., and Conde, vol. ii. p. 203.

This word is frequently used by Ibn Battútah in his original travels to designate artillery, such as he saw it among the Chinese. In old Spanish "trueno" is synonymous with a gun, and the embrasures of a fortress are still called "troneras."

Saragossa was taken on the 18th of December, A. D. 1118, soon after the death of Al-musta'ín.
24 The other places taken by Alfonso on this occasion were Tarazona, Epila, Ariza, and Daroca.

25 Mariana (Hist. gen. de España, lib. x. cap. x.) places the battle of Cutanda before the taking of Saragossa; but all the Arabian writers I have consulted speak of it as having been fought after. The author of the Holalu-l-maušhiyyah says that the Moslems were commanded on this occasion by Temim, another of Yúsuf's sons.

26 The Infante Don Sancho, who was killed at the battle of Uclés in A. H. 502 (beginning Aug. 10, A. D. 1108). Alfonso himself died on the 1st of July, A. D. 1109. If, as the author of the Kartústā states, Alfonso survived the death of his son only twenty days, the battle of Uclés must have been fought in June, A. D. 1109.

27 This work was the composition of Ibnu-s-seyrafi (Abú Bekr Yahya Ibn Mohammed). See vol. i. p. 472, note 17, of this translation.

28 The word معااهدون, and in the objective case معااهدين, is the plural of معااهد, which means 'a man bound to the observance of stipulated treaties,' and the Christians of Granada were so called because, according to Ibnu-l-khattib, Habús Ibn Bádis and his successors of the Zeyrite dynasty subjected them to certain rules. They are sometimes called معااهدہ mu'āhidah, which is another plural form of mu'āhid.

29 Conde (vol. ii. p. 235) calls this governor Abu Muhamad Yedar ben Birca.

30 the author of the history of Morocco, who adds that Alfonso stayed eight days in the place. Conde (loco laudato) reads 'Nahr Taxila.' Perhaps Tixola, a village in the district of Guadix, is meant.

31 According to Ibnu-l-khattib, who has preserved an account of this memorable incursion, Alfonso arrived before Guadix on Friday, the 1st of Dhi-l-ka'dah (Jan. 22, A. D. 1122), and attacked the city from the side of the cemetery although without success. He then pitched his tents on the summit of a mountain close to the city, and remained there until the following Monday, when he removed farther to a hamlet to the west of Guadix, called غیاث Ghiyáthah, from which he made a second attack upon the city. He is said to have spent two months in these operations.

32 — now Dicžma. The author of the Holalu-l-maušhiyyah says 'to جنة Jennah,' from which he is said to have proceeded to a place called وادی نرديش Wāda Fardish (now Rio Fardex); thence to المسزقة Al-mazrakah; and lastly to Granada, where he pitched his tents, at a place called قربة الليل Kariat Al-leyl.

33 Ibnu-l-khattib (loco laudato) writes بنش Yebeš; the author of the history of Morocco has
Benish (Venix?); but it is impossible to say which is the true reading, as the names of most of the villages and towns in the immediate neighbourhood of Granada were changed after the conquest.

34—Ibnu-l-khattib writes بلالي Belali; the author of the history of Morocco, جلال Jelal; Conde (vol. ii. p. 237), Nibel.

35 دار Dolar or Dilar. Ibnu-l-khattib writes ذكر Dhikar; but the former is probably the best reading.

36 Conde (vol. ii. p. 239) reads "Emidam;" but there can be no doubt that the town of Hamadan is here meant. See above, p. 403, note 22.

37—which reading is the same in all the MSS. Conde (vol. ii. p. 240) has "la fuente de la Teja." Instead of المجرج Al-faraj, the historian of Morocco writes الفترج Al-merj. The manuscript consulted by Conde must have afforded the same reading, for he translates "la Vega de Granada."

38—I have often met with the words جبال البرجولات Jebal Al-borajelah in Ibnu Hayyán and other writers, used to designate a portion of the "Sierra Nevada." Casiri (vol. ii. p. 247) says that the word Al-borajelat means 'the bulwarks of the allica' (sociorum propugnaculæ), and that it was once the name for the Alpujarras; but that author was not aware that the Arabic name for that mountain chain was البشراط Al-busharat, i.e. mountains abounding in pastures. On the other hand, the word borujelat or borajelah (both plurals of برجل borjal) cannot have the meaning assigned to it by the Spanish translator; not being of Arabic origin, and not to be found in the dictionaries.

39—or اللقنون لقنون—which might be meant for Alagon.

40 About eighty years after this event, the prisoners taken at the battle of Alarcos were likewise transported to Rabatt, and made to settle there. Ibnu-l-khattib, who visited Salé in the year 1360, says that Rabatt was almost entirely inhabited by families originally from Granada. See also the Specchio geografico è statistico del impero di Murocco, by Griberg di Hemsi, p. 52, and Torres, Origen de los Xarifes.

41 In relating the events of this reign, Al-makkuri is more laconic than usual; thirty-seven years of almost uninterrupted warfare between the two nations inhabiting the Peninsula are by him dispatched in two strokes of the pen. His silence, however, is not to be wondered at, when we consider that the author left his library in Africa, and could only procure a few works on the history of Mohammedan Spain. The deficiency, however, may easily be supplied with the aid of the Karttis, a work lately translated into the Portuguese language by Padre Moura, and which, for the history of this period, is almost invaluable.

Since I have entered on the subject, I must here state my reasons for having so frequently referred in these notes to the original, instead of the Portuguese translation, and for having avoided giving the name of its author. It is by no means an ascertained fact, as Padre Moura asserts in his preface (p. vii.), that
the history of Africa, generally known as the Karttás, was the composition of 'Abdu-l-halim, of Granada; for, although the copy which he himself used, and that quoted by Conde, as preserved in the Royal Library at Madrid, may have borne the name of that individual, there are a greater number in which the author is said to have been Abú 'Abdillah ['Ali Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Ahmed Ibn 'Omar] Ibn Abí Zara' Al-fási.

My own copy, several preserved in the Bodleian Library, and one quoted by Griéberg di Hemsö (Specchio di Marocco, p. 284), all bear the name of the latter author; and Háji Khalífah, who mentions the work (Lex. Bibl. voc. Türkík Fás and Anís), attributes it also to Ibn Abí Zara’, who, he says, wrote it at the desire of Abú Sa‘íd ‘Othmán Ibn Al-modhaffar [the fifth Sultán of the Bení Merín] before the year 276, which statement is fully borne out by the last chapter of the work, which begins thus: "An account of the reign of the king of the age, and the light of the times, the fortunate Imám and straightforward Khalif, the Amir of the Moslems, Abú Sa‘íd, who is now reigning in this present year of 710."

In addition to the above facts, I may remark that Ibn Khaldún invariably cites the work as being the composition of Ibn Abí Zara’; that the author, moreover, exhibits so complete an ignorance of Spanish history and topography, as to leave it beyond a doubt that he was a native of Africa, not of Spain; and, lastly, that Ibnu-l-kháttíb, who wrote the lives of upwards of six hundred eminent authors born at, or who resided in, Granada, makes no mention whatever of ‘Abdu-l-halim. The title itself goes far to prove that the work was the composition of an African, a native of Fez, not a Granadian. "The companion to the wanderer through the gardens of Karttás, [treating] on the history of the kings of Western Africa, and the history of the city of Fez."

The word Karttás, meaning ‘paper’ (charta, Sp. alcartaz), some writers, and among them De Saéy (Magasin Encyclopédique, l. d.), have translated raudh al-karttás by ‘paper gardens’ (les jardins de papier); but such is not the fact. Karttás, which I have also seen written قرتاس, was the name for a garden or public walk in the outskirts of Fez, which was laid out by Zeyri or Zírí Ibn ‘Atiyáh, chief of the Maghráwah and Amir of Fez, who, according to Ibn Khaldún (fo. 70, verso), was better known by the surname of Al-karttás.

It is probable that the history, in its present state, may be an abridgement of a greater work composed by Ibn Abí Zara’, and which is probably lost. In one of the copies preserved in the Bodleian Library (Marshall, 582), there occurs at the beginning a species of preface, in which the bookseller states that, notwithstanding his utmost endeavours, he has been unable to find a copy of the original work composed by Ibn Abí Zara’, and that should any of his readers bring him one, he is ready to bestow on him, in acknowledgment for so great a service, a complete suit of the stuff called milad, besides other presents, which he names.

I ought to add that this copy, as well as the one I possess, belongs to an edition which is occasionally at variance with that translated by Mourá; owing to which reason I have generally referred to the original, and not to the translation.
CHAPTER II.

1 The author of the Holalu-l-maushiyyah calls him Abû-l-mu'izz and Abû 'Amru. His mother was a Christian slave called Dhû-s-sobâh (light of the morning).

2 About this time [A. H. 541] a body of Christians, whom Yahya Ibn Ghâniyyah had taken into his pay, assisted him in regaining possession of Cordova, where Ibn Hamdîn had fortified himself. According to Ibn Sâhibi-s-salât, in his history of the Almohades, "the infidels committed every profanation, "picked their horses in the great mosque, and went so far as to pollute with their hands the sacred " Korân of the Khalif 'Othmân." See also vol. i. p. 497, note 27, of this translation.

3 Alfonso I. of Aragon was slain in a battle with Ibn Ghâniyyah, the general of the Almoravides, near the city of Fraga, which he was besieging. Compare Conde, vol. ii. cap. xxxiii., and the Karîtâs, translated by Moura, cap. xl.

4 Of the petty dynasties here mentioned, and several more which escaped the notice of Al-makkari, very little is known with any certainty, inasmuch as the generality of the writers who have treated of them consider them only as rebels. However, the following facts may be gleaned from the valuable history of the Almohades by Ibn Sâhibi-s-salât.

Ibn Hamdîn.—Abû Ja'far Hamdîn Ibn Hamdîn was the son of Abû 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Hamdîn, a celebrated poet, and Kádí-l-kodâ or supreme judge of Cordova, whose life is in the Mattnah of Al-fat'h Ibn Khâkân, fo. 150. Profiting by the troubles which broke out in Spain when the news of 'Abdul-múmen's success and the death of Tâshefin reached Spain, he contrived to have himself proclaimed king by the people of Cordova, over whom he possessed considerable influence; their example being soon followed by the inhabitants of Almeria and other cities. This happened on Saturday, the 7th of Ramadhnán, A. H. 538. Scarcely, however, had Hamdîn enjoyed his new dignity one year, when Sceyfu-d-daulah Ibn Húd, who had just been deprived of his family dominions by the Christians, turned his arms against the new sovereign, and expelled him from Cordova. In Dhi-l-hajjah, A. H. 540 (May or June, A. D. 1146), Hamdîn regained possession of that capital, and maintained himself in it until he was again dethroned, in 541, by Yahya Ibn Ghâniyyah, the Almoravide, who had taken into his pay a large body of Christians. See Casiri, Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. pp. 53, 57, 116.

Maymûn.—The Benî Maymûn were two brothers, 'Isa Ibn Maymûn and Abû 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Maymûn. They were the sons of Maymûn, the Lamtitûne, one of the chiefs of the Almoravides. The former, who was governor of Cadiz and Santa Maria, declared himself independent in his governments, and was succeeded by his son 'Ali, who, in 540, ordered the destruction of the tower of Hercules, at Cadiz, under the impression that it contained treasure of the time of the Romans. The latter, who commanded the naval forces of the Almoravides, was celebrated for his maritime conquests. In 516 he landed on the coast of Sicily, which he ravaged and plundered; he also took possession of Almeria, and, having fitted out a fleet in the celebrated arsenal of that port, ravaged the coasts of France and Italy. In 540 he made his submission to the Almohades, and was present at the taking of Mehediyyah by 'Abdu-l-múmen.
The following genealogy will better show the degrees of relationship in which the Bení Maymún stood to each other:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maymún</th>
<th>'Isa</th>
<th>Mohammed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>'Ali</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ibn Kasî.—Of Abû-l-kâsim Ahmed Ibn Huseyn Ibn Kasî, Lord of Silves and Mertola, we only know that he was of Christian origin, and that the revolution which he headed was at first a religious, not a political one, which statement is confirmed by Ibn Khaldûn. See the Appendix to this volume, p. xlix.

His followers were called عزرتهم Al-murtadín, that is to say, 'renegades, deserters;' but, although Ibn Sâhibi-s-salât, as he himself informs us, wrote a history of that sect, I have been unable to find in the portion of his work preserved in the Bodleian Library what their tenets were. Ibn Khaldûn says that they were substantially the same as those of the Almohades. Ahmed took possession of Eborâ, Silves, and Seville also. See Casiri, vol. ii. p. 51, and Conde, vol. ii. cap. xl.

As to Seddaray Ibn Wazîr, whom Conde calls Sid-Ray, and Casiri (vol. ii. p. 59), Saïed Rai, he was King of Badajoz. See the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xlix., et seq.


6 As-solrytdn, or 'the little Sultan,' is here intended as a translation of "Rex parvus," an appellation given to Alfonso VIII. of Leon, [II. of Castile], by all the chroniclers of the time, owing, no doubt, to his having been proclaimed king when still an infant. See Mondejar, Memorias historicas del Rey Don Alonso, p. 8, and the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xliv.

7 الا إيها الهغرو وبمجات لانتمم . . . فلله في ذا الخلق أمر قد انهم فلا بد أن يزرعوا بامر بسوعهم . . . فقد احدثوا جريحا علي حاكم الام اقتباس الانوار و التباس الأزهار في نسب الصحابة ورواة الأثار


8 Alfonso VIII. of Leon, [II. of Castile], was the grandson of Alfonso VI., the conqueror of Toledo, by Urraca, the wife of Alfonso of Aragon, whom some historians have erroneously counted among the kings of Castile.

9 For a description of this work, of which I own a copy, written in Spain shortly after the death of its author, see Hamacker, Specimen Catalogi Codicum MSS. Orient. Bib. Lugd. Bat. p. 56.

10 I have frequently quoted from one volume of this valuable work, preserved in the Bodleian Library (Marsh, No. 433), of which I will here give a short description. It is a large volume in folio, written in a clear Maghrebi hand about the middle of the sixteenth century; the title of it is
II.

Mardanish and who learned [another who]

ILLUSTRATIONS.

His youth of made who unless or city, he in Al-makkari. This the city, he in Seville, to Murcia of Ibn Carmona.

steps, then 'Obcydullah the three reigning, to by of father, in heirs which come by the experience, paid ends.

'Iv*"* d-inars the 'Omayrah the three reigns, Ibn 'Abdi-1-malek, the reigning, by of the father, in heirs which come by the experience, paid ends. Ibn 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Sâhibi-s-salât, frequently mentions a writer, named 'Obeydullah Ibn Mohammed Ibn Sâhibi-s-salât, who must have been his own brother. Under the year 564, he says, that 'Ali Ibn Mohammed Ibn Sâhibi-s-salât [another brother of his] was that year taken prisoner by the troops of Fernando, near Badajoz; but that Yúsuf, the son of 'Abdu-l-múmen, who was then reigning, paid the enormous sum of three hundred gold dinârs دينار حشية for his ransom, and equipped him besides with a horse, arms, &c.

12 Ibnu-l-khattîb gives the life of Ibn Mardanîsh among those of the illustrious Granadians, which I here translate, as it contains many details not to be found in the work of Ibn Sâhibi-s-salât. " His full name was Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Sa'd Ibn Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Ibn Mardanîsh Al-jodhâni. " His father, Sa'd, an officer celebrated for his courage and experience, had been the principal instrument in the defeat and death of Ibn Radmîr (Alfonso I.), near Fraga, in A.H. 528; for, when the infidel laid siege to that city, Sa'd, who was then the governor, made so stout a defence that he gave Ibn Ghîniyyah time to come to his assistance and engage the Christian king, whom he defeated and killed. " His son Mardanish was from early youth trained to arms. At the age of eighteen he was already considered a very accomplished captain. He was a friend of Ibn 'Ayadh [or 'Iyadh], King of Murcia, with whom he became connected by marriage, and who appointed him governor of Valencia. At the death of Ibn 'Ayadh, Ibn Mardanish set out for Murcia, intending to have himself recognised by the inhabitants; but having learned on the road to that city that the Christians had surprised one of his castles, called حلال Halâl, he retraced his steps, and recovered it. He then entered Valencia, where he assumed the royal authority. Subsequently to this, Ibn Mardanish added the city of Murcia to his other dominions, and conquered the greater part of Eastern Andalus, having successively gained possession of Jaen, Ubeda, Baeza, Baza, Guadix, and Carmona. He also besieged Cordova and Seville,
"both of which he was on the point of reducing; in short, he was at one time the ruler of the greater part of Andalus. His alliance with his father-in-law, Ibn Humushk, and their subsequent quarrel, "have already been related. (See p. 316). Towards the end of his career, Ibn Mardanish was deserted "by fortune, and sustained several defeats; the Almohades reduced one by one all his fortresses, and he "himself was besieged in Murcia. Indeed, it has been observed, that from the middle of the year 560 "to the time of his death he was never victorious. He died during the siege of Murcia, on the 10th of "Rejeb, 567 (March, a.d. 1172), at the age of forty-eight. He was succeeded by his son, Abú-l-kamar "Helâl, who soon after made his submission to the Almohades." Compare the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. lix., and Conde, vol. ii. pp. 378-80.

13 I have observed elsewhere (App. p. lv., note 22) that the African historians do not agree as to the date of the taking of Mechediyyah (Mahlidiyyah) by 'Abdu-l-múmen. The most common opinion is that it happened at the beginning of 555. Ibn Khaldún gives some interesting details on the siege and taking of Mechediyyah by the Sicilians in a.d. 1148, as well as on their former expeditions to that coast. He says that Mohammed Ibn Maymûn, the commander-in-chief of the naval forces of Spain, having made a descent on Sicily about the year 1122, Roger, who was then king of that country, thought that the ships belonged to Al-hasan Ibn 'Alî, Sultán of Eastern Africa, of the dynasty of the Zeyrites, and sent a large force to invade his dominions. According to the same historian, Mechediyyah had been taken once before by the Genoese, in a.h. 480 (beginning April 7, a.d. 1087).

14 The anonymous author of the history of Morocco says that 'Abdu-l-múmen embarked at Tangiers.

15 A similar statement is contained in the Karttâs; but Ibn Ságibi-s-salát says that 'Abdu-l-múmen passed some months at Seville. I am, however, inclined to believe that شُهْرًا (two months) is to be read instead of شُهْرٍ (some months); for I read lower down in the same page that 'Abdu-l-múmen landed in Dhi-l-ka'dah, 555 (Nov. a.d. 1160), and returned to Africa at the commencement of the ensuing year (Jan. a.d. 1161).

16 According to the author of the Holulu-l-maukhiyyah, 'Abdu-l-múmen is said to have ordered on this occasion the building of médîna el-kbri 'the greater city' on the rock.

17 The author of the Karttâs, who places this expedition in 556, counts Budajoz in the number of the towns reduced by the Almohades on this occasion. The place here called Al-kasr might be the Al-kasr Abî Dânîs mentioned in p. 194.

18 Ibn Ságibi-s-salát accuses the Jews of Granada of having given Ibn Humushk admission into the city. According to Ibnu-l-khattîb, who treats at length of that chieftain, his name was Abî Is'hâk Ibrâhîm. He was the son of Ahmed, son of Mufarrag Ibn Humushk, and was of Christian extraction, his grandfather, Mufarrag, having forsaken his faith and embraced Islâm at the instigation of one of the Beni Hûd, kings of Saragossa; but I quote the historian's words. "When Ibn Mufarrag deserted his "country and religion, and came over to us, he had but one car, the other having been cut off. Owing to "this, whenever the Christians met him in battle, they used to say Há meshak (here comes the "one-eared man). The word 'ear' among the Christians resembles greatly our word adhen,
"al-mushk in their language means 'a man who has had his ears cut off';— From this circumstance he became generally known under the surname of Ibn Humushk, which passed to his posterity. His grandson, İbrahim, continued in the service of the Bení Húd, until the last sovereign of that dynasty was expelled from Saragossa, when he entered the household of one of the Almoravide princes, and served him in the capacity of chief huntsman. After spending some time in his service, Ibn Humushk went over to the Christians, and resided for a while at the court of the King of Castile; but, repenting what he had done, he returned to his duty, and betook himself to Granada, where an Almoravide chieftain, named Yahya Ibn Ghánìyyah, was then commanding. When the civil war broke out in 539, and Ibn Hamdín revolted at Cordova, assuming the title of Amiru-l-miimemn (Commander of the Faithful), İbráhím, who was a shrewd man and spoke the language of the Christians well, was dispatched by his master to Cordova, on a message to Ibn Hamdín, whose friendship and alliance he sought. From Cordova İbráhím went to Murcia, whose king, Ibn 'Ilád, received him well, and appointed him governor of a castle called Hisn-Shekúbís. Having subsequently obtained possession of Segura, through which his power was greatly increased, Ibn Humushk made an alliance with the rebel Mohammed Ibn Mardánísh, who then ruled over the greater part of Eastern Spain, and gave him one of his daughters in marriage. In union with Ibn Mardanísh, İbráhím waged war against the Almohades, and reduced several of their cities, until he quarrelled with his son-in-law, embraced the party of his enemies, and made war against him. At last, he crossed over to Africa, and settled at Meknásah (Mequinez), where he died in Rcjeb, 572, or thereabouts. Compare the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. lv., and Conde, who, in a few pages, designates this chieftain under five different names,—Aben Hamusec, Hamasek, Hamusek, Hamsec, and ben Hamusec.

19 The author ought to have said, "in the suburb, afterwards called the suburb of the people of Baeza," for it was not until the reduction of that city by Ferdinand III., in a. d. 1157, that the Albayzin or Rabadhu-l-bayizin took its name from the inhabitants of that city, who settled there in great numbers.

20 Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed, the founder of the dynasty of the Almohades, who assumed the character of Mahdí, was not a religious innovator, as Conde and other writers after him have erroneously asserted. He merely preached reform and a closer adherence to the doctrines inculcated in the Korán, and to the principles of the unity of God, for which reason he and his followers called themselves Al-muwahhedún or unitarians, in opposition to the Almoravides, whom they called Al-mujassemín or corporalists, because they partook in some degree of the opinions of Mohammed Ibn Kerám, who described God as finite and circumscribed on all sides, and as being tangible to the hand and visible to the eye.
CHAPTER III.

1 Ibn Sāhibi-s-salāt (loco laudato, fo. 75) gives the following details on the conquests of Alfonso Enriquez, whom he calls صاحب قمرية the Lord of Kolimriah (now Coimbra). "Alfonso was one of "the most enterprising among the Christian kings of these calamitous times. Profiting by the troubles "and civil wars which divided the Moslems of Andalus after the overthrow of the Almoravid dynasty, "he pushed his conquests farther than any other chief of his nation, principally in the districts of "Al-gharb (Western Spain). He took Santarem and Beja on the 22nd of Dhi-l-hajjah, a. h. 554, "which answers to the 1st of December دجنبر of the Christian year 1159. After a stay of four "months and ten days in the latter city, Alfonso evacuated it, having previously demolished the "fortifications. In Junáda the second of 560 (April or May, A. D. 1164), he surprised the city of "Truxillo; and in Dhi-l-ka’dah of the same year (Oct. A. D. 1165), did the same with يابورة Yeburah (Eborna). He also took قازيرش Cazeres in Safar, 561 (Dec. A. D. 1165), and the castle "of مينتاجيش Muntajesh (Montanches) in Junáda the first (March, A. D. 1166). شيرية (Severina?) or "Jelmániyyah (Germania), were the next to fall into his hands, the "former having surrendered to him on the last day of Junáda the first of the same year (April, 1166). "The manner in which this enemy of God took most of these places was this: when he had fixed upon "the object of the attack, he set out from one of his strongholds where he usually resided, leading a small "band of resolute followers, and choosing for that purpose a dark and tempestuous night. Arrived before "the fortress, he would himself plant the escaling ladder against the walls, and be the first to ascend. "When on the top of the wall, he would listen attentively in order to ascertain whether the sentries were "on the watch or not; and when he felt sure that our people were asleep, he would rush upon the "nearest sentry, and, putting a dagger to his throat, compel him to call out the usual watch-word, so as "to make the other sentries believe that all was right. This being done, he waited on the rampart until "a sufficient party of his own men were upon the walls, when, after uttering their usual war cry, they all "rushed together into the city, and put to the sword whomsoever they met on their passage.

"Alfonso took Badajoz in 564 (beginning Oct. 4, A. D. 1168); the Almohades, who composed the "garrison, retiring to the kassibi‘ah. Soon after, Fernando [King of Leon], whose tributary and vassal "the governor of Badajoz was, hastened to his relief, and besieged Alfonso within Badajoz. A party of "the assailants having obtained admission into the kassibi‘ah, Alfonso and his followers were attacked on "both sides in the streets, defeated with great loss, and compelled to leave the city. As Alfonso was "issuing at full speed from one of the gates, his right thigh came in contact with the iron bolt which "secured the gate, and was broken. He fell senseless from his horse, and was carried by his followers "to a place in the neighbourhood called يتباثي Békáyah. He was, however, pursued and taken prisoner "by the cavalry of his rival, Fernando, who did him no harm, but treated him kindly, and set him free. "After this mishap, Alfonso never mounted a horse. Fernando evacuated Badajoz in Sha‘bán, 564 "(May, A. D. 1169), and returned to his dominions."

2 Compare the Appendix, p. lxii., and the accounts given by the author of the Kartddis (in Moura’s translation, cap. xlvii.), and Conde (vol. ii. cap. lxiii.). The anonymous author of the history of Morocco

* According to our system of calculation, the 22nd of Dhi-l-hajjah, a. h. 554, fell on the 2nd of January, A. D. 1160.
The building of the mosque of Seville was begun in Ramadhan, A.H. 567 (A.D. 1172), and the work was prosecuted with such ardour that in the month of Dhi-1-hajjah of the same year (July or August) enough of the building was completed to allow the preacher, Abú-l-kásim 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Ghafîr Al-libli (from Niebla), to preach a sermon there. Ibn Sáhibí-s-salát, from whom the above details are borrowed, adds, that the new mosque was built on the site of the old one called جامع الجمادس Jámi’ Al-‘abdís, which, besides being very small, had long been in a ruinous state. The chief architect was Ahmed Ibn Básah, assisted by Abú Dáíd Yelül Ibn Jeldás, Abú Bekr Ibn Zohr, and Abú Bekr Al-ycnaki. 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Abí Merwán Ibn Sa’íd Al-‘ansi was some time inspector-in-chief of the work; but, owing to some disagreement with his comrades, he was superseded and replaced by Abú Dáíd.

The same writer attributes to Yusuf the building of a castle or tower called Buheyrah, out of the gate of Jehwar in Seville, on the spot anciently called لَقَم فَرُوعٌ, 'the mouthful of Pharaoh,' as well as the erection of a bridge of boats on the Guadalquivir. These two works were executed in 566. Yusuf is likewise said to have been the first who made Seville a great metropolis; he supplied it with water brought from the neighbouring mountains by means of an aqueduct now called Los Caños de Carmona, and repaired the walls of the city, which had been destroyed by a sudden inundation of the Guadalquivir.

The author of the Kartús adds, that he built two wharfs for the unloading of merchandise.

6 Alark, which, in my copy of the Kartús, is written thus: ālrak. The place, however,
was not near Badajoz, as is stated by Al-makkari; it was in the province of Toledo, not far from the town of Almagro, and it had been built by Alfonso III., on the site of the ancient Ilarcuris, in 1178.

7 This fact is not recorded in any of the historical works to which I have had access. The author of the Kirttu says, that immediately after the battle, Ya'kùb advanced upon Toledo, and arrived as far as Jebal Suleymán (La Cuesta de Zulema), near Alcalá de Henares; but, that after laying waste the country on his passage, he returned to Seville, whence he crossed over to Africa.

8 This was Yahya Ibn Ghāniyyah, the Almoravide, who, leaving the island of Mallorca, where his family had established themselves, sailed to Eastern Africa, and succeeded in rekindling the civil war against the Almohades. See the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. lxiii. This Yahya, however, must not be confounded, as Conde has often done, with another Almoravide chieftain bearing the same name and belonging to the same family, who, after resisting for a long time the establishment of the Almohades in Spain, was at last compelled to yield to the victorious arms of 'Abdu-l-mūmen, and died at Granada in 543. The former was the son of Is'hāk Ibn Mohammed, and the latter the son of 'Ali Ibn Yahya, who, according to Ibn Khaḍḍūn, was the first of the family who was surnamed Ibn Ghāniyyah, after his mother. As the family of the Beni Ghāniyyah, who belonged to the Berber tribe of Māsusāh, played an important part in the affairs of the Peninsula during the empire of the Almoravides, and some of its members reigned in the Balearic islands, I here subjoin their genealogical tree.

\[\text{\'All} \text{Ibn Yahya, surnamed Ibn Ghāniyyah}\\ \text{Mohammed, King of Mallorca} \quad \text{Yahya, (governor of Spain under the Almoravides)}\\ \quad \text{\'Ali} \text{\'Abdullah, Is'hāk}\\ \quad \text{Talhuh} \quad \text{Yahya, rebel in Eastern Africa} \quad \text{Mohammed} \quad \text{\'Ali} \quad \text{Tāshefīn} \quad \text{\'Abdullah, last King of Mallorca.}\]

9 My copy reads نكّّّعّّة نكّّّعّّة Nekā'h, by the simple alteration of one point; but there can be no doubt that Bekā'h is the true reading.

10 The mosque had been completed under the reign of his father; what Ya'kùb did, was to finish the tower صوامة which, according to Ibn Sāhibi-s-salāt, was begun on the 13th of Safar, A.H. 580 (May, A.D. 1184).

11 Al-makkārī gives, in the third book of the first part, a specimen of this ode, which begins thus:

\[\text{\'اشكّر} \text{\'بّرّا ذا عبّاب قطعته} . . . \text{\'بّي بّر جود ما لا خراء ساحلّ} \]
"I will sing the praise of a stormy sea, which I crossed to another sea of generosity; both being boundless oceans."

12 This history of the dynasty of the Bení Merín, or Bení 'Abdi-l-hakk, as they are otherwise called, was unknown to Háji Khalfah.

13 Idris Al-mamún took a body of Christians into his pay, who assisted him in his wars against Yahya An-násir. See the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. lxxv. According to the author of the Holalu-l-maushiyyah, Ar-rashid and As-sa'id, who were the successors of Al-mamún, had a numerous body-guard entirely composed of Christians.

14 The successor of Idris was not As-sa'id, but Abú Mohammed 'Abdu-l-wáhed Ar-rashid, who died on Thursday, the 9th of Jumáda the second, a.h. 640 (Dec. a.d. 1242), and was succeeded by 'Alí As-sa'id, the son [not the brother] of Idris Al-mamún. See the Karttós, translated by Moura, cap. xlix.

CHAPTER IV.

1 which might also be pronounced 'Al-kishi' or 'Al-kosha.'

2 Ibnu-l-khattib, in the life of Mohammed Ibn Húd, writes As-sokhayrab. The author of the Karttós places the rising of Ibn Húd at Orihuela, a town also belonging to the province of Murcia.

3 Upon the meaning of the word al-jauf, see vol. i. p. 322, note 43, of this translation.

4 Owing to the turbulent spirit of the inhabitants of Merida, whose repeated rebellions have been recorded elsewhere (pp. 127 and 439), that once flourishing city was destroyed by Mohammed, the fifth Sultán of the house of Umeyyah, in a.h. 254. It then ceased to be the seat of the government of the province, which was transferred to Badajoz, the ancient Pax Augusta.

5 but I am inclined to think that is a preferable reading.

6 Conde (vol. iii. p. 9) places the taking of Merida in 629; the author of the Karttós, in 628; but the date given by Al-makkari agrees better with the Christian accounts.

7 See the account of Ibnu Khaldún, Appendix, p. lxvii.

8 Al-makhzúmí is the surname of Abú-l-motref Ahmed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Omayrah, who, according to Ibnu-l-khattib, wrote a history of the island of Mallorca, where he resided for many years. He was
descended from Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Al-makhzúmí, who, in a. h. 566, delivered Valencia to the Almohades. (See Casiri, vol. ii. p. 58.) Al-makkári treats of him in the first book of the first part, giving long extracts from his poems, as well as from several risálah or elegant epistles which he addressed to the Sultán of Morocco and Túnis, stimulating them to wage war against the Christians. He was born at Jezirah-Shukar, or the island on the Xucar (now Alcira), in a. h. 585. On the taking of Valencia by the Christians, in a.d. 1242, he crossed over to Africa, and entered the service of 'Abdu-l-wáhéd Ar-rashíd, son of Abú-l-'ala Idrís Al-mámúm, eleventh Sultán of the Almohades, who chose him for his Káthib or secretary in one of the civil departments. After filling for some time that situation, Al-makhzúmí was appointed Kádí of a town called جَيْلَةَةَ حَيْلَنَة ; next of Salé; and lastly of Meknásah Az-zeytún. During the wars between the Almohades and the Bení Merín, as Al-makhzúmí was journeying from the latter place to Ceuta, the caravan of which he formed part was attacked and plundered by robbers, and he lost every thing he possessed, being thereby reduced to great poverty. Disgusted with his position, Al-makhzúmí resolved upon repairing to Eastern Africa. To this end he wrote to Abú Zakariyyá [Yahya] Al-hafssi, at that time governor of Bujéyah, a letter full of rhetorical beauties, in which he related his late misfortune and the poverty to which he had been reduced. So touched was the governor by the letter, that he not only invited Al-makhzúmí to Bujéyah, where he had him hospitably entertained, but recommended him to his relative, Al-mustanser Al-hafssi, the reigning Sultán of Túnis, who took Al-makhzúmí into his service, and conferred upon him a very lucrative appointment. Al-makhzúmí remained at Túnis until he died, on Friday, the 20th of Dhí-l-hajjah, a. h. 648 (March, a. d. 1251). He wrote several works, among which the following are the most remarkable: sermons in imitation of those of Al-jauzl; a collection of epistles in prose and in verse, addressed to various princes of the Almohades, or Bení Abú Hafss; a history of Mallorca, describing the state of the island at the time he inhabited it, and its surrender to the Christians, written in imitation of the history which the Imám Al-iskarání wrote of the conquest of Jerusalem; and lastly, an abridgement of the history of the Almohades by Ibn Sáhibi-s-salát.

Here follow in the original MS., but not in the abridgement or in the improved edition, several kassidas in allusion to the taking of Valencia and other cities by the Christians. The first, rhyming in 652 and addressed to Abú Zakariyyá Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhéd, Sultán of Eastern Africa, has no name of the author. Then follows another by Abú-l-baká Sáleb Ibn Sherif Ar-rondi (from Ronda), describing the conquests made by the Christians in different parts of the Peninsula, after the expulsion of Al-mámúm [Idris] from Spain. Of this last poem, which consists of several hundred distichs, Al-makkári informs us, that he saw in Africa a copy to which another poet, from Granada, had made a considerable addition in the same metre and rhyme, describing the taking of Baza, Granada, and other cities, by King Ferdoland (Fernando). Next follows a risálah (epistle) written partly in rhymed prose and partly in verse, by the above-mentioned Abú-l-motref Ibn 'Omayrah Al-makhzúmí, and addressed to the historian Ibnu-l-abábár, as well as the reply of the latter, written in the same strained and highly figurative style after which Al-makkári transcribes a poetical composition of Abú I'shák Ibráhím Ibnu-d-dabbágh Al-ishbili, on the battle of Al-'akáb or Las Navas lost by Mohammed An-násir. Numerous extracts are also given from poems by Ibn Khafajíjah, Abú-r-rabi' Al-kalá'í, Ibn Rashid, and Abú Ja'far Al-wakshí, among which are numerous azjil and mувaщhахát, two species of metrical composition then greatly in vogue among the Spanish Moslems, who pass as the inventors of them.

When, in vol. i. p. 408, I offered some conjectures on the mувaщhахát, I was very far from imagining that I should find in the third book of the second part of Al-makkári's work a full account of that metrical form and its inventors; much less that the diligent Von Hammer had just published the identical
passage, with a French translation, in the Journal Asiatique of Paris (Aug. 1839). I have since carefully compared the passage with a copy of Ibn Khaldūn, and found it correctly given. This renders it superfluous for me to enter more into the subject; I will only add that there seem to be more varieties of rhyme in the muwashshahah than those indicated by Ibn Khaldūn. As a proof of this, I will quote here a few verses of one by Ibn 'Abdī-r-rabbīhi (Ahmed Abu 'Amrī), who is by some believed to have been the inventor of them.

"About the end of the ensuing year, he set out in hostile array, to overrun Sidonia and the adjoining coast.
"Nor did he forget [to invade] Rayyah and Algesiras, until their stars grew pale through fear.
"After this he marched to the neighbourhood of Carmona, his host [moving on] like the revolutions of the mill-stone.
"Rebels and liars trembled at his approach, as if they were suddenly seized by violent fever."

The author alludes to the conquests of 'Abdu-r-rahmān III.

9 Jayme I. of Aragon, surnamed "el Conquistador." The captured vessel is elsewhere said to have been a mesteh,—in the Catalanian dialect mestech,—whence the Castilians made mistico.

10 Muntaner, in his Chronica del Rey Don Jaume Darago, written in the Linosine dialect, and printed at Barcelona in 1562 (fo. vi.), says that the city was taken on the festival of St. Silvester and St. Coloma.

12 King Jayme is said in Muntaner (ubi supra) to have seized the Moorish governor by the beard, in compliance with a vow which he had made before setting out on his expedition. E lo senyor Rey coneich lo Rey Sarruki, e per força darmes acostas a ell, e pres lo per la barba.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

[BOOK VIII.]

14 حياة السيف تهي جيد حاملها : لا سيما يوم اسراع ونجار
و خير ما استعمل الناس يوميذ : لاسم علتها لباس غنبار

15 The death of Al-kádir Ibn Dhí-n-nún is variously related by the Mohammedan writers. According to Al-khuza'jí (App. p. xxxix.), he was murdered in A.H. 485 by Abú Naṣr, the general of the Almoravides, whom Ibn Jeháf had brought to Valencia. Conde (vol. ii. p. 175) says, that Ibn 'A'yesha, another Almoravide general, after the reduction of Denia, besieged Al-kádir in Valencia. The latter, assisted by Ibn Táhir [the dethroned King of Murcia], made a stout defence; but the Almoravides having gained possession of the city through the treason of the Kádi Ibn Jeháf, who opened one of the gates to them, the garrison were overpowered, and Al-kádir himself slain. In the Cronica de España, Alcadubile (Al-kádir-billah) is said to have left his palace disguised in woman's clothes, and to have taken refuge at a house in the city, where he lay concealed until Ibn Jeháf found him out and had him put to death, to rob him of his treasures.

16 Ibnu-l-abbář, apud Casiri (Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. p. 43), gives the latter date. Conde (vol. ii. p. 183) adds, in the month of Júmáda the first (April or May, A.D. 1094). See also the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xxxix. According to the author of the Cronica de España (fo. ccc.), the Cid had been some time in possession of Valencia during the lifetime of Al-kádir; but, on the approach of the Almoravides, he evacuated that city, and abandoned the king to his fate.

17 In the month of Rejeb (May, A.D. 1102), says Conde. The city, however, was not recovered by Abú Mohammed Modhzeli, as here stated, but by Yahya Ibn Abí Bekr, one of the sons of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin. See the Appendix at the end of this volume, p. xlii.

18 This Merván [Ibn 'Abdilla] Ibn 'Abdî-l-'azîz is the same individual mentioned in vol. i. pp. 66 and 373, note 7, of this translation. He was descended from 'Abdu-l-'azîz, first King of Valencia of the dynasty of the Bení Abî 'A'mîr. Abú Bekr, the last King of Valencia of the dynasty of the Bení Abî 'A'mîr, who was dethroned by Yahya Al-kádir, was probably his father.

19 See Appendix, p. lxxi.

20 I have already alluded to this historian in the notes to the first volume of this translation (p. 473); but, led into error by Casiri, I there called him Abú Bekr 'Abdullah Ibn Abí Bekr, &c. His real name was Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Abí Bekr Ibnu-l-abbář Al-kodhâ'i Al-balensi. The individual above named was his father. See Casiri, Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. vol. ii. p. 129.

An interesting account of Ibnu-l-abbář and his untimely death occurs in the Ráyida-l-falâh (Ar. MS. in my possession), which, as it agrees with that given by Ibn Khalúdín (Part vi. fo. 139), I am inclined to think is borrowed from that historian. I here translate it: "Ibnu-l-abbár (Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed) was at first Káṭib (secretary) to Sid Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Abí Hafes, grandson of 'Abdu-l-'mu'men, when he was governor of Valencia. He afterwards filled that situation under his son Sid Abú 'Zeyd, and accompanied him to the court [of Jayme I.], when that prince abjured the religion of his fathers and embraced Christianity; but, before Abú Zeyd had accomplished his wicked purpose,
"Ibnu-1-abbár left his master and returned to Valencia. Upon his arrival in that city, Zeyyán Ibn Mardaníah, who was ruling there at the time, appointed him his secretary; and, when the Christians laid siege to Valencia, sent him to Africa for succour. Ibnu-1-abbár repaired to Túnis, then the court of Abú Zakariyyá Ibn Abi Hafes, solicited, and obtained the aid of his fleet. He then returned to Valencia, where he remained until the city was taken [by Jayme]; when he embarked with all his family for Túnis. Abú Zakariyyá received Ibnu-1-abbár kindly, and gave him an office at his court, the duties of which consisted in writing the 'alemah or countersign at the bottom of the royal letters and dispatches. It happened, however, that Abú Zakariyyá, who preferred the Eastern hand to the Western, thought of superseding Ibnu-1-abbár, and replacing him by Abú-l-abbás Al-ghosáni, who could write the hand generally used in the East. Intelligence of the Sultan's determination having reached Ibnu-1-abbár, he was exceedingly angry and piqued at the preference given to the Eastern hand, and lost no opportunity of making his discontent known to the Sultan. Some time after, Ibnu-1-abbár received orders to write a letter in the Sultan's name, but to leave a blank for the 'alemah, which was to have been filled by Al-ghosáni; but instead of complying with the order, he not only did as before, but wrote it in a larger hand than usual. Having been upbraided for his disobedience to his superior in the office, he flew into a most violent passion, threw down the pen with which he was then writing, and spoke in very indecorous terms of Abú Zakariyyá, which being reported to that Sultan, he gave orders that Ibnu-1-abbár should be kept a prisoner in his own dwelling until he decided upon the kind of punishment to be inflicted upon him for his disrespect. During his seclusion, Ibnu-1-abbár applied for permission to write a paper on the Katibs who had momentarily lost the favour of their masters, but had been restored to it; and having obtained it, produced his celebrated tract entitled إِجْتَاثُ الْكَتَابُ "the return to favour of the scribes," which was so much liked by Abú Zakariyyá that he forgave his offence and restored him to his office. Abú Zakariyyá was succeeded on the throne by his son Al-mustanser, who not only confirmed Ibnu-1-abbár in his office, but promoted him to the rank of Wizir. Ibnu-1-abbár, however, had a bitter enemy in the person of Ibn Abí Huseyn, one of Al-mustanser's courtiers, who, being on bad terms with him ever since his first visit to Túnis, never lost an opportunity of doing him all the harm he could. Having one day accused Ibnu-1-abbár of being implicated in a conspiracy to dethrone Al-mustanser, a search was made among his papers, and they say that there was found one in verse which began thus:

طَفِيَ بِتُونِسُ خُلُقٌ سَبِيعٌ ظَلَّاهُ خَلِيِّنَة
'In Túnis rules a tyrant, whom wicked people call Khalif.'

'No sooner had Al-mustanser cast his eyes over the contents of the paper, than he sent some of his guards to Ibnu-1-abbár's dwelling, with orders to put him to death; which was done, the soldiers striking him with their spears. Others relate this differently; but there can be no doubt as to the lamentable end of this celebrated writer. He was executed on the 15th of Moharram, A. H. 658 (Jan. A. D. 1260), his head cut off, and fixed to a stake, after which his body was burned in one of the squares of Túnis, together with all his works and a valuable library which he had brought over from Andalus.'

According to the explanation given by this author of the object of Ibnu-1-abbár's work, I am inclined to think that إِجْتَاثُ is not, as I first thought, the plural of عَطَبَ 'atab, meaning 'a step or degree,' but the noun of action of the fourth form. إِجْتَاثُ— and that the title of the work is to be translated by "the return to favour of the scribes or secretaries."

Besides his Tekmtlah, or supplement to the biographical dictionary of Al-homaydî, Ibnu-1-abbár wrote,
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

1st, a biography of Spanish poets, entitled "gift for the stranger or new comer," a copy of which is preserved in the library of the Escorial (No. 354), although the name of the author is there given differently; 2nd, another biographical dictionary of illustrious Spaniards, called Hillatu-s-seyr, "variegated silken robe," of which there is also a copy in the Escorial Library, No. 1649.

21 In the Limousine Chronicle, attributed to Jayme I. of Aragon, which contains a detailed account of the taking of Valencia, the year 1239 is given by mistake.

Instead of "Ibn 'Iyadh,"—some copies read عَيَّاش 'Ayadh, but it is difficult to say which is the best reading; for both are Arabic names, and, strange to say, I have frequently met with the same word differently pointed, though applied to the same individual. Ibn Khallekán writes 'Iyadh; Ibnu Bashkúwül and Ibnu-l-khattíf, 'Ayadh.

22 My copy reads أَسْتَيْجَة Estajah (Ezija).

23 'Isti'dib is the title of a work on the as'hāb or companions of the Prophet, by Abú 'Amru Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr. See above, pp. 2 and 396, note 8.

24 The Abú Sa'id mentioned in this passage is the same prince alluded to in vol. i. pp. 164 and 441 of this translation. He had been governor of Granada at the beginning of his father's reign.

25 Conde (vol. ii. p. 347) places the taking of Almeria by Abú Sa'id in 552, ten years after its occupation by the Castilians; but the author of the Karttás, Ibn Sáhibi-s-salát, and Ibn Khalidún, agree in giving the date of 546.

26 Al-mutawakkel Ibn Húd left a son named Abú Bekr Al-wáthik-billāh, whom he had previously appointed to succeed him. He had besides three brothers: Abú-n-neját Sálím, surnamed 'Imádu-d-daulah (column of the state), who was governor of Seville; Abú Is'hák Sherfu-d-daulah (ornament of the state); and Abú-l-hashan 'Adhadu-d-daulah (arm of the state). The latter was taken prisoner by the Christians; but his brother Mohammed paid a considerable ransom for him, and he was set free. Nothing can be more obscure and contradictory than the few accounts we have of these princes respectively; the confusion being greatly increased by the fact that all four are generally designated in history by their family appellation, Ibn Húd, without their distinctive names or surnames. After the death of Mohammed, i. e. on the 4th of Moharram, A. H. 636 (Aug. 26, A. D. 1238), his brother, 'Adhadu-d-daulah ['Ali Ibn Yusuf], who was governor of Murcia, caused himself to be proclaimed by the inhabitants; but scarcely had he reigned eight months, when Abú Jemíl Zeyyán, the dethroned King of Valencia, turned his arms against him, took his capital, and put him to death on Friday, the 15th of Ramadhán of the same year (Conde, vol. iii. p. 21). This account, however, is contradicted by Ibn Khalidún (App. p. lxxviii.) and Casiri (vol. ii. p. 64), who say that the victim of Abú Jemíl was a noble chief named Abú Bekr 'Aziz Ibn Khattáb, who had reigned in Murcia ever since the death of Al-mutawakkel.

In A. H. 638, Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed, the son of 'Ali, regained possession of his capital; and in the ensuing year [A. H. 639] became a vassal of Ferdinand III. of Castile, and admitted a Christian garrison into the citadel of Murcia; but, either the Christian conqueror was not satisfied with this mark of
vassalage, or, what is more probable, Ibn Húd entered into some secret compact with Ibnu-l-ahmar, Sultán of Granada, to rid himself of his guests: the fact is, that in A.H. 640, Ferdinand sent against Murcia his son Alfonso, who took possession of the city and dethroned Ibn Húd. It must, however, be observed, that whilst Ibnu-l-khattíb and other Mohammedan writers place the taking of Murcia in 640, Cascales (Discursos Historicos de Murcia, fo. 18) says, that it took place at the end of 638; and he quotes even a grant of land by Ferdinand to the monastery of St. Mary of Valpuesta, made in Murcia, and bearing the date of July 2, 1241.

Meanwhile Al-wàthik, the son of Al-mutawakkel, lived in obscurity. Ibnu-r-remími not only refused to acknowledge him as his father's successor, but gave up Almeria to Ibnu-l-ahmar, the Sultan of Granada. Deprived of the capital of his kingdom, Al-wàthik withdrew to a strong castle in the neighbourhood of Almeria, where he defended himself against the attacks of Ibnu-l-ahmar. When, in the year 1261, the Moslems of Andalusia resolved, in concert with Ibnu-l-ahmar, to shake off the Castilian yoke, the people of Murcia seem to have chosen Al-wòthik for their king; for we see him figure in the Cronica de Don Alfonso el Sabio under the corrupt name of Alboaques. Murcia, however, was speedily reduced by Alfonso X. and his auxiliary, Jayme of Aragon, and Al-wàthik deprived of his states; but the Castilian king, wishing, as his chronicler informs us (fo. viii.), "to have a king for a vassal," appointed to the vacant throne "un hermano de Abenhud," a brother of [Al-mutawakkel] Ibn Húd, probably the same Ahmed mentioned by Ibn Khaldún (App. p. lxxviii.), unless he be the same Mohammed who had filled the throne of Cordova on a former occasion.

According to Cascales (Discursos Historicos, fo. 25), the second taking of Murcia happened on the 13th of January, 1265, a date which can nowise be reconciled with those here assigned for that event, much less with that given by Ibn Khaldún. (See App. p. lxxviii.) In order to render the facts above recorded more conspicuous, I here subjoin the genealogical tree of the second dynasty of the Bení Húd.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Yúsf} & \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Abú-n-neját} \\
\text{Al-mutawakkel}
\end{array} & \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Mohammed} \\
\text{Al-mutawakkel}
\end{array} & \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Mohammed} \\
\text{Al-wàthik}
\end{array} & \\
\text{Ahmed.}
\end{align*}
\]

CHAPTER V.

1 Naṣr Ibn Yúsf was the name of Mohammed's brother. See the Genealogical Table of the Bení Naṣr, at the end of this volume.

2 Instead of the title "Amír," taken by the sons and brothers of the Sultáns of all the dynasties that ruled over Spain, the Almohades assumed that of Síd or Seyd (Lord), whence the Spaniards have taken the word "Cid."

3 Ibn Ashkilulah or Ishkilulah was the surname of Abú Is'hák Ibráhím At-tojibi. See Ibnu-l-khattíb,
He seems to have been married to a daughter of Ibnul-ahlmar; in the inscription on the tombstone of his son [Abú Mohammed 'Abdullāh] at Guadix, it is said that Mohammed II. of Granada (son of Ibnul-ahlmar) was his khal or uncle on the mother's side.

If true, this is a curious fact, not recorded by Ibnul-khattāb or any other of the Arabian writers to whose works I have had access. But I rather think that Ibn Khaldūn was mistaken. Ibnul-khattāb informs us that Ibnul-ahlmar sent his allegiance to the 'Abbāside Khalīf. His words are as follow: "At the beginning of his reign, Ibnul-ahlmar caused Al-mustanser Al-`abbāsī, of Baghdad, to be proclaimed in his dominions, following in this the example of his namesake Ibn Hūd [Mohammed Ibn Yūsuf], in order by that means to gain popularity among his subjects."

Marhalah means, properly speaking, 'one day's march,' or thirty miles; but there must be some error in the numbers, for the proportion of length and width of the kingdom of Granada could at no time be twenty to one.

Ibn Khaldūn resided some time at Granada, and was the pupil of Ibnul-khattāb, as well as of 'Isa Ibn Az-zyayāt and other celebrated literati of that city. He himself says so in his Historical Prolegomena, in the chapter treating of the literature of the Arabs, fo. 273, verso et passim. I quote from the Leyden copy (No. 1350*); for that belonging to the British Museum is incomplete, and wants the two last books.

In addition to his Aḥdātah (Granatensis Encyclica), extracts from which were given by Casiri (vol. ii. pp. 121-132), Ibnul-khattāb wrote several works on the history of Granada, the titles of which I subjoin: "the novelty of the age: on the history of the Bení Nasr," which the author himself informs us was completed in Sha`bān, A. H. 700; "the visitor of the Silah," being a supplement to the biographical dictionary by Ibn Zubeyr, entitled Silah; "the ornamental diadem," or a history of Spain and Africa since the accession of Mohammed Ibnul-ahlmar to the throne of Granada; "embroidered robes,"—this was printed, with a Latin translation by Casiri, in the second volume of his Bib. Ar. Hisp. Esc. pp. 177-319; "pieces from threads of connected pearls: on the history of kings." This was a general history, in verse, of all the Mohammedan dynasties in the East and West, but dwelling more particularly on that of the Bení Nasr of Granada.

—Probably the same place called Tekernā in the extracts from Ibn Hayyān. See p. 457, note 47.

Ibnul-khattāb gives the life of this individual in his biographical dictionary of illustrious Granadians. His entire name was Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdullāh Ibn Mohammed Ibnul-lūshī Al-yahsobī (Abú 'Abdillāh). He was a native of Loxa, in the province of Granada, where he was born in 678. He died at Granada on the 20th of Rabi' the second of the year 752. He is said to have been a Kātim
(secretary) to Mohammed Ibnu-l-ahmar Al-ghálib-billah, whose friend he was, before he assumed the royal title.

10 See Appendix, p. lxxix., where the taking of Seville by Ibnu-l-ahmar is placed two years after, in 631. It was Al-báji who took the city in 629.

11 But I think that Ibn Azzáři ought to be substituted. A historian so named is frequently quoted by Ibnu-l-khattib, who calls him Al-morrékoší (the native of, or resident at. Morocco). This history, entitled Biyúnu-l-maghreb, was unknown to Hájí Khalfah.

12 شدابة, Sp. "saya:" both are no doubt derived from the Latin sagus.

13 حصى بلول — as in Casiri (vol. ii. p. 264); but my copy of Ibnu-l-khattib reads حصى بلول Hish-Belul.

14 Alfonso did not visit Ya’kúb in Africa, but met him in Spain. Ibnu-l-khattib says that the interview took place in a town called Hadhrát 'Abbád, near Ronda, and that he pledged the crown jewels as a security for the sums he had agreed to pay to Abú Yúsuf for the service. He then adds, on the authority of a man who was present at the interview, "On this occasion Abú Yúsuf gave a remarkable "proof of the contempt in which he held the Christian king; for when Alfonso had submissively kissed "his hand, he, after the usual compliments, asked in his very presence for water wherewith to wash the "stain of the infidel off his hands."

"This brings to my recollection a curious incident which happened once to me, and which I will now "relate, vouching for its truth.—A Jewish doctor, named Ibn jyy, Razar, came once to Granada, under "the reign of the grandson of this same Alfonso [Pedro], and visited me upon business. On his entering "the room, where I was sitting with the Kádi-l-kodá of Granada and other government functionaries, he "presented to me a paper signed by the Sultán of Western Africa, Mohammed, the son of 'Abdu-r-"rahmán, son of the Sultán Abú-l-hasan. This Mohammed, having been dethroned by a kinsman "of his, fled to the court of the King of Castile, whose assistance he implored against the usurper of his "throne. This was readily granted, and Mohammed, having subscribed to such conditions as were "imposed upon him, obtained the aid of King Pedro, and recovered his throne. It appears, however, "that a dispute arose between the two as to the manner in which one of the conditions of the treaty was "to be fulfilled, and the Jew was accordingly dispatched to me to know my opinion on the disputed "clause. Upon his entering the room, the Jew said to me, "My master the Sultán Don Pedro salutes "thee, and requests thee to look over the contents of this paper and the offers made to him by a man "who was only yesterday the most abject dog at his court, but who now boasts of his perfidy and "treason." I took the letter from the Jew, and, having perused its contents, returned it to him, saying, "Take it away, I will not see it, nor will I give my opinion upon it, and decide between thee and "the man whom thou callest a dog. Is thy master’s court so free from old men who know you as the "dogs, that you bestow such an opprobrious epithet upon a Moslem of royal birth? You, not he, are the "unclean animals, whose touch must needs be purified by water. Have you so soon forgotten that when "the grandfather of thy present master kissed the hand of the commander of the Moalma [Abú Yúsuf],"
the latter asked immediately for water to wash out the stain, in the presence of both Christians and Moslems. That Mohammed has fled to your country, and taken refuge at the court of your king, "is no fault of his; for you yourselves instigated him to take that step. Let this be a lesson to you "never to insult those who are better men than thee." No sooner had I done speaking, than Abù-l-
"hasan, the same who afterwards became Kádi ofGranada, began to shed tears and to kiss my hand, "calling me saint and friend of God, and all those present imitated his example."

—which is also to be found written sabikh and sibkhah: the latter word means 'salt-hill.'

Sec vol. i. p. 141, of this translation, where it is said that the title of Faquih was considered a very honourable one among the Moslems of Andalus. Ibnu-l-khattib, who gives the life of Mohammed II., does not mention this circumstance.

النذر — which Casiri (vol. ii. p. 273) translates by "aspect pulchrum." No town of this name exists now in Andalusia.

but Ibnu-l-khattib, from whom this account appears to have been borrowed, writes Al-ghoráfi. Ibnu-l-khattib gives the life of this individual among those of his illustrious Granadians. His name was Mohammed, and he was the son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Íbráhím, son of Yahya, son of Mohammed, son of Sa'id, son of Mohammed, son of Fotiíf, son of Mohammed, son of Ayúb, son of Al-hakim Al-lakhmi. He was a native of Ronda, but originally from Seville. At the age of three-and-twenty he left his native city, and made a pilgrimage to Mekka, visiting on his way thither the principal cities of Syria and 'Irák, where he failed not to profit by the lessons of the most distinguished authors of the time. On his return to Ronda, at the end of 685, he devoted himself entirely to the cultivation of literature, and the lectures which he gave were attended by numerous disciples. Having composed a poem in praise of Mohammed II. of Granada, he presented it to that Sultán, who was so pleased with it that he summoned the author to Granada, and appointed him his Kátiúb-l-anahdá, or secretary for the foreign correspondence. On the death of Mohammed II., his son and successor, Mohammed III., being pleased with his services, promoted Ibnu-l-hakim to the Wizirate, allowing him to retain his former appointment; so that he became Dhú-l-wázíratéyín, or holder of the two Wizirates.

Al-makkari does not inform us how Ibnu-l-hakim worked his own ruin and that of his master; but Ibnu-l-khattib says, at the time that he does justice to his wisdom and talents, that he was a man of overbearing temper, very proud, and exceedingly avaricious. Although he was absent from home when the mob broke into his house, he was afterwards discovered in one of the rooms of the palace and put to death. Ibnu-l-khattib laments the loss of a valuable library which he had collected at great expense, and in which were some works composed by Ibnu-l-hakim, such as a history of Mohammedan Spain from the conquest to his own times. Ibnu-l-hakim left a son, also named Mohammed Ibnu-l-hakim, who wrote, among other works, one entitled "selection of useful things and profitable allegations," and a supplement to the ميزة العميل "balance of administration," by Ibn Rúshik.
Mohammed Ibn 'Ali Ibn 'Abdilah Ibn Mohammed, surnamed 'Abdilah Ibnu-l-hajj, was born at Seville in A.H. 670, where he exercised the trade of engineer and carpenter. While young he crossed over to Africa, and entered Fez, at that time the court of 'Abu Yusuf Ya'kub Al-mansur, the Merinide, for whom he executed different works in that part of the city called New Fez, as well as within the precincts of his palace, &c. It was he who constructed the arsenal of Salé. Ibnu-l-khattib, who gives the life of Ibnu-l-hajj among those of his illustrious Grandians, says that he was "a profound "geometrician, and had much experience in making the hollow tubes," a species of cannon then in use among the Spanish Moslems. This recommended him to the notice of Mohammed II. of Granada, who invited him to his court, and gave him employment. 'Abu-l-jyiish Nasr, the fourth of the Beni Nasr, appointed him to be his Wizir; but, being accused of corresponding with the Christians, of affecting to speak their language, and dress like them, he made numerous enemies. When the revolution broke out, which deprived Nasr of his throne, Ibnu-l-hajj fled from Granada and crossed over to Africa, where he died in 714.

See above, p. 534, note 15.

An-nuwayri, in his history of Egypt, forming part of his Cyclopædia, gives two different accounts of this battle, which, he says, reached Cairo at the beginning of A.H. 720. The first of them is in substance the same as that given by Al-malkari, who, no doubt, borrowed it from the work of that historian. The second, which reached Egypt in the form of a letter from the Sheikh Huseyn Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellân, differs in some material points; and I here translate it from a transcript sent me by my esteemed friend Dr. Reinhart Dozy, of Leyden.

"Don Pedro and Don Juan [el Tuerto], two Infantes of Castile, came here lately at the head of a formidable army, such as the Moslems never saw before, with the determination of taking possession of Granada. Their first halt was near a castle called Tiscar, which they besieged. The governor, whose name was Ibn Hamdûn, offered to capitulate on condition that his life and those of the Moslems with him should be spared. The Christian Infantes having agreed to these conditions, it was resolved that the Christians should occupy the castle, together with the Moslems. Ibn Hamdûn promised, if they sent him a body of five hundred men, to admit them into the fortress. When night came on, the Infantes, according to their promise, sent to the castle a body of five hundred horsemen, under the command of a captain named Arfand; but they had no sooner gained admittance into the castle than they were scattered about the various rooms of the fortress and massacred, without their being able to assist each other. When the King of Castile heard of the treason practised upon his men, he took a most solemn oath not to return to his dominions until he had taken possession of Granada by force of arms. He accordingly encamped about four miles from the city, but as no one went out against him, he struck his tents and advanced two miles further. When the Moslems saw this formidable host approach the city, fear lodged in their hearts, and they began to address the most fervent prayers to God for their deliverance. The Sultán of Granada, seeing the fear and consternation of his subjects, sent a message to the Christian, saying, 'Return to thy dominions without doing harm to the fields, and I will give thee twenty loads of money.' But the Christian refused the offer, saying, 'Nothing will deter me from besieging thy capital until I take it.' The Sultán then sent him a second message, offering twenty-five
loads of gold, besides one hundred dinárs daily, and one thousand every Friday; but the Christian king returned the same answer, and, moreover, put the Moslem ambassador in irons. This convinced the Moslems that nothing could save them except their own fortitude and the Almighty’s help, and they accordingly made every preparation to meet the impending danger. Having sent to implore the aid of an Amir named Abú-l-jiyúsh, he hastened to their assistance with a body of one thousand horse. Mean-while Abú Sa’id ‘Othmán Ibn Al-’ala, who commanded the troops of Granada, was preparing to march against the enemy. After directing the Amir Abú-l-jiyúsh to lay in ambush with his men in a spot which he pointed out to them, he himself left Granada at the head of his forces. ‘Othmán was shortly after by the Sultán, after whom came an Amir named Al-maghráwí, with three hundred horse of the Bení Merín. Each of these divisions went along, trumpet sounding and cymbals beating, until they came in sight of the Christians, whom they deliberately charged. Soon after, however,—as preconcerted between them,—the Moslems gave way and fled towards the city, being closely pursued by the Franks; but they had no sooner arrived at the spot where their friends were concealed, than they turned round and fought, when, those in ambush coming out, they gave their war-cry, and rushed upon the enemy, who, being taken by surprise, was completely routed,” &c.

24 By Bābā the author means, no doubt, the Archbishop of Toledo, through whose interference the Pope is said to have granted to the Infante Don Pedro the tithes of all the churches of Spain, to cover the expenses of the war against the Moors.

25 Shēykhu-l-ghozūt, or “Sheikh of the warriors,” was the title given to the general of the African troops in the service of the kings of Granada. It was one of the highest dignities at court, and was never conferred except upon members of the royal family of the Bení ‘Abdi-1-hakk or Bení Merín, who were then reigning over Fez and Morocco.

26 An-nuwayrī (loco laudato, fo. 112) also says that Don Pedro came accompanied by twenty-five princes, among whom were, his uncle Don Juan, the Lord of Alasuna (or Lisboa), the Lord of Castile, the Lord of Ilkirinterrah (England), the Lord of Aragon, and the Lord of Talavera, and others, all of whom remained on the field of battle.

27 The date given by Ibnu-l-khattib agrees with the Christian accounts, which place the battle two days after the festival of St. John. The Spanish chroniclers will not allow that the body of the Infante Don Pedro was so indignantly treated. They say that it was carried off by his own men, and interred in the monastery of Las Huelgas en Burgos. See Núñez de Villasén, Cronica de Don Alonso XI., cap. xviii. As to that of Don Juan, it was afterwards given up on the payment of a large ransom, owing, it is said, to his having once befriended the Moslems.

28 ورمي باللات العظمى المخصصة بالنفط كرة حديد

29 لا يخدم المسلمين
CHAPTER VI.

1 According to Marmol (Hist. de Africa, lib. ii. fo. 210, verso), the name of this son was 'Abdu-l-málik. Mariana calls him Abomilique (Abú Málik). He crossed over to Spain before his father, and took Gibraltar. Having subsequently made an incursion into Andalusia, he was killed in battle with the Christians. See Villasen, Cronica de Alfonso el Onceno, cap. exiii., and Mariana, Hist. Gen. de España, lib. xvi. cap. ii.

2 The buildings erected by order of Abú-l-hasan at Gibraltar are very minutely described by Ibn Battútah in his original travels. That author, who visited Spain in A. H. 750, under the reign of Abú 'Inán Fáris, the son of Abú-l-hasan, enters into many interesting details upon the campaigns of the Merínite Sultán against the Christians of Spain. Compare the Kartús, translated by Moura, and Conde, Hist. de la Dom. vol. iii. cap. xii.

3 According to the author of the Holalu-l-maushiyyah, this villa was erected by Idris Al-mámún, Sultán of the Almohades, during his residence in Malaga, before he took possession of the throne. Sid or Seyd being the title generally given to the princes of the Almohades, the villa was called Mun'ıyat As-seyd. There was another villa of the same name in the outskirts of Granada, a city which, according to Ibnu-l-khattib, owed its principal buildings to its Almohade governors. The author of the Reghaın-l-lebîb wa rey'dın-sh-shebîb says that 'Abdu-l-wáhêd I., seventh Sultán of the Almohades, whilst he was governor of Granada, and before he succeeded his father on the throne, built a magnificent palace known as Kasr 'Abdî-l-wáhêd, or the palace of 'Abdu-l-wáhêd, as well as a delightful villa called Dárû-l-beydáh, or the white house.

4 —now called "Rio de la miel."

5 Mariana, on the authority of a register-book kept in the archives of the cathedral of Toledo, places this battle on the 30th of October.

6 Abú-l-kásim Ibn Sherif is the same individual mentioned in vol. i. p. 404, note 6, of this translation. He was one of the masters of Ibnu-l-khattib, who devotes to him a long article in his biographical dictionary of illustrious Granadians. His full name was Abú-l-kásim Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Al-hasanî As-sebî; but he was better known by the surname of Ash-sherif or Ibn Sherif (the son of the Sherif), because he was descended in a straight line from Al-hasan, one of the sons of 'Ali Ibn Abî Talib. He was born at Ceuta in Rabi' the first, A. H. 697 (Jan. A. D. 1298), but went to Granada, where he obtained office under the government, and, in A. H. 737, was appointed Kádi-l-kodá or supreme judge. In Sha'bán, 747, he was superseded, but soon after, upon the accession to the throne of Mohammed V., the eighth of the Bení Nasr, he was restored to his office, which he filled till his death. According to my copy of Ibnu-l-khattib, this happened in Sha'bán, 760 (July, A. D. 1359); which must be a mistake, since the revolution at Granada happened one month after, in Ramadhán, and Abú-l-kásim himself is said to have gone to Granada as an ambassador of Abú Sálim. Al-makkari, who treats at length of Abú-l-kásim in the third book of the second part, where he gives the lives of the masters...
of Ibnu-l-khattīb, makes the same statement as to the year of his death; but he quotes a passage from the
"obituary," by Al-kasmitānī, in which the death of Abū-l-kāsim is referred to the year 761.

Among other works on various branches of literature, Abū-l-kāsim wrote an excellent commentary upon
the Maḳṣūrah of Ibn Hāzim, entitled "the drawing of" the veil which conceals the beauties of the Maḳṣūrah." See vol. i. p. 405, of this translation.

7 Ibn Marzūk. This is, no doubt, the same individual as Abū 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Abī 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Marzūk, a native of Telcsmān, who, during his stay at Granada, was one of Ibnu-l-khattīb’s preceptors, and became in time the Wizar of Abū Sālim. He was the author of a history of Abū-l-hasan 'Ali, Sultan of the dynasty of the Benī Merīn, entitled مس اخبار السلطان ابي الحسن "true allegations [drawn] from the history of the Sultan Abū-l-
hasan," from which, as well as from another historical work, entitled "the pleasure of direction," Al-makkārī gives large extracts in the eighth book of the first part, respecting the Sultan Abū-l-hasan. These are principally relating to a magnificent present which that prince is said to have sent to Al-malēk An-nāsir Mohammed Ibn Kālān, tenth Sultan of Egypt of the dynasty of the Baharites, when his aunt Marīm started on a pilgrimage to Mekka. That princess was the bearer of three of the copies of the Korān which Abū-l-hasan himself had written, and which he destined as a present to the three mosques of Mekka, Medina, and Al-kods or Jerusalem. See vol. i. p. 437, note 90, of this translation.

خليفة الله ساعد القدر 3: علاء ما لاح في الدحي تر
ودافعت عنها كف قدرته 4: ما ليس يستطيع دفعت البشر

9 In that part of his work treating of the Benī Merīn; but the passage is wanting in the copy of the Turjmānā-l-i'bār preserved in the British Museum.

10 That is to say, of Abū 'Abdillah Mohammed, son of Abū Sa‘īd Faraj, who was proclaimed king at Andarax, in a. h. 627, by the general of the African troops, 'Othmān Ibn Abī-l-'ola. See Casiri, vol. ii. p. 294, and the genealogical tree of the Benī Nāsir at the end of the volume. The word reys, whence the Spanish word "arræz" is derived, means 'a captain or chief.'

11 The following account of Redwān is given in the biographical dictionary of Ibnu-l-khattīb.
"Redwān, the Hajīb, the ornament of the Nāsiri dynasty, was originally a Christian. I once heard
"him say that he was born at a town called  قصارة а Kalsērah, and that his family on the father’s side
"were originally from Castile, and, on the uncle’s, from Barcelona, both being principal families in their
"respective countries. Redwān’s father, having killed a man, was obliged to fly the country and take
"refuge in Kalsērah, fearing the vengeance of the relatives of the deceased. Redwān himself, having
"been taken prisoner when young, was brought to this capital, where he was bought by the Sultan
"Abū-l-walīd Isma‘īl, before he ascended the throne. That prince became so attached to him, that soon
"after his accession he gave Redwān the command of his armies, and appointed him besides his Hajīb or
"chamberlain. Redwán made war upon the Christians with the utmost success, returning victorious from every expedition. Upon the death of Ābū-1-walîd, Redwán was confirmed in his office by his "successor, Mohammed," &c.

12 جنة العريف—Al-ʿarif, in Spanish "Alarife," means 'an inspector of public works;' and, according to Ibnu-1-khattîb, the palace belonged to a person of that profession before it passed into the hands of one of the Sultâns of Granada, who bought it for a large price, and made considerable additions to it. This palace, which is no other than the famous Generalife at Granada, is still existing, though much dilapidated.

13 Casiri (vol. ii. p. 317), and Conde (vol. iii. p. 152) after him, call this Sultán Ābū Saʿid. In the extract from Ibn Khaldûn given at p. 357, Ismaʿil's relative and supporter is also named Ābū Saʿid; yet in no part of his work does Ibnu-1-khattîb call him so. His name was Ābū 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Ismaʿil Ibn Mohammed Ibn Faraj Ibn Ismaʿil Ibn Nasr. My copy of the Ahâttah contains a long biography of him.

14 Ibnu-1-khattîb, in the life of Mohammed V., gives the details of this journey. The party started on the 11th of Dhî-l-hajjah, and halted at Fahss Al-font, Loxa, Antequera, Dhekuwán, and Marbella, where they embarked on the 24th. On the same day the vessel cast anchor at Ceuta. They entered Fez on Thursday, the 6th of Moharram, 761.

15 Mohammed Ibn Yûsuf Ibn Mohammad Ibn Mohammed Ibn Yûsuf the Arabi. ‘Abdillah, better known by the surname of Ibn Zomrok, was born in the quarter of Granada called Albayzin, on the 14th of Shawwàl, a. h. 733. He was one of the pupils of Ibnu-1-khattîb, who doted upon him, owing to his great imagination and talent; he succeeded him in the office of Wizir. (Ibnu-1-khattîb, loco laudato.) Al-makkari, Part ii. book iv., treats at length of Ibn Zomrok, whom he charges with having hastened, by his false reports, the execution of his master, Ibnu-1-khattîb. Some of the poems engraved on the walls of the Alhambra are there said to have been composed by him.

16 See vol. i. p. 301, of this translation, where I have given the life of this individual, translated from my copy of the Ahâttah. In the third book of the second part, Al-makkari gives the lives of all the Sheikhs (masters) of Ibnu-1-khattîb, as well as of all the learned men whom he met in his travels, or from whom he gathered information in any of the various departments of Arabian literature. The most celebrated of these were, Ābū 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Jâbir Al-wâdi-ashi (from Guadix), the author of the well-known book of travels entitled رحلة ابن جابر "the peregrinations of Ibn Jâbir," who died at Tûnis in a. h. 779 (beginning May 9, a. d. 1377); Ābû 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Ibn 'Ali Ibn 'Amru At-temînî; Ābû 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Abdu-n-nârî, who died of the plague at Tûnis in a. h. 750 (beginning March 21, 1349); Ābû 'Imrân Mûsa Al-masmûdî, better known by the surname of An-nâjârî; Ābû 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abî Bekr Ibn Marzûk Al-ʿajîsî, and his brother Abû-l-abbâs Ahmed Ibn Marzûk; Abû-l-barakât Ibnu-1-hâj Al-balkînî; Abû Zakariyyâ Yahya Ibn Hudheyl; Abû-l-huseyn 'Alî Al-kijâtî; Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Jazzi-1-kelbî, the editor of the travels of Ibn Battûtah, &c.
CHAPTER VII.

1 Mohammed the seventh,—supposing the name of the usurper, who was put to death by Don Pedro, to have been Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed, not Abú Sa'îd, as it is stated by the Christian writers. See above, note 13.

Mohammed was succeeded by his son Yûsuf III., between whom and Abû-l-hasan 'Ali, the next sovereign mentioned by Al-makkari, several princes occupied the throne of Granada. This gap in the history of the last Mohammedan kingdom in the Peninsula is the more to be regretted, as it can only be supplied by the writings of the Arabs, the Spanish chroniclers of the time not being either accurate or explicit enough to allow us to establish the chronology with any certainty. The work of Conde, it is true, affords greater materials; but as this portion of his history, though studiously shaped so as to give it an Arabic appearance, is evidently founded on Christian authorities,—there not being in the Escurial any work on the history of Mohammedan Spain later than that of Ibnu-l-khattib,—great precaution is to be used in adopting his statements. For this reason I have avoided giving in the Chronological Table (No. XX.), at the end of the volume, the dates of the reigns of the seven Sultâns who, according to Conde, occupied the throne of Granada in the interval between the death of Yûsuf II. and the accession of Abû-l-hasan, or Alboacen, as the Spanish chroniclers of the time write his name. I have also excluded from the genealogical tree of the family all those whose existence rests only on the testimony of the Christian writers.

2 There are still extant at Granada the ruins of a palace, which in the days of Marmol was still called "las Casas del Gallo" (the house of the weather-cock), but is now called "la Casa del Carbon," or the house of the charcoal, from its having been appropriated to the sale of that article. The same writer records a tradition still current at Granada in his time, purporting that the palace had been erected by Bâdîs Ibn Habûs, Sultan of Granada, by whose directions a vane was made in the shape of a warrior mounted on a steed, with a spear in his hand, and the following inscription underneath in Arabic characters:

قال البادسي ابن حبوس
كذا تذهب الاندلس

"Ibn Habûs Al-bâdisî says, 'Thus shall Andalus vanish one day.'" Rebellion y Castigo de los Moriscos (Malaga, 1600), lib. i. cap. v.

3 The Gotha MS. and my copy read here "Sa'd" instead of "Sa'îd." This Sa'd is not included in the list of the kings of Granada given by Conde, and yet he appears to have been one of them; for in the genealogical account of Abû 'Abdillah or Boabdil given at p. 390, he is called the Sultan Sa'd.

I ought to observe that a descendant from Sa'd, named Isma'îl, son of Yûsuf, son of Al-kâyim
biamr-illah Mohammed Ibnu-l-ahmar, Sultan of Granada, wrote in the fifteenth century of our æra a work entitled "unique pearls (selected) from the necklace of time, or a biography of illustrious men;" and that from this work, which he frequently quotes, Al-makkari seems to have derived most of his information on the history of Granada.

5 *Zaghal*, thus written زغل— is not an Arabic word, and belongs, perhaps, to one of the African dialects. It would seem to be the origin of the Spanish word *zagal*, meaning 'a sprightly or comely youth.'

6 All this is very differently related in Conde, who makes the war last several years, and calls the governor of Malaga Abdolah instead of Mohammed Abi 'Abdillah. See vol. iii. cap. xxxiii.

7 *ma'dssir*, the plural of *ma'ssarah*, 'a mill,' principally for grinding olives. In Spain they are called *almazaras*. Ibn Battutah calls the "sugar-mills" معاصر سكر. The word translated by "inns" is *fanadik*, the plural of *fandik*, whence the Italian "fondaco" and the Spanish "fonda, alfondiga, alhondiga," are derived.

8 The author alludes, no doubt, to the troubles which distracted Castile during the reign of Henry IV., and which Mr. Prescott has so graphically and so truly portrayed in his admirable work on the reign of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain, vol. i. pp. 93-216.

9 No doubt the execution of the Beni Serraj or Abencerrages, which must have happened about this time. Their enemies, the Thegriun, or Ze gris, as they were called by the Spanish writers, were certain Moors, originally from the Thagher or Thegher (Aragon), who, upon the occupation of the country by the Christians, took refuge in Granada. The river, now called Segre, is the Wáda Thagher of the Arabs, who denominated it so, because it watered the country called by them Thagheru-l-'ali. On the meaning of these words, see vol. i. p. 315, note 11, of this translation.

10 This must be understood as applying to Ferdinand, the husband of Isabella, who, after almost insurmountable difficulties, succeeded in uniting on his brow the crowns of Aragon and Castile.

11 Don Rodrigo Ponce de Leon, Marquis of Cadiz. Alhama was taken on the 28th of February. See Prescott, *Ferdinand and Isabella*, chap. ix.

12 Henrique de Guzman, Duke of Medina-Sidonia, who, notwithstanding his being at the time offended with the Marquis of Cadiz, generously stifled his resentment, and afforded him his assistance. See Prescott, *ubi supra*.

13 The word translated by "heavy artillery" is مدافع, the plural of مدفع madafa', a word meaning 'a propelling machine,' still used in Africa in the same sense.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

BOOK VIII.

14 The 27th of Jumáda the first, A. H. 887, answers to the 14th of July, 1482; but the engagement is said to have taken place on the 3rd. See Pulgar, Cronica de los Reyes Catolicos, pp. 189-91.

15 The Arabic text says خال—that is, an uncle by the mother’s side. The author means, no doubt, Don Pedro Henriquez, Adelantado of Andalusia, who was a relative of Ferdinand, although, according to the Christian authorities, he was not taken prisoner in the action. See Pulgar, Cronica de los Reyes Catolicos, p. 206.

16 Pulgar, Bernaldez, and other Castilian chroniclers, say that Abú-l-hasan was in Malaga at the time; the account given by Al-makkari is, however, the most probable. Unable to bear arms himself, Abú-l-hasan sent against the enemy his own brother, Az-zaghal, and retired shortly after to Almuñecar, where he died. Mariana, on what authority it would be in vain to inquire, says that Abú-l-hasan (whom he calls Alboacen) was assassinated at Almuñecar by the command of his own brother, Az-zaghal; but little credit is to be given to the statements of a writer who invariably confounds Az-zaghal and Abú ’Abdillah, calling them indistinctly Albohardil and Boabdil. See Prescott, Ferdinand and Isabella, chap. x.

17 This was, no doubt, the battle of Lopera, in which the Moslems were defeated by the Andalusian borderers; but what is here meant by the chiefs of “Western Andalus” it is not easy to say, the Moorish kingdom being then too circumscribed to admit of such division. The author perhaps means those districts to the west of Malaga which were then called Algarbia or western; as those to the east were called Axarquia or eastern.

18 Probably the castle of Moclin, before which the Christians, commanded by the Count of Cabra, suffered a signal defeat. See Prescott, loco citato, chap. xi.

19 The word here used is الات — which, added to the adjective العربية means ‘war engines.’

20 البيرة — probably Vera, unless it be written الترة—in which case it would be Illora, a town also taken about this time.

21 Some copies read مكلين—This town, which was very well fortified, was called by the Moors Durkah Gharmittah, or the shield of Granada.

22 Mont-ferid, a corruption from Monte frigido, is Montefrio, not far from Illora. The town, called above Columbera, is Colomera.

23 —written صورة Sahrah in some copies. Bernaldez, in his manuscript chronicle of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain, mentions a town called Sagra, which was taken about this time. Marmol, Rebellion, &c., fo. 15, verso, calls it Zara.

24 Thus written حصن البشناث—but the name of the place has nowhere been preserved.
26 This was Abú 'Abdillah Az-zaghal, who, hearing of his cousin's proclamation in Granada, had retired to Guadix, where he assumed the title of Sáhib (prince or lord). His cousin's name being also Abú 'Abdillah Mohamned, they have frequently been confounded by the Christian chroniclers. The latter, however, is more generally known as Boabdil, a corruption from Abú 'Abdillah, or el Rey chico (the little king), to distinguish him from his uncle Az-zaghal. Marmol (Rebellion, &c., fo. 15) says that his people gave him the surname of Zogybi, that is, the unfortunate. He appears also to have assumed, upon his accession to the throne, the title of Al-kádir-billah. See Mariana, Hist. Gen. de España, lib. xxv. cap. ii.

Here follows in the original manuscript, but not in the abridgement, a long risále後 or epistle, written partly in prose and partly in verse, by Abú 'Abdillah Mohamned Ibn 'Abdillah Al-'arabí Al-'okayli, the secretary of Boabdil (Abú 'Abdillah), the last King of Granada, and addressed, in his master's name, to the Sheikh [Sa'id] Al-watasí, Sultán of Fez, and founder of the dynasty of the Bení Al-watás. The risáleh, entitled الموارض والعاطر الأئناس في النسول إلى البولي الإلعام سلطان فاس (the gardens of odoriferous flowers, or the message to the Lord and Imán the Sultán of Fez), is written in that highly figurative style so much to the taste of the Arabs, and relates the last events of the war of Granada and the taking of that capital by Ferdinand; it begins thus:

"O Lord of kings! the kings of the Arabs and foreigners; thou art a talisman to thy equals, whom thou preservest from injury and shame.
"To thee we run for assistance; for thou art the refuge of those whom Fortune assails with her vindictive blows.
"In Allah's name thou pronouncest sentence, except on cases to him reserved; and who can "complain of thy justice?"

After the above poetical composition, which consists of several hundred verses intermixed with rhymed prose, begins the second part of the work, which, as I have stated in the Preface (p. xiv.), is also divided into eight books, and contains the biography of the celebrated Wizir Abú 'Abdillah Mohamned Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Sa'id Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Sa'id Ibn 'Ali Ibn Ahmed As-salmání Al-lúshí, better known by the surname of Ibnu-l-khattib, and the honourable appellation of Lisánu-d-dín or "tongue of the faith."

Book the first treats of his birth and ancestors. Ibnu-l-khattib was a native of Granada, but his ancestors were originally from Cordova, where they lived in considerable affluence. Having taken an active part in the rebellion of the southern suburb of Cordova against Al-hakem I. in A. H. 202 (A. D. 818), they were obliged, like thousands of other families, to seek shelter elsewhere, and retire to Toledo, where they resided until the occupation of that city by Alfonso VI. of Leon in A. H. 478 (A. D. 1085). From Toledo the ancestors of Ibnu-l-khattib withdrew to the districts inhabited by Moslems, and fixed their residence in various parts of the kingdom of Granada and Jaen. One of them, named 'Abdu-r-rahmán, became Kádi of a district called Beghah, in the province of Jaen; another, named Sa'id, took up his abode in Lúshah (Loxa), and was appointed Khattib or preacher to its mosque. From this Sa'id are descended the Bení Al-khattib of Loxa. Sa'id had a son named 'Abdulrahman, who was killed at the battle of Tarifa, on Monday, the 7th of Jumáda i. of the year 741, and who was the father of Lisánu-d-dín.
NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

Book the second treats of his education and political career, the offices he filled, &c.

Book the third, of his masters and the learned men whom he met in his travels, and from whom he derived his valuable and varied information in the several departments of science.

Book the fourth, of the perorations which he made on public occasions, and of the epistles which he addressed in the name of his master to the Kings of Eastern and Western Africa.

Book the fifth—extracts from his prose works as well as from his poems.

Book the sixth, of the works which he wrote on various subjects.

Book the seventh, of his disciples. These were, Ibn Zomrok, ابی زمرک, Ibn Zomrok, author of a commentary upon the نیکه ابن سینا (Al-fiyah of Ibn Sína or Avicenna); Abú Bekr Ibn Jazzí-l-kelbí, son of Abú-l-kásim Ibn Jazzí-l-kelbí, who had been one of Ibnu-l-khattíb’s preceptors; Abú ‘Abdillah Ash-sheríshí; Abú Mohammed Ibn ’Attiyah Ibn Yahya Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Taihah Al-moháríbí; Ahmed Ibn Suleymán Ibn Farkún, a celebrated poet, and others.

Book the eighth, of his sons. Ibnu-l-khattíb left three sons: ’Abdullah, Mohammed, and Abú-l-hasan 'Ali. The eldest, ’Abdullah, filled some office of trust under his father, whom he followed to Africa; he was a good poet, and left several works in prose and verse: he was born at Granada, on Saturday the 17th of Safar of the year 743. Mohammed gave himself up to devotion, and retired to a záwiyah or cell, where he died.
Appendix.

A.

Extracts from the historical work entitled "Traditions of Commandment and Government," relating to the murder of 'Abdu-l-'aziz. See vol. i. App. E. p. 1. et seq.

How 'Abdu-l-'aziz, son of Mûsa Ibn Nosseyr, was put to death in Andalus by order of the Khalîf Suleyman.

The historian says,—And they relate, on the authority of Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, that Mûsa remained at the court of Suleymán, imploring his forgiveness, until that Sultán granted him a complete pardon, which he also extended to his two sons, 'Abdullah and 'Abdu-l-'aziz; suffering the former to retain the government of Eastern Africa, Tangiers, and Sûs, and the latter that of Andalus, as previously agreed between him and Mûsa. However, when 'Abdu-l-'aziz heard of Suleyman's treatment of his father, he began to speak slightingly of his sovereign, and showed on every occasion his resentment of the injuries inflicted on him. This being reported to Suleymán, that Sultán conceived fears that 'Abdu-l-'aziz might shake off his allegiance and revolt against him. He therefore wrote to Habîb Ibn Abî 'Obeydah, Ibn Wa'lâh At-temîmî, Sa'id Ibn Othmán Ibn Yásir, 'Amru Ibn Mûmelah Al-yahssobî, 'Omar Ibn Kethîr, and 'Omar Ibn Sharâbib, all of whom were superior officers in the African army, telling them what he had heard respecting 'Abdu-l-'aziz, and how he had been told of his meditating a revolt. He likewise apprised them how he had written to 'Abdullah Ibn Mûsa, commanding him to send every one of them to 'Abdu-l-'azîz in Andalus, and telling him not to wonder if he thus deprived him of the best officers in his army, as they were very much wanted on the opposite land, where there were more enemies to encounter. At the same time, Suleymání issued to each of the above-mentioned individuals secret instructions commanding 'Abdu-l-'azîz to be put to death, and promising that whoever would execute the deed should be appointed his successor. To 'Abdullah he wrote in these terms: "The Commander of the Faithful perceives that thy brother, 'Abdu-l-'azîz, has in front of him an enemy against whom all possible courage and energy must needs be displayed. He has inquired, and he has been told that thou hast under thy orders many men of that description, such as so and so, and so and so; send them all to thy brother, 'Abdu-l-'azîz, in Andalus, that he may employ them against the common enemy."
APPENDIX.

To 'Abdu-l-'azíz, moreover, he wrote as follows: "The Commander of the Faithful has been informed of the class of enemies thou hast to contend with, and the want in which thou art of men of courage and experience: knowing, therefore, that there are now in Eastern Africa, at the orders of thy brother 'Abdullah, some men of that description, he has written to him to dispatch them to thee, that thou mayst give them command in thy armies, and appoint them to posts of trust near thy person or on the frontiers." Another letter was then issued to the conspirators, saying, "I have sent you written orders enjoining the people of Andalus to obey you in all cases, and absolving you from the death of 'Abdu-l-'azíz. These letters you are to read, wherever you may be, to all the Moslems under your orders, that they may all know and understand what my wishes and commands are; and when you have made yourselves a party sufficiently strong among the soldiers, you shall rise and put to death 'Abdu-l-'azíz, if such be the will of God, and then return."

When 'Abdullah, the governor of Eastern Africa, received the above letter from the Khalif, he hastened to comply with his orders, and immediately prepared for the departure for Andalus of the men named in the dispatch, who had no sooner arrived and presented their credentials to 'Abdu-l-'azíz, than they were most kindly received and hospitably entertained by that governor, who told them to choose the provinces of his government wherein they preferred to settle, or the frontiers whereon they wished to be employed. The conspirators then held counsel together, when one of them rose and said, "If the orders of the Commander of the Faithful are to be fulfilled, you cannot accept of the proposition of 'Abdu-l-'azíz; for if each of you go first to the station allotted to him, and then return here, I apprehend you will never be able to accomplish what is required from you: the army is mostly in his favour; he has plenty of money; great power, and numerous mulidis and adherents attached to his person. I think our best plan is to remain here, and get rid of him secretly; there are many men in this place (Seville), who, were they to lend a hand to this enterprise, would insure its success: one is Ayúb Ibim Habíb, the son of Músa's sister; I advise you to see him, and communicate to him the Khalif's instructions." This plan being agreed upon as the most expedient, the delegates went to see Ayúb, and offered him, in the Khalif's name, the government of Andalus if he would assist them in their undertaking. Ayúb having consented to kill 'Abdu-l-'azíz on this condition, they promised him their allegiance in case of success. The delegates went next to 'Abdullah Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-gháfekí, who was the most eminent and most conspicuous person in the army, by his talents, his generosity, and his virtues: having read in his presence the letters of Suleymán, they discovered to him all their plans: 'Abdullah, however, would not be a party to the murder of 'Abdu-l-'azíz; on the contrary, he said to them, "You know that the hand of Músa has conferred benefits on every one of you, great or small. If the Commander of the Faithful has been informed as you represent, he has been told a lie. 'Abdu-l-'azíz has never raised his hand in disobedience to his master, nor dreamt of revolting against him. The Khalif, at the distance he is, cannot see whether 'Abdu-l-'azíz is guilty or innocent of the crime imputed to him; but you can, and it is for you to decide whether he deserves death, or not. Follow my advice; give up your purpose, and write to the Khalif that you cannot put his orders into execution."
The delegates, however, disregarded his words for the love of the Sultán, and went about their business. Some time afterwards, they again met together and decided upon his death, which they accomplished in the following manner. They stood at the gate of his palace, waiting till he should go to the mosque to attend morning prayers. 'Abdu-l-azíz left his palace at dawn of day, bent his steps towards the mosque, entered the kiblkh, and began to read the Korán. Scarcely had he finished reading the introductory chapter, when, lo! a great noise and confusion was suddenly heard, and one of the conspirators, Ibn Abi 'Obeydah (Habíb), rushed upon 'Abdu-l-azíz and struck him a blow, which, however, took no effect. The service was interrupted; and 'Abdu-l-azíz, leaving the kiblkh where he was, took refuge in the body of the mosque: he was followed thither by Ibn Wálah At-temíní, who killed him. When the news of the death of 'Abdu-l-azíz spread through the city, the inhabitants were greatly astonished and displeased: the conspirators then produced the letters and the orders received from the Khalíf Suleyman, but to no purpose; the people would not attend to them, and they chose 'Abdulláh Ibn 'Abdí-r-rahmán Al-gháfekí to be his successor. In the meantime Habíb Ibn Abi 'Obeydah and his comrades marched to Damascus with the head of 'Abdu-l-azíz, son of Músá. But we have reached the end of our narrative. God be praised for it!

_How the head of 'Abdu-l-azíz was brought to Suleyman._

The author of the tradition says,—When Suleyman thought that the messengers sent by him to Andalus had reached their destination, and executed his commands, he proceeded to remove 'Abdulláh Ibn Músá from his government of Eastern Africa, Sús, and Tangiers. This took place towards the end of the year 98 of the Hijra, in the month of Dhi-l-hajjah (July or August, a.d. 717). Habíb and his companions then came to Damascus, and placed the head of 'Abdu-l-azíz before the Khalíf Suleyman, who sent immediately for Músá. Having appeared in his presence, and being made to sit behind the people, Suleyman pointed to the head, and said to Músá, “Dost thou know whose head that is?”—“Yes,” answered Músá, “I do; that is the head of my son 'Abdu-l-azíz.” The messengers then rose and informed the Khalíf of what they had done in Andalus for the execution of his orders. Hearing which, Músá got up, and, after praising God, said, “O Commander of the Faithful! thou art revenged; the head of 'Abdu-l-azíz Ibn Músá (may God show him mercy!) is before thee, but by the life of God there never was a Moslem who less deserved such unjust treatment; for he passed his days in fasting, and his nights in prayer; no man ever more loved his God, or his messenger Mohammed; no man ever performed greater deeds to serve the cause of the Almighty, or was more firm in his obedience to thee, or showed a milder disposition towards the men under his orders. 'Abdu-l-azíz is no more; (may God forgive him his sins!) for, by Allah! he was neither avaricious of life, nor fearful of death. None of thy predecessors,—neither 'Abdu-l-malek, nor 'Abdu-l-azíz, nor even Al walid,—would have treated him thus, or reduced him to this plight. Thou even wouldst never have done what God saw thee do with him, had there been any justice in thee. They were all exceedingly pleased and satisfied with him, well knowing his honesty and his virtues; and were therefore incapable of behaving thus to him merely upon the strength of
APPENDIX.

"false reports." Suleymán then said, "Thou liest, O Músa! thy son, 'Abdu-l-'azíz, was "not as thou representest him; on the contrary, he was impious and forgetful of his religion; "he was the persecutor of the Moslems, and the sworn enemy of his sovereign, the Com- "mander of the Faithful. Such was thy son, O foolish and doting man! not as "thou describest him." Músa then replied, "By Allah! I am no dotard, nor would I "knowingly deviate from truth, wert thou to answer every one of my words with the blows of "death. I speak as the honest slave ought to speak to his master, with submission and "respect, bearing the insult without retorting it; but I place my confidence in God, whose "help I implore, and beseech——. Grant me his head, O Commander of the Faithful! that "I may shut the lids of his eyes." And Suleymán said to him, "Thou mayst take it." Músa then rose from his seat, and, taking the head of his son 'Abdu-l-'azíz, placed it in a corner of the tunic he had on; he then folded it twice backwards, in doing which the other end of his vest came off his shoulders. Músa was going out of the room in this manner, without either noticing or trying to repair the disorder in his dress, when Kháled Ibnu-r-rayán, having noticed it, came up to him and said, "Take up that garment of thine, O son of Nosseyr!" but Músa, turning round towards him, replied (ironically) in these words,—"This is no doubt a proof of the great love thou bearest to me, O Kháled!" Suleymán then interfered, and said to the latter, "Let Músa alone; he has already been "sufficiently punished;" and when Músa left the room he added, "That old man's spirit is "still unbroken." They say, that as Músa was quitting the palace he met Habíb Ibn Abí 'Obeydáli, to whom he addressed abusive words before all present, disclosing at the same time some shameful circumstances respecting his family, unknown to all but himself, and which cast no small discredit upon the person of that officer.

Some time after these events, Suleymán having made inquiries respecting the case of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, found out that all the reports respecting him were unfounded, and that 'Abdu-l- 'azíz had never swerved from his obedience, nor done any other reprehensible act; on the contrary, he had been throughout his life a model of virtue. When the Khalif saw this he repented of what he had done, and, being angry with Habíb and the other messengers, he caused them to be banished the capital, and entirely disregarded their petitions. He then remitted to Músa the payment of the remainder of the fine.

An account of the governors of Andalus after Músa and his son 'Abdu-l-'azíz.

The author says,—And they relate that 'Abdu-l-'azíz Ibn Músa governed Andalus one year after the departure of his father, after which he was put to death, as before said, by the order of the Khalif Suleymán. He was succeeded by Ayúb Ibn Habíb Al-lakhmí, who governed six months; then came Al-horr Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ath-thakefi, for three years. After him, Assanah Ibn Málík Al-khauilání, who ruled for three years and a half; then 'Anbasah (Ibn Soháym Al-kelbí), two years and nine months. After him, Yahya Ibn Salmah, one year and three months. After him, Hodeyfah Ibnu-l-ahwass, six months. After him, 'Othmán Ibn Abí Nes'ah Al-khath'ámi, six months. After him, Al-haytham Ibn 'Obeyd, one year and two months. Then 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abdillah Al-gháfekí, four years. Then 'Abdu-l-malek
APPENDIX.

Ibn Kattan Al-korashi, four years. Then 'Okbah Ibn Hejáj (As-seluli), five years and three months. Then 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan, for the second time, one year. After him, Ballh (Balj) Ibn Beshr Al-kusheyri, six months. Then Tha'lebah Ibn Selámah, five months. Then Abú-l-khattár Ibn Dherár Al-kelbi, three years. Then Thuábah Ibn Salmah, one year and one month. Then came the overthrow of the dynasty of the Bení Umeyyah in the East, when the people of Andalus chose for their commander Yúsuf Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-korashi Al-fehri, without any order or sealed letters from the Khalif to that effect. Yúsuf governed Andalus for ten years, until the arrival of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Mua'wiyyah, son of Hishám, son of 'Abdu-l-malek, son of Merwán, son of Abú-l-'ássi, son of Umeyyah, son of 'Abdu-sh-shems, son of 'Abdu-Menáf, who took the command of the country out of his hands.

How the massacre of the Bení Umeyyah came to pass.

The author says,—And they relate that after the death of Merwán, the last Khalif of the house of Umeyyah, As-séffah gave orders to his lieutenants in Syria and Egypt to look for the surviving members of that family, and put them to death. Accordingly, 'Abdullah Ibn 'Ali, who was governor of Philistín (Palestine), began to give out that his intentions were good, and that he came to pardon the Bení Umeyyah in the Khalif's name, and to restore them to the possession of all their property and honours. On the faith of these promises, about eighty-three of the most illustrious and principal members of that unfortunate family, amongst whom were 'Abdu-l-wáhed Ibn Suleymán Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, Yahya Ibn Mu'awiyah, Abán Ibn 'Abdi-l-'áziz, and 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'awiyah Ibn Hishám, surrendered themselves. It happened, however, that the latter, who became afterwards king of Andalus, met on his way to the governor's a man whom he had patronised and esteemed in former times, and who, stopping him, addressed him in the following words: “Obey me to-day, and oppose me if thou wilt on the day of judgment.” 'Abdu-r-rahmán replied, “In what am I to obey thee?”—“Away! away!” said the man; “fly to the West, where a kingdom awaits thee; for all this is a treason prepared by As-séffah, who wishes to rid himself in one blow of all the Bení Umeyyah.”—“How can that be?” replied 'Abdu-r-rahmán, “when the governor has received his letters commanding him to assemble us, to restore us our property, and to grant us besides plentiful pensions and bounteous gifts?” —“Do not be led away by these signs of peace and pardon,” said the man; “for, believe me, never will the Bení 'Abbás consider themselves fully in possession of the throne, never will they deem themselves secure, as long as the eyes of one of the Bení Umeyyah remain open.”—“And what shall I get,” replied 'Abdu-r-rahmán, “by following thy advice?”—“Uncover thy back, that I may see thy shoulders; for, if I am not mistaken, thou art the man for whom the kingdom of Andalus is destined.” And on 'Abdu-r-rahmán uncovering his shoulders, as he was desired, the man saw on one of them the mark alluded to in the Kitáb-l-hodhthán (the book of the future events), which was an immense black mole, rising on his back. “Away! away!” repeated the man; “go to the West, and I will accompany thee part of the way: I have twenty thousand dinárs; I will bring them to this spot, and thou shalt depart.”—“Who gave thee that money?” inquired 'Abdu-r-rahmán. “Thy uncle,
"Moslemah Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek," answered the man. Upon which the prince, starting, said, "By Allah! thou sayst the truth, man; for I recollect now, that when I was a child, my uncle, Moslemah, who on my father's death took care of my infancy, one day uncovered my shoulders, and saw the mark thou speakest of, when he began to weep profusely. "We were then, my uncle and I, before my grandfather, the Khalif Hishám, who no sooner saw my uncle's sudden affliction, than he inquired the cause of it." Moslemah then said, "O Commander of the Faithful! this orphan will live to be king of the West, after the overthrow of our empire in the East."—"And why shouldst thou weep, "O Abú Saíd!" replied my grandfather. "I do not weep on account of that; but, by Allah! I weep because of the women and children of the Bení Umeyyah, whose gold and silver necklaces shall be converted into so many iron collars, whose sweet perfumes, aromatic woods, and odoriferous ointments, shall make room for nauseous smells and the coarsest brush-wood. But God is over all things: after prosperity and glory, humiliation and misfortune generally succeed." . . . . . . . . . . . .

[The author goes on to relate the massacre of the Bení Umeyyah, ninety of whom were barbarously butchered after a banquet to which they had been invited by the governor.]

APPENDIX B.


Reign of Mohammed, son of Hishám, surnamed Al-muhdí.

This Mohammed, who was the son of Hishám, son of 'Abdu-l-jabbár, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir, rose against Hishám, son of Al-hakem, and deposed him in the month of Jumáda II. of the year 399 (Feb. A.D. 1009), assuming the title of Al-muhdí (the directed). He continued thus in undisturbed possession of the empire till Thursday the fifth of Shawwáil of the same year (June 2, A.D. 1009), when Hishám, son of Suleyman, son of [Abdu-r-rahmán] An-násir, revolted against him in Cordova with the Berbers. After fighting in the streets of the city the remainder of that day, the whole of the night, and part of the next morning, the inhabitants took the part of Mohammed, and the Berbers were routed and

1 For an account of this author and his various works, see Vol. i. Preface, p. xx. and pp. 193, 473. Deceived by the similarity of the title and the general appearance of the manuscript, I there hazarded the conjecture that Al-homaydi's work was an abridgment of a voluminous history of Mohammedan Spain, which Abú Merwán Ibn Hayyán wrote under the title of Al-muktabis fi Târikhi rejâli-l-andalus; but, although the facts of this latter work having been composed at least thirty years before the former, and of Al-homaydi being a disciple of Ibnu Hayyán, seemed to favour the supposition, I have, upon closer investigation, discovered that the work of Al-homaydi, from which the following extracts are taken, has nothing in common with the more voluminous history written by the celebrated Abú Merwán Hayyán Ibn Khalif Ibn Huseyn Ibn Hayyán, of Cordova.
compelled to leave the city. Hishám was, moreover, made a prisoner, and brought to the presence of Mohammed, who beheaded him with his own hand.

After this defeat the Berbers, having united their council, appointed a nephew of the deceased, whose name was Suleymán, to command over them. Suleymán was the son of Al-hakem, son of Suleymán, son of [‘Abdu-r-rahmán] An-násir. Immediately after his appointment he retired with the Berbers into the Thagher, whence, reinforced with Christian troops, he soon after returned to Cordova, and laid siege to it. On the appearance of the Berbers before the walls, part of the garrison and the inhabitants sallied out against the enemy; but they were unsuccessful, and repulsed with the loss of upwards of twenty thousand of their number. This disastrous battle, which was fought near a mountain there called Kantish,² has become celebrated in history for the number of eminent men,—poets, historians, theologians, Imáms, Almuezzins, and others,—who perished in it. Mohammed Ibn Hishám Al-muhdi, however, escaped from the swords of the Berbers, and, after remaining a few days in concealment, succeeded in reaching Toledo, as the whole of the Thaghers,³ from Tortosa down to Lisbon, had remained faithful to him and obeyed his sway. Having therefore collected an army in those provinces, and obtained the assistance of the Franks, Al-muhdi returned with them to Cordova. Suleymán sallied out against him with his Berbers; and the two hosts having met at a spot, some ten miles from Cordova, known as the ’Akbatu-l-bakar (the defile of the cows), Suleymán and the Berbers were completely defeated and put to rout. Al-muhdi, moreover, marched upon Cordova, and took possession of it. He then went out in pursuit of the Berbers, who had marched in the direction of Algesiras. Having overtaken them close to the river Aro⁴ (Guadiaro), Mohammed gave them battle. He was however defeated, and compelled to fall back upon Cordova; where, no sooner had he arrived, than some of his own slaves, with Wádeh the Scavonian at their head, fell suddenly upon him and put him to death, appointing in his stead Hishám Al-muyyed, whom they brought out (of his concealment), as elsewhere related. The reign of Mohammed Ibn Hishám had lasted ten months, counting from the day of his usurpation till that of his death, and including also the six months that his rival Suleymán was in possession of Cordova, whilst he himself was in the Thagher. His appellative surname was Abú-l-walíd. His mother’s name was Muznah. He left one son named 'Obeydullah, who died without posterity. Al-muhdi was born in the year 366 (beginning Aug. 29, A. D. 976).

Reign of Suleymán Ibn Al-hakem Al-musta’in.

Suleymán Ibn Al-hakem rose, as related, on Friday the 6th of Shawwál of the year 399 (September 4, A. D. 1008), when he assumed the appellation of Al-musta’in-billah (he who beseeches the help of God). After this he entered Cordova, as above related, in the month of Rabí’ II. of the year 400 (November or December, A. D. 1009), when, in addition to that of Al-musta’in, he took the surname of Adh-dháfir bihaul-illah (the victorious by

² Namely, the upper, the lower, and the central. See vol. i. p. 315.
³ See vol. i. p. 315.
the will of God). He then left Cordova in Shawwal of the year 400 (May or June, A.D. 1010), and lost, as before stated, the battle of Jebal-kantúbah. From that time, however, Suleymán and his Berbers never ceased marching through the provinces of Andalus, laying waste the fields, destroying and plundering the cities and the villages, insulting the women, putting the men to the sword, and committing all sorts of atrocities, until they gained possession of Cordova a second time, at the beginning of Shawwal of the year 403 (April, A.D. 1013).

There were among the officers of Suleymán’s army two men of the posterity of Al-hasan Ibn 'Alí Ibn Abí Talíb; their names were Al-kásim and 'Alí, and both were the sons of Hamúd, son of Maymún, son of Ahmed, son of 'Alí, son of 'Obeydullah, son of 'Omar, son of Idrís, son of 'Abdullah, son of Al-hasan (son of Al-hasan), son of 'Alí, son of Abí Talíb: (may God be propitious to them all!). On his first accession to power, Suleymán had given them the command of the African troops. He had afterwards appointed Al-kásim, the eldest, to the government of Jezíratu-l-khadhrá (Algesiras), and had given to 'Alí that of Ceuta and Tangiers. Algesiras is a sea-port in the strait, known as the Bahrú-z-zókák (the narrow sea), where the distance from one shore to another is no more than twelve miles. But to return.

When Suleymán, with his Berbers, made his second entry into Cordova, the slaves spread over the country and gained possession of some principal cities, where they fortified themselves. In order to reduce them, Suleymán sent an army at the orders of 'Alí Ibn Hamúd, before mentioned, who, being an ambitious man, and thinking the opportunity a favourable one, conceived the project of making himself the master of Andalus. He accordingly entered into a secret correspondence with the very slaves against whom he was sent, and made them believe that whilst Hishám Ibn Al-hakem was besieged in Cordova, that Khalíf had written to him, appointing him his successor to the throne in case he should be put to death by Suleymán. Deceived by these declarations, the slaves answered his call, and proclaimed him as sovereign of Andalus. 'Alí then sailed from Ceuta and landed at Malaga, the governor of which, 'A'mír Ibn Fátúh Al-fáyíkí, who was a freed slave of Fáyik, a freed man of Al-hakem Al-mustanser, acknowledged his right to the empire, and gave him entrance into the city, where 'Alí Ibn Hamúd was immediately proclaimed by the troops and the inhabitants. Some time afterwards, however, 'Alí expelled 'A'mír Ibn Fátúh, and remained sole master of Malaga. 'Alí then marched to Cordova with the Berbers who followed his banners, and the whole of the slaves. He was met by Mohammed, the son of Suleymán, who, by his father’s orders, sallied out of Cordova at the head of the Berber troops: Mohammed, however, was defeated; and 'Alí having gained possession of Cordova, Suleymán was seized and put to death by the usurper, who beheaded him with his own hand, on a Sunday, nine days before the end of Moharram of the year 407 (June 30, A.D. 1016). 'Alí put also to death on the same day Al-hakem [Ibn Suleymán] Ibn An-násir, Suleymán’s father, an old man of seventy-two years of age. Suleymán had reigned three years, three months, and a few days, counting from the day he entered Cordova to the time of his death. He had, however, been previously

---

5 عربى: The author no doubt means Khayrán, Mujáhid, Zohár, and others who had been slaves of the Bení Umeyyah, and once formed part of the Sclavonian guard.
in possession of that capital for six months; so that if we calculate the duration of his reign since the day he rose with the Berbers until he was killed, we shall find it seven years, three months, and some days. By the death of Suleymán the rule of the Bení Umeyyah was momentarily suspended, as well as the mention of their names from the pulpits of the mosques, in the whole of Andalus, until it was afterwards restored to its primitive state, as we shall hereafter relate. Suleymán’s mother was called Dhab’yah. He was born in the year 354 (beginning January 6, A.D. 965). He left three sons; Mohammed, who afterwards filled the throne of Andalus, but died without issue; Al-walíd, and Moslemah. Suleymán was a friend to poets and literary men, and could write very fine verses himself.


On his accession to the Khalifate, ’Alí assumed the surname of An-násir (the defender). Soon after this, however, the slaves who had proclaimed him resisted his authority, and appointed in his room ’Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed Ibn ’Abdi-l-malek Ibn ’Abdi-r-rahmán An-násir, to whom they gave the honorary surname of Al-murtadhi (the accepted), marching with him to Granada, one of the cities which, as above stated, had fallen into the hands of the Berbers. ’Abdu-r-rahmán’s elevation did not last long; for the same people who had raised him to power, perceiving his determination to punish all infractions of the law and to re-establish discipline, and fearing his vigour and justice, repented of what they had done, and decided upon deserting his cause. They accordingly abandoned him, and soon after hired some assassins, who put him to death. In the mean while ’Alí Ibn Hamúd remained in Cordova, in full possession of the empire, which he held for two years all but two months, until he was suffocated in the bath by some of his Slavonian eunuchs. This happened in the year 408 (beginning May 29, A.D. 1017). ’Alí left two sons, Yahya and Idrís.

Reign of Al-kásim Ibn Hamúd, surnamed Al-mámún.

’Alí was succeeded by his brother, Al-kásim Ibn Hamúd, who was his elder by ten years. On his accession to power, Al-kásim took the surname of Al-mámún: he was of mild disposition, and the people enjoyed security under his rule. It has been said of him that he was a Shiite; but this report is unfounded, since he never showed it in any of his acts; nor did he or any of the other members of his family, who held empire in Andalus, ever countenance by their practice any other sect but the orthodox one. In this way Al-kásim retained possession of the empire until the month of Rabi’ i. of the year 412 (June or July, A.D. 1021), when his nephew, Yahya Ibn ’Alí Ibn Hamúd, rose against him in Malaga. When the news of this rising reached him, Al-kásim abandoned his capital without a battle, and took refuge in Seville. His nephew then left Malaga at the head of his army, and marched upon Cordova, of which city he took possession without resistance. Having assumed the

6 Here follow in the original some extracts from poems written by Suleymán, which I have not translated.
APPENDIX.

title of Khalif, Yahya took upon the occasion the surname of Al-mu’tali, and remained in possession of the empire, until Al-kásim, having re-established his influence, and regained the affections of the Berbers, marched with them to Cordova, and entered that capital in the year 413 (beginning April 5, A.D. 1022), his nephew, Yahya Ibn ’Alí, betaking himself to Malaga.

Al-kásim remained some months at Cordova, during which time his authority was weakened and his empire subverted by his enemies. First, his nephew, Yahya, took Algesiras, which was Al-kásim’s strong-hold, and where he kept his women and his treasures. Then another nephew of his, named Idríṣ Ibn ’Alí, took possession of Ceuta, close to Tangiers, a city which Al-kásim always kept well garrisoned and provided with every warlike store, that he might retire to it in case he should be obliged to quit Andalus. Lastly, a portion of the inhabitants of Cordova having revolted against him, they shut the gates of the city, and prepared for the defence. Al-kásim, who was master of the suburbs, besieged them for upwards of fifty days in the mosque of Abú ’Othmán, where they had fortified themselves, until, having made a sally, the Berbers took to flight, and abandoned the suburbs in Sha’bán of the year 414 (Oct. or Nov. A.D. 1023), each tribe of the Berbers betaking themselves to those towns whereof their brethren were the masters. As for Al-kásim, he retired to Seville, where were his two sons, Mohammed and Al-hasan; but when the people of that place heard of his defeat, and of his quitting Cordova and coming to them, they shut the gates of their city, expelled his two sons as well as the Berbers who were with them, and appointed three of the principal and most illustrious inhabitants of the place to command over them, and administer the affairs of the community. These were the Kádí Abú-l-kásim Mohammed Ibn Isma’il Ibn ’Abbád Al-lakhmí, Mohammed Ibn Al-alehání, and Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-hasan Al-zubeydí, who held the government of Seville conjointly for some days, sharing among themselves the duties of the administration until the Kádí Abú-l-kásim Ibn ’Abbád made himself sole ruler, and caused his former partners in power to resume the rank of subjects.

In the mean time Al-kásim had taken refuge in Sherish (Xerez), a city which remained faithful to him. When his nephew, Yahya, heard of his being there, he marched in pursuit of him and arrived before Xerez, which he besieged. Al-kásim defended himself valiantly for some time; but at last the Berbers who composed the garrison, being tired of the siege, held a council together, and decided upon deserting his cause and delivering him into the hands of his nephew, which they did; Yahya becoming thereby the sole ruler of the empire, and the only chief of the Berbers. Al-kásim remained a prisoner in the hands of Yahya, and, after the death of Yahya, in those of his brother Idríṣ, until Idríṣ himself died, when Al-kásim was soon after strangled in prison in the year 431 (beginning Sept. 22, A.D. 1039). The body of Al-kásim was given up to his son Mohammed, who ruled in Algesiras, and who had him honourably buried there. His reign had lasted seven years, counting from the day in which he took possession of the Khalifate in Cordova, to that in which he fell a prisoner into the hands of his nephew Yahya. He remained in prison sixteen years during the reigns of his two nephews, until he was put to death, as above related, at the beginning of the year 431 (beginning Sept. 22, A.D. 1039), he being then eighty years
old. Al-kásim left two sons, whom he had by one of his wives named Amírah,8 who was the daughter of Al-hasan Ibn Kanún Ibn Ibráhím Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-kásim Ibn Idrís Ibn Idrís Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Al-hasan Ibn 'Ali Ibn Abí Talib. One was named Mohammed, the other Al-hasan.

Reign of Yahya Ibn 'Ali, surnamed Al-mu'tali.

Historians are at variance respecting the appellative of this Sultán; some calling him Abú Is'hák, others Abú Mohammed. His mother's name was Lebúnah, and she was the daughter of Mohammed Ibn Al-hasan Ibn Al-kásim, better known under the surname of Kanún,9 who was the son of Ibráhím Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-kásim, &c. This Al-hasan Ibn Kanún was one of the greatest kings of the family of Hasan, and one of the bravest and most dreaded by his subjects.

Yahya assumed the title of Khalif at Cordova in the year 413 (beginning April 15, A. D. 1022), as above related. After this he fled to Malaga in the year 414 (beginning March 25, A. D. 1023). He continued there, until in the year 416 (beginning March 3, A. D. 1025) some ill-intentioned people attempted to re-establish his authority in Cordova, and succeeded in their undertaking. But Yahya, who had already experienced how little he could rely upon the fidelity of the Cordovans, would not then enter that capital, and appointed 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Ittáf Al-yaféreni to govern in his name. Things remained in this state the rest of the year 416 and all 417 (beginning Feb. 21, A. D. 1026). After this the people of Cordova expelled Ibn 'Ittáf, and appointed a descendant of the house of Umeyyah to be their ruler. Yahya, however, continued going to and fro with his army, and laying waste the country, until the greater part of the Berbers agreed to acknowledge his authority, and gave him possession of the fortresses, castles, and cities which they held in their hands. By these means the power of Yahya increased, and he went to Carmona with the intention of making war against Ibnu 'Abbád, and laying siege to Seville, which city he was anxious to take. Having one day gone out of Carmona to a lofty mountain in the neighbourhood, for the purpose of reconnoitering, he fell into an ambush prepared by his enemy, and was put to death. This happened on a Sunday, the seventh day of Moharram of the year 427 (Nov. 11, A. D. 1035). Yahya left two sons, Al-hasan and Idrís, whom he had by one of his wives.

Reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Hishám Al-mustadh'her.

When, in the year 414, Al-kásim and the Berbers were defeated by the inhabitants of Cordova, and obliged to quit that capital, as above related, the people held counsel together, and decided upon restoring the empire to the Bení Umeyyah. There were three descendants of that family residing in that capital at the time, namely: 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbar Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán An-násir, who was the brother of Mohammed Al-muhdi, former Sultán of Cordova; Suleymán, son of the above-mentioned Al-murtadhi,

8 Amírah
9 Kabín which Ibn Khaldún (fo. 99, verso) writes قرون.
who was killed in the territory of Granada; and Mohammed, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Hisháim Ibn Suleyán, he who rose against Al-muhdi Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán An-násir. The empire devolved upon 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who numbered the most votes; and he was, accordingly, proclaimed Khalif on the thirteenth day of Ramadhán of the year 414 (28th November, A.D. 1023), at the age of two-and-twenty, having been born in the month of Dhí-l-ka'dah of the year 392 (September or October, A.D. 1002). His mother's name was Gháyah. He used the appellative Abú-l-motref, and on his accession to power took the honorary surname of Al-mustakfi (he who implores the assistance of God). His reign, however, was not of long duration; for he had been but a short time in power, when Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn 'Obeydillah Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán An-násir revolted against him, with a party composed of the dregs of the population, and he was put to death three days before the end of Dhí-l-ka'dah of the same year 414 (10th February, A.D. 1024). 'Abdu-r-rahmán left no posterity. He was exceedingly fond of letters, very eloquent, and could write verses in a very tender strain. It is so stated by our master Abú Mohammed 'Alí Ibn Ahmed,10 who lived in his time, and was well acquainted with him.11

Reign of Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, surnamed Al-mustakfi.

'Abdu-r-rahmán was succeeded, as above related, by Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, who was forty-eight years of age at the time he took possession of the throne, having been born in the year 366 (beginning Aug. 29, A.D. 976). His appellative was Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán, and his mother's name Haurá. His father, 'Abdu-r-rahmán, had been put to death by Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir, at the beginning of the reign of Hisháim Al-muyyed, under the pretence that he was planning a revolt for the purpose of seizing on the empire. This Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán took the surname of Al-mustakfi, and governed for sixteen months and some days, until he was deposed in the year 415, the empire returning to the family of Yahya Ibn 'Ali Al-hasaní. Al-mustakfi was compelled to leave his capital in disguise, and take refuge in the Thagher. They say that when he reached a town called Shamunt,12 in the district of Medina-celi, he sat down to take some food. There happened to be with him at the time a man named 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed Ibn As-selím, of the posterity of Sa'id Ibn Al-mundhir, the celebrated rebel who rose during the reign of 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir. This man, being tired of wandering about in Al-mustakfi's company, decided to get rid of him. He took some poisonous herbs, which are very plentiful in that part of the country, and dressed him a fowl with them. No sooner had Al-mustakfi partaken of it than he died; when the man dug a hole, and buried him on the spot. His reign was one of continued troubles and agitation. He left no posterity.

10 This is Abú Mohammed 'Alí Ibn Ahmed Ibn Hazm, the author of the epistle on the literature of the Spanish Arabs, translated in the first volume of this work, pp. 168-199. He was the master of Al-homaydī, who quotes him repeatedly.

11 I have here omitted some uninteresting details.
Reign of Hishám Ibn Mohammed, surnamed Al-mu'tadd.

We have elsewhere related, that when, in the year 417 (beginning Feb. 21, A.D. 1026), Yahya Ibn 'Ali Al-hasaní was deprived of his power by a rebellion in Cordova, the people of that city agreed to restore the empire to the Bení Umeyyah. Their chief counsellor and support on this occasion was the Wizír Abú-l-hazm Jehwar Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Jehwar Ibn 'Obeydillah Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-ghamz Ibn Yahya Ibn 'Abdi-l-gháfır Ibn Abí 'Abdah. As all those who might have claimed a right to the empire, as descendants of that illustrious family, had either disappeared during the civil wars in Cordova, or were hid in the provinces, Jehwar and his friends wrote to the governors of the frontiers, and to all those who had usurped the royal authority in the provinces, acquainting them with their determination, and exhorting them to look out for the relics of the Bení Umeyyah, and to point out one who might fill the throne and restore it to its pristine glory and splendour. The people in the provinces agreed to this plan; and, after some time spent in searching for the princes of the house of Umeyyah, a great-grandson of 'Abdu-r-rahmán An-násir, named Abú Bekr Hishám Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán An-násir, was raised to the supreme power. They say that Hishám, who was a brother of Al-murtadhi, he who rose during the empire of 'Ali Ibn Hamúd, as above related, was residing at Al-bount (Alpuente), under the protection of Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Kasim, a noble chieftain, who had taken possession of that fortress. Immediately after his election, Hishám was proclaimed Khalif, and received the oath of allegiance of the people of Cordova in the month of Rabi' i. of the year 418 (April or May, A.D. 1027). He took on this occasion the surname of Al-mu'tadd-billah (he who is prepared in God). He was born in the year 364 (beginning Sept. 20, A.D. 974), and was Al-murtadhi's elder by four years. His mother's name was 'A'tita. The new Sultán, however, did not then enter Cordova, but remained in the Thagkers, where serious disturbances had arisen, the different chiefs and governors there waging war with each other. At last, after going backwards and forwards for three years all but two months, Hishám succeeded in adjusting their differences and quelling their dissensions; and he was thereby enabled to repair to Cordova, the capital of the empire, which he entered on the day of Mina, being the eighth day of Dhí-l-hajjah of the year 420 (17th Dec., A.D. 1029). Soon after, however, part of the army rose against Hishám and deposed him; when, after many events, which it would take us too long to relate, the dynasty of the Bení Umeyyah was for ever suppressed in Cordova. After the deposition of Hishám, Jehwar Ibn Mohammed, who had been the principal instrument of his elevation, gained possession of the supreme power. Jehwar had filled the charge of Wizír during the government of the Bení Abí 'A'mir. He had great expe-

---

13 I think this name is badly written in the MS., but I have not the means of correcting it. Conde (vol. i. p. 618) calls her "Oneiza."

14 So called because in this day the pilgrims who return from Mount 'Arafat to Mekka halt in the valley of Mina to perform their sacrifice.
Appendix.

rience in matters of government, and was besides endowed with much sagacity and a quick understanding. During the civil war he had taken no part whatever in public affairs, keeping aloof from all parties contending for power; but, when he saw the field open before him, and the occasion at hand, he dexterously seized it, and usurped the command. It must, however, be said of Jehwar, that though he administered the government and provided for the security of his capital; though he assumed in every respect all the authority of a supreme ruler, he took none of the insignia of the Khalifate, but ruled as none of his predecessors had done, declaring that he held the command until one more deserving of it, or having better titles to the empire, should make his appearance, when he would immediately resign all authority and power into his hands. He thus ordered that the palaces of the Beni Umeyyah should be kept in the same state as they had been under the regular government, and that the door-keepers, the servants and guards, should be stationed about the gates of them as in former times. He himself never inhabited them, but resided at his own private house in the city. The money arising from the collection of taxes, which formerly entered the royal coffers, he placed in the hands of public officers appointed for that purpose, and who were likewise charged with their distribution, he himself inspecting their accounts. He formed the tradespeople of Cordova into a sort of militia, and assigned to them a certain allowance, which was religiously paid out of the first sums collected in the treasury: he gave them arms, and formed them into various corps, which relieved each other in the guard of the city, going their rounds night and day about the shops, markets, and streets, so that, if any thing occurred, every man might be found at his post with his arms. He was in the habit of attending funerals and visiting the sick, imitating in every respect the conduct of the good Sultáns his predecessors: he, nevertheless, administered the affairs of the state as the other independent rulers of his day were in the habit of doing. So great was the confidence which the people placed in his justice, that Cordova was in his time like a sanctuary, and no man had any thing to fear from his enemies. This state of things lasted until Jehwar died, in Safar of the year 435 (Sept. or Oct., A.D. 1043). He was succeeded in command by his son, Abú-l-walíd Mohammed Ibn Jehwar, who followed his steps in the administration of the government until he died; when, after various changes and revolutions which happened in Cordova, and which it is not to our purpose to relate, Al-mámún, King of Toledo, took possession of it. Al-mámún ruled for a short period of time, and then died in that place. After this Cordova fell into the hands of the King of Seville, the Amír Adh-dháfir Ibn 'Abbád, under whose sway, if I am rightly informed, it still continues.¹⁵

In the mean while Hishám Al-mu'tadd, who had been in confinement, found means to escape, and took refuge with Ibn Húd at Lerida, where he remained until the time of his death, in the year 427 (beginning Nov. 4, A.D. 1035). Hishám having left no male children, the family of Merwán was entirely extinguished, and their empire abolished for ever. It is true that, whilst Yahya Ibn 'Alí Al-hasání was besieging Seville, the inhabitants of that place, and such as followed their party in the neighbouring districts, and dreaded the rule of

¹⁵ Al-homaydí wrote towards the year 460, when Mohammed Ibn 'Abbád was still in possession of Cordova.
that prince, gave out that Hishám Al-muyyed-billah, the son of Al-hakem, was still alive and among them; and they accordingly went through the usual ceremonies of taking the oath of allegiance to him, and proclaiming him their sovereign, their example being followed by most of the people of Andalus. But all this was a stratagem devised by Ibnu 'Abbád, the ruler of Seville, as we have shown elsewhere. At last, when it was close upon the year 450 (beginning Feb. 27, A.D. 1058), the same people who had proclaimed Hishám gave out that he was dead; and thus did the khotbah for the Bení Umeyyah cease from the pulpits of the mosques in all the provinces of Andalus until the present moment, when it has not yet been re-established.

Sultáns of the family of Idrís.

But to return to the Sultáns of the posterity of Al-hasan. After the death of Yahya Ibn 'Ali, who, as before stated, was killed on the seventh day of Moharram of the year 427 (Nov. 11, A.D. 1035), Abú Ja'far Ahmed Ibn Abí Músa, better known under the surname of Ibn Bokennah, and Najá, the Sclavonian eunuch, both of whom had once been ministers of the Bení Hasan, returned to Malaga, then the seat of the empire of that family, and caused the khotbah to be said in the name of Idrís Ibn 'Ali, Yahya's brother; for, although Yahya had left two sons, named Hasan and Idrís, those ministers were unwilling to trust them with the command, owing to their being very young when their father died. This being done, they dispatched messengers to Idrís, who was then in Ceuta, of which city he was governor, as well as of Tangiers and the surrounding districts, informing him of his elevation to power. Idrís immediately sailed for Malaga, where he was proclaimed Khalif, on condition that he should give possession of Ceuta to his nephew Ihasan, one of the sons of Yahya. Idrís having agreed to accept of the empire on the above condition, Najá proceeded to Africa to put Hasan in possession of Ceuta and Tangiers. This Hasan was the youngest of Yahya's sons; he was, however, the strongest and the bravest.

On his accession to power, Idrís took the surname of Al-mutáyyed. He remained in possession of the throne until the year 330 (beginning Sept. 25, A.D. 931) or 331 (Sept. 14, A.D. 932), when a civil war broke out through the ambition of the Kálí Abú-l-kásim Mohammed Ibn Isma'il Ibn ‘Abbád, Lord of Seville, who, wishing to possess himself of the territories close to his dominions, sent his son Isma'il with his own troops, and such among the Berber tribes as obeyed his rule, against Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Al-birzálí, Lord of Carmona, which city he besieged. Thence Isma'il marched to Osunah (Osuna), and then to Ezija, both of which he took. Mohammed having implored the assistance of Idrís, and of Bádíís, chief of the tribe of Senhájah, who ruled in Granada, the former sent him an army at the command of his minister Ibn Bokennah, and the latter hastened to his assistance in person, both effecting their junction with Mohammed. It appears, however, that Mohammed's auxiliaries were seized with a panic at the sight of Isma'il, who, as before mentioned, commanded the forces of his father Mohammed Ibn 'Abbád; for they retreated before him, each returning to his own dominions. When this intelligence was brought to Isma'il his hopes increased, and

16 This word is sometimes written Ibn Baknah, at other times Ibn Bokennah.
he decided upon following the Lord of Senhájah into his own dominions. He, accordingly, started off in pursuit of him with the utmost speed he could use; but when Bádís saw that he could not escape his pursuer, he sent a message to Ibn Bokennah, who had parted company with him only one hour before; and having joined their forces, they determined to make a halt, and wait for their enemy. Soon after, Isma'il appeared in sight, and the two hosts met; but scarcely had a few blows been exchanged on each side, when the troops of Isma'il suddenly gave way and left the field of battle in the utmost confusion. Isma'il was in the number of the slain, having been one of the first killed. He was immediately beheaded, and his head carried to Malaga, to be presented to Idrís Ibn 'Ali. This monarch was then on his deathbed, and suffering under a disease of which he died. He had removed from Malaga to the mountain of Bobáshter,17 where he had a castle. He lived only two days after the head of Isma'il was brought to him. Idrís left three sons: Yahya, who was afterwards put to death; Mohammed, who took the surname of Al-muhdi; and Hasan, who assumed that of As-sámi. He had another son named 'Ali, who was the eldest, but he died in his father's lifetime, leaving behind him a son named Mohammed, whom his uncle exiled on his accession to the throne.

During these transactions another prince of the family of Hamúd established himself at Algesiras. Yahya Ibn 'Ali, above mentioned, had, during his reign, confined his two cousins, Mohammed and Al-hasan, the sons of Al-kásim Ibn Hamúd, in the castle of that city. The person intrusted with their custody was an African known by the name of Abú-l-hejáj, who, on the death of Yahya, took the two princes out of prison, and, having called together all the Africans and blacks who were in Algesiras, said to them, "These are your two rightful sovereigns;" upon which all the troops present hastened to take the oath of allegiance to them, owing to the great affection which their father, Al-kásim, had always shown towards the blacks, and the numerous benefits he had conferred upon them. Mohammed was then immediately proclaimed, and he ruled undisturbed over Algesiras and its districts, though he never assumed the title of Khalíf. His brother Hasan remained some time with him, until, having been suddenly seized with a strong desire to take the woollen dress (to become a Súfí), he retired from the world. He afterwards went out as a pilgrim to Mekka, together with his sister Fátimah, the daughter of Al-kásim, and wife of Yahya Ibn 'Ali Al-mu'táli. But to return to the principal branch of the family.

After the death of Idrís Ibn 'Ali, which happened in the manner above related, the minister Ibn Bokennah raised to power his son Yahya, better known under the surname of Al-habbún,18 and administered the kingdom for him. Ibn Bokennah, however, did not show upon this occasion all the fortitude required for such an undertaking, but hesitated, and gave evident signs of weakness. When the news of the defeat of Isma'il Ibn 'Abbád and the death of Idrís Ibn 'Ali reached Ceuta, Nájá the Sclavonian, who ruled over that city, undertook to place upon the throne of Malaga Al-hasan, the son of Yahya. Having appointed a man of his own nation to command in his absence, he crossed over to Malaga, taking that prince with him. On their arrival in that port, the courage of Ibn Bokennah failed him, and

---

17 See Conde (vol. ii. p. 16), who read Yebaster.
18 حبر
he fled to Hisn-Komáresh (Comares), eighteen miles from that city. Najá and Hasan then entered Malaga, where they were immediately joined by the Berbers, the former being soon after proclaimed Khalif by the people, who gave him on the occasion the surname of Al-mustanser. After this, Hasan sent a messenger to Ibn Bokennah, granting him his pardon if he would return to Malaga; but on his arrival there he had him seized and put to death, as well as his own cousin, Yahya Ibn Idrís. Najá then returned to Ceuta and Tangiers, leaving with Hasan a man known under the patronymic of Ash-shettifi,19 who was a sailor, and in whom he had the most implicit reliance. Things remained in this state for nearly two years, until Hasan was poisoned by his own wife,20 the daughter of his uncle, Idrís Ibn ʿAlí. They say that she did it out of revenge for the death of her brother, Yahya Ibn Idrís, whom Hasan, as before related, caused to be put to death on his accession to power.

After the death of Idrás, Ash-shettifi assumed the command, and having confined to a dungeon Idrís Ibn Yahya, brother of the deceased, wrote to apprise Najá of what had occurred. Hasan had left in the hands of Najá a son of tender age, and they say that on hearing the news of the death of the father, that Scavonian placed this son in confinement, and soon after had him put to death; but God only knows!

As there remained no prince of the posterity of Hasan Ibn Yahya, Najá conceived the project of usurping the royal power. Having appointed one of his own countrymen, in whom he could trust, to command over Ceuta and Tangiers in his absence, he put to sea, and landed at Malaga. On his arrival there he placed Idrás Ibn Yahya in still closer confinement, increased the number of his guards, and aimed at taking the power entirely out of the hands of the Bení Hasan, and seating himself on their throne. To this end, he sent for the chiefs of the Berbers, who were the troops of the country, and discovered his plans to them, promising them ample reward in case of success. Najá found them deaf to his propositions, and not one professed him assistance: thinking, however, that the time was not yet come to rid themselves of Najá, the Berbers feigned to acquiesce in his plans, and lent him their assistance in public, though they were very differently disposed from the bottom of their hearts. After this, Najá called together his army, and marched upon Algesiras, with the intention of exterminating Mohammed Ibn Al-kásim, who was ruling there. He besieged that city for some days, until, having received intelligence that some of his followers were meditating a revolt against him, he decided upon returning to his capital. As he was journeying thither, some of the chiefs of the conspiracy, fearing that if Najá came to inquire into the affair he would immediately dispatch them and pardon the rest, rode secretly forward, and waited for him in ambush in a mountain-pass, whereby he had to pass on his way to Malaga. Accordingly, when Najá, who rode in front of the host with a few horsemen, came to the pass, he was suddenly attacked by the Berbers. The Scavonians who composed his guard being thrown into confusion by the suddenness of the attack, ran away, and deserted him; and Najá fell under the blows of his assassins, two of whom immediately galloped off to Malaga, which they entered, crying, at the top of their voices, “Good news!

— that is, from Shettif, or سطيف Settif, the ancient Sitipha.

— which Conde (vol. ii. p. 19) translates by era llamada Asafía (her name was Aasafia). Blunders of this sort abound in the work of that writer.
good news! Najá is killed.” They then went to the dwelling of Ash-shêtíff, ran him through with their swords, and put him to death; soon after, the rest of the army made their appearance, and, having taken Idrís Ibn Yahya out of his prison, they proclaimed him Khalif, and swore allegiance to him. On his accession to power, Idrís took the surname of Al-‘áli.

The character of Idrís was a compound of excellent qualities with inclinations ill fitted to a monarch. He was the most kind-hearted and charitable of men: he would distribute every Friday among the poor five hundred dinárs; he allowed all those who had been exiled under the preceding reigns to return to their homes, and restored to them their lands, farms, and whatever property belonging to them had been confiscated by his predecessors in power. As long as his reign lasted, not a complaint was heard among his subjects; he was, besides, well informed, fond of science, and would frequently repeat fine poetical fragments; but, with all this, he was very fond of associating with low and vulgar people; he would receive them at all hours in his palace, and his own wives would even appear unveiled in the presence of his guests: his prodigality was so excessive, that if a man of the tribe of Senhájah, or of the Bení Yeféren, inhabiting the neighbouring kingdom of Granada, asked him for one of his castles, he would immediately give him possession of it. Upon one occasion the Amir of Senhájah wrote to him, asking him to deliver into his hands the person of his own Wizár and minister, Músa Ibn ‘Affán, against whom he had conceived great enmity: Idrís, being greatly attached to Músa, who had been the friend and companion of his father and grandfather, both of whom he had served with fidelity and zeal, would not at first comply with his request; but when Músa heard that the Amir of Senhájah peremptorily asked for his delivery, and that Idrís would at last be compelled to execute his commands, he generously went up to his master, and said to him, “Do as thou art commanded, O Amir! and may the will of God be done.” Músa was accordingly sent to him of Senhájah, who, immediately upon his arrival, put him to death.

This, and other evident proofs of unpardonable weakness, alienated from Idrís the affections of his subjects, and they decided to deprive him of the empire. Idrís had before this confined in the castle of Ayrosh two youths, named Mohammed and Hasan, who were the sons of his uncle, Idrís Ibn ‘Alí. The conspirators accordingly cast their eyes on Mohammed, the eldest, and, having caused the garrison of that fort to rise in his favour, proclaimed him their sovereign. When the news of this insurrection reached the black troops, who composed the garrison of the Kassábah of Malaga, they also joined in the movement, and, having proclaimed Mohammed, wrote to him to come to them. In the mean while they fortified themselves in the Kassábah: the people of Malaga, however, being partial to Idrís, collected round him, and advised him immediately to attack the Kassábah, and punish the rebels. Had he done so, the blacks could not have held out for an hour: but Idrís refused to follow their advice, and said to them, “Let every one of you go home, and leave me alone.” The citizens having done as they were required, it was not long before his cousin made his appearance in Malaga, when he was proclaimed Khalif without opposition, and received the allegiance of the troops and the inhabitants.
On his assuming the command, Mohammed Ibn Idris took the surname of Al-muhdi, and appointed his brother Hasan Wali-l-ahd, or successor to the empire, giving him the surname of As-sâmi. One of the first acts of Mohammed’s government was to confine the late monarch in the very dungeon wherein he himself had been shut up. He also displayed much firmness and vigour in the administration; owing to which, the Berbers, who dreaded his justice, decided to deprive him of his power. Having sent their emissaries to the fortress where Idris Ibn Yahya was confined, the governor entered into their plans, and rose with the garrison, again proclaiming Idris Ibn Yahya.

On his first accession to power, after the murder of Najá, this monarch had appointed two of his father’s slaves, named Rizkullah and Sokkât, who belonged to the sect of the Baragh’wáttah, to be governors of Ceuta and Tangiers. When Idris was deposed by Mohammed, these two governors remained faithful to their master, administering his African dominions in his name. Idrís, however, was proclaimed for the second time at the castle of Ayrosh, as above related; but Mohammed showed no fear whatever; on the contrary, he displayed much energy and courage. His mother, too, who was a very spirited woman, assisted him most efficaciously. By taking the field in person, and distributing rewards among those who most distinguished themselves by their courage, she kept the rebels in check and disconcerted their plans, until the Berbers, seeing no hope of success, abandoned the cause of Idrís, and decided upon sending him over to Africa, and intrusting him to the care of the two Baragh’wáttah governors above mentioned. When Idrís, who had previously placed his own son under their custody, arrived in Africa, the governors received him with every show of attention and respect, and had him proclaimed Khalif in their mosques, although in reality all power was vested in their hands. Things remained in this state until some of the principal Berbers came over to Idrís, and said to him, “These two slaves are masters of thy person, and are interposed between thee and the empire; grant us permission to deliver thee from them.” Idrís, however, would not listen to their proposition, but acquainted the two governors with the plans of their enemies, upon which the Baragh’wáttah began by exiling the counsellors; and some time after, mistrusting Idrís himself, they also expelled him, and sent him over to Andalus in a vessel, although they still acknowledged him as Khalif, and continued to have the khotbah said in his name. The Baragh’wáttah retained the son of Idrís on account of his extreme youth.

After this, Mohammed Ibn Idrí,s, having disagreed with his brother As-sâmi, banished him to Africa, where he arrived, and took up his abode, establishing soon after his sovereignty in the mountains of Gomárâh (Gomera), the country whence the Bení Hasan had first issued, and the inhabitants of which still entertained the greatest veneration and respect for that family. In the mean while the Berbers of Malaga, who could not tolerate the rule of Mohammed, decided

22 This appears to be the same individual called Sakút by Ibn Kahlún. See vol. i. p. 333. On the origin of the religious sect of the Baragh’wáttah, see ibid.

23 Conde, who calls these governors Razikaba and Sekan, did not understand the meaning of this passage, which he found word for word in Adh-ilhābi (Nat. Lib. Mad., Gg. 14, fo. 17). He makes the two Baragh’wáttah fall by the hands of the populace, and says that Idrís sailed afterwards for Malaga, taking his son with him.
upon starting another competitor for the crown. Having entered into a secret correspondence with Mohammed Ibn Al-kásím, King of Algesiras, they promised him their help, and assured him of the victory if he would dispute the empire. Mohammed's ambition being kindled, he marched out of Algesiras at the head of his army and joined the Berbers, who immediately invested him with the Khalifate, giving him the surname of \textit{Al-muhdi}. The world then presented the ridiculous and highly objectionable picture of no less than four princes assuming at once the title of \textit{Amíru-l-múmenin}, in a country the extent of which does not exceed thirty square farsangs. However, the Berbers stayed some days with Mohammed, after which they all left him and returned to their country; he also returning, ashamed andcrest-fallen, to Algesiras, where he soon after died, they say, of sorrow and disappointment, leaving eight male children. Mohammed was succeeded in the kingdom of Algesiras by his son Al-kásím Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-kásim, who, however, did not assume the title of Khalif. As to Mohammed Ibn Idrís, of Malaga, he remained in possession of the kingdom until the time of his death, which happened in 445 (beginning April 22, A.D. 1053).

On the death of Mohammed, the Berbers sent for Idrís Ibn Yahya (Al-`áli), who was then living among the Bení Yeféren, and offered him the throne, which he accepted. These are the Sultans of the family of Idrís who held rule over Malaga and the neighbouring districts. We do not mention many others who reigned about the same time in other provinces in Andalus, because none of them assumed the title of Khalif.

\textbf{APPENDIX C.}

\textit{Extracts from the historical work entitled Kitábú-l-iktifá fí akhbári-l-kholáfi (the book of sufficiency on the history of the Khalifs)}, containing a concise account of the history of Mohammedan Spain, from the death of Al-hakem Al-mustanser-billah, the ninth Sultán of Cordova, till the arrival of the Almohades.

After the death of Al-hakem, his son Hishám, still of tender age, succeeded him. Soon after his accession, Ibn Abí `A'mir, who had been Al-hakem's secretary, was appointed to the charge of Wizír, and his influence over the youthful monarch gradually increased. Being a shrewd and active man, he made himself completely master of the person of Hishám, and succeeded, by his liberality, his courage, and his secret intrigues, in securing to himself the attachment of the army. He, moreover, contrived to keep Hishám in a state of insensibility, by surrounding him with all manner of pleasures and dissipation; and having chosen the Katíbs or secretaries, as well as the governors of the provinces, from among his own relatives, or from those among his personal friends on whom he could most rely, he then took into

\textsuperscript{1} See vol. i. App. D. p. xlii. et seq.
APPENDIX.

his hands the whole of the authority, leaving to his sovereign Hishám only the title of Khalif, the khotbah (or proclamation in the mosque), and the coinage of money in his name; for every decree emanated from him, while he made the people believe that it was his sovereign's will. Al-mansúr’s next step was to build for himself a very strong castle, whither he removed all the treasures of the state. When his ambition had in a certain manner been satisfied, he began to give evident proofs of those military talents which he so highly displayed during his administration, and to direct against the infidels those numberless expeditions by which he acquired so great a celebrity. Indeed, God Almighty always gave victory to his arms, and wherever he met the Christians he destroyed and annihilated them. In this manner he marched against Barcelona, which city he besieged and took, after killing its king, Borel. He then razed the fortifications and returned to Cordova, loaded with rich spoil, consisting of arms, dresses, money, horses, and beasts of burden; and bringing besides with him an immense number of male and female captives.

Various other incursions were subsequently made by Al-mansúr in the same districts, every where overturning and destroying the Christian armies that opposed him, and reducing to his obedience the farthest limits of the country of the infidels. The fame of his exploits became so great, that the Emperor of Constantinople sent him ambassadors, and sought his alliance and friendship, as did also the Lord of Rome, and the King of Castile, all of whom sent him costly presents and all kinds of rarities, the produce of their respective countries, with a view to conciliate his favour, and to obtain security and peace.

Thus did Al-mansúr continue for twenty-eight years administering the affairs of the Moslems, and keeping his sovereign Hishám in the same state of seclusion and non-entity to which we have alluded. At last, death, against whose blows nobody stands secure, struck him on his return from an expedition to the country of the infidels. They relate, that a few moments before he died, Al-mansúr began to weep bitterly, which being observed by one of his favourite eunuchs named Kauthar, who was his Hákib, and was then standing by his bedside, he addressed him thus:—“Why dost thou weep, O master?”—“I weep,” answered Al-mansúr, “over my sins, and the evils I have entailed upon the Moslems of this country.” “How can that be,” replied Kauthar in amazement, “when it is evident that Isláám never was more flourishing, or the Mohammedan sway more widely extended, than under thy administration? Hast thou not conquered the kingdoms of the infidels, and put down their pride? hast thou not made the Christians of distant regions come like so many beasts of burden to this capital, loaded with the earth of their native country, and lay it down at the gate of thy palace, to serve afterwards for the construction of the great mosque?”—“Thou sayest right,” replied Al-mansúr; “but when I conquered the enemy’s country, when I seized on his castles and fortresses, I always took care to provide my new conquests with the means of subsistence and defence, and to establish the means of a speedy communication between them and our own settlements on the frontiers, that they might be instantly relieved in case of attack. I have thus made numerous settlements within the enemy’s country, and filled their towns and castles with Moslems. There lies my

2 The MS. reads which is a mistake for بويل 3 صاحب رومة
error. Now that I am on the verge of death, who will imitate my example when I
am gone? My sons, it is well known, spend their time in wanton dissipation, and
they are utterly unfit for the task of checking the progress of a daring enemy, who,
though now vanquished and humiliated, will soon recommence his attacks, will snatch
one by one from the Moslems all the conquests I have made; and, when he finds that
the provinces he traverses are well populated and provided with the necessaries of life,
will, without difficulty, push on his incursions to the very walls of this capital; nay, will
in time wrest from us all our dominions in this island. There lies my error! And yet God
Almighty inspired me more than once with the means of salvation; but I constantly
disregarded the admonition. Had I laid waste all the territories subdued by my arms,
had I by ruin and destruction made a desert of at least ten days’ march between our
extreme frontier and that of the Christians, we might then have averted the approaching
storm, as it would have been extremely difficult for our enemies to march through a
desolated and unproductive country. But, alas! as things now stand, there is no salvation
but in God.”—“Do not be afflicted,” said Kauthar; “if God Almighty be pleased, thou
shalt recover, and then thou mayst issue thy orders to that effect.”—“No,” said Al-
mansūr; “the opportunity is now gone. Were I to recover this my illness, and to
command what I deem convenient for the safety of this nation, the Moslems would
say, ‘Al-mansūr was attacked by a severe illness through which he lost his wits, and in a fit of insanity he ordered the devastation of the Moslem territory.’”

After the death of Ibn Abī 'A'mir, his son 'Abdu-l-malik succeeded him in the charge
of Hájib, as well as in the command of the army, and in the favour of his monarch Hishám,
who led the same secluded life as before, taking no part whatever in the affairs of the state.
'Abdu-l-malik followed the traces of his invincible father; he made war on the idolaters,
and was always successful, owing to which he was surnamed Al-mudhfer (the victorious).
After an administration of eight years he died almost suddenly of a quinsy in his throat.

'Abdu-l-malik was succeeded, in the year 400 (beginning August 24, A.D. 1009), by his
brother 'Abdu-r-rahmán, who assumed the surname of Al-muhdi, but whom the people of
Cordova were in the habit of calling Shanjúl,4 or “the madman,” owing to his profligate life,
his impious habits, his familiarity with common soldiers and persons from the lowest ranks of
society, his drinking of wine and spirituous liquors,—of which he made a constant and immoderate use,—and, above all, his impudence and presumption, which prompted him to exact
from the inhabitants of Cordova an oath of allegiance to himself as their lawful sovereign.
After the death of Hishám, whose heir and successor he pretended to be, he assumed the
title of Wali abdi-l-islām (presumptive heir to the throne). This rash conduct having brought on 'Abdu-r-rahmán the wrath of the Bení Umeyyah, who were already disgusted with
his tyranny and his excesses, a conspiracy was formed in Cordova, at the head of which was
a prince of that family,5 who rose in arms against him, as well as against Hishám. The rebel

\( ^4 \) This word, which is sometimes written سنجول Sanjúl, and sometimes سنجول Shanjúl, is not Arabic, and belongs, no doubt, to one of the African dialects which were about that time spoken at Cordova. See vol. i. p. 506, Note 7.

\( ^5 \) Mohammed Ibn Hishám Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbár, who afterwards reigned under the surname of “Al-muhdi.”
being joined by the greater part of the army, and by almost all the inhabitants of Cordova, secured the person of Hishám, of whom no more was heard afterwards, and succeeded also in laying hold of Shanjúl, whom he put to death and caused afterwards to be crucified.

When the governors in the provinces heard of the death of 'Abdu-r-rahmán they all raised the standard of revolt, each rising within the territories intrusted to his care, and with the armies under his command. Thus Zeyrí Ibn Menád, with his followers, rose in Granada and the adjoining districts; the Kádí Mohammed Ibn 'Abbád did the same in Seville; and Isma'il Ibn Dhi-n-nún in Toledo, where he commanded by delegation and by appointment of Ibn Abí 'A'mir. Their example was soon followed by Yúsuf Ibn Húd, who was governor of Saragossa; in short, every Governor, Kádí, or man of consequence or authority who had any troops under his command, hesitated not to declare himself in open rebellion against the new Khalif of Cordova: for instance, Ibn Al-aftas proclaimed himself independent at Badajoz; Ibn Samádeh, at Almeria; Mujáhid, the Sclavonian, at Denia; Ibn Tábir, at Murcia; besides a great many more from among the relatives or adherents of Mohammed Ibn Abí 'A'mir, and his sons.

However, soon after the death of Shanjúl and the disappearance of Hishám, another member of the family of Umeyyah rose to revenge the blood of the son of Ibn Abí 'A'mir, and started as competitor for the crown. His name was Al-musta'lin: he waged war for some time with the usurper, but was at last defeated and put to death. Some historians have asserted, that during this war the Khalif Hishám was one day found concealed in the palace of Cordova; and that about that time also Ibn 'Abbád, who rose in Seville, went about with a man greatly resembling Hishám in personal appearance, and, having made the people believe that he was their legitimate sovereign, caused them to acknowledge him as such and obey his orders. But the fact is, that Ibn 'Abbád really reigned in the name of this pretended sovereign, who was a mere tool of his ambition, as was afterwards discovered; for, when he thought that his authority had been firmly established, and his power was sufficiently dreaded, he gave out that Hishám was dead, and that he had, before his death, appointed him his successor. In this manner was the Khalifate extinct in Andalus: the wheels of fate revolved their rotations of woe and perdition; corruption and vice seized the hearts of the rich and the poor, of the noble and the plebian, of the lord and the vassal. The obscure and the low rose in every corner of the empire; the fire of discord raged through the Mohammedan provinces; and the Christians, seizing the opportunity, on all sides attacked the Moslems, who, weakened and divided as they were, made a very slight defence, the cruel enemies of our faith obtaining every where considerable advantages, especially in Aragon and Castile.

In this manner they made an incursion into the kingdom of Toledo, and completely defeated Isma'il Ibn Dhi-n-nún, who went out to meet them, making great slaughter among his followers. They likewise attacked Saragossa, but they were there bravely met by Suleyman Ibn Húd, who not only defeated the enemy, but plundered his camp, and killed most of his men. About this time a powerful army of Christians came out from the country.

6 This was Suleyman Ibn Al-hakem.
of the Rüm (Asturias?), and arrived in Kastiliah (Castile), the court and residence of a king whose name was *Al-beytin.* Another army came likewise from the great land (continent), and having all joined together, they began to scour the country in all directions, killing the inhabitants or making them captives, and committing all manner of excesses and depredations. In this manner they appeared before the walls of Valencia, where they were met by Abú Merwán 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Razín, who offered them battle. He was, however, defeated and killed, and his army destroyed and dispersed. Thence the Christians went to Guadalajara, where they were opposed by the governor of the town, the Káyíd Ibn Katání; but he also was defeated and severely wounded in the encounter. In short, God Almighty permitted the King of Castile, *Al-beytin,* every where to chastise the rebellious chieftains who had proclaimed themselves independent; for he took by storm many of their towns, and, in spite of all their efforts, subdued large tracts of the countries over which they ruled as masters. These events happened in the year 425 (beginning Nov. 25, A. D. 1033).

After this, *Al-beytin* returned to his dominions, having appointed his general, Ramiro, governor of his new conquests: this Ramiro established his residence in Barbastro, a city which he had previously taken from Ibn Húd, the King of Saragossa.

On his return to his states, *Al-beytin* found that a Christian king of the name of Ferdeland, whom he had left in Castile to command in his absence, had revolted against him, with a view to dispossess him of that kingdom. They accordingly made war on each other for several months. In the mean time Ibn Húd, who burned to revenge the past disasters, thinking the time was come to make an attack upon Ramiro, wrote to Ibn 'Abbád, imploring his assistance; and on the receipt of his letter the King of Seville immediately sent him some forces under the command of an experienced general named Mu'adh Ibn Abí Korrah.

With these reinforcements Ibn Húd took the field and attacked Ramiro, whom he defeated; and having expelled the Christians from the countries which they occupied, he retook Barbastro and various other strong towns. The news of these successes inspired confidence in the Moslems, and their courage again revived, so that whenever the Christians dared to attack their territory, they were invariably repulsed and beaten with great loss. However, notwithstanding all these victories, hatred and ill-will still divided the Moslems, who, regardless of their common danger, went on prosecuting their private feuds, and waging war one against another, thus gaining little or no advantage against the common enemy, whose forces happened at that time to be also weakened by intestine war.

---

7 The text reads thus:  "و خرج من بلاد الروم جيش كبير و وصل إلى صاحب تشتليلة و هي دار ملكهم و فيها كان ملكهم البيزنطيين"—literally, "and there came out of the land of the Rüm a large army, which arrived to the dominions of the Lord of Kastiliah, the court of their kings, and, at that time, of their king *Al-beytin.*"

The word *Al-beytin,* which lower down is written *Al-betin,* is, no doubt, intended for *bleyter* or *bleyter.*

Pedro. There was, however, no King of Castile so named at the time; the monarch here alluded to is no other than Sancho el Mayor, King of Navarre, who, in 1026, assumed the sovereignty of Castile in right of his wife, Doña Muña Elvira, daughter of Don Sancho, and sister of Don Garcia, last Count of Castile.

8 Ramiro, a bastard son of Don Sancho, who afterwards became King of Aragon.

9 His son Fernando, who succeeded him in the kingdom of Castile. The Spanish authors, however, make no mention of this revolt.
Some time after these events the Christians made an incursion into the districts close to Granada. They were, however, met by the Berbers, who not only routed them completely, but took possession of all their baggage and stores. Then Ramiro, the son of Sancho, marched towards Huesca, and overran its territory; but Ibn Húd, sallying out from Saragossa, overtook him on the road, and a battle ensued, in which Ramiro himself was killed, and his army entirely dispersed. The Franks also made an inroad into the neighbourhood of Toledo, but the eunuch Wádheh,10 who commanded the armies of King Ibn Dhi-n-nún, went out in pursuit of them, and put them to flight.

After this the Christians had wars among themselves; yet, though their attention was thus diverted by their own internal troubles, they nevertheless continued to profit by the dissensions of the Moslems, and the weakness to which they had been reduced. During this interval they took from us several castles and important fortresses, such as Hisn Kolimriah, Hisn Wakhshah, and Hisn Shírúr,11 this last place falling into the hands of Sancho, son of Abarca. This Sancho12 died shortly afterwards, and was succeeded by his three sons, Ferdelan (Fernando), García, and Ramiro. (May the curse of God fall on them all!). Fernando, being the eldest of the three, was chosen to succeed his father. Having taken the field, he reduced several places, like Santa María, otherwise called the town of Ibn Razín, and other strong fortresses. He also took from the Bení Al-afttas, who ruled as masters over the western part of Andalus, several fortresses in the neighbourhood of Badajoz.

This Fernando (may he be cursed!) died, leaving three sons, Sancho, García, and Alfonso, who disputed the crown amongst themselves. However, Sancho being put to death, and García being thrown into a dungeon, the empire devolved on their brother Alfonso, son of Fernando, who, seeing himself without competitors, cast a wistful eye on the dominions of the Moslems, and conceived in his base head the project of subjecting to his abominable rule the whole of Andalus. In pursuance of his plans, the Christian king never ceased from that moment to make incursions into the country of the Moslems, whom he generally found in a state of dissension and internal discord, and fast working their own ruin and destruction. Indeed, not only were the different independent chieftains at that time waging unrelenting war against each other, but they would not unfrequently avail themselves of the arms of the Christians to attack and destroy their own countrymen and brothers in religion, lavishing on Alfonso costly presents, and giving him as many treasures as he chose to have, in order to conciliate his good wishes, and to obtain security for themselves and assistance against their enemies. The Christians, perceiving the state of corruption into which the Moslems had fallen, rejoiced extremely; for, at that time, very few men of virtue and principle were to

10 This Wádheh appears to be the same Scelovian eunuch who directed for some time the administration of Hisnám II.

11 Kolimriah is intended for Conimbra (now Coimbra) in Portugal.

12 Sancho II., King of Navarre. See above, Note 7. He was the son of García II., and the grandson of Garces Abarca. At his death, which happened in 1035, he divided his dominions among his three sons. To García he left the kingdom of Navarre; to Fernando that of Castile; and that of Aragon to Ramiro.
be found amongst the Moslems, the generality of whom began to drink wine and commit all manner of excesses. The rulers of Andalus thought of nothing else than purchasing singing-women and slaves, listening to their music, and passing their time in revelry and mirth, spending in dissipation and frivolous pastimes the treasures of the state, and oppressing their subjects with all manner of taxes and exactions, that they might send costly presents to Alfonso, and induce him to serve their ambitious projects. Things went on in this way among the rebellious chieftains of Andalus until weakness seized on the conquerors as well as on the conquered, and baseness and vice preyed likewise on the assailants and the assailed: generals and captains no longer displayed their wonted valour; warriors became cowardly and base; the people of the country were in the greatest misery and poverty, the entire society was corrupted, and the body of Islâm, deprived alike of life and soul, became a mere corpse. Those among the Moslem rulers who did not actually submit to Alfonso, consented to pay him an annual tribute, thus becoming collectors in their own dominions of the revenues of the Christian monarch! While this state of things lasted, not one dared to oppose his will or disobey his commands. In the mean time the affairs of the Moslems were administered by Jews, who fed on them as the lion on a defenceless animal, and who filled even the offices of Wizír, Hábíb, and Kátíb, reserved in former days for the most illustrious individuals in the state: the Christians went every year round Andalus, plundering and making captives, burning villages, and wasting the whole country.

In the midst of these troubles, namely, in the year 467 (beginning Aug. 26, A.D. 1074), died the King of Toledo, Isma'íl Ibn Dhi-n-nún, the same who took Cordova from Ibn 'Abbád, and defended it afterwards from his attacks. Ibn Dhi-n-nún surpassed many of the Moslem kings of his time in courage and military talents. When he died, his body was carried on the shoulders of his own men to Toledo, and there buried. He left no sons. That period of history in which the disastrous events above related took place has been called by the Arabian authors Ayyámu-l-fírk (the days of division or confusion).

In the same year (A.H. 467) died at Shátabah (Xátiva), his birth-place, the learned theologian and traditionist the Imám Abú 'Amru Ibn 'Abdí-l-barr (may God show him mercy!).

Isma'íl Ibn Dhi-n-nún having left no male children, he was succeeded in the kingdom of Toledo by his grandson, Yahya, who assumed the title of Al-kádir-billah. Yahya was imbecile in mind and weak in body. He had been brought up in his father's harem among women and eunuchs, dancers and singers; and he was as unfit for the command of the army as for the duties of the administration in those perilous times. He therefore abandoned himself completely into the hands of his slaves, and intrusted with his eunuchs the cares of the government. This made him the scorn of his subjects; hated and despised by whom, he became at the same time a mark to the ambition of his equals among the rulers of Andalus.

The King of Seville, Ibn 'Abbád, was the first to assail him in his own dominions. Being anxious to revenge upon him all the injuries he had received at his grandfather's hands, that monarch took the field at the head of considerable forces, and, after recovering Cordova...

13 See vol. i. p. 457, where the death of this individual is said to have happened four years sooner, in 463.
and the surrounding districts, reduced also Talavera, Gháfek, and all the territory laying between those two cities.

Nor was Ibn 'Abbád the only one who attacked this imbecile prince; the King of Saragossa, Ibn Húd, made also an incursion into his territory, and, assisted by the tyrant Ibn Radmir, took from him the cities of Santa Maria and Molina. Unable to withstand alone the attacks of his two formidable adversaries,—a task, besides, for which his cowardice and stupidity made him totally unfit,—Yahya solicited the aid of the tyrant Alfonso. In the mean time the city of Valencia, which formed part of Yahya's dominions, as inherited from his grandfather, Al-mámún, threw off its allegiance; Ibn Húd having prevailed upon the governor, Abú Bekr Ibn 'Abdí-l-'azíz, to declare himself in open revolt, and to assume the command of the place. The King of Saragossa then asked in marriage the daughter of Abú Bekr, expecting that the match would be the means of his getting possession of the kingdom of Valencia, which he ardently wished for.

At the same time the city of Cuenca, which belonged also to Al-kádir, was besieged by Ibn Radmir. That tyrant pressed the town until the inhabitants were on the point of starvation through hunger and thirst; when, unable to hold out any longer, they capitulated, and agreed to pay him a considerable sum of money if he would raise the siege; which he did. Al-kádir then sent an army, under the command of Bashír the eunuch, to meet the combined forces of Ibn Húd and Ibn Radmir; but that general returned without encountering the enemy, who had already retired into their respective countries loaded with rich spoil.

About this time there was a popular commotion in Toledo, wherein the theologian Abú Bekr Ibn Al-harírí, and several other distinguished men, fell victims to an infuriated mob, the houses of the rich people being also gutted, and all manner of excesses committed.

When King Al-kádir saw himself thus surrounded by his enemies, he wrote to apprise Alfonso of his critical situation, and begged the Christian king to send an army to his assistance. The tyrant's answer was thus conceived:—“If thou wishest me to defend and protect thee against thy enemies, send me so much money; if not, I will deliver thee into their hands.” This King Alfonso was a very shrewd and perfidious man, and he saw with secret delight the disturbances raised in the very heart of the Moslem dominions by their ambitious rulers. He well knew that in proportion as they consumed their own resources and those of their subjects in useless and petty warfare, his own power would increase, and that the moment was fast approaching for his conquering the whole of Andalus. He therefore took the first opportunity, which offered itself by the non-compliance of Al-kádir with the terms of the treaty, to invade the dominions of that monarch, as we shall presently relate. However, when Yahya received the above answer, he called together to a council the functionaries of the state, and the governors of his provinces, besides a considerable number of his subjects, and communicated to them Alfonso's proposal. “The Christian king,” said Yahya to the assembly, “has pledged himself by a most solemn oath, that unless you bring me imme-

---

14 Sancho I. of Aragon, and IV. of Navarre. He was the son of Ranuio.
15 ملّة
16 كنّ
"diately the sums for which he asks, yourselves, wives, and children shall be made "answerable for it." Not one of those present answered a word, with the exception of the Káyid Abú Shajá' Ibn Lebún, who said to Yahya, "The words thou hast just uttered are "the best proof of the instability of thy empire, but perhaps thou trustest and reliest in him "(Alfonso)." Abú Shajá' was right. So disgusted were the people of Toledo with Yahya's willingness to comply with the exorbitant demands made by the Christian king, that they pronounced him to be utterly unfit to govern them, and desired to enter into a secret correspondence with Ibn Al-afttas, king of Badajoz, and persuade him to deprive Al-kádir of the empire.

No sooner was Al-kádir informed of the plot entered into against him, than, not deeming himself secure in Toledo, he fled at night with his treasures and a few only of his adherents, and took the road to Webdeh (Huete);17 but the governor, named Ibn Wahb, shut the gates and refused him admission. During this interval Ibn Al-afttas arrived in sight of Toledo, and entered that city.

In this emergency Al-kádir again sought the aid of Alfonso. Surrounded on every side by enemies, his sole hope of salvation was in the Christian king. He wrote to him and implored his assistance, and the tyrant accordingly hastened to help him. Al-kádir went out to meet the Christian, when it was mutually agreed that Alfonso should lay siege to Toledo, until he should expel Ibn Al-afttas and restore the city to Al-kádir, who, on the restoration of his capital, was to hand over to Alfonso the whole of his treasures. As a security against any infraction of this treaty, Alfonso was to retain as pledges the fortresses of Soria and Conória.18 These conditions being mutually agreed upon, the Christians were put in possession of the above fortresses, which they put in an excellent state of defence by considerably augmenting their fortifications, and garrisoning them with their best troops. Alfonso then laid siege to Toledo.

Ibn Al-afttas seeing himself closely besieged by the Christians, and not expecting assistance from any one, abandoned the city, and Al-kádir was again put in possession of it. Agreeably to his promise, Al-kádir collected all the money he could among the inhabitants of the place, and presented it to Alfonso; but this the tyrant would not receive. Al-kádir then brought him the whole of the treasures and jewels which he had inherited from his father and grandfather; but still the amount not being equal to the promised sum, Al-kádir begged Alfonso to wait for the payment of the remainder; his request being granted by the Christian king on condition that the fortress of Canales19 should be given over to him as security. When Alfonso saw himself master of that important fortress, he immediately garrisoned it with his best troops, and filled it with provisions and military stores. After which he returned to Castile, rich, safe, and with his saddle-bags full of plunder.

Alfonso's interference on this occasion, far from being beneficial to Al-kádir, proved the

---

17 I read Webdeh (Huete), a small town north-east of Toledo, between Cuenca and Guadalaxara. The word might also be pointed thus, Ubedah (Ubeda); but this town was then in the dominions of the King of Seville, Ibn 'Abbdah.

18 سرية وقنورية

19 تنقلش
cause of his ruin and of the loss of his kingdom. It alienated the hearts of his subjects entirely from him; many of whom left Toledo secretly, and repaired to the dominions of Ibn Húd, by whom they were kindly received and honourably entertained, this monarch bestowing on them all manner of favours and distinctions. The kingdom of Toledo, too, became a target for the ambition of neighbouring princes, all of whom strove to gain possession of it. Thus Ibn 'Abbád attacked it from the west, whilst Ibn Húd made it feel on the east all the agonies of death.

When Al-kádir perceived that he was unable to resist the simultaneous attacks of his enemies, and that no way was left open to him to escape from their clutches, he again wrote to Alfonso, offering to cede to him Toledo and its environs, provided he would assist him in the conquest of Valencia and its dependencies. No sooner did Alfonso receive the letter containing this proposition, than he flew towards Al-kádir as if he had had wings, and, marching night and day, arrived in sight of Toledo, which city was immediately put at his disposal, and the inhabitants at his discretion. Before surrendering his capital to Alfonso, Al-kádir stipulated for the following conditions. Every Moslem was to enjoy security for himself, family, and children; he was, moreover, to retain possession of his property. Those who chose might quit the town with all their goods and chattels; those who preferred to remain were only to be subject to the payment of the customary tribute,20 in proportion to the number of individuals who composed their family. It was further stipulated that if any one of the inhabitants chose to return after an absence of some time, he should be allowed again to settle in Toledo with whatever goods or property he had, without being subjected to the payment of duties or other personal inconvenience owing to the amount of the same.

Alfonso gave his assent to this capitulation, which he confirmed by a touch of his right hand, swearing faithfully to observe every one of the conditions therein contained. The taking of Toledo by Alfonso happened in 478 (A.D. 1085). Tárik Ibn Zeyád having taken it in the year 92, it had thus remained the abode of Islán for a period of 386 years. On the entrance of the Christians most of the inhabitants left the city, and retired to other provinces occupied by their brethren in religion. Toledo, in the mean time, remained in the hands of the infidels, who were left in undisturbed possession of it, as no attempt was made or wish manifested to snatch it from them, until the news came that the Almoravides, after defeating the tribe of Zenátah, had conquered the whole of Western Africa. These tidings filled with joy the Moslems of Andalus, whose hope was strengthened and whose spirit was revived in expectation of their powerful allies. But to return.

In the same year in which Toledo was taken (A.H. 478) died the King of Saragossa, Al-muktadir Yúsuf Ibn Húd, who was succeeded by his son, Ahmed, who took the honorary surname of Al-must‘áim. In this year died likewise the Wizir Abú Bekr Ibn 'Abdl-l-‘azíz, who, as we have before noticed, had risen at Valencia, and whom Al-kádir was now trying to attack and dethrone. After the death of Abú Bekr the city remained for some time without a ruler, when Al-kádir set off from Toledo with his own army, reinforced by

20 i.e. the same capitation-tax usually paid by the Christians living in the Moslem dominions.
some troops which Alfonso sent him, under the command of Albarhánis (Alvar Yañez),\(^2\) (may God destroy him!). This expedition took place in the year 480 (beginning April 7, A.D. 1087). Al-kádir encamped with his host outside of Valencia. At sight of his Christian auxiliaries the sides of the faithful quaked, and their hearts beat with fear; and they accordingly opened their gates to him, dreading the vengeance of Albarhánis. Al-kádir lodged the Christian in the suburb called Risáfah, while he himself took up his abode in the interior of the city.

When the tyrant Alfonso saw himself master of Toledo, his nostrils dilated with pride; his ambition was kindled, and he imagined that he could easily conquer the rest of Andalus. To gain this end, he began by making incursions into the districts round Toledo, until he reduced under his sway all the territories which had once belonged to the Bení Dhi-n-nún, from Guadalaxara to Talavera, and from the plain of Elche\(^2\) to the district of Santa Maria (Albarracin); an extent of country comprising eighty principal towns or cities, in every one of which there was a mosque; besides innumerable villages, farm-houses, and rural buildings. At this time no chieftain or king in Andalus dared oppose himself to Alfonso, or arrest his victorious career. On the contrary, all hastened to send their ambassadors to him, and to place themselves and subjects entirely at his discretion, offering to be his vassals, and to pay him an annual tribute, provided he would maintain them in the possession of the cities and provinces in which they had risen. Things even went so far that Husánu-d-daulah Ibn Razín, King of Santa Maria (Albarracin), went in person to the court of Alfonso, and, having made him a splendid and costly present, begged him to confirm him in his states, promising to hold them in his name. Alfonso accepted the present, and gave a monkey in return; and they relate that Ibn Razín used to boast of this circumstance among his comrades, the petty kings of Andalus, asserting that among other presents offered to him by Alfonso, he had selected that animal, as indicative of the decadence of the power of that tyrant. But to return.

Elated with success, the Christian king began to assume the titles and to imitate in every respect the conduct of great monarchs and Caesars. His ambition increased two-fold; and he surrounded his person with such splendour and magnificence that all mortals appeared contemptible before him. Seeing the Moslem princes become subservient to him, he took the title of Emberatúr (Imperator), which, in the language of the Christians, means as much as Amíru-l-múmenin (Commander of the Faithful) with us. Whenever he addressed any of them in writing, he would style himself “king of the two nations.” Nor did his arrogance and presumption end here; for, in the presence of the ambassadors residing at his court, he once swore by his God not to rest until he had exterminated every Moslem prince in Andalus, or obliged them all to pay him tribute; not to lay down his arms until he had left them no other place of refuge than his protection; no other resource than a ready submission. Upon one occasion he said to the ambassador of Ibn 'Abbád, who was a Jew, named Ibn Misha‘lion, \(^3\) “How can I allow these madmen to go on with their folly, and

---

\(^2\) Albarhánis (or Yañez) Minaya, one of the Companions of the Cid.

\(^2\) —which I believe to be Elche in Murcia.

\(^3\) Abîn Meshîl — Ibn Misha‘lion
“assume the titles and names of their Khalifs, Kings, and Amírs? How can I tolerate "their impudence and presumption in calling themselves Al-mu’tadhed, Al-mu’tamed, Al-"mu’tassem, Al-mutawakkel, Al-musta’in, Al-muktadir, Al-amin, Al-mamun? especially when "every one of them seems to be a prey to insanity, and ceases not to oppress his subjects "and tyrannize over them,—rising in hostile array one against another, indulging in every "vice and iniquity, and passing their lives amidst a host of singers and lute-players. I only "wonder how men can tolerate such rulers, and trust to such ignorant and negligent shep-"herds the care of a flock which they abandon and desert.”

But to resume the thread of our narrative. The Christians prosecuted their victorious course through the dominions of Islám, invading the territories and towns occupied by the Moslems, and reducing them under their sway, until the arrogance of the Christian dogs waxed so great, and the fear of the Moslems became so intense, that a handful of mounted adventurers were sufficient to overawe a whole province, and to traverse it with impunity. In this way a band of mounted desperadoes, not exceeding sixty in number, made a foray into the territory of Almeria, and appeared in sight of that capital. Ibn Samádeh, who commanded there, having sent against them four hundred of his best troops, under an experienced general, not only did the infidels await their arrival, but, when attacked, they defeated the Moslems with awful carnage. At last, when all the chieftains of Andalus, and chiefly those who held command in the western parts, such as Ibn Al-aftas and Ibn 'Abbád, became certain of Alfonso’s hostile views, and that neither presents nor tribute would deter him from the course he intended to pursue, they began to think of returning to the true path, and calling the Almoravides to their aid. They accordingly implored the assistance of the Amír of the Moslems, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin, and acknowledged his sway, hoping that he would stop the victorious course of the infidel, and thus open, for the prosecution of the holy war, those gates which they had hitherto kept criminally locked. The Amír, who desired nothing more ardently than an opportunity to make war with the idolaters, and save from pollution the wives of the Moslems, granted their request, and answered in the affirmative. Victory then arose from the slumber in which she lay, and the star of triumph again shone bright amidst the clouds by which it had been obscured.

The Amír hastened to cross the sea with his brothers, the Almoravides, in the year 480 (beginning April 7, A.D. 1087). God had inspired him with the purest intentions, and directed his mind towards the true path. He filled the seas with fleets, and made his troops cross the channel, squadron after squadron. He then landed with the flower of his army, amounting to twelve thousand cavalry, at Jezírah Al-khadhrá (Algesiras); where he was soon after joined by Al-mu’tamed Mohammed, son of Al-mu’tadhed Ibn 'Abbád, King of Seville, by Al-mutawakkel Ibn Al-aftas, King of Badajoz, as well as by other less powerful chieftains, with all the forces they could muster; besides great numbers of virtuous Moslems, who privately flocked under his banners for the purpose of taking part in the holy war.

Whilst these preparations were being made, Alfonso was occupied in the siege of Saragossa,

---

24 This date is erroneous. According to the best authorities the landing of Yúsuf took place the year before. The author, no doubt, speaks, by mistake, of Yúsuf’s second expedition to Spain, which did really happen in 480.
which city he had sworn not to quit until he had conquered it. Fate, however, had decided otherwise. Al-musta'in, who ruled over that city, had repeatedly offered Alfonso large sums of money if he would raise the siege and retire; but the Christian king refused every overture, and would grant no terms. In the mean time his emissaries were trying to persuade the inhabitants that his rule was far preferable to that of Al-musta'in. It had been Alfonso's policy, whenever he took a city, to show generosity to the Moslems: he would distribute justice with an even hand, and would afford the Moslems every sort of protection, treating them with great kindness in public as well as in private: he would promise never to subject them to any service that should be incompatible with the sunnah, and in all other respects he would leave them entirely at liberty. It was a well-known fact, that after the taking of Toledo he had distributed among the poor Moslems of that city one hundred thousand dinârs, by way of alms, and to enable the farmers, who had been ruined by the long-protracted siege, to purchase seed for their lands: he now made every endeavour to convince the people of Saragossa that his words were sincere, and that he intended religiously to fulfil his promises. Thus deceived, the inhabitants were on the point of listening to him, when the news reached him of the arrival of the Almoravides on the coast of Africa, with the intention of crossing over to Andalus. Alfonso then wrote to Yúsuf: "The petty sovereigns of this country are continually threatening me with thy crossing the sea, and I have promised a reward of ten thousand mithkâls of gold to the first man who will bring me the news of thy landing. Hasten therefore to come over to me, or I shall cross the sea and visit thee there. Let me soon hear thy determination, that I may shape my movements accordingly." In reply to this message the Amir of the Moslems wrote Alfonso a letter, wherein, after the bismillah and the formula in use among us, there were the following remarkable words: "The good sharp swords and the spears have no other messengers than a numerous and well appointed army." There was not one letter more in the epistle. This answer of the Amir, together with the intelligence of his having crossed, and his marching towards Toledo, reached Alfonso at the same time. No sooner was he made certain of it than he dispatched a messenger to Al-musta'in, offering to raise the siege if he would send him all his disposable money; but Al-musta'in, who had also heard of the landing of the Almoravides on the coast of Andalus, denied Alfonso's request, and would not give him one single dirhem. The accursed, then, deceived in his expectations, was compelled to raise the siege, and to return, ashamed and crest-fallen, to Toledo, whence he speedily sent his ambassadors to all the Christian princes, apprising them of the disembarkation of the Almoravides. He also summoned the great vassals of his crown to take the field with their retainers. In compliance with his

25 Compare the Cronica General, fo. ecccc.; and Rodericus Toletanus, Hist. Rerum in Hisp. gestarum, lib. ix. cap. xxv., where all this passage may be found translated almost literally.

26 This verse is taken from one of the poems of Al-mutennabî. An anonymous commentator (Bib. Esc. fo. 270) thus explains the meaning of the word Mashrafiyyah or Mashrafiyyah are swords, so called from Mashraf, plur. Mash̲r̲īf̲, the name for certain districts of Arabia."
orders, the people of Castile bestirred themselves, and numberless troops came to him from every part of his dominions. Alvar Yañez, the general who commanded at Valencia, also left that city and joined him with all his followers. For some time armies came to him in succession from the furthest regions occupied by the Christians. Such was the multitude of warriors of his race, who on this occasion flocked under Alfonso's banners, that the valleys and the mountains were filled with them, and that the infidel monarch himself was astonished at their numbers. When he saw them all collected round him, his confidence increased, and he thought himself invincible. He then swore that no one would stand against so formidable an array, or dare dispute with him the possession of the land. Almighty God, however, had decreed in his omnipotence that his hopes should be blighted, and his wicked plans completely frustrated. Alfonso then left Toledo at the head of a numberless army, to which the wide-spread plains of Andalus afforded scarcely sufficient room, and resembling the dark shadows of night, or the agitated waves of a tempestuous sea. His warriors, clad in bright mail, and armed with sharp-edged swords, with steel caps on their heads, marched, animated with desperate courage, under broad pennons and fluttering banners, looking like the black gathering clouds on a spotless sky. Victory, however, followed not in their train, and their formidable host was soon after to be dispersed like the dust before the hurricane, as we shall presently relate.

In the mean while, the Amir of the Moslems was marching on Toledo with an army so numerous and well appointed as to call forth the admiration of the most experienced captains. He met Alfonso not far from Badajoz, at a place called Zalakah, where both armies encamped at a distance of three miles one from another. Messengers then went from one camp to the other, with the object of appointing the day on which the sanguinary encounter was to take place. The accursed Alfonso said, "To-day is Thursday; Friday is a holy day for "those of thy creed, as Sunday is one for those of mine; let us then fix on Saturday." The Amir of the Moslems then replied, "Let it be Saturday, if God be pleased." The accursed meant by this to deceive the Moslems, and meditated some treason. The Amir of the Moslems then took up his position close to that of the enemy; his own troops being the nearest to those of Alfonso, whilst the Andalusian warriors under Ibn 'Abbád and other chieftains were behind him. At this juncture Ibn 'Abbád took an astrolabe, and ascended an eminence for the purpose of reconnoitring. Having taken the horoscope of the positions occupied by the Amir of the Moslems, he came down in haste, and said to Yúsuf, "Thy "position is not an advantageous one." Upon which the Amir, after conversing some time with him, ordered his men to raise the tents, which was done with great secrecy that very night, so that at sunrise of the following day they were encamped between two hills. Al-mut'amèd then took the horoscope of the new position, and exclaimed, "A happier "position than this I never saw." However, on Friday before sunrise, notwithstanding his solemn promise, the accursed Alfonso secretly moved his battalions, and displaying his two wings as he advanced, fell suddenly on the positions occupied by the Andalusian

This prince was famous in his days for his knowledge of astrology. See vol. i. p. 385, Note 20.
Moslems under Al-mu'tamed and the other chieftains, thinking that he was attacking the Amir's camp. The Moslems, not being on their guard, were not made aware of the arrival of the Christians, until their sharp-edged swords were over their necks and their long spears in their flanks. They fled accordingly in all directions, filling the plain and the neighbouring mountains; until Al-mu'tamed, perceiving the confusion and aware of the danger, placed himself before the fugitives, and like a tawny lion, or like a mad bull butting them with his horns, checked them in their flight, and made them stand as firm as rocks before the enemy. The contest lasted for some time, until Al-mu'tamed, who had received some wounds at the onset, was exhausted, and his men disheartened. The rout then became general; the Christians followed the Moslems over the plain, killing and taking prisoners for a distance of eighteen miles.

They say that when the Amir of the Moslems was told of the rout of the Andalusians, he exclaimed, "Let them die; they deserve it. The enemy, in the mean time, will be tired, "and we shall vanquish them without great difficulty." Accordingly, when the Amir was made certain that all the Andalusians had either been killed or taken prisoners, he thought the opportunity had arrived to leave his encampment and spring upon the enemy like a lion upon his prey. The Christians, having, in the ardour of pursuit, left their tents considerably behind, Yusuf dexterously availed himself of their fault and attacked the camp of Alfonso, which he entered and plundered, after killing about ten thousand men, between cavalry and infantry, which the Christian monarch had left for its defence, and in that number were some of his bravest warriors. This being done, the Amir started off in pursuit of Alfonso, whose army, as before stated, had gone in various directions in pursuit of the fugitives, and, having overtaken them, the Moslems began to thrust their swords into their backs and their spears into their flanks. The Christians, however, did not return their blows; they turned back and fled precipitately in every direction. In the mean time the accursed Alfonso, seeing the rout of his army, fled to a neighbouring mountain with about three hundred followers, the only forces he could collect out of the sixty thousand men with whom he had taken the field. He there seemed determined to make a stand; but when night came on, and he saw that he could escape without being molested by the cavalry of the Moslems, he fled from the field of battle like the timid hare before the chasing dogs, and reached Toledo, beaten, dejected in spirits, and wounded.

The Moslems then hastened to cut off the heads of the Christian officers, and to build with them several mounds or towers, from the top of which the muechins called the soldiers to prayers for three consecutive days. All those Moslems who had escaped with their lives then returned to the camp. This memorable battle and defeat of the Christian forces happened on a Friday the tenth of Rejeb, A.H. 481.28 It inspired new life into the body of this island, like a man who, on the point of strangulation, is suffered to take breath. It confirmed the Moslems in the possession of many wealthy towns and populous districts, and it taught them that the Christians were not invincible, and could easily be exterminated, if the Moslems would only follow the right path and rely on their merciful Creator. Soon after

28 This is an error; the battle was fought two years before.
APPENDIX.

this, however, and whilst the Amír of the Moslems was hastening into the heart of the enemy's territory, messengers came to him from Africa with letters announcing the death of his eldest son; and the unexpected calamity so much oppressed his heart, that he decided to return to Africa, with the full intention of recrossing the sea to Andalus, and following up the advantages which so signal a victory could not fail to produce to the cause of the Moslems. Accordingly, having left three thousand cavalry under his general, Abú 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibnu-l-háj, to assist Al-mu'tamed in his wars with the Christians, he left Andalus.

No sooner, however, had the Amír of the Moslems taken his departure, when the Andalusian chieftains, who were only kept in awe by his presence, began to show the old symptoms of animosity one against another, and fresh dissensions broke out among them; for, whilst some who had witnessed the Amír's justice and moderation were strongly inclined in his favour and desired his rule, others showed envy at his military achievements; and, on the other hand, the Christians having been informed of the Amír's sudden departure for Africa, decided to renew their attacks, and, if possible, to snatch from the hands of the Moslems all their possessions in the eastern parts of Andalus. Accordingly, they began to make incursions into the districts round Saragossa, and also extended their ravages as far as Valencia, Denia, Xativa, and Murcia, burning and destroying every thing on their passage, and converting their fertile and highly cultivated plains into so many houseless deserts. In this manner they gained possession, among other important fortresses, of Murbiter; and, whilst the western districts of Andalus were in comparative security, owing to the auxiliary forces of the Almoravides, the eastern provinces were a prey to the fury of the enemy.

In the mean time, the Háiib Mundhir Ibn Ahmed Ibn Húd left Léridah (Lerida) with a considerable force, and laid siege to Valencia, which he hoped to take from its king, Al-kádir. When the news of his movement reached his nephew, Al-mustá'in, who was King of Saragossa, he also marched to that capital, on which he had for some time cast a wistful eye. So eager was he to obtain possession of it, that, not deeming himself sufficiently powerful to gain his purpose, he so far degraded himself as to seek the assistance of the Campeador, (may God send his curses upon him!) and promise him all the riches of the place if he would only help him to take it. These conditions being agreed upon, the Campeador took the field with his own troops, amounting to three thousand men. Having united his forces to those of Al-mustá'in, which did not exceed four hundred horsemen, both chiefs marched upon Valencia. When the Háiib received intelligence of their approach, he raised the siege, and went away. The Campeador, however, remained in sight of the city, hovering round it, and keeping up a sort of blockade, until he finally took it, as we shall hereafter relate.

Within this year, that is to say, in the year 481 (beginning March 26, 1088), the Káyid Abú Shajá' Ibn Lebún died a martyr for the faith in an encounter with the Christians. The Khalif Abú-l-mudhaffer died also. There was likewise in the same year, in the month of

29 *Muri veteres*, now Murviedro, the ancient Saguntum.
30 *Al-canbeto*r; that is, Rodrigo Diaz de Bibar, commonly called ' the Cid.'

31 *و فيها مات أبو الظفر الحليفة* The text must be vitiated; there was no Khalif named Abú-l-mudhaffer about
Octúbir (October), a great flood, which caused considerable damage in Valencia and other parts of Andalus, and threw down the tower of Alcantara. About this time too the son of Ramiro (Sancho), whose power had considerably increased in proportion as that of Alfonso had diminished owing to his past reverses, seeing that the whole of the Christians were flocking under his banners, laid siege to Tudela with an army of about four hundred thousand men: God, however, permitted that he should be defeated, and that the Christians should retire in utter confusion from before its walls. The son of Ramiro, nevertheless, succeeded in taking some of the fortresses belonging to Ibn Húd.

Whilst these events were taking place, King Alfonso was rapidly recovering from the effects of his past defeat, and his awe of the Moslem arms was gradually vanishing. He began therefore to raise troops, and to collect provisions and stores for an incursion he meditated into the Mohammedan provinces. When his preparations had all been completed, he made public his determination to lay siege to Valencia: to this end he wrote to the people of Genoa and Pisa to aid him in the undertaking; and they accordingly appeared in sight of Valencia with a fleet of four hundred sail, whilst Alfonso, on the other hand, after summoning all the people of his kingdoms, marched upon that capital. So considerable were his preparations, and so numerous and well appointed his army, that the Christian monarch did not doubt for a moment of the victory, and thought that Valencia and all the coast of Andalus would soon fall into his hands. The Almighty, however, in his infinite mercy, had decreed otherwise; and he permitted that division and discord should enter his council, and that the Christians should shortly after separate without striking a blow, or gaining the least advantage. In fact, when the Moslems of Valencia had seen Alfonso pitch his tents in sight of the walls, and were anticipating the fiercest attacks, the next morning saw the Christian king in full retreat with his innumerable host. The fact was, that when the Campeador heard that Alfonso was encamped before Valencia, his ire was excited, and he assembled his followers; for he looked upon Valencia as his own conquest, and on its king, Al-kádir, as his vassal. Perceiving, however, that he was not sufficiently strong to contend with Alfonso, and to compel him to give up his undertaking, he decided upon invading Alfonso’s dominions. He accordingly entered Castile, burning and destroying everything before him. This was one of the chief causes of the raising of the siege of Valencia, and the dispersion of the troops which came for its reduction; for when Alfonso heard of the march of the Campeador, he returned in all haste to Castile, although he could not overtake his enemy, the Campeador having by that time left the country. In the mean time the fleets of Genoa, Pisa, and other maritime states, which had come to assist in the siege of Valencia, seeing their hopes frustrated, sailed to Tortosa. They were there met by Ibn Radmir, Count of Barcelona (Sancho Ramirez), who, wishing to gain possession of that important city, engaged their services; but Almighty God was pleased to breathe courage into its defenders, and, after battering the walls for some time, the Christians were compelled to

\[\text{\footnotesize this time. Al-muktaalí-billah, son of Al-káyem-billah, the twenty-third Khalif of the house of 'Abbás, reigned then in the East; and he did not die till 487. He does not appear, moreover, to have had the surname of Abú-l-madhaffar (the father of the victorious). See Hist. Sar. p. 288, and Abú-l-fedá, An. Mosl. vol. iii. p. 291.}\]

\[\text{\footnotesize Perhaps the triumphal arch at the head of the bridge built by Trajan. See vol. i. p. 61.}\]
desist from their attacks, and to return to their homes in despair. After this the Campeador made another incursion into the territory of Valencia, and laid siege to the city; but the storm was a second time averted, by the inhabitants consenting to pay him an annual tribute of one thousand mithkâds.

In this year also, the Christians of every denomination, being possessed by a strong desire to conquer the whole of Andalus, attacked the Moslems in every province. King García\textsuperscript{33} laid siege to Almeria, Al-fânah,\textsuperscript{34} and Lorca, which he reduced to the last extremity. Alvar Yáñez attacked Murcia; the Campeador, Xativa. Al-mu'tamed then dispatched (against the latter) his son, Ar-râdhî, with three thousand cavalry. Ar-râdhî met the enemy of God, (may the curses of the Almighty come down upon him!) who, being only three hundred strong, fled precipitately on the approach of the Moslems; but they were, however, overtaken, their camp was plundered and destroyed, and numbers of them were either killed or remained prisoners in the hands of the true believers. About this time a bishop of the Franks built on the sea-shore the castle of Shashenah:\textsuperscript{35} the Almoravides, who were in Seville, being informed of it, their souls were inflamed with martial ardour. Having appointed as their general the Káyid Mohammed Ibn 'A'yeshah, they marched to Murcia, and meeting on their way to that city some of the enemy's forces, they routed them, killing and taking numbers of them prisoners. Ibn 'A'yeshah then proceeded to Murcia, which city he entered, depriving the ruler there of all command. From Murcia Ibn 'A'yeshah went to Denia, where he intended doing the same; but Ibn Mujâhid, who reigned in it, took to flight, and crossed the sea to Africa, where he placed himself under the protection of An-násir Ibn 'Alnás, a prince of the dynasty known as the Benî Hammâd of Senhâjah, by whom he was well received and hospitably entertained. Ibn 'A'yeshah then entered Denia. While he was commanding there, Ibn Jehâf, Kâdí of Valencia, came to ask him to go to that city with him, and take possession of it. Ibn 'A'yeshah would not quit Denia, but gave Ibn Jehâf some troops, under the command of a general of his, the Káyid Abû Nasr, when both marched to Valencia, and put to death King Al-kâdir in the year 485 (beginning Feb. 11, A.D. 1092). When the news of Al-kâdir's death reached the Campeador, who was then besieging Saragossa, his anger was kindled, and his soul was inflamed; for he considered the besieged city as his, and King Al-kâdir as his tributary; since, as we have already stated, that monarch paid him an annual tribute of one hundred thousand dinârs. The Campeador left Saragossa, and hastened to Valencia. Having arrived in sight of the city, he began to batter the walls, until, after a siege of twenty months, he stormed it, the inhabitants having been reduced to the last extremity through want of provisions. So great, they say, was the famine, that a mouse sold for one dinár. The taking of Valencia by the Campeador happened in the year 487 (beginning Jan. 30, A.D. 1094).

During these transactions a number of low, dissolute, and contemptible Moslems, with whom crime and impiety were a constant practice, deserted our ranks, and enlisted under

\textsuperscript{33} There was about this time no king of this name in Spain: Garcia III. of Navarre had died in 1054. The conquests here recorded were achieved by Sancho Ramirez, King of Aragon and Navarre, and Count of Barcelona, who is mentioned in the preceding page.

\textsuperscript{34} Al-fânah—which might also be read Shashenah.
the banners of the Campeador and other Christian chieftains. These wretches, who were at the time called Dawdyir (deserters), having swelled the ranks of the infidels, began, in union with them, to make incursions into the countries inhabited by the Moslems, polluting the harems, killing the men, and taking into captivity the women and children. Most of them went even so far as to forsake Islam, and to disregard the principal injunctions of our Prophet, selling their comrades and countrymen for a loaf of bread or a pitcher of wine; and seizing on the defenceless Moslems for the purpose of extorting from them heavy ransoms. If their prisoners, moreover, happened to be poor, they would cut out their tongues, or pluck off their eyelids, and then leave them exposed to be devoured by infuriated blood-hounds, or commit upon them other such like atrocities. The bands commanded by Alvar Yañez (may God send down his malediction on him and his followers!) were the most remarkable of all for their cruelty and excesses; for, on coming to a town, they would seize upon all its inhabitants and cut off the virilia of the men and the breasts of the women; the Moslems who served under the banners of the accursed Christian being the first to perpetrate these and other atrocious crimes, and to inflict such unparalleled cruelties upon the people of their faith.

In this manner war raged without intermission throughout the Mohammedan provinces, until the general of the Almoravides, Seyr Ibn Abi Bekr, having heard of the attacks made by the idolaters upon the worshippers of the true and only God, and of the ravages they were daily committing in their towns and provinces, collected his forces and sallied out against Alvar Yañez, whom he completely defeated, God making him his instrument to humble the arrogance and break down the courage of that accursed chieftain. The news of this success filled the Christians with consternation. They perceived, to their cost, how dangerous it was to come in contact with the Almoravides, and they accordingly desisted from their attacks. But Ibn 'Abbád and the other Andalusian princes hated Seyr and his followers; and such were their want of virtue and justice, their excessive ambition, and their dissensions, that they could not tolerate the presence of the Almoravides, and wished to get rid of them at any price: they began therefore to plot treason against them and to meditate their ruin. To this end they entered into a secret correspondence with Alfonso, and offered to deliver into his hands the whole of the Almoravides on condition that he would leave them unmolested in possession of their respective states, they paying him an annual tribute in token of vassalage. Alfonso having agreed to these propositions, every one of them prepared to carry their wicked and treacherous projects into execution. Accordingly, when the Amír of the Moslems crossed over to Andalus for the second\(^{36}\) time, for the purpose of prosecuting the holy war against the infidels, they threw every obstacle in his way. They compelled him to besiege Malaga, Granada, and Almeria, and raised up against him enemies in other places, in order that their plans might be better accomplished, and the hopes of the enemy of God realized. However, the Amír of the Moslems marched on Granada, and encamped in its vicinity. 'Abdullah Ibn Bádis Ibn Habús, who reigned in that city, at first thought of resisting. His mother said to him, “Go out and salute thy uncle Yúsuf.” 'Abdullah followed her

---

\(^{36}\) Instead of 'second,' read 'third.'
advice, and went out. He had saluted the Amir with all due respect, and was preparing to retire, when he was prevented, and conducted by the orders of Yusuf to a separate tent, where heavy irons were put on his feet. The Amir then rode on to Granada, and took possession of it without resistance. The people, far from blaming Yusuf for this treacherous act, and his device to secure the person of 'Abdullah, and gain possession of his capital, were rejoiced at it, because he had run counter to the designs of his secret enemies, and defeated their plans. But the fact is, that Yusuf was ignorant of the conspiracy formed against him, and that, when he crossed to Andalus this time, he came with a full intention to disclose before the Moslems the shameful conduct and wicked practices of their rulers, and to look for an opportunity to lay his hand on their dominions.

After the taking of Granada, Yusuf sent an army to Almeria. Ibn Samadeh, who commanded there, waited not its approach, but took to sea, and went to place himself under the protection of An-nasir Ibn Al-mansur, a Sultán of the Bení Hammád, who not only received him kindly, and entertained him with magnificence, but went so far as to confer great favours on all those persons who came in his suite.

The Amir then sent Seyr to Seville, with instructions to take the command from the hands of Al-mu'tamed Ibn 'Abbád, and, if possible, to secure his person; bidding him put to death such as should oppose him, whether citizens or soldiers. Some authors pretend that the Amir issued no such orders, as he had, upon a certain occasion, solemnly promised Al-mu'tamed upon his oath, never to dispossess him, unless the Theologians, the Kádis, the officers of the troops, and the principal citizens, should desire him to do so. However, Seyr marched to Seville, which he besieged and took, depriving Al-mu'tamed Ibn 'Abbád of the command. He then did the same with Ibn Al-afttas, King of Badajoz, and reduced the whole of Al-gharb (the Western Provinces) under his sway. The cities of Murcia, Almeria, Denia, and Xativa, had already fallen into the hands of another of his generals, the Káyid Ibn 'A'yeshah, as before related. After these conquests the Amir of the Moslems crossed over to the opposite coast.

In the year 490 (beginning December 18, A.D. 1096,) the Amir of the Moslems visited Andalus for the third time, and fixed his residence in Cordova. Having, whilst there, heard that Alfonso was marching against him, he exclaimed, "I shall never meet him again as long as I live, because defeats are creatures of God, and I gave him a sufficiency the year I met him at Zalakah." I will, however, send my generals against him, with my best troops; and if God has decreed that they should be defeated, I will be behind them like a cloak, to cover their retreat." He accordingly collected a numerous army of Almoravides, Arabs, and Andalusians, from the eastern and western parts of the country, the command of which he gave to Mohammed Ibnu-l-haj, one of his generals. The two hosts met at a place called Kabethuwah, where there was manoeuvring and charging until Almighty God was pleased to throw into confusion the vanguard of the enemy, and they fled before the Moslems, who pursued them closely, sword in hand, dealing death amongst them. After this the Moslems

---

87 فان الهزائم مكثولة وقد كان منا خطأ في تقلبه سنة الزوالفة
88 كثرة

VOL. II.
returned to Cordova safe, and loaded with plunder. The Amír was greatly delighted at the victory, and made preparations to return to his dominions across the sea. Before his departure for Africa, Yúsuf had sent an army, under the command of Mohammed Ibn 'A'yeshah, to make war on the infidels in the neighbourhood of Konkah (Cuenca). Mohammed met there the accursed Alvar Yafiez, defeated him, and plundered and destroyed his camp, after which the Almoravides returned home victorious, receiving every where on their passage the congratulations of the inhabitants.

Mohammed’s next expedition was directed towards Jezírah Shukar (the island on the river Xucar), which the Christians had attacked some time before. He there fell in with a division of the army of the Campeador, which he almost exterminated, as few escaped on that memorable day from the swords of the Almoravides. When the news of this disaster was brought to the Campeador, he shortly after died of sorrow and disappointment. (May God not show him mercy!)

In the year 493 (beginning Nov. 16, A.D. 1099,) the Amír Yahya Ibn Abí Bekr, son of the Amír of the Moslems, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, crossed over to Andalus for the purpose of prosecuting the holy war against the infidels. He came, accompanied by the Amír Seyr Ibn Abí Bekr and by Mohammed Ibnu-l-háj, at the head of their respective forces; and all three marched to Toledo, which they besieged, making incursions into the neighbouring districts. In this manner they took several castles, made numerous prisoners, and collected considerable spoil; after which they returned victorious [to Africa].

In the year 494 (beginning November 5, A.D. 1100,) the Amír Yahya Ibn Abí Bekr again crossed over to Andalus, with a numerous army, to make war on the enemy of God. This time he marched against Valencia, which he besieged for seven months; until Alfonso, perceiving the sufferings of the garrison, and being fearful of the consequences, arrived with a powerful army, and, having taken out all the Christians who were within, set fire to the city and abandoned it, the Almoravides taking possession of it immediately after. By the reduction of Valencia, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín saw himself master of the whole of Andalus, with the exception of Saragossa, which remained in the hands of its king, Al-musta'in Ibn Hüd. The Almoravides dared not molest this prince, on account of the great distance of his kingdom, and of his being in league with the Christians, whose tributary he was.

After this, Modhdeli, who had remained as Governor of Valencia, attacked the territory of Barcelona, pulled down the churches, made the belfries shake to their foundations, burnt the towns and hamlets, dispersed their garrisons, and stormed the castles; after which he returned to Valencia, the hands of the Moslems being filled with the spoils of the infidel.

---

29  جَزِيرَةٌ نَصْر — but I have substituted بَرْجُولَةُ.

30  جَزِيرَةٌ شَتْر — now Alcira, a corruption from Al-jezírah. See vol. i. p. 376, Note 14. In the Cronica General, (fo. oxxiii. verso,) this place is called Aljezira de Xucar.

41 According to the Christian authorities the Cid died during the siege of Valencia by the Almoravides in 1099 (a. n. 493).

42 This is el Rey Bucar of the Cronica General, fo. oxxxix. verso, et passim.

43 The text reads بَنِي جَلْفَوْنَة — but I have substituted بَرْجُولَةُ.
Among other valuable objects taken on this occasion were the bells, the crosses, and vases of the churches, all of which were set in silver and pure gold. The bells he caused to be suspended from the ceiling of the principal mosque at Valencia, to be used as lamps.

In the same year 'Alí Ibn-1-háj sallied from Cordova, taking with him Ibn Yakhún and his division. They marched together to the land of Castile, where they were met by the accursed Errink (Henry of Besançon) at the head of considerable forces, when they fought with him the battles of extermination. After this another general of the Almoravides made a foray into the territory of Káyid Abú Mohammed Ibn Fátimah. The Amír Modhdelí appointed to be Governor of Telemsán, in the room of Táshefín Ibn Yatanghmor, with whom he was displeased, owing to his intimacy and close connexion with the dynasty of the Bení Hammád.

In the same year, that is, in 497, there came to the Amír of the Moslems letters from Al-musta'ín Ibn Húd, King of Saragossa, imploring his help against the tyrant Alfonso, who kept him closely besieged in his capital, and had nearly reduced him to the last extremity. Agreeably to his wishes, the Amír sent him one thousand picked horsemen, under the orders of the Káyid 'Abdullah Ibn Fátimah, who not only relieved Al-musta'ín from his perilous situation, but made an inroad into the country of the infidels, whence he returned victorious and loaded with spoil.

In the same year (A.H. 497) the Káyid Mohammed Ibn 'A'yeshah met the enemies of God at Fás Al-lej (Elche?), close to Balátt Al-arús, and gained a signal victory over them. He also took from them the town of Suleymán, and the hands of his men were filled with the spoil taken from the infidels.

In the same year (A.H. 497) the Amír of the Moslems arrived in Granada, with his son, the Amír 'Alí, for the purpose of having him sworn to and acknowledged as sovereign of Andalus. This being done, he returned to his dominions in Africa, after subjecting to his rule the whole of this island, with the exception of Saragossa, which still remained in the hands of Al-musta'ín.

In the year 500 (beginning Sept. 1, A.D. 1106,) died the Amír of the Moslems, Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín. He was succeeded by his son 'Alí, who, immediately after his accession,
dispatched to Andalus a chosen body of troops under the command of two of his generals, the Káyid Abú Suleymán and the Káyid Abú 'Imrán, two brothers, who were the sons of Táreshená. These chiefs marched against the districts of Santa María and Ar-rayáhir, where, as well as in many other parts of the enemy’s territory, they made several successful inroads, whereby the hands of their men were filled with plunder.

In the ensuing year, 501, (beginning August 21, A.D. 1107,) Alfonso called together the people of his kingdom, and, having mustered a large army, invaded the eastern provinces of Andalus. He was met by the Amír Temím, when the two hosts manoeuvred, skirmished, fought, and destroyed each other, until God Almighty was pleased graciously to grant the victory to the Moslems, and to permit that the arrogant Christian should take to flight, after losing one of his sons, and being himself wounded in the onset. (May the curses of God rest upon them both!). Great was the chastisement inflicted upon the enemy of God on this memorable occasion; since, between those killed in the engagement, and the prisoners, who were very numerous, the army of the infidel king was annihilated. The Moslems returned to their homes victorious, elated with success, and proud of having received so signal a proof of the Almighty’s favour; while the Christian tyrant (may the curses of God fall upon his head!) retired to his dominions, confused and humiliated at his defeat, and broken-hearted at the loss of his son. Three months after these events the accursed Alfonso died, God being pleased to deliver the Moslems from his mischief. His body was carried to Castile on the shoulders of his own men, and there buried by the side of those of his ancestors. He left no male child; but he had a daughter, who succeeded him in the kingdom, which she administered at first with great firmness and skill. But, fearing lest her dominions should be invaded by some Christian or Mohammedan king among her neighbours, she secretly sent to the son of Ramiro (Alfonso), and offered him her hand. The proposition was accepted, and the marriage took place: but no happiness or joy ensued from it; for they had been married but a short time, when discord broke out between them, and they separated on the worst possible terms. Her husband then left her, and retired into his own dominions; and having there called together his vassals, he invaded the kingdom of his wife, who, on her side, had also taken up arms, and went out to meet him. In this manner they waged a desultory war against each other, until the queen gained a signal victory over her husband, and routed his army, with the death of upwards of three thousand of his bravest warriors. After this the queen espoused one of the counts of her own kingdom, and had by him one son, called As-soleytán (the little king). On the death of the queen, the Christians chose her

47 The word is, doubtless, corrupted in the text.

48 This battle, at which Alfonso himself was not present, was fought near the town of Uklísh, now Uclés, in the province of Toledo. The prince’s name was Sancho, and he was the king’s only son.

49 The death of Alfonso happened in July, A.D. 1109. (See Mairana, lib. x. cap. viii.) He was buried in the monastery of Sahagun.

50 Doña Urraca, who married Alfonso I., King of Aragon and Navarre. She was then the widow of Raymond, Count of Burgundy.

51 Count Pedro de Lara.
APPENDIX.

son for their king, notwithstanding that the right to the throne came to him on the mother's side, not on that of his father.

In the year 503 (beginning July 30, A.D. 1109,) the Amir 'Alí Ibn Yúsuf crossed over to Andalus for the purpose of waging war with the infidels. He landed at Algesiras with a numerous and well appointed army, and took the road to Toledo. Arrived before that city, he encamped in front of the principal gate, and fixed his quarters at a well known pleasure-house outside the walls. He then made himself master of some of the outer defences, and ravaged the neighbouring districts by means of bodies of light cavalry, which he sent in various directions. Seeing this, the Christians fled for refuge to the castles, towers, and fortresses nearest to them: terror then seized on the Castilians, and fear lodged in their hearts; for they doubted not that the Amir would prosecute his victorious career and pounce upon them, and demolish the places whither they had fled to escape his vengeance. However, it was not as they apprehended; for the Amir, having suddenly raised the siege, approached the sea, and crossed over to the seat of his African dominions.

In the same year, Errink (Henry of Besançon) and the son of Ramiro (Alfonso I. of Aragon) (may the Almighty's curses fall upon the heads of both!) invaded the territory of Al-musta'in Ibn Húd with an army, the numbers of which are only known to God. Al-musta'in hastened to the defence of his states, but fate had decided against him, and he fell a martyr in an encounter with the Christians. (May God have mercy on him!). After this, the son of Ramiro besieged Saragossa for a whole month, during which time the inhabitants were exposed to all manner of misery and tribulation. until the people of the town, unable to withstand his attacks any longer, consented to surrender on condition that those among the inhabitants who chose to remain might do so unmolested on the payment of a certain annual tribute which was stipulated; and that those who preferred leaving the town should be allowed to go to whatever part of the country, inhabited by the Moslems, they most liked, with all their goods and chattels. It was further stipulated that the Christians should dwell in the city itself, and that such among the Moslems, as chose to remain, should inhabit the suburb called Rabadhú-d-dabbághín (the suburb of the tanners); that if a Christian recognised among the inhabitants a runaway slave, the Moslem should not be given up to him, but should be free, as if he had never been taken, and should live in the full enjoyment of his rights and the exercise of his religion, his master possessing no dominion whatever over him. These conditions being agreed to by both parties, and each having promised on oath to fulfil them, the Moslems gave up the keys of the city to the son of Ramiro. Thus was the mighty city of Saragossa, one of the vital members of the corrupted body of Islám, torn away, never to form again an integral part of it. There is no power but in God! the Almighty, the Illustrious! He whose wisdom is unbounded, and whose impenetrable decrees no creature on the earth can pretend to unravel!

No sooner had the accursed Christians taken possession of the city, than the greater part of the inhabitants fled to other parts of the country occupied by the Moslems. They say,

---

23 Now Las Casas de la Reyna, formerly a villa belonging to the Bení Dhí-n-nún kings of that city. See vol. i. pp. 239, 384.
that the number of persons who left Saragossa on this occasion exceeded fifty thousand, between great and small, males and females. When all this multitude were ready to depart, the Christian king rode out of the city with his officers and escort: having appeared in front of the emigrants, he ordered them to form into lines, and to exhibit before him whatever property, whether large or small, each man carried with him. This being done, there were shown treasures without computation; and yet, strange to say, though the king knew very well that as long as he lived his eyes would never again feast on such a mass of riches, he refrained from taking any, and said to them, "Had I not asked to see the property each of you carries with him, you might have said, 'The king knew not what we had, otherwise he would not have let us go so easily.' Now you may go whither you please in perfect security." The king, moreover, sent a body of his own troops to escort the emigrants to the frontiers of his dominions, which they all reached in safety, and without being subjected to the payment of any other tax or tribute than two mithkās, which every man, woman, or child was obliged to pay before starting. From that day, until that of his death, God permitted that this insolent Christian should always be victorious against the Moslems. But to return.

Some time before the city surrendered to the Christians, a son of the king, Al-musta'īn Ibn Hūd, whose surname was 'Imādu-d-daulah (the column of the state), left Saragossa secretly, and took refuge in a neighbouring castle named Rotah. This castle, which was exceedingly strong, was situated on the top of a high inaccessible mountain: so high was the mountain, that it looked as if it were borrowing the reins of the sky. The fortress had been erected by his father, Al-musta'īn, who had filled it with stores, and provided it with every thing necessary for a long siege: it was supplied with water by means of a subterraneous passage built of solid masonry, leading from the castle down to the river by upwards of four hundred steps, so that the garrison could never be short of water. In this place 'Imādu-d-daulah passed a few years, secure from the infidels, until death came to surprise him. (May God have mercy on him!).

'Imādu-d-daulah was succeeded by his son Ahmed, who took the surname of Al-muntaser. This prince once received an embassy from the Christian tyrant, Al-enberatūr (the emperor), surnamed 'the little Sultán.' The message was thus conceived: "If thou wilt give me possession of Rotah, I will give thee instead more extensive and better dominions in Castile, which shall bring thee closer to the western provinces of Andalus, inhabited by thy countrymen. I will then place myself at the head of my troops, and we will both make an incursion into those districts, and reduce them into obedience to thee. Those towns that shall voluntarily acknowledge thee as their lord, shall hereafter remain under thy dominion and authority, and I promise thee to defend them against all aggressors, whether Moslems or Christians, and to be unto them as a kind and affectionate father. I hope not one will resist thee, oppressed as they are by the Almoravides, and subjected to all manner of indignities by them. They all detest their rule, and wish for the restoration of the Mohammedián empire, now prostrate. Were the Almoravides to lay their hands on thy person, there would remain not one man whose call they might obey, thou being the only descendant from their

---

83 روطة, Now Roda.
APPENDIX.

“ancient kings in the whole of Andalus.” These words lodged in Ahmed’s head, and had the desired effect upon his mind: he delivered his fortress into the hands of Alfonso, and the king gave him an equivalent in towns and lands. After this, he placed himself at the head of a numerous and well appointed army, and invaded the Mohammedan settlements in the western provinces of Andalus, as he had promised. His hopes and those of Ahmed, however, were far from being realized; for, wherever they went, they met with resistance and ill-will, the inhabitants deserting their homes at their approach. Not a soul stirred to do him homage; not a hamlet, of the many traversed in their march, greeted them; nor did the news of their arrival spread over the country, as had been anticipated. The people were, no doubt, afraid lest by swearing obedience to Ahmed they should fall a prey to the Christians who came with him, and the whole should be a device to catch them and put them to death. Had not these fears preyed on their minds, they would undoubtedly have hastened to do homage to Ahmed; for they were anxiously expecting his arrival, and he had, no doubt, a considerable party in the country. As it was, he failed most completely in his attempt, and he had to return home more dejected and low-spirited than Abú Ghabashán himself.44

In the year 507 (beginning June 17, A.D. 1113,) the Amír Seyr Ibn Abí Bekr and the Almoravide Modhdelí made an incursion into the territory of Toledo, and appeared in sight of that city. Having there divided their armies into several small detachments, they sent them out in various directions, and began pulling down houses, killing the inhabitants, burning their fields, and laying waste every thing before them. Alvar Yafiez then sallied out at the head of ten thousand men at arms; but he was met by the Moslems, who defeated him, with the loss of seven hundred of his mounted followers. In the same year a war broke out between the Castilians and the son of Ramiro (Alfonso), when both parties made one another taste of the cup of perdition. In one of these encounters the accursed Alvar Yafie was killed, and his soul was immediately consigned by the Almighty to the raging fire of hell.

In the year 508 (beginning June 6, A.D. 1114,) the people of Pisa and Genoa assembled together, and, having fitted out a fleet of three hundred sail, made for the island of Yébisah (Iviza), which they took and plundered, making captives of the inhabitants. Iviza is an island close to, and under the jurisdiction of, Mallorca. From Iviza the Christians sailed to the latter island, which they attacked both by sea and land.

The island of Mallorca had for many years been governed by independent chieftains. The first was an Andalusian named Al-murtalí, who, on the overthrow of the Umeyyah dynasty, when the governors rose in every province, followed their example, assumed the supreme power, and reigned for a while independent in the island. He was succeeded at his death by one of his eunuchs, whose name was Mubashsher, but who assumed on his accession to power the honorific surname of Násiru-d-daulah (the preserver of the state). This Mubashsher was

44—Abú Ghabashán was the door-keeper of the Ka‘bah whilst the custody of that building was in the hands of the tribe of Khází, to which he himself belonged. Having attended a convivial meeting, he got so intoxicated with wine that one of the party, named Ka‘í Ibn Keláb, persuaded him to exchange his keys for a skin of wine, which he did: immediately after which ‘Abdu-d-dá‘ír, son of Ka‘í, repaired to Mekka, and gave them to the tribe of Koraysh. The humiliation and disappointment of Abú Ghabashán, when he recovered and found himself without the keys intrusted to his keeping, afterwards became proverbial among the Arabs. See Ath-thá‘lebi, Thímrú-I-koláb, &c., fo. 27.
a native of Kal'ah Himyar in the territory of Lerida: when a youth, he had been taken prisoner by the enemy, who made a eunuch of him. It happened that Al-murtadhí once sent an ambassador to the court of the Christian king to settle various matters pending between them: whilst there, the ambassador made the acquaintance of Mubashsher, and being much struck with his affable manners, his intelligence, and his ready wit, paid his ransom, and took him with him on his return to Mallorca: he then presented him to Al-murtadhí, who was highly pleased with him, placed him near his person, gave him his confidence, and always found him a zealous and trusty servant. At the death of his master, Mubashsher succeeded him. He governed with moderation and justice, was noble-minded and generous, and possessed many virtues and noble qualities: he was still reigning when, as already related, the people of Pisa and Genoa landed on the island, and besieged his capital; and he not only exhibited the greatest courage during the siege, but his perseverance and fortitude in making war on the infidels were beyond all praise. Mubashsher died while the Christians were still on the island. He was succeeded by a relative of his, named Abú Rabi' Suleymán, who followed in his steps, and stoutly defended the island, until the Christians gained possession of it. Some time before his death, Násiru-d-daulah, perceiving that he could not long withstand the attacks of the enemy, decided on writing to the Amir of the Moslems, imploring his assistance. Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Maymún, the captain of a carabel then in the port, having consented to be the bearer of the message, every precaution was taken for his leaving the island unperceived by the enemy. Ibn Maymún sallied secretly and at night from the arsenal: his flight being discovered by the Christians, some of their galleys weighed anchor, and went off in pursuit of him; but, after a chase of nearly ten miles, Ibn Maymún, protected by night, contrived to escape, and the Christians, despairing of success, returned to their anchorage in sight of Mallorca. Ibn Maymún, moreover, arrived safe in Africa, and delivered his letter to the Amir of the Moslems, who issued orders for the immediate fitting out of three hundred sail. The commands of the Amir were punctually executed, and in a very short time the above number of vessels, together with many others which happened to be ready on the arrival of Ibn Maymún, put to sea. No sooner were the Christians made aware of the departure of so formidable an armament, than they desisted from their undertaking, and put off to sea, taking away with them, however, so much plunder, and so many captives, that they departed highly satisfied and content. When the Moslem fleet arrived in sight of the island, they found the city in ruins, and the streets deserted; every thing round it bore the appearance of desolation and ruin. Seeing this, Ibn Táfertás, who came in command of the fleet, ordered the Almoravides, and the other soldiers and sailors who composed the expedition, to set about rebuilding the city. This was done, when the people who had fled to the mountains returned: the city was rebuilt as before, and repeopled; many of the soldiers, who had accompanied the expedition, agreeing to settle in it. The fleet then returned to the port whence it had been taken. As the Christians were returning to their country, they were assailed by a storm, which separated their galleys, and cast four of their number on the coast of Denia; which being perceived by the people of that town, they went out in chase of them, and succeeded in capturing three, and sinking the other.

---

52 No doubt, the Count of Barcelona. 56 The island had in the mean time been taken and plundered by the Christians.
APPENDIX.

APPENDIX D.

Extracts from the history of the Berbers by Abú Zeyd 'Abdu-rahmán Ibn Khaldún (Brit. Mus. No. 9575), respecting the conquests and settlements of the Al-muwáhhedún (or Almohades) in Spain.

This part of Al-makkari’s narrative is so short, his information so scanty and unsatisfactory, that I have considered it necessary to translate here such passages from the work of the above celebrated and most accurate historian as were likely to throw a light upon the events recorded in the body of this work, especially as the period to which they relate is perhaps the most interesting, as it is the most obscure, in the annals of Mohammedan Spain.

An account of the conquest of Andalus by the Almohades, and the events attending thereon.

Fo. 106, verso.—When the intelligence of the death of Táshefín Ibn 'Alí, and the siege of Fez by the Almohades, was received by the Almoravides of Andalus, 'Ali Ibn 'Isa Ibn Maymún, the commander of their fleet, shook off their yoke, and embraced the party of the Almohades. Having risen in revolt at the island of Kádis (Cadiz), he crossed over to Africa, joined 'Abdu-l-múmen before Fez, and placed himself under the orders of that Sultán, whom he had previously caused to be proclaimed from [the pulpit of] the great mosque at Cadiz; this being the first proclamation that was made in Andalus for the Almohades. This happened in 540 (beginning June 23, A.D. 1145). Ahmed Ibn Kasí, Lord of Mirtoláh (Mertola), was the next chieftain to proclaim in Andalus the supremacy of the Almohades. This done, he sent Abú Bekr Ibn Khanisen with a message to 'Abdu-l-múmen. Abú Bekr met that Sultán near Telemsán, and delivered into his hands his master’s credentials; but 'Abdu-l-múmen, being dissatisfied with the manner in which the name of the Mahdí was mentioned in his letter, sent no reply to it. Subsequently to this, Seddaray Ibn Wazír, Lord of Badajoz,

1 The last of the Almoravide Sultáns. He was put to death near Wahrán (Oran) on the 27th day of Ramádhán, 539 (March 23rd, 1145).

2 Ibn Khalidún treats of this chieftain in his historical Prolegomena, sect. iii., in the chapter entitled فَنِّي أَنَّ الْدِّعَوَةَ الْدِّينِيَّةَ مِنْ غَيْرِ صَبْبَةِ لَظَّمُ (That religious revolutions unsupported by clanship do not succeed). He says that his entire name was Abú-l-kásim Ahmed Ibn-l-huseyn Ibn Qasí, (elsewhere written كِسَى and كُسُا Kusa); that he made himself conspicuous among his countrymen for the austerity of his life, and wrote a work entitled نَقِيبُ الْعَلَمِ الْبَلْغَةَ في النَّصُوصَ (The putting off of the two slippers on the doctrines of the Sáfiś); that he called the people to [the knowledge of] truth, and was followed by numerous disciples, to whom he gave the name of Al-murábatún. He was himself a disciple of Abá Hámíd Al-ghazzálí; and, as such, the doctrines which he preached were not dissimilar to those of the Mahdí. Profiting by the civil wars which distracted Mohammedan Spain at the commencement of the twelfth century, he made himself master of a considerable portion of Al-gharb (Algarbe).

3 بِنْ خَنْيَسٍ سَدْرَاهَيْ بْنِ وَزِيرٍ—whom Conde calls Sidray and Sid-Ray. See vol. ii. pp. 276, 320, et passim.

VOL. II.
APPENDIX.

Beja, and the western districts of Andalus, having quarrelled with Ahmed Ibn Kasí, made war against him, and came off victorious, taking from him the city of Mertola; upon which the latter chieftain, who was on intimate terms with Ibn Maymún [*'Ali Ibn 'Isa*], decided to cross over to Africa, and [following the example of his friend] to put himself under the command of 'Abdu-l-múmen, who had just taken possession of Morocco. Accordingly, Ibn Kasí landed at Ceuta, where he resided some time: thence Yúsuf Ibn Makhlúf [the governor] sent him on with an escort to the camp of 'Abdu-l-múmen, whom he saw and spoke to, inviting him to undertake the conquest of Andalus, and to expel the Almoravides therefrom. 'Abdu-l-múmen listened to his propositions, and sent an army of Almohades under the command of Berráž Ibn Mohammed Al-masíffí, the same who towards the close of the reign of Táshefín deserted the cause of that Sultán, and went over to the Almohades. To this general, 'Abdu-l-múmen intrusted the subjection of the Lamtúnites of Andalus, as well as that of the other rebels in that country who acknowledged no authority at all: he re-inforced his army with another division, under the command of Abú 'Imrán Músa Ibn Sa'íd, and subsequently with a second, at the head of which he placed 'Omar Ibn Sáleb As-senhájí. On the landing of these forces on the coast of Andalus, their first destination was against a rebel named Abú-l-ghamr Ibn Gharún, who had taken possession of Xerez and Ronda. After the reduction of these, the army marched to Liber (Niebla), which city was in the hands of another rebel named Yúsuf Al-betrúhí, who hastened to make his submission: thence they proceeded to Mertola, which city [was not attacked], being considered by the Almohades as under their rule, owing to Ibn Kasí [its former lord] having previously subscribed to the dogma of the unity of God [as preached by the Mahdí]. The army then continued its march to Shelb (Silves), which city was taken by storm, and given over to Ibn Kasí: thence they directed their course towards Beja and Badajoz; but the lord of those two cities, Seddaray Ibn Wázír, hastened to place himself under their rule. This done, Berráž retired with his army to Mertola, where he wintered, until, on the approach of the fine season, he sallied out to lay siege to Seville. On his march to that city he received the allegiance of the garrisons of Tablada and Hisn Al-kasr, which submitted to him. Being afterwards joined by the forces of several chieftains who had before this risen in open rebellion against the Almoravides, Berráž invested Seville by sea and land, and took that mighty city in the month of Sha'bán of the year 541 (Jan. or Feb. A.D. 1147). The Almoravides who composed the garrison fled to Carmona, not without being closely pursued by the victors, who dealt death among them. In the confusion occasioned by the entrance of the Almohades into Seville, a son of the Kádí Abú Bekr Ibnu-l-arabí was unintentionally killed by one of the besieging army.

On the taking of Seville, an embassy composed of several distinguished individuals, at the head of whom was the Kádí Abú Bekr Ibnu-l-arabí, was sent to Africa to inform 'Abdu-l-

---

5 This name is differently written in various parts of this work, thus: 
-Ibn Hamyd (vol. ii. p. 325,) and Abu-l-camar (p. 313). He had been governor of 
and Xerez and Arco for Ibn Hamdi, King of Cordova, and had taken Ronda from Akhî Ibn Idrîs. See Casti (vol. ii. p. 56).

6 No doubt, a mistake for Tablada, unless it be Tallada.

7 The author of the Kartitá places this event in 540.
múmen of the success of his arms. The messengers reached Morocco, and presented themselves to the Sultán, who accepted of the obedience they tendered to him in the name of their fellow-citizens, and dismissed them with suitable presents and pensions [upon his treasury]. This took place in the year 542 (beginning June 1, A.D. 1147). As Abú Bekr was returning to his native country, he died on the road, and was buried at Fez.

It happened about this time that two brothers of the Mahdí, named 'Abdu-l-'azîz and 'Isa, who resided at Seville, and held high command in the army, were guilty of great cruelty and excess: they stretched out their hands over the inhabitants, seized on their property, shed their blood, and practised every iniquity and injustice. Having conceived an enmity against Yúsuf Al-betrûhî, governor of Niebla, who was then dwelling in Seville, they formed the design of riddling themselves of him by treason; but that chief, having received intelligence of their plans in time, quitted the city, and took refuge in the capital of his dominions, whence he expelled the Almohades, and declared himself in open revolt against 'Abdu-l-múmen. He then sent on [troops] to Tabладa and Hisn Al-kasr, [of which he gained possession], and put himself in communication with the Almoravides on the opposite shore. His example was speedily followed by other chieftains: Ibn Kâsî rose at Silves; 'Alî Ibn 'Isa Ibn Maymûn did the same at Cadiz; Mohammed Ibn 'Alî Iânu-l-hajjâm at Badajoz. In short, the only chief who, on this occasion, remained faithful to the Almohades, was Abû-l-ghâmr Ibn Gharûn, governor of Xerez, Ronda, and the neighbouring districts, which he continued to hold for them and in their name. On the other hand, Ibn Ghâniyyah, the Almoravide, took possession of Algesiras, whence he stirred the inhabitants of Ceuta to rebel, as before stated.8 Owing to these circumstances, the situation of the Almohades at Seville became so precarious, that 'Isa and 'Abdu-l-'azîz, the two brothers of the Mahdí, with a cousin of theirs, named Islîfîn, and such as followed their party, were compelled to leave that city, and retire to the mountains of Bish'ter.9 Here they were joined by Abû-l-ghâmr Ibn Gharûn at the head of his forces, when it was agreed among them to lay siege to Algesiras; which was done, until that city was taken by storm, the Almoravides, who composed the garrison, being all put to the sword. After this exploit, the brothers of the Mahdí crossed over to Morocco, and 'Abdu-l-múmen sent Yúsuf Ibn Suleymân to Seville with an army of Almohades. On his arrival there, Yúsuf took the command from the hands of the governor, Berráz Ibn Mohammd, whom he allowed, however, to retain the office of tax-collector. He then went out against Al-betrûhî, whose states of Niebla and Tabladâ he speedily reduced. The same fate befel Ibn Kasî, whose city, Silves, was taken from him. After these exploits, Yúsuf [Ibn Suleymân] set out, though it was winter,10 against 'Isa Ibn Maymûn, Lord of Santa Maria, whom he compelled to return under the obedience of the Almohades, and to join him with

8 The author of the *Kartîtsâ* speaks of an individual named Abú 'Abdillâh Iânu-l-hajjâm, who was appointed governor of Badajoz in A.H. 501 by 'Alî Ibn Yúsuf, the second Sultân of the Almoravides. *Iânu-l-hajjâm* means 'the son of the surgeon or barber,' whence are derived the Spanish words *alféyence* and *alhayence*, which have still a similar meaning.

9 This happened in A.H. 543; the Kâdî 'Iyâdh, who was governor of the city, revolting against 'Abdu-l-múmen, and proclaiming Ibn Ghâniyyah.

10—جبيل بشتر—Between Malaga and Ronda.

11 Such I believe to be the meaning which the author intended to convey by these words: "ثمن عماد يوسف علي صدر"
his forces. Mohammed Ibn 'Ali Ibnu-l-hajjám, governor of Bada'aj, having sent him an
embassy with presents, Yúsuf accepted of them, and granted him pardon in the Sultán's
name. After this he returned to Seville.

During these transactions the Christian king (Alfonso II. of Castile), having mustered all
his forces, marched against Yahya Ibn 'Ali Ibn Gháníyyah, Lord of Cordova, whose friend
and ally he had been on a former occasion, but whom he now attacked. After ravaging the
territories subject to his rule, Alfonso appeared in sight of Cordova, and besieged Ibn
Gháníyyah in his capital. In this manner the Christians made themselves masters of Lisbon,
Tortosa,19 Lerida, Fraga, Santa Maria, and other cities or fortresses belonging to the Moslems
of Andalus. In this conflict Ibn Gháníyyah began to look about him for the means of
increasing the number of his warriors, and expelling the insolent Christians from before the
walls of Cordova: to this end he sent a message to Berráz Ibn Mohammed, the general of
the Almohades, asking for an interview. The meeting having taken place at Ezija, Berráz
agreed to assist him with the troops under his command, on condition that he (Ibn Ghá-
niyah) would immediately put him in possession of Cordova and Carmona, in compensation
for which he was to receive Jaen. Ibn Gháníyyah having accepted of these terms, a treaty
was immediately drawn up between the two chiefs, and sent over to Africa for the con-
firmation of 'Abdu-l-múmen. When this arrived, Ibn Gháníyyah gave up Cordova to Berráz,
and retired to Jaen. He was there besieged by the Christian king; but Ibn Gháníyyah
having treacherously seized on one of his counts,18 and confined him to the castle of Ibn
Sa'íd (Alcalá de Aben Zaid), the Christian king was compelled to give up his undertaking,
and retire from before Jaen. After this, Ibn Gháníyyah repaired to Granada, which city was
in the hands of Maymún Ibn Bedr Al-lamtúnî, who commanded a body of Almoravides.
Ibn Gháníyyah went thither for the purpose of inducing that chieftain to come to an agree-
ment with the Almohades, as he himself had done; but all his arguments were in vain, and
Maymún persevered in his rebellion. Shortly after, Ibn Gháníyyah died at that city in the
month of Sha'bán of the year 543 (January, A.D. 1149):14 he was buried there, his tomb
being well known to this day.

12 The text reads طرطوسة Tarusah, which is evidently a mistake for طرطوسة Tortosa, unless it be meant for
Tarzóna, which can hardly be supposed. The cities mentioned in this passage were not reduced by Alfonso II., as here
intimated. Lisbon and Santa Maria [de Algarbe] were taken by Alfonso I. of Portugal, in 1147, or 542 of the Hijra, and
the other three by Raymond V., Count of Barcelona, in 1148-9.

13 This was Count Don Manrique de Lara. Ibn Gháníyyah sent a messenger to Alfonso, inviting him to Jaen, of which
city he offered him the possession. Alfonso accepted the proposition, but did not go in person. He sent thither the above-
mentioned nobleman, at the head of a body of cavalry: on his arrival at Jaen, Don Manrique was made a prisoner, and
confined to a castle.

14 According to Ibn Dhikhi-b-salát and the author of the Karttót, Ibn Gháníyyah died a natural death on Friday, the 24th
of Sha'bán, 543 (Jan. 7, A.D. 1149), and " was buried within the Kasabah, and opposite to the tomb of Bada' Ibn
Habús." Conde, though professing to translate the narrative of the last-mentioned writer, makes Ibn Gháníyyah die in a
skirmish with the Almohades. This is not all: he translates the following في القصة بارًا قبر باديس
thus: 'enterraronle en Cazbe Baz en la Makbira de Badís ibn Habús Rey de Granada.' (He was buried at
Cazbe Baz, in the cemetery of Bada' Ibn Habús, King of Granada.)
APPENDIX.

In the mean time the Christian king, thinking the opportunity a favourable one again to attack Cordova, marched his army thither, and laid siege to it. When the intelligence reached Seville, the Almohades immediately sent to its relief Abú-l-ghamr Ibn Gharún, who, having made a junction with the troops of Yúsuf Al-betrúhí, governor of Niebla, proceeded by forced marches to his destination. 'Abdu-l-múmen, who had likewise been informed of the perilous situation of the Cordovans, had also sent thither an army of Almohades under the command of Yahya Ibn Yaghmúr. This general, therefore, having joined on the way the forces commanded by Abú-l-ghamr, entered Cordova without any opposition on the part of the besieging army. A few days after this, the Christian king struck his tents, and disappeared from before the city. From all parts of Andalus rebels came to Ibn Yaghmúr to ask him for letters of security in the name of 'Abdu-l-múmen; which being obtained, they repaired to Morocco, and presented themselves to that Sultán, who received them kindly, and was pleased graciously to pardon all their offences. Subsequently to this, 'Abdu-l-múmen, having removed to Salé in the year 545 (beginning April 29, A. D. 1150), invited the people of Andalus to come over to him; which they did in great numbers, when they all proclaimed him as their rightful sovereign; the rebel chieftains hastening also to take the oath of allegiance, and to lay down all [usurped] authority. Among the Andalusians who on this occasion presented themselves to 'Abdu-l-múmen was Seddaray Ibn Wazir, Lord of Beja and Ebara; Al-betrúhí, governor of Niebla; Ibn Gharún [Abú-l-ghamr], Lord of Xerez and Ronda; Ibnu-l-hajjám, Lord of Badajoz; 'Amíl Ibn Mulíh,19 Lord of Talavera (Tavira?). Ibn Kasí and the people of Silvcs were the only Andalusians who did not make their submission on this occasion, this being the cause of the death of that chieftain [who was afterwards executed], as we shall relate in due course.17 'Abdu-l-múmen returned to Morocco, and the Andalusians to their respective towns; he moreover took most of the rebel chieftains with him to his capital, and kept them about his court. In the year 548 (beginning March 28, A. D. 1153), 'Abdu-l-múmen ordered the execution of Islítin, a relative of the Mahdí.18

The Almohades subdue the rest of Andalus.

Fo. 107, verso.—In the year 549 (beginning Mar. 17, A. D. 1154), while the Sultán 'Abdu-l-múmen was at Morocco, the intelligence was brought to him how Yahya Ibn Yaghmúr,19 governor of Seville, had made great slaughter among the people of Liblah (Niebla), of which city Al-wahíbí had treacherously gained possession. Though the inhabitants protested their

---

18 i. e. the deputations of the several towns which had previously acknowledged his authority, that they might take the oath of allegiance in the name of their fellow-citizens.

19 Perhaps 'Abdu-l-múmen is to be substituted, and طبيرة Tabira for Talavera.

17 I have in vain looked in other chapters of Ibnu Khalidún's work for the event here recorded.

15 which Conde (vol. ii. p. 343) translates by 'Isaúk Corub Almehedi.' This Islítín had some time before risen in arms against 'Abdu-l-múmen.

18 أبى يغمور. But I find his name thus written in the Korttás, Abú Zakariyyá Yahya Ibn Yarmar or Yurmur.
innocence, and that they had taken no part whatever in the plans of that rebel, the governor, Yahya, would not admit of their excuses, and [on the taking of the city] chastised them with the greatest severity.\(^{20}\) The Sultán, being exceedingly displeased with Yahya on this account, removed him from the government of Seville, which he gave to Abú Mohammed 'Abdullah Ibn Abí Hafss, of Tinmelel. He likewise deposed Abú Zeyd Ibn Bakít from the government of Cordova, and appointed in his room 'Abdullah Ibn Suleymán. On his arrival at Seville, the new governor put Yahya Ibn Yaghmür in irons, and took him with him to Algesirás: he there assigned him his dwelling for a prison, until he dispatched him to Telemsán, escorted by his son, Síd Abú Hafss.

In the mean while the empire of the Almohades waxed stronger in Andalus. Maymún Ibn Bedr Al-lamtúní quitted Granáda, where the supremacy of the Almohades was immediately acknowledged. Soon after, Síd Abú Sa'íd, governor of Ceuta, went over to assume the command of that city in the name of his father, the Sultán 'Abdu-l-múmen. The wearers of the veil (Almoravides) [who were at Granáda] were compelled to repair to Morocco. Síd Abú Sa'íd Al-meríní laid siege to Almeria, until he obliged the Christians within to surrender on the terms of a capitulation drawn up by the Wizir Abú Ja'far Ibn 'Attiyyah. Notwithstanding that the garrison of Almeria had received assistance from the rebel Ibn Mardanish, who had risen [some time before] in the eastern parts of Andalus, and also from the Christian king, his ally, all these forces united together were unable to deter that prince from his purpose; and the city was taken, as before related, in 546 (beginning April 19, a.d. 1152).

In the year 551 (beginning Feb. 24, a.d. 1156), the Sheikhs of Seville, having come [to Africa] to ask 'Abdu-l-múmen to appoint one of his sons to command over them, that Sultán gave the investiture of Seville and its dependencies to his son Síd Abú Ya'kúb, who immediately took possession of it. One of the first acts of his government was to make war against Al-wahibi, the rebel. Having accordingly left Seville, he put himself at the head of his army, and, accompanied by the Wizir Abú Ja'far Ibn 'Attiyyah, started in pursuit of that chieftain, whom he besieged [in one of his fortresses] until he compelled him to surrender. After this, he took possession of the states of Ibn Wazír, and of those of Ibn Kas, which last were reduced by a division of his army under the command of Táshefín Al-lamtúní. The victory, in short, was everywhere complete. After this success, Síd Abú Ya'kúb returned to Seville, and the Wizir Abú Ja'far to Morocco, where he soon after fell into disgrace, and was put to death\(^{21}\) by the command of 'Abdu-l-múmen, who appointed 'Abdu-s-sellám Al-kúní to succeed him in the charge of Wizir. 'Abdu-s-sellám, who was connected by marriage with the family of 'Abdu-l-múmen, retained that office until he was executed by order of that Sultán, soon after the taking of Telemsán, as we shall hereafter relate.

Fo. 108.—In the year 553 (beginning Feb. 1, a.d. 1158), when the intelligence reached 'Abdu-l-múmen of the defeat of his son, Síd Abú Ya'kúb [Yúsuf], by the Christians, close

---

\(^{20}\) Conde, who gives some details respecting this siege, and the cruelties practised on the inhabitants, borrowed from the \textit{Karttás}, speaks of Libjah, which he writes \textit{Leila}, as if it were a town in Africa. See vol. ii. p. 334.

\(^{21}\) This happened in Shawwál, 552 (December, a.d. 1157), according to the author of the \textit{Karttás}. See Moura, p. 216.
to the walls of Seville, and of the great number of the Almohades, Sheikhs, Hafedhs, and other principal men, as Ibn Gharîn and Ibn-u-l-hajjâm, who had fallen martyrs in the encounter, he set out with the intention of crossing over in person to the theatre of war. For this purpose he went to Salé, but having whilst there received intelligence of fresh troubles in Eastern Africa, and of the taking of Mehediyah by the Christians, he gave up his former determination, and turned his attention to that quarter. Accordingly, having appointed the Sheikh Abî Hafass to command in the Mayhreb during his absence, he hastened to Eastern Africa at the head of all the forces collected round Salé for his intended expedition to Andalus, and arrived before Mehediyah, when he compelled the Christians and Sicilians, who had taken possession of it, to capitulate in 555 (A.D. 1160).

Account of Ibn Mardanîsh, who revolted [against the Almohades] in the eastern provinces of Andalus.

Whilst 'Abdu-l-mûmen was in Eastern Africa, the intelligence was brought to him that Mohammed Ibn Mardanîsh, who rose in the eastern provinces of Andalus, had gone out of Murcia, and encamped before Jacen, the governor of which city, named Mohammed Ibn 'Alî Al-kûmî, had submitted to him. He had likewise appeared in sight of Cordova; but unable to gain possession of that city, he had raised the siege, and marched against Carmona, which he had taken by treason. He had thence returned to Cordova, the governor of which, Ibn Bakît, had sailed out against him, but had been defeated, and put to death. On the arrival of this diastrous news, 'Abdu-l-mûmen wrote to his lieutenants in Andalus, apprising them of his recent conquests in Eastern Africa, and of his intention shortly to cross over to Andalus in person. Accordingly, after making the necessary preparations, he crossed the straits, and landed at Jebalu-l-fitâh (Gibraltar), where he was soon joined by the Almohades, and such among the Andalusians [as followed his banners]. After providing for the affairs of government, 'Abdu-l-mûmen returned to Morocco, whence he sent his army to make war on the infidels of Andalus. The Christian king, having marched against the Moslems, was defeated, and his army dispersed. Sîd Abû Ya'kûb took Carmona from the hands of Ibn Humushk, who commanded there by the appointment of Ibn Mardanîsh, his brother-in-law; but whilst Sîd Abû Ya'kûb, governor of Seville, and Sîd Abû Sa'id, governor of Granada, were at Morocco, whither they had crossed over for the purpose of visiting 'Abdu-l-mûmen, Ibn Humushk, seizing the opportunity, approached Granada secretly and at night, and succeeded, with the aid of his numerous partisans there, in gaining possession of the city; 21

22 Historians are at variance as to the date of the taking of Mehediyah by 'Abdu-l-mûmen. Some, as Ibn Sâhibî-s-salâkî, (Bodl. Lib, Marsh, 433, fo. 7, verso) place it in A. H. 554, after a siege of seven months; the anonymous writer of a history of Morocco, (see vol. i. p. 349, Note 73) on the 10th of Moharram of 555, after a siege of five months and nine days. The author of the Kartîtà (Moura, p. 216) gives both of those dates, that of 554 and that of 555.

23 Ibn Sâhibî-s-salâkî (loco land., fo. 25, verso) says that it was the Jews, commanded by Sahr Ben Ruiz Ibn Dahri, (?) who facilitated his entrance into Granada. They had been some time previously compelled to turn Moslems; hence their discontent.
the Almohades, who composed the garrison, retiring to the Kassubah. When this news was known in Africa, the Sultán ’Abdu-l-múmen immediately left Morocco, to deliver his followers. He arrived at Salé, and having appointed Síd Abú Sa’íd to the command of his army, this general immediately crossed the strait at the head of numerous forces. Being joined on his landing by Abú ’Abdillah Ibn Abí Hafss Ibn ’Alí, lieutenant-governor of Seville, he marched to Granada. On the news of their approach, Ibn Humushk sallied out of the city, and defeated them: Síd Abú Sa’íd retreated to Malaga, upon which ’Abdu-l-múmen deprived him of the command of the army, and gave it to his brother, Síd Abú Ya’kúb. The Almohades marched a second time against Granada, whither Ibn Mardanish himself had lately arrived with his Christian auxiliaries to the succour of his brother-in-law, Ibn Humushk. A battle was then fought in the plain of that city, in which the victory remained to the former, Ibn Mardanish betaking himself to his strongholds in the eastern provinces, whilst Ibn Humushk took refuge in Jaen, where he was immediately besieged by the victorious Almohades. After this, Síd Abú Ya’kúb and Síd Abú Sa’íd went to Cordova, where they remained until the year 558 (beginning Dec. 9, A.D. 1162), when the former was summoned to Morocco by his father, who wished to designate him his successor to the empire, instead of his brother Mohammed, and to have him acknowledged as such by the councils of the Almohades and the governors of the provinces. In compliance with these orders, Abú Ya’kúb repaired to Morocco; and the ceremony being performed, he accompanied his father the Khalif ’Abdu-l-múmen to Rebat, whence that Sultán intended to set out a second time for Andalus, for the purpose of prosecuting the holy war. He was, however, overtaken by death, at Salé, in Jumáda ii. of the same year 558 (May, A.D. 1163). His remains were deposited at Tínmelel, beside those of the Mahdí.

Reign of the Khalif Yúsuf, son of ’Abdu-l-múmen.

Fo. 108, verso.—Immediately after the death of ’Abdu-l-múmen, Síd Abú Hafss went to the chiefs of the Almohades, and received from every one of them the striking of hands, or customary oath of allegiance to his brother Abú Ya’kúb [Yúsuf]. Being greatly satisfied with this [generous] conduct on the part of his own brother, Abú Ya’kúb preferred him to his intimacy, confirmed him in all his honours and distinctions, and appointed him his Wizír. This being done, they returned together to Morocco. This Síd Abú Hafss had been Wizír to his father, ’Abdu-l-múmen, who, after the disgrace and execution of his chief Wizír, ’Abdu-s-sellám [Ibn Mohammed] Al-kúmí, in 555 (beginning Jan. 11, A.D. 1160),24 had recalled him from Eastern Africa, and appointed him to the vacant office. Abú Hafss filled the duties of the Wizírate conjointly with Abú-l-l’ola Ibn Jámi’, who was appointed to assist him until ’Abdu-l-múmen died, when, as before related, he received the oaths of the people for his brother Abú Ya’kúb.

24 He was arrested by order of ’Abdu-l-múmen shortly after the entrance of that Sultán into Telemán, n.r. 555 (A.D. 1160). Two days after, he died in prison from the effects of poison, administered to him in a bowl of milk. See Karitáa, p. 217. See also Conde (vol. ii. p. 349), who, with his usual negligence, or rather from his not understanding the text of the above writer, says that it was ’Abdu-s-sellám who poisoned Ibn ’Attíyah, his predecessor in office. In my extracts from Ibn Khaldún (see vol. i. App. B, p. xxx.) I have written the name of this Wizír ’Abdu-s-sellám instead of ’Abdu-s-sellám.
Soon after the death of 'Abdu-l-mümen, happened that of his son, Abú-l-hasan, governor of Fez, and that of Síd Abú Mohammed, governor of Bujéyah (Bugia), on his way to the capital (Morocco). In the year 560 (beginning Nov. 17, A.D. 1164), the Sultán (Abú Ya'kúb) summoned to his presence Síd Abú Sa'íd, who, in obedience to his orders, left Granada [of which city he was governor], and arrived at Morocco. His brother, Síd Abú Hafss, went to Ceuta to meet him on his first landing in Africa.

Subsequently to this, the Khálif Abú Ya'kúb, having received intelligence of the march of Ibn Mardaníst to Cordova, sent his brother, Abú Hafss, to Andalus with a powerful army of Almohades, re-inforced by the Arabian tribes of Zaghabah, Riyáh, and Ath-thúj. Abú Hafss crossed the straits, and marched against Ibn Mardaníst, who, having collected all his forces, and obtained succours from his friends and neighbours the Christians, prepared for a stout resistance. The Almohades met him on the plain of Murcia, where the rebellious chieftain and his auxiliaries were completely defeated, and compelled to take refuge within that city. He was there immediately besieged by the Almohades, who reduced the neighbouring districts. After this splendid victory, through which the raging fire of civil war was somewhat allayed, Síd Abú Hafss and his brother, Abú Sa'íd, returned to Morocco in the year 561 (beginning Nov. 6, A.D. 1165). In the same year (A.H. 561) the Khálif gave his brother, Síd Abú Zakariyya, the investiture of Bugia. He also gave that of Seville to the Sheikh Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Abí Ibráím, though he afterwards removed him to make room for his own brother, Abú Ibráím. He confirmed the Sheikh Abú 'Abdillah in his office of Wízír [to the former], and gave the investiture of Cordova to Síd Abú Is'hák; he also confirmed Síd Abú Sa'íd in the government of Granada. After this, the Almohades, having bethought them of adopting a motto for the dispatches signed by their Khálifs, chose the following,—*Wu-l-hamdu lillahi wadhahu,* 'Praise be [given] to God the only one,'—which they chanced to find in the handwriting of the Imám Al-mahdí, in one of his official letters; and it continued to be their device to the end of their empire.

_Civil war in [the mountains of] Gomárah._

In the year 562 (beginning Oct. 27, A.D. 1166), the Amír Abú Ya'kúb moved towards the mountains of Gomárah (Gomera), where a rebel named Saba' Ibn Mun'ákád had risen, calling upon the inhabitants to join their neighbours the Senhájah in their rebellion against the Almohades. At first, the Amír Abú Ya'kúb sent an army under the command of the Sheikh Abú Hafss; but these forces being insufficient to quell the rebellion of the tribes of Gomárah and Senhájah united together, he repaired to the field of war in person, defeated the rebels in several encounters, and almost exterminated them; he also put to death Saba' Ibn Mun'ákád, by which he applied a cauterity to that evil. He then gave to his brother, Síd Abú

25 The word I have translated by 'motto' is علامة which means 'a sign, a mark, a signature, the reading upon a seal,' &c.

'Alī Al-hasan, the government of Ceuta and other districts previously occupied by the rebels. In the year 563 (beginning Oct. 16, A.D. 1167), the Almohades renewed the oath of allegiance⁷⁷ to Abū Ya'kūb, on whom they agreed to confer the title of Amīru-l-mūmenīn (commander of the faithful). The Sultán then wrote to the Arabs of Eastern Africa, stirring them up to resume the war against the infidels. For this purpose he addressed to them a kassīdah and an epistle, which are sufficiently known among [literary] men. The answer made by the Arabs, and their readiness to flock under his banners, are also too well known [to deserve being recorded here].

Events in Andalus.

When Abū Ya'kūb saw his empire consolidated in Africā, he began to turn his eyes towards Andalus, and to meditate the prosecution of the holy war. The intelligence having been brought to him that the enemy (may the curse of God fall on his head!) had surprised the city of Truxillo, then that of Ebora, then the fortresses of Sheberīnah and Jelmāniyyah,²⁸ opposite to Badajoz, and lastly, the city of Badajoz itself, he dispatched against him the Sheikh Abū Hafṣ, with an army of Almohades. Having made the necessary preparations, Abū Hafṣ crossed over to Andalus in the year 564 (beginning Oct. 4, A.D. 1168), to deliver Badajoz from the horrors of a siege. Scarcely, however, had he arrived at Seville, and was preparing for his expedition, when news came to him how the Almohades of Badajoz had, with the assistance of the son of Alfonso (Ferdinand), defeated and taken prisoner the son of Errink (Alfonso Enriquez), who commanded the besieging forces, and how his enemy, the King of Galicia, had also fled to his castles. The Sheikh Abū Hafṣ then marched to Cordova, whence he dispatched an army to the assistance of the people of Badajoz, under the command of Ibrāhīm Ibn Humushk. This chief had some time previously tendered his obedience [to the Almohades], and made profession of the unity of God, owing to certain differences which had arisen between him and his friend Ibn Mardanīsh, and which had created much ill-will and animosity between them. Ibn Mardanīsh having begun hostilities, Ibn Humushk had retorted, and, in order the better to repel his attacks, had sent to offer the Sheikh Abū Hafṣ his submission, on condition that he would assist him against his enemy. The Sheikh hastened to inform the Khalīf of the circumstance, as well as of the incursions and ravages which the Christians were daily making in the Moslem territory. Upon which, Abū Ya'kūb sent his own brother and

²⁷ Two kinds of inauguration were then in use among the Almohades: the ٍالخاصة or 'private,' that is, of the high officers of the state, of the members of the royal family, &c.; and the ٍالعمامة or ḍāmīya that of the subjects: and, according to the author of the Kartīda, Yūsuf went at first only through the former of these ceremonies.

²⁸ Jelmāniyyah, perhaps a corruption of Germania. Ibn Ṣāhibī-a-salāt (lōco lūnd.) says that it was a fortress built not far from Badajoz by Alfonso, King of Portugal, in order to molest from thence the garrison of that city. Sheberīnah thus written †may be Severina, but there is at present no town of this name.
APPENDIX.

Wizir, Šid Abū Hafss,²⁹ at the head of an army of Almohades. Abū Hafss started from Morocco in the year 565 (beginning Sept. 24, A. D. 1169), taking in his company his brother Šid Abū Saʿid, whom, immediately after his arrival in Seville, he sent on to Badajoz. Abū Saʿid, having concluded a peace with the Christian king, returned to Seville. The two brothers then marched upon Murcia, the capital of the states of Ibn Mardanish, which they invested, taking with them Ibn Humushk, the former friend of that rebel. During the siege of Murcia the people of Lorca, another city subject to Ibn Mardanish, shook off his yoke, and proclaimed the supremacy of the Almohades. After taking possession of Lorca, Šid Abū Hafss stormed the city of Bastah (Baza), the taking of which was soon followed by the surrender of Almeria, whose governor, named Mohammed,³⁰ a nephew of Ibn Mardanish, bought by ready submission the pardon of his rebellion.

When the news of this success reached Morocco, there happened to be encamped near that capital considerable forces of the Arabs of Eastern Africa, which had been brought thither by Šid Abū Zakariyyá, governor of Bujéyah (Bugia), and Šid Abū 'Imrán, governor of Tremezen. The day of their arrival had been one of great festivity and rejoicing: profiting by the assembly of such considerable forces, the Khalif determined to employ them against the infidels. Having, therefore, reviewed them, as well as his own troops, he started for Andalus, after appointing his brother Šid Abū 'Imrán to command at Morocco in his absence. He arrived in Cordova in the year 567 (beginning Sept. 3, A. D. 1171) after some stay he left that city and repaired to Seville, where he was met by Šid Abū Hafss on his return from the expedition against Ibn Mardanish. This rebel, seeing the siege protracted, and having no hopes of succour, had made a sally, and, breaking a passage through the ranks of the besieged, whom he found unprepared, had effected his escape. However, his brother Abú-l-hejáj, and his son Helál, had tendered their obedience to the Almohades; and he himself (Ibn Mardanish) had died soon after in Rejeb of the same year ³¹ (March, A. D. 1172). After the death of his father, Helál sent to offer the Almohades possession of Murcia; upon which, Abū Hafss hastened to that city. Helál went out with a party to meet him; and Abū Hafss, having received him with every kindness, sent him on to the Khalif, who was at that time in Seville. After this, the Khalif Abú Ya‘kūb went out of Seville, intent upon an incursion into the enemy’s country. He laid siege to Ubeda,

²⁹ This Šid Abū Hafss, who was 'Abdu-l-múmen’s brother, must not be confounded with the Sheikh Abū Hafss, who was no relation of that Sultan, and whose descendants, the Hafssides or Bení Abú Hafss, became in time kings of Eastern Africa.

³⁰ Ibn Sāhibi-s-salát (loco laud.) gives some interesting details about this chieftain. His name was Mohammed; but he was more generally known under the surname of Ibn Sāhib Al-basit, (‘the son of the hero of Albacete,’) a surname given to his father, ‘Abdullah Ibn Mardanish, after his victory over Ibn Húd, in the neighbourhood of that town. His uncle, Mohammed Ibn Mardanish, had intrusted him with the government of Almeria, and given him besides his own daughter in marriage; but when he heard of his submission to the Almohades, the rage of that rebel, who was then at Valencia, was so great, that he ordered the immediate execution of the wife (his own daughter) and all the children of his cousin. The wife, however, was spared; though the children were drowned in the Albuhera, a lake close to Valencia.

³¹ Conde (vol. ii, p. 380) gives three different dates for the death of this chieftain, 567-9-71; but the former is the most probable, as agreeing with the account of the Karttás, Ibn Sāhibi-s-salát, and Abú-l-fedá.
and remained some days encamped before the city; he then raised his tents, and marched to Murcia, whence he returned to Seville in the year 568 (beginning August 22, A.D. 1172), taking with him Helal Ibn [Mohammed Ibn Sa'id Ibn] Mardanish, whom he had so far distinguished as to take his sister for a wife.\textsuperscript{32} Abú Ya'kūb gave to his own uncle, Yúsuf, the government of Valencia, and to his brother, Sîd Abú Sa'id, the investiture of Granada. After this, having received intelligence of an incursion which the enemy, commanded by Count Al-ahdab,\textsuperscript{33} had made into the country of the Moslems, the Khalif went out to meet them at the head of his forces. Having overtaken them near Kal'ah Rabáh (Calatrava), he defeated them with great loss; after which he returned victorious to Seville. Having arrived there, and wishing to provide for the defence of that frontier, he gave orders for the rebuilding of the fortress of Al-kal'ah (Alcalá de Guadayna), which had been in ruins since the time of the civil wars between Ibnu-l-hejāj and Koreyb Ibn Khaldún,\textsuperscript{34} during the reigns of Al-mundhir Ibn Mohammed and his brother 'Abdullah, both Sultans of the family of Umeyyah. After this, the son of Alfonso bestirred himself, and made an incursion into the Moslem territory. The Khalif collected his forces, and dispatched against him an army under the orders of Sîd Abú Hafss, who not only repelled the invasion, but attacked the enemy of God in the very heart of his dominions, took from him Kantarah As-seyf (Alcantara), and defeated his armies wherever they attempted to make a stand. In the year 571 (beginning July 21, A.D. 1175), five years after his crossing to Andalus, the Khalif started from Seville on his way back to Morocco. Before taking his departure, however, he gave his brother Al-hasan the investiture of Cordova; and his brother 'Ali that of Seville. Soon after this, the plague having broken out at Morocco, three members of the Sultán’s family were attacked, and died of it. These were Sîd Abú 'Imrán, Sîd Abú Sa'id, and Sîd Abú Zakariyyá. The Sheikh Abú Hafss also died of it, as he was journeying from Cordova [to Morocco], and was interred at Salé. After this, the Khalif having summoned to his presence his own brothers, Abú 'Ali and Abú-l-hasan, they came over from Andalus, and appeared at court: he then gave to the former the investiture of Sijilmésah, and caused the latter, 'Abu-l-hasan, to return to Cordova. He also granted investitures to his two nephews, the sons of his brother Sîd Abú Hafss; to Abú Zeyd he gave the government of Granada, and that of Malaga to Abú Mohammed 'Abdullah. In the year 573 (beginning June 29, A.D. 1177), the Khalif being displeased with his Wizirs, the Bení Jâmi', exiled them to Merida. In the year 575 (beginning June 7, A.D. 1179), he gave to Ghánim Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mardanish the command of his fleets, and directed him to attack Lisbon; which he did, returning with considerable spoil. In the same year (A.H. 575) happened the death of the Khalif’s brother and Wizir, Sîd Abú Hafss, whose life was a tissue of valorous performances against the

\textsuperscript{32} This happened in the year 567, according to the author of the \textit{Kartdís} and Ibn Sáhibi-s-salát.

\textsuperscript{33} \textit{Comes Al-ahdab}, or ‘the hump-backed count.’

\textsuperscript{34} Ibnu Hayyán (Bodl. Lib., No. cxxxvii. fo. 46,) gives an account of these civil wars from the work of a writer named Mohammed Ibn 'Abdihllah Ibn Al-ash'ath who wrote a history of Seville. Koreyb Ibn 'Othmán Ibn Khaldún and his brother Khâlid, ancestors of the writer of this fragment, having resuscitated the old feuds between the Arabs of men and the Bení Modhar, took the field as chiefs of the former against Ibrâhim Ibnu-l-hejāj, who was the representative of the latter. After a long and desultory warfare the two Bení Khaldún were taken prisoners in 277, and put to death.
enemy of God, and of praiseworthy deeds for the cause of religion. Abū Hafss' two sons having come over from Andalus, and informed the Khalif of the annoyance to which the Moslems of that country were exposed through the incessant attacks of the Christian king, he determined to re-commence the holy war, for which end he began to summon the Arabian tribes from Eastern Africa.

Abū Ya'kūb's assiduity in the prosecution of the holy war.

On his return from the expedition to Kaffsah, which city was taken in the year 577 (beginning May 16, A.D. 1181), Abū Ya'kūb received the congratulations of his brother Sīd Abū 'Abdi-r-rahmān Ya'kūb, who came over from Murcia, as well as those of all the Almohades and the chiefs of Andalus who hastened to his presence [for that purpose]. Abū Ya'kūb welcomed their arrival, and they all returned to their respective countries honoured and satisfied. The intelligence then came to him that Mohammed Ibn Yūsuf Ibn Wānūdīn, with the Almohades of Seville, had made a foray into the enemy's territory, had laid siege to the city of Eborā, plundered the neighbouring districts, reduced some of its fortresses, and then returned victorious to Seville. He also heard that 'Abdullah Ibn Is'hāk Ibn Jāmi', the commander of the fleets of that city, had met at sea the naval forces of Lisbon, which he had defeated, sinking or capturing twenty of their ships, taking at the same time considerable spoil, and making numbers of prisoners. Subsequently to this, the news came to him how Alfonso, son of Sancho, had laid siege to Cordova, and made several incursions in the neighbourhood of Malaga, Ronda, and Granada; after which he had appeared in sight of Ezija, and stormed the castle of Shankīlah, wherein he had left a garrison of Christians, and then returned to his own dominions; that upon this Abū Is'hāk had mustered all his forces, and repaired to the subdued fortress (Shankīlah), which he had besieged [though in vain] for about forty days; for when King Alfonso heard of it, he sailed out of Toledo to the succour of the besieged, and Abū Is'hāk was compelled to desist from his undertaking. During the course of these events, Ibn Wānūdīn (Mohammed Ibn Yūsuf) had gone out of Seville with an army of Almohades, and laid siege to Talavera; the garrison having made a sally, he defeated them completely, and returned [to Seville] loaded with spoil. The news of these occurrences, which came to Abū Ya'kūb in rapid succession, induced that Khalif earnestly to prosecute the holy war. To this end, he appointed his two sons, Sīd Abū Is'hāk and Sīd Abū Yahya, to the command of his forces in Andalus: he confirmed the former in the government of Seville, and gave to the latter the investiture of Cordova: he also gave that of Granada to his son Sīd Abū Zeyd Al-hirs-sānī; and that of Murcia to Sīd Abū 'Abdillah. He himself prepared to cross over to Andalus; for which purpose he arrived at Salé in the year 577 (beginning May 16, A.D. 1181), and was met there by Abū Mohammed Ibn Abū Is'hāk Ibn Jāmi' at the head of the Arabian tribes of Eastern Africa. Thence the Sultān went to Fez, and after sending in advance the tribes of Hentētah and Timmelel, and the forces of the Arabs, he himself crossed the sea from Ceuta in Safar of the year 578 (June, A.D. 1182). He landed at Jebalu-l-fatah (Gibraltar), and thence proceeded to Seville, where he was met
by the forces of Andalús. During his residence at that city he was displeased with Mohammed Ibn Wánúdln, whom he exiled to the castle of Gháfek. He then marched towards Shatreyn (Santarem), which he besieged; but after some days he gave orders for raising the siege, and the men were disheartened and discontented. The Christians of the town, having made a sally, found the Khalif almost alone, and unprepared for the attack; the consequence was, that the Khalif and those who were with him were sadly tried in the cause of God, and turned their backs after a most sanguinary conflict. On that very day the Khalif died; some say, of an arrow-shot which he received in the midst of the fight; others, of a disease which attacked him on the road. (May God have forgiven him!)

_Reign of his son, Ya’kúb Al-mansúr._

After the death of the Khalif [Abú Ya’kúb Yúsuf] before Santarem, above related, his son Ya’kúb [Abú Yúsuf] was immediately proclaimed. He returned with the army to Seville, where he received the oaths of the inhabitants. He then appointed the Sheikh Abú Mohammed ’Abdu-l-wáhéd Ibn Abí Hafss to the post of Wizír, and intrusted to his brother, Síd Abú Yahya, the prosecution of the war against the infidels. Abú Yahya reduced some fortresses, and committed all manner of depredations in the enemy’s country. After this he (Ya’kúb) crossed the sea to the capital of his African dominions (Morocco). On his way thither he was met at Kasr-Masmúdah by Síd Abú Zakariyyá, son of Síd Abú Hafss, who had come from Telemsán with the Sheikhs of the tribe of Zaghabah. He then proceeded to Morocco, where he suppressed iniquity, administered justice with an even hand, and promulgated laws. One of the first occurrences of his reign was the rebellion of Ibn Ghániyyah, which we are going to relate.

_Account of the origin and rising of Ibn Ghániyyah._

We have elsewhere related how the enemy of God took possession of Mallorca, and how the inhabitants of that island were left without a ruler by the death of their governor, Mubashshér, who had formerly been a freed-slave of Mujáhid. Whilst the Christians were besieging his capital, this chief had sent to implore the assistance of ’Alí Ibn Yúsuf; but before the re-inforcements which that Sultán sent had arrived, the island was taken and plundered, and the city burnt down by the Christians, who set sail for their country, loaded with immense spoil. Yúsuf appointed one of the bravest officers among the Lamtúnah, named Wáthúr Ibn Abí Bekr, to be governor of the island, and gave him the command of a division of five hundred cavalry. The new governor rendered himself exceedingly obnoxious to the inhabitants: he subjected them to several vexations; among other things he ordered them entirely to desert their city, and build another inland. This, however, was openly resisted by the inhabitants; and a tumult ensuing, the leader of the discontented was seized and

---

36 On Saturday, the 12th of Rabí’l-lakhar, 580, according to the author of the _Karttáés_, who relates this differently, and says that Abú Ya’kúb defended himself valiantly, and killed six of his assailants with his own hands, but was at last pierced by the spear of a Christian knight. See _Moura_, p. 235.
executed by order of Wáthúr. This so much exasperated the people of the island, that they rose against the governor, and made him their prisoner. They then sent an embassy to 'Alí Ibn Yúsuf, who, having heard their case, granted them pardon, and appointed Mohammed Ibn Gháníyyah to succeed Wáthúr in the government of the island. This Mohammed was the son of 'Alí Ibn Yahya Al-masúfí, better known under the surname of Ibn Gháníyyah. His brother Yahya [Ibn 'Alí] was then commanding the western provinces of Andalus in the Khalif's name; and, as he held his court at Seville, his brother had appointed him his lieutenant in Cordova. The two brothers were filling their respective governments when 'Alí Ibn Yúsuf sent letters to Yahya, commanding him to remove his brother to the government of Mallorca. In compliance with the Sultán's orders, Mohammed sailed for that island, taking with him his sons 'Abdullah, 'Alí, Is'hák, Az-zobeyr, Ibráhím, and Talhah. The two first named had been under the special care of their uncle Yahya, who doted upon them, and was a second father to them.

Immediately after his arrival on the island, Mohammed Ibn 'Alí Ibn Gháníyyah seized Wáthúr, whom he sent in irons to Morocco. After he had ruled for ten years37 over the island, his brother Yahya Ibn Gháníyyah died. He had previously appointed his nephews, 'Abdullah and Is'hák, to be governors of Granada and Carmona. After this happened the death of 'Alí Ibn Yúsuf, and the decay of the empire of the Bení Lamtúnah commenced, which began everywhere to give way under the blows of the victorious Almohades. Seeing this, Mohammed sent [to Andalus] for his two sons, 'Abdullah and Is'hák, who repaired to Mallorca in their father's fleet. The empire of the Lamtúnah was finally subverted: subsequently to this, Mohammed, having designated his son 'Abdullah to be the heir of his dominions, Is'hák, the other brother, took offence at it, and, having entered into a conspiracy with some of the Lamtúnah, put his brother 'Abdullah, as well as his own father Mohammed, to death. This done, the conspirators tried to rid themselves of Is'hák himself; but he anticipated them, and through the means of Lob Ibn Maymún, general of the sea, who embraced his cause, he was enabled to attack them in their dwellings, and put them to death; thereby gaining complete possession of the island in the year 546 (beginning April 19, A. D. 1151). At first, Is'hák governed with great wisdom and moderation: he took to planting and building; but after this he rather changed, and the inhabitants became disgusted with his rule. Lob Ibn Maymún then deserted his cause, and went over to his enemies the Almohades. Is'hák in the mean while made war on the infidels. He was in the habit of presenting the Khalif Abú Ya'kúb with Christian slaves: he persevered in this custom until he died, shortly before that monarch, in the year 580 (beginning April 13, A. D. 1184), leaving thirteen sons: Mohammed, 'Alí, Yahya, 'Abdullah, Al-gházi, Seyr, Al-mansúr, Jabbárah, Táshefín, Talhah, 'Omar, Yúsuf, and Al-hasan.

Is'hák was succeeded by his son Mohammed, who, soon after his accession, dispatched an embassy to the Khalif Yúsuf [Abú Ya'kúb], offering to place himself under his government. The Khalif sent him 'Alí Ibn Ar-robertín to receive his allegiance. No sooner, however,

---

37 If the appointment of Mohammed Ibn Gháníyyah to the government of Mallorca took place, as Ibnu Khalidún himself and the author of the *Kartós* state, in the year 520, twenty-three years must have elapsed between his taking possession of the government and the death of his brother Yahya, which happened in Sha'bán, 543. See above.
were Is'hák's brothers made aware of his determination, than they seized him, and put him in prison, appointing 'Alí Ibn Is'hák, one of themselves, to the command. About this time news came to Mallorca of the death of the Khalif, and the appointment of his son Al-mansúr, who succeeded him in the empire. Encouraged by this, 'Alí confined Ibn Ar-robertín to a dungeon, and after appointing his brother Talhah to command in Mallorca during his absence, sailed with a fleet to Bujéyah (Bugia), of which city he gained possession in the year 581 (beginning April 3, A.D. 1185), making the governor, Sid 'Abú-r-rabi'ah, and Sid Abú Músa 'Imran, son of 'Abdu-I-múmen, who chanced to be there at the time, his prisoners.

* * * * * * *  

We have related elsewhere how Yahya Ibn Ghánîyyah, before leaving Mallorca for his African expedition, had confined Ibn Ar-robertín to a dungeon, and appointed his brother Talhah to govern the island in his absence. No sooner, however, did Ibn Ar-robertín, who was an enterprising and shrewd man, see the ground clear from his enemies, than he meditated a revolt, and, having entered into a secret negotiation with the Christian freedmen who guarded his prison, promised to let them go to their native countries with their children and families if they would assist him in his escape. They acceded to his wishes, and having risen within the Kassôbah, they released Mohammed Ibn Is'hák from prison, and all repaired to court. However, when the news of this occurrence reached Tripoli, where 'Alí Ibn Ghánîyyah was at the time, he immediately sent his brother 'Abdullah to Sicily, who [having there obtained some re-inforcements] sailed to Mallorca, and landed at a port on the island, whence he gained possession of the capital by stratagem.

His adventures in the holy war.

In the year 586 (beginning Feb. 7, A.D. 1190), the Khalif Ya'kúb having learned through a messenger sent him by Abu Yúsuf Ibn Abi Ilâfis, governor of Seville, that the Christians had taken the important city of Shelb (Silves), and defeated the Almohades close to the former city, into the neighbourhood of which they were making continual excursions, reducing many of its fortresses, he summoned his men to the jiḥâd or holy war, and started immediately for Andalus. He arrived at Kasr-Masmúdah, where he made some stay; thence he crossed over to Taríf (Tarifa), whence he proceeded by forced marches to Silves. He was soon joined before that city by the forces of Andalus, to whom he intrusted the siege of the city, whilst he himself marched to Hisn-Torash, which he reduced, returning afterwards to Seville. In the year 587 (beginning Jan. 28, A.D. 1191), the Khalif returned to Silves, putting himself at the head of the army before that place, which he took: he was there met by Ibn Wazír, who arrived before Silves, after taking another fortress on his way to the camp. The object for which the expedition had been planned being now gained, the Khalif

---

* a capital, from its being the chief town of a considerable district in the Algarbe or West of Spain. It was taken on the 8th of September, 1189, by Alfonso I. of Portugal, assisted by a fleet of English crusaders.

** This word not being pointed, I am unable to fix its true pronunciation. There was a castle called Torosh (now Torrox) between Granada and Almeria; but this cannot be the place here meant.
returned to the capital of his African dominions, where he soon after appointed his son, An-násir, heir to his empire. In the year 588 (beginning Jan. 17, A.D. 1192), Sid Abú Zeyd, governor of Eastern Africa, arrived at the court, bringing in his company the chiefs of the Arabian tribes of Helál and Solaym. The Khalif received them with cordiality and attention; after which the messengers returned to their respective countries. In the year 590 (beginning Dec. 26, A.D. 1193), the intelligence being brought to Ya'kúb how the power of the rebel Ibn Gháníyyah had greatly increased in Eastern Africa,—where he was committing all manner of ravages and depredations,—he decided to proceed to the seat of war. Scarcely, however, had he reached Meknásah, when the news he received of the state of affairs in Andalus made him change his determination and return to the West, in order to march thither in person. He accordingly arrived in Cordova in the year 591 (beginning Dec. 15, A.D. 1194). After staying in that city for three [days], that he might collect together the troops he had summoned from every province of Andalus, Ya'kúb started in pursuit of the enemy, and arrived at Al-ark (Alarcos) in the district of Badajoz, where he pitched his camp. He was here met by the whole of the Christian forces, commanded by three of their princes, namely, Ibn Adefonsh (Alfonso III. of Castile), Ibn Errink (Sancho I. of Portugal), and Ibnu-l-babúj 41 (Alfonso IX. of Leon). The battle was fought in the year 591 (beginning Dec. 15, A.D. 1194). Abú Mohammed Ibn Abí Hafss commanded the volunteers; his brother, Abú Yahya, had charge of the Almohades and the rest of the troops. This battle became ever after celebrated for the complete defeat of the Christians, of whose number no less than thirty thousand perished by the swords of the Moslems. The relics of the [Castilian] army, in all about five thousand men, principally officers and knights, took refuge in the neighbouring castle of Alarcos; but Al-mansur followed them thither, compelled them to surrender, made them all prisoners of war, and caused them afterwards to be exchanged for a similar number of Moslem captives. On this memorable day, Abú Yahya, son of the Sheikh Abú Hafss, died a martyr for the faith, after performing great feats of arms; whence his sons were ever after known under the surname of Beni-sh-shoheyd (the sons of the martyr).

After this victory Al-mansur repaired to Seville, which city he again left in the year 592 (beginning Dec. 5, A.D. 1195), to make an incursion into the country of Al-jauf, where he

40 The text reads "he stopped or rested for three," which cannot be understood otherwise than by "days," from the fact of Ya'kúb having landed at Algesiras on the 19th Rejeh, 591 (28th June, A.D. 1195), and his having arrived at Alarcos on Thursday, the 3rd of Sha'bán of the same year (12th July, A.D. 1195), as asserted by Ibn Sáhibi-s-salát; thus making the interval between his landing and his appearing in sight of the enemy, thirteen days.

41 The MS. reads \(\text{السیبوخ} \) but \(\text{البیوچ} \) is meant. Ibn Sáhibi-s-salát (fo. 37, verso) calls Ferdinand II. of Leon, \(\text{فردندل Al-babúj} \); but the meaning of the word \(babúj\), which is not to be found in dictionaries, not being explained by that writer, I am unable to assign a reason for it. There can, however, be no doubt that by \(Ibnu-l-babúj\) the historian here intends the son of Ferdinand, i. e. Alfonso IX. of Leon. According to the Christian authorities, Alfonso solicited the aid of his neighbours, Sancho VI. of Navarre, and Alfonso, of Leon; but though they proffered their assistance, and marched to join him, he fought the battle without waiting for their arrival. Neither was the King of Portugal (for such is in my opinion the monarch here designated under the appellation of Ibn Erriek, or the son of Enriquez,) present at the engagement.
reduced several fortresses and cities, which he destroyed, as Turjélah (Truxillo), Talavera, and others. He also went forward to Toledo, round which capital he hovered, destroying the crops, burning the villages and towns, carrying off the inhabitants, and laying waste everything on his passage. After this he returned to Seville in the year 593 (beginning Nov. 23, A.D. 1196). Whilst the Sultán was residing there, the Kádí Abú-l-walíd Ibn Roshd was charged with entertaining opinions contrary to the Mohammedan faith. His house being searched by the Sultán’s orders, there were found papers in his own handwriting which proved the charge, and he was accordingly cast into prison; but, having received intelligence that the Lord of Barcelona (Pedro II. of Aragon?) had come to the assistance of Alfonso, and that both were besieging Majoritt (Madrid), he raised the siege, and hastened thither. Scarcely, however, had he appeared in sight of that town, when the troops of Alfonso took to flight without waiting his approach; after which Al-mansúr returned to Seville, where he was met by the ambassadors of the Christian kings, who came to ask for peace, which he granted. Having then given the investiture of Seville to Síd Abú Zeyd Ibnu-l-khalífah; that of Badajoz to Síd Abú-r-rabi’, son of Síd Abú Hafss; that of Al-gharb (the western provinces) to Síd Abú ’Abdillah, son of Síd Abú Hafss; the Sultán crossed over to the capital of his African dominions in 594 (beginning Nov. 12, A.D. 1197). He was soon after attacked by a disease which brought on his death. After drawing up that memorable will [containing instructions to his son and heir] which has been handed down to posterity, and which was witnessed by 'Isa, son of the Sheikh Abú Hafss, the Khalif Ya’kúb died (may God show him mercy!) in Rabi’ ii. of the year 595 (Feb. A.D. 1199).

Reign of An-násir, son of Al-mansúr.

On the death of Al-mansúr, his son Mohammed, whom, as above stated, he had designated for his heir, succeeded him. On his accession to power he assumed the surname of An-násir ściimi-llah (the defender of the religion of God). He named to the post of Wizír Abú Zeyd Ibn Túján, a nephew of the Sheikh Abú Hafss, and after him Abú Mohammed, son of the Sheikh Abú Hafss.

---

42 See vol. i. Appendix, p. xix.

43 - a corruption of Majoritum. This town, as well as Calatrava, Uclés (أقلية or أقليش), Jebel Suleymán, now Alcalá (see vol. i. page 534), and Salamanca, had been reduced by Ya’kúb on a former occasion.

44 This name is sometimes written يوجنان, at other times برجران. In my copy of the Karttás the name of this Wizír is written thus برجران or برجران. His kuna or appellative was Al-aśfar, 'the yellow,' no doubt from the colour of his hair, or because he was of a sallow complexion.
APPENDIX.

Conquest of Mallorca.

The conquest of Mallorca happened thus. When 'Ali [Ibn Is'háq Ibn Gháníyyah] and his brother Yahya, as has been related, sailed for Eastern Africa, after appointing their brother Talhah to govern the island, another brother of theirs, named Mohammed Ibn Is'háq [who was confined in a dungeon], succeeded, in conjunction with Ibn Ar-robertín, in bribing his guards, and was released by them from prison. This done, Mohammed decided on acknowledging the supremacy of the Almohades. Having, therefore, proclaimed the Khalif Al-mansúr, he dispatched Ibn Ar-robertín to Africa, to inform that Sultán of the rising in his favour. Immediately on the receipt of this intelligence, Al-mansúr sent a fleet under the command of Abu-l-'ola Ibn Jámi' to take possession of the island in his name; but to this Mohammed would not consent, and sent to ask the Lord of Barcelona for some troops to oppose the landing of the Almohades. The Christian granted his request; but the people of Mallorca, dreading the vengeance of Al-mansúr, rose against their king, Mohammed, and deposed him, appointing in his room his brother Táshefín. When the news of this insurrection reached 'Alí, who was then residing at Kosántínah, he immediately dispatched to Mallorca his two brothers, 'Abdulláh and Al-ghází, who, having gained over to their party some of the inhabitants, deposed Táshefín, and appointed 'Abdulláh in his stead. Al-mansúr, in the mean time, made repeated attempts to gain possession of the island: he several times sent his fleet, first under Abu-l-'ola Ibn Jámi' above mentioned, then under Yahya, son of the Sheikh Ibráhím Al-hazrají; but all was in vain, for the people of the island stoutly repulsed the attacks, and killed great numbers of their assailants, whence the power of Ibn Gháníyyah ['Abdulláh Ibn Is'háq] waxed stronger. These events happened within the year 583 (beginning March 12, a. d. 1187). However, on the death of Al-mansúr, his son and successor, An-násir, sent a fleet under the command of his uncle, Síd Abu-l-'ola, and of the Sheikh Abu Sa'id Ibn Abí Hafss, who appeared in sight of the island, and besieged 'Abdulláh in his capital. This time the Almohades were victorious, owing to the defection of Táshefín, 'Abdulláh’s brother, who went over to them with the troops under his command; upon which the Almohades took the city by storm, and put to death ['Abdulláh and] most of the inhabitants. Síd Abu-l-'ola then returned to Morocco, after appointing 'Abdulláh Ibn Tá-állah Al-kúmi to be governor of the island. Some time after this, An-násir deposed 'Abdulláh, and named in his stead his own uncle, Síd Abú Zeyd [Ibn Túján], who gave 'Abdulláh Ibn Mutá'i the command of the sea; after him, Síd Abú 'Abdillah Ibn Abí Hafss Ibn 'Abdí-l-múmén; after him, Abú Yahya Ibn 'Ali Ibn Abí 'Imrán At-tínmelelí, under whose government the island fell into the hands of the Christians in the year 627 (beginning Nov. 19, a. d. 1229).

45 بئر جعي i. e. from the tribe of Hazraj, a branch of the Masmúdah.

46 No doubt, the same individual above alluded to; but why should he be called there Ibn Tá-állah, and here Ibn Mutá'i? The meaning of the two names, however, is the same, i. e. 'he who obeys the commands of God.'
An-násir's high deeds in the prosecution of the holy war.

When An-násir received the intelligence that the fortresses round Valencia had fallen into the hands of the Christians, he was greatly grieved and perplexed. He wrote to the Sheikh Abú Mohammed Ibn Abí Hafas, asking his advice and assistance on this emergency; but he refused to comply with his requests. He then left Morocco in the year 609 (beginning June 2, A.D. 1212), and arrived at Seville, where he spent some time in making preparations for the campaign he meditated. This done, he left that city at the head of his forces, and invaded the dominions of Ibn Adefonsh (Alfonso III. of Castile), from whom he took the castle of Shalbaterra (Salvaterra). Thence he proceeded by forced marches to attack the infidel. The Christian king, in the mean time, had laid siege to Ka'bah Rabâh (Calatrava), and compelled its governor, Yúsuf Ibn Kádis, to surrender. On the approach of An-násir the Christians went out to meet him. The Almohades marched in good order until they came to a place called Al-akab, where the Christian king, having just been re-inforced by the Lord of Barcelona (Pedro), who had come to his assistance, was strongly entrenched. The two armies joined battle, but, alas! the wheel of fortune turned against the Moslems, who were put to flight with dreadful slaughter. This disastrous battle was fought at the end of Safar of 609 (July, A.D. 1212). After this, An-násir returned to Morocco, where he died, in Sha'ban of the ensuing year. They say that Alfonso had entered into a secret compact with his cousin, the son of Al-babúj, King of Leon, that he should affect to be the friend of An-násir, and then take to flight; which the Christian did, as agreed between the two. After this they [the Almohades] returned to Andalus to oppose the frequent incursions which the Christians were making in their territory. Having, upon one occasion, arrived in sight of Seville, the Christians were met by Síd Abú Zakariyyá Ibn Abí Hafss Ibn 'Abdi-l-múmen, who defeated them with great slaughter; by which victory the Moslems were somewhat revived.

Revolt of Ibnu-l-faras.

This Ibnu-l-faras, whose name was 'Abdu-r-ráhím Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, belonged to the classes of the Ulemas in Andalus. He was more generally known under the surname of Al-mohr, and had at one time been one of the courtiers of Al-mansúr. Having, on one occasion, uttered certain expressions which made him fear the vengeance of that Sultán, he retired from the audience-room and hid himself for some time. No more was heard

47 The author of the Kattás calls him Abú-l-hejaj [Yúsuf] Ibn Kádis. He seems to me to be the same officer alluded to in vol. i. p. 124, and 413, note 8.

48 This passage is rather obscure, and reads thus in the manuscript: قد باطر بن عه السموح [البوج] صاحب بنور [ليون] في ابن يوالى الناصر و يجر الهزيمة علي المسلمين ففعل ذلك

The fact, if true, is very curious, and is not to be found in the Spanish chronicles.
of him, until, after the death of Al-mansûr, he appeared in the territory inhabited by
the tribe of Kezûlah, assuming the title of Imám, and pretending to be the Kahttání
alluded to in those words of the Prophet, (may the blessings of God and his salvation
be on him!) “The time shall come when a man of the stock of Kahttán shall lead men
with a stick, and shall fill the earth with his justice, as it had before been filled with
iniquity,” &c.⁴⁹

To him are attributed the following verses:

"Tell the Bení ‘Abdi-l-mûmen Ibn ‘Alî to be prepared for the attacks of the lion of
"Helál.⁵⁰

"For here comes the Lord of Kahttán, the wise man of his race, the end of every
"opinion, the conqueror of kingdoms.

"Men shall obey [the motions of] his stick, and he [shall go] in front of them,
"commanding and forbidding like an ocean of science and government!

"Hasten to his call; for God is his protector, and shall soon [through his means]
"grind to powder the heretics and the impious."⁵¹

An-nasîr having sent some troops against this rebel, he was defeated, and put to death;
after which his head was brought to Morocco, and suspended to the walls.

_Reign of Al-mustanser, son of An-nâsîr._

On the death of Mohammed An-nâsîr, son of Al-mansûr, which happened in 611 (beginning
May 12, A.D. 1214), his son Yûsuf, who was then sixteen years old, was inaugurated with the
empire. On his accession to power, Yûsuf assumed the surname of _Al-mustanser-billah_
(he who seeks for the help of God). Ibn Jâmi’ and the Sheikhs of the Almohades having

---

⁴⁹ In a chapter of his historical Prolegomena, entitled “An account of the Fâtemî, and of the various opinions respecting
him which are current among the people,” Ibnu Khaldûn records this tradition differently:

_رجل من أهل بيتي أسسه أسسه نسبي بلا الأرض قسطاً وعلذاً كنما سبيلت جوراً وظلمًا_

_\text{\textit{The time shall come when a man of my family, bearing my name and patronymic,}}_

_\text{\textit{shall fill the earth with equity and justice, which had before been filled with tyranny and oppression. He shall rule over}}_

_\text{\textit{it seven years; others say nine.}}_

⁵⁰ The lion of Helál, no doubt, because he belonged to the tribe of that name, one of those domiciled in Eastern Africa.
gained him over, they governed in his name: owing to this circumstance, and also to the extreme youth of Al-mustanser, Abú Mohammed, son of the Sheikh Abú Hafss, who was then governor of Eastern Africa, was at first rather slow in sending in his allegiance; but when Al-mustanser had removed his chief Wizir, Ibn Jámi’, as well as his Sáhibu-l-ashghál, 'Abdu-l-'azíz Ibn Abí Zeyd, Abú Mohammed failed not to send his homage to court.

After this, Al-mustanser began to attend to the affairs of government as assiduously as his extreme youth would permit: he distributed the government of the several provinces of his empire among the princes of the royal family: he gave the investiture of Fez to [his uncle] Síd Abú Ibráhím, brother of Almansúr, who took [on the occasion] the surname of Adh-dháher, and was the father of Al-murtadhí [who reigned afterwards]. To his uncle Síd Abú Is'hák Al-ahlwálasting he gave the investiture of Seville. During this governor’s rule the raging fire of war preyed on the fortresses which the Almohades had taken [from the Christians], and the brave defenders of Andalus were defeated and dispersed.64

On the death of Ibn Abí Zeyd, at the instigation of Abú Zeyd Ibn Túján, Al-mustanser deposed Ibn Jámi’ from the Wizirate, and appointed in his room Abú Yahya Al-hazrájí. He also named to the office of Sáhibu-l-ashghál, Abú 'Ala Ibn Asharí. He then restored Ibn Jámi’ to his favour, and re-instated him in the office of Wizír. He also deprived Abú Zeyd Ibn Túján of the government of Telemsán, which he gave to Sa’íd Ibn Al-mansúr, and sent the former to Murcia, where he was imprisoned by his orders, and kept in close confinement. The reign of Al-mustanser passed on in tranquillity and peace until the Bení Merín made their appearance in the neighbourhood of Fez in the year 613 (beginning April 19, A.D. 1216). Having sent against them [his uncle] Síd Abú Ibráhím, with the forces of the Almohades, this general was defeated and taken prisoner; though no sooner did the Bení Merín recognise him than he was set at liberty. Then came the news of the death of Abú Mohammed Ibn Abí Hafss, Lord of Eastern Africa, whom Al-mustanser immediately replaced by Síd Abú-l-l‘ola, brother of Al-mansúr, then governor of Seville. After this, however, Al-mustanser deposed him, and appointed in his room Si’ayah Ibn Muthana,65 who repaired thither, as we shall hereafter relate when we come to treat of the Bení Abí Hafss.

About this time there appeared in the territory of Fez a man of the family of the 'Obeydites, who claimed descent from Al-’ádhed,66 and assumed the surname of Mahdí. Al-mustanser sent against him [his uncle] Abú Ibráhím, the brother of Al-mansúr. On his arrival at Fez, this general bribed some of the partisans of the rebel, who seized him, and brought him into his presence, when he was immediately put to death. In the year 619 (beginning Feb. 14, A.D. 1222), Al-mustanser gave to his uncle, Abú Mohammed, better known under the surname of Al-’ádíl, the investiture of Murcia, after removing him from the government of Granada, which he held. After this the state was disturbed [by wars and seditions]. Al-mustanser died in the year 620 (A.D. 1223).

62 The MS. reads thus: ‘Obeydites or Fatimites.
63 About the twenty-fourth Sultan of Egypt, of the dynasty of the 'Obeydites or Fatimites.
APPENDIX.

Reign of 'Abdu-l-wáhed Al-mákhlu', the deposed brother of Al-mánsúr.

On the death of Al-mustansér, which happened on the day of 'Idu-l-adháthi of the year 620 (Jan. 4, A. D. 1224), Ibn Jámi' and the Almohades having united their councils, appointed as his successor Sid Abú Mohammed 45 'Abdu-l-wáhed, brother of Al-mánsúr, who was accordingly proclaimed.

On his accession to power, 'Abdu-l-wáhed gave orders that a sum of money should be offered to the rebel Ibn Asharífí, on condition of his laying down his arms. He also wrote to confirm his own brother, Abú-l-óla, in the government of Eastern Africa, notwithstanding that Al-mustansér [who had been prepossessed against him] had long contemplated his removal; but, as Abú-l-óla was dead when the confirmation reached him, he was succeeded by his son, Abú Zeyd Al-mushmanmár, who declared himself independent in those provinces, as we shall hereafter relate when we come to narrate the events of Eastern Africa. After this the Sultán sent down his orders to Murcia for the release of Ibn Túján [Abú Zeyd], who, as before related, was confined in the castle of that city; and it was done as he commanded, against the advice of [his Wizír] Ibn Jámi', who was of a contrary opinion. 'Abdu-l-wáhed also sent his brother, Abú Is'hák, with a fleet to assay the island of Mallorca, as his predecessor, Al-mustanser, had done before he died.

About this time a son of Al-mánsúr, named Abú Mohammed 'Abdulláh, who was governor of Murcia, revolted against the Sultán, at the instigation of Ibn Túján [Abú Zeyd]. This man [who was his Wizír at the time] had prevailed on him to rise and seize on the empire, by asserting—which assertion he proved by witnesses—that he [Ibn Túján] had heard Al-mánsúr designate him for his heir to the Khalifate in the event of An-násír's death. As the people were discontented with the administration of Ibn Jámi', and the governors of Andalus happened all to be the sons of Al-mánsúr, and favourable to his views; and as he had, in the first instance, opposed his uncle's proclamation, Abú Mohammed found no difficulty in seizing on the empire, which he did, assuming on the occasion the surname of Al-ádil. All his brothers [in Andalus] hastened, though in secret, to take the oath of allegiance to him. These were Abú-l-óla, governor of Cordova; Abú-l-hasan, governor of Granada; and Abú Músá, governor of Malaga. On the other hand, 'Abdu-l-wáhed having removed Abú Mohammed Ibn Abí 'Abdilláh Mohammed Ibn Abí Hafíz Ibn 'Abdí-l-múmen, better known by the surname of Al-báyesí (of Baeza), 46 from his government of Jaen, which he gave to his uncle Abú-r-rábi' Ibn Abí Hafíz, the deposed governor also joined the insurgents and proclaimed Al-ádil. Having then joined his forces to those of Abú-l-óla, governor of Cordova, who was also Al-ádil's brother, they both marched to Seville, where a brother of Al-mánsúr and of 'Abdu-l-wáhed commanded at the time. 'Abdu-l-azíz, for such was his name, immediately embraced their party: the only one who refused to take the oath of allegiance to Al-ádil, and who remained faithful to

45 Conde (vol. ii, p. 432) calls him Abú-l-malik.
46 He was so called on account of his living afterwards at Baeza.
'Abdu-l-wáhéd, was Síd Abú Zeyd Ibn Abi 'Abdillah, the brother of Al-báyesí. However, Al-ádil marched from Murcia to Seville, taking in his company Abú Zeyd Ibn Túján, and made his entrance into that city. When this intelligence reached Morocco, the Almohades declared against 'Abdu-l-wáhéd, and compelled their monarch to deprive Ibn Jámi' of his office, and to exile him to Heskúrah. About the same time, Abú Zakariyyá Yahya Ibn Abí Yahya Ash-shahíd Ibn Abí Hafss rose with the tribe of Hentétah, whilst Yúsuf Ibn 'Ali did the same with that of Tímnelel. He ['Abdu-l-wáhéd] sent Abú Is'hák Ibn Jámi' to station himself with the fleet in the Straits [of Gibraltar], to prevent the passage of ships from Andalus. He also sent a secret message to Ibn Jámi', who had set out for Heskúrah, enjoining him to return to him; but he failed in all his plans, being soon after dethroned, and privately put to death in Rabi\(^7\)\(^5\) of the year 621 (from March 22 to May 19, A.D. 1224), when the Almohades sent in their allegiance to Al-ádil.

Reign of Al-ádil, son of Al-mansúr.

Al-ádil received the oaths of the Almohades at the same time with a letter of Zakariyyá Ibnu-sh-shahíd, announcing to him the capture of ['Abdu-l-wáhéd] the deposed Sultán. Upon this, Al-báyesí [Abú Mohammed], who knew well the ill-will which that monarch bore him, decided to revolt against him, and to assume the supreme power at Baeza, which he did, under the surname of Adh-dháifir, remaining for some time undisturbed. Al-ádil then sent against him his own brother, Abú-l-’ola, who besieged that city, but could not reduce it.\(^5\) After this, Al-ádil dispatched Abú Sa’úd, son of the Sheikh Abú Hafss, who was also unsuccessful. In the mean time affairs were daily presenting a worse aspect in Andalus against Al-ádil. The Christians made repeated incursions into the neighbourhood of Seville, where Abú-l-’ola was residing at the time, and defeated the troops of the Almohades near Tablada. In Africa, Al-ádil’s courtiers instigated him against Ibn Túján, who was seized and conveyed prisoner to Ceuta. Mean while the party of Al-báyesí waxed stronger in Andalus through the means of the Christians, who lent him assistance. Seeing this, Al-ádil determined to send troops to Andalus, to re-inforce his brother, Abú-l-’ola.\(^5\) As he was at Kasr-al-mejáz, 'Abik\(^6\) Ibn Abí Mohammed, son of the Sheikh Abú Hafss, arrived there,

\(^7\) First or second is here wanting, as there are two months so called. Conde says that he was deposed on the 13th of Safar, 621 (March 6, A.D. 1224), and murdered three days after; but the dates given by the author of the Karítás, whence the Spanish translator borrowed his narrative, are very different. The African historian places the former event on the 21st of Sha’bán, 621 (Sept. 5, A.D. 1224). On the following day, which was a Sunday, the oath of allegiance was publicly taken to Al-ádil, and thirteen days after, (on the 14th Ramadán,) he was strangled. See the Karítás, by Mours, p. 269.

\(^5\) The author of the Karítás says that he was obliged to capitulate, and swear allegiance to the Sultán; but no sooner had the enemy retired from before Baeza, than Al-báyesí wrote to Alfonso, and entered into an alliance with him against Al-ádil.

\(^6\) The text here is doubtless corrupted, but I have not the means of correcting it:

فاجأ العدل إلی العدوة إلی
اخاء إبآ العلم علي الأندلس
and entered his presence. Al-Ádil having said to him, “How farest thou?” he replied in
verse. Al-Ádil was so pleased with his answer that he appointed him governor of Eastern
Africa. He wrote to his cousin, Síd Abú Zeyd, to come to him to Salé. Abú Zeyd did as
he was commanded. The Sultán then spent some time at this place, and sent for the
Sheikhs of the neighbouring tribes. Among those who came on this occasion was Helál Ibn
Hamidán Ibn Mukaddam, Amir of the tribe of Al-khalatt, with whom Ibn Túján happened to
be on terms of great intimacy. Another chieftain, named Ibn Jarmún, who was then Amír of
the tribe of Sufyán, not choosing to obey the summons, the tribes of Al-khalatt and Sufyán
fought with one another. Upon this, Al-Ádil hastened to Morocco, where, immediately upon
his arrival, he showed his resentment against Ibn Túján, by depriving him of his office, and
appointing in his room Abú Zeyd Ibn Abí Mohammed, son of the Sheikh Abú Hafss. Ibn
Túján having fallen into disgrace [with his master], Ibnu-sh-shahíd and Yúsf Ibn ʿAlí,
Sheikhs of the tribes of Hentétah and Tinmelel, seized on the supreme power. This was fol-
lowed by the revolt of [the tribes of] Heskúrah and Al-khalatt, who made an incursion into
the territory of Morocco. Ibn Túján went out to meet them, but gained no advantage over
the invaders, who completely ravaged the country of Dukélah. Al-Ádil then sent against them
an army of Almohades under the command of Ibráhím Ibn Ismá'il, son of the Sheikh Abú
Hafss, the same who had opposed the sons of the Sheikh Abú Mohammed in Eastern Africa,
as we shall hereafter relate; but he also was defeated and put to death. Ibnu-sh-shahíd and
Yúsf Ibn ʿAlí then went to their respective tribes, assembled their forces, and took the
field against the tribe of Heskúrah; they likewise agreed to deprive Al-Ádil of the command,
and to proclaim in his stead Yahya, son of An-násir. Accordingly, having arrived at
Morocco, they made a sudden attack upon the royal palace, which they plundered of all
its valuables, and seized the person of Al-Ádil, who was strangled on the day of Al-fitr,
or 24th of Shawwál of the year 624 (Oct. 7, A. D. 1227).

Reign of Al-mámún, son of Al-mansúr.

Al-Ádil had a brother named Idrís Al-mámún, who was governor of Seville. When the
intelligence of the revolt of the Almohades and Arabs against his brother, and the overthrew
of his empire, reached him, Al-mámún, who, as before stated, was governor of Seville, rose in
that city and had himself proclaimed by the inhabitants, the example being soon followed
by most of the people of Andalus, as well as by Síd Abú Zeyd, governor of Valencia
and the eastern parts of Andalus, who hastened to send in his allegiance. Then came
the events above recorded; the rising of the Almohades against Al-Ádil, his execution
at Al-kasr, and the election of Yahya, his cousin, son of An-násir. Ibn Túján then entered
into a secret correspondence [with some of his partisans], and aimed at the overthrow
of the established dynasty. [At his instigation] the tribes of Heskúrah and the Arabs

61 The verse reads thus in the MS., but I have not attempted a translation of it, as without some comment or explanation
it is by no means easy to seize the sense:

حالي مَّقَي علم ابن منصر بَيْنِي
جَآ الرَّمَّانُ أيِّاه منْهَا تَأْيَدا

k

VOL. II.
made an incursion into the territory of Morocco, and defeated an army of Almohades that sallied out to oppose them. But Ibnu-sh-shahíd having discovered the secret machinations of Ibn Túján, surprised him one day in his house, and put him to death. Then Yahya Ibn An-násir went out to his friends as above related, and the Almohades deposed him, and sent their allegiance to Al-mámún. The principal actors in this last revolution were Abú 'Abdillah Al-gherighor and Síd Abú Hafss Ibn Abí Hafss. When the intelligence reached Yahya Ibn An-násir and Ibnu-sh-shahíd, they laid siege to Morocco in the year 626 (beginning Nov. 29, A. D. 1228), and put the conspirators to death. However, the party of Al-mámún waxed every day stronger. The governor of Fez, as well as Mohammed Ibn Abí Zeyd Ibn Túján, governor of Telemsán, Abú Músa Ibn Al-mansúr, governor of Ceuta, and his cousin, Ibnu-l-attás,62 governor of Bujéyah, all embraced his party. The only one who resisted was Abú Zakariyyá, governor of Eastern Africa, and this resistance was the cause of his subsequent rebellion, since, as we shall relate hereafter, he afterwards declared himself independent in that country. In short, nothing remained under the rule of Yahya Ibn An-násir except Sijilmésah and Eastern Africa.

Whilst these events were passing in Africa, Al-báyesí marched against Córdova and gained possession of it. Thence he went to Seville in company with his ally, the King of the Christians, to whom he had given over the castle of Kijáttah63 (Quesada), and other fortresses belonging to the Moslems. Al-mámún, however, went out of Seville and met the enemy, whom he defeated with great loss, obliging Al-báyesí to take refuge in Córdova. Finding, on his arrival at this place, that the inhabitants had risen against him, Al-báyesí fled to a neighbouring castle called Al-mudowwar (Almodovar), where he was soon after treacherously put to death by his own Wizír, Ibn Biurak,64 who hastened to Seville to present his head to Al-mámún. After this came the rebellion of Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Húd, who gained possession of Murcia and the greater part of Eastern Andalus, as we have related in our account of him. Al-mámún marched against him and besieged him, but he defended himself bravely; and Al-mámún, unable to conquer him, returned to Seville.

After this, in the year 626 (beginning Nov. 29, A. D. 1228), Al-mámún repaired to Morocco, on the solicitation of the people of Africa, who wished for his presence, and had previously sent him their allegiance. Helál Ibn Hamídán, Anúr of the tribe of Al-khalatt, had also implored his assistance, and begged him to come over. Before embarking, Al-mámún asked the Christian king to give him a body of troops to serve under his orders in Africa; and this request being granted on terms stipulated between the two monarchs, Al-mámún put to sea with his Christian auxiliaries. No sooner, however, had Al-mámún quitted the shores of Andalus, than the people of Seville revolted against him, and sent their allegiance to Ibn Húd.

At his landing on the coast of Africa, Al-mámún was met by Yahya Ibn An-násir, whom he completely defeated, after a sharp encounter, making great slaughter among his followers, the Almohades and Arabs: Yahya fled to the mountains of Hentétah.65 After this victory Al-mámún gained possession of the capital (Morocco). Having there summoned to his

62 A branch of the Atlas, inhabited by the tribe of that name.
APPENDIX.

presence the Sheikhs of the Almohades, he upbraided them with their conduct, and, having ordered the arrest of the principal among them, to the number of one hundred, caused them all to be put to death. He then sent circulars throughout the provinces of his empire, commanding that the name of the Mahdī should no longer be struck on the coins, or proclaimed from the pulpits of the mosques; that in the call to prayer [which was made] in the Berber language no mention should be made [as before] of the death of that individual; that the words Asbōh Wa lillahi-i-hamdu (rise and praise God), which the Mahdī had caused to be added to the formula of convocation for the prayer of al-fajr (day-break), should be suppressed, as well as other peculiar practices introduced by him, which had been respected and strictly kept by 'Abdu-l-múmen and his descendants, the ancestors of Al-mámún. He even meditated doing away with every one of the religious precepts imposed by the founder of that sect, and ridiculed the people for describing the Mahdī as a man under the protection of Heaven. He went still further, and made himself guilty of other excesses. In compliance with the treaty entered into with the infidel king, he gave the Christians who came over with him permission to build a church within the precincts of Morocco; which they did, tolling their bells daily.

In the mean time Ibn Húd had reduced almost the whole of Andalus, and expelled therefrom the Almohades, who fell every where victims to the infuriated mob. Among those who perished on this occasion was Síd Abú-r-rabi', the nephew of Al-mansúr, who had been governor of Cordova ever since the reign of that Sultán. In this extremity Al-mámún sent orders to Abú Zakariyyá Ibn Abí Mohammed, grandson of the Sheikh Abú Hafss, who was governor of Eastern Africa, to come to his assistance; but not only did he refuse to do so, but some time after, in the year 629 (beginning Oct. 28, A.D. 1231), he shook off all allegiance due to him. However, Al-mámún gave his cousin, Síd Abú 'Imrán, son of his uncle Mohammed Al-hardhání, the government of Bujéyah; at the same time appointing Abú 'Abdillah Al-lehiyání,66 brother of the Amír Abú Zakariyyá [to act as his Wízír]. Yahya Ibn An-násir marched against him [Al-mámún], but was defeated. Again, a second time, Yahya attacked his adversary, but he was defeated with the loss of many of his followers, whose heads were fixed on spikes to the walls of Morocco. After these defeats Yahya Ibn An-násir fled to the countries of Dar'ah and Sijilmésah.

Some time after this, happened the revolt of a brother of Al-mámún, named Abú Músa, who caused himself to be proclaimed at Ceuta, and assumed the surname of Al-muyyed-billah. Al-mámún left Morocco to reduce him; but having heard on his road to that city (Ceuta) that the tribes of the Bení Fezár and Nekayah had laid siege to Meknásah (Mequinez), and were committing all manner of ravages in its neighbourhood, he decided to abandon his former purpose, and repair to those districts. He did so; and after applying a caution to that wound, returned to Ceuta, which he besieged for three consecutive months. Abú Músa then sent to Andalus, to implore the assistance of Ibn Húd, Lord of that country, who granted his request, and sent a powerful fleet to his succour. Whilst Al-mámún was occupied in the siege of Ceuta, Yahya Ibn An-násir, accompanied by the Arabian tribe of

---

66 He was called Al-lehiyání because he had a very fine beard. His name was Mohammed.—Ibnu Khaldún, fo. 135.
Sufyán and their Sheikh, Jarmún Ibn 'Isa, as well as by Abú Sa'íd Ibn Wánúdín, the Sheikh of the tribe of Hentétah, made a sudden incursion into the territory of Morocco, and ravaged the country all around. When this intelligence was brought to Al-mámún, he raised the siege of Ceuta, and started off in pursuit of his enemy; but he died on the road at Wáda Umm Rabi’, in the beginning of 630 (A.D. 1232). When Abú Músa saw his brother raise the siege, he placed himself under the obedience of Ibn Húd, and gave him possession of Ceuta, to which city that Sultán appointed a new governor.

The people of Valencia, Murcia, and the eastern provinces of Andalus, proclaim the Sultán Abú Zakariyyá Ibn Abí Hafus, and send an embassy to him.

During the course of these events, Abú Jemíl Zeyyán, son of Abú-l-hamalát Mudáfi’ Ibn Abí-l-hejáj Ibn Sa’d Ibn Mardánísh, took Valencia from Síd Abú Zeyd, son of Síd Moham-med, son of Síd Abú Hafss, and caused himself to be proclaimed king of that city and the surrounding districts. About this time, as above related, the empire of the Bení 'Abdi-l-múmen was fast declining every where in Andalus. We have related how Ibn Húd revolted against Al-mámún and waged war with him: another chieftain, named Ibnu-l-ahmar, rose also at Arjona; and in short the whole of Andalus became a prey to civil war. This state of things being observed by the Christian kings, they began to wreak their fury on every point of the Moslem frontier. The King of Aragon (Jayme) marched towards Valencia, which he besieged. This was in the year 633 (beginning Sept. 15, A.D. 1235). In order the better to surround the Moslems, the Christian king formed seven large camps: he had two in front of Valencia, one at Jeźírah Shukar (Alcira), and another at Xativa; the remainder were in Jaen, Tavira,67 Murcia, and Liblah (Niebla). Besides these forces brought to act against the Moslems of Andalus, the Genoese [with a fleet] were upon Ceuta. Some time after, the King of Castile [Ferdinand III.] took Cordova, while the King of Aragon reduced most of the fortresses round Valencia and Alcira. The latter built a fortress called Anísah,68 from which to besiege Valencia, and, after quartering his forces in it, retired to his dominions. Zeyyán Ibn Mardánísh then decided to make a sally and attack the besieging forces. To this end he sent to ask the people of Alcira to assist him in his undertaking. Having obtained the re-inforcements he wanted, he marched against the enemy, but he was completely defeated, with the loss of the greater part of his followers. On that disastrous day, which was like the harbinger of the taking of Valencia by the Christians, several men eminent for their talents or their virtues died martyrs for the faith; among others, Abú-r-rabi’ Ibn Sálím, the chief of the traditionists of Andalus. Subsequently to this the Christians made several incursions in the neighbourhood of Valencia, until the month of Ramad hán, 635 (April or May, A.D. 1238), when the King of Aragon in person appeared before the city, and

67 This would make eight, not seven, as above. The copy of Ibn Khaldún, which, as I have frequently observed, is by no means correctly written, reads طلاییر—who can be no other place than Tavira. Perhaps طلاییر Talavera is meant; but as no evidence of the military preparations of Jayme is to be found in the native historians, I have not the means of determining the true reading.

68 Near the ancient Enesa or Anaso, (now Puig de Cebolla,) on a rock surrounded by the sea, about seven miles from Valencia.
APPENDIX.

began to press the siege with the utmost vigour. In the mean time, fortune forsook the
banners of the Bení 'Abdí-l-múmen of Morocco, whose empire passed into other hands; the
Bení Abi Hafṣ becoming the rulers of Eastern Africa. Not expecting any assistance from
the former, Ibn Mardanîsh and the people of Eastern Andalus decided upon applying to the
latter, and imploring the help of Abú Zakariyyá Ibn Abi Hafṣ (the reigning Sultán of that
family), whom they proclaimed their sovereign. Accordingly that chieftain dispatched to
him his secretary, the Faquih Abú 'Abdillah Ibnul-abbáár, who arrived in this country and
brought their oath of allegiance, and then recited in the presence of Abú Zakariyyá that
celebrated kassidah of his, rhyming in the letter sin, which begins thus:

" Hasten to Andalus with thy mounted warriors, the soldiers of God, before the paths
of salvation are entirely obliterated.

" Go and bestow on her thy powerful assistance, since the help of thy victorious arms
is never withdrawn from the needy.

" Thy presence will restore life to her sinking body, after tasting morn and evening of
the cup of woe.

" To the island, then, whose inhabitants are so many victims destined for sacrifice, and
whose sufferings cannot otherwise be terminated than by a speedy death." 60

The Amir granted the request of the people of Valencia, and sent to their assistance a fleet
loaded with provisions, stores, and money, under the orders of Abú Yahya Ibn Yahya Ibnus-
shahid Abí Is'hák Ibn Abi Hafṣ. The total cost of the armament was one hundred thousand
dinárs. The fleet reached the shores of Valencia at a time when the inhabitants were suffering
all the privations and horrors of the siege, and cast anchor at Denia, where it landed all the
stores; but the admiral seeing that Ibn Mardanîsh did not send thither any one to take charge
of them, set sail and returned to Africa. The siege, in the mean while, was pressed more and
more, until the provisions were entirely exhausted, and the people died through hunger.
Negotiations then began for the surrender of the city, which was finally given up to Jakmek
(Jayme), King of Aragon, in the month of Safar of the year 636 (Sept. A. D. 1238). Ibn
Mardanîsh left Valencia for Jezírah Shukar (Alcira), where, immediately upon his arrival, he
exacted from the inhabitants the oath of allegiance to the Amir Abú Zakariyyá. Ibnul-abbáár
returned to Túnis, where he took up his residence, becoming one of the courtiers of the Sultán.

The enemy, however, pursued his conquests. Ibn Mardanîsh was besieged in Alcira, and
compelled to abandon that city, and to take refuge in Denia, into which he made his entry in
Rejeb of the same year (Feb. or March, A. D. 1239). Having there caused his sovereign,
Abú Zakariyyá, to be proclaimed, Ibn Mardanîsh tried to do the same at Murcia, where

The author gives considerable extracts from this poem, which I have not thought it necessary to translate.
APPENDIX.

A chieftain named Abú Bekr 'Azíz Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Khattáb had reigned since the commencement of the year 636 (August 13, A. D. 1238), having been proclaimed king by the inhabitants. In Ramadhán of the same year, Ibn Mardanish succeeded in his attempt. Having gained possession of Murcia, he put to death its ruler [Ibn Khattáb], and sent the allegiance of the inhabitants to Abú Zakariyyá. In this manner were the eastern provinces of Andalus reduced under the sway of the Bení Abí Hafss. The messengers sent by Ibn Mardanish to Túnis returned in 637 (beginning Aug. 2, A. D. 1239), bringing him the investiture of all those districts which had through his means acknowledged the supremacy of the Bení Abí Hafss. Ibn Mardanish retained the government of them, until, in the year 638 (beginning July 22, A. D. 1240), Ibn Húd took the city of Murcia, and obliged him to seek shelter in the fortresses which still held to their allegiance for him. Ibn Húd, moreover, maintained himself in Murcia until the city was finally taken by the King of Barcelona [Jayme] in the year 644 (beginning May 18, A. D. 1246), when he crossed the sea to Túnis. 

The inhabitants of Andalus come under the rule of the Bení Abí Hafss. Arrival at Túnis of messengers bringing the allegiance of the people of Seville and other great cities.

There were about this time at Seville two influential citizens, one of whom was named Abú Merwán Ahmed Al-bájí, who was a descendant of Abú-l-walíd [Al-bájí], and the other, Abú 'Amru Ibnu-l-jadd, of the posterity of the celebrated traditionist, Abú Bekr (Ibnu-l-jadd). These two men, whose ancestors had enjoyed great favour with the Khalifs [of the house of Umeyyah], had inherited considerable property and influence. They were held in great estimation and respect by the people of Seville, who never failed to consult them in arduous points of law, and looked up to them in every emergency. All the princes of the family of 'Abdu-l-múmen who had held command in Andalus had moreover appointed them to offices of trust, and admitted them into their council. We have seen how, after the death of Al-mustanser, the affairs of Andalus had fallen into the worst possible state, the relatives of that monarch dividing his dominions among themselves. About the same time Ibn

---

70 He was the descendant of Ahmed Ibn Khattáb, of Murcia, surnamed Al-khazení (of the hoarded treasures), who, on the return of Al-wansúr [Ibn Abí 'Amir] from his expedition to Catalonia in A. H. 374, entertained him most munificently during his stay in that city. See Conde, vol. ii. p. 153; and Casiri, vol. i. p. 64. The former of these writers places the death of Ibnu-l-khattáb on the 26th of Ramadhán, 640 (March 18, A. D. 1243), and says that he was killed near Lécart (Alicante); but what faith can be placed in the statements of an author whose narrative swarms with the greatest blunders? who, in the course of a few pages, makes Ibn Khattáb sometimes governor of Lorca, and sometimes of Murcia; who speaks of two kings of the latter city, 'Alí Ibn Húd, and Mohammed Ibn 'Alí Ibn Húd, the latter of whom he also calls governor of Lorca? Compare vol. ii. p. 20 et seqq.

71 This Ibn Húd seems to be the Abenhubiel of the Cronica General, fo. cccxxii. et passim.

72 Ibnu-l-khattáb places the taking of Murcia in 640, alluding, no doubt, to the first occupation of that city by the Infante Don Alfonso in 1241. The city, however, seems to have fallen again into the hands of the Moors; for, on the 13th of February, A. D. 1265, it was taken by Don Pedro, son of King Jayme of Aragon, who undertook its conquest on behalf of Ferdinand III. of Castile, to whose dominions it was annexed. See Cascales, Discurso Históricos de la Ciudad de Murcia. Mad. 1621, fo. 18.

73 It is not easy to say, from the ambiguous manner in which this passage is conceived, whether it was Ibn Mardaníah or Ibn Húd who crossed over to Africa. I am inclined to believe it was the latter.
APPENDIX.

Hūd\(^74\) and Zeyyān Ibn Mardanish raised the standard of revolt in the eastern provinces, while Ibnu-l-ahmar rose in arms in the west. The former was every where successful against the Almohades, whom he expelled from several cities. Having reduced Seville in 626 (beginning Nov. 29, A. D. 1228), he confined in prison the Almohade [princes] who were there, and took possession of the place, where he maintained himself until he lost it in 629 (beginning Oct. 28, 1231), by a revolt of the inhabitants. After expelling his brother Abū-n-nejāt Sālim, whom he had left to command in his absence, the people of Seville proclaimed Al-bājī, who took, upon his accession, the surname of Al-mu’tadhī, and appointed Abū Bekr Ibn Sāhibi-r-radd to be his Wizīr. The example of Seville was soon followed by the people of Carmona, who also proclaimed Al-bājī. On the receipt of this intelligence, Ibn Hūd hastened to Seville, which city he besieged; but Al-bājī having made an alliance with Mohammed Ibnu-l-ahmar, who, after the taking of Cordova [by the Christians], had risen at Arjona and Jaen, that chief hastened to his assistance. Ibn Hūd, however, met them at the head of his forces, but he was defeated, and put to flight. The victors after this returned to their respective states, Ibnu-l-ahmar to Arjona, and Al-bājī to his capital [Seville], where he encamped outside the walls. Subsequently to this, Ibnu-l-ahmar, seeing the opportunity at hand to possess himself of Seville, sent thither a relative of his, named Ibn Ashkilulah, with some of the troops of Arjona, and a division of Christians. Having made a sudden and unexpected attack upon the tents of Al-bājī, they took him and his Wizīr prisoners, and put both of them to death. This happened in the year 631 (beginning Oct. 6, A. D. 1233). Ibnu-l-ahmar then made his entry into Seville, but scarcely had he been there a month when the inhabitants rose against him, and returned to the obedience of Ibn Hūd, who again appointed his own brother, Abū-n-nejāt Sālim, to govern them.

On the death of Ibn Hūd, which happened in 635 (A. D. 1238), the people of Seville returned to their obedience to the Almohades of Africa, proclaiming as their sovereign the Sultān Ar-rashīd, who then reigned at Morocco. In the mean time, and until a governor should be appointed, they elected Mohammed, son of Sīd Abū ’Imrān, of whom we have already spoken as being governor of Constantina at the time that city was taken by Abū Zakariyyā. Abū ’Imrān was taken prisoner, and confined in a dungeon. As to his son Mohammed, he was transported to Seville, where his mother, who then resided in that city, took care of his education. This was the individual whom the citizens of Seville set over themselves whilst they sent their allegiance to Ar-rashīd. They were directed on this occasion by the advice of Abū ’Amrū Ibn-l-jadd. On the arrival of the ambassadors at court, Ar-rashīd granted their request, and confirmed Abū ’Abdillah [Mohammed] in the government of Seville. Things remained in this state until the death of Ar-rashīd, which happened in 640 (A. D. 1242), when the people of Seville, hearing that Abū Zakariyyā [Ibn Abī Hafss] had taken Telemsān, and was threatening other provinces of Western Africa, did as the people of Valencia, Murcia, and other cities of Eastern Andalus had done, and proclaimed the Amīr Abū Zakariyyā Ibn Abī Mohammed Ibn Abī Hafss; their example being speedily followed by the people of Xerez and Tarīfa, who also sent their messengers

\(^74\) Mohammed Ibn Yūsuf Ibn Hūd, surnamed Al-mutawakkil al-as-lāh.
bearing their allegiance in 641 (beginning June 20, A.D. 1243), and requesting him to
appoint a prince of his family to command over them. The Amír acceded to their wishes,
and named his nephew Abú Fáris, son of Yúnas, and grandson of the Sheikh Abú Hafss,
who arrived in Seville, and took possession of the government, Ibhnu-l-jadd hastening to
surrender all his authority into his hands. Subsequently to this, in the year 643 (beginning
May 28, A. D. 1245), Ibhnu-l-jadd having revolted against Abú Fáris, deposed him from
the government of the city, and banished him to Ceuta, himself remaining sole master of
Seville. Ibhnu-l-jadd then made peace, and contracted an alliance with the Christian king, and
[in order to insure its continuance] proceeded to strike out of the rolls of the army his
best Almogávares 75 or frontier soldiers. These, however, became so incensed at the measure
taken by Ibhnu-l-jadd, that they revolted against him, and put him to death at the instigation
of a captain of theirs, named Sakkáf, who assumed the command of Seville. This Sakkáf,
having sent for Abú Fáris Ibn Abi Hafss, replaced him in his post of governor for Abú
Zakariyyá. This offended the Christian king, who, taking the murder of his ally Ibhnu-l-
jadd as a pretext for declaring war against the rebels, took Carmona and Marsánah
(Marchena), and subsequently laid siege to Seville. The people then sued for peace, but
this the Christian arrogantly refused to grant. The administration of affairs was then vested
in a council composed of the following individuals: the captain of the Almogávares, Sakkáf,
Ibn Sho'ayb, Yahya Ibn Khaledún, 76 Masúd Ibn Khyár, and Abú Bekr Ibn Sharíf, over
which presided Abú Fáris Ibn Abi Hafss.

The siege lasted for two consecutive years, Ibhnu-l-ahmar serving under the Christian king
with a body of troops. The Amír Abú Zakariyyá sent to their assistance a fleet under
the command of Abú-r-rabi' Al'aziz At-tínmeleli, who having been requested by the people
of Ceuta to allow them to join their fleet to his, acceded to their solicitations, and sailed
up the river of Seville (Guadalquivir); but he was beaten by the Christian fleet, who defended
the entrance of the port, and was obliged to return. At last, the enemy gained possession
of the city by capitulation in the year 646 (A. D. 1248), after a siege of fifteen months, during
which time Ibhnu-l-ahmar, as before related, assisted the Christians with men and provisions.
The Christian king appointed over the guilty inhabitants of Seville  'Abdu-l-hakk Ibn Abí
Mohammed Al-bayesí, of the posterity of 'Abdu-l-múmen. There is no God but God! His is the empire!

75 Al-mughávar, whence the Spanish 'Al-mogávar,' means a soldier employed in border warfare.

76 The grandfather of the celebrated historian, 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Khaledún. See vol. i. p. 311. The author of
the chronological history of the Spanish Moors, published in the Art de vérifier les dates, vol. iii. p. 68, has unduly ridiculed
Cardonne for stating that Seville became a republic before it was taken by the Christians; for, although the form of
government adopted by the inhabitants on that occasion cannot strictly be called a republic, it was nevertheless contrary
to all Moslem notions of government.
### CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL TABLES.

#### TABLE I

**CHRONOLOGY OF THE AMI'RS OR GOVERNORS OF MOHAMMEDAN SPAIN UNDER THE KHALIFS.**

*Those whose names are marked with an asterisk were elected by the army.*

1. Tarik ibn Zeyad, from Shawwâl, a. h. 92 (July, a. d. 711), to Jumada I., a. h. 93 (March or April, a. d. 712).
2. Musa ibn Nosseyr, to Dhi-l-hajjah, a. h. 95 (Sept. a. d. 714).
3. *'Abdu-l-'aziz, to Dhi-l-hajjah, a. h. 97 (Aug. a. d. 716).
4. *Ayûb ibn Habib Al-lakhmí, to Dhi-l-hajjah, a. h. 98 (July or Aug. a. d. 717).*
5. Al-horr ibn *'Abdi-r-rahmân Ath-thakefi, to Ramadhân, a. h. 100 (March or April, a. d. 719).
6. As-samh ibn Malik Al-khulânî, to Dhi-l-hajjah, a. h. 102 (May, a. d. 721).
7. *'Abdu-r-rahmân Al-ghâfeiki, to Safar, a. h. 103 (Aug. a. d. 721).
8. *'Anbasah ibn Sohaym Al-kelbi, to Sha'bân, a. h. 107 (Dec. a. d. 725 or Jan. 726).
9. *'Odhrah ibn *'Abdillah Al-fehri, to Shawwâl, a. h. 107 (March, a. d. 726).
11. *'Othman ibn Abi 'Abdah, to Sha'bân, a. h. 109 (Nov. a. d. 727).
12. *'Othmân ibn Abi Nes'ah Al-khath'amí, to Rabi' I., a. h. 110 (June or July, a. d. 728).
15. *Mohammed ibn *'Abdillah Al-ushja'i, to Sha'bân, a. h. 113 (Oct. a. d. 731).
16. *'Abdu-r-rahmân Al-ghâfeki, for the second time, to Ramadhân, a. h. 114 (Oct. a. d. 732).
17. *'Abdu-l-malek ibn Kattan Al-fehri, to Ramadhân, a. h. 116 (Oct. or Nov. a. d. 734).
19. *'Abdu-l-malek ibn Kattan, for the second time, to Dhi-l-ka'dah, a. h. 123 (Sept. or Oct. a. d. 741).

---

1 Some of the Mohammedan historians omit Tarik in this list, and not without reason, since he was merely the lieutenant of Musa ibn Nosseyr, governor of Africa, for whom and in whose name the conquest of the Peninsula was undertaken and achieved. At any rate, his government ought not to be counted from the battle of Guadalete, much less from the date of his landing, but from the taking of Toledo, the capital of the Gothic monarchy, supposing that city to have been taken before Musa's landing, which is very doubtful.

2 Those writers who do not include Ayûb in the list, give Al-horr an administration of two years and eight months, counting from the assassination of 'Abdu-l-'aziz.

3 Thuâbah's election was afterwards confirmed by the Wali of Africa, when he governed alone.
TABLE II.

GENEALOGICAL TREE OF THE BENI'UMEYYAH, AND CHRONOLOGY OF THE SAME.

'Ibdu-r-rahmán I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mu'áwiya</th>
<th>Mohammad</th>
<th>Umeyyah</th>
<th>Moslemah</th>
<th>Sa'id al-khayr</th>
<th>Hishám I.</th>
<th>Suleyman</th>
<th>Yahya</th>
<th>'Abdullah</th>
<th>Ayúb</th>
<th>Al-mundhir</th>
<th>(Al-balensi)</th>
<th>(Asá-shámi)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mu'áwiya</th>
<th>'Abdu-l-'aziz</th>
<th>Al-hakem I.</th>
<th>'Abdu-l-malek</th>
<th>Al-walid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Al-mugheyrah</th>
<th>'Abdu-r-rahmán II.</th>
<th>Al-walid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Al-mundhir</th>
<th>Mohammed I.</th>
<th>Umeyyah</th>
<th>Hishám</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Abdulláh</th>
<th>Al-mundhir</th>
<th>Hishám</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Al-mutref</th>
<th>Mohammed</th>
<th>Abán</th>
<th>Abú Umeyyah</th>
<th>Al-'ássi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Abdu-r-rahmán III.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Abdulláh</th>
<th>'Obeydulláh</th>
<th>'Abdu-l-jabbár</th>
<th>Al-hakem II.</th>
<th>Al-mugheyrah</th>
<th>Suleyman</th>
<th>'Abdu-l-malek</th>
<th>'Abdu-l-'aziz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Abdu-r-rahmán</th>
<th>Hishám</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Abdu-r-rahmán</th>
<th>Mohammed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Abdu-r-rahmán</th>
<th>Hishám II.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abú Bekr</th>
<th>Hishám</th>
<th>Al-hakem</th>
<th>Mohammed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suleyman</th>
<th>'Abdu-r-rahmán IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mohammed III.</th>
<th>Hishám III.</th>
<th>Suleyman.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL TABLES.

---


II. Hishām I., to Safar, A.H. 180 (April, A.D. 796).


VI. Al-mundhir, to Safar, A.H. 275 (July, A.D. 888).


X. Hishām II., to Jumādā II., A.H. 399 (March, A.D. 1009).

XI. Mohammed II. (Al-muḥdī), to Rabi' I., A.H. 400 (Nov. A.D. 1009).

XII. Suleyman, to Shawwāl, A.H. 400 (May or June, A.D. 1010).

Mohammed II., for the second time, to Dhī-l-hajjah, A.H. 400 (Aug. A.D. 1010).

Hishām II., for the second time, to Shawwāl, A.H. 403 (April, A.D. 1013).

Suleyman, for the second time, to Moharram, A.H. 407 (July, A.D. 1016).

'Alī Ibn Hammūd.

XIII. 'Abdu-r-rahmān IV.† (Al-murtadhi), from Ramadhān, A.H. 408, to Safar, 409 (Jan. A.D. 1019).

Al-kāsim Ibn Hammūd.‡

XIV. 'Abdu-r-rahmān V. (Al-mustadhīher), from Ramadhān, A.H. 414 (Dec. A.D. 1023), to Dhī-l-ka'dah of the same year (March, A.D. 1024).

XV. Mohammed III. (Al-mustakff), to Rabi' I., A.H. 416 (May, A.D. 1025).

Yahya Ibn 'Alī Ibn Hammūd.

XVI. Hishām III. (Al-mut'add), from Rabi' I., A.H. 418 (April or May, A.D. 1027), to A.H. 422 (A.D. 1031).

---

TABLE III.

GENEALOGICAL TREE AND CHRONOLOGY OF THE BENI' HAMMU'D OF CORDOVA.

Hammūd

   ┌─ Al-kāsim ─ 'Alī
       │      │
       └── Yahya.

I. 'Alī Ibn Hammūd, from Moharram, A.H. 407 (July, A.D. 1016), to Dhī-l-ka'dah, 408 (March or April, A.D. 1018).


   Al-kāsim Ibn Hammūd, for the second time, to Sha'hān, A.H. 414 (Nov. A.D. 1023).

'Abdu-r-rahmān V. of the house of Umeyyah.

---

† 'Abdu-r-rahmān IV. ought not to be counted in this list, for he never gained possession of the capital.

‡ The three Sultans whose names are written in italics belonged to the dynasty of the Benī Hammūd. See Table III.
Mohammed III. of the house of Umeyyah.


---

**TABLE IV.**

**BENI' IDRÍ'S OF MALAGA.**

```
  Idris I., son of Yahya, Sultán of Cordova

  Idris II. (Al-'ali)       Hasan (Al-mustanser)       Idris III. (Al-muwaffek)

  Hasan (As-sámi)       Yahya (Al-muhdi)   'Ali

  Mohammed

Mohammed II.
```

1. Idris I. (*Al-mutáyyed-billah*), from A. H. 427 (A. D. 1036), to 431 (A. D. 1040).
2. Yahya, two months of A. H. 431 (A. D. 1040).
5. Mohammed (*Al-muhdi*), to A. H. 444 (A. D. 1052-3).

---

**TABLE V.**

**BENI' IDRÍ'S OF ALGESIRAS.**

```
  Mohammed (Al-mu'tassem-billah)

  Al-kásim (Al-wáthik-billah)
```

### TABLE VI.

**ZEYRITE8 OF GRANADA.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lineage</th>
<th>Dates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zeyrī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mākesen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zāwi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habásah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habūs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bādīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balkīn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Abdullah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temīm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### TABLE VII.

**HENI’ JEHWAR, KINGS OF CORDOVA.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lineage</th>
<th>Dates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abū-l-hazm Jehwar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mohammed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdu-l-malek</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. 'Abdu-l-malek, three months of A. D. 1058.
TABLE VIII.
GENEALOGICAL TREE AND CHRONOLOGY OF THE BENÍ 'ABBA'Í, KINGS OF SEVILLE.

Mohammed I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isma'il</th>
<th>'Abbád</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mohammed II.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 'Abdu-l-jabbar | Seraju-d-daulah | Al-mamun | Ar-rashid | Yezid | Fakhrud-daulah |


2. 'Abbád (Abú 'Amru, Al-mu'tadhe-billah), to Jumada II., A.H. 461 (May, A.D. 1069).


---

TABLE IX.
BENÍ DHI'-N-NU'N, KINGS OF TOLEDO.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Isma'il</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yahya I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hisham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahya II.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Isma'il, from A.H. 403 (A.D. 1012) to A.H. 435 (A.D. 1043).

2. Yahya I. (Al-mamun), to Dhî-l-ka'dah, A.H. 469 (June, A.D. 1077).

3. Hisham, to Safar or Dhi-l-ka'dah, A.H. 470 (Sept. or Oct. 1077).


---

1 It is doubtful whether Hisham, whom some historians make the brother instead of the father of Yahya II., reigned at all in Toledo.
### TABLE X.

**KINGDOM OF SARAGOSSA.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Beni’ Tojib</th>
<th>Beni’ Hū’d</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Al-mundhir Ibn Yahya</td>
<td>Suleyman Ibn Mohammed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahya.</td>
<td>Ahmed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yūsuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Al-mundhir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ahmed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Abdu-l-malek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seyfu-d-daulah (Ahmed III).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### TABLE XI.

**Beni’ al-Afttas, Kings of Badajoz.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>'Abdullah Ibn Moselemah</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mohammed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Omar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-'abbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-fadhl.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


1. After the taking of Saragossa.

2. Or to Safar, A. H. 485 (March or April, A.D. 1092), according to other writers.
### TABLE XII.
**BENI' ABÝ 'A'MIR, KINGS OF VALENCIA.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>King Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Abdu-l-'azîz</td>
<td>April 1021 - April 1060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdu-l-malek</td>
<td>April 1065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdu-r-rahmân?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. 'Abdu-l-malek, to A. H. 457 (A. D. 1065), when he was dethroned by Al-mâmûn.
3. Al-mâmûn, King of Toledo, to Dhi-l-ka'dah, A. H. 469 (June, A. D. 1077).
   - 'Abdu-l-malek, for the second time.
   - Abû Bekr, to A. H. 478 (A. D. 1085).
   - Al-kâdir Yahya, the dethroned King of Toledo, to A. H. 485 (A. D. 1092).

### TABLE XIII.
**BENI' TA'HIR, KINGS OF MURCIA.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>King Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ahmed Ibn Iš'hâk Ibn Tâhir (Abû Bekr),</td>
<td>July 1038 - April 1065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mohammed (Abû 'Abdi-r-rahmân),</td>
<td>A. H. 461 (A. D. 1069)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-mu'tamed, King of Seville, or 'Abdu-l-'azîz Ibn Râshîh in his name,</td>
<td>A. H. 483 (A. D. 1090)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmed II. (Abû 'Abdillah),</td>
<td>A. H. 484 (Dec, A. D. 1091)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE XIV.
**KINGDOM OF ALMERIA.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>King Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Khayrán,</td>
<td>April 1013 - July 1028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zohayr,</td>
<td>July 1038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abû-l-shwas Ma'n Ibn Samâdeh,</td>
<td>July 1043 or beginning of 444 (A. D. 1052)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yahya,</td>
<td>Rabi' II., A. H. 484 (A. D. 1091)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmed (Husámî-d-daulah).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE XV.
**KINGDOM OF DENIA.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>King Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Abdullah Al-mu'aytti,</td>
<td>Dec, A. D. 1014 - Dhi-l-ka'dah, A. H. 406 (April, A. D. 1016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mujáhid Al-'âmîrî,</td>
<td>May, A. D. 1016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ali, surnamed Ikbalî-d-daulah,</td>
<td>A. H. 468 (A. D. 1075-6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serâju-d-daulah, son of 'Ali,</td>
<td>A. H. 485 (A. D. 1092)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE XVI.
KINGDOM OF THE BALEARIC ISLANDS.

i. Mujahid, from Ramadhan, A.H. 405 (March, A.D. 1015), to A.H. 436 (A.D. 1044-5).
ii. Al-murtadih.
iii. Mubashsher, surnamed Nāṣiru-d-daulah, to A.H. 508 (A.D. 1114).
iv. Abū Rabi' Suleymán, to the taking of Mallorca by the Aragonese in A.D. 1115.

TABLE XVII.
BENI' RAZIN, KINGS OF AS-SAILAH.

i. Hudheyl Ibn Razin, from A.H. 403 (A.D. 1012).¹
ii. 'Abdu-l-malek I. (Jesdūn-d-daulah), to A.H. 476 (A.D. 1083-4).
iii. 'Abdu-l-malek II. . . . . . . . . . . . .

TABLE XVIII.
AL MORAVIDES.

Yûsuf Ibn Tāshefin

| 'Alī |
| Seyer Tāshefin | Is'hák |
| Is'hák. |

iii. Tāshefin, to Ramadhân, A.H. 539 (March, A.D. 1145).
iv. Is'hák, to Shawwâl, A.H. 541 (March, A.D. 1147).

¹ The chronology of the Beni Razin, as given in Conde and Casiri, is very defective, and cannot be adopted; but the materials are wanting to re-establish it with any degree of certainty.
TABLE XIX.

ALMOHADES.

′Abdu-l-múmen Ibn ′Alí

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Abú Saʿíd</th>
<th>Yúsuf</th>
<th>Abú Hafs</th>
<th>Abú Mohammed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibráhím</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yaʿkúb</td>
<td></td>
<td>Abú ʿAbdillah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Al-ʿádil</td>
<td>Mohammed</td>
<td>Al-mámán</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>′Omar (Al-murtadhi)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>′Abdu-l-wáhéed II. (Ar-rashíd)</td>
<td>As-saʿíd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yúsuf II.</td>
<td>Yahya</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

′Abdu-l-wáhéed I.

1. Al-máhdí.¹
2. ′Abdu-l-múmen Ibn ′Alí, from A. H. 524 (A. D. 1130), to Jumáda II., A. H. 558 (May, A. D. 1162).
11. ′Abdu-l-wáhéed II. (Ar-rashíd).²
   Yahya, for the second time.
12. ′Ali (As-saʿíd).
   ′Abdu-l-wáhéed II., for the second time.
13. ′Omar Al-murtadhi.

¹ Some writers do not count Al-máhdí (Abú ʿAbdillah Mohammed) among the Almohade Sultáns, because he was a spiritual rather than a temporal ruler.
² The four last Sultáns of this dynasty did not reign in Spain.
TABLE XX.

GENEALOGICAL TREE AND CHRONOLOGY OF THE BEN'I NASR, KINGS OF GRANADA.

Yúsuf

Mohammed I. | Naṣr | Isma'il

| Yúsuf | Mohammed II. | Faraj

| Faraj | Mohammed III. | Naṣr

Isma'il I.

| Isma'il | Faraj | Mohammed IV. | Yúsuf I.

| Mohammed | Isma'il II. | Mohammed V. | Kays

| Isma'il | Bekr | Yúsuf II. | Sa'id

| Yúsuf III. | 'Alí | Mohammed | Al-aysar

| Sa'd

| Mohammed | 'Alí (Abú-l-havez) | Az-zagh' al

| Abú-l-hejāj | Yúsuf | Mohammed (Abú 'Abdillah).


11. Mohammed II., to Sha'bán, A. H. 701 (April, A. D. 1302).

111. Mohammed III., to Shawwál, A. H. 708 (April, A. D. 1309).


v. Isma'il (Abú-l-wālid), to Rejeb, A. H. 725 (July, A. D. 1325).


ix. Isma'il II., to Sha'bán, A. H. 761 (June, A. D. 1360).
CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL TABLES.


xi. Yúsuf II., to A.H. 798 (A.D. 1395).

xii. Mohammed VII.

xiii. Yúsuf III.

xiv. Mohammed VIII. (Abú 'Abdillah Al-aysar).

xv. Mohammed IX. (As-saghir).

Mohammed VIII., for the second time.

xvi. Yúsuf IV.

Mohammed VIII., for the third time, to A.H. 849 (A.D. 1445).


xviii. Mohammed XI. (Ibn Isma'il).

xix. 'Ali Abú-I-hasan, to Jumáda ii. or Rejeb, A.H. 887 (July or Aug. A.D. 1482).


Mohammed XII., for the second time, to Rabi' i., A.H. 897 (Jan. A.D. 1492).

1 Called Abú Sa'id by Conde.

2 Or Boabdil.
INDEX.

[In consequence of the nature of this compilation, a few proper names will be found written in different ways; but in the formation of this Index that form only has been adopted which has appeared the most correct.]

Abán, son of the Sultán 'Abdullah, marches against the Muwallads, ii. 455.
—— Ibn 'Abdi-l-'aziz, of the house of Umeyyah, executed, ii. App. vii.
'Abbád Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abbád Al-mu'tadher (Abú 'Amru), second King of Seville of the dynasty of the Bení 'Abbád, i. 99; reign of, ii. 251. 'Abbás Ibn 'Abdi-l-'aziz Al-merwání, Wizir and general of 'Abdullah, Sultán of Cordova, ii. 455, 459.
—— Ibn 'Abdillah, i. 106.
—— Ibn Fírnás (Abú-l-kásim), poet, verses by, i. 47, 148, 149, 425, ii. 435.
—— Ibn Násih Al-jezayrí, poet, verses by, ii. 105.
—— Ibn 'Omar As-sikílí, ii. 168.
—— Ibn Sáleh, i. 429.
'Abbásah, ii. 203.
Abbucasis. See Khalif.
'Abbúd (or 'Abúd) Ibn Razín Dhú-r-riyásateyn, founds the kingdom of As-sahlah, ii. 258.
'Abd Ibn Zam'ah, ii. 168.
'Abdu-d-dár, son of Kasí, ii. App. xlvii.
'Abdu-l-'ala, son of Músá Ibn Nosseyr, takes Valencia, i. 281—283; other conquests attributed to him, 290, 292, App. lxxxvi.
'Abdu-l-'aziz, brother of Al-madhí, cruelties committed by, ii. App. li.
——— Abú-l-asbagh, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 141, 156.
—— Al-bekri, Lord of Huelva and Saltís, assists Al-mu'tamed, King of Seville, in his conquests, i. 312, ii. 259; is deprived of his dominions, 507.
—— [Al-merini], Sultán of Western Africa, ii. 363.
——— Ibn 'Abdillah, i. App. lxxxviii.
——— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-ma'áfërí (Abú-l-hasan), King of Valencia, ii. 257, 505; defeated by the Christians, 265.
——— Ibn Merwán, of the house of Umeyyah, appointed governor of Egypt, i. 251, 298; gives Músá the government of Eastern Africa, 510, App. lviii.
——— Ibn Músá serves in Africa under his father, i. App. lxii; lands in Spain, 283; takes Seville and Niebla, 285; is appointed governor of Spain, 292, 300, App. 1; fixes his residence in Seville, 543; marries Roderic's widow, ii. 30; is put to death by the Khalíf's orders, 31, App. iii.; causes of his death, 404.
—— [Ibn Rásih], King of Murcia, quarrels with Al-mu'tamed, ii. 294; is dethroned, 512.
——— Ibn Sho'ayb, last King of Crete, of the posterity of 'Omar Ibn Sho'ayb, i. 175, ii. 103.
——— Ibnus-1-khattíb, surnamed Al-mahdúd, poet, ii. 190.
'Abdu-l-ghaffár Ibn Hamíd Al-yahssóbí, governor of Niebla, rebellion of, ii. 84, 419.
'Abdu-l-ghání Al-basrí, i. 182.
——— Ibn An-nablúsi, i. Pref. xvii.
'Abdu-l-hakem Ibn Sa'íd Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellám appointed governor of Tortosa, ii. 446; removed, 453.
'Abdu-l-hakk Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-azdí Al-ishbílí (Abú Mohammed), works written by, i. 192, 470.
——— Ibn Abí Mohammed Al-báyesí, is appointed governor of Seville by Ferdinand III., ii. App. lxxx.
——— Ibn 'Othmán, ii. 350.
——— Ibn Ghálib Ibn 'Attiyyah (Abú Mohammed), his commentary on the Korán, i. 191, 469.
'Abdu-l-halím of Granada, ii. 516.
Abdu-l-hamid Ibn Basf, Wizir of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 441.

Ibn Hamíd, i. App. lxxv.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-mejíd Al-abfas, grammarian, i. 461.

Abdu-l-jabbár, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 141.

Ibn 'Alm-tamed of Seville, attempts a rebellion, ii. 299; is taken and put to death, 300.

Ibn Abí Salmah Az-zahrí, ii. 17.

Ibn Khámis Abú Bekr As-sikilí, poet, ii. 252.

Abdu-l-jellí Ibn Wadhún (Abú Mohammed), poet, i. 39, ii. 293, 510.

'Abdu-l-káhir Al-kisí, his history of Basrah, i. 177.

'Abdu-l-kirím Ibn 'Abdi-r-wáhid Ibn Mugheyth, general of Al-hakem I., his wars with the Galicians, ii. 102, 104, 106, 114.

Ibn Ajdar, founder of a sect, ii. 469.

Ibn Mahrán, Hájib (chamberlain) of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 91.

Ibn Munkadh, i. App. xxxvii.

'Abdullah, the 'arif or inspector of works of An-násir, i. 235.

Ibn Nosseyr, the Motazelite, i. 333.

Ibn Marrah, i. App. Ixvii.

, the Shi'ite, invades Western Africa, ii. 143.

Ibn Nosseyr, son of 'Omar Ibnu-l-khattáb, traditionist, ii. 33.

Ibn Nosseyr, son of Músá Ibn Nosseyr, i. 283; conquers Mallorca, 292; is appointed governor of Western Africa, 294, ii. App. iii.; his wars, Iviii, lxii; makes a descent in Sardinia, lxvii; in Sicily, ib.

(Abú Mohammed Ibn Fútímah), general of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, is appointed governor of Valencia, ii. App. xlii.

As-safíd, the 'Abbásid, orders the massacre of the Bení Umeyyah, ii. 58, 93, App. vii.

Al-balensí, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 92; revolts against his brother Hishám I., 59, 426, 430.

As-salmání, ii. 356.

Az-záhid, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 141; enters into a conspiracy to dethrone his father, 143; is put to death, ib.

Ibn 'Abbás, traditionist, i. 176, ii. 4.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz Al-bekr (Abú 'Obey-dillah), geographer, i. 196, 312, 478, 481, ii. 24.

'Abdullah Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr Ar-ro'ayn, i. 421.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakam Ibnu-n-nadádhám (Abú Bekr), historian, i. 22, 24.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhed Ibn Abí Hafss (Abú Mohammed), i. App. xviii.

Ibn 'Abdi-r-rúf, appointed governor of the district of Rayyah, ii. 446.

Ibn Abí Bekr Al-kodhá'í Ibnu-l-abbár, historian, i. 198, 473.

Ibn Abí Hafss (Abú Mohammed) is appointed governor of Seville, ii. App. liv.

Ibn Ahmed As-sarakosti (from Saragossa), i. 150.

Ibn Ahmed Ibn Mughíth, ii. 473.

Ibn Ahmed Ibnu-l-beyttar (Dhiyáu-d-dín) Abú Mohammed Al-málik, a celebrated naturalist, i. 198, 431, 481.

Ibn Ahmed Ibn Suleymán Ibnu-t-taylasán Al-ansá'í, i. 407.

Ibn 'Alí, governor of Palestine under the 'Abbásides, persecutes the Bení Umeyyah, ii. 75, App. vii.

Ibn 'Amra, ii. 487.

Ibn 'Amru, ii. 5.

Ibn 'Amru Al-ansá'í, ii. 79.

Ibn 'Amru Ibn-l-áss, ii. 9-10.

Ibn Balkín Ibn Habús As-senhájí, King of Granada, i. 132; reign of, ii. 249; is dethroned by Yúsuf Ibn Táshefín, 295.

Ibn Ibiráhim, ii. 200.

Ibn Ibiráhím Al-hijrí or Ibnu-l-hijrí (Abú Mohammed), account of, i. 130, 319; his history of Mohammedan Spain, 195; dedicated to 'Abdu-l-málek Ibn Sa'id, Lord of Kala'h Yahssob, 476; continued by the latter, and by his sons and grandsons, 195, 477; quoted, i. 30, 290.

Ibn Ibiráhím Ibn Ashkilálah (Abú Is'hák), ii. 532.

Ibn 'Isa Ibn Kúttí, ii. 442.


Ibn Kásim, i. 189.

Ibn Kays Al-fezári makes a descent on the coast of Sicily, i. App. lxvii.

Ibn Kháled helps to establish the house of Umeyyah in Spain, ii. 62; is ill-treated by 'Abdu-r-rahmán I., 90.


Ibn Marrah, i. App. lxvii.
INDEX.

'Abdullah Ibn Maymún, Lord of Almeria, his piratical incursions on the coasts of France and Italy, i. 52, 360.

Ibn Mohammed, Sultán of Cordova, reign of, ii. 231.
Ibn Mohammed Al-fatémí, ii. 420.
Ibn Mohammed Al-kayrwání (Abú Bekr), ii. 10.
Ibn Mohammed Al-khazreji (Dhiyáu-d-dín Abú Mohammed), author of a poem on the rules of prosody, entitled Khazrejiyyah, i. 404.
Ibn Mohammed Al-morádí, governor of Badajoz, ii. 439.
Ibn MohammedAz-zejáí, Kátib, ii. 459.
Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abi 'Abdah, Wizír of 'Abdullah, Sultán of Cordova, ii. 450.
Ibn Mohammed Ibn Ali Al-lawati, Pref. i. xxii.
Ibn Mohammed Ibn Cháníyyah, ii. App. lxiii; is put to death by his brother, ib.
Ibn Mohammed Ibn Huseyn Ibn Wadháhuh, ii. 442.
Ibn Mohammed Ibn Sárah Al-bekri Ash-shantareyní (Abú Mohammed), i. 40, 344.
Ibn Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Ibnu-l-faradíhi Al-azdí (Abú-l-walíd), historian, i. 182, 194, 226, 458; death of, ii. 229.
Ibn Moslemah Ibn Al-afítas, succeeds Shábúr in the kingdom of Badajoz, ii. 369, 505.
Ibn Mohammed (Abú Mohammed Ibnu-s-síd), of Badajoz, i. 37. Works written by, 196, 478, ii. 171.
Ibn Mu'awiyyah, ii. 91.
Ibn Mugheyrah Ibn Abí Burdah Al-kenání, i. App. lxxvi, ii. 2, 10.
Ibn Músá, i. App. lxxvii.
Ibn Músá, Kádi of Cordova, ii. 106.
Ibn Mutá'i, ii. App. lxxvii.
Ibn Rabí'ah, ii. 397.
Ibn Rashik Al-kairwání, historian, i. 99, 395.
Ibn Roshd (Abú Bekr), i. 38.
Ibn Sa'd, invades Africa, i. 383; defeats Gregorius, 539.

'Abdullah Ibn Saíd, i. App. lxxxviii.
Ibn Sa'id Al-'ansi, ii. 17.
Ibn Salmah, ii. 488.
Ibn Suleymán, ii. App. liv.
Ibn Tá-‘alláh Al-kámí, ii. App. lxvii.
Ibn Táhir, ii. 103.
Ibnu-l-hejíj, takes Carmona, ii. 450.
Ibnu-l-kásím Al-'izaí (Abú Tálib), Lord of Ceuta, ii. 347.
Ibnu-s-síid Al-bathaliósí (Abú Mohammed), grammarian, i. 37, 62, 371; his commentary on the work of Ibn Koteybah, 196, 478; on the Suktuz-zend, ib., and ii. 171.
Ibn Yahya Ibn Sáhibu-s-salát Al-hadhramí, historian, i. 471.
Ibn Yála, ii. 150.
Ibn Yezyd (Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán) Al-jiyáli, or Al-jobéli, i. App. lxxx, lxiii; ii. 2, 5, 395.
Ibn Yúnus Al-morádlí, ii. 149.
Ibn Zebyr, i. 176, 224.
'Abdu-l-malek, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 141.

Ibn, son of Músá Ibn Nosseyr, i. 292, 547.

Ibn, son of Shebrit At-tawiil, governor of Huesca, taken prisoner, ii. 451.

Al-jiyáli, i. App. viii.

Al-masmúd (Abú Merwán), Kádi of Morocco, ii. 288.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz, surnamed Al-modhaffer, King of Valencia, dethroned by his father-in-law Al-mámún, ii. 257.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-jawwád, takes the part of the Muwallads, ii. 439.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Umeyyah, general of 'Abdullah, Sultán of Cordova; his wars with the Muwallads, ii. 439, 453; his execution, 450, 453, 461.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Zohr, (Abú Merwan), physician, i. 338.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhéd Ibn Mugheyth, general of Hishám I., invades Alava, ii. 99; France, 100, 425; conquers Cerdagne, ib.

Ibn Abi 'Amír Al-modhaffer or Al-mudhaffer, son of Al-mansúr, succeeds his father in the charge of Hajib to Hishám II., ii. 221, App. xxiv; takes and destroys Leon, 222; dies, ib.

[al. 'Abdu-l-málik] Ibn [Abi-l-'ala] Zohr Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Mohammed Ibn Zohr (Abú Merwán), physician, i. 198, 337; his life
INDEX.

XCV1
translated from

Ibn Abi Ossaybi'ah, App. A.,

viii.

i

'Abdu-1-malek Ibn Baahr,

ii.

76.

poem

Ibn Habib As-solami (Abd Merw&n),
i.
37, 40, 113; notice of, 348, 400, ii.
123; labours to introduce the sect of Malik Ibn
Ans into Spain, i. 113, ii. 123, 595.

historian,

--

Ibn Hud, surnamed 'Imddu-d-daulah,

King

of Saragossa,

it.

Ibn Idris

III.

'Abdu-1-mejid Ibn 'AUfa (Abd Mohammed), Wizir
of 'Omar Ibn Al-afttas, last King of Badajoz, his

256.
ii,

Al-jeziri, poet,

by

entitled 'Abduniyyah,

whom commented

'Abdu-1-mtimen Ibn

Ibn Kattan Al-fehri, governor of
under
the Khalifs, administration of, ii. 38,
Spain

Pref. xxiii, 62, -370

ib.

222, App. iv; reign

i.

;

and 371.

of,

ii.

310 316, App. xlix.
'Abdu-1-waddd Ibn Jehwar, ii. 176.
'Abdu-l-w&hed Ar-rasMd (Abd Mohammed), eleventh
ii.

525.

Ibn Abi Hafss Al-hentet( (Abd Mohammed), Wizir of Ya'kdb Al-mansdr, i. App.
xviii

Ixii.

App.

ii.

;

Ib n Mugheyth,

ii.

399,

Ibn Soleyman Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, of

41.

Musa Ibn

Ibn Merwin Ibn
i.

i.

(Abu Mohammed), second

'All

of the Almohades,

of the Almohades,

190.

Jbn Jehwar, Wizir of 'Abdu-r-rahman
of Cordova, ii. 150, 446.

upon,

App.

Ibn Merwan, Khalif,

App. xxxv
Cordova,

ii.

251, 298, 331,

Mohammed

Ibn Jekwar, King

reign

of,

ii.

324.

of

Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahman

(Abd-1-mugheyrah Ibn

Hazrri),

i,

168, 445,

ii.

200.

Mohammed

Ibn

Merwan), physician,
Ibn

the house of Umeyyah, execution of, ii. App. vii.
Ibn Yusuf, seventh of the Almohades,

'Abdu-1-wahhab Ibn

250.

Ibn
(Abti

i.

4.

ii.

;

Ibn

Zohr

Nosseyr,

Ixiii.

Mohammed

Al-baji, his history of the

i.

Merwan Ibn

Ibn

Ibn Sdhibi-s-saldt

Almohades

Hazm

Al-ghazzal,

ii.

242.

Ibn Jorj, takes the castle of Nokdr,

336.

cited,

i.

ii.

445.

Ibn

Pref.

Mohammed

Mohammed

Abi-s-sa'adat

Ibn

of

App. xxviii.
'Abdu-1-wahid Ibn Yahya Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahman Al-

Ibn 'Omar, ii. 76 his devotion to
'Abdu-r-rabman I., 77 his gallant behaviour, 83.

makkari, i. 302.
'Abduniyyah, historical poem so called, from the
name of its author, Ibn 'Abdun, i. Pref. xxiii.

xxi, 193, 363,

472; described,

Ibn

Moslemah

'Abdullah, Sultan of Cordova,

ii.

519,

Al-baji,

general

446.

ii.

;

;

Ibn 'Omar Ibn ShaMd or Shoheyd,
Wizir,

ii.

446.

Ibn Sahl, ii. 190.
Ibn Shokeyd, ii. 154.

;

Isma'il

Ath-

332; his various works, 332, 342.
Ibn Razm (Jes&mu-d-daulah Abd Mer-

wan),

i.

70; founds the city of Albarracin, 320;

is

defeated and killed by the Christians, ii. App. xxvi.
Ibn Sa'id Al-moradi, poet, i. 190, 468,
ii.

472.

Ibn Sa'M, Lord of Kal'ah Yahssob (Ali. 309, 130;
his supplement to the

la Real),

Mas'hab, 195, 474
dova, 490.

;

to Egypt,

;

;

under his reign, 84, 421 buildings erected
210 217, ii. 86; character, 87 89;
i.
of
court, 91, 423
death, 92, 424.

bellions

Ibn

tha'dlebt An-nisabi'iri (Abd-1-mansdr), account of,
i.

ii.
59, App. vii; wanders
lands
in Spain, 66; defeats
61;
through
Yusuf Al-fehri, 70 invites the Beni Umeyyah to
a conspiracy is formed against him,
Spain, 76
83 ; he prepares an expedition to Syria
re-

flies

Africa,

371.

Mohammed

i.

'Abdu-r-rahmcln Ibn Mu'awiyah, surnamed Ad-dcikhel
and Sakr Koraysh, first of the Beni Umeyyah of
Spain,

'Abdu-1-malik Ar-ro'ayni, i. 356.
Ibn Bedran or Bedriin (Abti Merwan),
his commentary upon the 'Abduniyyah,
i.
62

Ibn

Al-hejazi,

his poetical description of

Cor-

;

by him,
officers

J|
JBL

;

surnamed Al-ausatt

n.,

modhaffer, fourth of the Beni
i.

115, 219, 401,

ii.

III.,

Umeyyah

and

Al-

of Spain,

104; reign of, 113127.
An-ndsir Ud<n-\llah (the de-

fender of the faith), eighth of the Beni Umeyyah
of Spain, reign of, ii. 133
155 ; buildings, i. 121,

224, 232,
i.

ii.

401,

147

ii.

146, 467

;

revenues of Spain under,

of Khalif assumed by, i. 122,
African princes tributary to, ii. 144.

ii.

;

>

146

;

title

IV., surnamed Al-muriadhit

thir-


INDEX.

'Abdul-r rahman Ibn Bedr, general of 'Abdullah, Sultan of Cordova, ii. 443.

Ibn 'Amru Ibn Mohammed Al-aus'd'i (Abu 'Amru), founder of a sect followed by the Moslems of Spain, i. 113, 141, 403; and superseded by that of Malik Ibn Ans, i. 114, 141, ii. 123.

Ibn Foteys, i. 133.

Ibn Ghafir Al-libli (Abu-l-kasim), ii. 523.

Ibn Habib Ibn Abi 'Obaydah Ibn 'Okbah Ibn Nafi' Al-fehri, ii. 43, 49; persecutes the Beni Umeyyah, 61.

Ibn Hamdun Ibn Abi 'Abdah, Wizir, ii. 459.

Ibn Hossan Al-kelbi, ii. 48.

Ibn 'Imadi-d-din, theologian, i. 7; his other names and surnames, 305.

Ibn Is'hak Ibn Haytham, physician, i. App. xxvi.

Ibn 'Ittah, is appointed governor of Cordova, ii. 243, 499, App. xiii.

Ibn Kethir, ii. 414.

Ibn Merwan Ibn Ynas Ibnu-l-jaliki, history of by whom written, i. 186; rebellion of, ii. 439; peoples Badajoz, ib.; obtains the government of Merida, 447; invades the province of Seville, 449.

Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Hobeysh, notice of, ii. 312.


Ibn Mohammed Ibn Tilhir, ruler of Murcia, i. 378, ii. 296, 512.

Ibn Mohammed Ibnu Khaldun (Abu Zeyd Al-hadhrami Al-ishihi), historian, i. 17; account of his life and writings, 311; extracts from his work, 27, 255, 333, ii. 532, i. App. xxvi—xlii, and ii. App. xli—lxxx.

Ibn Mokaina Al-fondaki (Abu Zeyd), poet, verses by, i. 100, ii. 246.

Ibn Mugheynth Ibn Al-harith, &c., Hajib of 'Abdul-r rahman I. of Cordova, ii. 17, 91.

Ibn Musa Ibn Zeyyun (Abu Tasefin), Sultan of Telemsan, dethrones his father, i. 304.

Ibn 'Omayr Ibn Sa'id, ii. 52.

Ibn Romokhis, admiral of 'Abdul-r rahman III. of Cordova, i. App. xxxv; ii. 159.
INDEX.

'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Sálim, i. App. lii, lxvii.

——— Ibn Shahíd or Shoheyd (Abú-l-motref), a celebrated physician, i. 150, 431.

——— Ibn Shamásah Al-miari, i. 283, 536, App. xlix.

——— Ibn Táríf, ii. 92.

——— Ibn Túján or Bóján (Abú Zeyd), i. App. xii.

——— Ibn Umeyyah Ibn 'Isa Ibn Shahíd or Shoheyd, Hajiib of 'Abdulláh, Sultán of Cordova, i. 459.

——— Ibn-l-kásim Al-málíki (Abú 'Abdulláh), his work on the sect of Málík Ibn A'ná, i. 213, 491.

——— Ibn-l-khattíb, &c. As-sohaylí (Abú Zeyd) and (Abú-l-kásim) Al-khath'amí, poet, i. 198, 480; his life translated from Ibn-l-abbárr, 434.

——— Ibn Yahya Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-makkári, i. 302.

——— Ibn Yúsuf Al-fehrí, taken prisoner at the battle of Musaráh, ii. 71, 73; tries to make his escape, 80; is put to death, i. 6.

——— Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Ar-ráfa (Abú-l-motref Al-kortobí), ii. 8.

——— Ibn Zaryáb, ii. 117.

——— Ibn Zeyyad Ibn An'am Al-ífríkí, ii. 9.

'Abdu-r-razzák Ibn Hamám, i. 181.

'Abdu-s-sellám Al-kámí, Wizír of 'Abdu-l-múmun, i. App. xxx; ii. App. liv; execution of, lv.

——— Ibn Basíl, Wizír of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 91.

——— Ibn Jóbeyr, ii. 401.

——— Ibn Yezid Ibn Hishám Al-yezídí, of the family of Umeyyah, ii. 76; his rebellion and death, 83.

'Abdu-sh-sháms, i. 312.

Abencerrajes. See Bení Serráj.

Abenhudiel, King of Murcia, ii. App. lxxxviii.

Abenlope. See Ibn Lob.

'Abik Ibn Abi Mohammed, ii. App. lxxii.

'Abkar, a kind of fruit, i. 374.

'Abláh, town, ii. 448.

Ábu 'Abdah, ii. 52; see Hossán Ibn Málík.

Ábu 'Abdulláh (Síd), appointed governor of Murcia, ii. App. lxi.

——— (Síd), son of Ábu Hafés, governor of Valencia, ii. 528, App. lxvi.

Abú 'Abdilláh Al-gheríghor, ii. App. lxxv.

——— Al-lehiyání, Wizír of Al-mámún, ii. App. lxxv.

——— Al-madhí. See Mohammed.

——— Ash-sheríshí, ii. 544.

Ábu áAli Al-Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Húdd, King of Saragossa, i. 407.

——— Al-assíí, ii. 400.

——— Al-kodhá'í, ii. 8.

——— Al-mansáfí, i. 68.

——— At-yakúrí or Al-yakúrí, i. 63.

——— As-síkíí, i. App. xxvi.

——— Ibn 'Abdilláh Ibn 'Abdi-l-mú'á'nem Al-himyári, historian, extracts from his work, ii. 270.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-málík, i. 50.


——— Ibn Abí Ibrahim, ii. App. lvii.

——— Ibn Abí 'Isá, i. 238.

——— Ibn Al-fará, death of, ii. 304.

——— Ibn Kádí, a celebrated warrior, anecdote of his courage, i. 124, 413, ii. App. lxviii.

——— Ibn Maymún. See Mohammed.

——— Ibn Mohammed, ii. 274.

——— Ibn Sa'dah Ash-shátíbí Al-mo'ammar, ii. 311.

——— Ibn-l-háj. See Mohammed Ibn 'Alá.


——— Ibn-l-kháyyát Ar-ro'ayní, ii. 28.

——— Ibn Wázír Ash-shélbi, appointed governor of Kasr Abí Dánis, ii. 320.

——— Ibn Zárkún, i. 480.

Ábu 'Abdi-l-wáhháb, of Malaga, i. 49.

Ábu 'Abdilláh Al-jiyáli. See 'Abdolláh Ibn Yezíd.

——— Ya'kúb, brother of Yúsuf, ii. App. lxii.

Ábu Ahmed Ibn Jaháf, Kadí of Valencia, sends for the Almoravides, ii. 333; defends the city against the Cid, App. xxxix; is taken prisoner and burnt alive, i. 6.

Ábu 'Alá Ibn Asharfi, ii. App. lxx.

Ábu 'Ali Al-hasan, brother of Yúsuf, is appointed governor of Ceuta, ii. App. lviii.

——— Al-kálí. See Isma'il.
Abú 'All As-sadfi, death of, ii. 304.
— As-serraj, rebel, ii. 463.
— As-saken, ii. 3.
— Ash-shalûbin. See 'Amr Ibn Mohammed.
Abú 'Amir As-salâmi, his description of Spain, i. 18, 314.
— Ibn Arkam or Ibn-l-arkam, Wizir of Mohammed Ibn Samâdeh, King of Almeria, i. 137, 417.
— Ibn-l-faraj, Wizir to Dhi-n-nûn, King of Toledo, i. 152, 432.
— Seróju-d-daulah, his attempt to recover his father's dominions, ii. 507.
Abú 'Amr Ibn Ibn-l-arkam, Wizir of Mohammed Ibn Samâdeh, King of Almeria, i. 137, 417.
Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi. See Ahmed Ibn Mohammed.
Ibn 'Ammâr. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahman Al-makkarî, i. 302.
— Ibn Zeydân, ii. 21.
— Ibn Zohr. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek.
— Ibn Kheyr Az-zahrî, i. 480, ii. 17.
— Ibn Sa'âdeh, i. 31, 328.
— Ibn Sâhibi-r-radd, ii. App. lxxix.
— Ibn Sharîr, ii. App. lxxx.
— Ibn Tofayl Al-'âbadî (or Al-'abdî), ii. 47.
Ibn-l-'arabî. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah.
— Ibn-l-haddâd, i. 37.
— Ibn-l-jaddî, i. 480, ii. App. lxxviii.
— Ibn-l-kobtornah, Wizir and poet, i. 490.
— Ibn-l-kussayrah. See Mohammed Ibn Suleymân.
— Ibn Yahya Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmân Al-makkâri, i. 302.
— Ibn Zohr. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek.
Abú Bekrah, i. 176.
Abú Bessâm, the Kâtib, ii. 103.
Abú Dabbûs. See Idrîs II.
Abú Dâwûd, ii. 149.
Abû-d-dirhâ, i. 176.
Abû Dhorr or Dharr, traditionist, ii. 9.
Abû Farank. See Zu'llal.
Abû Fâris Ibn Yûnas, is appointed governor of Seville, ii. App. lxxx.
Abû Ghâlib. See Temâm Ibn Ghâlib.
Abû Hâfîs (Sid), son of 'Abdu-l-mûmen, is killed in battle, ii. 314.
— Al-hentêtî, the Sheikh, general of 'Abdu-l-mûmen, ii. 313, App. iv.
— Ibn Abî Hâfîs (Sid), ii. App. lxxiv.
— Ibn Burd, ii. 223.
— Ibn 'Omar As-solâmî, ii. 22.
— Ibn Sheyrî, ii. 330.
— 'Omar Ibn Sho'ayb. See 'Omar.
Abû Hâmid Al-andalûsi. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmân.
— Al-ghazzâli. See Mohammed Ibn Mohammed.
Abû Hanîfah. See An-nû'mân.
— or Honeyfah, i. 497.
Abû Harb. See Shâkir.
Abû Hâshîm, son of Al-mu'tamed, King of Seville, ii. 285.
Abú Hayyán. See Mohammed Ibn Yusuf.
Abú Honeyfah Ad-dinawári, a writer on botany, i. 147, 425.
Abú Horeyrah, traditionist, ii. 6.
Abú Ibráhim, theologian, ii. 172.

——— (Sid), brother of Yusuf, is appointed governor of Seville, ii. App. lvii.
——— (Sid), surnamed Adh-dhákher, appointed governor of Fez, ii. App. lxx.
Abú Idrís Al-khulđní, i. 244; extracts from his work, ib.

Abú 'Imrán, ii. 242.

——— See Músa Ibn Mohammed.
——— (Sid), governor of Telemán, ii. App. lix; dies of the plague, lx.
——— (Sid), son of Mohammed Al-hardhání, governor of Bugía, ii. App. lxxii.

——— Ibn Abi Hofsa, governor of Almeria, ii. 336.

——— Ibn Táreshená, the Almoravide, ii. App. xlv.

Abú 'Inán Férís, Sultán of Western Africa, i. 304, ii. 356, 357.

Abú Iśhák (Sid), ii. App. lvii, lxi.

——— Al-ahwal (Sid), appointed governor of Seville, ii. App. lxx.

——— Al-lamútáni, ii. 297.

——— Az-zahráwi. See 'Alí Ibn Suleymán.

——— Ibn Húd, surnamed Sherfu-d-daúlah, ii. 530.

——— Ibn Khañáfíjáh, i. 356.

——— Ibn Ma'áli At-tarsúsái, i. 68, ii. 508.

——— Ibn Malkún, i. 480.

Abú Ja'far Al-mansúr, second Khalif of the house of 'Abbás, sends an expedition to Spain, ii. 81.

——— Al-wakshí, ii. 22, 256.

——— Ibn 'Abdí-l-hakk Al-khásrjí, i. 194, 473; extracts from his work, i. App. xlii—l; ii. xxii—xlviı.

——— Ibn 'Attiyah, Wizar of 'Abdu-l-múmen, is put to death, ii. App. liv.

——— Ibn Hárún At-turjálí, i. App. xvii.

——— Ibn Rashíd, ii. 3.

——— Ibnu-l-bána, ii. 334.

——— Ibnu-l-ghazzál, i. App. xii.

Abú Jaushan. See As-samíl.

Abú Karúm, musical instrument used by the blacks of Africa, i. 59, 366.

Abú Kharúm, ii. 420.

Abú Kharúf, ii. 258.

Abú Korrhán Wánesús, a Berber chief, secrets 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu'awiyah in his house, ii. 61.

Abú-l-'abbás Ahmed, i. 114, 404.

——— Al-ghosnáni, ii. 529.

——— Al-háfísh, ii. App. xix.

Abú-l-'améythal, i. 170.

Abú-l-'arab Mohammed Ibn Temím, ii. 6.

Abú-l-ash'áth Al-kelblí, ii. 77.

Abú-l-'aysáh. See Ahmed 'Isa.

Abú-l-baka Sáleb Ibn Sherif Ar-rondí, ii. 526.

Abú-l-barakát Ibnu-l-ḥáf Al-balkíní, historian, i. 359, ii. 539.

Abú-l-fadhál At-tifášhí, i. 42.

——— Ibn Hazm, i. 148.

Abú-l-faraj Al-isbahání. See 'Alí Ibnu-l-huseyn.

Abú-l-ghánír As-sáyib, governor of Cordova under the Almohades, ii. 313.

——— Ibn Gharún, Lord of Xeres and Ronda, ii. App. l, lii.

Abú-l-hasan. See 'Alí Ibn Sa'd.

——— (Sid), son of 'Abdu-l-múmen, ii. App. lvii.

——— (Sid), governor of Granada, ii. App. lxxii.

——— 'Alí. See 'Alí Ibn Yusuf.

——— Al-meríni. See 'Alí.

——— As-sálimí, his history of the wars between the Almoravides and Almohades, i. 193, 473.

——— Ibn An-na'máh, ii. 8.

——— Az-zahrí, theologian, ii. 17.

——— Ibn Abí-l-’aysib, ii. 400.

——— Ibn Al-mahdí Al-bajelí, ii. 190.

——— Ibn Harik, i. 66.

——— Ibn Húd. See 'Alí.

——— Ibn Nasr, i. 46, 353.

——— Ibn Othmán Ibn Khattáb Abú-d-donyá, ii. 11.

——— Sa'id Al-akhsáfsh, grammarian, i. 461.

——— Sufyán, i. App. xvi.


——— Ibn Nasr, governor of Guadix, execution of, ii. 347.

——— Abú-l-huseyn Ibn Asdún, i. App. vi, xi.

——— Ibn Serrdj or Ibnu-s-serrdj, i. 490.

Abú-l-jiyásh. See Mujáhid.

Abú-l-kásím. See Khálifih.
INDEX.

Abú-l-kásim, the Shiite, attacks Genoa, i. App. xxxvi.

——— Al-gharnáttí, his commentary on the Makssurah, i. 372.

——— Al-mu'ajjuyú, i. App. iv.

——— An-najibí As-sebití, i. 223.

——— As-saffár. See Ahmed Ibn 'Abdillah.

——— Ash-sherif. See Mohammed Ibn Ahmed.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Az-zarakáli, astronomer; clepsydra constructed by, i. 81, 383.

——— Ibn Abi-l-kásim Ar-ro'ayní, i. 421.

——— Ibn Mufarríq, his adventure with Al-hakem II., ii. 172.

Abú-l-khattáb Ibn Wajíb, ii. 7.

Abú-l-khattár. See Hosám.

Abú-l-mahássen, historian, i. Pref. xxx, 311, 509.

Abú-l-mááli, son of Abú-l-kásim, Kádi-l-kodá of Granada, i. 114; his commentary upon the Khazrejíyáh and the Makssurah, ib.

Abú-l-motref Ibnul-muthanna, i. 126.

Abú-l-'ola (Sid), is appointed governor of Eastern Africa, ii. App. lx.

——— Ibn Jámí, Wizir of Abú Ya'ákúb Yúsuf, ii. App. iv; takes possession of Mallorca, lxvii; is deprived of his office, lxx.

Abú-l-wáhíd Al-báji. See Sulécymán Ibn Khalf.

——— Al-wakshi, ii. 22.

——— Ibn Kayjún, feat of arms performed by, i. 129.

——— Ibn Roshd. See Mohammed Ibn Ahmed.


Abú Mu'áin, ii. 420.

Abú Médin, i. 302.

Abú Merwáni Al-báji. See Mohammed Ibn Ahmed.

——— Al-mu'aytí, i. 183; his collection of all the traditional sayings of Malik Ibn Ans.

——— Ibn Ward, ii. 311.

Abú Mohammed (Sid), son of 'Abdu-l-múmen, governor of Bugia, ii. App. iv; killed in battle, 315.

——— 'Abdulláh Al-ádil, eighth of the Almohades, reign of, ii. 324, App. lxxii.

——— 'Abdu-l-wáhhab, i. 50.

——— Al-bastí, ii. 344.

——— Al-fehrí, his life of Abú 'Alí Al-káli, ii. 464.

——— Ased Al-johání, ii. 11.

——— Ash-shidhúní, i. App. vii.

——— Ath-thehrí, ii. 6.

——— Ibn Abi 'Abdillah Mohammed Ibn

VOL. II.
INDEX.

Abú 'Omar At-talamanki. See Ahmed Ibn Mohammed.

Abú 'Omayrah Al-mázeni, ii. 10.

Abú 'Othmán, mosque of, in Cordova, ii. App. xii.

Abú-r-rabi' (Síd), nephew of Ya’kúb Al-mansúr, is put to death, ii. App. lxxv.

Abú 'Iziz At-tinmeleli, is sent to the relief of Seville, ii. App. lxxx.

Abú-s-sabáh Al-yahsobí. See Yahya Ibn Yahya.

Abú Salíd, i. 498.

Abú Sa’íd, ii. 312; is killed in battle, 335.

Abú Yihya, i. 201.

Abú Shafí‘, slave of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 61.

Abú Shahá' Ibn Lébún, general, ii. App. xxx; is killed in battle, xxxvii.

Abú Sheybah, of Malaga, i. 490.

Abú Suleymán Ibn Tareshéná, the Almoravide, invades the Christian territory, ii. App. xliv.

Abú Tálib, poet, surnamed the Mutennabi of Alcira, his metrical history of Mohammedan Spain, i. 194.

Abú-t-táhir Al-mázení. See Mohammed Ibn Yusuf.

Abú Táwil or Abú Táwil, castle of, in Africa Proper, i. 345.

Abú Temám Al-mustanser-billah, Sultán of Egypt, i. 405.

Abú Thábit 'A'mir, third of the Bení Mérim, ii. 344.

Abú-th-tháná Ibn Khattáb (Núru-d-dín), his treatise on Arabian patronymics, i. Pref. xxvi.

Abú Umeyyáh Al-‘ássí, son of Sultán 'Abdullah, makes war against 'Omar Ibn Hafsan, ii. 457.

Al-hijári, his work on jurisprudence, i. 181.

Al-mázení, Ráhám, Sefwan, 164, from sons of 'A’mir, Ytisuf.

Almoravide, the, i. 316. or of Tareahena, 'Abdullah, sons of Al-yahssobi.

Abu (Sid), brother of Ya’kúb, wages war against the Christians, ii. App. li, lii.

Al-hazrají, Wizír of Yúsuf II., ii. App. lxx.

Aljashirí At-telemsání, i. 248.

Al-já’íd, ii. 364.

Ibn Abi 'Imrán At-tinmeleli, governor of Mallorca, ii. 329.

Ibn Abi medín, ii. 364.

Ibn Abi Ya’kúb, grandson of 'Abdu-l-múmen, builds a palace near Cordova, i. 211; is beheaded by his brother’s orders, 489.

Ibn Abi Zakariyyá, governor of Ceuta, i. 32, 42, 344.


Abi Ya’kúb, i. 498.

Abi Yusuf, ii. 123.

Ibn Abi Hafss, governor of Seville, ii. App. lixiv.

Ibn Suleymán, general of 'Abdu-l-múmen, ii. 316.

Abi Zakariyyá (Sid), brother of Yusuf, is appointed governor of Bugia, ii. App. lvii, lxix.

Al-já’íd, ii. 311.

Ibn Abi Hafss or Al-hafssí. See Yahya Ibn Abi Mohammed.

(Yahya?) Ibn Abi Hafss, i. App. xviii.

Ibn Wasínis, the Almoravide, taking of Murcia by, ii. 296.

Abi Zeyd (Sid), governor of Eastern Africa under the Almohades, ii. App. lxv.

(Sid), governor of Valencia, embraces Christianity, ii. 528, App. lxxiii.
Abú Zeyd Al-hirrsání, appointed governor of Granada, ii. App. lx.
——— Al-mushammar, ii. App. lxxxi.
——— Ibn Bakit, ii. App. liv, lv.
——— Ibn Tuján, ii. App. lxvi.
——— Ibnu-l-khalißah, governor of Seville under the Almohades, ii. App. lxvi.

Abú Zor'ah Ibn Rūh Ash-shámí, a tābi', enters Spain with Mūsā, ii. 9, 399.

Ad-dani (Abú 'Amru). See 'Othmán.

Ad-darabîn or Ash'ābū-l-arbu' (the night-watch), why so called, i. 399.

Ad-dawámis, the 'naumachy' of Carthage, i. 69, 377.

Adfonsh Ibn Radmir (Alfonso I. of Aragon), conquests of, ii. 303; his wars with Ibn Hūd, 265, App. xlv; his celebrated invasion of Andalusia, 305—307; his death at the battle of Fraga, 309.

———, son of Beytrot (Alfonso el Catolico), succeeds Pavila, ii. 261.

Ad-demir. See Mohammed and Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-kâdir.

Ad-deybâji, i. 189, 467.

'Aden, province of Arabia, i. 18.

Adh-dhâfr. See Abú Mohammed Ibn Abi 'Abdillah.

Adh-dhahhák Ibn Kays, surnamed Al-ahnañf (the bow-legged), defeated at Merj-Râhîtt, i. 334, App. lxxxix; ii. 69.

Adh-dhahhebî. See Mohammed Ibn Ahmed.

Adh-dhâher. See Abú Ibrâhîm.


Adh-dhobî, astrologer, his prediction to Hishâm I., ii. 96. See also Adh-dhobî.

Adh-dhobî. See Ahmed Ibn Yahya.

'Adhrah (Adra), town, i. 53.

Afâh, son of Hishâm Ibn 'Adhrah, ii. 21.

——— An-nâsirî, ii. 160.

Afranjah (Franks), i. 21; account of the, 75; how they disposed of their prisoners, 76.

Africans, ancient, invade Spain, i. 23.

A'gharnâtah. See Gharnâtah.

Aghlab Ibn Sho'ayb (Abú-l-fadhl), i. 190, 488, ii. 190.

Agriculture, state of, i. 87, 214.

Ahlu-dh-dhimmah, expression used to designate the Jews and Christians, i. 398.

Ahmed (Abú-l-ayah), of the Idrisites of Africa, becomes the vassal of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 144; crosses over to Spain, 145; is killed in battle against the Christians, ib. and 166.

Ahmed Al-bâji (Abú Merwán), causes himself to be proclaimed in Seville, i. 102, 146, 422, ii. 328, App. lxviii; is put to death by Ibnu-l-ahmar, ii. 340, App. lxviii.

——— Al-bazzâz, ii. 474.

——— Al-fâsh (Shehâbú-d-dîn), his large historical work, by whom abridged, i. Pref. xxiv.

——— Al-mahdûd (Abú Ja'far), i. 115.

——— Al-yûnânî, i. 236, 502.

——— As-sikîl, i. App. xxxvii.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-khalil At-tudmîrî (Abú-l-abbâs), his treatise on grammar, i. 479.

——— Ibn 'Abdillah Al-ghâfeeki (Abú-l-ḵasîm As-saffîr), i. 149, 428.

——— Ibn 'Abdillah At-tenûkhi Al-ma'rî (Abú-l-'ala), his collection of poems, entitled Suktu-z-zend (sparkles from the steel), i. 197, 479.

——— Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Mûsâ, i. 399.

——— Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Omayrah (Abú-l-motref Al-makhzûmî), poet and historian, his account of the taking of Mallorca by the Christians, ii. 329—332, 519; account of his life and writings, 525.

——— Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Suleymân Ibn Isma'il Al-kalkushandî, his work on the genealogy of the Arabian tribes, i. Pref. xxvi.

——— Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Zeydûn Al-makhzûmî (Abú-l-wâlid), work wrongly attributed to, i. Pref. xx; his history of the Khalifs of the race of Umeyyah, 194, 473; notice of, 341, 490; his epistle to Wâlahâd, 342, ii. 243.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Shoheyd, poet, i. 190, 246, 468, ii. 190.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Shoheyd (Abú 'Alîrî), Wizir of 'Abdu-r-rahmân III. of Cordova, ii. 150; present made by, 153.


——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-mâlik Ibn Merwâñ, i. 190, 468.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-mâlik Ibn Sa'id (Abû Ja'far), i. 45, 163, 397, 474; his life translated from Ibnu-l-khattîb, 440; his continuation of Al-hijârî's history of Spain, 195.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-wâhhâb, ii. 190.


——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-wâlî Al-'awwâd Ar-ro'aynî, i. 421.
INDEX.

Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahim, i. Pref. xxv.

—— Ibn Abi Ghalib Ar-russafi, i. 190.


—— Ibn Abi Musa (Abu Ja'far Ibn Bokennah), ii. App. xxvii.

—— Ibn Abi Salim, surnamed Dhu-d-da'utayn (he of the two reigns), Sultán of Fez, ii. 365.

—— Ibn Abi Tahir, his history of Baghdad, i. 177, 186, 314.

—— Ibn Ahmed Al-azdi, historian, ii. 407.


—— Ibn 'Ali, a native of Baghdad, settles in Cordova, ii. 200.

—— Ibn 'Ali (Abu Bekr) surnamed Al-khattib Al-baghdadi, continues the history of Baghdad, i. 459.

—— Ibn 'Ali Ibn Mohammed Ibn Khutimah Al-ansari (Abu Ja'far), his history of Almeria, i. 51, 359.

—— Ibn Al-kasim, of the Idrisites of Africa, ii. 466.

—— Ibn 'Amir Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahman Al-jezayri, his abridgement of Al-makkari's history of Mohammedan Spain, i. Pref. xvii.

—— Ibn Basab, architect, builds the great mosque of Seville, ii. 528.

—— Ibn Dahim, ii. 170.

—— Ibn Dauh, his poem in praise of the pomegranate, i. 489.

—— Ibn Fadhil Ad-dinawari, ii. 200.

—— Ibn Faraj (Abu 'Amru), his history of celebrated rebels, i. 187, 464; his collection of Andalusian poetry, 185, 430, 443; his history of Spain, ii. 171.

—— Ibn Hujr (Abu-l-fadhil Shehabu-d-din) Al-askalani, his treatise on Arabian surnames, i. Pref. xxvi.

—— Ibn Harun Ibn Ruh Al-barda'i (Abu Bekr), i. 192, 470.

—— Ibn Hashim Ibn 'Abdi-l-'aziz Ibn Hashim, ii. 454.

Ahmed Ibn Harm (Abú 'A'mir), Wizir of Al-mansur Ibn Abi 'A'mir, i. 335, ii. 487.

—— Ibn Hisham, of the family of Umeyyah, execution of, ii. 455.

—— Ibn Ibn Ibn Seyid, lexicographer, i. 147, 184.

—— Ibn Ibrahim Ibn Kolzam, poet, ii. 445.

—— Ibn Ibrahim Ibn Zubeyr, historian, his continuation of the Silah, ii. 497.

—— Ibn Is'hak, Wizir of 'Abdu-r-rahman III., executed, ii. 136.

—— Ibn Is'hak Al-koraysh, general of 'Abdu-r-rahman III. of Cordova, ii. 442, 445.

—— Ibn Is'hak Ibn Zeyd Ibn Tahir (Abu Bekr), King of Murcia, ii. 512.

—— Ibn Jobeyr Al-kenani, ii. 400.


—— Ibn Kemal (Abu-l-abbas), ii. 336.

—— Ibn Khaled, i. 499, ii. 112, 178.


—— Ibn Marzik Abu-l-abbas, ii. 539.

—— Ibn Mohammed (Abu-l-abbas), i. 422.

—— Ibn Mohammed Al-azdi, i. 25.

—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-khalil Ibn Mu-farrj, surnamed Ibnu-r-rumiyah and Al-ashshab, physician and botanist, i. 198, 481, ii. 474.

—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abdillah, governor of Juen, defeats the Muwallads, ii. 443.

—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Abú Omar At-talamanki (from Salamanca), i. 146, 422, 423.

—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi (Abu 'Amru), poet, account of his life and writings, i. 170, 339; verses by, ii. 134, 149, 171.


—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Ahmed, i. App. xi.


—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Darraj or Derraj Al-kasatti (Abu 'Omar), poet, notice of, i. 342, ii. 190, 233.

—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Hadd, King of Murcia, ii. 338.

—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Musa Ar-razi At-tarikh, historian, i. 17, 18, 21, 217, 314; account of his life and writings, 173, 186, 463.
INDEX.

Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mūsā Ibn-l-arif As-
senhājī, ii. 483.

— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mos'adeh Al-gharnātī
(Abū Ja'far), i. 67, 375.

— Ibn Nasr, the mathematician, i. 188.

— Ibn Romeylah (Abū-l-'abbās Al-kortobī), ii.
284, 288.

— Ibn Sādīhī-s-salāt, historian, i. 472.

— Ibn Sa'īd, Wizir of Suleymān of Cordova,
ii. 491.

— Ibn Sa'īd Ibn Ibrāhīm Al-hamdānī, poet,
ii. 171.

— Ibn Sa'īd Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah
Ibn-l-fāvyadh, history of Spain written by, i. 194,
474.

— Ibn Shāhīn Ash-shāhīnī Effendi, engages Al-
makkārī to compose his history of Spain, i. Pref.
xxxi, i; notice of, from the work of Amin Jelbī,
305, 306.

— Ibn Sho'ayb An-nisā'yī, traditionist, i. 189,
192, 466.

— Ibn Sufyān Ibn 'Omayrah (Abū Bekr Al-
makhzūmī), i. 31, 328, ii. 526.

— Ibn Suleymān Ibn Fārūk, ii. 544.

— Ibn Suleymān Ibn Hūd (Abū Ja'far), surnamed
Al-muktaṣir-billah, King of Saragossa, i. 37,
127, 335, ii. 256; recovers Barbastro, 269.

— Ibn Tālib At-temimī, i. 178.

— Ibn Umeyyah Ibn-l-kitt, revolts, ii. 456;
besieges Zamora, 463; is defeated and put
to death by Alfonso III. of Leon, ib.

— Ibnu-l-huseyn Ibn 'Ali Al-beyhakī (Abū Bekr),
i. 19, 317.

— Ibnu-l-huseyn Ibn Hasan Ibn 'Abdi-s-sammād
Al-mutanabbi Al-kindī, poet, his poems commented
upon, i. 185.

— Ibnu-l-huseyn Ibn Kasi (Abū-l-kaşīm), ii.
310, 518, App. xlix.

— Ibnu-l-huseyn (or hasan) Ibn Mohammed
Al-warashān Al-makūdí, i. 340, 405.

— Ibnu-l-jezzār (Abū Ja'far), i. App. xxvi.

— Ibn Yahya Al-belādhorī, geographer, his de-
scription of the earth, i. Pref. xxv, 381; what he
says about Cordova, 499, 529.

— Ibn Yahya Al-yahssobbī, Lord of Niebla, de-
throned by Al-mu'tamid, ii. 507.

— Ibn Yahya Ibn Ahmed Ibn 'Omayrah Aḥ-
dhobī, historian, his biography of eminent Spanish
Moslems, i. Pref. xix.

Ahmed Ibn Yahya Ibn Mu'farra' Al-kantūrī, ii. 473.

— Ibn Ya'la, general of Al-hakem II., invades
Catalonia, ii. 159.

— Ibn Yusuf Ibn Hūd, surnamed Al-musta'in-
billah, King of Saragossa, i. 128, 130, ii. 256,
App. xxxvii, xlii; is killed in battle, xlv.

— Ibn Zeyād Al-khabīb, Kādī of Cordova, ii.
459.

— Ibn Ziryāb, ii. 432.

— Seyfu-d-daulah Al-muntaser Ibn Hūd, ii.
App. xlii.

Ahnaf, son of Kays, renowned for the meekness
of his temper, i, 334.

Ajarians, sect of the, ii. 469.

'Ajemis, rising of the, ii. 442, 447; meaning of
the word, 458.

' Ajma'u-l-bahrānī, spot so called in Spain, i. 22, 320.


Akhfash. See Al-akhfash.

Akhfīl Ibn Idrīs, ii. App. i.

'Akīr Ibn Mas'ūd, poet, ii. 455.

Akritis (Cretes), island of, conquered by Cordovan
exiles, i. 173, ii. 103.

Aktāri-l-jauf, meaning of the expression, i. 322.

Akūt, name of a castle in the province of Jaen, ii. 443.

Akwāl or Kawwāl, a sort of flute made at Seville,
i. 59, 366.

' Ala Ibn Mohammed Ibn Khāled Al-belātanīsī, his
collection of poems, i. 355.

— Ibn 'Othmān Ibn Khattāb, ii. 11.

Al-abwāb (the gates), name given by the Arabs to
the passes in the Pyrenees, i. 22, 31.

Al-'abbās. See ' Abbās.

— son of ' Omar, last King of Badajoz, is
put to death, ii. 297.

— Ibnu-l-ahnaf, poet, ii. 334.

— Ibnu-l-walid, i. App. lxxviii.

— Al-'ādhed, the Fitimites, ii. App. lxx.

Al-'ādil. See Abū Mohammed.

Al-aghar, promontory of, near Cadiz, i. 22; tower
built on it, ib.

Al-aghlab, mauli of Mujāhid, is appointed governor
of Valencia, ii. 506.

Al-ahdab (the hump-backed), a Christian count,
makes an incursion into the Moslem territory, ii.
App. ix; is defeated, ib.

Al-ahnaf. See Adh-dhaḥḥāk 'Okayl.

Al-abwāz, a province of Persia, i. 18, 313; famous
for its snakes, ib.

Al-ajbāl (island of), supposed to be Norway, i. 19, 317.
INDEX.

Al-`akâb or Las Navas, battle of, lost by Mohammed
An-násir, ii. 323, App. lxviii.
Al-akhawín (the two sisters), name of palace or citadel
built by Julius Cæsar at Seville, i. 55.
Al-akhfash, grammarians, i. 185. See also Abû-l-
hasan Sa’îd, ’Abdu-l-hamîd Ibn ’Abdi-l-mejíd, and
‘Alî Ibn Suleymân.
Al-akra’, ii. 441.
Al-`ala Ibn Mughîth Al-yahssobi, lands in Spain, ii.
80; proclaims the ’Abbâsides, 81; is defeated and
put to death, ib. and 422.
Al-’âli-billah. See Idrîs II.
Al-’âliyâ, a town of Syria, ii. 92.
’Alando, ii. 442.
Al-ankar. See Mohammed Ibn ’Abdi-r-rahmân.
Al-ardamelis (Sancho Ramírez I. of Aragon), takes
Barbastro, ii. 265.
Alark (Alarces), battle of, ii. 321, App. lxv.
Al-arrozah, species of pear so called, growing at Va-
lercia, i. 66, 373.
Al-asbagh, son of ’Abdullah, revolt of, ii. 460.
Al-`aellî, raisins so called, i. 88.
Al-asha’î. See ’Alî Ibn Isma’îl.
Al-asmâd, mountain district near Granada, ii. 446.
Al-assam, the Sherif, of Cordova, poet, i. 490.
Al-`âsscmî, author, ii. 201.
Al-aswad, son of Al-mundhir, i. 331.
Al-auîdi, a Berber chief of Sûs-al-akséâ, i. App. lxviii.
Al-ausatt. See ’Abdu-r-rahmân II.
Al-`ażîf’e. See ’Abdu-r-rahmân Ibn ’Amru.
Alava. See Ardh Alabah.
Al-azdí. See Ahmed Ibn Ahmed.
Al-`azîzi, geographer, i. Pref. xxvi.
Al-azrsbah, a species of pear so called, i. 374.
Al-babúj, surname of Ferdinand II. of Leon, ii. App.
Ixviiii.
Al-bajjî. See Abû-l-walíd, ’Abdu-l-malek, Ahmed
Al-bakshándi, i. Pref. xxii.
Al-bakûrí. See Al-yakûzî.
Albalat. See Balât.
Al-barâd’a’i or Al-barda’i. See Ahmed Ibn Hârûn.
Al-barakî, ii. 474.
Al-barr, district of Seville, ii. 449.
——— Ibn Málik Al-korayshi, Wizîr of ’Abdullah,
Sultán of Cordova, ii. 459.
Albarracín. See Santa Maria.
Al-barrádî, son of Kays Al-kenâni, attacks of, mean-
ing of this expression, i. 330. See also Al-hareth
and Rafî’.

Al-barhânis (Alvar Yañez), a Christian general, helps
Al-kádir to the conquest of Valencia, ii. App. xxxii,
xxxv; invades Murcia, xxxix; is defeated, lxvi.
Al-bashkans (the Basques), i. 22.
Al-basri. See Hasan Ibn Yesâr and Mohammed Ibn Sa’îd.
Al-baydâhá, the same as New Fez, i. 508.
Al-bayesf. See Abû Mohammed.
——— (Abû-l-hejâj), historian, his continuation of
the Dhakhîrah, i. 193, 471.
Albayzin. See Rabadhu-l-bâyiân.
Al-báziyû-l-ash’ab (the grey hawk), a celebrated
highwayman, near Seville, his adventure with Al-
mu’tamed, king of that city, i. 106.
Al-baylâni. See Mohammed Ibn Fat’h-illah.
Al-bekri. See ’Abdullah Ibn ’Abdi-l-l’azîz.
Albelda. See Al-beydhâ.
Al-beydhâ (Albelda), battle fought at, ii. 435.
Al-beyhakî. See Ahmed Ibnu-l-huseyn.
Albeytin, King of Castile, supposed to be Don Sancho
el Mayor, conquests of, ii. App. xxvi.
Al-bijjt, sword-blades so called, from Bijjah or Pisa,
i. 394.
Al-birâh, the ancient Illiberis, i. 277, 280.
Al-birâh (Illora?), town, taken by Ferdinand, ii.
377.
Al-birzâlî. See Mohammed Ibn ’Abdillah.
Al-bisânî, i. App. xxxviii.
Alboacen. See ’Ali.
Al-bokhârî. See Mohammed Ibn Isma’îl.
Al-bolútî. See Mundhir Ibn Sa’îd.
Al-borajelah, mountain district near Granada, ii. 446;
the scene of the Muwallad insurrection, 447, 515.
Al-borj (the tower), suburb of, in Cordova, i. 206.
Al-bort. See Jebál.
Al-bostân (the garden), name given by the Arabs to
the city of Murcia, i. 68.
Albufera. See Al-buheyrah.
Al-buheyrah (Albufera), a lake near Valencia, i. 67,
374, 379.
Al-buheyratu-l-meytat, a lake in Galicia, i. 75.
Al-búnî. See Ahmed Ibn Abî-l-hasan.
Al-bûrakî, chief eunuch of Al-mansûr, i. 134.
Al-busâbîsî, i. App. xxvi.
Al-busheîrat, a mountainous district of Granada, cor-
rupted into Alpujarras, i. 382, 515.
Alcantara, a city of Western Spain, i. 61, 370.
Al-kantaratu-s-seyf (the bridge of the sword), at Al-
cantara, described, i. 61.
INDEX.

Alcarria, a province of Spain, why so called, i. 354.
Alcozer. See Al-kosseyy.
Alcazarros. See Al-kosseyr.
Alcira. See Jezirah-Shukar.
Alcolea, town, i. 351.
Alcoraz, battle of, ii. 505.
Aleyr, district of, near Seville, ii. 449.
Aleyt (Aledo), castle of, besieged by Yúsuf Ibn Tásh efín, ii. 294, 511.
'Alemah, meaning of the word, ii. 529.
Al-fadhl, son of 'Omar, last King of Badajoz, is put to death by the Almoravides, ii. 297.
Alfarahin, town, ii. 402.
Al-fanah, town, besieged, ii. App. xxxix.
Al-faneneyn, a castle in the province of Malaga, ii. 452.
Al-faneteyn, castle of, ii. 454.
Al-fár, i. App. vi.
Al-fárabí. See Mohammed Ibn Tarkhán.
Al-faraj, town, ii. 306.
Al-farej Ibn Kattánah, ii. 106.
Al-farazdák. See Hamám Ibn Ghálíb.
Al-fât'h Al-ma'mún, son of Al-mu'tamed, is taken prisoner by the Almoravides, ii. 255, 297; beheaded, ib.
Al-fât'h Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Obeydillah Ibn Khákán Al-kaysí (Abú Naar), poet and historian, i. Pref. xix, 38, 245, 478.

—— Ibn Músa Ibn Dhi-n-nún, Lord of Ulclés, account of, ii. 441.
Alfonso I. of Aragon. See Adefonsh Ibn Radmir.
—— I. of Asturias. See Adefonsh, son of Beytroh.
—— II. of Leon, defeated by Fortún Ibn Músa, ii. 114.
—— III. of Castile, surnamed As-soleytán, or the little Sultán, conquists of, ii. 311, 313; makes a truce with Ya'kúb, 320; is defeated at Alarcos, 321, App. lxi; gains the battle of Las Navas, 323, App. xlv, lxvii.
—— III. of Leon, is defeated by Al-mundhir, ii. 127; gains a victory over Ahmed Ibn Umeyyah, 456; takes and fortifies Zamora, 462.
—— VI. of Leon, and I. of Castile, i. 125, 384; takes Toledo, ii. 262; obliges Al-mu'tamed to pay him tribute, 270; lays siege to Seville, 273; prepares to meet Yúsuf Ibn Tásh efín, 274; has a dream, 281; is defeated and wounded at Zalakáh, 287; dies of grief, 288, 510.
—— VIII. of Leon, II. of Castile, ii. App. xlii.
—— IX. of Leon, surnamed Ibnu-l-labájí, defeats Ibn Húd, ii. 329; takes Merida, ib.; is present at the battle of Alarcos, App. lxv; and at that of Al'akáb or Las Navas, lxviii.
Alfonso X. of Castile, i. 317, 320, 322; his interview with Abú Ya'kúb, ii. 344, 533; taking of Murcia by, 531.
—— XI. of Castile, account of his revenue, i. 402.
— Enriquez (Ibn Errink), King of Portugal, defeated, ii. 315; conquests of, 522; taken prisoner, ib. and App. lviii.
Algesiras. See Jeziratu-l-khadhrá.
Al-gháfeki (Abú Ja'far), physician and botanist, i. 198, 481.
—— See 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abdillah.
Al-ghálib-billah. See Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf.
Al-ghálijah, castle in the province of Jaen, ii. 448.
Al-gháni-billah. See Mohammed V.
Al-ghár. See Taraf-al-ghár.
Al-gháthith. See Mohammed V.
Al-ghádík or Al-ghóydék (Alcaudete?), a town in the territory of Jaen, i. 353.
Al-ghazáli. See Mohammed Ibn Mohammed.
Al-gházzá. See Yahya.
Al-ghossání, i. 310.
Al-habban. See Yahya.
Al-hádhrmani (descendant of Hadhramaut), i. 140, 312.
Al-hájiz (a line formed by mountains), name given to the Pyrenees, i. 20, 319.
Al-hájjají Ibn Kházirún or Khazaerún, Lord of Ronda, ii. 230; put to death by Al-mu'tadhd, King of Seville, 497, 504.
Al-hájjám. See Hasan.
Al-hakem I. of Cordova, third of the Bení Umeyyah, surnamed Ar-rabadhí (he of the suburb) and Abú-l-`assin, i. 176; reign of, ii. 102—112.
—— II. of Cordova, ninth of the Bení Umeyyah, surnamed Al-mustanser-billah, i. 187, 400; reign of, ii. 156—174; library founded by, i. 139, ii. 169; state of Arabian literature under his reign, i. 418, ii. 170.
—— Ibn Sa'id (Abú-l-`assin), Wizír of Hisábánum III. of Cordova, ii. 500.
Al-hámah or Al-hammah (now Alhama la Seca), near Almeria, i. 389, ii. 447.
Al-hammah (Alhama), town, i. 50; taking of, ii. 371.
————, town, taken by Al-mansúr, ii. 188.
Al-hamrá (Alhambra), castle of, besieged, ii. 448.
Al-handik, battle of, ii. 133—135.
INDEX.

Al-hanah (Alhanje), castle of, in Estremadura, ii. 439.

Al-hárah, battle of, ii. 43; why so called, 411.

Al-haras, body-guard of Al-bakem I, called, ii. 106.

Al-harawi, geographer, i. Pref. xxvi.

Al-hareth Ibn Dhálím, i. 330.

— Ibn Dáwús Al-syádî Al-barrídáh, i. 330.

Al-hárith Ibn Yazîgh, defeats Garcia, King of NAVARRE, ii. 431.

— Ibn Yezíd, ii. 9.

Al-hasan, son of Al-kásim Ibn Hammúd, ii. App. xii.

— Ibn-l-laghúwî, ii. 405.

— Ibn 'Ali, of the Zeyrites of Africa, ii. 520.

— Ibn Ahmed Ibn Mufarraj, i. 458.

— Ibn Al-kásim Ibn Kámmn, the Idrísite, visits Spain, ii. 145, 466, 477; succeeds his brother Abú-l-'aysh on the throne, 166; is taken prisoner and conveyed to Cordova, 167; again taken, and put to death, 189.


— Ibn Mohammed (Abú Bekr) Ibn Mufarraj, his history of Mohammedan Spain, ii. 474.

— Ibn Rashíd Al-kárówání, historian, i. 99, 395.

— Ibnu-l-huseyn Ibn Is'hákî, i. Pref. xx.

Al-haúfí, his commentary on the work of Al-késái, i. 185.

Al-haytham Ibn 'Obeyd Al-kélâbî, governor, administration of, ii. 36.


Al-házemi, ii. 29.

Al-hejáj Ibn Yúsuf, i. App. liii, lxxv; ii. 34.

Al-hijájî. See 'Abdullah Ibn Ibrahim and Abú Umeyyiah.

Al-hobâb Az-zohîrî, rises against Yúsuf, ii. 55; is put to death, ib. and 66.

Al-hôijd, i. 480.

Al-hôijd Ibn Hakîm, i. 330.

Al-hôjjâm. See Hasan.

Al-homaydî. See Mohammed Ibn Abî Nasr.

Al-horî Ibn 'Abdî-r-rámân Ath-thakefi, governor of Spain under the Khalîfs, ii. 23; administration of, ii. 32, 260.

Al-hosrî. See Ibrahim.

Al-hossayn Ibnu-d-dajen Al-‘okaylî, ii. 71.


— Ibn Ahmed Ibnu-l-huseyn Ibn Hayyî At-ajojibî, astronomer and geometerian, i. 150, 430.

— (Abú-l-hasan), sixth of the Beni Merin, i. 224, 498; crosses over to Spain, ii. 354; repairs the fortifications of Gibraltar, 355; loses the battle of Tarifa, 356; history of his reign written by Ibn Marzúk, 537.

— 'Ali Al-kijâtî (Abú-l-huseyn), ii. 539.

— An-nakkâs Al-baghdâdi, poet, ii. 190.

— Ibn ‘Abdî-l-‘azîz, mathematician, i. 149.


— Ibn ‘Abdî-r-râmân Ibn Hudheyl, extracts from his work on the art of war, i. 128, 129.

— Ibn Abú-l-halîjî-l-kenâní (Abú-l-hasan), i. 143, 421.

— Ibn Ahmed Ibn Jenbúlâdî, revolt of, i. 306.

— Ibn Ahmed Ibn Sa‘îd Ibn Hazm Adh-dhâherî (Abú Mohammed), i. 37, 147, ii. 169; account of his life and writings, i. 334; his answer to Ibnu-r-rabîb’s epistle, 171—190; time at which it was written, 468.

— Ibn Ahmed Ibnu-l-huseyn, i. Pref. xxviii.


— Ibn Besîm or Bessîm (Abú-l-hasan), historian, his Dhakhîrât or hoarded treasure, i. Pref. xx, 38, 193, 370, 471; quoted, ii. 177, 264; notice of that work, 513.

— Ibn Dîfâr Al-azdî (Jemâlu-d-dîn Abú-l-hasan), ii. 482.

— Ibn Gháníyyah, the Almoravide, ii. 524.

— Ibn Hammúd, the Idrísite, founder of the dynasty of the Beni Hammúd, i. 333, 396; revolts against Sulaymán, ii. 230; defeats him and puts him to death, 231; is assassinated, 233.

— Ibn ‘Isâ Ibn Maymún, rises at Cadiz, ii. 310, 517; embraces the party of the Almohades, App. xlix; pulls down the tower of Hercules, i. 79, 360, 378, 382, ii. 517.


— Ibn Isma’il Al-asha’rî or Al-‘isha’rî (Abú-l-hasan), founder of the sect of the As‘hâ’râ’î, i. 301.

— Ibn Isma’il Ibnu-s-sidâh (Abú-l-hasan), i. 37, 146, 335; account of his life and writings, 422, 423.

— Ibn Ja‘far, architect of ‘Abdî-r-râmân III. of Cordova, i. 235.

— Ibn Ja‘far Abú-l-kásim Ibnu-l-kitâd’ As-sa‘îdî, poet, works written by, ii. 300, 513.

— Ibn Khalaf, astronomer and mathematician, i. 385.
INDEX.

'Alí Ibn Mes'úd, i. 247.
— Ibn Mohammed Al-korayshí Al-‘abbási, poet, ii. 190.
— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Abí-l-hasan (Abú-l-hasan), i. 185.
— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Ahmed Ibn 'Omar Ibn Abí Zara' Al-fási (Abú 'Abdillah), historian, proved not to be the real author of the Kitábbis, i. 516.
— Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Ali 'As-solayhí (Abú-l-hasan), i. 150; his revolt in Yemen, 430; his death, íb.
— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Sahíbi-s-salásit, ii. 519.
— Ibn Mu'áthid Ikbálu-d-daualah, succeeds his father in the kingdom of Denia, ii. 258; is dethroned by his father-in-law Al-muktadir Ibn Húd, 507.
— Ibn Músá Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-málik (Núru-d-dín Abú-l-hasan Ibn Sa'íd), strips the lute, 118; introduces many customs from the East, 119.
— Ibn Rabíbi Al-lakhami, one of the conquerors of Spain, i. 356, 536; builds the castle of Calatrava, App. lxiv, lxxii; ii. 5.
— Ibn Sa'd Abú-l-hasan or Alboacen, King of Granada, ii. 369; orders the execution of the Bení Serráj, 370; is dethroned by his son Mohammed, 373.
— Ibn Suleymán Al-akhfash, grammanarian, i. 461.
— Ibn Suleymán Az-zahrá'í (from Medinat Az-zahrá') Abú Isháq and Abú-l-hasan, a celebrated physician, i. 150, 428.
— Ibn Wá'áh, ii. 493.
— Ibnu-l-hày, the Almoravide, marches against Henry of Besançon, ii. App. xliii.
— Ibnu-l-himárah (Abú-l-huseyn), Wizír and poet, i. 386.
— Ibnu-l-huseyn Al-korayshí (Abú-l-faraj Al-sibázánt), his collection of Arabian songs, i. 480; by whom abridged, 198, ii. 160, 169.
— Ibnu-l-huseyn Al-mes'úd (Abú-l-hasan), a cele-

brated Eastern historian, his 'Golden Meadows,' i. Pref. xxiii; his description of Spain, 20; what he says of the tower of Hercules at Cadiz, 79; work attributed to, 473.
— 'Ali Ibnu-l-kattán Al-kortobl (Abú-l-hasan), his works on traditions, i. 192, 469.
— Ibnu-l-máman Abí-l-'ala, surnamed Al-mu'tadhdh 'alai-llah and 'As-sa'íd, twelfth Sultan of Western Africa of the dynasty of the Almohades, i. 223, 497, ii. 325.
— Ibn Yahya Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-makkárí, i. 302.
— Ibn Yahya Ibn Ghániyyah Al-masᶠí, the Almoravide, ii. App. lxiii.
— Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Húd, succeeds his brother Al-mutawakkél in the kingdom of Murcia, ii. 530; is put to death by Abí Jemíl, íb.
— Ibn Yúsuf Ibn Tášhífín Al-masᶠí II. (Abú-l-

hasan), Sultan of the Almoravides, i. 84, 489; reign of, ii. 308.
— Alinkitár, name given by the Arabs to Richard I. of England, i. 316.
— 'Alíyyah (Olias?), town near Almería, ii. 447.
— 'Alíyyah, daughter of Záryáb, the musician, ii. 432.
— Al-íshún. See Mohammed Ibn 'A'sim.
— Al-inkilterrah (England), i. 19; also called Jeźiráh Birťániyyah (the island of Britain) and Ardh Birťániyya-l-kebónah (the land of Great Britain), i. 19; short description of, 316.
— Al-isha'í. See 'Ali Ibn Isma'il.
— Al-jáhédh. See 'Amr Ibn Bahr.
— Al-jakmakí, college at Damascus, i. 306.
— Al-jalídhi, sort of apple so called, i. 46.
— Al-jazuí. See Abó Múasa.
— Al-jauf, name given by the Arabs to the north-western provinces of Spain, i. 23, 322; ii. App. lxv.
— Al-jérá’í. See Isma’il.
— Al-jeźíráh (the island), name given to Spain, why, i. 19.
— Al-jodrá, palace of, in Cordova, ii. 248.
— Al-jorjání, dresses so called manufactured at Almería, i. 51.
— Al-kabdhák, town, besieged by Mohammed II. of Granada, ii. 346.
INDEX.

Al-kádir. See Yahya II. of Toledo.

Al-kádiri, i. Pref. xvi.

Al-kahat, gate of, in the city of Mallorca, ii. 381.

Al-kaffáli, i. 189. See also Mohammed Ibn 'Ali and Yusuf Ibn 'Ali.

Al-kalafatt, poet, his enmy to Ibn 'Abdi-r-rabbihi, ii. 445.

Al-kal'ah (Alcalá de Guadaira), near Seville, rebuilt by the Almohades, ii. App. ix.

——— En-nahr (Alcalá de Henares), i. 534.

Al-kánti. See Isma'il.

Al-kalkashandí. See Ahmed Ibn 'Abdillah.

'Alkamah Al-lakhní, revolts at Sidonia, ii. 422.

——— (Alkaman), defeated by Pelayo, ii. 407.

Al-kameneyn, a castle of the province of Elvira, ii. 446.

Al-kamet, the poet, ii. 93.

Al-kanbátír. See Rudherik.

Al-kanitt, castle of, taken, ii. 457.

Al-kanunu. See Ahmed Ibn Yahya.

Al-karabi, i. App. xix.

Al-kartam (carthamus cœruleus), name given by the Arabs to the territory round Albarracín, i. 378.

Al-karttás. See Zeyrí Ibn 'Atiyah.

Al-kusáwi. See Mohammed Ibn Lób.

Al-káshí, a celebrated brigand, helps to the accession of Al-mutawakkel Ibn Húd, ii. 327.

Al-kásim, son of 'Abdullah, Sultán of Cordova, revolts against his father, ii. 460.

——— Ibn Hammúd, Sultán of Cordova, surnamed Al-mámmún, i. 396; succeeds his brother 'Ali, ii. 234; is dethroned by his nephew Yahya, 238; regains possession of Cordova, 239; is taken prisoner and put to death, 241.


——— Ibn Mohammed, surnamed Al-wádiqík-billáh, King of Algesiras, dethroned by Al-mu'tadhid, ii. 247.

———, surnamed Kannún or Janún, the Idrísite, ii. 145, 166.

Al-kásar (Alcazar), town, ii. 305, App. i.

Al-kásmitání, historian, i. 404, ii. 537.

Al-kasttálí. See Mohammed Ibn Ahmed.

Al-káyim-biamri-láth, twenty-sixth Khalif of the house of 'Abbás, i. 150.

Al-kásyí, ii. 11.

Al-késáyí, his work commented upon, i. 185.

Al-khábíb. See Ahmed Ibn Zeyád.

Al-khábiyáh (Alhabia), near Almeria, ii. 447.

Al-khádhir or Al-khidhir, the same as Elias or St. George, appears in Ištán, i. 25, 537.

Al-kháli' or Kháli' At-tekerání, a Muwallad chief, surprises Estepa, ii. 447; deserts the cause of the Muwallads, 456.

Al-khálidat (the Canary Islands), description of, i. 72, 378: beacons on them by whom erected, ib.

Al-khalál, i. 189, 467.

Al-khalatt, tribe, ii. App. lxxiii.

Al-khalwatí, i. Pref. xvii.

Al-khattáb Al-baghdádí. See Ahmed Ibn 'Alí.

Al-khídr, Wizir of Iskandar, i. 323.

Al-khorj Al-mursí, i. 480.

Al-khosháni. See Al-khoshání.

Al-khoshání. See Mohammed Ibn Háricht and Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellám.

Al-khulání. See Abú Idríz.

Al-khažéní. See Ahmed Ibn Khattáb.

Al-kházrejí. See 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed and Abú Ja'far Ibn 'Abd-il-hakk.

Al-khózeynín, i. 253, 255.

Al-komjíttah (Constanza), wife of Alfonso VI. of Leon, extraordinary pretension of, ii. 270.

Al-koráshí Al-harrání, revolt of, ii. 493.

Al-kosseyr (Alcozer or Alcazarejos), near Cordova, i. 42, 205, 345, 484.

Al-kusheyrí, ii. 129.

Al-kúttí, fig so called, i. 58, 87, 364.

Al-laghín (Alagon), town, ii. 306.

Al-leýth Ibn Sa'id or Sa'd, i. 251, App. lxxiv; ii. 7, 397.

Al-mafssáss, a sort of tile manufactured in Spain, i. 93.

Al-máhadí. See Mohammed Ibn Túmarta.

Al-máhadúd. See 'Abdu-l-'azíz Ibnu-l-khattáb.

Al-majúzes. See Majus.


Al-makáwí. See Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-l-málik.

Al-maléli. See 'Omar Ibn Modham.

Al-mámmún. See Al-fat'h, Al-kásim Ibn Hammúd, Idrís Abú-l-ala, and Yahya I. of Toledo.

Al-mandhar, town, taken by Mohammed III. of Granada, ii. 346.

Al-mansaf (Almansa), town, i. 68.
INDEX.  

Al-mansúr. See Abú Ja'far, Mohammed Ibn Abí 'Amir, and Ya'kúb.
Al-mansúrah (Almanzora), valley of, ii. 305.
Al-márazí, i. 247.
Al-masdúm. See Abú-l-huseyn Ibn Asdún.
Al-mateytí, i. 248.
Al-mattari. See Sa'id Al-yahsíbi.
Almatto, grandson of Wittiza, ii. 415.
Al-médáni, i. 189.
Al-meriyah (Almeria), city, described, i. 50—52; its
dockyard, 358; manufactures, 51; trade, 93;
histories of, 358, 359; kingdom of, by whom
founded, ii. 257; city taken by Alfonso II., 311;
recovered by the Almohades, 313; finally reduced
by Ferdinand V. of Aragon, 387.
Al-merj, town, ii. 515.
Al-mínkáláh, a metronome, by whom invented, i.
148, 426.
Al-mítýábu-l-andalus (the scent-bottle of Andalus),
named given to Valencia, i. 67.
Almodovar. See Hisnul-mudowwar.
Almogávares, meaning of the word, ii. App. lxxx.
Al-mughámí, Sheikh, anecdote of, ii. 264.
Al-mohr. See Ibnul-fáras.
Almond (Olmundo), son of Wittiza, i. 513, ii. 415.
Almonides. See Majús.
Almoravid history, history of the, by Ibn Sáhibí-s-saláát, i.
193, 472; conquest of Spain by the, ii. 294, 300.
Almogávales. See Majús.
Al-mudháfer. See Al-mudháfer.
Al-mugheýrah, son of Al-hakem I., ii. 113.
————, son of 'Abdu-r-ráhman III., put to
death by Al-mansúr, ii. 175, 177.
————— Ibn Abí Burdah, i. App. lxxi, lxxii; ii. 6.
————— Ibn Al-walíd, ii. 76; revolts against
'Abdu-r-ráhman I., 83; is put to death, ib.
Al-mudhándas. See Táhir Ibn Mohammed.
Al-muhdí-billah. See Mohammed II. of Cordova.
Al-mu'izz, son of Zeyrí, succeeds his father, ii. 192;
sends an embassy to Cordova, 222. See also
Mu'izz.
Al-mu'jassemúm or Corporalists, name given to the
Almoravides by their enemies the Almohades, ii.
521.
Al-muktadír, eighteenth Khalif of the house of 'Abbás,
asassination of, ii. 147. See also Ahmed Ibn Húd.

Al-mulúbbad, sort of warm clothing manufactured at
Granada and Baza, i. 93, 392.
Al-mulathdhánmun (wearers of the veil called latham),
named given to the Almoravides, i. 386.
Al-munádí. See Is'hák Ibn Isma'il.
Al-mundhir. See Mundhir.
—————, sixth of the Bení Umeyyah, i. 137; his
addition to the mosque, 219; his wars with the
Christians, ii. 127, 128; his reign, 129; he is
killed in battle, 131, 437.
—————, brother of Al-hakem I., enters into a
conspiracy to dethrone him, ii. 427.
————— Ibn Ahmed Ibn Húd At-tojibí, (Lord of
Lerida), ii. App. xxxvii.
————— Ibn 'Abdi-r-ráhman Ibn Al-hakem, of
the family of Umeyyah, is sent against the Mu-
wallads, ii. 447—449.
————— Ibn 'Abdi-r-ráhman Ibn 'Abdillah, of
the family of Umeyyah, poet, ii. 445.
————— Ibn Yahya Ibn Huseyn At-tojibí, go-
vernor of Saragossa, declares himself independent,
ii. 255, 504.
Al-munékab (Almúñecar), a sea-port town on the
coast of Granada, i. 46; the place of disembarka-
tion of 'Abdu-r-ráhman Adh-alíkhel, ii. 66.
Al-muneydhir or Al-muneyzir, one of the companions of
the Prophet, i. 536, ii. 2.
Al-múnis, pavilion called, at Az-zahrá, i. 236.
Al-mudhífer. See 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Abí 'Amir and
'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdi-r-ráhman.
Al-muntaser. See Ahmed Seýfu-d-daulah.
Al-mursí, pomegranate so called, i. 50.
Al-murtadhi. See 'Abdu-r-ráhman IV. of Cordova
and Omar Ibn Abí Ibráhím.
Al-murtadín, sect of the, ii. 518.
Al-mus'áfí. See Ja'far.
Al-mus'hafiyyah, a villa built by Ja'far Al-mus'hafi,
i. 212, 489, ii. 183.
Al-musarráh, name of a garden near Guadix, ii. 361.
Al-mustadh'her. See 'Abdu-r-ráhman V. of Cordova.
Al-mustá'in-billah. See Ahmed Ibn Yusuf and Su-
leyman Ibn Ahmed.
Al-mustákí-billah. See Mohammed III. of Cordova.
Al-must'ali-billah. See Mohammed II. of Malaga.
Al-mustanser Al-'abbásí, thirty-sixth Khalif of the
house of 'Abbás, ii. 327.
Al-mustanser-billah. See Abú 'Abdillah, Al-hakem
II., and Yusuf II.
Al-mu'tadd-billah. See Hishám III. of Cordova.
INDEX.

Al-mu'tadhed-billah, sixteenth Khalif of the house of 'Abbas, i. Pref. xxv. See also 'Abbad.
Al-mu'tali. See Yahya Ibn Hammúd.
Al-mu'tamed-billah. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abbad.
Al-mutamen. See Yúsef Ibn Hud.
Al-mu'tassem-billah. See Mohammed Ibn Al-kásim and Mohammed Ibn Samádeh.
Al-mutawakkel, tenth Khalif of the house of 'Abbas, i. App. xxiv.
Al -mutawakkel 'ala - illah. See Mohammed Ibn Yusuf.
Al-mutayyed-billah. See Idrís I. of Malaga.
Al-mutenábbi. See Ahmed Ibnu-l-huseyn Ibn Hasan.

—— Jezzárah-shukar. See Abú Tálib.
Al-mutref, son of 'Abdulláh, Sultán of Cordova, marches against the Muwallads and defeats them, ii. 450; puts his brother Mohammed to death, 133, 460; orders the execution of Ibn Umayyah, 454, 461.

Al-nuwaifek, King of Denia, ii. 511.
Al-nuwaifek-billah. See Idrís III.
Al-muwaïhéd-dán (Almohades), dynasty of the, origin of, ii. 300; Spain conquered by the, 310.
Al-muyyed or Al-muyyed-billah. See Hishám II. and Abú Músá (Síd).
Al-ommád Al-istahhání, i. App. xxxviii.
Alpuxarras. See Al-ba’sherí.
Al-urdún, a district of Malaga, why so called, i. 210, 356, 488, ii. 46.
Al-wadhahá Ibn Shahíd, poet, ii. 190.
Al-wahibí, rebel, takes possession of Niebla, ii. App. lii.
Al-walid, son of Al-hakem I., is sent against Toledo; takes it by storm, ii. 428.
—— IbN 'Abdí-l-malek, sixth Khalif of the Bení Umayyah in the East, his message to Músá, i. 291; his reception of that general, 299; mosque of Damascus built by, 305, 494.
—— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Ghánim, Wizár, i. 132.
—— Ibn Mu‘awiyah, ii. 76; is exiled to Africa, 83.
—— Ibn Suleyman, of the family of Umayyah, ii. App. xi.
—— Ibn Yezíd, of the family of Umayyah, ii. 61.
Al-warrák. See Mohammed Ibn Yusuf and Ya‘ish Ibn Sa‘íd.
Al-washiū-thalathát, sort of silken cloth manufactured at Murcia, i. 69, 377.
Al-watás, dynasty, ii. 543.

Al-yábisah, i. App. xxvi.
Al-yafarání. See Ibn 'Ittáf.
‘Alyár, a spot near Almodovar, ii. 429.
Al-yácóti, pomegranate so called, i. 50.
Al-yakúrí. See Al-yakúzí.
Al-yakúzí. See Mohammed Ibn Ibráhím.
Alyasán Ibn 'Isa Ibn Hazm Ibn 'Abdilláh Ibn 'Alísa’ Al-gháfekí, historian, i. 20, 318.
Alyasánah or Al-isánah, town of Andalusia, peopled by Jews, ii. 452.
Al-yásenah (Lucena), city, i. 42, 205, 345, 485.
Alxaman. See ’Alkamah.
‘Amalekites (’Amlakah), name given to the Phœnicians by the Arabian historians, i. 203, 484.
Amaya, town, i. 534, 536.
Ambar, fisheries of, on the western coast of Spain, i. 61.
‘A’miil Ibn Muhib, Lord of Talavera or Tavira, ii. App. lii.
Amín Jelebí, his biography of illustrious men who flourished at Damascus in the eleventh century of the Hijra, extracts from, i. Pref. xxxi.
‘A’mir Ibn Khalf, of Saragossa, i. 183.
—— Al-‘abdári, rebellion of, ii. 54; death, 66.
—— Ibn Fátíh Al-fáyikí, governor of Malaga, surrenders that city to ‘Alí Ibn Hammúd, ii. App. x.
—— Ibn Haríz ‘Ibn Hábil, rebellion of, ii. 444.
—— Ibn Mu‘awiyah Az-zeyadí Al-lakhmí (Abú Mu‘awiyah), Kádí of Cordova, ii. 459.
Amírah, wife of Al-kásim Ibn Hammúd, ii. App. xiii.
Amir or governors of Spain under the Khalifs, chronology of the, ii. 55, 405, App. iv.
Amíru-l-moslemín (Commander of the Moslems), title assumed by the Almoravide Sultáns of Spain, i. 386.
‘Ammár Ibn Hassín, i. 176.
—— Ibn Yáisír, ii. 18, 399.
—— Ibn Zéyád, i. App. lxxxviii.
‘Amru, a slave of ‘Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu‘awiyah, accompanies him on his flight, ii. 61.
—— Ibn ‘Abdí-l-malek, i. 331.
—— Ibn Bahr Al-jáhidí, theologist, i. 334, 468.
—— Ibn Faraj, poet, ii. 446.
—— Ibn Sa‘íd Al-kornáshí, governor of Niebla, murdered, ii. 448.
INDEX.

'Amru Ibn Kolthum or Kolshum, poet, i. 190, 330, 331, 469.

—— Ibn 'Othman Al-farisi or Al-fares (Abu Bashar), surnamed Sibawayh, grammarian, i. 142, 419.

—— Ibn Maimelah Al-yahssobi, ii. App. iii.

—— Ibn Sa'id [Sa'd] Ibn-l-Asas, i. 331.

—— Ibn Taltut, governor of Beja, rebellion of, ii. 84.

—— Ibnul-Asas, conqueror of Egypt, i. 176, App. xxxiv; ii. 9.

—— Ibn Yezid Al-azrak, his revolt, ii. 55.

'Amru-l-kays, poet, verses by, ii. 96.

Amurkan, a Berber word meaning chief, i. 302.

Anabi ('Atabi?), dresses manufactured at Almeria, i. 51, 358.

Anbar, eunuch of Hisham II. of Cordova, ii. 494.

Anbasah Ibn Soheym Al-kelb, governor of Spain under the Khalifs, i. 490; administration of, ii. 33, 260; his death, 407.

Anceo, river, battle fought on its banks, ii. 429.

Andalosh (Vandals), give their name to Andalus (Spain), i. 17, 312.

Andalus, son of Túbal, peoples Spain and gives it his name, i. 17.

—— (Spain), etymology of the word, i. 17, 322; climate of, ib.; geographical position, 18; dimensions, 20; shape, 21; ancient divisions, 22; settlers in, 23; Central, 30; Western, 55; Eastern, 64; islands dependent on, 71; ruins and ancient remains of, 77; population, 84; productions of the soil, 87; mines, 89; precious stones, 90; marbles, 91; animals, ib.; trade and manufactures, 93; revenue, 111, 400; taxes, 110, 213, 401, ii. 131, 212; government, i. 95; conquest of, 250—300.

Andalusians, or Spanish Moslems, religion of the, i. 112; sects followed by, 113; monastic institutions, 405; costume, 116; weapons, 117, 408; eminent qualities, 117; skill as workmen, 118; character of, 121; hospitality, ib.; courage, 123; haughtiness of temper, 130; devotion to their friends, 132; justice, 133; forgiveness, 136; generosity, 137; education, 140; language, 142; hand-writing, 143, 420; memory, 144; passion for books, 140; wit, 143; talent for poetry, 151.

Andarax, river, i. 360; also a town in the Alpujarras, taken by Abú 'Abdillah, ii. 385.

Anfa, a port of Western Africa, i. 79, 382.

Anisah (now Puig de Cebolla), castle on the coast of Valencia, by whom built, ii. App. lxxvi.

—— Ibn Salamah Al-kays, ii. 459.

An-nadhr, castle in the province of Jaen, ii. 443.

An-nahfi, poet, i. 136.

An-najjari. See Musa Al-masmuddy.

An-nassir, son of Al-mustadhi, thirty-fourth Khalif of the house of 'Abbas, library collected by, ii. 169, destroyed, 473.

—— Idin-illah. See 'Abdu-r-rahman III. of Cordova.


An-na'irah. See Mun'yat.

An-nisayiy. See Ahmad Ibn Sho'ayb.

An-nomân Ibn Al-mundhir, King of Hírah, in Arabia, i. 330, ii. 27, 418.

—— Ibn Thabit Abu Hanifah, theologian, sect founded by, i. 305, ii. 123.

'Ans, family of, ii. 27.

An's Ibn Malik (Abú Hamzah), tradition preserved by, i. 173, 176.

An'sar, tribe of the, ii. 25.

'Antarah Ibn Falah, Kádi of Cordova, ii. 423.

An-nuwayri. See Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-l-wahhab.

Antikarah (Antequera), town, ii. 348.

Arabasah, town of, in the Al-gharb, ii. 450.

Ardeabasto. See Artabás.

Ardh Alabah, or the land of Alava, invaded, ii. 99, 127, 135, 425.

Arduhal-bashkans (land of the Basques), collective name for Navarre and Biscay, i. 545.

Arduhal-faranj (land of the Franks) name given by the Arabs to Catalonia, i. 545.

Arduhal-jalaskah (land of the Galicians), or Asturias and Galicia, i. 545.

Arduhal-kebirah (or great land), collective name given by the Arabs to the countries beyond the Pyrenees, i. 76, 545; history of, 204; invasions of, ii. 99.

Arduhal-kilâ' (the land of the castles), name given to Castile (Castella) by the Arabs, i. 316; ravaged, ii. 127; invaded, 425.

'Arfalah Ibn Harthamah Al-azdi, i. App. xxxiv.

Arfand, a Christian captain, ii. 535.

Argantonio, a fabulous King of Spain, i. 379.

Arînâh. See Narbonne.

VOL. II.
INDEX.

Ariza, a town of Aragon, taken by Alfonso I., ii. 514.
Arjúnah (Arjona), town, i. 102, 397, ii. 328, 342, 345.
Arkádah, called also Rokádah, a town of Africa, ii. 178.
Arkósh (Los Arcos), town, ii. 300.
Arkúb, i. 332.
Arles, a town close to Cordova, i. 345.
Armanghid (Armengaud), Count of Urgel, joins Sulaymán with his forces, ii. 492; is killed in battle, 493.
Armanius (Romanus), Emperor of Constantinople, i. App. xxiv; sends a present of Greek manuscripts to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ìb.
Armengaud, Count of Urgel, killed at the siege of Barbastro, ii. 508.

—— of Urgel. See Armanghid.
Armetas, son of Constantine, retakes the island of Crete, ii. 427.
Armour, steel, made at Murcia, i. 93; used by the Spanish Moslems, 94.
Ar-rábadhá, surname given to Al-hakem I. of Cordova, i. 400.
Ar-rádhá. See Yezíd.

——, son of Mújahbír, King of Ceuta, i. 541.
Ar-rá'í. See Mohammed Ibn Isma'íl.
Ar-rábk. See Ibiráhím.
Ar-rásán, execution of, ii. 490.
Ar-ráshid. See 'Abdu-l-wáhíd II.

——, son of Al-mu'tamed of Seville, ii. 255.
Ar-rádhib, a cemetery in the outskirts of Cordova, ii. 439.
Ar-rayábir, district of, invaded, ii. App. xliv.
Arrayate, a town in the neighbourhood of Malaga, i. 356.
Ar-ráyí, figs called, exported to Baghádád, India, and China, i. 48, 49.
Ar-ráyádbí. See Ibiráhím Ibn Ahmed.
Ar-ráyání, i. 44, 424. See also Abú-l-kásím Feyrroh and Ibn Málîk.
Ar-rushádtí. See Abú Mohammed Ibn 'Ali.
Arshídunah (Archidona), near Malaga, i. 356, ii. 350, 438, 452.
Artabás (Ardebasto), son of Wittiza, i. 518, ii. 50, 415.
Artillery, used by the Arabs of Spain, ii. 303, 513, 535.

Artiyún Hawájah, name given by the Arabs to Gregorius, the Greek governor of Africa, i. 539.
'Arwah, a tribe of Berbers subdued by Músá Ibn Nosseýr, i. App. lvii.
Asad Ibn-l-farát, the conqueror of Sicily, i. 174, App. xxxv.
Asbagh Ibn Poteys, ii. 459.

—— Ibn Khalíl, ii. 149, 493.

—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn-s-samh or samah (Abú-l-kásím), geometrician and astronomer, i. 149; works written by, 188, 428.
Ashábú-s-sáfa (the sincere friends), a society of authors so called, philosophical treatises published by, i. 150; when and by whom introduced into Spain, ìb.
Ashír, tribe of, i. 301.
Asharah (Axařafe), a district near Seville, description of the, i. 55, 58; meaning of the word, 363.
Ash-shajjár. See Mohammed.
Ash-shakandi. See Isma'il Ibn Mohammed.
Ash-shakkál, gate of, in Cordova, ii. 487.
Ash-shaláhí. See 'Amr Ibn Mohammed.
Ash-shá'irí, figs called, i. 58, 365, 87.
Ash-shálatí. See Mohammed.
Ashed, town, ii. 502.
Ašer, town, ii. 457, 502.
Ash-herrát (the Somosierra), chain of mountains between new and old Castile, i. 533.
Ash-shettífí, the sailor, is appointed governor of Malaga, ii. App. xix; put to death, xx.
Ashifá, a mistress of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. of Cordova, ii. 126.
Ash-shimr, one of the murderers of Huseyn, son of 'Ali, ii. 80.
Ashir, town of the country of Senhájah, ii. 192.
Ashkar, castle of, near Baeza, ii. 352.
Ashtoríkah or Ashtorkah (Astorga), city, i. 282, 286, 544; besieged, ii. 100; taken by Al-mansúr, 189.
Ashturish (Asturias), kingdom founded, ii. 260.
Aslam Ibn 'Abdi-l-azíz, i. 486.
Asmá, daughter of Ghálib An-násirí, married to Al-mansúr, ii. 180.
As-sádhát, the Fortunate Islands, or Canaries, description of, i. 72; by some believed to be the Madeiras, 379.
As-sabikah. See Sikbáh.
As-sadí, historian, i. 252.
As-safá, name of a hillock in the territory of Mekka, i. 245, 507.
As-safádi. See Khalíl.
As-sahlah, district so called, between Murcia and Valencia, i. 70; erected into a kingdom by Ibn Razin, ii. 258, 507.

As-sa'id. See 'Ali Ibnu-l-mámún.

——— Ibn Abi Fáris, Sultán of Western Africa, ii. 364.

——— Ibnu-l-musib, ii. 10.

As-sajrah (Sagra), port on the coast of Malaga, ii. 300.

As-sáihiyyah, quarter of the city of Cairo, i. 404.

As-samádehiyah, a city built by Mohammed Ibn Samádeh, King of Almeria, i. 135.

As-samání, writer on genealogy, i. 301.

As-samh Ibn 'Omar Ibn Dhí-n-nún, ancestor of the Bení Dhí-n-nún, ii. 255, 440.

——— Ibn Málik Al-khalláíní, governor of Spain, i. 538; erects a bridge on the Guadalquivir at Cordova, i. 212, 327, 490; account of his administration, ii. 32; his death in battle, 33, 407.

As-sámí. See Hasan.

As-samul Ibn Hátim Ibn Shamr Al-kelábi (Abú-l-jaushan), governor of Spain under the Khalifás, ii. 46; revolts against Abú-l-khattár, 47; is besieged in Saragossa, 63; solicited to take the part of the Bení Umeyyád, 64; advises Yúsuf, 67; makes his peace with 'Abdu-r-ráhmán I., 72; is thrown into prison, and poisoned, 80.

As-sarnábákí or As-sarnábekí. See Sa'dám Ibn Fatah.

Aset Al-johaní (Abú Móhammed), ii. 11.

As-seffáh. See 'Abdulláh.

As-sekáh, town, ii. 306.

As-senáhi. See Bádis and Habús.

As-serráj, the Muwallád, execution of, ii. 452.

'A'ssem Ibn Moslem Ath-thakefí, Wizir of 'Abdu-r-ráhmán I. of Cordova, ii. 92.

As-seyraff, ii. 474.

As-sohaylí. See 'Abdu-r-ráhmán Ibnu-l-khattib.

As-sojuna-l-kadim (the old prison), suburb so called in Cordova, i. 206.

As-sokheyráh, town in the neighbourhood of Murcia, ii. 327, 512.

As-solayhi. See 'Ali Ibn Móhammed.

As-solayyah. See Alfonso III. of Castile.

As-súlí, a poet of the Bení 'Abbás, ii. 171.

Astabah (Estepa), town, i. 42, 205, 345, 485, ii. 447.

Astijah. See Estijah.

Astorga. See AshtrókÁh.

'Atáb, name of a street in Baghdád, i. 358.

'Atábí, silken stuff so called, manufactured at Almeria, i. 51, 358.

Atanfitás, King of the Goths, i. 26; supposed to be the same as Ataulphus, 324.

Athinaugild, succeeds Theodomir in the kingdom of Murcia, i. 536, ii. 377, 413.

At-talik, the Sherif, poet, verses by, i. 39.

At-tamáshekah, a Berber partisan, ravages committed by, ii. 449.

At-táyí. See Habíb.

Ath-thijs, tribe, ii. App. lvii.

Athlí, mother of Al-mundhir, Sultán of Cordova, ii. 131.

Ath-thá'alibí. See 'Abdu-l-málik Ibn Móhammed.

'A'títa, mother of Hishám III. of Cordova, ii. App. xv.

'Atta Ibn Ráfi' Al-hudhelí, i. App. lxvi.

At-táríkhi, surname given to the historian Ar-rázi, i. 314.

At-teštánah, helmets so called, ii. 158.

At-tífáshí. See Abú-l-fadhál.


At-tólaj, odoriferous root found in Spain, i. 88, 388.

At-tortoshi. See Móhammed Ibnu-l-walid.

Auf Ibn Málík Al-áshja'í, ii. 9.

'Aún, son of Sa'id, joins his father in his rebellion, ii. 443.

Aurah, castle of, in Catalonia, taken by Lob, ii. 455.

Auríwélah or Ouríwélah (Orihuela), city of, i. 70, 523; besieged by the Arabs, 281; gallantly defended by Theodomir, the Goth, ib.

Aus, tribe of, i. 178, 455, ii. 26.

Ausaf, castle of, in Africa, i. App. lxix.

Avempace. See Móhammed Ibn Yahá.

Aveniún (Avignon), taken by the Arabs, i. 288, 544.

Avenzoar, corruption of Ebn or Ibn Zohr, g. v.

Ayád, tribe of, ii. 24.

'Áydhá, city, i. 424.

'Ayshah, widow of the Prophet, i. 509, ii. 11, 399.

'Ayn Atesah, place so called in the province of Granada, ii. 306.

Aynajah, battle of, ii. 335.

Aynaxid, town, i. 361.

'Áynu-d-durä (the fountain of the tears), at Granada, i. 43.
INDEX.

'AYNU-N- Namá (the fountain of the panthers), a place in Syria, i. 298.

Ayros, castle of, in the mountains of Malaga, ii. App. xx, xxi.

'AYSSU (Essau), called also Edom, supposed to be the father of the Vandals, i. 203, 483.

Ayúb, son of the Khalif Suleyman, i. App. lxxxviii.

— Ibn Hábib Al-lakhmi, governor of Spain, ii. App. iv.; administration of, 17; conquests, 403.

— Ibn Matríq, i. 132.

Aywalátin, town bordering on the great African desert, i. 302; attacked and taken by the people of Tekrán, 303.

'Ayyásh Ibn Akhyal, i. App. lx, lxxvi.

Axaarafés, a hilly district close to Cordova, i. 363.

Az-zaghál. See Mohammed.

Azamór, a town in Africa, i. 224, 333.

Azd, tribe of, ii. 25.

Azilah (Arsíla), a port of Africa, i. 382.

'Azíz Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Khattáb (Abú Bekr), Lord of Murcia, put to death by Ibn Mardanish, ii. App. lxxxviii.

— Ibn 'Ala Ibn 'Abdi-l-mun'am, of Denia, ii. 347.

Azízi, writer on geography, i. 316.

Azzakás, a sect so called from their founder Náfi' Ibnu-l-azrak, i. 547.

Az-záhirah. See Medinatu-z-záhirah.

Az-zahrá. See Medinatu-z-zahrá.

Az-zahrá (the planet Venus), i. 19.

Az-zahráwî. See Khalif Ibn 'Abbás.

Az-zahrí, i. 144, 421. See also Mohammed Ibn Moslem.

Az-zajjáj (Abú-l-kásím), work written by, i. 479; by whom commented upon, 197.

Az-zurkál. See Abú-l-kásím.


Az-zohrí. See Al-hobáb.

Az-zubeydí. See Mohammed Ibnu-l-hasan.

Báb 'A'mir (the gate of Amír the Korayshite), in Cordova, i. 207.

— Badhalíós (the gate of Badajoz), also called Báb Józ (the gate of the walnuts), in Cordova, i. 369.

— Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbár (the gate of Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbár), in Cordova, i. 206; called also Báb Toleýtolah (the gate of Toledo), and Bábü-r-rúmiyah (the gate of the Christian), ib.

— Jehwar, or gate of Jehwar, in Seville, ii. 523.

Báb Józ, one of the gates of Cordova. See Bál Badhalíós.

— Liyún (the gate of Leon). See Báb Talabeyrah.

— Sarakostah (the gate of Saragossa). See Bábü-l-hadid.

— Talabeyrah (the gate of Talavera), in Cordova, also called Báb Liyún (the gate of Leon), i. 206.

— Tárik (the gate of Tárik), now Buitrago, i. 533.

— Toleytolah. See Báb Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbár.

Bábü-l-’attárín (the gate of the druggists), also called the gate of Seville, in Cordova, i. 207.

— l-dabbághín (the gate of the tanners), spot so called at Toledo, i. 82, 383.

— l-faraj, gate in Seville, ii. 254.

— l-hadid (the iron gate), in Cordova, i. 206; called also Báb Sarakostah (the gate of Saragossa), ib.

— l-jénán (the gate of the gardens), in the royal palace of Cordova, ii. 161, 287.

— l-jezirati-l-khadhrá (the gate of the green island or Algesiras), in Cordova, i. 206.

— l-júz (the gate of the walnuts), in Cordova, i. 207.

— l-kantararah (the gate of Alcantara or the bridge), in Cordova, i. 206; also called Bábü-l-wáda (the gate of the river).

— l-mahrúk, one of the gates of Fez, why so called, ii. 367.

— l-majús, spot so called in the bay of Azilah, i. 382.

— l-'okáb (the gate of the black eagles), in Almeria), i. 51.

— l-yáhúd (the gate of the Jews), a gate and suburb in Cordova, i. 206, 207.

— n-nakkál, a gate in Cordova, ii. 492.

— r-rúmiyah. See Báb Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbár.

— sh-shar’iah, one of the gates of Fez, ii. 367, 390.

— s-saba' (the gate of the lions), in the royal palace of Cordova, ii. 287.

— s-sabbághín (the gate of the dyers), in Seville, ii. 254.

— s-sán'ah, one of the gates of the royal palace of Cordova, ii. 173.

— s-suddah, gate so called in the royal palace of Cordova, ii. 161, 173, 462.

Báb Ya'kúb, gate of Ya'kúb, in Granada, ii. 352.

Bádí, a town in the territory of Guadix, i. 351.

Bádis Ibn Habús, King of Granada, i. 44, 350; his
INDEX.

dominions invaded by Zohayr, ii. 248; his wars against Al-kádár Ibn Dhí-n-nún, 249.
Bádis, son of Mákesen, the Zeyrite, ii. 502.
Baena. See Bayénah.
Baeza. See Bayésah.
Bagházad, histories of, i. 177, 453; the city compared to Cordova, 200.
Bahlil Ibn Marzúk, governor of Tudela, ii. 427.
Bahr Nitus, a corruption from Bahr Bontus (the Pont Euxine), i. 527.
— Tirren, the Tyrrhenium Mare or sea of Tuscany, i. 21.
— Shám (the sea of Syria or Mediterranean), ii. 19.
Bahiru-dh-dholamát (the sea of darkness or Atlantic Ocean), ii. 229.
— L-akhdhar (the green sea or Gulph of Gascony, ii. 329.
— L-banádikeh (the Gulf of Venice), i. 19.
— L-muhib (the circumambient sea or ocean, ii. 328.
— R-rúmi (the sea of Greece), i. 23.
— Z-zokák (the narrow sea or the Strait of Gibraltar), i. 20, 22, 250.
Bahram, i. 332.
Bakí Ibn Mokhíd (Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán), his commentary on the Korán, i. 180; his lives of the companions of the Prophet, 181, 189; account of his life and writings, 455, ii. 128, 129.
Balaghí (Balaguer), castle of, in the district of Lerida, ii. 261; built by Lob, 455.
Balanbu, valley of, in Galicia, ii. 194.
Balát, meanings of the word, i. 494, 495, App. lxxiv; ii. 406.
— (Albalate), near Seville, taken by the Almoravides, ii. 297; by the Berbers, 449.
— Al-horr or palace of Al-horr, in Cordova, ii. 73.
— Hamid, spot so called in Spain, i. 122.
— Mughéth (the palace of Mughéth), why so called, ii. 399; also the name of one of the suburbs of Cordova, i. 206.
Balátu-sh-shohadá (the pavement of the martyrs), why so called, ii. 33, 37.
Balensia (Valencia), city, called Medinatu-t-tarab (the city of mirth), described, i. 66, 374; kingdom of, ii. 257, 505; the city taken by the Cid, 333.
recovered by the Almoravides, App. xlii; finally taken by Jayme I. of Aragon, 334, App. lxxvii.
Bális. See Medinatu-z-záhirah.
Bálish or Belish, a town of Africa, also one in Spain, close to Malaga, i. 356, ii. 380.
Balj Ibn Beshîr Al-kusheyri, usurpation of, ii. 18, 23, 38, 41; death of, 44.
Balkín Ibn Bádis, is appointed governor of Malaga, ii. 501, 502.
— Ibn Zeyrî Ibn Menád As-senhâjî, invades Western Africa, ii. 166.
Banbîlônah (Pamplona), city, i. 75, 268.
Banbolah, the ancient Bilbilis Augusta, near Calatayud, i. 373.
Bará, a musical instrument used by the people of Súdán, i. 59, 366.
Baraghbáwattah, religious sect of the, i. 333; origin of, ib.
Barárid, conjectural meaning of the word, i. 359.
Barbashter (Barbastro), town, besieged and taken by Sancho I. of Aragon, ii. 265; the inhabitants put to the sword, 266; recovered by the Moslems, 269.
Barbâtt, a spot near Xerez, i. 333.
Barcelona, Count of, his embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 139. See also Barshelúnah.
Barduls, ancient name of Castile, ii. 406.
Barrah, family, ii. 27.
Barshelúnah (Barcelona), city, described, i. 74; recovered by the Franks, ii. 102, 426; the country round wasted by the armies of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II., 114; the city taken by Al-manáuir, 189.
Bartánah (Partana), town, i. 68; battle of, ib.
Barweska (Briviesca), town, i. 66, 373.
Basir, the eunuch, general of Al-kádár, King of Toledo, ii. App. xxix.
Bashkans, name given by the Arabs to the people of Navarre and Biscay, i. 544.
Bashshár Ibn Burd Ibn Yorgúkh Al-óokaylî (Abú Mo'adh), poet, i. 190, 468.
Basrah, city of Arabia, histories of, i. 177.
—, town of Western Africa, i. 175; taken, ii. 189.
Bastah (Baza), town, taken by Ferdinand, ii. 382.
Baternah (Paterna), a village on the coast of Granada, i. 90, 389.
Bathalios or Bathilos (Badajoz), city, described, i. 69, 369; made the capital of a kingdom, ii. 256; taken by Alfonso Enriquez, 522.
Batrikus, general of the ancient Africans, lands in Spain, i. 24; settles at Tālikah (Italica), ib.

VOL. II.
INDEX.

Batti, an Almoravide officer, takes Cordova, ii. 512.
Bayénah (Baena), city, i. 42, 345.
Bayésah (Baesa), city, i. 53, ii. 457; taken by the Almoravides, ii. 297; by the Christians, 521.
Bedr (Abú-l-kašr), a freed slave of ‘Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mu‘awiyáh, ii. 60; lands in Spain with a secret commission of his master, 62; his services, 421, 422; dies in disgrace, 90.
—— Hájíb of ‘Abdulláh, Súltán of Cordova, ii. 459.
Beglah (Vega), a district and town in the province of Jaén, i. 45, 353, ii. 443, 453.
Beja. See Bejáh.
Bejáh or Béjáh (Beja), a town of Portugal, described, i. 60, 284, 285, 368; history of, by whom written, 205.
Bejáyah or Bugýáyah, now Bugia, in Africa, i. 359.
Bejennah (Pechina), a village close to Almería, i. 356; river of, ib.; becomes the maritime arsenal of the Bení Umeyyáh, App. xxxv; ii. 140; account of the peopling of, 447.
Bejer, a town, i. 313.
Beká’h, district near Damascus, ii. 321.
Bekáyah, town, ii. 522.
Bekr Ibn Sawádáh Ibn Thámámah Al-jodhámí, ii. 9.
—— Ibn Wáyil, i. 298, 548.
—— Ibn Yahya Ibn Bekr, takes the part of the Muwallads, ii. 440.
Beládís or Beladíún, a race of Arabs, i. 290; why so called, ii. 44; their feud with the Syrian Arabs, ib.
Beládu-sh-shámál (the land of the north), a collective name for Aragon, Navarre, and Catalonia, i. 322.
Belalí, town, ii. 306.
Beláy. See Pelayo.
Belbís, town, i. 424.
Beldah, castle of, besieged and taken, ii. 457.
Bélesh (Velez-Málagá), town, described, i. 50, 356, ii. 306; taken by Ferdinand, 380.
Beliko, castle of, ii. 195.
Bells, Christian, used as lamps in the mosque of Cordova, i. 501; recovered by Ferdinand III. of Castile, ib.
Belún, river, ii. 455.
Bena Haxín, town, i. 361.
Bení ‘Abbád, family and dynasty of the, origin of, ii. 250.
—— ‘Abdi-d-dár, tribe of the, ii. 2, 396.
—— ‘Abdi-l-barr, ii. 23.
—— ‘Abdi-s-sellám, ii. 27.
—— Abi-1-huseyn, i. App. xxxii.
—— Al-afftas, dynasty of the, account of, ii. 256.
—— Bení Al-aghláb, an African dynasty, their maritime forces, i. App. xxxv.
—— Al-ahmar, family and dynasty of the, ii. 26; origin of, 339.
—— Al-khattíb, family of the, ii. 543.
—— Al-bájí, ii. 27.
—— Al-fallás, a principal family of Badajoz, i. 61.
—— Al-jád, ii. 37.
—— Al-kalí’ai, family of, where residing, ii. 25.
—— Al-kásím, ii. 37, 400.
—— Al-muñaír, origin of the, ii. 441.
—— Al-waksh, ii. 22, 400.
—— ’Amír, family and dynasty, account of the, ii. 257.
—— ’Askar, tribe, ii. 366.
—— As-samíaq, ii. 27.
—— ’Attíyah, ii. 23.
—— Aus, tribe, ii. 402.
—— Birzál, Berber tribe of the, enlist under Al-mansúr, ii. 187.
—— Dháha, family, ii. 26, 403.
—— Dhí-n-nún, family and dynasty, i. 46; account of, ii. 46, 255, 263.
—— Fezár, tribe, ii. App. lxxv.
—— Gháníyyah, family and dynasty, account of the, ii. 524, App. lxxii.
—— Ghomáráh (Gomeles), an African tribe, i. 513.
—— Hamdán, dynasty of the, rulers of Aleppo, encourage literature, i. 36.
—— Hamdán, family of the, settle in Spain, and where, ii. 26.
—— Hamdín, family of the, i. 202, 483, ii. 23.
—— Hammád, dynasty, ii. App. xxxix, xli.
—— Hammíd, dynasty of the, ii. 99, 395; account of, ii. 230.
—— Harb, ii. 230.
—— Hejíj, ii. 415.
—— Húd, family and dynasty of the, ii. 27; account of, 255.
—— Idrís, dynasty of the, in Africa, ii. 143; in Spain, 231; a branch of establish themselves in Malaga, 245, and in Algeciras, 247.
—— Jafnah, tribe, i. 372.
—— Jeshwar, family, ii. 29.
—— Jodhám, tribe, ii. 27.
—— Júdá, family of the, where residing, ii. 22.
—— Kást or Kosa, history of the, i. 186; account of them, ii. 440.
—— Kelb, ii. 69.
INDEX.

Bení Khalaf, ii. 402.
    — Kháled, family of the, ii. 446, 452.
    — Khazar, African tribe of, defeated by 'Abdu-l-
       malek, son of Al-mansür, ii. 188.
    — Khazrún, a Berber tribe, their conquests, i.
       App. xxxvi.
    — Mardanísh, family and dynasty, ii. 27, App. lv.
    — Maymún, dynasty, account of the, i. App.
       xxxvii; ii. 517.
    — Mágin, family of the, ii. 25.
    — Meknásah or Meknésah, Berber tribe, enlist
       under Al-mansúr, ii. 187.
    — Merín, dynasty, ii. 325.
    — Moslemah, ii. 415.
    — Muhlib, family, ii. 25, 402.
    — Nasr, dynasty, account of the, ii. 339.
    — 'Obádah, ii. 29.
    — 'Odhrrah, ii. 29, 408.
    — O'dh'ha, ii. 403.
    — Rashik, ii. 23.
    — Rúh Ibn Zanba', Arabian tribe of, i. App. lxxx.
    — Rustam, ii. 62.
    — Sa'íd, family of the, i. App. xxxii; ii. 27; his-
       tory of, by whom written, i. 309.
    — Sáleh, dynasty of the, in Africa, ii. 143.
    — Selín, family of the, ii. 442; town named after
       them, i½.
    — Serraj, a family originally from Cordova, cor-
       rupted into Abencerrajes by the Spaniards, i. 315,
       ii. 27; massacre of the, 370.
    — Seyd, ii. 415.
    — Shahíd, family, ii. App. lxv.
    — Sheybán, tribe, their wars against the Bení
       Taghleb, ii. 510.
    — Taghleb, tribe, ii. 510.
    — Tálhir, dynasty, account of the, ii. 257, 511.
    — Tárik (Bentarique), tribe and town near Al-
       meria, ii. 447.
    — Táwáil, family, history of the, i. 186.
    — Táyy, ii. 26.
    — Tojib, family, i. 396, ii. 28; account of the,
       441.
    — Umeyyah, dynasty of the, titles assumed by,
       i. 98, 395; establishment of, in Spain, ii. 74;
       overthrow, 230; revenues of Spain under them,
       400; policy pursued by, 98; splendor of their
       court, 99.
    — Wáid, ii. 27.
    — Yahya, family of the, ii. 123.
    — Zahrah, ii. 17.

Bení Zeyyán, African dynasty of the, i. 497.
    — Zohrah or Zahrah, ii. 21, 400.
Beniaux, town, ii. 402.
Benicalaf, town, ii. 402.
Benish, town, ii. 515.
Benzert. See Tenertz.
Beránis, great tribe of Berbers, their feuds with the
Botar, ii. 449.
Berbers, revolt of the, in Africa, ii. 38, 40; in
Spain, 410.
Beremundo (Bermudo I.), King of Asturias, defeated,
ii. 99.
    —— Ibn Ordún (Bermudo II.), King of Ast-
       turias and Leon, ii. 195.
Berlián, fabulous King of Spain, is present at the
taking of Jerusalem, i. 25, 323.
Berjah (Berja), district and town, i. 51; lead mines
of, 53.
Berján or Barján, land of, supposed to be Denmark,
i. 19, 316.
Berkah Kánún (the reservoir of Kánún), a place in
Eastern Africa, i. App. lx.
Bermond (Veremundus), Count of Barcelona, joins
Suleymán, ii. 492.
Bermudo. See Beremundo.
Bernaldez, Andrés, his inedited chronicle of Fer-
динand and Isabella, i. 322, ii. 542.
Beroseh (Borja ?), in Aragon, i. 373.
Berráz Ibn Mohammed Al-musúfí, general of 'Abdu-l-
múmen, lands in Spain, ii. App. l, li; takes Seville,
i½.
Bes, castle of, ii. 443.
Besher Ibn Katten, ii. 106.
    —— Ibn Merwán, ii. App. lli.
    —— or Beshr Ibn Sefwán Al-kalbi, governor of
       Eastern Africa, ii. 9, 35.
Betruh or Betróh (Los Pedroches), a town in the
territory of Cordova, i. 174, 345, ii. 103.
Bexixer. See Hian Béjú.
Beyrah (Vera), town, i. 95, ii. 305.
Beyt-mál, meaning of the expression, i. 235.
Bézú, fortress of, in Galicia, i. 291, 546.
Bijah (Pisa), armour from, imported into Spain,
i. 393.
Binjent (St. Vincent), church of, in Cordova, i. 217,
493.
Birtanieh or Britániyah, a district of Aragon, i. 66,
373, ii. 451.
Birtánniyyah, Great Britain, believed to be one of
the Fortunate Islands, i. 21; description of, 72.
INDEX.

Biserta, a town in Africa, i. 527.
Bishter, castle of, where situated, ii. 437, App. ii; besieged, 452, 456.
Bishtilkat, Bishtlikát, or Bishtölcät, a northern nation, invade Spain, i. 26; supposed to be the Visigoths, 324.
Bobáshter, a place near Malaga, ii. 438.
Bogháth, species of hawk, i. 331.
Bohú-d-dín Ibn Shédád, his life of Saládín, translated into Spanish by Borbon, i. Pref. x.
Bokht-Naer (Nebuchodonosor), takes Jerusalem, i. 25; invades Spain, 323.
Bolkúnah (Porchuna), town, i. 42, 205, 345, 484.
Boloduy, the river of Almeria, i. 360.
Bolonia, town, i. 494.
Bolullos, castle in the territory of Granada, ii. 344.
Bónah (Bona), a city of Africa, i. 406.
Books, passion for, in Cordova, i. 140.
Borbon (Don Faustino de), list of works written by, i. Pref. ix.
Bordhál or Bordhil (Bordeaux), i. 21, 319.
Bordhéliát, swords called, from their being manufactured at Bordhil (Bordeaux), i. 94, 293.
Boreyáhah, mother of Al-mansúr, ii. 178.
Boreyl (Borel), Count of Barcelona, defeated by Al-mansúr, ii. 189, App. xxiii.
Borhánu-d-dín. See Nássir Ibn Abí-l-mukárim.
Borja. See Deyr Borujah.
Borju-l-malchah, castle of, dismantled, ii. 386.
Bort Ashmarah, pass of Ceret or Puig-cerrád, in the Pyrenees, i. 317.
—— Bayúnah (gate of Bayonne), a pass in the Pyrenees, i. 317.
—— Jakah, the pass of Jaca or Puerto de Canfranc, in the Pyrenees, i. 317.
—— Shézar (gate of César), a pass in the Pyrenees, i. 317.
Bortékál (Portae Gallæ), or Portugal, i. 19, 316.
Bortokál (Oporto), taken by Fruela, ii. 85, 194.
Bostán, the Greek, director of the college called Al-jakmaki at Damascus, i. 306.
Bradamante, fabulous King of Guadalaxara, i. 384.
Buélash, fortified town of, in the province of Elvira, ii. 444.
Buheyrah, tower of, in Seville, ii. 523.
Buitrago. See Báb-Tárík.
Buleyk, eunuch of Al-muhdí, ii. 492; is killed in battle, 494.
Búrún, nuptials of, ii. 255.

Burghosh (Burgos), taken and destroyed by 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 135.
Bursínáh (Purchena), town, ii. 305, 386, 447.
Buseyr, a town of Egypt, ii. 58.

Cabra. See Kabrál.
Cafrari, sort of fig called, i. 387.
Cairwán, a city of Eastern Africa, i. App. lxi.
Calatayud. See Kál-at-Ayúb.
Calatrava, castle of, in the province of Rayyah, taken, ii. 457. See also Kál'ah-Rabah.
Callosa, a town of the province of Murcia, ii. 441.
Cambil, town, besieged and taken by the Christians, ii. 375.
Canales, fortress of, delivered to Alfonso VI., ii. App. xxx.
Cangara, town, i. 319.
Cangiar, town, i. 319.
Cáptil or Captop. See Kábta.
Carcassonne. See Karkashúnah.
Carmona. See Karmúnah.
Casablanca, a spot near Cordova, i. 487.
Casas del Gallo (las), a palace in Granada, ii. 540.
—— de la Reyna, a Moorish palace near Toledo, ruins of, i. 383; called also "Palacios de Galiana" (the palaces of Galiana), 384.
Cazlona. See Kástalonah.
Charlemagne. See Káróloh.
Chindaswind, King of the Goths, i. 512.
Chrysos, river, now Guadalete, i. 524.
Cid. See Rudherik.
Collera, a hamlet near Cordova, i. 531.
Columbiba, town, surrenders to Ferdinand, ii. 378.
Conde, Don José Antonio, judgment of his work, i. Pref. x; his numerous errors exposed, xi; biographical account of, xii.
Constantine, Emperor of Constantinople, sends presents to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., ii. 137; reception given to his ambassadors, 138, 140.
—— the Great. See Khoabandinos.
Constantinople, naval expedition against, i. 174.
Convent, description of a, near Malaga, i. 405; near Granada, 115; monastic rules described, 405.
Cordova. See Kortstubah.
Corsica, landing of the Arabs in the island of, i. App. xxxvi.
Coyança, town, taken by Al-mansúr, ii. 479.
Cuzna. See Koznah.
INDEX.

Cyprus, conquest of, by the Arabs, i. 173.
Cyrene, a city of Africa, retaken by 'Okbah, i. 539.
Dabdabah, musical instrument used by the blacks of Sūdān, i. 59, 366.
Dagfal, the arrow of, meaning of the expression, i. 170.
Damascus, history of, written by Al-makkari, i. Pref. xxxiii; great mosque of, began by Al-walid, 305.
Dār Al-bakar (the stable of the cows), a village in the territory of Cordova, i. 345.
Daroh (Darro), called also Hadārōkh, a river of Granada, i. 43, 348.
Darūkah (Daroca), town, ii. 304; taken by Alfonso I. of Aragon, 514.
Dārū-l-ashrāf (the house of the Sherifs), at Seville, i. 145.
Dārū-l-raudhah, palace built by 'Abdu-r-rahmān III., description of, ii. 467.
Dāri-s-sorūr (the abode of the pleasures), name of a palace built at Saragossa by Al-munktadir Ibń Hūd, i. 65.
Darwizah, a sort of dress worn by Mohammedan derwishes, i. 114, 404.
Dashna, town, i. 424.
Dāwid, son of the Khalif Suleymān, i. App. Ixxxviii.
—— Al-ansārī (Abū Suleymān), ii. 69.
—— Ibń 'Alī Ibn Khālf Aḥd-dhāherī Al-isfahānī (Abū Suleymān), founder of the sect of the Dhāherites, i. 335.
Dejmah (Diezma), town near Granada, ii. 305.
Deniāh (Denia), city, i. 68, 376; kingdom of, by whom founded, ii. 257, 506.
Deyr Borujah (Borja), in Aragon, ii. 436.
Deyr-hinnā, a place near Damascus, ii. 92.
Deyr Kasān or Kosmān, monastery of, in Galicia, ii. 194, 480.
—— Shūs, a monastery on the river Guadajoz, ii. 490.
Deysam Ibn Iš-hāk, rebellion of, ii. 439.
Dhab'īyah, mother of Suleymān, Sultān of Cordova, ii. App. xi.
Dhāherites, sect of the, by whom founded, i. 335.
Dhātu-l-jamāḥīm, a place in Africa, i. App. liv, lv.
Dhātu-s-sawārā, a place on the northern coast of Africa, ii. 5, 397.
Dhekawūn, a fortress near Malaga, ii. 374, 455, 539.
Dhī-n-nūn, family of, their origin, ii. 440; rebellions, 441.
Dhiyāu-d-dīn. See Ibnu-l-beyttar.

Dhiyāu-d-dīn, son of Sakūt, i. 333.
Dhobbah, tribe of, where inhabiting, ii. 22.
Dhū-asbah, family, where established, ii. 28.
Dhūku (Dux?), King of the Slavonians, sends an embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahmān III. of Cordova, ii. 139.
Dhū-l-menār Al-himyarī, one of the Tabbābah or kings of Yemen, i. 378.
Dhū-l-wizāratayn, meaning of the words, i. 103, 370, App. xxx.
Dhū-r-‘ayn, family of, ii. 28.
Dhū-r-rommah. See Ghaylān.
Dhī-s-sobāh, mother of Tāshefin, the Almoravide, ii. 517.
Dibaj, manufactures of, i. 51, 358.
Dimashk, palace so called in Cordova, i. 211, 489.
Dioscorides, copy of his work sent to Cordova, i. App. xxiv; by whom translated into Arabic, iš.
Diyir-Modhar, district of Syria, i. 189.
Diyār-Rabī’, i. 189.
Dobdah, a drum used by the people of Sūdān, i. 59, 366.
Dolar or Dilar, town, ii. 306.

Edom (the red-haired), the same as Esau, i. 483.
Education, state of, among the Spanish Moslems, i. 140.
Egica (Ejīh), King of the Goths, sends a fleet to Africa, i. 512.
Egilona. See Eyila.
Ejīh. See Egica.
Elche, plain of, ii. App. xxxii.
Elvira, the ancient Illiberis, i. 34, 44, 349; history of, ii. 171; battle of, 350.
Epila, a town of Aragon, taken by Alfonso I., ii. 514.
Eriko or Erika, i. 515.
Errink (Henry of Besançon), first Count of Portugal, wars with, ii. App. xliii, xlv.
Escorial Library, partly consumed by fire, i. Pref. ix; catalogue of its oriental MSS. made by Casiri, iš; deficient in works relative to Spain, xi; reasons for this deficiency, iš.
Escuriante, a town near Granada, i. 407.
Esparragueras, town of the province of Elvira, ii. 445.
Estefan, son of Basil, translates Dioscorides into Arabic, i. App. xxiv.
Estepa. See Astabah.
INDEX.

Estijah or Astijah (Ezija), a city of Andalusia, i. 42, 205, 213, 345, 485; taken by Tàrik, i. 275.
Ethics, study of, i. 142; works on, 188.
Eyila (Egilona), widow of Roderic, marries 'Abdu-l-'az íz, son of Músa, i. 543, ii. 30, 404.
Ezija. See Estijah.

Fáhilah (Favila), King of Asturias, ii. 261.
Fahss Al-font, town, ii. 559.
— Al-lej (the plain of Elche), in the province of Alicante, ii. App. xliii.
Fahsu-d-dánísúl, place so called in the province of Granada, ii. 306.
—-l-aráhi (the field of the mills), a promenade near Cordova, i. 212.
—-l-ballút (the field of the oak trees), near Cordova, i. 174, ii. 148, 501.
—-s-sorádik (the field of the tents), near Cordova, ii. 489, 492.
—-s-sorrák (the field of the thieves), near Cordova, i. 212.
—-s-sudd (the field of the dam), near Cordova, i. 212.
Fáquih (Sp. Alfaqui), i. e. theologian, title of, considered a distinction in Spain, i. 141.
Faqirs, their dress and habits in Spain, i. 113.
Faráb, a town of Transoxania, i. App. xv.
Faraj, son of Mohammed II. of Granada, ii. 346.
— (Abú Sa'id), governor of Malaga, revolts against Nasr, ii. 348; causes his son Isma'il to be proclaimed King of Granada, 350.
—Ibn Barkúk, Sultán of Egypt, i. 311; defeated by Timúr, iê.
—Ibn Isma'il, ii. 353.
—Ibn Kenánah Al-kenáni, ii. 430.
Faran Beril or Faran Barbal, a suburb of Cordova, i. 206, 487.
Fara'tún Ibn-l-abbás, ii. 100.
Fátimah, sister of Hasan the Idrísite, sets out on a pilgrimage to Mekka, ii. App. xviii.
Fátin, the Sclovonian, writes a history of his nation, ii. 200.
Fáyik, the Sclovonian, eunuch of Al-hakem II. and Hishám II. of Cordova, helps to the accession of the latter, ii. 175, 177.
Fáyiz, eunuch of Hishám II. of Cordova, ii. 486.
Fehr, tribe of, ii. 21.
—Ibn Asíl, rebellion of, ii. 443, 457.
Fej-Músa, or the pass of Músa, where situated, i. 292.

Fej-Tálýáreabh, name of a field in the outskirts of Cordova, ii. 208.
—-Tàrik (the mountain pass of Tàrik), where situated, i. 282, 286; why so called, i. 533; supposed to be Buitrago, iê.
Feju-l-meydah (the pass of the table), or of Almeyda, near Cordova, ii. 4, 396.
Ferdeland (Ferran Gonzalez), Count of Castile, ii. 139; his dominions invaded by Al-hakem II., 158; makes an alliance with Oredoño, 159.
Ferdinand II. of Leon, surnamed Al-babúy, ii. 522, App. xxvi, lxv.
— III. of Castile, takes Cordova, ii. 335; Seville, App. lxxx; makes peace with Ibnu-l-shmar, 344.
—- V. of Aragon, conquists of, ii. 374; policy, 376.
Fíguerola, his refutation of the Korán, i. 499, ii. 473.
Filibus (Philippus), the Roman emperor, i. 27, 325.
Finiana, town, ii. 386.
Finilejah, castle of, near Jacen, ii. 456.
Foráit (the river Euphrates), i. 331; also a village near Seville, now called Tamariz, 361.
Fortáriah, a district of Galicia, ii. 194.
Fortún, son of Garcia, King of Navarre, taken prisoner, ii. 127.
—- Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, is taken prisoner, ii. 455.
—- Ibn Músa, general of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. of Cordova, ii. 114.
Fortunáta (the Fortunate or Canary Islands), i. 379.
Foseyfasafa, meaning of the word, i. 496.
Poteys Ibn Suleymán, general and Wizír of Al-hakem I. of Cordova, ii. 76, 106.
Fraga, a town of Aragon, battle of, ii. 309, 517.
Franci, King of Asturias, conquists of, ii. 85.

Galafre, fabulous King of Toledo, history of, and his daughter Galiana, i. 384.
Galiana, daughter of Galafre, i. 384.
Gallego, river, i. 372.
Gallegos, town of Estremadura, ii. 480.
Garcia, Lord of Barcelona, taken prisoner by the Northmen, ii. 435.
—-_, son of Ordoño, is kept in Cordova as a hostage, ii. 160.
—-_, son of Sancho, King of Galicia, ii. 465.
—-_, son of Sancho of Navarre, ii. 137, 139.
—- II., son of Sancho, King of Navarre, sends an embassy to Al-hakem II. of Cordova, ii. 166.
INDEX.

Garci-Fernandez, Count of Castile, taken prisoner, ii. 206.

Garsiah Ibn Unekoh (Garcia I., son of Inigo), King of Navarre, dejected and killed, ii. 124, 431, 485.

Genoa, landing of the Arabs at, i. App. xxxvi.

Germany, the Emperor of, sends an embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 139.

Gháek, tribe of, ii. 26. See also Hisn.

Ghaffári, velvet called, ii. 152.

Ghálíb, An-násirí, general of Al-hakem II., defeats the Christians, ii. 158; invades Castile, 159; escorts Ordoño to Cordova, 160; his victories in Africa, 167, 476; befriends Al-mansúr, 181; quarrels with him and goes over to the Christians, 185.

—— Ibn Sáleb Ibn Khalf Ibn Ma'dán Ibn Sufyán, i. 335.

—— Ibn Umeyyah Ibn Ghálíb, ii. 190.

—— Ibn Temám Ibn 'Alkamah, ii. 421; is put to death by Suleymán, 423.

Ghalisiyah (Galicia), invaded, ii. 99, 102, 114, 127, 134; by Al-mansúr, 193; by his son 'Abdu-l-malek, 486.

Ghánah, a city of Súdán, i. 302.


Gharbía, name given to the districts west of Malaga, ii. 362.

Gharib Ibn Sa'id, historian, i. 194.

Gharánáttah or Karánáttah (Granada), description of, i. 42—45; taking of by the Arabs, 277, 280, 531; kingdom of Granada founded by Záwi, ii. 248; the city taken by the Almoravides, 295; by the Almohades, 316; by Ibnul-ahmar, who makes it the capital of his dominions, 399; besieged and finally taken by Ferdinand, 386—390.

Ghaur, a district of Arabia, also a spot near Badajoz, i. 370.

Ghautah, the meadow of Damascus, i. 65.

Gháyah, mother of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. App. xiv.

Ghaylán Ibn 'Okbah (Abú-l-hareth), surnamed Dhú-r-rommah, poet, i. 145, 422.

Ghazzalá, ii. 118.

Ghinár, a musical instrument used in Seville, i. 366.

Ghirbál. See Kirbál.

Ghittisháh. See Wittiza.

Ghiyáth Al-azdí, ii. 422.

Ghiyátháh, town, ii. 514.

Ghomárah (Gomera), mountains of, in Africa, i. 513.

Ghonzárez, meaning of the word, ii. 333.

Gibraleon. See Jebal 'Oyún.

Gibraltar. See Jebal 'Tárik.

Gotha, the invade Spain, i. 26, 203; besiege Rome, 27.

Government, account of, among the Spanish Moors, i. 95—111, App. xxviii.

Grammar, study of, i. 142; works on, 183, 197.

Granada. See Gharánáttah.

Guadacelete. See Wāda-l-balit.

Guadaira, river near Seville, ii. 454.

Guadalabiar. See Wāda-l-abyádh.

Guadalajara. See Wāda-l-hajáráh.

Guadalaxara. See Wāda-l-hajáráh.

Guadalcanal, silver mines of, i. 389.

Guadaleón. See Nahr Ilyán.

Guadalete, river. See Wāda-Lek.

Guadalmedina. See Wāda-l-medinah.

Guadalquivir (Wāda-l-kebír), also called Wāda-l-'adhem (the great river), and Wāda Kortubah (the river of Cordova), described, i. 362; number of villages on its banks, 87, 387.

Guadarrama. See Wāda-r-ramá.

Guadix (Wádi-ash), a district and town near Granada, description of, i. 46.

Guaro. See Wāda-r-román.

Guzman (Henrique de), Duke of Medina-Sidonia, relieves Alhama, ii. 541.

Habán, ii. 10.

Habásah, the Zeyrite, ii. 248.

Habúb, the Sclavonian, Lord of Tortosa, ii. 258.

—— Ibn 'Abi 'Obeydah Ibn 'Okbah Ibn Nafi' Alfehri, one of the conquerors of Spain, i. 283, ii. 18, 399, 403, 411; is intrusted by Suleymán with the murder of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, App. iii. v.

—— Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, ii. 76, 78.

—— Ibn Aus Ibn Kahttán (Abú Temám) At-táyí, his collection of poems entitled Hamásuh, commented upon by Yúsuf Ibn Suleymán, i. 190, 468.

Habíl Ibn Hariz Ibn Húbil (Abú Karámah), his revolt, ii. 444.

Habús Ibn Mákesen, Sultán of Granada, i. 350; succeeds his uncle Záwi, ii. 248, 502.

Hádároh, the river Darro at Granada, ii. 369.

Haddád, i. 333.

Hadhiyyah, mistress of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 147.

Hadhráh Bakshans, a town close to Almeria, i. 361.

Hadhráah-maut, son of Kahttán or Kays, i. 312; the descendants of, settle in Spain, ii. 29; rise in Seville, 449.

—— , a district of Arabia, i. 312, ii. 29.
INDEX.

Hadhrat 'Abbád, town near Ronda, ii. 533.
Hadhratu-l-waríkah, a spot close to Cordova, i. 90, 389.
Hafss or Hafssún, father of 'Omar, ii. 453.
——, son of 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, arrives in Cordova, ii. 446.
—— Ibn Al-marrah, lieutenant of 'Omar Ibn Hafssún, his wars, ii. 443, 447; his death, 453.
—— Ibn Suleyman Al-hallál (Abú Salmah and Abú Moslemah), i. 331, ii. 90, 417.
Hafssah, daughter of Hamdún, poetess, i. 163, 165.
—— Ar-rakúniyeh, daughter of Abú-l-hejáj, a celebrated poetess born at Granada, i. 45; verses by, ib.
Hafssún Al-béránísí, ii. 451.
Hajjaru-n-nasr, a fortress of Western Africa, taken by Ghálib, ii. 167.
Hájib or chamberlain, duties of, under the Bení Umeyyah, i. App. xxx, 103, 397.
Hajjáj Al-kúmis or the Count, is taken and beheaded, ii. 451.
Hájín, name of a hillock in the territory of Mekka, i. 245, 507.
Hákim or civil magistrate, duties of the, i. 104.
Halal or Holal, mother of Hishám I. of Cordova, ii. 95, 424.
Halál, castle of, taken by the Christians, ii. 519.
Halawah, mother of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. of Cordova, ii. 124.
Hám Ibn 'Iyádib, i. App. lxiii.
Hamadán, town near Granada, ii. 306.
Hamám Ibn Ghálib Al-farazdak (Abú Firás), poet, i. 189, 466.
Hamám-u-l-albírí (the baths of the natives of, or originally from, Elbírâ), in Cordova, i. 206, 486.
———sh-shatárah (the bath of Asb-shatárah), in Seville, i. 60.
Hamásah, a collection of poems by At-táyí (Abú Temám), commented upon by Yusuf Ibn Suleymán, i. 197, 497.
Hamdán, a poetess of Granada, i. 351.
Hamdán, tribe of, settle in Spain, ii. 26.
——— Ibn Tháleb, i. 322.
Hamdún Ibn Mohammed Ibn Hamdún (Abú Ja'far), surnamed Al-mansúr-billáh, King of Cordova, i. 202, 483, ii. 517.
Hamdúnah, daughter of Ziryáb, the musician, ii. 432.

Hamekí, a musical instrument used by the Berbers, i. 59, 366.
Hámíd Ibn Mohammed Ibn Yahya, Kádí of Cordova, ii. 106.
—— Ibn Samján (Abú Bekr), naturalist, i. 92, 391.
Hamis Ibn Zabrah, a Jewish mathematician, i. 385.
Hammúd Ibn Maymún Ibn Ahmed, &c., Ibn Idrís, ancestor of the Bení Hammúd, arrives in Cordova, i. 396.
Hamzah Ibnu-l-hasan Al-isfahání, history of Ispahán written by, i. 178.
Handalis, meaning of the word, i. 322.
Hand-writing, of the Spanish Moslems, i. 143.
Hansh Ibn 'Abdillah As-san'ání, tá'bí or follower, enters Spain with Músá Ibn Nosseyr, i. 283, 372, 536, App. xlix; ii. 3; lays the foundations of the mosque of Saragossa, 4; of Cordova, i. 226, ii. 4.
Harakah, daughter of An-no'mán Ibn Al-mundhir, King of Hírah, verses by, ii. 418.
Harb Ibn Umeyyah, i. 330.
Harísah (Aríz?), castle of, taken, ii. 457.
Háráth, son of Sa'id, revolts with his father, ii. 443.
Haríz Ibn 'Okkáshah, general of Al-máimún, King of Toledo, i. 125; his adventure with Alfonso, 126.
Harmalah Ibn 'Amrán, ii. 9.
Harrán, a city of Mesopotamia, the ancient Charræ, i. 150.
Harrat Abí Sarrah, now Molina, near Seville, i. 361.
Harzán, Lord of Xerez, ii. 230.
Hasan Al-hajjám or Al-hajjáhm, of the Bení Idrís of Africa, is put to death, ii. 144, 466.
——— Al-laghiwí (Abú 'Abdah), historian, ii. 200.
——— Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz Al-kenání, rebellion of, ii. 85.
——— Ibn Ahmed Al-fádhel, the Idrísite, visits Spain, ii. 145.
——— Ibn Mohammed, i. 235.
——— Ibn Malek Ibn Abí 'Abdah, ii. 190.
——— Ibn Mohammed, the Idrísite, visits Spain, ii. 145.
———, son of Yahya, the theologian, ii. 487.
——— or Al-Hasan Ibn Yahya Ibn Hammúd, surnamed Al-mustánsír-billáh, third of the Bení Idrís of Malaga, i. 333, ii. 246, App. xviii.
——— Ibn Yásár Al-balárí (Abú Sa'id), theologian, ii. 170.
——— Ibn Ziryáb, ii. 432.
Husayd Ibn Bashrút, a Jewish physician, i. App. xxv, xxvi.
Hášim Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz, general of 'Abdulláh, Sul-tán of Cordova, i. 132, ii. 439.
INDEX.

Haurá, mother of Hishám I. of Cordova, ii. 424.
——, mother of Mohammed III. of Cordova, ii.
   App. xiv.
Hawántu-r-ribán (the shops of [the sellers of] sweet basil), one of the suburbs of Cordova, i. 206.
Hawar Maumal (the cypress plantation of Maumal), why so called, i. 352.
Hawarárah, a Berber tribe, i. App. ix.
Hawázien, family of, where established, ii. 29.
Hayát Ibn Rejá At-temíní, ii. 7.
Haywákh [Hayát] Ibn Mulábis (or Mulámis) Al-hadhrámí, ii. 18, 399; rebellion of, 415, 419, 420.
—— Ibn Al-walíd Al-yahssobi, ii. 422.
Hayyán Ibn Khalíf Ibn Huseyn Ibn Hayyún (Abú Merwáin), historian, account of his life and writings, i. 310; his history of Mohammedan Spain, 38, 187, 198, 368, 463, 471——of the Bení Abí 'Amir, ii. 178; quotations from those works, i. 25, 286, ii. 265; extracts from his history of the Bení Umeyyah, 437——459.
—— Ibn Abí Hobláh Ad-dári (Abú-n-nadhar), i. 283, 536, App. xlxi; ii. 2, 395.
——, mauáli of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, i. 310.
Házem Ibn Mohammed Ibn Hasan Ibn Házém Al-ansári Al-karátién (Abú-l-hasán), his poem entitled Makários, i. Pref. xix, 114; badly described by Casiri, 405; by whom commented upon, ib., and ii. 537.
Hazarj, tribe of, ii. App. lxvii.
Hejáj Ibn Al-‘okáylí, ii. 106.
Heídál, tribe, ii. App. lxv, lxix.
—— Ibn Hamídán Ibn Mukaddám, chief of the tribe of Al-khalíat, ii. App. lxxiii, lxxiv.
—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mardánísh (Abú-l-kámar), submits to the Almohades, ii. 520, App. lxi.
—— Ibnu-t-tofiyál Al-‘abdáí, ii. 71.
Henriques (Pedro), taken prisoner, ii. 541.
Herando (Ferdinand IV. of Castile), lays siege to Algesiras, ii. 348.
Herckiles (Hercules), remains of his buildings in Spain, i. 77.
Hems (Emessa), name given by the Arabs to Seville, i. 49.
Heskuhr, tribe and town of Africa, ii. App. lxxii.
Heylenah, town, ii. 526.
Hibán, ii. 10.
Himyar, descendants from, settle in Spain, ii. 28.
Hindab, ii. 118.

VOL. II.

Hishám I., surnamed Ar-roday (the amiable) and Al-‘uddíl (the just), reign of, ii. 97—101.
—— II. of Cordova, tenth of the Bení Umeyyah, surnamed Al-muyyed-billah, i. 219; succeeds his father Al-hakém II., ii. 175; is dethroned by Mohammed Al-muhdí, 225, 488; restored to power, 494; put to death by Suleymán, 229; various opinions respecting his death, 503.
—— III. of Cordova, surnamed Al-mu'tadd-billah, reign of, ii. 243, 249.
——, son of Al-mámán of Toledo, supposed to have succeeded his father in the kingdom, ii. 504.
—— Al-mus‘áfí, ii. 161.
—— Al-washkí (from Huesca) Abú-l-walíd, surnamed Al-filosúf (the philosopher), i. 150, 431.
—— Ibn ‘Abdí-l-‘azíz, Wizír, ii. 432.
—— Ibn ‘Abdí-l-jábábir, of the house of Umeyyah, is put to death, ii. 486.
—— Ibn ‘Abdí-l-malék, i. App. lxxxviii.
—— Ibn ‘Abdí-r-rahmán, of the family of Umeyyah, is appointed governor of Seville, ii. 450; is sent against the Muwalláds, 454.
—— Ibn ‘Adhráh Al-fehrí, account of, ii. 421; his rebellion, ib.
—— Ibn ‘A’mir, i. 176.
—— Ibn Hudheyl, is sent on an embassy to Constantinople, ii. 138.
—— Ibn Mohammed, of the house of Umeyyah, appointed governor of Seville, ii. 455; is put to death by his brother’s orders, 461.
——, son of Suleymán, Sultán of Cordova, makes war against Al-muhdí, ii. 492.
—— Ibn ‘Orwáh, ii. 109.
—— Ibn Suleymán Ibn An-násir, of the family of Umeyyah, revolts against Mohammed II., ii. 226; is put to death, ib.
Hian Al-munshád or Al-muneshát, fortress near Granada, ii. 379, 542.
—— Amariná, town on the Guadalete, ii. 454.
—— Andusar (Anduxar), in the province of Jaén, ii. 446.
‘Ashid or Ashd, ii. 453.
—— Bejíj (Bexíjar), town, taken by the Christians, ii. 350.
—— Beláy (Esepuy ?), in the kingdom of Cordova, ii. 438; taken by ‘Omar Ibn Hafssún, 451; recovered by the Sultán’s forces, 452.
—— Gháfek, a castle in the territory of Cordova, inhabited by the tribe of Gháfek, i. 42, 205, 213, 345, 485.
INDEX.

Hosamu-d-daulah Ibn Razin ('Abdu-l-malek?), King of As-sahlah, ii. App. xxxii. See also 'Obeydullah Abú Merwán.

Aloa, a district near Cairo, i. 478.

Hossain Ibn An-no'man, i. App. xxxv, liv.

— Ibn Malek Ibn Hani (Abú 'Obeydah), poet, ii. 190.


— Ibn Samh As-sadâyf, ii. 10.

Hoto (Otho), Emperor of Germany, sends an embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahman III. of Cordova, ii. 139.

Howarah, tribe of, ii. 255.

Hudheyf, tribe of, where settled, ii. 22.

— or Hadhil Ibn Merwan Ibn Razin, account of, ii. 507.

— Ibn As-samîl, ii. 83, 419.

— Ibn Hishâm, general of Al-hakem II. of Cordova, defeats the Castilians, ii. 159.

— Ibn Razin, Lord of As-sahlah and Albarracin, i. 378.

Huelma, a village in the Alpujarras, i. 354.

Huete. See Webdeh.

Hugo. See Ukoh.

Hosam-u-d-daulah. See Hosam-u-d-daulah.

Huseyn, tribe of, ii. 29.

— Pâshâ of Aleppo, execution of, i. 306.

— Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azîz Al-fehri (Abû 'Ali), his commentary upon the Mustasîfî, i. 471.

— Ibn 'Abdullah Ibn Sînî (or Avicenna), philosopher, i. App. xv.

— Ibn 'Ab di-s-sellâm, ii. 535.

— Ibn Abû Talib, ii. 21, 399.

— Ibn Al-walîd (Abû-l-kâsim Ibnu-l-îrîf), poet, ii. 190, 483.

— Ibn 'A'sîm, his life of Al-mansûr, i. 187, 464.

— Ibn Jobeyr, ii. 22.

— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Ahmed, historian, i. Pref. xxiv.

— Ibn Mohammed Al-mûri, is appointed governor of Seville, ii. 449.

— (or Al-huseyn) Ibn Yahya Ibn Sa'id Al-ansâri, rebellion of, ii. 84; his death, 85, 89.

'Ibadah Ibnu-s-sâmâh. See 'Obâdah.

Ibn 'Abbâd. See 'Abbâd, Isma'il, Mohammed I., and Mohammed II.

— 'Abdi-l-'azîz, Lord of Murcia, is dethroned, ii. 511.
INDEX.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr, general of 'Abdullah, Sultán of Cordova, ii. 453. See also Yúsuf.
— 'Abdi-l-hakem. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán and Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah.
— 'Abdi-l-hakk Al-khazrejî (Abú Ja'far), historian, his history of the Khalífs, i. Pref. xxii, 193; extracts from, App. xli; ii. App. xxii.
— 'Abdi-l-jakká. See Báb Ibn 'Abdi-l-jakká.
— 'Abdi-l-málík, ii. 223.
— 'Abdi-l-mu'anem. See Abú 'Abdillah.
— 'Abdi-l-walî Al-mayúrkí, ii. 332.
— 'Abdi-r-rabbihi. See Ahmed Ibn Mohammed.
— 'Abdi-shelb (Dhú-l-wázaráteyn), i. 65.
— 'Abdún. See 'Abdu-l-mejíd and Mohammed.
— 'Abdus, i. 178.
— Abí 'A'mir Ibn-l-faraj, i. 152, 432.
— Abí Hafísz. See Abí Hafísz, Abú 'Imrán, Abú Mohammed, Abú Yúsuf, Ibrahim Ibn Isma'il, and Yahya.
— Abí 'Isa. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah.
— Abí Khálid favours the accession of Ibn-u-ahmar, ii. 340, 343.
— Abí Leylah At-tojibí, i. App. lxxv.
— Abí-l-jawwád. See 'Abdu-l-malek.
— Abí-l-khißál or Khassál. See 'Abdallah and Mohammed.
— Abí Nes'áh. See 'Othmán.
— Abí 'Obeyd, ii. 488.
— Abí 'Obeydah. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Habíb.
— Abí Ossaybi'ah, his lives of the Arabian physicians, extracts from, i. App. i—xxvii.
— Abí Sheybah, i. App. viii. See also Abú Bekr, 'Omar, and Mohammed Ibn 'Othmán.
— Abí 'Tháhir. See Ahmed.
— Abí Wád'áh, ii. 494, 497.
— Abí Yaghálús. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán.
— Adh'á. See Mohammed.
— Adh'am. See 'Obeydullah.
— Ajdar. See 'Abdu-l-kerím.
— Akhyal. See 'Ayyásh.
— Al-affásas. See 'Omar, Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah, and Mohammed Ibn Moslemah.
— Al-háj. See Mohammed Ibn 'Ala.
— Ibn Alisa'. See Alyasa'.
— Al-júzí. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn 'Alí.
— 'Alkamah, historian, ii. 262. See also 'Abdu-r-rahmán.
— 'Ammár. See Mohammed.
— 'Amrán, writer on botany, i. 388.
— 'Amrún. See 'Othmán.
— Arkam. See Abí 'A'mir.
— Ar-robertín. See 'Ali.
— Asákir, theologian, ii. 4.
— Ashkilíldah. See 'Abdullah Ibn Ibráhîm and Ibráhîm.
— Ash-sháliyyah. See 'Obeydullah Ibn Umeyyah.
— A'sáim, ii. 154.
— Attáf Al-'okaylí. See Is'hák.
— 'Attiyah. See 'Abdu-l-hakk Ibn Ghálîb.
— Aumas, a Christian count, advice given by, to Shanshúl, ii. 489; death of, 490.
— 'Ayádh or 'Iyádh, King of Murcia, ii. 112, 314, 334, 519.
— 'A'yeshah. See Dáwúd.
— Aymen. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek.
— 'Azzár or 'Az-zári, historian, ii. 343, 533.
— Bájeh. See Mohammed Ibn Yahya.
— Bakít. See Abú Zeyd.
— Bakiyyah, ii. 153.
— Barzalas, place so called, near Carmona, ii. 454.
— Bartil, chief of the Muwallads, marches to the assistance of Sa'id Ibn Khanjar, ii. 446.
— Bashir. See Mohammed.
— Bassal, writer on botany and agriculture, i. 118, 408.
— Battál, botanist, i. 408.
— Battúttah. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah.
— Bedr, poet, ii. 203.
— Besám or Bessám. See 'Alí.
— Biurák, Wizír of Abú Mohammed Al-báyesí, puts his sovereign to death, ii. App. lxxiv.
— Bokennah, Wizír of the Bení Idrís, ii. 246, 249.
— Borgúth. See Mohammed Ibn 'Omar.
— Búján. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán.
— Busheyr. See 'Omar.
— Dahín, i. 234.
— Darastuyah, ii. 464.
— Dárráj Al-kasttáli. See Ahmed Ibn Mohammed and Mohammed Ibn Mohammed.
— Deyham, ii. 473.
— Deylam, ii. 473.
INDEX.

Ibn Dhahan, i. App. lxxvii.
— Dhawkán, ii. 221, 492.
— Dhari, ii. 490.
— Di'h'iyá, i. 337, 408. See also 'Abú-l-khátháb.
— Doreyd or Dureyd. See Abú Bekr.
— Faraj. See Ahmed and 'Amru.
— Farkún. See Ahmed Ibn Suleyman.
— Feyrroh or Ferro. See Kásim.
— Fortún Al-kasawí. See Mohammed Ibn Lob.
— Ghlábí. See Temám.
— Gharún. See Abú-l-ghamr.
— Ghattús, i. 143; copy of the Korán written by, ib.
— Ghází, i. 247.
— Habíb, i. 481. See also 'Abdu-l-malek and 'Abdu-r-rahmán.
— Hábil. See 'Amír, Hábil, Mundhir, and 'Omar.
— Habsh (Hobeysh ?) 'Abú-l-kásim, i. 480.
— Hadíd, i. App. xxx.
— Hafssún. See 'Omar.
— Hajar, ii. 11.
— Hajjáj. See Ibráhím.
— Hajr. See Ahmed.
— Hamdín. See Hamdín and Mohammed.
— Hamdís, the Sicilian, poet, i. 506.
— Hamdún, governor of Tiscar, ii. 535. See also Ja'far and Sawwár.
— Hammúd. See 'Ali, Al-kásim, and Yahya.
— Hárih, ii. 112.
— Hárin. See Abú Ja'far.
— Haukal. See Mohammed.
— Haut-illah, ii. 312.
— Haytham. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Is'hák.
— Hayyí. See Al-huseyn Ibn Ahmed.
— Házem. See Házem Ibn Mohammed.
— Ibn Helál, i. 189.
— Hobeysh. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed.
— Hudheyl. See 'Ali Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán and Sa'id.
— Humushk. See Ibráhím.
— 'Isa, ii. 266.
— Is'hák. See Is'hák Ibn Salámah.
— 'Ittáf. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán.
— 'Iyád Al-yáhssobi. See 'Iyád and Ibn 'Ayád.
— Iyás. See Mohammed.
— 'Iyásh, i. 66.
— Jábir, author of travels in the East, i. 424. See also Mohammed.
— Jarír At-tábarí, historian, i. 180.
— Jarmún, chief of the tribe of Sufyán, ii. App. lxxiii.
— Jazzi-1-kelbi. See Abú Bekr and Mohammed Ibn Mohammed.
— Jeháf, Kádí of Valencia, put to death by the Cid, ii. 528, App. xxxix.
— Jehwar, ii. 288. See also Jehwar, 'Abdu-l-malek, 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Mohammed, and 'Abdu-l-wádúd.
— Jesúr, historian, ii. 200.
— Jodeyr. See Músa Ibn Mohammed.
— Jorj. See 'Abdu-l-wáhháb and Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán.
— Júdí. See Sa'id Ibn Suleyman.
— Kádis. See Yusuf.
— Kadús. See Abú 'Abdillah.
— Kalmún. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellam.
— Kammún. See Al-hasan.
— Kási. See Ahmed Ibnu-l-huseyn.
— Kásim. See Kásim.
— Katání, governor of Guadalajara, defeated by the Christians and wounded, ii. App. xxvi.
— Kattan. See 'Abdu-l-malek.
INDEX.

Ibn Khákán. See Al-fat'h.
   — Khalaf, ii. 300.
   — Khaldón. See Abú Moalem, 'Abdu-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed, Karibah, Koreyb, Kháled, and 'Omar.
   — Khalífah. See Mohammed.
   — Khalíf, ii. 154.
   — Khamír, ii. 450.
   — Khassíb, ii. 448.
   — Khátimah or Khatimah. See Ahmed Ibn 'Alí.
   — Khatha. See 'Azíz Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek.
   — Khazrún or Khazerún. See Al-hajjáj.
   — Khordábah, geographer, i. Pref. xxv, 326, 538.
   — Komáshah. See 'Alí.
   — Ketybah. See 'Abdullah Ibn Moslem.
   — Lob (Abenlope), account of, ii. 440. See also Lob Ibn Mohammed and Mohammed Ibn Lob.
   — Lubábah. See Mohammed Ibn 'Omar and Mohammed Ibn Yahya.
   — Máduyah, the Christian, lends his assistance to Suleymann of Cordova, ii. 491, 492.
   — Máis-s-salá. See 'Obádah Ibn 'Abdillah.
   — Málik Ar-ro'ayn, i. 43.
   — Málkún (Abú Is'hák), i. 48.
   — Mardánísh. See 'Abdullah, Helál Ibn Mohammed, Mohammed Ibn Mohammed, Mohammed Ibn Sa'd, Sa'd, Yúsuf Ibn Sa'd, and Zeyyán.
   — Marzük. See Mohammed Ibn Abí 'Abdillah and Ahmed.
   — Masarrah, ii. 149.
   — Mas'úd, i. 176.
   — Maujú, death of, ii. 456.
   — Maumel, i. App. v.
   — Mishá'il, the Jew, is sent on an embassy to Almu'tamed, King of Seville, ii. App. xxxii.
   — Mokbíl, the vase of, meaning of the expression, i. 170.
   — Mokéná Al-lishbóní, poet, i. 100.
   — Moklám. See Mohammed Ibn 'Alí.
   — Moslemáh, Sáhibu-sh-shórtah of Suleymann of Cordova, ii. 493.
   — Mu'ayn, ii. 5.

Ibn Mughíth, poet of the court of Al-hakém II., ii. 170. See also Al-'álá.
   — Muhallíb. See Khalíl and Sa'íd.
   — Munkíd, ii. 323.
   — Mústamán. See Sa'id Ibn Walid.
   — Mutálír (Abú Ja'far), i. 473.
   — Nábí', ii. 3.
   — Núh, a Berber chief, put to death by Al-mu'tamed, ii. 504.
   — Odi'ha. See Mohammed.
   — 'Ofeyr, ii. 448.
   — 'Omar, ii. 6.
   — 'Orfán, i. 247.
   — Rabáh. See 'Alí.
   — Radmír (Alfonso I. of Aragon), i. 127; conquests of, ii. 309.
   — Rakík, ii. 228.
   — Raahíd. See Mohammed Ibn 'Omar.
   — Rashik. See 'Abdullah and Al-hasan.
   — Razár or Zárzár, the Jew, his conference with Ibnu-l-khattib, ii. 533.
   — Rayek, i. App. xvii. See also Abú Mohammed.
   — Rayún. See 'Abbúd, 'Abdu-l-málik, Hudheyyl, and Yahya.
   — Refá'h. i. App. lxxx.
   — Réjá At-témírî, i. 536.
   — Romábíz. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán.
   — Roomylah. See Ahmed.
   — Roeshd. See 'Abdullah and Mohammed Ibn Ahmed.
   — Sábirah, i. 344.
   — Sa'dah. See Abú 'Abdillah.
   — Salún, ii. 200.
   — Sá'id. See Sa'id Ibn Ahmed.
   — Salámah, i. 509.
   — Samádeh. See Mohammed.
   — Sárah. See 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed.
   — Serráj. See 'Abú-l-huseyn.
   — Seyid, the geometrician, i. App. xvi.
   — Shabarkáh, chief of the Muwalláds of Seville, takes up arms against the Arabs, ii. 450.
INDEX.

Ibn Shahin. See Ahmed.
— Shākir. See Khayyr.
— Shālib, the Jew, is sent as ambassador to Almu'tamed of Seville, ii. 252.
— Shammasah, i. 536.
— Šās, i. 247.
— Sheyri. See Abū Hafṣ.
— Shikhnah. See Mohammed.
— Sho'ayb, ii. App. lxxx.

— Shohnah. See Mohammed.
— Sīālis, the Christian, conditions obtained by, from Suleymán of Cordova, ii. 496.
— Sīdāh. See 'Ali Ibn Isma'il.
— Sukālah. See Yahya.
— Tafertās, the Almoravide, is appointed governor of Mallorca, ii. App. xlviii.
— Tarīf, i. 184.
— Tofayl. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek.
— Tūjān. See 'Abdu-r-rahman.
— Umeyyah. See 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn 'Abdillah.
— Wadhādāh. See 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed and Mohammed.
— Wāfīd, i. App. xvi.
— Wahbūn. See 'Abdu-l-jelīl.
— Wāhib. See Mālik.
— Wa’lah At-temmī, ii. App. iii.
— Wānūdīn. See Mohammed Ibn Yūsuf.
— Wāsīl Al-hamawi, his abridgement of the Kitābu-l-aghānī, i. 480.
— Wazīr. See Abū 'Abdillah and Seddaray.
— Ya’ish, Lord of Toledo, ii. 504.
— Yakhūn, ii. App. xliii.
— Yāmīn, death of, ii. 456.
— Yāysh, ii. 342.
— Yūnās, the sailor, i. 235. See also Abū Sa’īd and ‘Ali Ibn ‘Abdi-r-rahmān.
— Zarakā, ii. 300.
— Zendakah. See Mohammed Ibnu-l-walid.
— Zeyd Al-askaf (the bishop), astronomical works of, i. 198, 481.
— Zeydūn. See Abū-l-walid and Abū Bekr.
— Zeyyān. See Mūsa Ibn ‘Othmān.

Ibn Zomrok. See Mohammed Ibn Yusuf.
— Zubeyr. See Ahmed Ibn Ibrāhīm.
Ibnu Bashkūwāl. See Khalf Ibn ‘Abdi-l-malek, &c.
— d-dabbāgh. See Ibrāhīm.
— Hayyān. See Hayyān.
— l-abbār. See 'Abdullah Ibn Abi Bekr and Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah.
— l-abbās Al-mubarrad, i. 184.
— l-aghlab, governor of Africa under the 'Abbas-sides, proposition made to, ii. 452.
— l-ahmar. See Mohammed Ibn Yusuf.
— l-ahnas. See Al-'abbās.
— l-’arf, poet, ii. 201, 203. See also Ahmed Ibn Mohammed, Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mūsa, and Huseyn Ibnu-l-walid.
— l-’askār, i. 403.
— l-athīr. See Isma'il Ibn Ahmed.
— l-attās, governor of Bugia, ii. App. lxxiv.
— l-’umām, his treatise of agriculture cited, i. 387.
— l-’abūj. See Alfonso IX.
— l-bajileyn, chief of the Muwallads of Seville, takes up arms against the Arabs, ii. 450.
— l-banā. See Abū J'afar.
— l-beyttar. See Mohammed Abū 'Abdillah.
— l-eshterkūnū. See Mohammed Ibn Yūsuf.
— l-faradhi. See 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed.
— l-faraj. See Abū 'A’mir.
— l-faras, surnamed Al-mohr, rises in Africa, ii. App. lxviii; gives himself out as the Mahdi, lxix; is taken and put to death, līb.
— l-fayyādū. See Ahmed Ibn Sa'id.
— l-ghalith. See 'Omar Ibn Sho'ayb.
— l-haddād. See Mohammed and Mohammed Abū Bekr.
— l-hāj. See Mohammed and Mohammed Ibn 'Ala.
— l-hājib, ii. 33. See also 'Obeydullah.
— l-hājām. See Mohammed Ibn 'Alī.
— l-hakem, i. Pref. xvii.
— l-haytham, his works, i. 187; account of, 464.
— l-hejūj. See 'Abdullah and Ibrāhīm.
INDEX.

Ibnu-l-hijārī. See 'Abdullah Ibn Ibrāhīm.
--- l-imāra. See 'Ali.
--- l-imām. See 'Ali Ibn Abī-l-'aziz.
--- l-jadd. See Abū 'Amru and Abū Bekr.
--- l-jallik. See 'Abdu-r-raḥmān Ibn Merwān.
--- l-jārūd, his work on traditions, i. 181.
--- l-jerrāh (Abū 'Obeydah), i. 176.
--- l-jezzār, geographer, i. Pref. xxv, 75. See also Ahmed.
--- l-kādī. See Ahmed Ibn Mohammed.
--- l-kāsim. See 'Abdu-r-raḥmān.
--- l-kattā. See 'Ali Ibn Ja'far.
--- l-khattīb. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah.
--- l-khayyāt Al-kortobī, poet, ii. 233.
--- l-kitt. See Ahmed Ibn Umeyyah.
--- l-kobtornah. See Abū Bekr.
--- l-kossayrah. See Mohammed Ibn Suleyman.
--- l-kūtitiyyah. See Mohammed Ibn 'A'mir.
--- l-ebbānāh. See 'Isa.
--- l-lūshī Al-yahshib. See Mohammed Ibn Mohammed.
--- l-mo'āllem (Abū Yahya), i. 32.
--- l-muffās (Abū-l-hasan), i. 189, 467.
--- l-muḥājrīr At-tojibī. See 'Abdu-r-raḥmān Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azīz.
--- l-muhīb. See Yezīd.
--- l-mūnḥā, ii. 544.
--- l-mūl. See 'Attik.
--- l-mūṣāhīf, general of Al-mansūr, ii. 211.
--- l-mūtarrezi. See Nāṣir Ibn Abī-l-mukārim.
--- l-mūṭamah. See Abū-l-motref.
--- l-wakshū, i. 150.
--- l-wardī, geographer, i. 313.
--- l-yābisah, physician, i. App. xxvi.
--- Ma'ān, i. 136. See Mohammed Ibn Samađeh.
--- r-rahīb At-temimī. See Abū 'Alī.
--- r-rākik, historian, ii. 228, 400.
--- r-reminī. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah.
--- r-rūmīyyah. See Ahmed Ibn Mohammed.
--- r-saffār. See Mohammed.
--- Sā'id. See Ibn Sa'id.
--- Samh or Samah. See Asbāgh.
--- s-sāmīnī. See Yahya Ibn Yahya.
--- s-sāyegh. See Mohammed Ibn Yahya.
--- s-selīm. See Mundhir Ibn Ibrāhīm.
--- s-seyrāfī. See Yahya.
--- sh-shahīd, chief of the tribe of Hentēṭah, ii.
   App. lxiiii, lxxxiv.
--- sh-sharāha, ii. 488.

Ibnu-s-sīdī. See 'Abdullah Ibn Mohammed.
--- s-sīdāh. See Ibn Sidah.
--- t-tarāwah, i. 37, 197.
--- t-tawīl, ii. 266.
--- t-taylasān. See 'Abdullah Ibn Ahmed.
--- t-tōsafīā. See Helāl.
--- z-zakkāk, i. 67.
Ibrāhīm, son of Yūsuf Ibn Tāshefin, ii. 304.
--- (Abū Is'hāk), fourth of the Almoravides, is put to death by 'Abdu-l-mūmen, ii. 309.
--- Al-khalūtți (read Al-khalwattī), i. 331.
--- Al-mausūlī, musician, ii. 116, 118.
--- Ibn 'Abdi-r-raḥmān Al-kaysī (Abū Is'hāk), i. 338.
--- Ibn Ahmed Ash-sheybānī Ar-riyādhī, ii. 149; his life and writings, 468.
--- Ibn 'Alī Al-hosrī (Abū Is'hāk), poet, i. 196, 478, ii. 254.
--- Ibn Ashkīlūlah At-tojībī (Abū Is'hāk), ii. 337, 531, App. lxix.
--- Ibn Dhamīr, ii. 446, 459.
--- Ibn Hājjīj or Ibnu-l-hejāj Al-lakhmī, rebellion of, ii. 439, 441; is taken prisoner, 450; is pardoned and appointed governor of Seville, 451, App. lx.
--- Ibn Humushk, ii. 313; revolts, 315; expels the Almohades from Granada, ib.; defeats the troops sent against him, 316, 520; makes his submission, ib. and App. lvii.
--- Ibn 'Isa, ii. 51.
--- Ibnu-d-dabbīgh Al-ishbili (Abū Is'hāk), poet, ii. 526.
--- Ibn Mazīn (Abū Is'hāk), his commentary upon the Mowatāt of Mālik Ibn Ans, i. 180.
--- Ibn Mohammed Al-ifīlī (Abū-l-kāsim), his commentary upon the poems of Al-mutenabbī, i. 185.
--- Ibn Mufarrag As-sīrī, his fabulous history of Alexander the Great, i. 323.
--- Ibn Sāhibi-s-sulṭāt Al-welbanī (Abū Mohammed), i. 501.
--- Ibn Shajrah, governor of Malaga, ii. 418.
--- Ibnu-l-kāsim Al-karawi, surnamed Ar-rākīk,
Ibn Arabih, Ibn Ya'kub Al-kanemí (Abú Ish'ák), poet, verses by, ii. 319.

Ibn Yusuf Ibn Tashfin, the last of the Almoravide Sultanes, i. 337.

Idris I. of Malaga, surnamed Al-mutayyed-billah, first of the Bení Idrís, ii. 238, 245, App. xvi.

II. of Malaga, surnamed Al-dili-billah, fourth of the Bení Idrís, ii. 246, App. xx.

(Abú Dabbús), surnamed Al-wdthik-billah, last of the Almohades, ii. 325.

I. (Abú-l-ala Al-mámín), tenth of the Almohades, his rising at Seville, ii. 324; his reign, App. lxxii.

III. of Malaga, surnamed Al-muwaffek-billah, sixth of the Bení Idrís, reign of, ii. 247, App. xx.

Idriá. See Mohammed Ibn Mohammed.

'Idwha', meaning of the word, i. 409, 513.

'Idwa'tu-l-andalusíin (the side of the Andalusians), a quarter of the city of Fez, why so called, ii. 103.

Illoa, town, taken, ii. 375.

Ilýa (AElia or Jerusalem), taken and plundered by Ishbáin, King of Spain, i. 25.

Ilyán or Julian, governor of Ceuta, quarrels with Roderic, i. 255, 513; has an interview with Músá, 257, 264, 516; leads the Arabs into Spain, 270; advises Tárik, 277; assists Músá, 284, App. xlili; his various names, 509, 537; conjectures about his origin, rank, and the share he had in the conquest of Spain, 537.

'Imád, poetess, i. 167.

'Imádu-d-da-ulah. See 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Húd. Iñigo, a Gothic general, i. 522.

Inkilterrah. See Al-inkilterrah.

'Iśa Ibn Az-ze-yát, ii. 532.

— Ibn Maymún, Lord of Santa Maria, ii. 517, App. li.

—, brother of the Mahdí, ii. App. li.

—, son of Huseyn Al-ansári, defeated by 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 421.

—, son of the Sheikh Abú Hafés, ii. App. lxvi.

— Ibn Ahmed Ar-rázi, historian, ii. 260, 446, 507.

— (Abú-l-'aysh), the Idrísite, visits Spain, is killed in battle, ii. 145, 466.

— Ibn Dinár, theologian, i. 180; leaves Spain for the East, ii. 100.

— Ibn Hanún or Kannún Ibn Mohammed Ibn Al-kásim, the Idrísite, visits Spain, ii. 145.

— Ibn Ibnábihí, ii. 51.

— Ibn Mohammed (Abú-l-asbágh), his history of Elvira, ii. 171.

— Ibn Musáwíd, ii. 67.

— Ibn Muzáihim, marries SÁrah, a Gothic princess, ii. 415.

— Ibn Suleymán Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn 'Abdillah Ar-ro'ayní Ar-rondí, i. 421, 479.

— Ibn Yáhýa Al-leýchí, ii. 123.

— Ibnu-l-lebbánah (Abú Bekr), Wizir and poet, i. 73, 379, ii. 250.

Ishbán (Hispan), fabulous King of Spain, i. 24, 269.

Ishbán (Ispahán), history of, by whom written, i. 178.

'Ish'ák, the Muwallad, death of, ii. 456.

— Al-mausili, musician, i. 411, ii. 117.

— Ibn Al-mundhir, Wizir and general of Al-hakem I. of Cordova, ii. 106.

— Ibn 'Attáf Al-lickayli, rebellion of, ii. 444.

— Ibn 'Isla, ii. 51.

— Ibn Isma'il Al-mundólí, poet, ii. 445.

— Ibn Marár Ash-sheybání (Abú 'Amru), i. 422.

— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Ghániyyah, ii. App. lxiii; becomes King of Mallorca, ib.

— Ibn Salámah Ibn 'Is'hák Al-leýchí, his history of Raya or Malaga, i. 186, 463.

'Ishår, mother of 'Abdullah, Sultán of Cordova, i. 132.

Ishbáin, son of Titus, gives his name to Spain (Ishbáinjah), i. 24; takes Italica by storm, ib.; plunders Jerusalem, ib.; has a vision, 25; takes possession of Solomon's table, ib. and 46.

Ishbíliah (Seville), city, described, i. 55, 56, 363; taken by 'Abdu-l-azíz Ibn Músá, 285; by the Almoravides, ii. 298; by the Almohades, App. 1; by Ibn Húd, 328, App. lxxix; by Ibnu-l-ahmar, 343, App. lxxix; by Fernando III. of Castile, App. lxxx.

Ishbómáh. See Lishbúnah.

Ishkhandar (Alexander the Great), visits Spain, i. 19; opens a canal between Africa and Spain, 20; erects a bridge over the Straits, 27; builds the city of Saragossa, 64; erects towers in the Canary Islands, 72.

Istlíin, the Almohade, ii. App. li; is executed by the command of 'Abdu-l-múmen, liii.
INDEX.

Isma'il, surnamed Sahibu-l-jezirah, or the Lord of Algesiras, ii. 352.
——, son of Yusuf I. of Granada, ii. 357.
—— (Abú-l-walid), King of Granada, fifth of the Bení Nasr, reign of, ii. 348, 350.
—— II. (Abú-l-walid), King of Granada, ninth of the Bení Nasr, proclamation of, ii. 357; dethronement and death, 360.
—— Ibn 'Abbád (Abú-l-kásim), makes war against Idrís I. of Malaga, ii. 245; is defeated and put to death, ib. and 249.
—— Ibn Abán Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azíz Ibn Merwán, one of the Bení Umeyyah, ii. 61.
—— Ibn 'Abdi-l-kerfm Ibn 'Othman, settler of the house of Umeyyah, ii. 77.
—— Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, Mayor of Al-mus'hafi, a grammarian, of Tarragona, ib. and 372.
—— Ibn 'Abdi-l-'aziz Ibn Merwan, one of the Bení Umeyyah, ii. 61.
—— Ibn 'Abdi-l-kásim Ibn Al-'Adl, or 'Abdi-l-kásim Ibn Al-málik Ibn Sa'id, poet, i. 490.
—— Ibn Alifar or Alfar, a descendant from Wittiza, ii. 415.
—— Ibn 'Othmán, i. App. lxxviii.
—— Ibn 'Othmán Al-mus'hafi, Wizir of Al-hakem II. of Cordova, i. 190, 212, 468, ii. 156, 165; is appointed Hájib to Hishám II., 158; quarrels with Al-mansúr, 181; is deprived of his office and thrown into prison, 183.
—— Ibn Alu-l-bashitar, i. App. lxxvi.
—— Ibn Zaryáb, ii. 118.
—— Jakmak, college of, at Damascas, i. Pref. xxxii, 306.
—— Jalalkah (Gallaici), name given by the Arabs to the inhabitants of Asturias and Galicia, i. 27, 372, 544; account of the, 75.
—— Jalikiyah (Galicia), invaded by Músá Ibn Nosseyr, i. 291; by 'Abdu-r-ráhmán II., ii. 113; by 'Abdu-r-ráhmán III., 134, 137; by Al-mánsúr, 193; by his son 'Abdi-l-malik, 222.
—— Jámi, poet, his life of the Mohammedan Súfis, i. 406.
—— Jámi' Al-ábdís, a mosque in Seville, ii. 523.
—— Al-karawiyn (mosque of the people of Cairwán), at Fez, ii. 222.
—— Janda, a lake near Medina-Sidonia, i. 526.
—— Jauhar, a geographical treatise, quotations from, i. 71, 78, 81, 393.
—— Jawf, conjectural meaning of the word, i. 322, 495.
—— Jauhar, general of the Fâtimites or 'OBydites of Africa, ii. 167.
—— Ja'tínah or Jo'unah Ibnu-s-samah (Abú-l-ájrab) Al-kalabí, i. 189, 466.
—— Jayme I. of Aragon, takes Mallorca, ii. 331; Valencia, App. lxxvii; Murcia, lxxviii.
—— Jayyen or Jeyyán (Jaen), city, described, i. 53; also called Jayyenu-l-harîr (Jaen of the silk), owing to its rearing of silk-worms, and Kennesrein, i. 362.
—— Jazi Ibn 'Abdi-l-azíz, of the house of Umeyyah, ii. 77.
—— Jazúliyyah, a grammatical work written by Jazúlf or Al-jazúli, i. 197, 480.
INDEX.

Jebal Al-aghar (the mountain of the cave), now Cape Trafalgar, i. 22, 320.
— Al-aghaz, i. 320.
— Al-az, i. 320.
— Al-bort (the Pyrenees), i. 74, 317, ii. 114.
— 'A'mir, a mountain so called, in the territory of Cordova, i. 345.
— Ash-sherrát, chain of mountains traversing Spain from north to south, i. 322.
— Balanca, ii. 391.
— Beránis, mountain, ii. 456.
— fârōh (Gibralfaró), castle of, in Malaga, ii. 381.
— Ibn Hafsaín, a district near Cordova, ii. 494.
— Kantish (Javalquinto), a mountain near Cordova, battle fought at, ii. 227, App. ix.
— Músa, or mountain of Moses, between Tangiers and Ceuta, i. 284, 299, 536.
— 'Oyún (Gibraleon), town, ii. 448.
— Sholayr (the Sierra Nevada), i. 44, 355, ii. 387.
— Suleymán (la cuesta de Zulema), now Alcalá de Henares, i. 533, ii. 524, App. lxvi.
— Târik (the mountain of Târik), now Gibraltar, described, i. 60; called also Jebalu-1-fatah (the mountain of the entrance or victory), App. xlvii, ii. 334; its castle built by 'Abdu-l-múmen, 314; repaired by Abú-l-hasan Al-merínī, 355; taken by the Christians, 348; recovered by Mohammed IV. of Granada, 353.
Jebalu-1-arīs (the mountain of the bride), near Cordova, i. 233.
— L-warad (the mountain of the rose trees), near Cordova, i. 41; why so called, 344.
— r-rahmah, mountains near Seville, i. 58, 364.
— t-tafal, mountain so called in the neighbourhood of Toledo, i. 91.
Jebel Ibn Hasana, i. 283, App. xlix.
Jehwar Ibn Mohammed Ibn Jehwar (Abú-l-hazm), Wizir of Hishám II. of Cordova, i. 245, 507; assumes the supreme command, ii. 244, 249.
— Ibn Yásuf Ibn Bokht, Wizir, ii. 68.
Jelk or Ailek, name of a river (or spring) close to Saragossa, probably the Gállego, i. 65, 372.
Jellek, a place in Syria, i. 372.
Jelmániyyah (Jelmania or Germania), town, taken by Alfonso Enriquez, ii. 522, App. lviii.
Jendu-bádastar, the beaver, found in Spain, i. 92, 391, 392.

Jeníd Ibn Wahb Al-karmúní, rising of, ii. 448, 449.
Jennatu-l-‘arif (Generalife), a royal villa near Granada, ii. 360, 538.
Jerbah, island, now Los Gelves, i. App. xxxvii.
Jerejori (Gregorius), Greek governor of Mauritania, killed by 'Abdullah Ibn Sa'd, i. 326.
Jerír Ibn 'Attiyyah (Abú Hazrah) At-temímí, poet, i. 189, 466.
Jeríz, name given by the Arabs to all the kings of Sicily, i. 27, 325.
Jerundah (Gerona), in Catalonia, the territory of, invaded, ii. 99; the city taken by the Franks, 426; retaken by Al-hakem I. of Cordova, 427; territory of, invaded by 'Abdu-l-kerím, 114, 425.
Jerúr Al-hashemi, ii. 297.
Jesámu-d-daulah. See Ábdu-l-málik Ibn Razún.
Jews, invite the Arabs to Spain, and make common cause with them, i. 280, 282, 531; colours worn by the, 116.
Jezirah As-sabá’ (the island of the lions), on the Guadalquivir, i. 364.
— Kádis (the island of Cadiz). See Kádis.
— Shukar (the island on the Xucar), now Alcira, i. 68, 376.
— Taríf (the island of Taríf), now Tarifa, i. 19, 60; why so called, 318, 517, 518; battle of, 224, ii. 356.
Jezírat An-nisá (the island of the women), i. 317.
Jezíratu-l-khadhrá (the green island), now Algeciras, town, described, i. 19, 317, 537; kingdom of, by whom founded, ii. 247; the town taken by the Christians, 355.
Jilbáb, ii. 415.
Jilián, now Villalba, a village in the territory of Seville, i. 361.
Jizzeh, a district of Egypt, i. 424.
Jodarán Ibn 'Amru Al-madh'híjí, ii. 66, 93.
Jorairata, town, ii. 402.
Jorj, sons of, their revolt, ii. 445.
Jorje Ibn Mikhayil, a Sicilian admiral, i. App. xxxvii.
Jozaymah, tribe of, ii. 402.
Juan el Tuerto, Infante of Castile, is killed in battle, ii. 536.
Jubaláh Ibn Al-ayham Al-ghéssání, ii. 332.
Júdhar or Jaudhar, the Sclavonian, chief eunuch of Al-hakem I. and of his son Hishám II., ii. 175, 177.
Julian. See Ilyán.
Julina, town, ii. 402.
INDEX.

Julius Kaysar or Heshar (Cesar), King of the Romans, founds the city of Seville, i. 55; cuts roads through Spain, 78, 381.

Jund, a territorial division, why so called, ii. 423.

Kábis, a town of Eastern Africa, i. App. xxxvi.

Kabra (Cabra), city, i. 42, 80, 205, 382, 485; taken by Mohammed III. of Granada, ii. 205.

Kabtál, island of, now "Isla Menor," on the Guadalquivir, i. 57; also called Capitel and Capiel, 363.

Kabtalán (Catalonians), i. 379.

Kabtaur, a corruption of Cutap Tauri, now "Isla Mayor," on the Guadalquivir, i. 363.

Kabtiel Tudmir (the capitol of Theodomir), a seaport town on the coast of Murcia, i. 364.

Kádhi-i-jam'ah, meaning of the words, i. 508.

——— J-jund, meaning of the words, ii. 423.

Kádî, office of the, its duties and prerogatives, i. 104.

Kádî-i-kodâ, chief justice, duties of the, i. 104.

Kádis (Cadiz), description of, i. 71; tower, by whom built, 78; destroyed by 'Ali Ibn Maymûn, 72, 79, 382; aqueduct, 77, 383; the city taken by the Northmen, ii. 454.

Kafassah, city, taken by the Almohades, ii. App. lxi.

Káfir, slave of Sâ'id, the poet, ii. 206.

Káhinah, the sorceress, Queen of the Berbers, revolts against the Arabs, i. 540, App. liv.

Kahtaz, mother of Mohammed I. of Cordova, ii. 128.

Kahttán, a family of Arabs, settle in Spain, ii. 24.

Kakam, a kind of vessel used by the Chinese, i. 491.

Kal'ah Hariz (Castro Xeriz?), a town of Estremadura, i. 126.

—— Hazm, name of a castle in the province of Jaen, inhabited by the Beni Hazm, ii. 52.

—— Himyar, castle in the territory of Lerida, ii. App. xlviii.

—— Khaülán, castle near Algesiras, i. 538.

—— Khayrán (the castle of Khayrán), or citadel of Almeria, why so called, i. 50.

—— Rabah (Calatrava), called also Medinatu-l-beyyâdî (the white city), i. 46, 65, 125; by whom built, 415, ii. 188; besieged by Alfonso III. of Castile, App. lxxviii.

—— Yahssob (the castle of Yahssob), now "Alcalá la Real," formerly called "Alcalá de Abenzayde," i. 309, ii. 306.

Kalass, meaning of the word, i. 213, 491.

Kal'at An-nosor, battle of, lost by Al-mansûr, ii. 197.

Kal'at Ash'ath, castle, ii. 455.

——— Aurâd, castle, i. 80, 382.

——— Ayúb (the castle of Ayúb), now Calatayud in Aragon, i. 65; by whom built, 373.

Kaldah, Queen of France, sends an embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 465.

Kaldoh (Charles le Simple) sends ambassadors to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 139.

Kalherah, a town of Navarre, taken by Ghâlib, ii. 159.

Káli Kali, a town of Diýár Bekr, ii. 464.

Kalsanah, town near Xerez, ii. 454.

Kalsearah, town, ii. 538.

Kal’u Jarah, place so called near Melilla in Africa, ii. 501.

Kámirah, town, ii. 455.

Kámun, chief of the Berber tribe of Hawaráh, i. App. lx.

Kanbâniyyah (the Campana of Cordova), i. 41, 344, ii. 158, 469.

Kandar, a beaver, i. 392.

Kannérâh, Kanirah or Kathirâh, a musical instrument used in Seville, i. 59, 366.

Kantarah Ass-seyf (Alcantara), town, ii. App. lx.

Kántiriah, a quarter of the city of Cordova, ii. 473.

Kânnún, or dulcimer, instrument made at Seville, i. 59, 365.

Karâkir, vessels used by the Northmen, description of the, i. 79, 382.

Karamús al-ansarání, the fig of the Christians, or prickly pear, i. 364.

Kariat Al-leyl, a place near Guadix, ii. 514.

——— Khazrêj, town, ii. 342.


——— Nâsherah, now Nixar, on the coast of Granada, i. 90, 390.

Kariatu-l-'otashá, town near Granada, ii. 349.

Karihah Ibn 'Othmân Ibn Kâldun, rebel, i. 312.

Karkabûliyâh, castle of, besieged and taken by 'Abdullah, Sultân of Cordova, ii. 443, 453.

Karkar, battle of, ii. 439.

—— or Karki, district of, ii. 455.

Karkashúnah (Carcassonne), i. 289; spoils found at, 290.

Karki. See Karkar.

Karnâtah (Carmona), city, taken by Târik, i. 275.

Karnâttah, a town of Africa, i. 347. See also Ghar-nattah.

Károloh (Charlemagne), i. 290; invades Spain, ii.
INDEX.

85; solicits an alliance with 'Abdu-r-rahmán, ib.

Kartajénah (Cartagena), city, described, i. 69; confounded by some Arabian geographers with Cartaghe, 377.

Kartásh, a district and town close to Cordova, i. 89, 214, 389, 491, ii. 452.

Kartttás or Kirttá, a history of Africa, wrongly attributed to 'Abdu-l-halim of Granada, i. Pref. xi; account of, ii. 516.

Kásereh (Cañeros), town, taken by Alfonso Enriquez, ii. 318, 522.

Kasharah (Casares), town, besieged by Mohammed IV. of Granada, ii. 354.

Kashtélah (Castella or Castile), called "the land of the castles" by the Arabs, i. 19, 316, ii. 31; also the name of a town taken by Fruela, ii. 85.


Kasílah Ibn Lahdham, a Berber chief, i. App. Ixiii.

Kásim, cousin of Al-hakem I. of Cordova, forms a conspiracy to dethrone him, ii. 427.

—— Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhéd Al-ajélí, poet, ii. 445.

—— Ibn 'Abbúd Ar-riyáhí, i. 212, 490.

—— Ibn Asbagh Ibn Yúsuf (Abú Mohammed), a native of Baena, poet and historian, his work on sacred traditions, i. 181, 186, 456, 463; notice of, i. 149, 171.

—— Ibn Feyrroh Ibn Khalíf Ibn Ahmed Ar-ro'ayní (Abú-l-kásím and Abú Mohammed), his works on the manner of reading the Korâén, i. 68.

—— Ibn Kúsim (Abú 'Abdillah), Lord of Alpont or Alpunte, i. 172, ii. 400.

—— Ibn Mohammed, his works on sacred traditions, i. 183, 459.

—— Ibn Mohammed Al-jayyéní, ii. 190.

—— Ibn Mutreñ Ibn Dhí-n-nún, general of Al-hakem II. of Cordova, makes an incursion into Alaba, ii. 159.


—— Ibn Ziryáb, ii. 432.

Kásr 'Abdi-l-kerim, a sea-port, on the western coast of Africa, ii. 310.

—— Abi Dánis, castle, ii. 320.

—— Bineyrah (Pineira?), town, ii. 455.

—— Masmúdah (Alcasar), i. 19; also called Kașr-l-majúz (the palace of the crossing), 318; place of embarkation of the Almohades, ib.

—— Seyd, or the palace of the Lord, a royal villa in the outskirts of Granada, ii. 348.

Kaşr-l-bádiyí, a palace in Cordova, i. 211.

Kaşr-l-fárisí, a palace in Cordova, i. 212; by whom built, 490.

—— L-háyir, a palace in Cordova, i. 211, 489.

—— L-kholáfas (the house of the Khalîfs), a palace in Cordova, i. 236.

—— L-majúz. See Kaşr Masmúdah.

—— L-ma'shúk, a palace in Cordova, i. 212, 490.

—— L-mubárûk, a palace in Cordova, i. 211.

—— r-ruá dah (the palace of the gardens or cemetery), in Cordova, i. 211.

—— r-rustak, a palace in Cordova, i. 211.

—— s-sorír (the abode of joy), palace so called in Cordova, i. 211; also one in Saragossa, ii. 256.

—— t-táj, a palace in Cordova, i. 211.

Kastalúnah (Cazlona), in Andalusia, i. 439.

Kastilah, name given by the Arabs to Elvira, ii. 452.

Kastiliiyah, a province of Africa, i. 383.

Káthirah. See Kannéráh.

Káthibu-dh-dhimám, the same as Káthibu-l-jibádheh, q. v.

—— L-jibádheh, civil officer appointed to watch over Jews and Christians, i. 103, 398.

—— r-rasáyil, secretary charged with the foreign correspondence, duties of the, i. 103.

Kattan, son of 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan, rises to revenge his father's death, ii. 42.

Kauthar, Hájib of Al-mansúr, ii. App. xxiii.

Káwwal. See Akwál.

Káyidu-l-asátíl (commander of the fleet), duties and prerogatives of the, i. 108, 399, App. xxxiii.

Kays, son of Yúsuf I. of Granada, ii. 357; is assassinated, 360.

—— Ibn 'A'ssim, i. 334.

—— 'Aylan, tribe of, settle in Spain, ii. 22.

—— Ibn Sa'd Ibn Obádah, ii. 10.

Kaysar, the eunuch, general of Al-muḥdi, Sultán of Cordova, is defeated and killed by the Berbers, ii. 491.

Káyasúm, a district of Arabia, i. 330.

Keláb, tribe of, where established, ii. 23.

Kelb, tribe of, ii. 29.

Kenánah, tribe of, settle in Spain, ii. 21.

Kenáisatu-l-asrâf (the church of the prisoners), why so called, i. 280.

—— L-haráki (the church of the burning), in Cordova, why so called, i. 279.

Kennesrin, one of the jumâ or military divisions of Syria, i. 88, 423; also a name given by the Arabs to the city of Jaen, 356, 362.
Kerbehh, a musical instrument manufactured at Seville, i. 59, 365.

Kezúlah, tribe, ii. App. lxix.

Khalaf. See Khalif.

Khalanj or Khulanj (galangha), an odoriferous root, where found, i. 388.

Kháled, a mauli of the Khalif 'Othmán, ii. 62, 69.

— Ibn Abbán, i. App. liii.

— Ibn Ja'far Ibn Keláb or Al-kelábí, i. 331.

— Ibn 'Othmán Ibn Khalídún, is taken prisoner, ii. 450; put to death, ib.

— Ibnu-l-walid, i. 217, 493.

— Ibnu-r-riyán, i. App. lxxviii; ii. App. vi.

— Ibn Zeyd, ii. 70.

Khalif or Khalaf Ibn 'Abbús As-zahrówí (Abú-l-kásim), physician, i. 187, 464; account of his life and writings, ib. and ii. 149.

— Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Busháwíd (Abú-l-kásim), historian, i. 31, 193, 327; his biographical dictionary of illustrious men, 327; his other works, 193, 472, 473; extracts from the former, 31, 209, 224.

Khalí. ‘See Al-khalí’.


— Ibn Ibeh As-safádí (Saláhu-d-dín), historian, his supplement to the biographical dictionary by Ibn Khallekán, i. Pref. xxiv, 339, 501.

— Ibn Is'hák, i. 188, 465.

— Ibn Muhiúlív, revolt of, ii. 444.

Khanboshá, plant, verses on the, ii. 205.

Khandak Al-jennát, spot called, ii. 453.

Kharáfa, meaning of the word, i. 363.

Khartíjáh Ibn Khódáfah Al'-abdúwí, i. 176.

Kháskhás, town of, ii. 454.

Khaltúm, tribe of, ii. 28.

Khalúán, tribe of, where established, ii. 27.

— or Khulán Al-yahídí, a Berber chief, mistaken for Julian, i. 538; revolt of, ii. 410.

Khiyr Ibn Shákir, chief of the Muwallades, account of, ii. 443, 452.

Khiyrán or Khéyrán Al-'a'mirí, the Sclavonian, i. 35, 50; becomes King of Almeria, 357, 421; proclaims Al-murtadhi of the house of Umeyyáh, ii. 224; whom he afterwards betrays, 235, 257.

Khzázaf, mother of Al-hakem I. of Cordova, ii. 106.

Khzarj, descendants of, where to be found, i. 178, ii. 25.

Kheyr Ibn Khalífah. See Mohammed Ibn Kheyr.
Ku’dyat Abi ’Obeydah or ’Abdah (the hillock of Abú ’Obeydah), spot so called in Cordova, i. 208, 488, 493.

——— Az-zeytún, a place near Seville, ii. 449.

——— Ibn Mardanish, spot so called in Granada, ii. 317.

Kúfah, history of, by whom written, i. 177.

Kúrínah (Coria), town, ii. 158, 194.

Kusaylah, a Berber chief, defeated and slain, i. App. lxiii.

Kúss, i. 424, App. xv.

Kutandah (Cutanda), town, battle of, ii. 304.

Lakhm, tribe of, i. 294, 297, ii. 27.

Lakúnesh, a castle in the province of Jaen, ii. 443.

Lamattı, leather shields used by the Africans, i. 408.

Lamt, quadruped found in the African desert, i. 408.

Lamtah, an African tribe, i. 408.

Language, cultivation of, among the Moslems of Spain, i. 142; works on the, 184, 196.

Lara (Don Manrique de), Count, taken prisoner by Yuhya Ibn Gháníyyah, ii. App. iii.

Las Navas. See Al-’akáb.

Latham, a triangular piece of cloth wherewith the Sonhújah hide the lower part of their faces, i. 386.


Lee, Dr. John, his valuable collection of Oriental MSS., i. Pref. xix.

Lekant (Alicante), town, i. 70, ii. App. lxxviii.

Lembke, Dr. Frederic William, author of a history of Spain, i. Pref. xiii.

Leo, Emperor of Constantinople, sends presents to An-nássir of Cordova, i. 236.

———, St., legend of, i. 323.

Leon. See Liún.

Léridah (Lerida), a city in Catalonia, i. 65, 373; taken, ii. 451.

Leslah, a town in Andalusia, ii. 432.

Liblah, a corruption from Ilipa, now Niebla, i. 62; taken by ’Abdu-l-ażiz Ibn Músá, 285.

Library, founded by Al-hakem II. of Cordova, i. 139; account of, App. x; ii. 169.

Lisánú-d-din (tongue of religion), surname of Mohammed Ibn ’Abdillah Ibn-u-l-khättib, q. v.

Lishbúnah (Lisbon), described, i. 61; plundered by the Northmen, ii. 116, 432; taken by Alfonso Enríquez, 318.

Literature, cultivation of, in Spain, i. 139—167; account of, 168—199.

Liún, called also Liúnish (Leon), city, i. 75; taken by ’Abdu-r-rahmán II., ii. 114; destroyed by Al-mansúr, 189; razed to the ground by ’Abdu-l-malek, 222.

Lob Ibn Maymún, admiral of the Almoravides, ii. App. lxiiii.

——— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Lob (Lope), governor of Toledo, ii. 440, 456.

——— Ibn Músá At-tojibi, ii. 436.

Lokaym, son of Lokmán, i. 334.

Lópe. See Lob Ibn Mohammed.

Lópera, battle of, ii. 541.

Loreah (Lorca), i. 70; its mines of lapis-lazuli, ib.

Loshah or Lúshah (Loxa), a town of the province of Granada, i. 45, 353, ii. 349; besieged by Ferdinand, ii. 372; taken, 577.

Ludherik or Rudherik (Rodrigo). See Roderic.

——— Ibn Beláshik (Rodrigo Velasquez), Count of Castile, embassy of, to ’Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, i. 166.

Ludhún (Lyons), taken by the Arabs, i. 288.

Ludwik (Louis le Débonnaire), invades Aragon, ii. 104; is defeated, 427.

Lukoh (Lugo), i. 291; taken by Fruela, ii. 85.

Luna, Miguel de, fabulous history of Mohammedan Spain written by, i. Pref. viii; his numerous blunders, 348.

Luzéná. See Al-yásenah.

Ma’áfer, tribe of, ii. 27.

Ma’d Ibn Adh-dháher (Abú Temím Al-mustanserbillah), eighth of the ’Obeydites, i. 150, 430.

Mad’hij, a district and family of Arabia, ii. 26.

Maghílah, a place in Africa, ii. 61, 75.

Maghrébu-l-aksá (extreme west), a province of Africa, i. 2.

———-l-aussatt (middle or central Maghreb), in Africa, i. 86.

Mahdí. See Al-mahdí.

Mahdíyyah or Mehdíyyah, a city of Eastern Africa, taken by the Sicilians, i. App. xxxvi, livi; recovered by ’Abdu-l-múmen, ii. 314, 520.

Mahlah, a place in Egypt, i. 424.

Mahleb, odoriferous root called, where found, i. 88.

Mahmúd Ibn ’Abdi-l-jabbár Al-márídí, rebellion of, ii. 436.

Májikus (Majikis or Majikan), King of Ceuta, i. 541.

Májíshah, a town of Africa, i. 541.

Majma’u-l-bahreyn (the meeting of the two seas) or the Straits of Gibraltar, i. 320, 537.
INDEX.

Majoritt (Mayoritum), now Madrid, besieged, ii. App. lxvi.

Majás (the Northmen or Scandinavians), i. 23; called Almajizes, Almorzudes, and Almonides by the Spanish writers, i. 323; meaning of the word, ib.; their maritime expeditions, 79; description of their vessels, ib.; their invasions periodical, 382; their landing on the coast of Spain, ii. 116, 127, 159; their ravages in Andalusia, 431, and on the eastern coast of Spain, 435.

Makám, a town close to Toledo, i. 390.

Makab 'Amir (the cemetery of 'A'mir), in Cordova, i. 207.

Mákesen, the Zeyrite, ii. 248.

Makhzum, tribe of, ii. 21.

Makkarah or Makrah, a town in Africa Proper, i. 301, 302.

Makrah, meaning of the word, in Berber, i. 302.

— yikoksh, meaning of, in Berber, i. 302.

Makunshah, country of, invaded by the Arabs under Hodhuyfah, ii. 36, 409.

Malakah (Malaga), city, called also Raya, description of, i. 48—50; history of, by whom written, 186, 462; kingdom of, ii. 245; the city taken by Ferdinand, 380.

Malakún (Malagon), town, ii. 441.

Malahhah, a town in the district of Jacn, ii. 443.


Málík Fakhru-d-daulah, son of Al-mu'tamed, is killed during the siege of Seville, ii. 254, 298.

— Ibn 'Ali, his work on the sect of Malík Ibn Ans, i. 180.

— Ibn Ans, founder of the sect of the Málíkitas, professed in Spain and Africa, i. 113, 403; by whom introduced, 343, ii. 100, 123.

— Ibn Wahib (Abú 'Abdillah), i. App. xiii.

Mallorca. See Mayúrkah.

Malta, landing of the Arabs at, i. App. xxxvi.

Ma'n Ibn Samádeh Abú-l-abwass Dhú-l-wizdrateyn, King of Almeria, ii. 257.

Manefl Ibn Manefl (Abú-l-faraj), ii. 190.

Máñi, founder of the sect of the Manichaéans, i. 419.

Mansúr, the eunuch, Hájib of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 91.

—, the Jew, musician of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. of Cordova, ii. 117.

— Ibn Khozamah or Abí Khozaymah, ii. 2, 11, 398.

Manuel (Don Juan), what he says about Cordova, i. 495.

Manzal Hání, place so called in the province of Cordova, ii. 489.

Marbella, town, ii. 361, 539.

Marbarrítah (Margarita), castle of, ii. 444.

Máridah or Méridah (Merida), city of, described, i. 61, 368; destroyed by 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. of Cordova, and by his son Mohammed I., ii. 127; frequent rebellions of the people of, 436.

Marjánah, mother of Al-hakem II. of Cordova, ii. 155.

Markッド Ibnl-'arabí, spot so called at Damascus, i. Pref. xvii.


Marocco. See Morrékos.

Marsénah (Marchena), town, ii. 306.

Martosh (Martos), battle of, ii. 346; the town taken by Isma'il I. of Granada, 352.

Ma'rúf, meaning of the word, ii. 432.

Marzáyah, a Berber tribe, defeated by Merwán Ibn Músá, i. App. lxviii.

Masdeu, his ' Historia Critica de España,' i. Pref. ix.

Mas'úd Ibn Khiyár, ii. App. lxxv.

Masúfah, a Berber tribe, making part of the Senhájah, i. 386.

Mataménos, town taken by the Christians, ii. 350.

Matalanata, hamlet, ii. 457.

Mateyta (Matet), town, i. 68.

Mattakahsáres, a town near Jaen, i. 424.

Mattrúh, son of Sa'úd Ibn Mustanah, joins his father in his rebellion, ii. 443.

Máuli, meanings of the word, i. 519.

Maunul, a Wizír of Bádis Ibn Hábís, King of Granada, i. 352; also name of a cypress plantation in the outskirts of that city, 45.

Maussil (Mossul), history of, i. 178.

Maya or Moya, also called Amaya, town, taken by Tárik, i. 533, 536.

Mayimán, his adventure with Artábas, son of Wittiza, ii. 52.

—, the Almoravide, ii. 517.

— Al-lamúní, rising of, at Granada, ii. 310, 313, App. liv.

Mayúrkah, the Shiite, governor of Fez, for the Fátimítes, ii. 144.

Mayúrkah (Mallorca), island of, described, i. 72; invaded by 'Abdullah, son of Músá Ibn Nosseyr,
INDEX.

App. lxviii; formed into a kingdom by Mujáhid, the freedman of Al-mansúr, ii. 257; overran by the Barcelonaee, App. lviii; reduced by the Almohades, lxvii; taken by Jayme I. of Aragon, 329; history of the island, by whom written, 526.

Mazdak, founder of a sect, ii. 419.

Medellin, district of, ii. 449.

Medina-Sidonia, the ancient Assido, i. 525; taken by Tárik, 275; battle of, 525.

Medinat Al-faraj. See Wáda-l-hajarárah.

— Bení Selim, a town near Xerez, ii. 442.

— En-nahr, now Alcalá de Henares, i. 534.

— Ghalláiyah or the city of Galicia, name given by the Arabs to Zamora, ii. 463, 480.

— Sélím (Medinaceli), in Castile, i. 65, 130, 335; tomb of Al-mansúr in, 34, 130, ii. 158.

Medinatu-l-atíkah (the old city), one of the suburbs of Cordova, i. 206.

—l-beydáh. See Kal'ah Rabáh.

—l-máyádiah (the city of the table), why so called, i. 282; where situated, 534.

—t-tárab (the city of mirth), name given by the Arabs to Valencia, i. 66.

—z-zaráhirah, also called Bális, a fortress and palace on the Guadalquivir, built by Al-mansúr, i. 13, 200, 204, 485, ii. 186, 187; description of, i. 242; probable site, ii. 485; destruction of, by the Berbers, 228, 488.

—z-zahrá, a city and palace in the outskirts of Cordova, i. 13, 200, 204, 485; by whom built, 232, ii. 271; description of, i. 232—239, ii. 467; destroyed by the Berbers, 228.

Mejles Adh-dhahab (the gilded hall), a palace in Saragossa, ii. 256.

—Al-kámil, pavilion built by 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. in Cordova, ii. 467.

—Al-munífí, ii. 467.

—Al-múnís, hall so called in the palace of Az-zahrá, i. 236.

—Az-záhir, ii. 467.

Mekkí Ibn Abí Tálib [Hamúsh] Al-kortóbí Al-kaysí (Abú Mohammed), theologian, works written by, i. 191, 469.

Meknásat Az-zaytún (now Mequinez), a town of Africa, ii. 75.

Meliana, a town of Africa, i. 373.

Melilah (Melilla), a town of Africa, ii. 75.

Menár-Jord, a town of Diyar-Bekr, ii. 464.

Menorah (Minorca), island of, i. 21; described, 73; taken by the Aragonese, ii. 332.

Merj-Rákht, battle of, i. App. lxxxix.

Merju-l-khorr (the meadow of the murmuring waters), near Cordova, i. 212, 490.

—n-nádhir (the golden meadow), pleasure ground in the outskirts of Cordova, i. 212, 490.

—r-rokkád, spot near Granada, ii. 315.

Mersa Aš-shajrah, a sea-port on the coast of Malaga, ii. 455.

Mersu-l-májís, a sea-port of Africa, i. 80.

Mertila, the ancient Myrtilis, now Mertola, in Portugal, i. 62.

Merwán, lieutenant of Sa'id Al-yahsobi, ii. 422.

—, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 141.

—, son of Músá Ibn Nosseyr, i. 283, App. lxviii, lxxii; invades Súss-al-aksséa, lxviii.


—Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Abdil-l-'azíz, Sultán of Valencia, dethroned, i. 66, 373.

—Ibn 'Abdíl-malek Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Umeyyah, execution of, ii. 455.

—Ibn 'Abdíl-r-rahmán, poet, ii. 190.

—Ibn Mohammed Al-ja'dí, last Khalif of the house of Umeyyah in the East, ii. 58; is put to death, 75.

—Ibn Zohr Al-ayádí, i. 336.

Mesa, town of, i. 535.

Meşjd Mesrúr, name of a suburb in Cordova, i. 206.

—Umm-Salmah or Moslemah, a suburb of Cordova, i. 206.

Mesjúd-l-umúwí (the mosque of the Bení Umeyyah), in Damascus, i. 7; by whom built, 305.

—l-kaftí (the mosque of the cave), a suburb of Cordova, i. 206.

—r-raudhah (the mosque of the garden), suburb so called in Cordova, i. 206.

—sh-shaka'i (the mosque of the misfortune), a suburb of Cordova, i. 206.

Mes'úd Ibn Másáí, ii. 363.

Mes'súdí. See 'Al Ibnu-l-huseyn.

Metaphysics, study of, in Spain, i. 142; works upon, 188.

Meysarah, surnamed Fata Abí Ayúb (the page of Abú Ayúb), defeats the rebels of Toledo, ii. 428.

—[or Meysar] Al-matghári, a Berber impostor, i. 541; rises against the Arabs, ii. 40, 411.

Midrakah, surname of 'Amru Ibn Elyás, ii. 22, 401.
INDEX.

Mijbar. See Mujabbir.
Miliânah. See Molîânah.
Mines, in Spain, i. 89, 491.
Minyat-Khassib, a town of Egypt, i. 424.
Mirtolah (Mertola), town, ii. App. xlix.
Mies (Egypt), name given by the Arabs to the province of Murcia, i. 356.
Mizmâr, a flute or psaltery, i. 366.
Moclin, castle of, taken by Ferdinand, ii. 378, 541.
Modâm, meaning of the word, i. 31, 327.
Modhar, a family of Arabs, i. 290; their feuds with the Yemenis, ii. 24, 74, 402, 421.
Modhzeli (Abû Mohammed), the Almoravide, takes Valencia, ii. 334.
Mohammed I. of Cordova, fifth of the Benî Umeeyah, i. 47, 132; defeats the Navarrese and puts their chief to death, ii. 114; history of his reign, 127.
I. of Granada. See Mohammed Ibn Yúsuf.
II. of Granada, second of the Benî Nasr, reign of, ii. 345.
IV. of Granada, fourth of the Benî Nasr, reign of, ii. 354; assassination, 355.
V. of Granada, surnamed Al-ghani-billah, eighth of the Benî Nasr, succeeds his father Yúsuf I., ii. 357; is dethroned by his brother Isma’il, ib.; escapes to Africa, 358; recovers his kingdom, 362.
Mohammed VI. of Granada, tenth of the Benî Nasr, visits Peter the Cruel in Seville, ii. 361; is put to death by his host, ib.
VII. of Granada, twelfth of the Benî Nasr, succeeds his father Yúsuf II., ii. 539.
VIII. of Granada, fourteenth of the Benî Nasr, surnamed Al-aysar, or the left-handed, ii. 370.
IX. of Granada, (Abû 'Abdillah) or Boabdil, twentieth of the Benî Nasr, rises against his father, ii. 373; is proclaimed at Granada, ib.; is taken prisoner by the Christians, 374; restored to his liberty, 376; and to his throne, 380; summoned to surrender his capital, 386; refuses, and is compelled to surrender, 387; crosses over to Africa, 390.
X. of Granada, twenty-first of the Benî Nasr, surnamed Az-zaghal, revolts against his brother, ii. 369; is proclaimed King of Granada, 374; is dethroned by his nephew Abû 'Abdillah, 380; surrendered to Ferdinand, 383; makes war against his nephew, 385; crosses over to Africa, 386.
XI., son of 'Abdullah, Sultan of Cordova, is appointed governor of Seville, ii. 450; is put to death by his brother Al-mutref, 460.
XII., son of Al-mugheyrah, of the family of Umeeyah, is appointed Hájib, ii. 488.
XIII., son of Is’hâk Ibn Ghâniyyah, King of Mallorca, ii. App. lxiii.
XIV. (Abû 'Abdillah) An-nâssir idinî-llah, fifth of the Almohades, loses the battle of Al-akâb, ii. 323, App. lxviii.
XV. Abû 'Abdillah Ibn Maýmûn, i. 71, ii. App. xlviii.
XVI. Abû Bekr Ibnu-l-hammad, his collection of the traditional sayings of Shâfi’, i. 183.
XVII. Abû-l-kâsim Ibn Hâni’ Al-azdî, poet, i. 177, 453.
XVIII. (Abû Yahya) At-tojibi, ii. 441.
XIX. Ad-demiri (Kemâlu-l-dîn), his zoological dictionary, i. Pref. xxvii; by whom abridged, ib.
XX. Al-assîf, ii. 10.
XXI. Al-hafsi (Abû 'Abdillah) Al-mustanser-billah, Sultan of Tunis, i. 405.
XXII. Al-hardhâni, ii. App. lxxv.
XXIII. Al-khoshânî. See Mohammed Ibn Háríth.

VOL. II.
Mohammed Al-maktil, son of 'Abdallah, Sultán of Cordova, is put to death by his brother Al-mutref, ii. 133.

— Ar-ro'ayni, i. 421.

— Ash-shaláhí, of Seville, his treatise on music, i. 365.

— Ash-sháfi'í, i. App. xxvi.

— Ash-sháhib (Sidi Al-háj), abridges the historical work of Shehábu-d-dín Al-fási, i. Pref. xxiv.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr Al-kasiniání, ii. 142; forms a conspiracy against 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., 143; is arrested and put to death, i. 466.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-bassír, ii. 190.

Ibn 'Abdillah Àbu Bekr Ibnu-l-arabí Al-ishbílí, i. 37; works written by, 192; account of his life, 471; death, ii. App. lii.

Ibn 'Abdillah Al-arabí Al-'okaylí (Abú 'Abdillah), ii. 543.

Ibn 'Abdillah Al-ashjá'í, governor of Spain under the Khalífs, ii. 23, 36.

Ibn 'Abdillah Al-bekrí Ar-ríyádí, rebellion of, ii. 441.

Ibn 'Abdillah Al-bírzálí, King of Carmona, attacked by Isma'il Ibn 'Abbád, ii. 249, 251; betrays Yahya Ibn Hammúd, 500.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakem Al-mísíri (Abú 'Abdillah), historian, i. 190, 313, 467.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn Zohr (Abú-l-'ala), i. 338.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Abd-í-n-nár (Abú 'Abdillah), ii. 539.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Àbu Bekr Ibnu-l-abbád Al-kodha'í Al-balénsí, historian, account of, ii. 528.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Abi 'Isa, the Idrísite, Kádí-l-kódá of Fez, visits Spain, i. 122, ii. 145; is killed in battle, i. 466.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Abí Yahya Ibnu-r-reminí (Abú 'Abdillah), governor of Almeria, ii. 336; procures the assassination of Ibn Húd, 337.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Al-ash'ath, his history of Seville, ii. 448 App. lx.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn 'Ayed (Abú 'Abdillah), ii. 11.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Battútah Al-láwáttí At-tâní (Abú 'Abdillah), a celebrated traveller, account of his original work, i. 348; quotations from, 43, 46, 50, 491, 494, 496; history of Morocco wrongly attributed to, 349.

Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Hasan, &c. Az-zubeydí (Abú Bekr), philologer and historian, works written by, i. 194, 474, ii. 171, 190; short account of his life, 478.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Masarrah (Abú 'Abdillah), i. 190, 469.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Moslemah Abú Bekr Ibn Al-aftas, surnamed Al-modháffer, second King of Badajoz of the dynasty of the Bení Al-aftas, i. 38, 61, 147, 369; historical cyclopædia written by, 425, ii. 257.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Sa'íd Ibnu-l-khattíb As-salmání, surnamed Lísínú-d-dín, Wízir of Mohammed V. of Granada, cited, i. 17, 19, ii. 357, 359; notice of, i. 306; works written by, 307 and 405; lamentable fate of, ii. 363.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Yahya Al-leythí, theologian, ii. 123.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Yezígh, governor of Carmona, ii. 450.

Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Zohr (Abú-l-'ala), physician, i. 336—338.

Ibn 'Abd-í-kádír Ibn Mohammed Ad-díní Al-haneffí, his abridgment of the Hayátú-l-haywán. i. Pref. xxvi.


Ibn 'Abd-í-malek Ibn Aymén, theologian, i. 181, ii. 149, 468.

Ibn 'Abd-í-malek Al-'abdí, execution of, ii. 450.

Ibn 'Abd-í-malek Ibn Hajúr, ii. 190.

Ibn 'Abd-í-malek Ibn Mohammed Ibn Tofayl Al-káysí (Abú Bekr Al-hafíd), a celebrated physician, i. 336; frequently mistaken for his father, i. 34; his life translated from Ibn Abí Óssaybi'áh, App. vii; is appointed architect to the great mosque of Seville, ii. 523.


Ibn 'Abd-í-wálí Ar-ro'ayní, i. 421.

Ibn 'Abd-í-r-rahmán, of the house of Umeyyáh, ii. 499.

Ibn 'Abd-í-r-rahmán Abú Hámíd Al-andalusí, his work on geography, i. Pref. xxvi, 536.

Ibn 'Abd-í-r-rahmán Ibn 'Abd-í-l-'azíz
At-tojibi Al-ankar (Abú Yahya), rebellion of, at Saragossa, ii. 451.
Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Elyás, rebellion of, ii. 442.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Hání Al-azdí (Abú-l-kásim), poet, i. 177, 453, ii. 25.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Jorj, builds the castle of Morania, ii. 445.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Al-khozází, surnamed Sheikhu-l-islamí, rebellion of, ii. 441.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán At-tojibi, governor of Saragossa, ii. 440.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán Ibn Thaubán, ii. 9.


——— Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellám Al-khoshamí, ii. 170.

——— Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellám Ibn Kalmán, ii. 446.

——— Ibn 'Abdún, founder of Wahrán or Oran in Africa, i. 454.

——— Ibn 'Abdún Al-adawí Al-jebelí Al-'odhrí (Abú 'Abdillah), physician, i. 390, 454, ii. 170.

——— Ibn 'Abdún Al-kairwání (Abú-l-'abbás), his commentary on civil law, i. 178.

——— Ibn 'Abdús Ibn Masarráh, i. 190, 467.


——— Ibn Abí 'Amír Al-mansúr, Hájib of Hishám II. of Cordova, i. 34, 133, 141, 421, App. xl; his addition to the great mosque, 221—227; his origin and ancestors, ii. 178; his intrigues to seize the power, 181; usurpation, 187; campaigns, 188—197; death, 198; state of literature under his administration, 199—207; anecdotes respecting, 209—220.

——— [Ibn] Abí Bekr Ibn 'Omar Al-makhzümí, his commentary on the Khásrejíyyah, i. 404.

——— Ibn Abí-l-khissáil Al-gháfekí (Abú 'Abdillah) Dhu-l-wizdratayn, i. 38; his life and writings, 340, ii. 26.


——— Ibn Abí Nasr Fatúh or Fotúh Ibn 'Abdillah Al-hamaydí Al-azdí (Abú 'Abdillah), historian, i. Pref. xx, 192, 193, 470, 473; extracts from his history of Mohammedan Spain, ii. App. viii—xii.

Mohammed Ibn Abí Zeyd Ibn Túján, governor of Telemén, ii. App. lxxxiv.


——— Ibn Ahmed (Abú 'Abdillah Ibnu-l-beytartar), surnamed Dhiyáu-d-din and Jemálu-d-din, botanist, i. Pref. xxvii, 151, 431.


——— Ibn Ahmed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Al-kashtíf, poet, i. 459.


——— Ibn Ahmed Ibn Jobeyr Al-kenání (Abú-l-huseyn), ii. 22; notice of, 400.


——— Ibn Al-alehání (Abú 'Abdillah), ii. App. xii.

——— Ibn Al-hasan Al-korayshí, ii. 190.


——— Ibn 'Ala Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Al-hdíj or Ibnu-l-hdíjí, intrigues of, ii. 348; short account of his life, 535.


Mohammed Ibn 'Ali Ibn Hâni, poet, i. 453.

Ibn 'Ali Ibn Hûd, King of Murcia, ii. 530.

Ibn 'Ali Ibn Is'hâk, his description of Cordova, written in Spanish with the Arabic letters, i. 492.

Ibn 'Ali Ibn Isma'il Ash-shâshî Al-kaffâl, theologian, i. 466.


Ibn Al-kâsim, King of Algesiras, surnamed Al-mu’tassem-billah, i. 247, App. xviii.

Ibn Al-kâsim Al-merwâni, his conspiracy to dethrone Al-hâkem I. of Cordova, ii. 427.

Ibn 'Amîr [r. 'Omar] Al-maghrebi Ibnu-l-kârtiyâh, his grammatical work, i. 184; his account of the conquest of Spain by the Arabs, 512; extracts from, ib. and 514.

Ibn 'Ammâr (Abû Bekr Dhû-l-wîzaratîyân) Al-mahrî, ruler of Silves, verses written by, i. 38, 62, 131, 211; account of his life, 341, 370, ii. 29.

Ibn 'Askâlahâh or 'Askâlahâh, assassination of, ii. 225, 228.

Ibn 'A'ssim Al-îfâshîn, historian, his lives of the Spanish Kâtibs, i. 187, 464.

Ibn Aus Ibn Thâkib or Thàbit, ii. 2, 9.

Ibn Ayûb Ibn Ghâlib Al-ansârî, i. 474.

Ibn Bashîr or Bûshâyir, i. 107.

Ibn Dhanîn, general of 'Abdullâh, Sul-tân of Cordova, ii. 447.

Ibn Elias Al-mugheyli or Al-maghîlî, i. 533.

Ibn Faraj (Abû 'Abdillâh), ii. 538.

Ibn Fat'h-âlîh Al-bâyûlînî, his abridgment of Ibn Battûtah's travels, i. 348.

Ibn Foteys, theologian, ii. 178, 476.

Ibn Ghâlib, ii. 449, 450.

Ibn Hamdân (Abû 'Abdillâh), ii. 517.

Ibn Hârîth or Ibnu-l-hârîth Abû 'Abdillâh Al-khâshânî or Al-khoshânî, his history of the Kâdis of Cordova, i. Pref. xxii; ii. 149, 186, 418, 463.

Ibn Hasan At-tabî (Abû 'Abdillâh), poet, ii. 190.

Ibn Haukâl An-nâssîbî (Abû-l-kâsim), a celebrated geographer, i. Pref. xxv, 95; his account of Spain, ib. and 394, 400; his mistake respecting Cartagena, 377.

Mohammed Ibn Ibrâhîm, his historical cypocædia entitled Reyhân-u-lebâbî, i. Pref. xxiv; account of that work, 516; extract from it, ii. 405.

Ibn Ibrâhîm, &c., the Korâshite, poet, ii. 445.

Ibn Ibrâhîm (Abû 'Abdillâh), i. App. xix.

Ibn Ibrâhîm Al-watût Al-kotôbî (Je-mâlû-d-dîn), his geographical work, i. 349; cited, 56.

Ibn Ibrâhîm Al-yâkûzî, Al-yâkûrî, or Al-bâkûrî (Abû 'Abdillâh), ii. 63, 371.

Ibn Idris Al-ansârî, makes a descent on the coast of Sicily, i. App. Ixvii.

Ibn 'Isa, Kâdi-l-jâmâh, or supreme judge of Cordova, ii. 143.

Ibn 'Isa Ibn Lubâbah, i. 190.

Ibn 'Isa, the Idrisite, visits Spain, ii. 145.

Ibn Isma'il, Kâtib of Al-mansûr, anecdote preserved by, ii. 184.

Ibn Isma'il Al-bokhârî (Abû 'Abdillâh), traditionist, i. 189, 466, ii. 6, 397.

Ibn Isma'il Al-yâkûzî, Al-yâkûrî, or Al-bâkûrî (Abû 'Abdillâh), ii. 114; notice of, 404.

Ibn Isma'il Az-zubeydî, ii. 190.


Ibn Iyâş (Abû 'Abdillâh), geographer, i. Pref. xxvi.

Ibn Jehwar (Abû-l-walid), King of Cordova, ii. 250.

Ibn Khalf Ibn Sâf (Abû Bekr), grammarian, i. 480.

Ibn Kheyr (Abû Bekr Kheyr Ibn Kha-lîfah), bibliographical repertory composed by, i. Pref. xxviii; badly described by Asiri, 457.

Ibn Lob Ibn Mûsa Ibn Fortûn Al-kasâwî, account of, and his rebellion, ii. 440; his wars with the Christians, ib. and 453; takes Toledo, 455; is killed in battle, 456.

Ibn Malek Al-korâshî, ii. 454.

Ibn Ma'n Ibn Samâdeh (Abû Yahya Al-mu'tassem-billah), King of Almeria, i. 134, 312; anecdotes of, 136, 137; reign, ii. 257.

Ibn Marjâm Al-îbî, ii. 499.

Ibn Marsûk (Abû 'Abdi-r-rahmân), i. 301, 424.
Mohammed Ibn Mas'úd Al-balehi, ii. 190.

Ibn Maymún (Abú 'Abdillah), admiral of the Almamrides, i. 71, ii. 517, 520, App. xlviii.

Ibn Merwán Ibn Zohr Al-ayádí (Abú Bekr), physician, i. 338.

Ibn Mes'úd Ibn Khalsah Ibn Abú-l-khiyásí (Abú 'Abdillah), poet, i. 38; account of his life and writings, 195, 340, 436, 478.


Ibn Mohammed Al-balúní (Dihyah), i. 218, 494.

Ibn Mohammed Abú Hámíd Al-gházálí, i. 471, App. xv; ii. App. xlix.

Ibn Mohammed Al-jezarí (Mukhýyyu-d-dín), i. 478.

Ibn Mohammed Al-lúshí Al-yahassóbí, ii. 342; notice of, 532.

Ibn Mohammed Al-mírí (Abú Bekr Al-ázrank) settles in Spain, ii. 168, 200, 482.

Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Al-hasaní Al-idrísí (Abú 'Abdillah), his geographical work borrowed in part from that of Al-bekrí, i. 314, 481.


Ibn Mohammed Ibn Darrój o Derrój Al-kastalí, poet, i. 39, 190, 342, 468.

Ibn Mohammed Ibn Mardanísh, sur-

named Sa'hibu-l-basít, ii. 314.


Ibn Mohammed Ibn Sáhibi-s-salát (Abú Bekr), i. 472.

Ibn Moslem Az-zahrí (Abú Bekr), theo-

logian, ii. 170, 474.

Ibn Moslemah, ii. 184.

Ibn Mu'ammar (Abú 'Abdillah), from Malage, his commentary on the Kitabu-n-nabát by Ad-dínawári, i. 147.

Ibn Mukarram Al-khazrejí (Jemálu-d-dín Abú-l-fadhl), i. 338; his works, ib.

Ibn Munkadír, ii. 109.

Mohammed Ibn Músá Al-'okaylí, i. 183.

Ibn Músá Ibn Busheyr Ibn Jenád Ibn Lekitt Al-kenání Ar-rádí, i. 314.

(Ibn Mutref) Ibn Shakhís or Shok-
hayss, i. 190, 468, ii. 190.

Ibn Ódh'ka or Adh'ha Ibn 'Abdi-l-lattíf Al-hamdání, ii. 403.

Ibn 'Okayl Al-farayábí, i. 189, 466.

Ibn 'Omar Ibn Borqhúth, geometrician, i. 150.

Ibn 'Omar Ibn Lebbánah [r. Lubábah], i. 52, 190, 467, ii. 178.

Ibn 'Omar Ibn Rashíd (Abú 'Abdillah), i. App. xvii.

Ibn 'Othmán, ii. 365.

Ibn 'Othmán Ibn Abí Sheybáh, ii. 128, 437.

Ibn 'Othmán Ibn Seyd, ii. 444.

Ibn Rub, Kádí, ii. 207.

Ibn Sa'd Ibn Mardanísh (Abú 'Abdillah), anecdote of his courage, i. 123, 397; proclaims independence, ii. 310; his wars with the Almo-
hades, 311, 318, App. lv; his life translated from Ibnu-l-khattíb, 519.

Ibn Sahmún, theologian, i. 178, 190, 467.

Ibn Sa'id, i. 341.

Ibn Sa'id, the physician, i. App. xxvi.

Ibn Sa'id, Lord of Ossonoba, dethroned by Al-mu'támed, ii. 507.

Ibn Sa'id (Abú 'Abdillah) Al-basirí, theologian, ii. 474.

Ibn Sa'id Ibn Mokháríf Al-asídí, poet, ii. 448.

Ibn Salámah Al-'otbí, Imám of the mosque of Cordova, ii. 459.

Ibn Shihnah Al-walíd, his general history, i. Pref. xxiii.

Ibn Suleyman, i. App. lxxx.

Ibn Suleymán Ibnu-l-kossaraka Al-kal'ai, ii. 282, 509.

Ibn Tafetákín, i. App. xxxi.

Ibn Tíhir (Abú 'Abdi-r-rahmán), ii. 512.

Ibn Tamás, governor of Tudela, defeated by Mohammed Ibn Lob, ii. 440.

Ibn Tarkan Ibnu-r-Näar (Al-fáradí), philosopher, i. App. xv.

Ibn Télid, Wízir of Al-hakém I. of Cor-
dova, ii. 106.
Mohammed Ibn Tiumarta (Abú 'Abdillah) Al-mahdí, founder of the dynasty of the Almohades, rising of, ii. 308, 521.


Ibnu-l-haddad (Abú 'Abdillah) Al-wadidashî, ii. 368.

Ibnu-l-hâj (Abú 'Abdillah), the Almoravide, general of Yúsuf Ibn Tâshefîn, ii. 297, App. xxxvii, xli, xlii.

Ibnu-l-hasan Al-maddhîjî Al-katânî (Abú 'Abdillah), physician and naturalist, works written by, i. 187, 464.

Ibnu-l-huseyn (Abû Bekr), i. 377.

Ibnu-l-kâsim, ii. 400.

Ibnu-l-kâsim Ibn Tamîs or Tamlas, judge of the Christians in Cordovâ, ii. 161, 162, 165.

Ibnu-l-walîd Al-fehrî At-tortoshi (Abû Bekr), surnamed Ibn Zendakah, account of his life and writings, i. 247, 414, 508; extracts from his work, ii. 211.

Ibnu-s-saffûr (Abû 'Abdillah), from Almeria, poet, i. 57, 364.

Ibn Wadhîhâh Ibn Yazîgh (Abû 'Abdillah), ii. 3, 149, 396.

Ibn Yahya Ar-rîîahî, i. 190, 467.

Ibn Yahya Ibn 'Abdî-r-rahmân Al-makkarî, 302.

Ibn Yahya Ibn 'Omar Ibn Lubâbah, his work on traditions, i. 183, 467.

Ibn Yahya (Abû Bekr) Ibnu-s-sâyegh and Ibn Bîjîsh (Avempace), a celebrated physician, i. 146, 423; his life translated from Ibn Abî Ossaybi'ah, App. xii.

Ibn Yahya Ibn Rabi' Al-isha'ri (Abû-l-hasan), i. 301.

Ibn Yahya Ibn Yahya Al-leythî, theologian, i. 150, 430, ii. 140.

Ibn Ya'la Az-zenâtî, general of Al-mansûr, ii. 489.

Ibn Yezîd Al-mubarrad, i. 190.

Ibn Yúsuf (Abû Tâhir At-temmî Al-mâzenî Ibnu-l-eskerkînî), author, ii. 401.

Ibn Yúsuf Al-fehrî (Abû-l-aswad), ii. 73; his rising, 79.

Ibn Yúsuf Al-wârrîk, historian, his works, i. 175, 451, ii. 171.

Morania, castle of, by whom built, ii. 445.
Morasiah (Morazo), peninsula near Vigo, ii. 194.
Moré or Morad (Morente ?), a castle in the province of Cordova, i. 205, 213, 485; by whom built, ii. 26, 403.
Moriscos, literature of the, i. Pref. xxvi, 503; specimens of, 511.
Moror (Moron ?), town, i. 275, 529, ii. 68, 417.
Morokoosh (Morocco), by whom built, i. App. ixii.
Mos'ab Ibn 'Imrán Al-hamdání, Kádi of Cordova, ii. 106, 423, 429.
Mosálimah, meaning of the word, ii. 458.
Moslem Al-bokhári, traditionist, i. 192.
— Ibn Ahmed (Abú 'Obeydah), surnamed Súhibu-l-kiblah, geometrician, i. 149, 427.
— Ibn 'Okbah, ii. 411.
— Ibnu-l-hejáj An-nisabúrí Al-kusheyrí (Abú-l-huseyn), traditionist, i. 189, 466.
Moslemah Ibn 'Abdillah, one of An-nássir's architects, i. 234.
— Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, of the house of Umeyyah, ii. 60, App. viii.
— Ibn Ahmed Al-majeritti (Abú-l-kásim), geometrician, i. 427.
— Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, ii. 450.
— Ibn Suleyman, of the family of Umeyyah, ii. App. xi.
— Ibn Zor'ah, ii. 19.
Mosque, that of Cordova, description of, i. 217—231; lamps, made from Christian bells, 41, ii. 196; building of, 86; additions to, 146, 218.
Mosólábah Ibn Habús Al-meknásí, defeats Yahya Ibn Idrís, ii. 143; lays siege to Fez, iib. and 466.
Mozarabes of Toledo, why so called, i. 142, 420; ritual of the, iib.
Moznah or Muznah, mother of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., ii. 145; also of Mohammed II. of Cordova, App. ix.
Mu'adh Ibn Abi Korrah, general of Al-mu'tadhed of Seville, ii. App. xxvi.
Mu'áhid, or Christian population of Granada, ii. 305; revolt of the, 306; why so called, 514.
Mu'áwiyah Ibn Abi Sufyán, first Khalif of the house of Umeyyah in the East, i. 176, 298, 398, App. xxxv, xlv.
— Ibn Hishám, of the house of Umeyyah, ii. 92.
— Ibn Hishám, writer on genealogy, ii. 463.
— Ibn Hishám Ash-shubeni, historian, ii. 452.

Mu'áwiyah Ibn Khódeyj, i. App. xxxv; ii. 4.
Mubahshér, freed slave of Mujáhid, takes possession of the Balearic Islands, and assumes the title of Násiru-d-daulah, ii. 258.
Mudathirah, a concubine of 'Abdu-r-ráhmán II. of Cordova, ii. 126.
Mugheyth or Mughíth Ar-rumí, besieges and takes Cordova, i. 278; makes the governor of that city his captive, 280, 291, 531, ii. 403.
Muhájir Ibn Naufíl (Mujáhir Ibn Theofíl?) Al-korashi, Kádi of Cordova, ii. 9, 423.
Muhallib, sons of, their revolt, ii. 444.
Muhlib Ibn Abí Sofrah, i. 547.
Mu'izz lidíni-Illah (Abí Temím Ma'dd), fourth of the Fátimítes, subdues Western Africa, ii. 167, 472.
Mujáabir (Mijbar or Mujir), son of 'Issám, King of Ceuta, i. 541.
Mujáhid Ibn 'Abdillah Abú-l-juyúsíh Al-'ámír, King of Denia and the Balearic Islands, i. 35, 184, 336, 436, ii. 257; invades Sardinia, i. App. xxxvi; ii. 258.
Mujahir Ibn Theofíl. See Mu'áhir.
Mujir. See Mujáabir.
Mu'áwiyah, river of Africa, ii. 38.
Múmen Ibn Sa'id, i. 148.
Mundhir. See Al-mundhir.
— Ibn Haríz Ibn Húbíl, rebellion of, ii. 444.
— Ibn Ibrahim Ibnu-a-sellím, rebellion of, ii. 442.
— Ibn Sa'id (Abú-l-hakem Al-bolátti), Kádi-l-kodá of Cordova, his writings in favour of the sect of Dáuíd Adh-dháhéri, i. 181, 189; his eloquence, ii. 138, 147, 161; notice of, 468.
— Ibn Yahya At-tojibí, Lord of Saragossa, ii. 235, 255, 500; genealogy of, 504.
Múnis, a sort of musical instrument made at Seville, i. 59, 366.
— Al-modhafer, the Turk, puts to death the Khalif Al-muktadir of the house of 'Abbás, ii. 147.
Muntajesh (Montanches), castle of, taken by Alfonso Enriquez, ii. 522.
Munyat-‘Ajab (the garden of the wonders), a suburb of Cordova, i. 206.
— 'Abdillah, a suburb of Cordova, i. 206.
— Al-mu'sháfiyyah, the country villa of Al-mu'sháfí, i. 212; why so called, ii. 183.
— Ibn Abí 'Amir (the country villa of Ibn Abí
INDEX.

'A'mir), in the outskirts of Valencia, i. 66; by whom built, 374.

Munyat Nea', a royal villa near Cordova, ii. 140, 454.

— Seyd, a country villa near Malaga, ii. 355.

— Zubeyr, country villa in the outskirts of Cordova, i. 212.

Munyatul-'Amiriyah (the country villa of Ibn Abi 'A'mir), in Cordova, i. 212, ii. 218.

— l-mugheyrah, a suburb of Cordova, i. 206.

— n-na'drah, name of a country villa and suburb of Cordova, i. 212, ii. 161.

— r-rissáfah (pleasure grounds near Cordova), i. 211; by whom laid out, ii. 86.

— s-sorúr, a garden in the outskirts of Cordova, i. 212.

Muribiter (Muri-veteres), the ancient Seguntum, now Murviedro, its amphitheatre, i. 77.

Murtlánah, town of, ii. 454.

Mursiah (Murcia), city, described, i. 68; also called Misr, Bostáh, and Hadhrat Tudmír, ib. and 377; its manufactories, 69; taken by Al-mut'am of Seville, 378; by the Almoravides, ii. 296; by the Almorhades, 318; by Al-mutawakkel Ibn Húd, 327; by the Christians, 338.

Músa Al-masmúdí (Abú 'Imrán) An-najáí, ii. 539.

— Az-zeyát, ii. 451.

— Ibn Abi-l-Áfiyyah, governor of Western Africa for the Fatimítes, ii. 144, 466.


— Ibn Dhí-n-núm, ii. 440. 

— Ibn Foteys is appointed governor of Tortosa, ii. 453.

— Ibn Hadíd, the Hájib, i. 188.

— Ibn Isma'il Al-kasawi, ii. 451.

— Ibn 'Iyádh Ibn 'Okbah, i. App. lxii.


— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Jodey, Hájib of 'Abdu-r-rahman III., ii. 150, 156.

— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Zeyyád is put to death, ii. 455.

— Ibn Músa, governor of Tudela, his wars with the Christians, ii. 114, 127; his rebellion, 431.

— Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdil-malek Ibn Sa'íd Al-Ánsi (Abú 'Omrán or 'Imrán), i. 31, 145, 196, 327, 490.

— Ibn Nosseyr, is appointed governor of Eastern Africa, i. 251, App. xiv, liv; his conquests in that country, 252, App. Ivii—lx, lxi, lxviii; his landing in Spain, 283, App. xlix, lxxi; his disagreement with Tarik, 287, App. xlix; departure for the East, 292, App. lxxviii; arrival at Damascus, 293, App. lxxx; indignant treatment of by the Khalif Suleymán, 294, App. lxxxii, lxxxv; death, 297, App. lxxix.

Músa Ibn 'Othmán Ibn Yahgharamás Ibn Zeyyán (Abú Hamú), third of the Beni Zeyyán, i. 304; dethroned by his son, ib.

— Ibn Sa'id (Abú 'Imrán), general of the Almorhades, lands in Spain, ii. 310, App. 1.

— Ibn Sem'á'h, ii. 109.

— Ibn Tálib, poet, ii. 190.

— Ibnul-I'ási, governor of Seville, ii. 449.

Mustaráh, a place to the west of Cordova, battle of, ii. 69, 92.

Mustadhi binúr-illah, thirty-third Khalif of the house of 'Abbás, ii. 473.

Mutref Ibn Habib, ii. 456.

— Ibn Isma'il Al-kasawi, ii. 451.


— Ibn Músa Ibn Dhí-n-nún taken prisoner by Sancho of Navarre, ii. 441.

— Ibn Thá'lebah, ii. 487.

Muwalladas, frequent revolts of the, ii. 401, 442, 447, 449, 450.

Muwáshshahah, sort of poetical composition invented by the Arabs of Spain, i. 118, 367, 408, 422; what Ibn Khaldún says about it, ii. 526.

Nábíl, chief of the Muwalladas of Elvira, ii. 442, 446, 447.

Nábít Ibn Múfarrag Ibn Yúsuf Al-khath'amí, ii. 474.

Nadhír Ibn Salamah, Wizír of 'Abdulláh, anecdote of, ii. 131.

Náfí' Ibnul-lazrak, i. 547.

Nahr Ilyán (the river of Ilyán), near Ceuta, now called Guadaleo, i. 539.

Najá, the eunuch, lands in Malaga, ii. 246; is put to death by the Berbers, App. xix.


— Ibn Músa, i. App. lxii.

Narbonne (Ariñáh), city, its various names among the Arabian writers, i. 319; taken by the Arabs, 407; recovered by the Franks, 424; retaken by Hishám I. of Cordova, 488, ii. 99; besieged by Al-hakem I., ib.

Nárija (Nejra?), town, i. 357.
INDEX.

Naár Abû-l-jiýúsh, King of Granada, fourth of the 
Benî Naár, ii. 346, 347.
Nâssîr Ibnî-l-mukârîm 'Abdu-s-seyîd Ibnî-l-mutar-
rezî, Borîhûnûd-dîn, i. Pref. xxvii.
Nâssîrûd-daulah. See Mubashshér.
Navarre, kingdom of, invaded, ii. 128, 135.
Navy of the Spanish Moslems, i. 400, App. xxxv.
Nâzîr Al-'azîz-billah, fifth of the Fâtîmites of Africa, 
i. 152.
Názhûn Al-kala'iyeh, a poetess born at Granada, i. 45.
Nebrîshah, now Lebrîxa, a town of Andalusia, i. 390, 
ii. 449, 454.
Nefezah, Berber tribe, ii. 75.
Nejd, a mountainous district of Arabia, i. 330; also 
a district near Granada, 44, 351, and near Badajoz, 
370.
Nekâyâh, tribe, ii. App. lxxv.
Nekfûr (Nicephorus Gregorae), his name changed 
into Tekfûr, i. 527.
Nerjah (Nerja), a sea-port on the coast of Malaga, i. 
50.
Nêsîj, sort of cloth woven at Valencia, i. 67.
Nicolaus, the monk, i. App. xxî; teaches Greek in 
Cordova, xxv.
Niebla. See Liblah.
Nokûr, a town of Africa, i. 175; history of, by whom 
written, i.b.; Sultâns of, ii. 144; also a castle in 
the province of Jaen, 445.
Nosseyr, father of the conqueror Mûsa, i. 251, 298, 
398.
Nunnoh (Don Nuño Gonzalez de Lara), a Christian 
general, defeated and put to death by Mohammed 
II. of Granada, ii. 345.
Nûrah, a musical instrument made at Seville, i. 51.
Nûru-d-dûn Abû-th-thannâ Ibn Khättîb, his treatise 
on patronymics, i. Pref. xxvi.

'Obâdah Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Mûti-s-samâl Al-khazrêjî 
(Abû Bekr), a poet, i. 185, 461; ii. 233, 237, 447.
—— Ibnî-s-sâmâh Abû-l-walid, i. 173.
'Obbâs (Oppas), grandson of Wittiza, ii. 415.
'Obeid Ibnî-l-jerrâh. See Abû 'Obeïdah.
'Obeïdah Ibn 'Abdî-r-rahmân Al-kayâs, governor of 
Eastern Africa, ii. 33.
—— Ibn 'Abdî-r-rahmân As-solâmî, iii. 33, 36.
'Obeïdis Ibn Mahmûd, poet, ii. 445.
'Obeïdullah (Abû Merwân), surnamed Hosîmu-d-
daulah, son of Al-mu'tassem, King of Almeria, ii. 
296, 512.

Obeydullah, son of Al-muhdi, ii. 496, App. ix.
—— ————, son of Kâsim Al-matrân (bishop) of 
Toledo, ii. 162.
—— (Abû Merwân), son of 'Abdu-r-rahmân 
III. of Cordova, ii. 156.
—— Ibn Abîn Ibn Mu'âwiyyah, ii. 76; his 
rebellion and death, 83.
—— Ibn Ad'hâm (Abû Bekr), Kâdi-l-jâm'âh 
or chief justice of Cordova, ii. 274.
—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Sâhibi-s-salât, histori-
ian, ii. 519.
—— Ibn Mohammed Ibn-l-ghamr Ibn Abî 
'Abdah (Abû 'Othmân), governor of Jaen, ii. 446; 
appointed governor of Tortosa, 453, 459.
—— Ibn 'Othmân (Abû 'Othmân), his efforts 
to establish in Spain the dynasty of Umeyyah, ii. 
62; his conference with As-samîl, 63; defends 
Cordova against Yusûf, 72; enters into a con-
spiracy against 'Abdu-r-rahmân I., 83; is pardoned, 
90; his son is put to death by Hishâm I., 91.
—— Ibn Shâliyyah, poet, ii. 445.
—— Ibn-l-balensi defeats Alfonso II. of 
Leon, ii. 113.
—— Ibn Umeyyah Ibn Ash-shâliyyah, re-
bellion of, ii. 439.
—— Ibn Yahya Ibn Idrîs Al-khâledî, poet, ii. 
445.
—— ————, Ibn Yusûf, i. 495.
—— Ibn Zaryâb, ii. 118.
—— Ibn Zeyyyâd, ii. 419.
Odâd, progenitor of an Arabian tribe, i. 301.
'Odhrâb Ibn 'Abdillah Al-fehri, ii. 35.
'Okâdîh, fair of, frequented by the ancient Arabs, i. 
330.
'Okayl Ibn Mohammed Al-ahnaf, poet, i. 334.
'Okbâh Ibn 'A'mir Al-johânî, ii. 9.
—— Ibn Nâfî' Al-fehri invades Western Africa, i. 
538; treats with Ilyân, 539; is defeated and put 
to death, App. lx, lxiv.
—— Ibnu-l-hejîj As-selúlî, governor, administra-
tion of, ii. 37.
'Okkâshah Ibn Mahîss, one of the companions of 
the Prophet, i. 125.
Oksônôbah (Ossonoba), now Estombar in Portugal, i. 
62, 388.
'Omar (Abû-l-hakem), cousin of Al-mansûr, makes 
war against Ibn Kannûn the Idrisite, ii. 189; takes 
him prisoner, i.b.
—— Al-karmânî (Abû-l-hakem), i. 150.
—— Al-murtadhi. See 'Omar Ibn Abî Ibrâhîm.
INDEX.

'Omar Ibn 'Abdi-l-'azîz, eighth Khalif of the race of Umeyyah in the East, i. 212, App. lxxxiii.; orders a description of Spain to be written, ii. 32.

Ibn 'Abdillah, i. App. lxxxviii.

Ibn 'Abdillah, Wizir of Abû Sâlim, ii. 362; execution of, 363.

Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn 'Omar is appointed governor of Morôr, ii. 77.

Ibn Abû Ibrahim Is'hâk Al-murtadî (Abû Hafîs), thirteenth of the Almohades, i. 233, 234, 497, ii. 325.

Ibn Abî Sheybah, his history of Kûfah, i. 177, ii. 128.

('Amr ?) Ibn Ahmed Ibn Khâldûn (Abû Moslêm), i. 312, 429.

Ibn Al-afttas. See 'Omar Ibn Mohammed.

Ibn An-najm Al-baghdâdi, poet, ii. 190.

Ibn Busheyr, Kâdi of Cordova, ii. 106.

Ibn Hafsumân, a celebrated rebel, history of, i. 186; rising, ii. 130, 401; mistakes respecting him in Conde, 437; fuller account of his frequent rebellions, 451.


Ibn Kethir, ii. App. iii.

Ibn Merwân, i. App. lxxx.

Ibn Modhamm Al-haterât Al-malehî, rebellion of, ii. 443, 456.

Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdillah Ibn Moslemah Ibn Al-afttas (Abû Mohammed), surnamed Al-mutawakkel, fourth and last king of Dadajoz of the Benî Al-afttas, i. 61, ii. 256; is put to death by the Almoravides, ii. 257, 296.

Ibn 'Owâysa, i. App. lxii.

Ibn Sâleh As-senhâjî, general of 'Abdu-l-mûmen, ii. App. 1.

Ibn Sharhîl, history of Basrah written by, i. 177.

Ibn Sharâhil, Kâdi of Cordova, ii. 92, 423, App. iii.

Ibn Sho'ayb (Abû Hafîs Ibnu-l-ghalîk) conquers the island of Crete, i. 174, ii. 103.

Ibnu-l-khattâb, Khalif of the East, i. 217, 297, App. xxxiv.

Ondah, castle of, now Calaonda in Valencia, i. 68.

Onôbah, now Gibraleon, in the province of Huelva, i. 72, 379.

Ophiussa, island of (now Fromentera), one of the Balearic, i. 379.

Oporto. See Bortokál.

Orbûnah, the same as Narbonne, i. 319.

Ordhân Ibn Adefunsh (Ordoño I.) of Leon defeated, ii. 127, 435.

Ordoño II. of Leon defeated, ii. 134.

III. of Leon, besieged in the castle of Osma, ii. 135; sends an embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahmân III., 139.

"el malo," son of Alfonso IV. of Leon, de-thrones his cousin Sancho I., ii. 139; visits Cordova, 159; reception given to him by Al-hakem II., 161.

Orihuela. See Auriwélah.

Orippo, now Dos hermanas, a town close to Seville, i. 362.

Orosius, his history translated into Arabic, i. App. xxv.

'Orwah Ibn Ghanîmah Ar-rahhâl, i. 330.

Ibnu-l-walid, revolts against Yûsuf Al-fehrî, ii. 54; is put to death, ib.

Ibnu-z-zubeyr, ii. 10.

Oshkah (Huesca), in Aragon, ii. 159, 451.

Oshmah or Oshamah (Osma), town of, ii. 135; taken, 462.

'Othmân Ibn 'Abdi-l-ghâfir, general of 'Abdullah, Sultân of Cordova, ii. 448.

Ibn 'Abî 'Abdah [or 'Obeydah] Al-korashî, ii. 18, 399, 408.

Ibn Abî-l-'ala Al-merînî (Abû Sa'id), general of the African troops at Granada, defeats the Christians, ii. 351.

Ibn Abî Nes'ah Al-khath'âmî, governor of Spain under the Khalifs, administration of, ii. 28, 36, 408.

Ibn 'Affân, Khalif, traditions referred to, i. 80; copy of the Korân attributed to him, 222.

Ibn Al-'ala (Abû Sa'id), ii. 536.

Ibn 'Amrunî, rebellion of, ii. 448.

Ibn Hazmah Ibn 'Obeydillah Ibn 'Omar Ibn Al-khattâb, ii. 422.

Ibn Ja'far Al-mus'hafî, ii. 182; verses by, 185.

Ibn 'Okbah, i. App. lxiv.

Ibn Sa'id Ibn 'Othmân Ad-dânî, his poem on the manner of reading the Korân, i. 192, 469.

INDEX.

Ouriwwglah. See Aurfw&ah.

Pascual, San Pedro, what he says of Ilyán, i. 502.

Paterna, battle of, lost by the Moslems, ii. 265.

Pedro el Cruel, King of Castile, his treacherous behaviour towards Mohammed VI. of Granada, ii. 361.

—— II. of Aragon, besieges Majoritt (Madrid), ii. App. lxvi; contributes to the victory of Al-'akáb or Las Navas, lxviii.

——, Infante of Castile, is defeated and slain, ii. 350, 535.

Pelayo (Beláy), rises in Asturias, ii. 34, 260; defeats 'Alkamah, 407.

Philosophy, cultivation of, among the Spanish Moslems, i. 142, 187, 198; the study of, forbidden by Abú Ya'kúb Al-mansúr, App. xvii; ii. App. lxvi; encouraged by Al-hakem II. of Cordova, i. App. xl; works treating on, destroyed by Al-mansir Ibn Abí 'A'mir, xli.

Poets, Mohammedan, in Spain, anecdotes of, i. 151 —156; Christian, 157; Jewish, 158.

Ponce de Leon (Rodrigo), Marquis of Cadiz, takes Alhama, ii. 541.

Porcuna. See Bolkúnah.

Portokal. See Bortokál.

Pyrenees, various names given to the, by the Arabian geographers, i. 317.

Pyrrhus, King of Spain, cuts roads through the Pyrenees, i. 320.

Pytuís, the, or Balearic Islands, described, i. 379.

Rabadhu-d-dabbághín (the suburb of the tanners), in Saragossa, ii. App. xlv.

——, l-báyísín, or the suburb of the people of Baeza, now Albayzín, a quarter of the city of Granada, ii. 316, 376; why so called, 521.

——, l-haus (the suburb of the cistern), at Almería, i. 51.

——, r-rokkákin (the suburb of the bakers), at Cordova, i. 206, 486.

Rábáh, a black slave of Mugheyth Ar-rúmí, i. 279.

Rábáttu-l-fatah (Rábát), a sea-port of Africa, ii. 317.

Rabi', the bishop, i. 236, 502; is sent to Germany as ambassador of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., ii. 139, 464.

Rabi'ah, tribe of, i. 548, ii. 23.

—— Ibn Kays Al-hameli, tābi', enters Spain in the suite of Músas Ibn Nosseyr, ii. 10.

Ra'dát, meaning of the word, ii. 513.

Rafi' Ibn Kays Ibn Rafi' Al-barrádáh, i. 330.

Raghúk, castle of, near Seville, besieged by 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 422.

Ráha, mother of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 75, 92.

Rakkás, meaning of the word, ii. 110.

Ramiro II. of Leon, opposes 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., ii. 136; relieves Zamora, 60.

Rawáyim Ibn Ahmed, theologian, i. 189, 467.

Ray, a district and city of Persia, i. 314.

Raya or Rayyah, the ancient name for Malaga, i. 48, 290, 356; history of, by whom written, 186, 462.

Rayyik, eunuch of Hisháim II. of Cordova, ii. 186.

Razín Ibn 'Omar Al-andalusi, writer on sacred traditions, i. 192.

Razis, Moro, his history of Spain translated into Portuguese, and thence into Castilian, i. 314, 320.

Recemundus, the Christian, is employed on various embassies by 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., i. 502, ii. 464.

Redwán, Wizir of Mohammed V. of Granada, ii. 357; is put to death, 359; short account of his life and ancestors, 538.

Religion, state of, among the Spanish Moslems, i. 112.

Requila or Rixila, Greek commander on the northern coast of Africa, i. 540.

Revenues of Spain under 'Abdu-r-rahmán I., i. 110; Al-hakem I., 213; 'Abdullah, ii. 131; 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., i. 111, 400, 401, ii. 146; and Al-mansúr, i. 213.

Rhetoric, study of, i. 142; works on, 184, 196.

Rissáfah (La Arizafca), a country villa near Damascus, i. 210; also a garden and palace in the outskirts of Cordova, 217, 374, 489. See also Rassáfah.

Rissáfí, a kind of pomegranate, why so called, i. 210.

Riyáh, tribe, ii. App. lvii.

Rizkullah, governor of Ceuta for the Idrísites, ii. App. xxi.

Robberies frequent among the Spanish Moslems, i. 106.

Roda. See Róttat Al-yáhíd.

Roderic, the last Gothic King of Spain, usurps the throne, i. 254; falls in love with Ilyán's daughter, 256, App. xlv; breaks open the enchanted palace of Toledo, 262, App. xlv; is defeated and killed, 272, 524, 525, 528, App. xlvi; palace of, by whom built, 208, 209.

Rodhanoh (Rhone), military stations of the Arabs on the, i. 288.
Roger, King of Sicily, sends a fleet to Africa, i. App. xxxvii; takes Mahdiyyah, ii. 520.
Romalah (Romulo ?), son of Wittiza, i. 513.
Roman causeways, restored by the Arabs, i. 207, 487.
Románia (Italy), coasts of, ravaged by Ibn Maymún, i. 52.
Romanus, son of Constantine, recovers the island of Crete, i. 175.
Romeyk Ibn Hejaj, ii. 297.
Romeykiah, wife of Al-mu'tamed of Seville, anec-
dothe of, ii. 299.
Rondah (Ronda), town, i. 42; taken by the Chris-
tians, ii. 375.
Róttat Al-yahúd, now Roda in Aragon, ii. 296, 436, 511; by whom built, App. xl.
Róttéh or Rótthah, a musical instrument manufactured at Seville, i. 59, 365.
Rudherik (Rodrigo Diaz del Vivar), surnamed Al-
kanbittúr (Campeador) and Sid (Cid), makes an
alliance with the King of Saragossa, ii. App. xxxvii; lays siege to Valencia, ii. 333; puts to
death Ibn Jeháf, App. xxxix; dies of grief, xlii.
Russafah, now Ruzafa, pleasure grounds near Va-
encia, i. 66, 67; by whom planted, 374.
Rute, a city of Andalusia, mistaken for Rayyah by
Conde, i. 356.
Saba' Ibn Mun'akád, or Munghafád, a Berber chief,
revolt of, ii. App. lvii.
Sa'd, tribe of, ii. 22.
—, King of Granada, of the Bení Nasr', ii. 540.
— Ibn Fat'hún As-sarakosti Al-jammár, writer on
natural philosophy, i. 187, 465.
— Ibn Mardanísh, governor of Fraga, ii. 314, 519.
— Ibn Mohammed, poet, ii. 190.
Sadghiyar, feat of arms performed by, i. 127.
Sadf, tribe, i. 268, 310.
Sadghiyár, a branch of the Berber tribe of Kotámah,
ii. App. xxxvii.
Sadúkush, a branch of the Berber tribe of Kotámah,
ii. App. xxxvii.
Sa'dún Ibn Fatah As-sarábek or As-sarabakást, reb-
bellion of, ii. 439, 442; he is taken by Alfonso III. of Leon, and put to death, ib.
Sa'faks or Safaksis (Sfax), a town of Eastern Africa,
ii. App. xxxvii; taken by 'Abdu-l-múmen, ii. 314.
Safar, the era of Augustus, i. 27, 64; why so called,
325, 372, 483.
Safar Ibn 'Obeyd Al-kal'al, gives his name to the
pomegranate called Safarí, i. 210.
Safarí, a species of pomegranate, i. 88; why so
called, 210, 387, 489; by whom introduced into
Spain, ib., and ii. 86.
Sáfáy-í-molík, name of certain lands awarded by
Tárik to the sons of Wittiza, why so called, i. 271, 523.
Sábíbú-l-ashgháfí, description of the office of the,
i. 104, 398, App. xxx.
— J-basít. See Mohammed Ibn Mohammed Ibn
Mardanísh.
— J-kiblāh, meaning of the words, i. 149.
— J-medinah (city magistrate), called also Sá-
bíbú-l-leylah (night-magistrate), his functions, i. 104, App. xxxii.
— ah-shortháh (captain of the police guard), va-
rious duties of this functionary, i. 104, 398, App.
xxxii.
— J-wátháiyik, meaning of the expression, i. 459.
Sahl, poet, i. 190, 469.
— Ibn Mohammed Málík (Abú-l-hasan), preacher,
i. 38, 341.
— Ibn Sa'd As-sá'dí, traditionist, ii. 10.
Sahnah, town, ii. 454.
Sahnún, the Kátib, ii. 247, 454, App. viii.
Sahr Ben Ruiz Ibn Dahri, the Jew, ii. App. iv.
Sa'id Al-'assí, one of the companions of the Prophet,
i. 224.
— Al-khayr, of the family of Umeyyah, anecdo-
t of, ii. 110.
— Al-watásí, Sultán of Fez, ii. 543.
— Al-yahssóbí Al-matta'tí, his rebellion and death,
ii. 422.
— Ibn 'Abdí-l-kabt, poet, ii. 445.
— Ibn 'Abdíllah Ash-shantareyní, poet, ii. 190.
— Ibn 'Abdí-r-rabbíbí, poet, ii. 445.
— Ibn Abí Hind, theologian, leaves Spain for the
East, ii. 100.
— Ibn Abí Leyla, ii. 92.
— Ibn Ahmed Ibn Sa'id (Abú-l-kásim) of Toledo,
his historical works, i. 194, 474; his account of
the destruction of Al-hakem's library, App. xxxix.
— Ibn Ahmed (Abú 'Othmán) Al-makkári, i. Pref.
xxxi.
— Ibn Ahmed Ibn 'Abdí-r-rahmán Ibn Mohammed
Ibn Sá'id At-toleytolt, extracts from his work, i.
App. xxxix.
— Ibn Hakem Al-koráshí (Abú 'Othmán), go-
INDEX.

Sálehab, a town between Malaga and Granada, ii. 25.
Sálehiyyah, spot at Damascus called, i. Pref. xvii.
Sálim, a freed slave of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 60.

Abú-n-neját, brother of Al-mutawakkel Ibn Húd, governor of Seville, ii. App. lxxix.
Salmán, family, where established, ii. 29.
Salobreña. See Shalibánih.
Salomon. See Suleymán.
Salsalah, island of, conquered by the Arabs, i. App. lxvi.
Sambulona, a Phænician goddess worshipped at Seville, i. 367.
Samúrah or Samórah ( Zamora), city, i. 75; taken by Fruela I., ii. 85; peopled by Alfonso III. of Leon, 453, 463; besieged by 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, 135, 464.
Sancho, son of Alfonso VI., killed at the battle of Uclés, ii. App. xlv.

— I. of Aragon, conquests of, ii. 264; taking of Barbastro by, 265.
— I. of Leon, dethroned by Ordoño, ii. 139; visits Cordova, ib. and 465; is restored to his kingdom by 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., 159; sends an embassy to Al-hakem II., 165.
— II. of Navarre, conquests of, ii. App. xxvii.
— VI. of Navarre, ii. App. lxv.
— Al-mitrán (Archbishop of Toledo), is killed at the battle of Martos, ii. 346.
— Garcés, Count of Castile, defeats Al-mansúr, ii. 197; lends his assistance to Suleymán, 491.
— Ramírez, King of Aragon, called by the Arabian writers Ibn Radmir, killed in battle near Huesca, i. 127, 416.
San Estevan, castle of, in the province of Jaen, ii. 444.
Sanjúl or Sanjúl. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-mansúr.
San Jorge, a church in Cordova, i. 530.
Santa Christina, castle of, taken by Mahmúd Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbár, ii. 436.
— Maria, a Christian church in Cordova, i. 246.
— Al-gharbiyyah, or of the West, a town in Portugal, i. 62, 320.
— Ibn Razín (Albarrassín), a town of the province of Cuenca, i. 22, 320; by whom founded, 70.
San Estevan, castle of, in the province of Jaen, ii. 444.
Sanjúl or Sanjúl. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-mansúr.
San Jorge, a church in Cordova, i. 530.
Santa Christina, castle of, taken by Mahmúd Ibn 'Abdi-l-jabbár, ii. 436.
— Maria, a Christian church in Cordova, i. 246.
— Al-gharbiyyah, or of the West, a town in Portugal, i. 62, 320.
— Ibn Razín (Albarrassín), a town of the province of Cuenca, i. 22, 320; by whom founded, 70.
Santi Petri, river of, near Cadiz, i. 381.
Saragossa. See Sakustah.

Sa'ád, governor of Minorca, makes peace with Jayme I. of Aragon, ii. 332.
Sa'd Ibn Hossán, Wizir of Al-hakem I. of Cordova, ii. 106.
— Ibn Hudheyf joins the Muwallads, ii. 443, 454.
— Ibn Kháled, i. App. lxxviii.
— Ibn Khanjar, rebellion of, ii. 446.
— Ibn Mansúr, theologian, i. 181.
— Ibn Mokhíd, Wizir of the Bení 'Abbás, ii. 150.
— Ibn Muḥallib, rebellion of, ii. 444.
— Ibn 'Othmán Ibn Yásir, ii. App. iii.
— Ibn Sáleb, Sultán of Nokúr, is put to death by the Shiites of Africa, ii. 144.
— Ibn Semar As-sabáyí, ii. 10.
— Ibn Suleymán Ibn Júd or Júda Ibn Asbášt, ii. 401; makes war against the Muwallads, 444.
— Ibnu-l-abbás, ii. 450.
— Ibnu-l-huseyn Ibn 'Isa Ar-rabá'í (Abú-l-'ala), philologist and poet, i. 184, 423; account of, ii. 200; verses by, 202—206.
— Ibnu-l-walíd Ash-shámí, or the Syrian, execution of, ii. 455.
— Ibn Walíd Ibn Mustanah, rebellion of, ii. 443, 453.
Saken or Sakn Ibn Ibráhm, historian, ii. 102.
— Ibn Sa‘íd, historian, his lives of celebrated Kátibs, i. 187, 464.
Sakhr Belay (or the rock of Pelayo), where situated, i. 291, 546, ii. 194, 480.
Sakhrah, town, besieged and taken by Ferdinand, ii. 378.
Sakkáf, chief of the Almogávares at Seville, ii. App. lxxx.
Sakmút, Sakút, or Sokkát, Hájib of the Bení Idrís and governor of Ceuta, i. 36, 333.
Sakn. See Saken.
Sakru-l-koraysh (the hawk of Koraysh), surname given to 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 82; why and by whom, ib. and 93.
Sakút. See Sakmút.
Saláhu-d-dín Ibn Ayúb (Saladin), sends an embassy to Ya’kób, i. App. xxxviii; ii. 323.
Salár. See Shablar.
Sáleb, the 'Abbáside, ii. 58.
— Ibn Sa‘íd, Sultán of Nokúr, ii. 145.
— Ibn Taríf, founder of the religious sect of the Baraghwáttah in Africa, i. 36, 333; account of his origin and conquests, ib.
INDEX.

Sárah, grand-daughter of Wittiza, her adventures, ii. 50.

Sarakostah (Saragossa), city, described, i. 64, 65; taken by Músá, 288, 544; becomes the capital of an independent kingdom, ii. 255; besieged and taken by Alfonso I. of Aragon, 256, 303, App. xlv.

Saranj, the hematites or blood-stone, where found in Spain, i. 390, 491.

Sardinia, island of, invaded and plundered by the Arabs, i. App. lxvii.

Sawádah, wife of the prophet Mohammed, ii. 168.

Sawwár Ibn Hamdún Al-mohârebi Al-kaysí, his rising at Granada, ii. 401, 442; his wars with the Muwâllâde, ih.; his death, 443, 447.

Science, cultivation of, by the Spanish Moslems, i. 139.

Slavonians, generic name given by the Arabs to the Northern people, i. 19; imported into Spain by the Franks, 380.

Sebtah (Ceuta), history of, i. Pref. xxxiii; the city taken by Mohammed III. of Granada, ii. 347; by Yúsuf Ibn Tâshefán, 509.

Sects, religious, followed by the Spanish Moslems, i. 112.

Secunda. See Shakandah.

Seddaray Ibn Wazîr, Lord of Badajoz, ii. 310, 518; makes his submission to the Almohades, App. xlii; obtains the command of an army against the Christians, lviv.

Sefayn, battle of, i. 298, ii. 11.

Sefwán Ibn Idrís At-tojibí (Abú Bahr), works written by, i. 195, 356, 476.

Segovia. See Shekúbi'ah.

Segura, a town in Spain, i. 340.

Sejúmá, a town of Eastern Africa, i. App. lxii.


Send, a district in the Alpujarras, ii. 386.

Senhájah, Berber tribe of, subdued, i. App. lxii.

Séráju-d-daulah. See Abú 'A'mir.

Servingo, the Christian, son of Count Hossán, ii. 452.

Sérítaníah (Cerdagne), invaded by the Arabs, ii. 100, 425.

Seville. See Ishbihliyah.

Seyf, a celebrated traditionist, what he says about Spain, i. 80.

Seyfu-d-daulah Ibn Hamdún, Sultán of Aleppo, i. 332.

Seyfu-d-daulah Ibn Húd, ii. 256; takes Cordova from Ibn Hamdín, 517.

Seyr Ibn Abí Bekr Al-lamtúnî, the Almoravide, i. 61; makes war against Alfonso VI. of Leon, ii. 295; takes Murcia, 296; Badajoz, 297; puts to death the king of the latter city, ih.; besieges Al-mu'tamed in Seville, 254, 297; takes him prisoner, 298; his conquests in Al-gharb or Western Spain, 303, App. xlii.


Shá, poet, i. 190, 468.

Shabadían. See Zeyád Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán.

Shablar or Shebalár (written also Salár and Shalár), a suburb of Cordova, i. 206, 486.

Shábûr or Shábûr, the eunuch, becomes King of Badajoz, i. 369, ii. 256.

Shadhankah, a kind of generous hawk, i. 257, 514.

Shaybeyran, mountain of, near Vera, i. 90, 389.

Sháhín, i. 306.

Shájá', a freedman of Al-musta'in, King of Saragossa, goes on an embassy to Alfonso, i. 130.

Shajarí, species of amber so called, where found, i. 61, 370.

Shakandah or Shekundah (Secunda ?), a village close to Cordova, i. 277, 328, 522; united to the capital, ih.; description of, 205, 206, 485; battle fought at, ii. 50, 427.

Shakarah or Shukrah, a musical instrument made at Seville, i. 59, 366.

Shakiá Ibn 'Abdi-l-wáhed, the Berber, revolts against 'Abdu-r-rahmán I. of Cordova, ii. 420.

Shákr Al-beránísí (Abú Harb), ii. 451.

— Ibn Abí-l-ashmatt, ii. 66, 417.

Shalbaterra (Salvatier), castle of, besieged and taken by Mohammed An-nássir, ii. App. lxviii.

Shaltis (Saltas), island of, at the mouth of the river Tinto, described, i. 62, 72, 379.

Shâlibáníah (Salobreña), a sea-port town on the coast of Granada, i. 480.

Shâlbún, supposed meaning of the word, i. 479.

Shámiún or Syrians, Arabs so called, why, ii. 44.

Shammám, meaning of the word, i. 31, 327.

Shamunt, a town of the district of Medinaceli, ii. App. xiv.

Shankiflah, fortress, ii. App. lxii.

Shâshdí. See 'Abdu-r-rahmán, son of Al-mansúr.

Shanta-baríaq (Sanitberia), town in the province of Toledo, ii. 420, 440, 457.

— Mariah Al-gharb. See Santa María Al-gharbiyyah.
INDEX.

Shanta Mariah Ibn Razin. See Santa Maria.
Shantareyn or Shantiren (St. Irene), now Santarem in Portugal, its gold mines, i. 61; siege of that town by Abū Ya'kūb Yūsuf, ii. 319.
Shant ibn Elshibih (San Estevan de Gormaz), besieged by Al-hakem II. of Cordova, ii. 158.
—— Mánikas, peninsula of, in Galicia, ii. 195.
—— Yakoh (Sanctus Jacobus), now Santiago of Galicia, its famous shrine, described, i. 74; the city taken and destroyed by Al-mansūr, ii. 195.
Sharshāl, town of Africa, i. App. xxxiv.
Shashenah, castle of, built, ii. App. xxxix.
Štítibah, the ancient Ssetabis, now Xatiba, a city of the kingdom of Valencia, described, i. 67; its paper-mills, 94, 375.
Shaudhar or Shoudhar (Xodar), in the province of Jaén, ii. 72, 443, 445.
Sha'yb Ibn Mohammed, founder of a sect, ii. 469.
Sha'yībites, sect of the, ii. 469.
Shebalor or Sheblar, a suburb of Cordova, i. 486.
Sheberinah (Severina), town, taken by Alfonso En-
riquez, ii. 522, App. iviii.
Shebrit At-tawlī, Lord of Huesca, ii. 451.
Shebt Mánikas (Simancas), battle of, ii. 463.
Shehábu-d-dīn Al-fāsī. See Ahmed Al-fāsī.
Sheih, a district in Arabia, i. 330.
Shekūbi'ah (Segovia), taken by Fruea I., ii. 85.
Shekūrāh (Segura), name of a river, city, and moun-
tain of Spain, i. 68, 377, 521.
Sheif, district of, in Africa, ii. 479.
Shenil or Shinjil, the river Xenil, the Singilis of the Romans, i. 43, 347.
Sberbil, the Christian, flees from Cordova and joins Ibn Hafṣūn, ii. 451, 452.
Sherish (Xerez), description of, i. 59, 333.
Shettif, sea-port on the western coast of Africa, ii.
App. xix.
Sheykhūl-ghozāt, meaning of the words, ii. 351,
536.
—— 1-islāmi. See Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmān.
Sheyrah, a place near Jaen, ii. 153.
Shidhūnāh (Asido), now Medina-Sidonia, i. 88, 275;
taken by Mūsā, 284, 526.
Shiites, conquests of the, in Africa, ii. 143.
Shilb (Silves), town, described, i. 62; taken by Al-
fonso Enriquez, ii. 320; recovered by the Almo-
hades, ib., and App. lxiv.
Shinbā, a place in Andalusia, ii. 432.
Shinir (Suniarius ?), a Count of Catalonia, ii. 455.
Shintrah (Cintra), in Portugal, fertility of its soil, i. 62.
Shithibert (Sigisbert), son of Wittiza, i. 523.
Sho'ālah, anecdote preserved by, ii. 207.
Shohayd Ibn 'Isa Ibn Shohayd, Wizir of 'Abdu-r-rahmān I. of Cordova, ii. 91.
Shokhays, chief of the Muwallads of Elvira, ii.
442.
Shortah, police force in the Mohammedan cities, i. 421, App. xxxii.
Shoudhar. See Shaudhar.
Shukar, the river Sucron, now Xucar, i. 376.
Shūs or Wāda Shūs, now Guadajoz, near Ezija, ii. 52.
Si'ayah Ibn Muthana, ii. App. lxx.
Sibauyeh. See 'Amru Ibn Othmān.
Sibkah or Sabīkah, name of a hill and cemetery in Granada, ii. 345, 349, 369.
Sicily, conquest of, by the Arabs, i. 174, 405, App.
Ixxvi; history of, by whom written, 204.
Sidonia. See Medina-Sidonia.
Sijjilmāsah (Sejilemsa), a city of Africa, history of,
i. 175, 302.
Sindered, Bishop of Toledo, i. 533, 534.
Sinjīlah, expedition to, ii. 453.
Sittālisah, district close to Cordova, i. 214, 491.
Sohā, mother of Hishām II. of Cordova, promotes Al-mansūr, ii. 178; appoints him Wāli-l-medinah
of Cordova, 182; and Hájib to her son, 183; is accused of purloining the royal treasure, 186.
Sofeyfasaf. See Foseysafafa.
Sohayl, a town and district on the coast of Malaga, i. 49; why so called, 50, ii. 455.
Sokkāt. See Sakāt.
Solaym, tribe, i. 343, ii. App. lxiii.
Somontan, mountains of, near Jaen, ii. 439.
Story-tellers, in Cordova, account of, i. 143.
Subeytalah, a city of Eastern Africa, i. 539, App.
xxxiv.
Suddatu-l-kobra, mosque of, in Cordova, i. 468.
Sufyān, tribe, ii. App. lxxii.
—— Ibn 'Adnān Ath-thauri (Abū 'Abdillah), ii.
107, 429.
—— Ibn Hānī Al-jeyshānī, ii. 10.
—— Ibn Malek Al-fehrī, i. App. lxxx.
—— Ibn Wahb Al-khaulānī, ii. 10.
Suleymán, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmān III. of Cordova,
ii. 141.
——, son of Al-murtadhi, of the house of
INDEX.

Umeyyah, becomes one of the candidates for the vacant throne, ii. 241.

Suleymán (Abú Ayúb), son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán I., revolts against his brother Hishám I., ii. 99, 426; against his nephew Al-hakem I., 104; is killed in battle, ib.

——— Ibn Ahmed Ibn Mohammed Ibn Húd, surnamed Al-musta'in-billah, King of Saragossa, i. 65, 128, 335, 373, ii. 256.

——— Ibn Al-ash'ath (Abú Dáwúd) As-sejestání, traditionist, i. 189, 466.

——— Ibn Al-hakem, revolts against Mohammed II., ii. 226; obtains the aid of the Christians, 491; takes possession of Cordova, 227, 492; is defeated and dethroned, 493; is restored to the throne, 494; defeated and put to death, 495.

——— Ibn Bahr, i. App. lxxix.

——— Ibn Dáuíd or Dáwúd (Solomon, son of David), fixes his residence in Toledo, i. 47; his table found there by Tárik, ib., and 287.

——— Ibn Dáwúd, chief of the Bení 'Askar, ii. 366.

——— Ibn Dhi-nún, ii. 441.

——— Ibn Hossán Ibn Jójol (Abú Dáwúd), his lives of the Spanish physicians, i. 187, 464; his life translated from Ibn Abí Oassaybi'ah, App. xxiii.


——— Ibn Mohammed, his commentary on the Mustasfí, i. 471.

——— Ibn Mohammed Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, rising of, in the district of Sidonia, ii. 448, 454.

——— Ibnu-lwalíd, Khalif of the Bení Umeyyah in the East, his reception of Músá Ibn Nosseyr, i. 293; orders the execution of 'Abdu-l-'azíz, 294, ii. 31, App. i.

——— Ibn Yódkhán Al-arabi Al-kelbí, his revolt at Saragossa, ii. 85, 89, 421.

Súltáníyyah, city, ii. 152.

Suníofred, Count of Barcelona, sends an embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 465.

Súas al-adáni, or nearer Súas, a province of Western Africa, i. 251; conquest of, by Músá Ibn Nosseyr, 252.

——— al-akssá, or remote Súas, a province of Western Africa, i. 510; invaded by the Arabs, App. lxviii.

Súasah, a city of Eastern Africa, i. App. xxxvii, lxvi.

Suwwár Ibn Abí Suýfán, i. 334.

Suwwár Ibn Tárik Al-kortobi, ii. 101.

Tabaristán, sea of, (the Caspian sea), i. 28.

Taberñah (Tabernas), river of, i. 53.

Tabiráh (Tavira), town, ii. 333.

Tabílat, town near Seville, surprised by the Berbers, ii. 449, App. l.

Table, that of Solomon, i. 25; where found, 47, 533.

Tadmor, a district of Syria, ii. 92.

Tagarinos, Moors so called by the Spaniards, i. 315.

Táhir Ibn Mohammed Al-muhanadas, or the geometer, ii. 190.

Tahort. See Tehart.

Tajoh (Tagus), river of Toledo, i. 47; bridge on the, by whom built, ib.; destroyed by Mohammed, Súltán of Cordova, 355.

Takkhíl Ibn Zorzár, mauí of Al-hakem II., is killed in battle, ii. 494.

Talaverá, town, i. 61, 280, ii. App. lxvi.

Talca, Campos de, or the site of the ancient Italic, near Seville, i. 367.


Talheyrah, town, ii. 457.

Tálíb Ibn Mauúd, ii. 454.

Talíd, the eunuch, his account of Al-hakem's library, ii. 169.

Tálikáh (Italica), taken by Isbábán, i. 24; description of, 60, 367; statue found among its ruins, ib., and 367.

Talubus, son of Beytáh (Athaulphus ?), i. 26, 324.

Takúa, King of Spain, i. 324.

Tálút, son of Sa'id, revolts with his father, ii. 443.

——— Ibn 'Abdí-l-jábbar Al-ma'aferí, the theologian, revolts against Al-hakem I., ii. 102, 103.

Tamarít (Tamarîte), in Aragon, i. 65.

Támesná, city of Africa, i. 333.

Tánezjúrt, city of Africa, i. 497.

Tanjah (Tangiers), besieged and taken by Músá Ibn Nosseyr, i. 252.

Tantilli, carpets called, where manufactured, i. 69.

Tarab. See Tarúb.

Taraf-al-ghár (Trafalgar), cape, i. 22, 320.

Tarasonah or Turiasónah, the ancient Turioso (now Tarazona), in Aragon, i. 65; besieged by Louis le Débonnaire, ii. 104.

Tarayánah, now Triana, a suburb of Seville, i. 57; called also Múd ward-a-násir, or the transfluvial, 363.
INDEX.

Tarbī, town of, ii. 454.

Tarīf Ibn Mālik (Abū Zar'ah), lands in Spain, i. 250, 265, App. xlii; gives his name to the port of Tarīf, 268, 517, 518; his various names, surnames, and patronymics, 517, 519.

Tarīf. See Jezirah Tarīf.

Tārir Ibn Zeyād or Zeyyād An-nefezī Al-leythī, lands at Mount Calpe, and names it after himself, i. 253, 266, 519, 521, App. xlii; sets fire to his ships, 526; defeats the Goths on the banks of the Guadalete, 271; takes Carmona, 275; Ezija, ib.; Toledo, 282; his disagreement with Mūsā, 286; his departure for the East, 292; verses composed by, ii. 13.

Tārir-Khoshayn, near Malaga, ii. 455.

Tarkōnah or Tararakūnah (Tarraco), now Tarragona, its celebrated aqueduct, i. 77.

Tarraco, an Ethiopian warrior, conquers Spain, i. 323.

Tarragona. See Tarkōnah.

Tārib or Tarab, mistress of 'Abdu-r-rahmān II. of Cordova, i. 137, ii. 125; anecdote of, 126.

Tāshefin (Abū Ibn Mūhammad), the Almoravide, succeeds his father 'Alī Ibn Yūsuf, ii. 308; death of, App. xlix.

—— Al-lamtūnī, general of 'Abdu-l-mu'men, ii. App. liv.


—— Ibn Yatanghumor is deprived of the government of Telemsūn, ii. App. xliii.

Tawāfu-l-leyl (the night-watch), called also Ad-dārābūn and As'hābu-l-arbā', their duties, i. 105.

Tāwūs, a tābī' or follower, enters Spain with Mūsā Ibn Nosseyr, i. 380.

Taylasān, a kind of cloak used by the Spanish Moslems, i. 116, 407.

Tayy, tribe of, ii. 26.

Tehāmeh, a district of Arabia, i. 176, 330, 351; also a city of Africa, ii. 86.

Tehart or Tahort, a town of Africa, ii. 62; history of, by whom written, i. 175.

Tekernā, town of, near Malaga, ii. 447, 457.

Tekerūna, town, ii. 342.

Tekfah, a Berber woman, conceals 'Abdu-r-rahmān I. under her cloak, ii. 61.

Tekfūr. See Nekfūr.

Tekrūr, the people of, take the city Aywalātīn, in Sūdān, i. 303.

Telemsūn, a city of Africa, (the new), built by Yūsuf Ibn Tāshefin, ii. 275.

Temám Ibn 'Alkamāh (Abū Ghālib), ii. 65, 421; his son put to death by Suleymān, 91, 423.

—— Ibn Ghālib Ibn 'Omar (Abū Ghālib), poet and historian, i. 35, 77, 184, 310, 332, ii. 399; extracts from his work, i. 71, 92, 117.

Temedint, a town of Africa proper, i. 345.

Temán Ad-dārī, i. 298, 548.

—— Ibn Balkīn, the Zeyrīte, governor of Malaga, ii. 249, 295.

—— Ibn Mohammed, ii. 12.

—— Ibn Yūsuf (Abū Tāhir), the Almoravide, his wars with the Christians, ii. 303, 306, 514, App. xlv.

Tentalah or Tentālah, a hamlet of the province of Murcia, celebrated for its manufactory of carpeting, i. 93, 392.

Tenzert (al. Benzert, Benizert, and Nebzert), a town of Africa, i. 527.

Teron, fabulous King of Spain, i. 323.

Teym, tribe of, ii. 22.

Tezzá, tribe of, ii. 365.

Thābit Ibn Kāsim, ii. 170.

—— Ibn Mohammed Al-jorjānī (Abū-l-fotāh), ii. 258.

Thafar Al-baghdādī settles in Cordova, ii. 168.

Thagher, meaning of the word, i. 315; Thagheru-l- 'ālī, or upper Thagher, 65, 288; Thagheru-l-ādānī, or lower Thagher, 315.

Thakīf, tribe of, ii. 23.


—— Ibn Salāmāl Al-‘amēlī or Al-jodhāmī, ii. 44.

Thamūd, people of, ii. 23.

Theghr (Segre), river, why so called, ii. 541.

Theghri, a native from the Theghr or Thaghr, now corrupted by the Spaniards into Zeyrī, i. 315, ii. 541.

Theghriūn or Zegrīs, a family of Granada, ii. 541; the enemies of the Benī Serrāj or Abencerrajes, ib.

Thecodofred, Duke of Cordova, palace built by, i. 487, 512, 522.

Theodemir. See Tudemir.

Theology, study of, among the Spanish Moslems, i. 142; works on, 179, 191.

Theophil, Emperor of Constantinople, sends an embassy to ‘Abdu-r-rahmān II. of Cordova, ii. 115.

Thoghūr Rūtt, or the fortified lines of Rute, taken by the Christians, ii. 350.

Thuābah Ibn Salāmāh Al-jodhāmī, governor of Spain under the Khalīfs, ii. 27, 47, 49.
INDEX.

Tiflash, a town of Africa proper, i. 345.
Timur or Timur-lenk, invades Syria, i. 311.
Timnelel, tribe, ii. App. lxxiii.
Tiraz, stuff used by princes and wealthy citizens, where manufactured, i. 51, 858; by whom introduced into Spain, ii. 434.
Tish, a village on the coast of Malaga, i. 49, 356.
Tixola, village near Guadix, ii. 514.
Tobnah, a place in Africa, i. App. lxi.
Toñal or tafal, sort of mineral earth, i. 390.
Tojibites, family and dynasty of the, i. 186, ii. 441.
Toletalalah or Toleytolah (Toledo), city, described, i. 46, 47, 354, 533; taken by Tariq, 282, 532; rises against 'Abdu-r-rahman II. of Cordova, ii. 428; is made the capital of a kingdom, 255; taken by Alfonso VI. of Leon, 262.
Torosh (Torrox), a town on the coast of Granada, ii. 66.
Tosheenah (Tocina), district near Seville, ii. 250.
Trafalgar, cape of, called by the Arabs Taraf al-ghdr (the promontory of the cave) or Jebal al-ghdr (the mountain of the cave), i. 22; why so called, 320.
Truxillo. See Turjalah.
Tubal, son of Yafeth, i. 17.
Tuli, island of, the ultima Thule of the ancients, i. 19, 317.
Turban, use of the, in Spain, i. 116, 407.
Turia, river, now Guadalaviar, i. 376.
Turjalah or Turjelo (Truxillo), in Estremadura, peopleled by Al-mansur, i. App. xviii; taken by Alfonso Enriquez, ii. 318; destroyed, App. lxvi.
Tútah (Theuda?), Queen of Navarre, ii. 135, 137; her embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, 139.
Tutelaylah (Tutela), now Tudela in Aragon, i. 65; taken by the Franks, ii. 427; battle of, 303.
Ubedhah (Ubeda), a town of Andalusia, dancing girls of, i. 53; the city taken by the Almoravides, ii. 297.
Ukoh (Hugo), Count of Aries, sends an embassy to 'Abdu-r-rahmán III. of Cordova, ii. 139.
Ulah (Ulla), river of Galicia, ii. 195.
Umeyyah, dynasty of, overthrown in the East, ii. 58, App. vii; established in Cordova, 70; numbers of the family who settle in Spain, 76.
— Ibn 'Abdu-l-malek Ibn Kattan, rises to revenge his father's death, ii. 42.
— son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. of Cordova, ii. 428.

Utneyyah [Ibn 'Abdi-l-ghāfīr], governor of Seville, ii. 450; put to death by the Muwallads, ib.
—- Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek Ibn 'Omar defeated, ii. 83; put to death by his own father, ib.
—- Ibn Is'hāk deserts to the Christians, ii. 136; fights under Ramiro, ib.; returns to Cordova and is pardoned, 137.
—- Ibn Is'hāk, of the family of Umeyyah, is appointed Sāhih-l-medinah of Cordova, ii. 488.
—- Ibn Yezíd, Kātib of 'Abdu-r-rahmān I. of Cordova, ii. 92.
—- Ibn Zeyyād, Kādí of Cordova, ii. 72.
Umm-'A'ssem or Egilona, widow of Roderic, marries 'Abdu-l-'azīz Ibn Mūsā, ii. 30, 404.
—-Ja'far, castle of, ii. 442.
Ummu-l-asbagh, sister of 'Abdu-r-rahmān Ibn Mu'āwiyyah, assists him in his flight, ii. 60; sends him money, 61.
—-l-baneyn, i. 298, 548, ii. 5.
—-l-harām, i. 173; is present at the conquest of Cyprus, 174.
—-l-kor (the mother of the districts), name given by the Arabs to Saragossa, i. 65.
Urraca, daughter of Alfonso VI. of Leon, espouses Raymond, Count of Burgundy, ii. App. xlv; is besieged in Toledo, 510.
Vadalmedina, river near Medina-Sidonia, i. 525.
Valencia. See Balensiah.
Vállecos, town of Estremadura, ii. 480.
Velez. See Beleah.
Vilches, a town of Andalusia, ii. 438.
Vincent, St., church of, in Cordova, i. 217.
Vines, rooted up by order of Al-hakem II., i. 108.
Wabr or Wabar, a town near Seville, battle of, ii. 449.
Wādā Al-fushahah or Alfoseca, a river in the territory of Cordova, ii. 452.
— Barbat (Rio Barbate), a river near Cadiz, i. 527.
— Bekke (Rio de Vejer), near Xerex, i. 525.
— Beni 'Abdi-r-rahmān (the river of the sons of 'Abdu-r-rahmān), near Bishter, ii. 455.
— Fardish (Rio Fardix), near Guadix, ii. 514.
— l-abyādā (the white river), now Guadalaviar, in Murcia, i. 68.
— l-ā'sel (Rio de la miel), i. 521, ii. 537.
—- Lek (Guadalete), a river near Xerex, battle of, i. 271—273; various names given to the, 524, 527, ii. 493.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX.</th>
<th>clix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wáda-l-feoh (Guadalfeo), river, ii. 457.</td>
<td>Walid. See Al-walid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— I-hajjárah (the river of the stones), now Guadalaxara, i. 48, 319; called also Medina at Al-saraj, i. 441.</td>
<td>—— Ibn Khayrún or Khayzarán, judge of the Christians in Cordova, ii. 162, 163, 471.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— I-kebír (the great river). See Guadalquivir.</td>
<td>—— Ibn Moslemah Al-morédi, ii. 190.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— I-kérs, a place in Arabia, i. 299.</td>
<td>—— Ibn Walid, ii. 442.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— I-medina (the river of the city), now Guadalmedina near Malaga, i. 486.</td>
<td>Wádlí-medina (Vadalmedina), office of the, ii. 182, 476.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— I-ordhání (the river of Ordoño), near Zamora, ii. 463.</td>
<td>Ward, castle in the district of Xerez, ii. 442.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— mena, battle of, ii. 192.</td>
<td>Warkattás, a Berber chief, i. App. lvii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— Minoh, the river Mino, ii. 194.</td>
<td>Wáttírmár Ibn Abi Bekr Al-bírzúl, aneécote of, ii. 215.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— r-ramán (Guadarrama), river, ii. 66.</td>
<td>Wáthír Ibn Abi Bekr Al-lamtún is appointed governor of Mallorca, ii. App. lxii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— r-román (the river of the pomegranate trees), now Guaromán in the Sierra Morena, i. 486.</td>
<td>Wáyíl Ibn Rabi‘ah, ii. 510.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— Salit (Guadacelete), river, battle of, ii. 127.</td>
<td>Waz‘ab, a district near Cordova, ii. 205, 485.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— Sefáyín (the river of the ships), near Algesiras, ii. 537.</td>
<td>Webdeh (Huete), town, ii. App. xxx.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— Shús (Guadajoz), river, ii. 52, 496.</td>
<td>Weskáh, the ancient Osca, now Huesca, i. 65; battle of, 127.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— Taghlah, town, ii. 305.</td>
<td>Wittiza (Ghittishah), King of Spain, relieves Ceuta, besieged by the Arabs, i. 254, 512; dies, ib.; posterity left by, ii. 54, 415.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— Theghr (Segre), a river of Aragon, ii. 541.</td>
<td>Xatiba. See Shatibah.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— z-zéyytún (the river of the olive-trees), in the district of Birtáníyath in Aragon, ii. 455.</td>
<td>Yaghmurasán, founder of the dynasty of the Beni Zeyyán, i. 497.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wádheh, the eunuch, general of Al-mámún, King of Toledo, ii. App. xxvii.</td>
<td>Yahsob, family of, where established, ii. 28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— , the eunuch, general of Al-mansúr, is defeated by Zeyrí Ibn ‘Atiyah, ii. 192; embraces the party of Mohammed II., 227, 491; restores Hishám II. to the throne, ib. and 494; is put to death by the populace, 497.</td>
<td>Yahya I. of Toledo, surnamed Al-mámún, reign of, ii. 255; palace built by, 263.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wádí-‘Adhra, the river of Adra, i. 53.</td>
<td>—— II. of Toledo, surnamed Al-kdádir, succeeds his father Hishám, ii. 255; is dethroned by Alfonso VI. of Leon, 263, App. xxxi; gains possession of Valencia, xxxii; is put to death, 333, App. xxxix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— Anah (Guadiana), river, i. 61; absurd derivation of the word, 369.</td>
<td>——, son of Idrísa, King of Malaga, dethroned, ii. 246.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— ash, the river of Acci or Guadix, description of, i. 46, ii. 306.</td>
<td>—— (Abú Bekr) Al-modhaffar Al-mansúr, King of Badajoz, ii. 505.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wádiu-l-abyádh. See Wáda-l-abyádh.</td>
<td>—— Al-qhazzúl, poet, his metrical history of the conquest of Spain by the Moslems, i. 194, 475, ii. 57; his embassy to Constantinople, 115; to Northern Germany, ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—— I-eshit, the same as the Wádi-ash or river of Guadix, i. 353.</td>
<td>—— Al-habbún, King of Malaga, ii. App. xviii; dethroned by his cousin, ib.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wádi-zanlakalto, place so called in Catalonia, i. 21.</td>
<td>—— Ibn ‘Abdi-r-rahmán Al-makkár, i. 302.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wáhrán (Oran), a town of Western Africa, history of, by whom written, i. 175.</td>
<td>—— Ibn Abí Bekr, son of Yúsuf Ibn Táshefin, recovers Valencia, ii. App. xlii.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wakash (Huëcas), a village of New Castile, ii. 404.</td>
<td>Wakil, meaning of the word, i. App. xxxi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waládah, daughter of Mohammed III. of Cordova, i. 342, 473; epistle in verse dedicated to, by the poet Ibn Zeydún, 342.</td>
<td>Waládah, daughter of Mohammed III. of Cordova, i. 342, 473; epistle in verse dedicated to, by the poet Ibn Zeydún, 342.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

Yahya Ibn Abi Hafas, ii. 321.

— Ibn Abi Mohammed (Abú Zakariyya Ibn Abi Hafas), Sultán of Túnis, i, 119, 405, 410, ii. 321; his rule obeyed in Spain, App. lxxvi.

— Ibn 'Ali, of the house of Hammad, surnamed Al-mu'tali, gains possession of Cordova, ii. 238; which he abandons, 239; is killed in battle, 244.

— Ibn 'Ali At-tebrizí (Abú Zakariyya), his commentary on the Suktu-z-zend by At-tenúkhi, i. 479.

— Ibn 'Ali Ibn Gháníyyah, governor of Spain under the Almoravides, proclaims independence, ii. 309, 310.

— Ibn An-nássir, surnamed Al-mu'tassem-billah, ninth of the Almohades, is dethroned by Al-mamún, ii. 324, App. lxxiv.

— Ibn Hakem Al-ghazzál. See Yahya Al-ghazzál.

— Ibn Hasan, the Idrísite, visits Spain, ii. 145.

— Ibn Hudheyl (Abú Zakariyya), ii. 539.

— Ibn Idrís, seventh of the Idrísites of Africa, defeated, ii. 143; put to death, 144.


— Ibn I’shák, physician and Wizir of 'Abdu-r-rahmán III., his works, i. 187, 464.


— Ibn Kadhám, ii. 456.

— Ibn Maymún, general of 'Abdu-l-múmen, ii. 313.

— Ibn Mohammed At-tojibí, general of Al-hakem II., defeats the Christians, ii. 158; invades Catalonia, 159.

— Ibn Mohammed Ibn Leyth, ii. 140.

— Ibn Mohammed Ibn mnu-s-seyrafí (Abú Bekr), his history of the Almoravides, i. 193, 472.

— Ibn Mundhir At-tojibí, King of Saragossa, ii. 256.


— Ibn Músá Ibn Dhi-n-nún, rebellion of, ii. 440, 441.

— Ibn Razún, ii. 507.

— Ibn Salmah Al-kelbí, ii. 35.

— Ibn Sukdílah, chief of the Arabs of Elvira, makes war against the Muwalláda, ii. 442, 447.

— Ibn 'Omar, ii. 362.

— Ibn Sa’id or Sa’d, i. App. lxxxviii; ii. 8, 397.

— Ibn Umeyyah Ibn Wahb (Abú Bekr), ii. 190.

Yahya Ibn-u-l-haddáj Al-a’lem, his collection of songs, i. 198, 480.


— Ibn Yahya (Abú Sáleb), governor of Seville, ii. 418.

— Ibn Yahya Al-leythí, theologian, i. 40, 108, 113, 343, 400; ii. 102, 111; death of, 121.

— Ibn Yahya Al-yahssobí (Abú-s-sabáh), chief of the Yemenite Arabs in Spain, ii. 68; revolts against 'Abdu-r-rahmán I., 84, 90; is taken prisoner and put to death, ib., and 420.

— Ibn Yahya Ibn Kásim, i. 343.

— Ibn Yahya Ibn-u-l-samína, i. 149, 427, 188; account of, 342.

— Ibn Yezid Al-yahssobí or At-tojibí, Kádi of Cordova, ii. 92, 423.

— Ibn Yezíd At-tojibí, ii. 418.


— Ibn Zakariyyá Ibn Bartal At-temímí, ii. 178.

— Ibn Zaryáb, ii. 118.

— Ibn Zadílaf, his rising at Santa Maria, ii. 440.

Ya’ish or Ya’ysh, the geometrician, architect of 'Abdu-l-múmen, employed in building the castle of Gibraltar, ii. 315.

— Ibn Sa’íd Ibn Mohammed Ibn Othmán Al-warrúk, his history of Mohammedan Spain, ii. 171, 474.

— Ibn Selálah, i. App. lxxviii.

Ya’kob (the Apostle James, or Santiago), shrine of, ii. 193.

Ya’kib, son of 'Abdu-r-rahmán II. of Cordova, i. 138.


— Ibn 'Abdi-l-hakk, of the Bení Merín of Africa, ii. 341.

— Ibn 'Abdi-r-rahmán, i. 138.

— Ibn Sufiyán, ii. 9.

Ya’kúbah, battle of, i. 559.

Ya’kúz, a village in the west of Spain, i. 371.

Ya’la Ibn Mohammed, chief of the tribe of Yeferen or Yeferún, defeated by Jauhar, the Shiite, ii. 167.

— Ibn Mohammed, governor of Fez, ii. 479.

Yarghittah, fortress built by Mundhir Ibn Huríz, ii. 444.

Yarmúk, battle of, ii. 4, 397.

Yaumeyn, town near Seville, ii. 250.
INDEX.

Yebeesh, town, ii. 514.
Yebeisah (Yebusa), now Iviza, island of, described, i. 73, 379.
Yéborah (Eborra), a town of Portugal, i. 62.
Yeferen or Yeferun, tribe of, ii. 167.
Yeldil Ibn Sa'id Ibn Jeldásen (Abú Dáwúd), architect, ii. 523.
Yelúz, river, ii. 456.
Yemenites or Arabs from Yemen, settle in Spain, ii. 24; rise against 'Abdú-rahmán I., and are defeated, 82; against 'Abdullah of Cordova, 449; their feuds with the Modharites, 446.
Yemes, castle of, taken by storm, ii. 457.
Yenish, town, ii. 306.
Yezíd, one of the ancestors of 'Amru-l-kays, ii. 95.
---, a freed slave of Abú Sufyán, i. 335.
---, a freed slave of 'Abdú-rahmán Ibn Mu'áwiyah, accompanies him on his flight, ii. 61.
--- Al-bárid. See Yezíd Ibn Rabí'.
--- Ar-rádhi, son of Al-mu'tamed of Seville, is put to death, ii. 253.
--- Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek, of the Bení Umeyyah in the East, ii. 9.
--- Ibn 'Abdi-s-sellám, ii. 444.
--- Ibn Abí Moslem, governor of Eastern Africa, ii. 9, 33.
--- Ibn Masrúf, i. App. lxvi.
--- Ibn Masrúk Al-yahssobí, i. 298.
--- Ibn Mu'áwiyah, Khalíf of the race of Umeyyah, ii. 399.
--- Ibn Sa'id Ibn Moslem, i. App. lii, lxxx.
--- Ibnu'n-muhlih Ibn Abí Soffrah, i. 295, 547, App. lxxxiiij, lxxxvi, lxxxviiii.
Yobaster or Yobashter, a castle in Andalusia, ii. 131, 437.
Yozar, a district of Murcia, ii. 338.
Yúnas Al-bathaliósí (Abú-l-walid), ii. 171.
Yúsuf I. (Abú Ya'kúb), third of the Almohades, reign of, ii. 318, App. lvi; his death before Santarem, 319, App. lxii.
--- II. (Abú Ya'kúb) Al-muntanser-billah, sixth of the Almohades, reign of, ii. 324.
--- (Abú Ya'kúb), second of the Bení Merín, crosses over to Spain, ii. 344; gains the battle of Ezija, 345.
--- I. (Abú-l-hejáj), King of Granada, reign of, ii. 356.
--- II. of Granada, reign of, ii. 368.
Yúsuf (Abú-l-hejáj), son of Abú-l-hasan, revolt of, ii. 373.
--- Al-belawi (Abú-l-hejáj), his verses on the Málaga figs, i. 49.
--- Al-betruhf, Lord of Niebla, makes his submission to the Almohades, ii. App. 1; relieves Cordova, besieged by Alfonso VIII. of Leon, lii.
--- Al-bolútt, ii. 168.
--- Ibn 'Abdi-l-barr (Abú 'Amru or 'Omar), i. 37, 182, 194, 457, 474, ii. 23, 200.
--- Ibn 'Abdi-l-málík Ibn Ibrázím At-telemáni, his abridgement of Al-makkári's work, i. Pref. xvii.
--- Ibn 'Abdír-rahmán Al-fehrí, is elected governor of Spain, ii. 53; several chiefs revolt against him, 54; marches against 'Abdú-rahmán I., 69; is defeated, 70; obliged to capitulate, 72; revolts a second time, 419; is put to death, 79.
--- Ibn Ahmed Ibn Hisdév (Abú Ja'far), i. App. xvi.
--- Ibn Ahmed Ibn Húdíd, ii. 333.
--- Ibn 'Ali Al-kodhá'i Al-käßál, theologian, i. 466.
--- Ibn 'Ali, chief of the tribe of Tinmelel, ii. App. lxxiii.
--- Ibn Bokht Al-fárèsí, ii. 66, 91, 99.
--- Ibn Hamdún Ibn Basil, execution of, ii. 455.
--- Ibn Harán Ar-rámed, poet, ii. 28, 171.
--- Ibn Húdíd, surnamed Al-mutamen, King of Saragossa, ii. 256.
--- Ibn Makhhús, governor of Ceuta, ii. App. l.
--- Ibn Sa'id Ibn Mardanish (Abú-l-hejáj) is appointed governor of Valencia, ii. 334; submits to the Almohades, App. lix.
--- Ibn Suleýmán, general of 'Abdú-l-múmen, relieves Seville, besieged by the Almoravides, ii. App. li.
--- Ibn Suleýmán (Abú-l-hejáj), his commentary on the poems of Mutennabi, and on the Hamásah, i. 197, 479.
--- Ibn Suleýmán Ibn Húdíd, ii. 265, 508.
--- Ibn Táshefin, the Almoravide, i. 36, 132; is solicited to go to Spain, ii. 273—275; lands at Algeiras, 278; marches to Seville, 279; gains the battle of Zalakah, 286.

Záb, a province of Western Africa, ii. 191.
Zadlaf, ii. 440.
Zafarraya, a hamlet in the province of Cordova, i. 356.
Zag, a Rabbi attached to the court of Alfonso X., i. 384.
Zaghhabah, tribe, ii. App. lvii, lxii.
Zaghwan, conquest of, by Musa, i. App. lvii.
Zakariyya Ibn Khattab, ii. 170.
—— Ibnu-sh-shahid, ii. App. lxxii.
Zakhraf, mother of Al-Hakem I., ii. 106.
Zaalal Ibn Ya'ys Ibn Fardnak Abu Farezdwi, rebellion of, ii. 442.
Zalamia, town, ii. 402.
Zaldmi or ZalDMI, musical instrument made at Seville, i. 59.
Zamora. See Samdrah.
Zaryab. See 'Ali Ibn Nafi'.
Zeyd Ibn Kissed As-sekseki, i. 529, 530, ii. 2.
—— Ibn 'Abdi-rahman Ibn Zeyd Al-lakhmi (Abu 'Abdillah), surnamed Shabattdn, theologian, i. 113, 404, ii. 99; anecdotes of, 101, 107, 121.
—— Ibn Aflah, mauli of Al-hakem II. of Cordova, ii. 160.
Zeyd Ibn Kassed As-sekseki, i. 529, 530, ii. 2.
—— Ibn Khalidun, death of, ii. 453.
—— Ibn Na'im Al-hadhrami, ii. 10.
—— Ibn Thabit, i. 124, ii. 9.

Zeynab, daughter of Zeyad, a poetess of Granada, i. 45, 166.
Zeyri Ibn Mun'ad, the Zeyrite, ii. 248.
Zeyri Ibn 'Atiyah, surnamed Al-kartds, chief of the tribe of Maghrawah, and ruler of Fez, defeated by 'Abdu-l-malek, son of Al-mansur, i. 188, 516; sends presents to Al-mansur, 190; visits Cordova, i. 191; quarrels with Al-mansur, 192; is forcibly dispossessed of his government, ib.
Zeyrites, dynasty of the, ii. 248.
Zeyyad Ibn 'Amru Al-lakhmi, ii. 41.
Zeyydn Ibn Mardanfs (Abu Jemil), takes Valencia, ii. 328, 530, App. lxxvi; Denia, lxxvi; Murcia, lxxviii.
Zidin (Muley), Emperor of Morocco, work written for his use, i. Pref. xxviii; his library taken by the Spaniards, xi.
Ziryab. See 'Ali Ibn Nafi'.
Ziya'datullah, son of Ibrdhim, Sultdn of Eastern Africa, of the dynasty of the Beni Aghlab, i. App. xxxv.
Zohayr Al-'dmiri, a Sclavonian eunuch of Al-mansur, i. 144; succeeds Khayrdn in the kingdom of Almeria, 421; is killed in battle, ii. 248, 257.
Zohr Ibn 'Abdi-l-malek (Abu-l-'ala), a physician, i. 337.
Zor'ah Ibn Abi Mudrik (Abu Zar'ah), i. App. lx; defeated by the Berbers, lxii, lxv.
Zoreyk Al-ghosdni, his revolt against 'Abdu-r-rahnun, ii. 421.
—— Ibn Hakim, ii. 8.
Zubeyr Ibn 'Omar Al-mulaththam, governor of Cordova, i. 212; builds a country villa, 489.
—— [Ibnu-1-awam], i. App. lxxxix.
INDEX

THE TITLES OF THE ARABIC WORKS CITED IN THE COURSE OF THIS TRANSLATION, APPENDIX, AND NOTES.

i. App. vii.
ii. 505. (كتاب) الاستناد والبناطير
i. App. xvi.
i. 506. (كتاب) الاستناد والبناطير
ii. 502. (كتاب) الاستناد والبناطير
i. Pref. xxxi.
i. Pref. xxxii.
i. Pref. xxxv, 381.
ii. 468.
i. 298. (كتاب) ابیة من البصيفين
i. App. vii.
ii. 460. (كتاب) افعال وصرفها
i. Pref. xxxviii.
i. Pref. xxxii.
i. 250.
i. 473.
i. Pref. xxxii.
i. Pref. xxxviii.
i. 243, 506.
i. 37.
i. Pref. xxxviii.
i. Pref. xxxiii.
i. Pref. xxxv.
i. Pref. xxxii.
i. 316.
i. 313.
i. 361.
i. Pref. xxii.
i. Pref. xxxii.
i. Pref. xxi.
i. Pref. xxii.
i. 471, ii. 468.
ii. 407.
i. 316.
i. 407.
i. 37.

(كتاب) ظاهراً في معرفة الأصحاب
(شرح كتاب) السعوجي
(كتاب) الإسناد
اعتاد في اختبار البني عياد
(كتاب) عيون النبات والشترات
الاندلسية
وضع البسات في معرفة البساتين
أيام العرب
(كتاب) الابي من البيضين
الغدية
(كتاب) افعال وصرفها
(كتاب) اقتباس الآتى وقياس الأثر في نسب
التجربة ورواية الأثر
(كتاب) الارتقابين
اكتفاء في اختبار البلطان
الأكبال والانتاب في قلعة العلم
بجلس
(كتاب) البهاء في الفروع
INDEX TO THE TITLES OP

clxiv

i.

ii.

i.

Pref. xxxiii.

482.

jtyJI

495.

i.

474.

i.

Pref. xix.

i.

455.

ii.

371.

i.

Pref. xxi.

i.

474.
502.

ii.

475.

i.

i.

Pref. xxxiv.

i.

422.

J

II

i.

465.

i.

Pref. xxii.

i.

434.

i.

473.

i.

482.

i.

439.

i.

App.

xxi.

i.

App.

xxi.

i.

App.

xxi.

i.

App.

xxi.

i.

App.

xxi.

Pref. xxi.

473.

juLj

App.

i.

450.

i.

App. xx.

i.

351,

.

ii.

530.

i.

Pref. xxvi.

i.

App.

xvi.

i.

App.

vii.

u

iftae*
i.

App. xxi.

i.

App. xxi.

i.

App, xxi.

Ja_Jt

i.

470.

i.

340.

ii.

ii.

App. xxi.

i.

App.

xxi.

i.

App,

xxi.

i.

332.

i.

37.

ii.

6.

Jk-AWy->

44.

424.

i.

365.

i.

301, 463.

i.

i.

525.

472,

ii.

514

i.

App.

xxi.

i.

App.

xxi.

i.479.

u-fij^oJl

XLall

xvi.

i.

ii.

-Twl
Jfj

i.

i.

H

532.

ii.

516.

ii.

-i

C


الدر الثمين في اسيا، الباردي الأدمي، وحاشية
i. Pref. xxxiii.

شرح أم البراهين
i. 513.

الدر الخفيرة من شعراء الجزيرة
i. 314.

اللقاء والقاصد، وغرر الفرايد
i. 458.

الذخيرة السنية في تاريخ دولة
ii. 525.

في مسائيه اهل
i. Pref. xxi, 471.

الجزيرة

(كتاب) رايد الفلاح بعوالي السانيد

i. Pref. xxviii.

المصحح
i. 348.

رحالة ابن بطوطة
ii. 539.

ابن جابر
i. Pref. xxvi.

رسالة ذات النقاب في اللقب
i. 445.

في فضائل الاندلس، وذكر رحالا

في الوقوف الجمي disproportionate
i. Pref. xxxiii.

الوسط
ii. 468.

رسائل المحدثين

i. Pref. xxv.

روض الاسعاع النافذ في ذكر من لقائه

ii. 468.

اعمال مراكش وفاس

i. Pref. xxxiii.

روضة التعليم في ذكر الصحة و

i. Pref. xxxiv.

ال geli

الضناير في اخبر الاويل

i. Pref. xxiii, 349.

الرحمانية

i. 488.

اول
i. Pref. xxvii.

i. App. xvi, xii.

i. 313.

i. 114.

خصالاً الآثر في اعيان القرن الجادي

i. Pref. xxxi.

i. App. xlix.

i. Pref. xxiv.

VOL. II.
INDEX TO THE TITLES OF

i. 338.
ii. 68.
i. 478.
i. 470.
i. 478.
ii. 537.
i. 462.
i. Pref. xxxiii.
i. 513.
i. App. xxi.
i. App. xvi.
i. Pref. xxxiii.
i. Pref. xxxiii.
i. Pref. xx.
i. Pref. xxxvii.
i. Pref. xxii.
i. Pref. xxxvii.
i. Pref. xxxvii.
i. Pref. xxviii.
i. Pref. xxviii.
i. Pref. xxviii.
i. App. xxii.
i. 534.
i. 422.
i. App. xvi.
i. App. xvi.
i. App. xvi.

(كتاب) المقدمة
— المقتطبة
عنوان البقاري والبروفات
المؤلف والمؤلف
(كتاب) النسب
(كتاب) السياق
السياق في تلعيبات
(كتاب) السياق
السياق
السياق وسياق البرج
فصول في سياسة المدينة وكيفية
الحداث
شذوذ في الأسبر
الشراحنة في تعريف حقوق
العصر (كتاب)
نسب البارع
(كتاب) القصة
(كتاب) الصلا
(كتاب) فلسطين
(كتاب) التاريخ
(كتاب) العالم في اللغة
(كتاب) العالم والتعليم
(كتاب) العائد الصلا
(كتاب) البصر
اعработка أولي الأفكار في تاريخ ملوك
العصر
عيوب الرسالة
الوزراء
النبلاء
على القوة الفرعونية

i. 146, 422.
i. 478.
i. 470.
i. 478.
i. Pref. xxiv.
i. Pref. xxv.
i. Pref. xx.
i. Pref. xxvii.
i. Pref. xxvii.
i. Pref. xxvii.
i. Pref. xxvii.
i. Pref. xxvii.
i. 541.
i. 310.
i. 310.
i. 310.
i. 310.
i. 310.
i. 310.
i. 310.
i. 541.
i. 437.
i. 309.
i. 309.
i. 437.
i. 437.
i. 309.
i. 309.
i. 146, 422.
i. 478.
i. 470.
i. 470.
i. 470.
i. 470.
i. 470.
i. 470.
ARABIC WORKS CITED.

i. App. xvii.
ii. App. xvi.
iii. App. xv.
iv. Pref. xxiii.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 468.

i. Pref. xxxiii.
ii. 458.

i. Pref. xxxii.
ii. 468.

i. Pref. xxiii.
ii. 458.

i. Pref. xxxiii.
ii. 458.

i. Pref. xvi.
ii. 468.

i. Pref. xxii.
ii. 458.

i. Pref. xxiii.
ii. 458.

i. Pref. xix.
ii. 339.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvii.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.

i. App. xvi.
ii. 440, 460.
INDEX TO THE TITLES OF ARABIC WORKS CITED.

i. Pref. xxvii.

ii. Pref. xx.

iii. Pref. xxxiv.

i. Pref. xx, 323.

i. App. xx.

i. App. xxxiv.

i. 387.

i. 332.

i. 470.

i. 478.

i. 123.

i. 119, 459.

i. 473.

i. 470.

i. 147.

i. 355.

i. 359.

ii. 528.

i. Pref. xxvi.

ii. Pref. xxxvi.

i. App. xxvi, 230.

i. App. xxxix.

ii. 401, note 7.

i. 333.

i. App. xvi, xxi.

i. Pref. xxvi.

i. Pref. xxxiv.

i. Pref. xx.

i. 403.

i. 404.

i. 342.
LIST OF SPANISH WORDS,
OF ARABIC DERIVATION,
WHICH OCCUR IN THE COURSE OF THIS TRANSLATION, OR ARE EXPLAINED IN THE NOTES.

Abalorio, i. 389.
Açafelha, i. 385.
Acídáque, i. 347.
Adalída, i. 530.
Adarga, i. 417.
Adarme, i. 501.
Adive, i. 391.
Adobar, i. 383.
Adobo, i. 398.
Adúfe, i. 59, 366.
Agalla, ii. 469.
Alacraz, i. 439.
Alamín, i. App. Ixxi.
Alaride, ii. 485.
Alarife, ii. 538.
Alazór, i. 378.
Albacáza, i. 400.
Albarda, ii. 485.
Alberoa, i. 487.
Albeyyr, i. 430.
Alboque, i. 366.
Albuñera, i. 374, 487.
Alcachaz, i. 443.
Alcalde, i. 104.
Alcantara, i. 370.
Alcantarilla, i. 326.
Alcazra, i. 354.
Alcartaya, ii. 469.
Alcazár, i. 206.
Alcazar, i. 372.
Alcoba, i. 525.
Alcobilla, i. 487.
Alcurnia, i. 546.
Alerce, i. 530.
Alfaharero, i. 438.
Alfajeme, ii. 466.
Alfanje, ii. 510.
Alfaquí, i. 141.

Alfondiga, i. 492, ii. 541.
Alforja, i. 496.
Alforza, i. 364.
Algaída, i. 530, ii. 417.
Algalia, ii. 469.
Alguacil, i. 397.
Alguaquida, i. 465.
Alhajibe, ii. 459.
Albañuela, i. 543.
Alhondiga, i. 492.
Alfio, i. 543.
Alfizar, i. 442.
Aljaba, ii. 466.
Aljibe, i. 499.
Aljofar, i. 476.
Aljuba, ii. 433.
Alloza, i. 497.
Almadía, i. App. xxxvi.
Almalaifa, ii. 469.
Almazará, ii. 541.
Almenara, i. 498.
Almidana, ii. 485.
Alminar, i. 498.
Alminhar, i. 499.
Almizcle, ii. 469.
Almocaden, i. App. xliii; ii. 211, 485.
Almogávar, ii. App. lxxx.
Almogabena, i. 367.
Almoneada, i. 418.
Almotacen, i. 399.
Almoxarife, i. 363.
Almoxarifar, i. 363.
Almoxarifasgo, i. 363.
Almuño, i. 235.
Almunia, i. 374.
Alquería, i. 354.
Anona, i. 419, 489.

Arñi, ii. 479.
Arabhal, i. 486.
Arabiel, i. 365.
Arraez, ii. 538.
Arias, i. 347, 438.
Arayán, i. 435.
Arrecife, i. 326, 374.
Arrcli, i. 357.
Arroba, i. 344.
Arrope, i. 400.
Arsenal, i. 358.
Atahúd, i. App. lxvii.
Atalaya, i. 350.
Atanor, i. 501.
Atarrázana, i. 358.
Atuca, i. 389.
Auquisia, i. 500.
Axaraf, i. 363.
Azafrate, ii. 483.
Azafrán, Arzafranar, i. 531.
Azafrante, i. 502.
Azeña, i. 499.
Azequía, i. 499.
Azófar, i. 325, 389.
Azóque, i. 491.
Azotía, ii. 487.
Azucar, i. 387.
Azuda, i. 487, ii. 477, 490.
Azulejo, i. 393.
Azumbre, i. 501.
Barro, i. 359.
Bellota, i. 450.
Bordo, i. 413.
Butaca, ii. 459.
Cafetía, i. 515.
Cáliía, i. 547.
LIST OF SPANISH WORDS, &c.

Cañiz, i. 235.
Camisa, i. 364, ii. 485.
Caña, i. 499.
Cañada, Cañería, i. 499.
Cado, Cantara, i. 501.
Carmen, i. 364.
Cazo, ii. 419.
Cazón, ii. 469.
Chorro, i. 490.
Cifra, i. 372.
 Cófas, i. App. xxxvi.
Copa, i. 525.
Danique, i. 500.
Daúena, i. 358.
Dibujar, Dibujo, i. 358.
Elche, i. 500.
Escarata, i. 358.
Fonda, i. 358.
Forro, ii. 481.
Galan, i. 547.
Garbellar, Garbillo, i. 365.
Haya, i. 430.
Jaén, i. 490.
Laúd (instrument), i. 365.
Laúd (small craft), i. App. xxxvi.
Loco, ii. 482.
Malea, i. 436.
Maquila, ii. 397.
Marfil, ii. 479.
Marjal, i. 490.
Maroma, i. 422.
Masarí, i. 492.
Maula, ii. 396.
Mezquita, i. 305.
Místico, ii. 527.
Mizcal, i. 500.
Moz, i. 387.
Mozarabe, Muzarabe, i. 387, 420.
Quilate, i. 500.
Quintal, i. 344, 500.
Rajar, i. 515.
Rauda, i. 486.
Raulal, i. 486.
Rehen, i. 415.
Res, i. App. lxxv.
Retal, i. 357.
Romana (ensalada), i. 488.
Sacre, i. 331, ii. 419.
Sacaí, i. App. xxxvi.
Safareche, i. 487.
Sandía, i. 371.
Sierra, i. 546.

Taín, i. 353.
Tagarino, i. 315.
Taifa, i. 330.
Tamiz, ii. 485.
Tibar, ii. 469.
Toldo, i. 524.
Trazas, i. 557.
Xabega, Xabatge, i. App. xxxvi.
Xeme, i. 500.
Xerga, ii. 470.
Zafarí (granada), i. 387.
--------- (higo), i. 387.
Zagal, ii. 540.
Zagacador, i. 418.
Zaguán, i. 495.
Zal, i. 499.
Zamara, ii. 469.
Zanca, i. 426.
Zaque, i. 375.
Zaquín, i. 493.
Zarcilla, i. 383.
Zarco, ii. 416.
Zelemin, i. 501.
Zoco, i. 492.
Zoma, i. 499.
Zorzi, ii. 470.
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

Page 9, line 29, read ‘Abú Dhorr.’
Page 21, line 21, read ‘Al-mu’tadhed.’
Page 23, line 24, read ‘Wádíghah.’
Page 32, line 27, read ‘March or April, 719.’
Page 47, line 35, read ‘to take the field against.’
Page 101, line 25, instead of ‘advance’ read ‘postpone.’
Page 107, line 34, read ‘son of ’Omar Ibn Sharahil,’ &c.
Page 139, line 19, read Ordono III.’
Page 141, line 16, read ‘Abti-Usbagh.’
Page 145, line 38, read ‘Abu-1-modhaffer.’
Page 149, line 19, read ‘Ibn Masarrah.’
Page 256, line 16, read ‘(Al-Jbnso I., the father of Raroiro).’
Page 274, line 30, read ‘Abu ’Abdillah Ibn Mohammed.’
Page 305, line 34, read ‘Diezma.’
Page 320, line 16, read ‘Alfonso III. of Castile.’
Page 324, line 34, instead of ‘(Yúsuf II.),’ read ‘(Mohammed).’
Page 325, line 10, where it says ‘(Idris II.),’ read ‘Ali, the real name of As-sa’id, twelfth Sultán of the Almohades.
Page — lines 15 and 16, read ‘Abú Dabbbá.’
Page 344, line 31, read ‘Abú Sa’id ‘Othmán.’
Page 355, line 18, read ‘Dhú-d-daulatyn.’

Page 420, Note 16. The relative adjective Al-hadhrami may be referred either to the tribe of Hadhra-maut or to the country so called. Treating of this, I stated, by mistake, in vol. i. p. 312, Note 4, that Hadhra-maut was a city of Syria: Hadhra-maut is a district of Arabia, so called because it was inhabited by the tribe of that name.

Page 429, Note 29. The kunyá or appellative Abú-l-‘ássin (the father of the wicked), by which Al-hakem I. of Cordova is often designated, is not, as I at first imagined (vol. i. p. 400), a surname applied to that Sultán on account of his cruelty and his excessive rigour towards his revolted subjects. It was an appellation common to several princes of the family of Umeyyah, and which Al-hakem II. is likewise known to have had. Al-hakem, the father of Merwín, fiftth Khalif of the race of Umeyyah in the East, was also surnamed Abú-l-‘ássin.

Page 438, Note 47, beginning thus: “Immediately after the above notice,” &c., ought to have been placed at p. 459, following Note 49.

Page 455, line 32, instead of ‘Lob Ibn Ahmed Al-kasawf,’ I think that ‘Lob Ibn Mohammed,’ &c. ought to be read.
Page 456, line 5, instead of ‘Toledo’ read ‘Saragossa.’
Page 459, line 2, read ‘Modharia.’
Page — line 31, read ‘Al-khabib.’
Page 463, line 4, read ‘Ahmed Ibn Umeyyah.’
Page 465, line 26, read ‘Suniofred.’

Page 482, Note 2. According to Al-homaydî, Abú Bekr Al-azrak died at Cairwán in 386. Cairwán does not occupy, as I stated by mistake in the notes to the first volume of this translation, the site of the ancient Cyrene.
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS.

Page 494, line 41, instead of 'Ibn Wada'th, as in my transcript of An-nuwayri’s history, I think that ‘Ibn Abi Wada’th’ ought to be read.

Page 499, Note 10. The Beni Shoheyd are elsewhere said to have been assimilated from a Berber called Shoheyd (the little martyr), who accompanied Tārik Ibn Zeyd to the conquest of Spain. See p. 91.

Page 500, Note 2. Some historians, like the author of the Reyhanu-L-lubāb, Mohammed Ash-shāfi’, and others, call this Lord of Carmona ‘Abdullāh Ibn Mohammad;’ but his real name appears to have been ‘Abū ’Abdillah Mohammed Al-birzāf.’

Page 506, Note 37. Casiri says that Zohayr was killed whilst defending his capital, Almeria, against the forces of his enemy, Ali Ibn Hammid, which is evidently a mistake, since Ali himself was assassinated in A.H. 408.

Page 509, Note 18. In the first book of the second part (fo. 588), Al-makkari gives the following derivation of the word Telemisán after an author named Abū Zakariyya Yahya Ibn Khalidun, who wrote a history of the Beni ’Abdi-l-wād: ‘Telisán is a Berber word, composed of telim (it unites) and en (the two), that is to say, the plain and the mountain, because the city is partly built on both. Others say that it comes from Telehān, a word composed of tel (mountain) and shān (celebrity).’

Page 533, Note 14. In another part of his Ahadith, Ibnu-l-khattāb states (no doubt by mistake) that it was Sancho el Bravo who implored the aid of Ya’kūb against his father Alfonso X., and who pawned the crown jewels — و رفيق عند ۵ for a sum of money lent him by that Sultan. He calls the place where the interview was held Sabrah, instead of Sahrah, and says that it is united to ‘Abdul-r-rahman Al-ghāfeqī, which is the reading afforded by my manuscript; ‘Abdu-r-rahnīn Ibn ‘Abdillah Al-ghāfeqī’ is to be read.

Page x, line 2, ‘Jebel-kantfeh’ is evidently a mistake for ‘Jebat-l-bakar.’ It was Mohammed Al-muhdi, not Suleymān, who was defeated at the former place.

Page xiv, line 24. If Mohammed Al-mustakfi began his reign in Dhī-l-kā’dah, A.H. 414, his dethronement must have taken place in 416, or else he could not have reigned sixteen months. An-nuwayri’s account is more probable. He places the accession of Al-mustakfi in Dhī-l-kā’dah, 414 (Feb. 1024), and his dethronement on Tuesday, the 25th of Rabī’ the first, A.H. 416, after a reign of about sixteen months. He was killed at the end of Rabī’ the second.

Page xvii, line 27, instead of ‘330, &c.,’ read ‘430 (beginning Oct. 2, A.D. 1038) or 431 (beginning Sept. 22, A.D. 1039).’

Page xxvii, Note 10. This Wālīheh, the eunuch, cannot be identified with the celebrated eunuch of the same name.

Page lxv, line 27, read ‘Benī Shahīd.’

THE END.

PRINTED BY W. HUGHES, KING’S HEAD COURT, GOUGH SQUARE.